Mongolian Grammar

Rita Kullmann
D. Tserenpil

Under the Auspices of:
Institute of Language and Literature
Academy of Sciences
Ulaanbaatar
Mongolia

© Rita Kullmann
All rights reserved; no part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior written permission of the author.

Original Edition in German, unpublished
Translated into English by:
Molly Deatherage and Rita Kullmann, 1996

Editors:
Ken Kiehm
Molly Deatherage
Lori Younker
Eva Schubert
Dong-Hwan Kim
D. Battuul

Design of Mongolian Fonts: Jürgen Kullmann
Cover Design: Jörg Ehlerding

First edition published in 1996: 1000 books (hardback)

Second revised edition published in 2001: 500 books (paperback)

Printed in Hong Kong, China

ISBN: 962-8457-05-5

Distribution:
Rita Kullmann
Phone: (++976 11) 454571 / 350827
Fax: (++976 11) 458747
Email: juergenk@magicnet.mn

Prefaces

As I began to study Mongolian in **Huhhot, Inner Mongolia** in 1984, I soon fell in love with this language. Its structure and system, which is so totally different from all the European languages that I had learned so far, attracted me. I tried hard to understand and grasp these different ideas at that time. Our Grammar teacher, **Mr. Nolmajav** helped me greatly. However, with no study book available and with Chinese being spoken in the city, it proved difficult to learn Mongolian well.

In **England**, in the years 1986-1988, I met Mongolians from Ulaanbaatar and started to learn the Cyrillic alphabet. **Mr. Vietze**'s grammar book was a big help at that time. **Mr. Damdin**, who taught Mongolian at the Faculty of Oriental Studies in Cambridge, was willing to give me private lessons.

When we came to **Ulaanbaatar, Mongolia**, in 1991, I quickly found out that there were almost no study materials available. Being a person who must understand a language in order to learn it, I had many frustrating experiences asking Mongolian friends about the reasons for saying things this way or that way. All this caused me to start writing down what I found out, not knowing it would become such a large project. In my first year, many of my personal friends like **Uyanga, Naraa, Bat-Erdene** and **Münkh,** helped in contributing example sentences. Later, I was given the privilege to work with **Mr. Sukhbaatar** from the State University. It was with him that I could work more systematically. Communication wasn't easy though, since we could only speak in either French or Mongolian. After having completed about a third of the book, I became acquainted with **Mr. Tserenpil**, who was working in the Institute of Language and Literature at the Academy of Sciences. Without knowing that his major research area was the structural system of the Mongolian language, I approached him to oversee the work on this book and studied with him for over two years, doing nothing other than writing this book, revising it again and again. If this book has scientific significance, it is mainly to his credit. In him, I had finally found the person that would patiently answer my many questions.

My thanks go to **Eva Schubert** and **Dong-Hwan Kim** who helped me make the German version (unpublished) more accurate. After completing the first draft of the German version in February 1995, I started working on the English translation with the help of **Molly Deatherage**. I am very thankful to her, **Lori Younker**, and **Ken Kiehm** for giving some of their precious time to check the English translation. **Mrs. D. Battuul** kindly checked the Classical Mongolian script, for which I'm very grateful.
I want to explicitely express my thanks to my **husband, Jürgen,** and our two boys, **Samuel and Michaja**, for letting me do this big job. It was very often time that had rightly belonged to them, which went into this book. Whithout the help of Jürgen who taught me to work on a computer and advised me in all the lay-out problems, I couldn't have written this book.

But my biggest appreciation is to God. It was His love and concern for the Mongolian people that He put in my heart, and His strength that made me persevere and succeed (I hope) in this task.

Finally, we need to say that this book could be revised forever, as the language is changing and so does its grammar. Moreover, as we read it again, we have ideas of improving different things. However, our aim has been to 'quickly' make something available for others to study this fascinating language, so we have to give up on perfectionism and dare to publish it now the way it is. Hopefully, this book will be a basis for many Mongolian researchers to explore their language more deeply and write other helpful materials with which to study it. And as the students and teachers who work with this book find mistakes and better ways to express things, we hope they'll make their suggestions available to me for possible correction and reprinting:
Rita Kullmann, Post 211051/13, Ulaanbaatar, Mongolia

Ulaanbaatar, September 1996 Rita Kullmann

Before publishing the second edition of this book, Mr. Tserenpil and I have revised it. This edition won't have lay-out problems with **bold** or *italic* styles. Cross-references were made with page numbers. Where space allowed it (we didn't want to change page numbering), we added things that got left out in our first edition. We trust that this edition will be more user-friendly.

Ulaanbaatar, October 2001 Rita Kullmann

Since 1984, when I graduated from the Mongolian Language Department at the Mongolian State University, I have been doing research on the structure and system of modern Mongolian at the Institute of Language and Literature, Academy of Sciences, Mongolia. During these years, I have attempted to re analyze the basic principles of Mongolian grammar in the light of new advances in modern linguistic theory. I formulated many of my principles and concepts by lecturing at universities and institutes in Ulaanbaatar and writing articles.

Three years ago I met Rita Kullmann, a researcher of the Mongolian language from Switzerland. She was working on a book designed to help foreigners learn Mongolian, and she suggested to me that we collaborate. During lengthy discussions about the book, we both felt that it should be not only an "ordinary" study book with some traditional grammar explanations and examples but should also be a popular scientific grammar, including the latest achievements in Mongolian linguistics.

This is the first Mongolian grammar in English compiled in Mongolia which embraces both the Cyrillic and Classical scripts, and has an equal emphasis on pedagogy and science. The few Mongolian grammars written in English can only be found on dusty library shelves in the "rare book" section. This book, because of its broad scope of theory and practice, will greatly enrich the body of study and teaching materials available.

This grammar implements the structural approach as introduced by scholar, Sh.Luvsanvandan. We have discussed many unresolved linguistic problems and tried to give explanations for them. For example, we have taken into consideration the new ideas and concepts of my Mongolian and foreign colleagues concerning vowel development (e.g. assimilation and the origin of the long vowel and diphthong), word structure, especially word stems and the zero suffix, changes in the case system of Modern Mongolian, "representative parts of speech" or so called prowords, focus particles, a new syntactic classification, the form of subjects in the subordinate clause, etc.
Also included are some results of my long-term research on such problems as the idea of the definite/indefinite category of Modern Mongolian, hierarchies within these categories, case-bound suffixes (in particular the suffix "хи"), case-bound particles, adwords, a new look at relational suffixes and their structural functional system, etc.

Included as well is the result of research done by comparing Mongolian and English grammar and verb tenses.

And finally, all suggestions and advice can be sent to

C.P.O Box 967
Ulaanbaatar 13
Mongolia

or to

The Linguistics Department
The School of Mongolian Studies
Mongolian State University
Ulaanbaatar
Mongolia

Ulaanbaatar, September 1996
Ulaanbaatar, October 2001

D. Tserenpil

Өмнөх үг

Миний бие 1984 онд МУИС-ийн монгол хэлний салбарыг төгссөнөөс хойш ШУА-ийн Хэл зохиолын хүрээлэнд орчин цагийн монгол хэлний бүтэц тогтолцооны асуудлаар эрдэм шинжилгээний ажил хийж байна. Энэ хугацаанд монгол хэлний хэлзүйн байгууллын үндсэн зарчмуудыг орчин үеийн хэлшинжлэлийн онолын үзэл баримтлалд тулгуурлан шинээр авч үзэхийг оролдож ирлээ. Энэ талаарх санаа оноо, онолын зарчмуудаа эрдэм шинжилгээний өгүүллүүд болон их, дээд сургуулиудад уншсан лекцэндээ боловсруулсан билээ.

Гурван жилийн өмнө азтай тохиолдлоор Швейцарийн монгол хэл судлаач Рита Куллманнтай танилцахад тэрбээр олон жил монгол хэл судалсан туршлагадаа тулгуурлан гадаадынханд зориулсан монгол хэлний сурах бичиг зохиож буйгаа ярилаа хамтран ажиллахыг хүсэлт болгосон билээ. Ингээд бид энэ нь зөвхөн хэл зүйн зарим уламжлалт тайлбар, жишээ дасгалыг агуулсан "ердийн" сурах бичиг төдийгүй, эрдэм шинжилгээний хялбаршуулсан хэлзүй байх нь зүйтэй гэж санал нийлэн, сэтгэл шулуудан ажилласан юм.

Энэ ном нь Монголд англи хэлээр зохиогдсон монгол хэлний анхны хэлзүй бөгөөд кирилл болон уйгаржин монгол бичгийг хоёуланг нь хамарч, сургалтын хийгээд эрдэм шинжилгээний зорилгыг тэгш харгалзан үзэхийг оролдсон болно. Урьд өмнө гадаад оронд англи хэлээр зохиогдсон монгол хэлний хэлзүйн бичгүүд нь олдохуйяа бэрх болж ховордсон төдийгүй тэдгээрийг монгол хэл сургалтын шинэ хэрэглэгдэхүүн, монгол хэлшинжлэлийн шинэлэг үзэл онолоор баяжуулж байгаагаараа энэ бүтээл онол-практикийн ач холбогдолтой юм.

Бид энэхүү хэлзүйн бичигтээ анх акад. Ш.Лувсанвандангийн монгол хэлшинжлэлд нэвтрүүлсэн бүтэцзүйн хандлагыг үргэлжлүүлэн хөгжүүлж монгол хэлний судлалын шийдвэрлэгдээгүй олон асуудлыг хөндөн ямар нэг хэмжээгээр шийдвэрлэхийг оролдсон болно. Тухайлбал, монгол хэлний эгшиг авианы хувьсал хөгжил/ижилсэл, урт ба хос эгшгийн үүсэл гарал/, үгийн бүтэц, ялангуяа үгийн үндсийн тухай ойлголт, ОЦМХ-ний тийн ялгалын тогтолцоонд гарч буй өөрчлөлтүүд, "Төлөөлөх үгсийн аймаг" буюу төлөөний үгийн тухай, төвлөрүүлэх сул үгийн тухай, өгүүлбэрзүйн бүтэц-үүргийн шинэ ангилал зэрэг дотоодын болон гадаадын эрдэмтдийн шинэ санал дүгнэлтүүдийг дээжлэн оруулласа. Мөн өөрийн олон жилийн судалгааны үр дүн болсон ОЦМХ дэх ялгах, үл ялгахын ай, ялгах айн шатлал, тийн ялгалтай холбогдох залгавар, тухайлбал - хи залгаврын тухай, тийн ялгалтай холбогдох сул үг, эгэх залгаврын мөн чанар, тэмдэг үгийн тухай, монгол хэлний харьцааны бүтээвэр, тэдгээрийн бүтэц-үүргийн тогтолцоо зэрэг олон асуудлаар өөрийн шинэлэг үзэл бодлоо илэрхийллээ.

Мөн монгол, англи хэлний хэлзүйн байгууллын зэрэгцүүлсэн судалгааны талаар зарим ажиглалт хийж Англи-монгол хэлний цагийн тогтолцооны харьцуулсан хүснэгтийг хавсаргав.

Энэ номонд хөндөгдсөн монгол хэлшинжлэлийн асуудлаар санал бодлоо солилцох, санаа оноо өгөх мэргэн уншигчийг

"Улаанбаатар-13
Төв шуудан
ш/х 967"

гэсэн хаягаар харилцах буюу

МУИС-ийн
Монгол судлалын сургуулийн
Хэлшинжлэлийн танхимд

хандахыг хүсч байна.

Д. Цэрэнпил
1996.09.19.
2001.10.17.

General Introduction

We decided to go for the **American way of spelling**, simply because my English editors were exclusively Americans. When it comes to terms that are quite different in American English and British English, we have given **both terms in the index**, referring to each other (e.g. brackets [Br.] -> parentheses [Am.]; full stop [Br.] -> period [Am.]).

Sometimes the Mongolian allows for different English translations, e.g. "дүү" could be 'younger sister'/'younger brother', "тэр" could be 'he/she/it', etc. We always **chose** one of the possible translations, unless this very Mongolian word was the focus of the examples.

As for **Mongolian loan words**, we thought it best to keep as close to the Cyrillic as possible. Therefore, we put such words in quotation marks, using the **following transcription** of Cyrillic, unless words have already been established in English (like Genghis Khan):
а=a, б=b, в=v, г=g, д=d, е=ye, ё=yo, ж=j, з=z, и/й=i, к=k, л=l, м=m, н=n, о=o, ө=ö, п=p, р=r, с=s, т=t, у=u, ү=ü, ф=f, х=kh, ц=ts, ч=ch, ш=sh, ь= ', э=e, ю=yu/yü, я=ya.

Because we have taken an **indigenous approach** to the Mongolian grammar, this book is **not neccessarily user-friendly**. We used terms which might be unfamiliar to an English speaker (e.g. comitative case; reflexive suffix); sometimes we even created new terms (e.g. adword, proword). We have aimed, though, not to use linguistic terms without explaining them, bearing in mind that some readers might not have such a background. We suggest that **readers familiarize themselves with the book**, the appendix, and the abbreviations in order to benefit from the book in the best way possible. Here is what you should pay attention to:

• Very detailed table of contents (first pages of the book)

Even though one might not know the right term for something and therefore not be able to look it up, the **Cyrillic words or suffixes**, that are part of the table of contents will help you find what you are looking for.

• Appendix: Index

We have given an index, trying to list every term we used in English, German, and Mongolian. This enables you to become familiar with the Mongolian terms your teacher is using (although he/she might sometimes use the traditional names rather than the new names given in this book).

• Appendix: List of Inflectional Suffixes

This list will be very important as you read a Mongolian text and come across suffixes you don't know. Next to the suffix are the abbreviations of the name or category of the suffix and on which page it is explained. **You may copy** that list in order to memorize the suffixes.

• Appendix: Table of contents in Mongolian

Our grammar is **not a self-study book**, although a lot could be learned this way. It will be important that students show the Mongolian table of contents to their teachers, that they can refer to paragraphs as they teach.

• Abbreviations

We used the following abbreviations:

e.g.	= for example	III:1.1.2	= Part III, 1.1.2
(ex. a,b,g)	= examples a, b and g	(ex. a-d)	= examples a, b, c and d

In some tables, we could only give the first letter of the **cases** (below in parentheses). But because we used examples throughout the book, confusion (*) is not likely to happen:

Nom. (N.)	= nominative case	Gen. (G.)	= genitive case
Dat. (D.)*	= dative-locative case	Acc. (A.)*	= accusative case
Abl. (A.)*	= ablative case	Instr. (I.)	= instrumental case
Com. (C.)	= comitative case	Dir. (D.)*	= directive case

All **suffix abbreviations** are found in the list of the inflectional suffixes on page 413ff. But here are those we used most often in this book:

CS	= **C**ase **S**uffix	PS	= **P**lural **S**uffix
NDS	= **N**oun **D**etermining **S**uffix	VDS	= **V**erb **D**etermining **S**uffix
PTS	= **P**erson-bound **T**erminating **S**uffix	TTS	= **T**ense-bound **T**erminating **S**uffix
RS	= **R**eflexive **S**uffix		

Table of contents

Part I: Introduction 1

1. THE MONGOLIAN LANGUAGE AND ITS DEVELOPMENT 2
1.1 GENERAL CHARACTERISTICS OF THE MONGOLIAN LANGUAGE 2
1.2 THE MONGOLIAN LANGUAGES AND THEIR DIALECTS 2
1.3 THE CLASSICAL WRITTEN AND MODERN LITERARY LANGUAGES 3

2. THE MONGOLIAN ALPHABETS 4
2.1 THE CLASSICAL ALPHABET 4
2.1.1 General Table of the Classical Alphabet 4
2.1.2 Polyphonetic Alphabet 5
2.1.3 Detailed Table of the Classical Alphabet 6
2.1.4 Vowels 7
2.1.4.1 Vowel Harmony 7
2.1.4.2 Process of Development 7
2.1.4.2.1 Assimilation 7
2.1.4.2.1.1 Forward Assimilation 7
2.1.4.2.1.2 Backward Assimilation 8
2.1.4.2.2 Origin of Long Vowels 9
2.1.4.2.2.1 Sound Complexes 9
2.1.4.2.2.2 Short Vowels 10
2.1.4.2.2.3 Compound Vowels 10
2.1.4.2.3 Origin of Diphthongs 10
2.1.4.2.3.1 Y-Diphthongs 11
2.1.4.2.3.2 Final Diphthongs 11
2.1.4.2.4 Reduced Vowels 12
2.1.4.2.4.1 Vowel Weakness 12
2.1.4.2.4.2 Vowel Dropping 12
2.1.5 Consonants 13
2.1.5.1 Strong and Weak Consonants 13
2.1.5.2 Table of Syllable-Final Consonants 14
2.1.5.3 Soft Consonants in Strong Words 14
2.1.5.4 Changes in Consonants 14
2.1.6 Syllables 15
2.1.7 Writing Loan Words 16
2.1.7.1 Letter Changes in Loan Words 16
2.1.7.2 Examples of Loan Words 16
2.1.8 Spelling Rules 17
2.1.8.1 Suffix Rules 17
2.1.8.2 Rules for Inserted Vowel (Epenthesized Vowel) 17
2.1.8.2.1 General Rules 17
2.1.8.2.2 Exceptions 18

2.2. THE CYRILLIC ALPHABET 19
2.2.1. Vowels 20
2.2.1.1 Classification of Vowels 20
2.2.1.2 Vowel Harmony 20
2.2.2 Consonants 21
2.2.2.1 Hard and Soft Consonants 21
2.2.2.2 Classification of Consonants 21
2.2.2.2.1 7-Consonants or C^7 (vocalized consonants) 21
2.2.2.2.2 9-Consonants or C^9 (non-vocalized consonants) 21
2.2.2.3 Consonant Order in a Word 21
2.2.3 Signs 21
2.2.3.1 The Hard Sign "ъ" 21
2.2.3.2 The Soft Sign "ь" 22
2.2.4 Syllables 22
2.2.5 Rules 22
2.2.5.1 Pronunciation Rules 22
2.2.5.2 Spelling Rules 23
2.2.5.2.1 General Basic Rules 23
2.2.5.2.2 Declension Rules 23
2.2.5.2.2.1 Basic Rules 24
2.2.5.2.2.2 Exception Rules 24
2.2.5.2.3 "-ла" Rules 25
2.2.5.2.3.1 "-ла" Exception Rule 26
2.2.5.2.4 "ь/и" Rules 27
2.2.5.2.5 "-ж/-ч" Rules 28
2.2.5.2.6 Capitalization Rules 30
2.2.5.2.7 Abbreviation Rules 30
2.2.5.2.8 Division Rules 30
2.3 COMPARISON OF BOTH ALPHABETS 31

3. MONGOLIAN WORD STRUCTURE 33
3.1 ROOTS 33
3.1.1 Active or Living Roots 33
3.1.2 Passive or Dead Roots 35
3.2 STEMS 36
3.3 SUFFIXES 37
3.3.1 Derivational Suffixes (Word-Building Suffixes) 37
3.3.2 Inflectional Suffixes (Word-Changing Suffixes) 38
3.3.2.1 Inflectional Suffixes for Nouns 39
3.3.2.2 Inflectional Suffixes for Verbs 40

Part II: Lexicology 41

1. WORD-BUILDING 41
1.1 DERIVATIONAL SUFFIXES (WORD BUILDING SUFFIXES) 42
1.1.1 Noun-Building 42
1.1.1.1 From Nouns and Adjectives 42
1.1.1.2 From Verbs 44
1.1.2 Adjective-Building 49
1.1.2.1 From Nouns and Adjectives 49
1.1.2.2 From Verbs 52
1.1.3 Verb-Building 54
1.2 WORD-BUILDING BY WORD COMBINATIONS 57
1.2.1 Coordinate Word Combinations (Compound Words) 57
1.2.2 Subordinate Word Combinations 58
1.2.2.1 Without Suffixes 58
1.2.2.2 With Inflectional Suffixes 59
1.2.3 Repetitive Word Combinations 59

2. SPECIAL PARTS OF LEXIS 60
2.1 IDIOMS 60
2.2 HOMONYMS 62
2.2.1 Lexical Homonyms 62
2.2.1.1 True Lexical Homonyms 62
2.2.1.2 False Lexical Homonyms 63
2.2.2 Morphological Homonyms 63
2.2.2.1 True Morphological Homonyms 63
2.2.2.2 False Morphological Homonyms 63
2.3 SYNONYMS 63
2.3.1 Stylistic Synonyms 63
2.3.2 Loan-Word Synonyms 64
2.3.3 Dialect Synonyms 64
2.3.4 Taboo Synonyms (Euphemisms) 65
2.4 INDIGENOUS MONGOLIAN VOCABULARY 65
2.5 LOAN WORDS 66
2.5.1 Integration of Loan Words 66
2.5.2 Loan Words from Different Languages 66
2.5.2.1 Sanskrit, Uighur 66
2.5.2.2 Persian, Arabic 66
2.5.2.3 Chinese, Manchurian 67
2.5.2.4 Tibetan 67
2.5.2.5 European 68

Part III: Morphology 70

1. CONCRETE PARTS OF SPEECH 72

1.1 REAL PARTS OF SPEECH 72

1.1.1 Nouns 72

1.1.1.1 Plural 72

1.1.1.1.1 Plural Suffixes 72

1.1.1.1.1.1 "−ууд[2]" (Most common PS) 73

1.1.1.1.1.2 "−чууд[2]/−чуул[2]" (Collective PS) 74

1.1.1.1.1.3 "нар" 74

1.1.1.1.1.4 "−д" 75

1.1.1.1.1.5 "−с" 75

1.1.1.1.2 Plural Usage without Suffixes 76

1.1.1.1.2.1 Numerals 76

1.1.1.1.2.2 Repeated Words 76

1.1.1.1.2.3 Verbs that Demand Plural 77

1.1.1.1.2.4 Quantitative Words 77

1.1.1.1.2.5 Abstract Ideas 77

1.1.1.2 Cases 78

1.1.1.2.1 The 8 Cases and their Suffixes (CS) 78

1.1.1.2.1.1 Nominative Case (−ø) 78

1.1.1.2.1.1.1 Question Words 78

1.1.1.2.1.2 Genitive Case 79

1.1.1.2.1.2.1 Suffixes (−ын, −ийн, −ы, −ий, −н), Rules, Examples 79

1.1.1.2.1.2.2 Question Words 80

1.1.1.2.1.2.3 Usage 80

1.1.1.2.1.3 Dative-Locative Case 83

1.1.1.2.1.3.1 Suffixes (−т, −д), Rules, Examples 83

1.1.1.2.1.3.2 Question Words 84

1.1.1.2.1.3.3 Usage 84

1.1.1.2.1.4 Accusative Case 86

1.1.1.2.1.4.1 Suffixes (−ыг, −ийг, −г), Rules, Examples 86

1.1.1.2.1.4.2 Question Words 87

1.1.1.2.1.4.3 Usage 87

1.1.1.2.1.4.3.1 Indefinite Noun 87

1.1.1.2.1.4.3.2 Definite Noun 88

1.1.1.2.1.4.3.3 Hierarchy List 89

1.1.1.2.1.5 Ablative Case 90

1.1.1.2.1.5.1 Suffixes (−аас[4]), Rules, Examples 90

1.1.1.2.1.5.2 Question Words 90

1.1.1.2.1.5.3 Usage 91

1.1.1.2.1.6 Instrumental Case 93

1.1.1.2.1.6.1 Suffixes (−аар[4]), Rules, Examples 93

1.1.1.2.1.6.2 Question Words 94

1.1.1.2.1.6.3 Usage 94

1.1.1.2.1.7 Comitative Case 97

1.1.1.2.1.7.1 Suffixes (−тай[3]), Rules, Examples 97

1.1.1.2.1.7.2 Question Words 97

1.1.1.2.1.7.3 Usage 97

1.1.1.2.1.7.3.1 True Comitative 98

1.1.1.2.1.7.3.2 False Comitative 98

1.1.1.2.1.8 Directive Case 99

1.1.1.2.1.8.1 Suffixes (руу[2], луу[2]), Rules, Examples 99

1.1.1.2.1.8.2 Question Words 99

1.1.1.2.1.8.3 Usage 99

1.1.1.2.1.8.4 New Form of Directive Case «өөд» 100

1.1.1.2.2 Case-bound Suffixes (CbS's) 101

1.1.1.2.2.1 Possessive CbS "−х" 101

1.1.1.2.2.2 Local CbS "−х" 102

1.1.1.2.2.3 Collective CbS "−хан[4]" 103

1.1.1.2.2.4 Attributive CbS "−х, −хи" 104

1.1.1.2.3 Case-bound Particles (CbP's) 106

1.1.1.2.3.1 CbP "минь, чинь, тань, маань, нь", Rules, Examples 106

1.1.1.2.3.2 Usage 107

1.1.1.3 The Reflexive Suffix "−аа[4]"(RS) 108

1.1.1.3.1 Function of RS 108

1.1.1.3.2 RS, Rules, Examples 109

1.1.1.3.3 Usage 110

1.1.1.3.4 Comparison with CbP's 112

1.1.2 Verbs 113

1.1.2.1 Conjugation of Verbs 113

1.1.2.1.1 Voice Suffixes (VoS's) 115

1.1.2.1.1.1 Active VoS "−ø" 116

1.1.2.1.1.2 Causative Voice 117

1.1.2.1.1.2.1 VoS "−уул[2]" 118

1.1.2.1.1.2.2 VoS "−лга[4]" 119

1.1.2.1.1.2.3 VoS's "−га[4], and −аа[4]" 120

1.1.2.1.1.2.3.1 VoS "−га[4]" 120

1.1.2.1.1.2.3.2 VoS "−аа[4]" 121

1.1.2.1.1.2.4 Functions of Causative Voice 122

1.1.2.1.1.2.4.1 Intransitive ---> Transitive 122

1.1.2.1.1.2.4.2 Transitive ---> Causative 123

1.1.2.1.1.2.4.3 Transitive ---> Passive 123

1.1.2.1.1.3 Passive VoS's "−гд, −д, −т" 124

1.1.2.1.1.4 Communal VoS "−лц" 126

1.1.2.1.1.5 Adversative VoS "−лд" 127

1.1.2.1.1.6 Comparison of Voice Suffixes 128

1.1.2.1.1.7 Combinations of Voice Suffixes 130

1.1.2.1.2 Aspect Suffixes (AsS's) 131

1.1.2.1.2.1 Synthetically Expressed Aspects (with Aspect Suffixes =AsS's) 131

1.1.2.1.2.1.1 AsS "−схий": Quick Action 131

1.1.2.1.2.1.1.1 "−схий" in Colloquial Language 132

1.1.2.1.2.1.2 AsS "−з(а)на[4]": Temporary Action 132

1.1.2.1.2.1.3 AsS "−чих": Completed Action 133

1.1.2.1.2.1.4 AsS "−цгаа[4]": Collective Action 134

1.1.2.1.2.1.5 AsS "−л": Repetitive Action 135

1.1.2.1.2.1.6 AsS's "−лз, балз[2], валз[2], галз[4], гана[4]": Other Repetitive Actions 135

1.1.2.1.2.2 Analytically expressed Aspects 136

1.1.2.1.2.2.1 Progressive Action: "−ж/ч бай−" 136

1.1.2.1.2.2.2 Perfect Action: "−(чих)аад[4] бай−/−(чих)сан[4] бай−" 137

1.1.2.1.2.2.3 Progressive-Perfect Action: "−саар[4] бай−" 137

1.1.2.1.2.3 Combinations of VoS's and AsS's 138

1.1.2.1.3 Mood 139

1.1.2.1.3.1 Determining Suffixes (DS's) 139

1.1.2.1.3.1.1 Noun Determining Suffixes (NDS's) 139

1.1.2.1.3.1.1.1 Functions of NDS's 139

1.1.2.1.3.1.1.2 Past Tense NDS "−сан[4]" 143

1.1.2.1.3.1.1.3 Indefinite Present NDS "−даг[4]" 144

1.1.2.1.3.1.1.4 Progressive Present NDS "−аа[4]" 145

1.1.2.1.3.1.1.5 Future NDS "−х" 147

1.1.2.1.3.1.1.6 "Doer" NDS "−гч" 149

1.1.2.1.3.1.2 Adword Determining Suffixes (AwDS's) 151

1.1.2.1.3.1.2.1 Wish-AwDS "−маар[4]" 151

1.1.2.1.3.1.2.2 Possibility-AwDS "−хуйц[2]" 153

1.1.2.1.3.1.2.3 Necessity- AwDS "-ууштай[2]" 154
1.1.2.1.3.1.2.4 Other AwDS's "-шгүй, -лтай[3], -лтгүй, -м(гүй)" 155
1.1.2.1.3.1.3 Verb Determining Suffixes (VDS's) 156
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.1 Coordinating VDS's (cVDS's) 157
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.1.1 Simultaneous cVDS "-ж/-ч" 157
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.1.2 Associative cVDS "-н" 158
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.1.3 Anterior cVDS "-аад[4]" 159
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.1.4 Comparison of cVDS's 160
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2 Subordinating VDS's (sVDS's) 161
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2.1 Conditional sVDS "-бал[4], -вал[4]" 161
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2.2 Concessive sVDS "-вч" 162
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2.3 Immediately Succeeding sVDS "-магц[4]" 164
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2.4 Logically Succeeding sVDS "-хлаар[4]" 165
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2.5 Intending sVDS "-хаар[4]" 166
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2.6 Limiting sVDS "-тал[4]" 167
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2.7 Progressive sVDS "-саар[4]" 168
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2.8 Succeeding sVDS "-нгуут[2]" 170
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2.9 Seizing an Opportunity sVDS "-нгаа[4]" 171
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2.10 Excluding sVDS "-маажин[4]" 172
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2.11 Use of sVDS's with Reflexive Suffix 173
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2.12 Comparison of sVDS's 174
1.1.2.1.3.2 Terminating Suffixes (TS's) 175
1.1.2.1.3.2.1 Person-bound Terminating Suffixes (PTS's) 175
1.1.2.1.3.2.1.1 PTS of Intention "-я[3]" (1st Person) 175
1.1.2.1.3.2.1.2 PTS of Decision "-сугай[2]" (1st Person) 176
1.1.2.1.3.2.1.3 PTS of Command-PTS "-ø" (2nd Person) 177
1.1.2.1.3.2.1.4 PTS of Request "-аач[4]" (2nd Person) 178
1.1.2.1.3.2.1.5 PTS of Demand "-аарай[4]" (2nd Person) 179
1.1.2.1.3.2.1.6 PTS of Admonition "-уузай[2]" (2nd Person) 180
1.1.2.1.3.2.1.7 PTS of Appeal "-гтун[2]" (2nd Person) 181
1.1.2.1.3.2.1.8 PTS of Permission "-г" (3rd Person) 181
1.1.2.1.3.2.1.9 PTS of Hope "-аасай[4]" (3rd Person) 182
1.1.2.1.3.2.1.10 PTS of Blessing "-тугай[2]" (3rd Person) 183
1.1.2.1.3.2.2 Tense-bound Terminating Suffixes (TTS's) 184
1.1.2.1.3.2.2.1 NDS "-сан[4]" as TTS (General Past) 184
1.1.2.1.3.2.2.2 TTS "-жээ/-чээ" (Past) 185
1.1.2.1.3.2.2.3 TTS "-в" (Past) 186
1.1.2.1.3.2.2.4 TTS "-лаа[4]" (Past) 187
1.1.2.1.3.2.2.5 NDS "-даг[4]" as TTS (Indefinite Present) 188
1.1.2.1.3.2.2.6 NDS "-аа[4]" as TTS (Progressive Present) 189
1.1.2.1.3.2.2.7 TTS "-на[4]" (Present) 190
1.1.2.1.3.2.2.8 TTS "-на[4]" (Future) 191
1.1.2.2 Functional Classification of Verbs 192
1.1.2.2.1 Full Verbs 192
1.1.2.2.1.1 Full Verb "бай-" 192
1.1.2.2.1.1.1 In the Function of 'there are' 192
1.1.2.2.1.1.2 In the Function of 'to be' 193
1.1.2.2.1.2 Full Verb "бол-" 193
1.1.2.2.2 Auxiliary Verbs 194
1.1.2.2.2.1 The Auxiliary Verb "бай-" 194
1.1.2.2.2.1.1 Building Copula (after Nouns and Adjectives) 194
1.1.2.2.2.1.2 Building Compound Predicates (after Verbs) 195
1.1.2.2.2.1.3 Building Subjunctive 196
1.1.2.2.2.2 The Auxiliary Verb "бол-" 197
1.1.2.2.2.2.1 Building Copula (after Nouns and Adjectives) 197
1.1.2.2.2.2.2 Building Compound Predicates (after Verbs) 198
1.1.2.2.2.3 Defective Auxiliary Verbs 200
1.1.2.2.2.3.1 "ажээ, атал, аваас" 200

1.1.2.2.2.3.2 "бий, буй, билээ" 200
1.1.2.2.3 Modal Verbs and Modal Constructions 201
1.1.2.2.3.1 Modal Verb "чада-" 201
1.1.2.2.3.2 Modal Constructions 201
1.1.2.2.3.2.1 "-х ...-тай/-гүй" 201
1.1.2.2.3.2.2 "... байх(аа)" 202
1.1.2.2.3.2.3 "... юм байна" 203
1.1.2.2.3.2.4 "... байлтай/байлгүй" 204
1.1.2.2.3.2.5 "... -сан бол-" 204
1.1.2.2.3.2.6 "... -х гэсэн юм" 205
1.1.2.2.3.2.7 "... бололтой" 205
1.1.2.2.3.2.8 "... -х юмсан/-хсан" 205
1.1.2.2.3.2.9 "... -сан юмсан" 205
1.1.2.2.3.2.10 "... -сансан/-дагсан" 206
1.1.2.2.3.2.11 "... -хаас даа" 206
1.1.2.2.3.2.12 Comparison of Modal Constructions and Modal Suffixes 207
1.1.2.2.4 Modifying Verbs 208
1.1.2.2.4.1 "-ж/-ч бол-" in the Function of 'to be allowed to' 208
1.1.2.2.4.2 Table of Other Modifying Verbs 208
1.1.2.2.5 The Conjunction Verb "гэ-" 210
1.1.3 Adwords 211
1.1.3.1 Adjectives (Adwords to Nouns) 212
1.1.3.1.1 Characteristics of Adjectives 212
1.1.3.1.2 Placement of Adjectives 213
1.1.3.1.2.1 Attributive Adjectives 213
1.1.3.1.2.2 Predicative Adjectives (Complements) 214
1.1.3.1.3 Order of Adjectives 214
1.1.3.1.3.1 Rule 214
1.1.3.1.4 Degrees of Adjectives 215
1.1.3.1.4.1 Positive Degree 215
1.1.3.1.4.2 Comparative Degree 215
1.1.3.1.4.2.1 Using Ablative Case and Adjective 215
1.1.3.1.4.2.2 Using Repeated Adjective and Ablative Case 216
1.1.3.1.4.2.3 Using the Postpositions "адил, шиг, мэт, чинээ" 216
1.1.3.1.4.2.4 Using the Adwords "илүү, арай" 217
1.1.3.1.4.3 Superlative Degree 217
1.1.3.1.4.3.1 Using "хамгийн, туйлын" 217
1.1.3.1.4.3.2 Using Genitive Case and Repetition 218
1.1.3.1.5 Modification of Adjectives 218
1.1.3.1.5.1 Modification with Adword Suffixes (AwS's) 218
1.1.3.1.5.1.1 Diminutive AwS "-хан[4]" 218
1.1.3.1.5.1.2 Diminutive AwS's "-втар[4], -дуу[2]" 218
1.1.3.1.5.1.3 Intensifying AwS "-в" 219
1.1.3.1.5.2 Modification with Adwords 219
1.1.3.1.5.2.1 Adwords "маш, тун, нэн, даан" Expressing 'very' 219
1.1.3.1.5.2.2 Adwords "хэтэрхий, дэндүү, дээнч" Expressing'too' 220
1.1.3.1.5.2.3 Different Adwords Expressing 'totally, absolutely' 220
1.1.3.2 Adverbs (Adwords to Verbs) 221
1.1.3.2.1 Original Adverbs 221
1.1.3.2.2 Passive-Root Adverbs 221
1.1.3.2.2.1 Overview 222
1.1.3.2.2.2 Usage 222
1.1.3.2.3 Modification of Adverbs 223
1.1.3.2.3.1 Modification with Adword Suffixes (AwS's) 223
1.1.3.2.3.1.1 Direction AwS "-(г)ш" 223
1.1.3.2.3.1.2 Movement AwS "-уур[2]" 224
1.1.3.2.3.2 Modification with Word Combinations 226
1.1.3.2.3.3 Modification with Adwords 228
1.1.3.2.4 Semantic Classification of Adverbs 228
1.1.3.2.4.1 Local Adverbs 228
1.1.3.2.4.2 Temporal Adverbs 229

1.1.3.2.4.3 Modal Adverbs 232
1.1.3.3 Numerals 234
1.1.3.3.1 Overview of Numerals and Numeral Suffixes (NuS's) 234
1.1.3.3.2 Cardinal Numerals 234
1.1.3.3.2.1 Overview 234
1.1.3.3.2.2 Usage 235
1.1.3.3.2.2.1 Compound Cardinal Numerals 235
1.1.3.3.2.2.2 Cardinal Numerals as Attributes 236
1.1.3.3.2.2.3 Cardinal Numerals as Conjunctions 237
1.1.3.3.2.2.4 Cardinal Numerals in Everyday Life 237
1.1.3.3.2.2.4.1 Date 237
1.1.3.3.2.2.4.2 Time 238
1.1.3.3.2.2.4.3 Telephone 238
1.1.3.3.2.3 Declension of Cardinal Numerals 239
1.1.3.3.2.3.1 Overview 239
1.1.3.3.2.3.2 Usage 239
1.1.3.3.3 Ordinal Numerals 240
1.1.3.3.3.1 Ordinal NuS's "-дугаар^2, дахь/дэх" 241
1.1.3.3.3.2 Usage of Ordinal Numerals 241
1.1.3.3.3.2.1 Months "-дугаар^2" 241
1.1.3.3.3.2.2 Other uses "-дугаар^2" 241
1.1.3.3.3.2.3 Weekdays "-дахь/-дэх" 242
1.1.3.3.3.2.4 Other uses "-дахь/-дэх" 243
1.1.3.3.3.2.5 Address "-дугаар^2, -дахь/-дэх" 243
1.1.3.3.3.2.6 Roman Numerals in Function of "-дугаар^4" 244
1.1.3.3.4 Collective Numerals 244
1.1.3.3.4.1 Collective NuS "-уул^2" 244
1.1.3.3.4.2 Usage of Collective Numerals 244
1.1.3.3.4.3 Declension of Collective Numerals 245
1.1.3.3.4.3.1 Overview 245
1.1.3.3.4.3.2 Usage 246
1.1.3.3.5 Approximate Numerals 246
1.1.3.3.5.1 Overview 246
1.1.3.3.5.2 Usage 247
1.1.3.3.5.2.1 Approximate NuS "-аад^4" 247
1.1.3.3.5.2.2 Postpositions "гаруй, илүү, шахам, орчим" 247
1.1.3.3.5.2.3 Repetition 248
1.1.3.3.5.3 Declension of Approximate Numerals 248
1.1.3.3.6 Multiplying Numerals 249
1.1.3.3.6.1 Overview 249
1.1.3.3.6.2 Usage of Multiplying Numerals 249
1.1.3.3.6.2.1 Multiplying NuS "-таа^4" 249
1.1.3.3.6.2.2 Words "дахин, удаа" 250
1.1.3.3.7 Diminutive Numerals 250
1.1.3.3.7.1 Diminutive NuS "-хан^4" 250
1.1.3.3.7.2 Usage of Diminutive Numerals 250
1.1.3.3.8 Distributive Numerals 251
1.1.3.3.8.1 Usage of Distributive Numerals 251
1.1.3.3.9 Numerals in Mathematics 252
1.1.3.3.9.1 Decimals 252
1.1.3.3.9.2 Fractions 252
1.1.3.3.9.3 Percentages 253
1.1.3.3.9.4 Numerals in Basic Arithmetic Functions 253
1.1.3.3.9.4.1 Addition 253
1.1.3.3.9.4.2 Subtraction 253
1.1.3.3.9.4.3 Multiplication 254
1.1.3.3.9.4.4 Division 254

1.2 REPRESENTATIVE PARTS OF SPEECH (PROWORDS) 255
1.2.1 Systematic Classification 255
1.2.1.1 Prowords for Nouns 255
1.2.1.2 Prowords for Verbs 255
1.2.1.3 Prowords for Adwords 255
1.2.2 Semantic Classification 256
1.2.2.1 Personal Prowords 256
1.2.2.1.1 Overview 256
1.2.2.1.2 Declension 257
1.2.2.1.3 Usage 258
1.2.2.1.3.1 "би" = "I" 258
1.2.2.1.3.2 "чи" = "you" 258
1.2.2.1.3.3 "та" = "you" (honorary) 258
1.2.2.1.3.4 "тэр" = "he/ she/ it" 259
1.2.2.1.3.5 "бид (нар)" = "we" 259
1.2.2.1.3.6 "та нар" = "you" (plural) 260
1.2.2.1.3.7 "тэд (нар)" = "they" 260
1.2.2.2 Possessive Prowords 260
1.2.2.3 Reflexive Prowords 261
1.2.2.3.1 Declension 261
1.2.2.3.2 Usage 262
1.2.2.3.2.1 Examples in Nominative Case 262
1.2.2.3.2.2 Examples in Genitive Case 262
1.2.2.3.2.3 Examples in Other Cases 263
1.2.2.3.3 Other Reflexive Words 263
1.2.2.4 Demonstrative Prowords 264
1.2.2.4.1 Overview 264
1.2.2.4.2 Usage 264
1.2.2.4.2.1 "энэ, тэр, (т)эдгээр, (т)эд нар" = "this, that, these, those" 265
1.2.2.4.2.2 "(т)ийм, (т)иймэрхүү" = "such, this/that kind of" 265
1.2.2.4.2.3 "~~өнөө~~(тэх), ~~нөгөө~~(тэх), ~~өнөөдүүл~~, ~~нөгөөдүүл~~" = "this/that other (one)" 266
1.2.2.4.2.4 "(т)өдий, (т)өчнөөн" = "as many/much as this/that" 267
1.2.2.4.2.5 "ингэ, тэгэ-" = "to do this/that way" 267
1.2.2.5 Interrogative Prowords 268
1.2.2.5.1 Overview 268
1.2.2.5.2 Comparison 269
1.2.2.5.3 Usage 270
1.2.2.5.3.1 "хэн" = "who" 270
1.2.2.5.3.2 "юу(н)" = "what" 271
1.2.2.5.3.3 "ямар" = "what kind of" 271
1.2.2.5.3.4 "аль/алин" = "which" 271
1.2.2.5.3.5 "хэд(эн)" = "how many" 272
1.2.2.5.3.6 "хичнээн" = "how much" 272
1.2.2.5.3.7 "хэзээ, хэдийд" = "(about) when" 272
1.2.2.5.3.8 "хаа(на)" = "where" 273
1.2.2.5.3.9 "хаашаа" = "where to" 273
1.2.2.5.3.10 "хаанаас" = "where from" 273
1.2.2.5.3.11 "хаагуур" = "which way" 273
1.2.2.5.3.12 "хэр" = "how" 273
1.2.2.5.3.13 "хэрхэн" = "how" 274
1.2.2.5.3.14 "яаж" = "how" 274
1.2.2.5.3.15 "яагаад" = "why" 275
1.2.2.5.3.16 "хэрхи-" = "to do what/how" 275
1.2.2.5.3.17 "яа-" = "to do what/how" 275
1.2.2.5.3.18 Repeated Interrogative Prowords expressing Plural 276

1.2.2.6 Indefinite Prowords **276**
1.2.2.6.1 Overview 276
1.2.2.6.2 Usage 277
1.2.2.6.2.1 "хэн ч" = "who(so)ever, everyone, anyone, no one" 277
1.2.2.6.2.2 "юу ч" = "what(so)ever, everything, anything, nothing" 278
1.2.2.6.2.3 "ямар ч" = "whatever kind of, any kind, no ... whatsoever" 278
1.2.2.6.2.4 "аль ч" = "whichever, none" 279
1.2.2.6.2.5 "хэд ч" = "no matter how many" 279
1.2.2.6.2.6 "хичнээн ч" = "no matter how much" 279
1.2.2.6.2.7 "хэзээ ч" = "whenever, always, never" 280
1.2.2.6.2.8 "хаана ч, хаашаа ч, хаанаас ч, хаагуур ч" = "wherever,everywhere,nowhere" 280
1.2.2.6.2.9 "яаж ч" = "to do whatever/ in whatever way" 281
1.2.2.5.3.10 "яа- ч" = "to do whatever/ in whatever way" 281

2. ABSTRACT PARTS OF SPEECH **282**

2.1 POSTPOSITIONS **282**
2.1.1 Characteristics **282**
2.1.2 Systematic Classification **282**
2.1.2.1 Original Postpositions 282
2.1.2.2 Adverbs in Postpositional Function 284
2.1.3 Usage **285**
2.1.3.1 Postpositions with Zero-Suffix **285**
2.1.3.1.1 "гаруй" = "more than" 285
2.1.3.1.2 "шахам" = "almost, nearly" 285
2.1.3.1.3 "орчим" = "about, approximate" 285
2.1.3.1.4 "гэхэд" = "by" 285
2.1.3.1.5 "дээр" = "on" 285
2.1.3.1.6 "доор" = "under" 286
2.1.3.1.7 "хүртэл" = "until, to" 286
2.1.3.1.8 "бүр/ болгон" = "each, every" 286
2.1.3.1.9 "тутам" = "each, every" 286
2.1.3.1.10 "ёсоор" = "according to, in conformity with" 286
2.1.3.1.11 "мэт" = "like, as .... as" 287
2.1.3.1.12 "шиг" = "like, as .... as" 287
2.1.3.1.13 "адил" = "similar to, like" 287
2.1.3.2 Postpositions with Genitive CS **287**
2.1.3.2.1 "тулд" = "(in order) to" 287
2.1.3.2.2 "төлөө" = "for" 287
2.1.3.2.3 "турш" = "for" (in regard to time) 288
2.1.3.2.4 "дагуу" = "according to, along(side) of" 288
2.1.3.2.5 "чинээ" = "as big as, having the size of" 288
2.1.3.2.6 "дэргэд" = "at, near" 289
2.1.3.2.7 "хооронд" = "between" 289
2.1.3.2.8 "хажууд" = "beside, next to" 289
2.1.3.2.9 "наана" = "on this side of, situated here" 289
2.1.3.2.10 "цаана" = "on the other side of, situated there" 289
2.1.3.2.11 "дотор" = "in(side), among" 289
2.1.3.2.12 "ард" = "behind" 290
2.1.3.2.13 "урд" = "in front of, south of" 290
2.1.3.2.14 "уруу" = "down(wards) " 290
2.1.3.2.15 "өөд" = "up(wards)" 290
2.1.3.2.16 "дараа" = "after" 290
2.1.3.2.17 "эсрэг" = "against" 291
2.1.3.2.18 "дунд" = "among" 291
2.1.3.2.19 "ойролцоо" = "near, in the neighborhood of" 291
2.1.3.2.20 Suffix "-уур" = expressing a local movement 291
2.1.3.2.21 "тухай" = "about" 291
2.1.3.2.22 "талаар" = "on, with regard to" 292
2.1.3.2.23 "гадна" = "out(side) of" 292

2.1.3.2.24 "хойно" = "after, north of" 292
2.1.3.2.25 "өмнө" = "in front of, before" 292
2.1.3.2.26 "адил" = "similar to, like" 293
2.1.3.3 Postposition with Dative-Locative CS **293**
2.1.3.3.1 "ойр" = "near, close to" 293
2.1.3.4 Postpositions with Ablative CS **293**
2.1.3.4.1 "бусад" = "other than, except" 293
2.1.3.4.2 "өөр" = "beside, other than" 293
2.1.3.4.3 "илүү" = "more than" 293
2.1.3.4.4 "хол" = "far from" 294
2.1.3.4.5 Suffix "-(г)ш" = expressing a direction 294
2.1.3.4.6 "гадна" = "apart from" 294
2.1.3.4.7 "хойно" = "after" 294
2.1.3.4.8 "өмнө" = "before" 294
2.1.3.5 Postposition with Comitative CS **295**
2.1.3.5.1 "адил" = "similar to, like" 295
2.1.3.6 Postpositions with NDS's **295**
2.1.3.6.1 "хүртэл" = "until" 295
2.1.3.6.2 "бүр/болгон" = "every time, each time" 295
2.1.3.6.3 "тутам" = "each" 295
2.1.3.6.4 "ёсоор" = "the way, according to" 295
2.1.3.6.5 "мэт" = "like" 296
2.1.3.6.6 "шиг" = "like" 296
2.1.3.6.7 "тухай" = "about" 296
2.1.3.6.8 "талаар" = "on, with regard to" 296

2.2 CONJUNCTIONS **297**
2.2.1 Coordinating Conjunctions **297**
2.2.1.1 Overview 298
2.2.1.2 Usage 299
2.2.1.2.1 "ба" = "and" 299
2.2.1.2.2 "бөгөөд" = "and" 299
2.2.1.2.3"-гүй" = "and; whether ...or" 300
2.2.1.2.4 "болон" = "as well as" 300
2.2.1.2.5 "ч...ч" = "both, ...and; although, ...and" 301
2.2.1.2.6 "(мөн) түүнчлэн" = "and also" 301
2.2.1.2.7 "харин" = "but" 301
2.2.1.2.8 "гэвч" = "but; still" 302
2.2.1.2.9 "(зөвхөн) төдийгүй, мөн" = "not (only), but also" 302
2.2.1.2.10 "төдий биш, (харин)" = "not only, (but)" 303
2.2.1.2.11 "-аар барахгүй, (мөн)/-аар үл барам" = "not only, no, also" 303
2.2.1.2.12 "буюу; юм уу" = "respectively; or" 304
2.2.1.2.13 "эсвэл; эсхүл" = "or; if not ....then" 305
2.2.1.2.14 "эсвэл ... эсвэл" = "either ... or" 306
2.2.1.2.15 "байхад, харин" = "whereas" 306
2.2.1.2.16 "байтугай/биттий хэл/бүү хэл" = "let alone; not to mention" 307
2.2.1.2.17 "гэхдээ" = "but" *(added on in 2nd edition)* 307
2.2.2 Subordinating Conjunctions **307**
2.2.2.1 Overview 308
2.2.2.2 Usage 309
2.2.2.2.1 "гэ-" = "that" 309
2.2.2.2.2"-г гэж" = "so that" 310
2.2.2.2.3 "эсэх" = "whether" 310
2.2.2.2.4 "... үү, үгүй юү гэдэг" = "whether or not" 310
2.2.2.2.5 "юм шиг л" = "as if" 311
2.2.2.2.6 "учир; учраас" 311
2.2.2.2.7 "тул" = "since; because" 312
2.2.2.2.8 "-аас болж" = "due to" 312
2.2.2.2.9 "-хгүй + -(г)ээр" = "without ...-ing" 312
2.2.2.2.10 "-х гэж" = "(in order) to" 312

2.2.2.2.11 "–х + –ын тулд" = "(in order) to" 313
2.2.2.2.12 "–х + –ын өмнө" = "before" 313
2.2.2.2.13 "–сан + –ы дараа" = "after" 313
2.2.2.2.14 "–сан + –ы дагуу" = "the way; in accordance with" 314
2.2.2.2.15 "–сан + –аас хойш" = "since; after" 314
2.2.2.2.16 "–х хүртэл" = "until" 314
2.2.2.2.17 "байх үед/–хад" = "when, while " 315
2.2.2.2.18 "–х бүрд/–х болгонд" = "each time" 315
2.2.2.2.19 "–х + –тай зэрэг" = "as soon as; the moment" 316
2.2.2.2.20 "(–ж бай)х хооронд" = "while, before" 316
2.2.2.2.21 "–х завсар; –х зуур" = "besides; while" 317
2.2.2.2.22 "(Хэрэв) ... –бал/–вал" = "if" 317
2.2.2.2.23 "(Хэрэв) ... –х тохиолдолд" = "provided that; in case" 317
2.2.2.2.24 "(Хэрэв) ... –нөхцөлд" = "provided that; under the condition that" 318
2.2.2.2.25 "Хэдийгээр ... боловч" = "although" 318
2.2.2.2.26 "–сан + –аар" = "the way; as" 318
2.2.2.2.27 "–х/–сан тухай/талаар" = "about" *(added on in 2nd edition)* 318
2.2.2.2.28 "болохоор" = "because; since" *(added on in 2nd edition)* 311
2.2.3 Proword-Conjunctions 319
2.2.3.1 Overview 319
2.2.3.2 Usage 320
2.2.3.2.1 "(Мөн) түүнчлэн" = "Moreover; and also" 320
2.2.3.2.2 "Түүнээс гадна" = "Besides; and moreover" 320
2.2.3.2.3 "Түүгээр ч барахгүй/Тэр ч байтугай" = "Furthermore" 320
2.2.3.2.4 "Тэгээд/Ингээд" = "Then, After this/that" 321
2.2.3.2.5 "Тэгэхлээр/Ингэхлээр" = "Consequently" 322
2.2.3.2.6 "Тэгснээр/Ингэснээр" = "By doing this/that" 322
2.2.3.2.7 "Эс тэгвэл" = "Otherwise; If not" 322
2.2.3.2.8 "Тэгэхэд" = "As doing that" 322
2.2.3.2.9 "(Т)ийнхүү" = "Thus" 323
2.2.3.2.10 "Тийм учраас" = "That's (the reason) why" 323
2.2.3.2.11 "Учир нь" = "for; because" 323
2.2.3.2.12 "Тийм болохоор" = "Therefore" 324
2.2.3.2.13 "Хэдий тийм боловч" = "Nevertheless; Despite that" 324
2.2.3.2.14 "Нөгөө талаас" = "On the other hand" 325
2.2.3.2.15 "Яагаад гэвэл" = "The reason for this is; for; because" 325
2.2.3.2.16 "Тэгсэн чинь" = "But, you know" *(added on in 2nd edition)* 321

2.3 PARTICLES 326
2.3.1 Overview of Particles 326
2.3.2 Semantic Classification 327
2.3.2.1 Interrogative Particles 327
2.3.2.1.1 Interrogative Particle "бэ, вэ" 327
2.3.2.1.2 Interrogative Particle "уу[2], юу[2]" 328
2.3.2.2 Negative Particles 328
2.3.2.2.1 Negative Particle "биш" 328
2.3.2.2.2 Negative Particle "бус" 330
2.3.2.2.3 Negative Particle "(ү)гүй" 330
2.3.2.2.3.1 After Nouns 330
2.3.2.2.3.2 After Verbs 331
2.3.2.2.3.3 Note to the Word "алга" 332
2.3.2.2.4 Negative Particle "үл" 332
2.3.2.2.5 Negative Particle "эс" 333
2.3.2.2.6 Negative Particle "бүү" 334
2.3.2.2.7 Negative Particle "битгий" 334
2.3.2.3 Modal Particles 335
2.3.2.3.1 Modal Particle "шүү" 335
2.3.2.3.2 Modal Particle "даа[4]" 335
2.3.2.3.3 Modal Particle "аа[4]" 336

2.3.2.3.4 Modal Particle "юм" 337
2.3.2.3.5 Modal Particle "мөн" 338
2.3.2.3.6 Modal Particle "билээ/лээ" 338
2.3.2.3.7 Modal Particle "–сан[4]" 339
2.3.2.3.8 Modal Particle "даг[4]" 340
2.3.2.3.9 Modal Particle "биз" 340
2.3.2.3.10 Modal Particle "бий/вий" 341
2.3.2.3.11 Modal Particle "шив" 341
2.3.2.3.12 Modal Interrogative Particle "бол" 342
2.3.2.3.13 Modal Conditional Particle "бол" 342
2.3.2.3.14 Comparison of Modal Particles 343
2.3.2.4 Focus Particles 345
2.3.2.4.1 Neutral Focus Particle "бол" 345
2.3.2.4.2 Additive Focus Particle "ч" 346
2.3.2.4.2.1 Part of Indefinite Prowords 346
2.3.2.4.2.2 Part of Conjunctions 346
2.3.2.4.2.3 Part of Modal Constructions 346
2.3.2.4.2.4 Expressing "would ('d) better ..." 346
2.3.2.4.2.5 Expressing "even / too" 347
2.3.2.4.2.6 Comparison of Functions 348
2.3.2.4.3 Restrictive Focus Particle "л" 348
2.3.2.4.3.1 Functions 348
2.3.2.4.3.2 Comparison with Particle "ч" 349

2.4 INTERJECTIONS 350
2.4.1 Interjections of Emotions 350
2.4.1.1 Overview 350
2.4.1.2 Usage 351
2.4.1.2.1 Understanding, Exclamation: "аа" 351
2.4.1.2.2 Agreement, Pleasure: "за, уухай, ай даа, аяа, өөе, тийм дээ, ашгүй дээ" 351
2.4.1.2.3 Pity, Affection, Regret: "эвий, ищ, хөөрхий, зайлуул, хай даа, халаг, өө" 352
2.4.1.2.4 Calling, Attracting Attention: "хөөе, хүүе, хөөш, эй" 353
2.4.1.2.5 Surprise, Astonishment: "ооё, оо–ёо–ё, хөөх, хүүш, үгүй, ер" 353
2.4.1.2.6 Difficulty, Despair, Pain: "ёо, ёх, яанаа" 354
2.4.1.2.7 Laughter, Happiness: "ха ха, хий хий, гялай, гоё, урай, ай хө, яамай" 354
2.4.1.2.8 Disgust, Anger: "паа(х)[4], пий–пай, ишш, түй, пэй, аа–лаа–лаа, ез харлаа" 355
2.4.1.2.9 Feelings of Temperature: "халхай, халцгай, тий тий" 356
2.4.1.2.10 Displeasure: "чаваас, балар, зэ, яалаа гэж, үгүй шүү, ячихав аа" 356
2.4.1.2.11 Causing an Action: "май, байз, ишш/чишш, аа, эй дээ" 357
2.4.1.2.12 Fear, Terror: "ий, айжий, айжуу" 357
2.4.1.2.13 Lullaby: "бүүвэй" 357
2.4.2 Interjections of Husbandry 358
2.4.2.1 Overview 358
2.4.2.1.1 Interjections to Call Animals 358
2.4.2.1.2 Interjections to Drive Animals 358
2.4.2.1.3 Interjections of Miscellaneous Usage 358

Part IV: Syntax 359

1. KINDS AND TYPES OF SENTENCES 360

1.1 KINDS OF SENTENCES 360
1.1.1 Declarative Sentences 360
1.1.2 Interrogative Sentences 361
1.1.3 Imperative Sentences 361
1.1.4 Exclamatory Sentences 362

1.2 TYPES OF SENTENCES 363
1.2.1 One-Component and Two-Component Sentences 363
1.2.1.1 One-Component Sentences (Ellipsis) 363
1.2.1.1.1 Sentences without Subject Component 363
1.2.1.1.1.1 Subject and Predicate are One and the Same 363
1.2.1.1.1.2 Generalization 363
1.2.1.1.1.3 Context allows Subject to be Omitted 364
1.2.1.1.2 Sentences without Predicate Component 364
1.2.1.1.3 Word-Sentences 364
1.2.1.2 Two-Component Sentences 365
1.2.2 Complete and Incomplete Sentences 365
1.2.2.1 Complete Sentences 365
1.2.2.2 Incomplete Sentences 365
1.2.3 Short and Extended Sentences 365
1.2.3.1 Short Sentences 365
1.2.3.2 Extended Sentences 365
1.2.4 Simple and Combined Sentences 366
1.2.4.1 Simple Sentences 366
1.2.4.2 Combined Sentences 366

2. RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN WORDS 367

2.1 COORDINATE WORDS 367
2.1.1 Free Coordinate Words 367
2.1.1.1 Without Conjunction Words 367
2.1.1.2 With Conjunction Words 367
2.1.2 Bound Coordinate Words 368

2.2 SUBORDINATE WORDS 368
2.2.1 Direct Subordinate Words 369
2.2.2 Indirect Subordinate Words 370
2.2.2.1 With Suffixes 370
2.2.2.2 With Postpositions 370

3. RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN PARTS OF A SENTENCE 371

3.1 PARTS OF A SENTENCE 371
3.1.1 Main Parts of a Sentence 371
3.1.1.1 Subjects 371
3.1.1.1.1 Question Words for Subjects 371
3.1.1.1.2 Omission of Subjects 371
3.1.1.1.3 Parts of Speech as Subjects 371
3.1.1.1.4 Subject Indicators/Markers 372
3.1.1.1.5 Complements of Subjects 372

3.1.1.2 Predicates 373
3.1.1.2.1 Question Words for Predicates 373
3.1.1.2.2 Simple Predicates 373
3.1.1.2.2.1 One Full Verb 373
3.1.1.2.2.2 Compound Full Verb 373
3.1.1.2.3 Compound Predicates 374
3.1.1.2.3.1 Full Verbs and Auxiliary Verbs 374
3.1.1.2.3.2 Full Verbs and Modal Verbs/Constructions 374
3.1.1.2.3.3 Full Verbs and Modifying Verbs 375
3.1.2 Assistant Parts of a Sentence 375
3.1.2.1 Objects 375
3.1.2.1.1 Parts of Speech as Objects 376
3.1.2.1.2 Direct Objects 376
3.1.2.1.3 Indirect Objects 377
3.1.2.2 Attributes 377
3.1.2.3 Adverbials 378
3.1.2.3.1 Local Adverbials 378
3.1.2.3.1.1 Showing Place 378
3.1.2.3.1.2 Showing Direction 379
3.1.2.3.1.3 Showing Local Movement 379
3.1.2.3.2 Temporal Adverbials 379
3.1.2.3.2.1 Showing Moment of Action 379
3.1.2.3.2.2 Showing Beginning or End of Action 380
3.1.2.3.3 Modal Adverbials 380
3.1.2.3.4 Causal Adverbials 381
3.1.2.3.5 Final Adverbials 381
3.1.2.3.6 Conditional Adverbials 381
3.1.2.3.7 Concessive Adverbials 382
3.1.3 Placement of Parts of a Sentence 382

3.2 COORDINATE WORDS AS PARTS OF A SENTENCE 384
3.2.1 Characteristics 384
3.2.2 Coordinate Subjects 385
3.2.3 Coordinate Predicates 385
3.2.4 Coordinate Objects 385
3.2.5 Coordinate Attributes 386
3.2.6 Coordinate Adverbials 386

3.3 INDEPENDENT PARTS OF A SENTENCE 387
3.3.1 Attention Parts 387
3.3.2 Inserted Parts 387
3.3.3 Interjections 388
3.3.4 Response Parts 388

4. RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN CLAUSES 389

4.1 COMPOUND SENTENCES (COORDINATE) 389
4.1.1 Compound Sentences with Suffixes 389
4.1.2 Compound Sentences with Intonation 389
4.1.3 Compound Sentences with Conjunctions 390

4.2 COMPLEX SENTENCES (SUBORDINATE) 390
4.2.1 Characteristics of Subordinate Clauses 391
4.2.1.1 Form and Tense of Predicates 391
4.2.1.2 Form of Subjects 392
4.2.1.2.1 Common Subjects 392
4.2.1.2.2 Different Subjects 392
4.2.1.2.2.1 Subjects in Genitive Case 392
4.2.1.2.2.2 Subjects in Accusative Case 393
4.2.1.2.2.3 Subjects in Accusative or Genitive Case 393
4.2.1.2.2.4 Basic Rules 394

4.2.2 Classification of Subordinate Clauses 395
4.2.2.1 Subject Clauses 395
4.2.2.2 Predicate Clauses 395
4.2.2.3 Object Clauses 396
4.2.2.4 Attribute Clauses 396
4.2.2.5 Adverbial Clauses 397
4.3 EXTENDED COMBINED SENTENCES 398
4.4 SPEECH 398
4.4.1 Direct Speech 398
4.4.2 Indirect Speech 399
4.4.3 Transformation of Speech 400
5. PUNCTUATION 401
5.1 PUNCTUATION IN CLASSICAL SCRIPT 401
5.1.1 Dots 401
5.1.2 Marks 402
5.2 PUNCTUATION IN CYRILLIC SCRIPT 402
5.2.1 Period/Full Stop 402
5.2.2 Question Mark 403
5.2.3 Exclamation Mark 403
5.2.4 Comma 403
5.2.5 Semi-Colon 404
5.2.6 Colon 404
5.2.7 Quotation Marks/Inverted Commas 405
5.2.8 Omission Dots 405
5.2.9 Parentheses/Brackets 405
5.2.10 Dash and Hyphen 405
Part V: Appendix 406
1. List of Passive Roots 407
2. List of Some Phrasal Verbs 411
3. List of Inflectional Suffixes 413
4. Structural and Functional System of Relational Suffixes 418
5. Mongolian Equivalent of English Tenses 422
6. Table of Contents in Mongolian 423
7. Index: English-German-Mongolian 438

Part I:

Introduction to the Mongolian Language

Chapter 1:
The Mongolian Language and its Development
pages 1-3

Chapter 2:
The Mongolian Alphabets
pages 4-32

Chapter 3:
Mongolian Word Structure
pages 33-40

1. THE MONGOLIAN LANGUAGE AND ITS DEVELOPMENT

1.1 General Characteristics of the Mongolian Language

The Mongolian language is classified as **agglutinative** (from Latin 'agglutinare' = 'to stick on'). The most important characteristics of agglutination are:

1.) The word stem doesn't change; instead, grammatical changes are made by adding ('sticking on') suffixes to the word stem (see page 33).
2.) Every suffix expresses only one grammatical meaning.

The Mongolian language belongs to the **Altaic language family**, together with **Turkish**, **Manchurian-Tungus**, **Japanese,** and **Korean**.

1.2 The Mongolian Languages and Their Dialects

The Classical Mongolian script originated with the Sogdo-Uighur alphabet. In the 13th century, this alphabet was used as the foundation for the Mongolian alphabet. The oldest known monument with this script is from 1227. In 1247, Tibetan scholars wrote the first Mongolian language grammar book. Since then, the Mongolian language has steadily developed and the script has been revised several times. Today about 8 million people in the world speak Mongolian. The language can be divided into the following languages and dialects:

Overview:

Language	Dialects	Homelands	Population (Census:1990)
1. Monguor	•Minkhe •Khutsu	Qinghai and Gansu Provinces, China	191,624
2. Dongxiang		Linsyan Banner in Gansu Province, China	373,872
3. Baoan		Linsyan Banner in Gansu Province; Qinghai Province, China	12,212
4. Shar-Uigur or East-Uigur		Several areas in Gansu Province, China	12,297
5. Daguur	•Khailar •Tsitsikhar •Bhuta •Khulia	Khölön-Büir Banner in Inner Mongolia; Tarvagatai mountains in the NW of today's Xinjiang Province, China	121,357
6. Kalmuck	•Dörvöd •Torguut •Butsava	The Kalmuck Republic in the Russian Federation	147,000
7. Oirat	•Dörvöd •Bayad •Torguut •Zakhchin •Öölđ •Khoshuut •Uriankhai	Uvs, Khovd and Bayan-Olgii Aimags, Mongolia; Xinjiang Province, China	285,000 Mongolia: 150,000 China:135,000
8. Buriat	•Aga •Alar •Barga •Bargusin •Sartuul •Bokhan •Ekhirit •Tunkha •Khori •Tsongol	Several areas in Dornod, Khentii, Selenge, Bulgan, and Khövsgöl Aimags in Mongolia; Buriat Republic in the Russian Federation; Buriat aera of the Khölön-Büir Banner, Inner Mongolia,	400,000 Of those, living in the Buriat Republic: 314,000
9. Central Mongolia	•Khalkh •Darkhat •Dariganga •Sartuul	Mongolia	2,000,000
10. Southern Mongolia	•Tümed •Ordos •Baarin •Üzemjin •Khorchin •Gorlos •Kharchin •Darkhat •Khamnigan	Inner Mongolia, NE China	4,806,849

This book focuses on the Central Mongolian language group and **its standard dialect 'Khalkh'**. We use the **modernized** Classical Mongolian script as being used today in Inner Mongolia, but we will give the old forms, where relevant (referred to by the word 'old').

1.3 The Classical Written and Modern Literary Languages

Right from the start, the pronunciation of Classical Mongolian script seems very difficult. For this reason, the Cyrillic script was introduced in the 1940's. The aim was to create a script which would reflect common pronunciation in the twentieth century, making it easier for the average person. The Russian alphabet served as a basis for this new alphabet, bringing with it some foreign letters and rules which resulted in a few inconsistencies in the use of Cyrillic and its 'grammar', which are not necessarily in the character of the Mongolian language. It is important to have some understanding of the most important differences between Classical Mongolian script and Cyrillic script. The following table should be helpful.

Differences between Classical-Mongolian and Modern Literary Language:

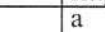
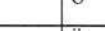
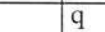
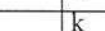
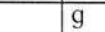
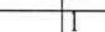
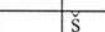
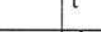
	Classical-Mongolian	Modern Literary Language (Cyrillic)
1.	**Polyphonetic alphabet:** **One** letter may symbolize **more than one** sound. (Compare with pages 5 and 31)	**Monophonetic alphabet:** **One** letter symbolizes **one** sound.
ex.	(can be "o" or "u")	2 letters are used: "o" and"y"
	(can be "d" or "t")	2 letters are used: "д" and "т"
2.	**Inflectional suffixes** are **not added** to the word stem and remain **unchanged.** (Compare with p.38ff)	**Inflectional suffixes** are **added directly** to the word stem and are sometimes **changed greatly.**
ex.	(ger ün)	гэрийн
	(mongγol ača)	монголоос
3.	**Sound-complex:** A 'long vowel' is written as a sound-complex. (Comp. with p.9ff)	**Long vowel:** A long vowel is written as a double vowel.
ex.	(qaγan)	хаан
	(temege)	тэмээ
	(qasiy-a)	хашаа
4.	**Sound-complex:** A 'diphthong' is written as a sound-complex. (Comp. with p.10)	**Diphthong:** A diphthong is written as a diphthong.
ex.	(ayil)	айл
	(üyile)	үйл
5.	Different vowels in **vowel harmony:** (Compare with p.7)	**Vowel assimilation:** Some vowels dominate others and determine their pronunciation.
ex.	(olan)	олон
	(örgen)	өргөн
	(jirγuγa)	зургаа
	(ebül)	өвөл
6.	**All vowels are written:** (Compare with p.12)	**Vowel weakness:** Short vowels are dropped or are pronounced weakly or differently.
ex.	(aq-a)	ах
	(ulus)	улс
	(nutuγ)	нутаг
	(qonj)	хонь
7.	**Consonants are written without changes:** (Compare with p.14)	**Consonants are written complying with the rules of pronunciation:**
ex.	(sirege)	ширээ
	(abu)	аав

2. THE MONGOLIAN ALPHABETS

2.1 The Classical Alphabet

2.1.1 General Table of the Classical Alphabet

We know that this attempt to compare Mongolian sounds with English sounds doesn't necessarily follow linguistic rules. It is intended as a way to get started for beginners. We assume that Mongolian pronunciation and conversation won't be undertaken as individual study, but with a Mongolian teacher, so we will do without an exact phonetic study.

	Print	Cursive	Tran-scription	Sound in a Mongolian word	Transcription	Sound in an English word
1.			a		amaralta	father
2.			e		emege	bed
3.			i		ijili	easy
4.			o		oruqu	bought
5.			u		unuqu	similar to 'bone'
6.			ö		ömüdü	similar to 'girl'/'put'
7.			ü		ündüsü	soup
8.			n	 ( )	nom abuɤsan	name sing
9.			b		baraqu	bird
10a			q		qabar	loch (Scottish)
10b			k		kelekü	non-existent in Engl.
11a			ɤ		ɤal	get
11b			g		gerel	get
12.			l		lama	lateral fricative "l" (non-existent in Engl.)
13.			m		modu	my
14.			s		samur	song
15.			š		š atu	shot
16.			t		toɤusu	tall
17.			d		degebüri	day
18.			č		činggis	church
19.			ǰ		ǰürǰi	joke
20.			y		yabuqu	yacht
21.			r		ɤarqu	rolled "r" (non-existent in Engl.)
22.			v		ɤaɤar	vase

The following letters don't belong to the original Classical Mongolian alphabet, but were introduced because of the use of loan words.						
23.			p		park	park
24.			f		franci	fine
25.			k		kilo	king
26.			é		gérman	egg
27.			c		canzan	its
28.			z		zandan	seeds
29.			h		himalai	house
30.			ž		žornal	joke

Explanations:

to 2) and 26): some dialects pronounce the "e" closed, some open. In Inner Mongolia the closed "e" is written with letter 2), the open "e" for foreign words with number 26. In Khalkh, letter 2) is pronounced open, similar to 'egg'.
to 5): this **open "u"** (back language) is difficult to pronounce; 'bone' is only similar.
to 6): this **closed "o"** (front language) is pronounced quite differently in each dialect; the British 'girl' follows the western Mongolian dialect; American 'put' reflects Khalkh pronunciation.
to 8): for the two different pronunciations of "n" **see 3rd pronunciation rule** (p.23).
to 10): this sound is absent in English, but the Scottish word 'loch' is pronounced like the back language "q"; the front language "k" is even more difficult to pronounce for English speakers (like the German "mich").
to 12): this Mongolian "l" is **lateral fricative**, not like the English "l" (practice well!)
to 18): this letter allows for **different pronunciations** depending on the dialects. In Inner Mongolia, this sound is "**ch**", in Khalkh it could also be pronounced as "**ts**".
to 19): see 18), in Inner Mongolia "**j**", in Khalkh it could also be "**ds**".
to 21): the Mongolian "r" must be rolled.

2.1.2 Polyphonetic Alphabet

As we mentioned on page 3, in a polyphonetic alphabet, the same letter can symbolize different sounds. In the Classical Mongolian alphabet, this is true of many letters. In the past, scholars attempted time and again to change the Mongolian alphabet to a monophonetic one:

Pag-pa Script	14th century	
Tod Script	16th century	(Oirat)
Soyombo Script	17th century	(Khalkh)
Vagindra Script	19th century	(Buriat)
Cyrillic Script	20th century	(Khalkh)

These attempts were largely handicapped by the fact that they only reflected the pronunciation of one dialect. It is very difficult to reflect justly all Mongolian dialects with one monophonetic alphabet. For this reason the Classical Mongolian alphabet has the advantage that it gives all the Mongolian dialects one common script.

2.1.3 Detailed Table of the Classical Alphabet

		Alone	Initial	Medial	Medial	Final	Final
1.	a	ᠠ	ᠠ	ᠠ		ᠠ	ᠨ 1.
2.	e	ᠡ	ᠡ	ᠡ		ᠡ	ᠨ 1.
3.	i	ᠢ	ᠢ	ᠢ	2ᠶ	ᠢ	
4.	o	ᠣ	ᠣ	ᠤ		ᠤ	
5.	u	ᠤ	ᠤ	ᠤ		ᠤ	
6.	ö	ᠥ	ᠥ	ᠦ		ᠦ	
7.	ü	ᠦ	ᠦ	ᠦ		ᠦ	
		Consonants + a/e					
8.	n	ᠨ	ᠨ	ᠨ		ᠨ 1.	ᠨᠠ 1.
9.	b	ᠪ	ᠪ	ᠫ		ᠪ	ᠪᠠ 3.
10a.	q	ᠬ	ᠬ	ᠬ		ᠺ	
10b.	k	ᠺ	ᠺ	ᠺ		ᠺ	
11a.	ɣ	ᠭ	ᠭ	ᠭ		ᠭ	ᠭᠠ 3.
11b.	g	ᠺ	ᠺ	ᠺ		ᠺ	
12.	l	ᠯ	ᠯ	ᠯ		ᠯ 1.	ᠯᠠ
13.	m	ᠮ	ᠮ	ᠮ		ᠮ 1.	ᠮᠠ
14.	s	ᠰ	ᠰ	ᠰ		ᠰ	
15.	š	ᠱ	ᠱ	ᠱ		ᠱ	
16.	t	ᠲ	ᠲ	ᠳ		ᠲ	
17.	d	ᠳ	ᠳ	ᠳ		ᠳ	
18.	č	ᠴ	ᠴ	ᠴ		ᠴ	
19.	j	ᠵ	ᠵ	ᠵ		ᠵ	
20.	y	ᠶ	ᠶ	ᠶ		ᠶ 1.	ᠶᠠ
21.	r	ᠷ	ᠷ	ᠷ		ᠷ 1.	ᠷᠠ
22.	v	ᠸ	ᠸ	ᠸ		ᠸ	
23.	p	ᠫ	ᠫ	ᠫ		ᠫ	
24.	f	ᠹ	ᠹ	ᠹ		ᠹ	
25.	k	ᠺ	ᠺ	ᠺ		ᠺ	
26.	ė	ᡝ	ᡝ	ᡝ		ᡝ	
27.	c	ᠼ	ᠼ	ᠼ		ᠼ	
28.	z	ᠽ	ᠽ	ᠽ		ᠽ	
29.	h	ᠾ	ᠾ	ᠾ		ᠾ	

Explanations:

1. Some letters have two final forms: one that joins the word, another that is separated. This difference will be accounted for in the transcription:

ᠨᠠᠷᠠ → nara; ᠨᠢᠭᠤᠨ → neɣ-e; ᠡᠩᠬᠡ → eng; ᠶᠠᠪᠤᠨ → yabun-a

2. see explanation on page 11

3. "na" and "ya" can be written in 2 ways. No. 3 is the modernized form as used in Inner Mongolia. We will use the old form in this book, because it's easier to read, and it's more logical.

	Initial	Medial	Final	Initial	Medial	Final	Initial	Medial	Final
	Consonants + i			Consonants + o/u			Consonants + ö/ü		
8. n	ᠨᠢ	ᠨᠢ	ᠨᠣ	ᠨᠤ	ᠨᠤ	ᠨᠣ	ᠨᠦ	ᠨᠦ	ᠨᠥ
9. b	ᠪᠢ	ᠪᠢ	ᠪᠣ	ᠪᠤ	ᠪᠤ	ᠪᠣ	ᠪᠦ	ᠪᠦ	ᠪᠥ
10a. q	ᠬᠢ	ᠬᠢ	ᠬᠣ	ᠬᠤ	ᠬᠤ	ᠬᠣ			
10b. k	ᠺᠢ	ᠺᠢ	ᠺᠣ				ᠺᠦ	ᠺᠦ	ᠺᠥ
11a. ɣ	ᠭᠢ	ᠭᠢ	ᠭᠣ	ᠭᠤ	ᠭᠤ	ᠭᠣ			
11b. g	ᠺᠢ	ᠺᠢ	ᠺᠣ				ᠺᠦ	ᠺᠦ	ᠺᠥ
12. l	ᠯᠢ	ᠯᠢ	ᠯᠣ	ᠯᠤ	ᠯᠤ	ᠯᠣ	ᠯᠦ	ᠯᠦ	ᠯᠥ
13. m	ᠮᠢ	ᠮᠢ	ᠮᠣ	ᠮᠤ	ᠮᠤ	ᠮᠣ	ᠮᠦ	ᠮᠦ	ᠮᠥ
14. s	ᠰᠢ	ᠰᠢ	ᠰᠣ	ᠰᠤ	ᠰᠤ	ᠰᠣ	ᠰᠦ	ᠰᠦ	ᠰᠥ
15. š	ᠱᠢ	ᠱᠢ	ᠱᠣ	ᠱᠤ	ᠱᠤ	ᠱᠣ	ᠱᠦ	ᠱᠦ	ᠱᠥ
16. t	ᠲᠢ	ᠲᠢ	ᠲᠣ	ᠲᠤ	ᠲᠤ	ᠲᠣ	ᠲᠦ	ᠲᠦ	ᠲᠥ
17. d	ᠳᠢ	ᠳᠢ	ᠳᠣ	ᠳᠤ	ᠳᠤ	ᠳᠣ	ᠳᠦ	ᠳᠦ	ᠳᠥ
18. č	ᠴᠢ	ᠴᠢ	ᠴᠣ	ᠴᠤ	ᠴᠤ	ᠴᠣ	ᠴᠦ	ᠴᠦ	ᠴᠥ
19. j	ᠵᠢ	ᠵᠢ	ᠵᠣ	ᠵᠤ	ᠵᠤ	ᠵᠣ	ᠵᠦ	ᠵᠦ	ᠵᠥ
20. y	ᠶᠢ	ᠶᠢ	ᠶᠣ	ᠶᠤ	ᠶᠤ	ᠶᠣ	ᠶᠦ	ᠶᠦ	ᠶᠥ
21. r	ᠷᠢ	ᠷᠢ	ᠷᠣ	ᠷᠤ	ᠷᠤ	ᠷᠣ	ᠷᠦ	ᠷᠦ	ᠷᠥ
22. v	ᠸᠢ	ᠸᠢ	ᠸᠣ	ᠸᠤ	ᠸᠤ	ᠸᠣ	ᠸᠦ	ᠸᠦ	ᠸᠥ
23. p	ᠫᠢ	ᠫᠢ	ᠫᠣ	ᠫᠤ	ᠫᠤ	ᠫᠣ	ᠫᠦ	ᠫᠦ	ᠫᠥ
24. f	ᠹᠢ	ᠹᠢ	ᠹᠣ	ᠹᠤ	ᠹᠤ	ᠹᠣ	ᠹᠦ	ᠹᠦ	ᠹᠥ
25. k	ᠺᠢ	ᠺᠢ	ᠺᠣ	ᠺᠤ	ᠺᠤ	ᠺᠣ	ᠺᠦ	ᠺᠦ	ᠺᠥ
26. ė									
27. c	ᠼᠢ	ᠼᠢ	ᠼᠣ	ᠼᠤ	ᠼᠤ	ᠼᠣ	ᠼᠦ	ᠼᠦ	ᠼᠥ
28. z	ᠽᠢ	ᠽᠢ	ᠽᠣ	ᠽᠤ	ᠽᠤ	ᠽᠣ	ᠽᠦ	ᠽᠦ	ᠽᠥ
29. h	ᠾᠢ	ᠾᠢ	ᠾᠣ	ᠾᠤ	ᠾᠤ	ᠾᠣ	ᠾᠦ	ᠾᠦ	ᠾᠥ

2.1.4 Vowels

2.1.4.1 VOWEL HARMONY

The Classical Mongolian alphabet has **7 basic vowels**:

ᠠ (a), ᠡ (e), ᠢ (i), ᠣ (o), ᠤ (u), ᠥ (ö), ᠦ (ü)

These 7 vowels divide into **three groups**:

1.) Strong (masculine, back) vowels : a, o, u
2.) Weak (feminine, front) vowels: e, ö, ü
3.) Neuter (neutral) vowel: i

Reflecting the law of **vowel harmony,** each Mongolian word may have only strong vowels or weak vowels. The "i" is neutral and can appear with either set. If a word has only the vowel "i", it is considered a weak word.

strong words: ᠰᠤᠷᠪᠠᠪᠤᠯᠢ (survavuli), ᠰᠡᠶᠢᠬᠠᠨ (sayiqan), ᠬᠤᠶᠢᠨ-ᠠ (qoyin-a), ᠣᠷᠣᠢ (oroi)

weak words: ᠡᠳᠦᠷ (edür), ᠦᠶᠢᠯᠡᠳᠪᠦᠷᠢ (üyiledbüri), ᠥᠴᠦᠭᠡᠳᠦᠷ (öčügedür), ᠡᠪᠦᠯ (ebül)

neutral words: ᠪᠢᠴᠢᠭ (bičig), ᠵᠢᠵᠢᠭ (jijig), ᠵᠢᠴᠢ (jiči)

2.1.4.2 PROCESS OF DEVELOPMENT

Today, in the modern literary language, there are long vowels, diphthongs, and a list of pronunciation rules. This is a result of many centuries of language development, especially in the area of vowel usage. Originally the Mongolian language had no long vowels or diphthongs, which makes it difficult today to clearly define the border between long vowels and diphthongs. We will focus on the following 4 points of this development:

1.) Assimilation
2.) Origin of long vowels
3.) Origin of diphthongs
4.) Reduced vowels

2.1.4.2.1 Assimilation

We speak of assimilation when a vowel influences the pronunciation of a vowel next to it. Sometimes it doesn't have to be right next to it, simply in the same word. This assimilation process has taken place especially in central Mongolia, and the Khalkh pronunciation is very different from the Classical Mongolian script because of this. These changes happened in consistent ways, though, so if a person knows the rules (see ☞), it is much easier to read the Classical script in today's Khalkh dialect.

There are two basic assimilations:

2.1.4.2.1.1 Forward Assimilation

The vowel in the first syllable dominates, so the pronunciation of the following vowel **moves towards the first one**. For this there is only one rule:

☞ **"o/ö" in the first syllable dominate. All following vowels are pronounced "o/ö".**

Classical Mongolian	Transcription	Cyrillic (Pronunciation)
ᠣᠷᠣᠯᠠᠬᠤ	orulaqu	орлох
ᠣᠯᠠᠨ	olan	олон
ᠣᠮᠤᠰ	omus	омог
ᠳᠥᠷᠪᠡ	dörbe	дөрөв
ᠮᠥᠷᠭᠡᠨ	mörgen	мөрөн

2.1.4.2.1.2 Backward Assimilation

This is a common form of assimilation. The last vowel dominates and the preceding vowels are influenced. This usually happens when long vowels are formed (p.9f), but not exclusively. For this reason, we provide a complete list with all the possible backward assimilations.

☞ **The last long vowel always dominates and swallows the preceding vowel.**

Assimilation	Classical Mongolian	Transcription	Cyrillic (Pronunciation)
iya: → a:		qasiy-a	хашаа
uʁa: → a:		jirʁuʁ-a	зургаа
aʁu: → u:		aʁula	уул
iʁu: → u:		niʁuča	нууц
ige: → e:		jige	зээ
üge: → e:		bütügel	бүтээл
egü: → ü:		egüle	үүл
igü: →ü:		serigün	сэрүүн

☞ **"i" in the first syllable is swallowed or broken by successive, dominating vowels.**

Assimilation	Classical Mongolian	Transcription	Cyrillic (Pronunciation)
i/a → a/a		miq-a	мах
		jiʁasu	загас
		ilaʁ-a	ялаа
		qilbar	хялбар
i/u → u/u		čisu	цус
		jiruqu	зурах
		čilaʁu	чулуу
i/ü → ü/ü		sidü	шүл
		jirüge	зүрх
		nidü	нүл

☞ **"e" in the first syllable + "ü" in the second syllable = ö!**

Assimilation	Classical Mongolian	Transcription	Cyrillic (Pronunciation)
e/ü → ö/ö		edür	өлөр
		ebül	өвөл
		emün-e	өмнө

☞ **"e" in the first syllable + "be" in the second syllable = ö!**

Assimilation	Classical Mongolian	Transcription	Cyrillic (Pronunciation)
e/be → ö		ebesü	өвс
		ebedčin	өвчин

2.1.4.2.2 Origin of Long Vowels

When we study the **pronunciation of long vowels**, we find there are **three groups.** The first group is the most important.

2.1.4.2.2.1 Sound-Complexes

Sound-complexes	in 1st syllable	not in 1st syllable		**Explanations:** Table with Classical Mongolian, transcription and Cyrillic in parentheses (= pronunciation). *The "i" cannot be dropped, because it marks a soft consonant.
		Not o/ö in 1st syll.	o/ö in 1st syll.	**Examples:**
	A	**B**	**C**	**A** / **B** / **C**
aʁa	a: (аа)	a: (аа)	o: (оо)	axasi (ааш) /	jobaxaqu (зоваах)
iʁa → iya	a: (аа) (иа)*	a: (аа) (иа)*	o: (оо) (ио)*	jixaqu, (заах) qasiy-a (хашаа) /	tariy-a (тариа)* / očixad (очоол) qoriy-a (хорио) *
oʁa	o: (оо)			toxa (тоо)	
uʁa		a: (аа)	o: (оо)		jirʁuʁan (зургаан) / noxuʁan (ногоо)
aʁu	u: (уу)	u: (уу)		axula (уул) / čilaʁu (чулуу)	
iʁu	u: (уу)	u: (уу) (иу)*		niʁuča (нууц) / ariʁun (ариун)*	
oʁu	o: (оо)			qoxusun (хоосон)	
uʁu	u: (уу)	u: (уу)		uuxuqu (ууах) / quruʁu (хуруу)	
iʁi	i: (ий)			čixiraʁ (чийрэг)	
ege	e: (ээ)	e: (ээ)	ö: (өө)	deger-e (лээр) / temege (тэмээ) / ködege (хөлөө)
ige → iye	e: (ээ)	e: (ээ)	ö: (өө)	jige (зээ) / bekiger (балчээр) / jöriged (зөрөөл)
öge	ö: (өө)			öger-e (өөр)	
üge		e: (ээ)	ö: (өө)		kürüged (хүрээл) / nögüge (нөгөө)
egü	ü: (үү)			egüle (үүл)	
igü		ü: (үү)			serigün (сэрүүн)
ögü	ö: (өө)			nögülekü (нөөлөх)	
ügü	ü: (үү)	ü: (үү)		dügüreng (дүүрэн) / küjügüü (хүзүү)	
iʁi	i: (ий)			čigig (чийг)	

2.1.4.2.2.2 Short Vowels

Classical Mongolian	Transcription	Cyrillic (Pronunciation)
	abu	аав
	čaγan	цагаан
	ejі	ээж
	ger-e	гэрээ
	önö	өнөө
	ür	үүр
	sü	сүү
	kikü	хийх
	narin	нарийн

2.1.4.2.2.3 Compound Vowels

Classical Mongolian	Transcription	Cyrillic (Pronunciation)
	noosu	нооc
	sijdbüri	шийлвэр
	uul	уул
	teüke	түүх
	qauli	хууль
	taulai	түүлай
	ereü	эрүү
	bisiü	бишүү

2.1.4.2.3 Origin of Diphthongs

A Mongolian diphthong is formed when two unlike vowels are written together and **make a new sound** (like in English 'pair', 'hair'). Usually when "i" appears in a diphthong it is very short and is therefore called "half-i". There are five different diphthongs in Classical Mongolian. The pronunciation of these diphthongs is usually a problem for English speakers. These diphthongs shouldn't be pronounced like the English 'fine', 'time', etc. where two separate vowels can be heard. Those who are familiar with the German umlauts "ä, ü, ö" do well in remembering those, as the Mongolian diphthongs are similarly pronounced.

Diph-thong	Cyrillic	Pronunciation in English	Ex. Classical	Ex. Cyrillic	Ex. English (German)
a(y)i	ай	"**a**" (see examples)		далай	similar to 'bad, hat' (German: Ähre)
e(y)i	ий	"**ee**" (see ex.) or		ийм	like 'free, bee, see'
	эй	"**ai**" (see ex.)		хэрэгтэй	similar to 'hair, pair' (German: 'Mädchen')
o(y)i	ой	"**oi**" (see ex.)		ой	similar to 'joy', if "y" is pro-nounced very weak!
u(y)i	уй	similar to "**oi**"		үйтгар	see above
ü(y)i	үй	"**ui**" or		үйл	like 'suite', but only if "i" is pronounced very weak!
	ий	"**ee**" (see ex.)		хэлий	like 'free, bee, see'

Note that there is no diphthong for "öi" (өй). Whenever it would be necessary because of vowel harmony, it is written "ei" (эй). The diphthongs are **divided into 2 groups** according to their development.

2.1.4.2.3.1 Y-Diphthongs

Some of today's diphthongs were originally written "vowel + y + i". Then the "y" was dropped and could no longer be recognized in the writing because the small dash was missing. In the transcription we are using the "y" for clarity. Assimilation hasn't developed and therefore we get a combination of two vowels:

First:	Then:
(ayil)	(ayil)
(teyimü)	(teyimü)

These diphthongs never appear at the end of the word. Instead, they are usually at the beginning. Notice too, that after the weak vowels (ö) and (ü) the usual two "i" dashes do not appear.

Classical Mongolian	Transcription	Cyrillic (pronunciation)
	ayil	айл
	sayin	сайн
	eyimü	ийм
	teyimü	тийм
	oyimusu	ймс
	qoyin-a	хойно
	uyitan	уйтан
	uyidqar	уйтгар
	üyimegen	үймээн
	üyiledbüri	үйлдвэр

2.1.4.2.3.2 Final Diphthongs

Such diphthongs appear only in the final syllable of a word.

Classical Mongolian	Transcription	Cyrillic (pronunciation)
	noqai	нохой
	dalai	далай
	kei	хий
	delekei	дэлхий
	oi	ой
	oroi	орой
	duγui	дугуй
	qaraŋγui	харанхуй
	kedüi	хэдий
	edüi	өлий

2.1.4.2.4 Reduced Vowels

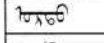
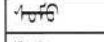
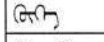
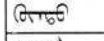
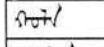
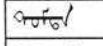
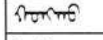
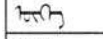
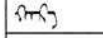
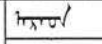
The stress is normally on the first syllable of a word, usually resulting in a clear pronunciation of the first vowel sound. Other vowels are then unstressed or reduced in their pronunciation or sometimes, in fact, dropped entirely (see spelling rules on p.23ff). There are two main groups of reduced vowels:

1.) Vowels are written, but have changed
2.) Vowels are dropped

2.1.4.2.4.1 Vowel Weakness

Explanations	Classical Mongolian	Transcription	Cyrillic (pronunciation)
Vowel is **unchanged**		ayima<u>a</u>ɣ	аймаг
		ɣaǰa<u>a</u>r	газар
		tara<u>a</u>ɣ	тараг
Vowel **changes**: The stress is on the first syllable, so the next vowel is not stressed.		uru<u>u</u>ɣ	уруг
		nutu<u>u</u>ɣ	нутаг
		üsü<u>ü</u>g	үсэг
		ükü<u>ü</u>l	үхэл
Vowel is **reduced:** The "i" cannot be dropped completely, because it marks a soft consonant.		mori	морь
		qoni	хонь
		qani	хань
		qauli	хууль
		ami	амь

2.1.4.2.4.2 Vowel Dropping

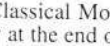
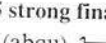
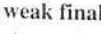
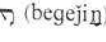
Explanations	Classical Mongolian	Transcription	Cyrillic (pronunciation)
1.) Vowel in **open, final syllable** is dropped.		urt<u>u</u>	урт
		sum<u>u</u>	сум
		kök<u>e</u>	хөх
		kündü	хүнд
		qol<u>a</u>	хол
		dumd<u>a</u>	дунд
		qoŋqu	хонх
		üg<u>e</u>	үг
		qar-<u>a</u>	хар
		talq-<u>a</u>	талх
2.) Vowel in **closed syllable** is dropped.		ar<u>a</u>d	ард
		ul<u>u</u>s	улс
		ögel<u>e</u>d	өөлд
		jim<u>i</u>s	жимс

3.) Combination of 1 and 2:		büg<u>ü</u>d<u>e</u>	бүгд
		eg<u>e</u>č<u>i</u>	эгч
		dab<u>u</u>s<u>u</u>	давс
		dar<u>a</u>s<u>u</u>	дарс
		ömüdü	өмд
		kölüsü	хөлс
4.) Vowel in front of a **hidden "n"** is dropped	()	od<u>u</u>(n)	од(н)
	()	egül<u>e</u>(n)	үүл(н)
	()	miq-<u>a</u>(n)	мах(н)
	()	qon<u>i</u>(n)	хонь(н)
	()	nar<u>a</u>(n)	нар(н)
	()	kel<u>e</u>(n)	хэл(н)

2.1.5 Consonants

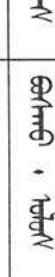
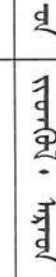
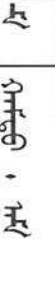
2.1.5.1 STRONG AND WEAK CONSONANTS

In Classical Mongolian, there are 9 consonants which can appear at the end of a syllable (not only at the end of a word). These final consonants are divided into two groups which determine which suffixes can be used. Some suffixes are for strong final consonants and others for weak ones.

The 5 strong final consonants: "b, g/ɣ, r, s, d" (code word: '**bagarasada**')
 (ab<u>q</u>u), (nutu<u>ɣ</u>), (ba<u>ɣ</u>si),  (bili<u>g</u>), (i<u>r</u>), (a<u>r</u>ba),  (ulu<u>s</u>)
(bo<u>s</u>qu),  (ara<u>d</u>), (ji<u>d</u>kül)

The 4 weak final consonants: "n, m, l, ŋ" (code word: '**namilang**')
 (kümü<u>n</u>), (ma<u>n</u>duqu), (na<u>m</u>), (qa<u>m</u>tu), (ma<u>l</u>), (ma<u>l</u>čin),
 (begeji<u>ŋ</u>), (mo<u>ŋ</u>ɣol).

2.1.5.2 TABLE OF SYLLABLE-FINAL CONSONANTS

Transcript.	b	ɤ	g	r	s	d	n	m	l	ŋ
medial										
final										
Example words										
Transcription words	abqu ab	baɤsi ügčü nutuɤ bilig		arba bar	bosqu ulus	jidgül arad	manduqu kümün	qamtu nam	malčin mal	moŋɤul begejiŋ

2.1.5.3 SOFT CONSONANTS IN STRONG WORDS

All consonants in **strong words are hard** unless an "i" is written after them. The vowel "i" **changes** the preceding hard consonant to a soft one. Soft consonants change the preceding vowel sound, causing it to be pronounced **palatally**. Again, this palatalization comes close to the German umlaut pronunciation.

Classical Mongolian	Transcription	Cyrillic	German (English)
	qoni	хонь	"chön" (like 'hoin')
	mori	морь	"mör" (like 'myrrh')
	uni	унь	"ön" (like 'ooin')
	surɤaɤuli	сургууль	(similar to 'sorgooil')
	ami	амь	"äm" like 'Mädchen'
	qani	хань	"chän" like 'Mädchen'
	aŋɤi	анги	"äng"

2.1.5.4 CHANGES IN CONSONANTS

Consonants have changed and developed through the years, though not as much as vowels. The following rules of pronunciation must be followed:

☞ "b" **becomes "v"** when it is **between 2 vowels** or **follows any consonant except b, l, m, n, ng.**

Classical Mongolian	Transcription	Cyrillic (pronunciation)
	abu	аав
	irebel	ирвэл
	ebül	өвөл
	arba	арав
	jobalaŋ	зовлон

☞ "si" **becomes "š"**

Classical Mongolian	Transcription	Cyrillic (pronunciation)
	sirege	ширээ
	sibaɤu	шувуу
	sin-e	шинэ
	sidü	шүл
	siudan	шуудан

☞ "b" **becomes "m"**

Classical Mongolian	Transcription	Cyrillic (pronunciation)
	nilbusu	нулимс
	sirbüsü	шөрмөс

2.1.6 Syllables

The Mongolian language uses **4 syllabic structures** (1-4). In words from foreign languages (especially loan words from Tibetan and Sanskrit), there are other structures (5-8).

1.) Vowel Syllables (V):

ex.: (oi), (e-ji), (a-jil), (e-ne), (u-lus)

2.) Vovel-Consonant Syllables (VC):

ex.: (ür), (al-tan), (em-či)

3.) Consonant-Vowel Syllables (CV):

ex.: (bi), (ta), (sü), (na-ra), (ba-ɤa-tur)

4.) Consonant-Vowel-Consonant Syllables (CVC):

ex.: (yal), (mal), (yool), (mal-čin)

5.) Vowel-Consonant-Consonant Syllables (VCC):

ex.: (ars-lan)

6.) Consonant-Vowel-Consonant-Consonant Syllables (CVCC):

ex.: (bars), (kadr)

7.) Consonant-Consonant-Vowel-Consonant Syllables (CCVC):

ex.: (hris-tos)

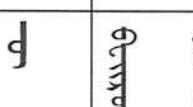
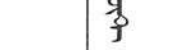
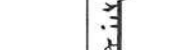
8.) Consonant-Consonant-Vowel-Consonant-Consonant Syllables (CCVCC):

ex.: (front)

2.1.7 Writing Loan Words

Because Classical Mongolian has a polyphonetic alphabet, where one letter can be used to show different sounds, some letters were altered for loan words in order to express the pronunciation better.

2.1.7.1 LETTER CHANGES IN LOAN WORDS

Transcr.	Initial	Medial	Final	Example	Transcript.	English
o/u					kino	film
ö/ü					béyirüt niü york	Beirut New York
n (1)					franci	France
t					hristos front	Christ front
d					dén fond	lantern fund

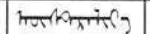
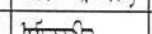
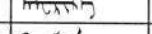
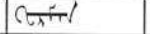
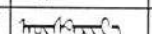
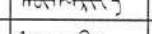
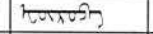
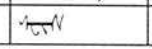
Explanations:

1.) The "**n**" in its medial or final form equals the "**a**" form. Usually, it is clear which letter is intended, expecially in Mongolian words. In foreign words, a dot is used in the medial form in Mongolia, but not in Inner Mongolia. We use the dot because it's clearer.

2.) The letters "ᠰ" and "q" are written the same when appearing in the middle of a foreign word.

3.) There is **no difference between** "v" and "e" in a medial or final position.

2.1.7.2 EXAMPLES OF LOAN WORDS

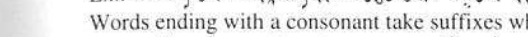
	Classical M.	Transcription	English		Classical M.	Transcription	English
a		aüstraliy-a	Australia	g		bérlin	Berlin
b		amérika	America	h		bon	Bonn
c		gérman	Germany	i		stokholm	Stockholm
d		aüstriy-a	Austria	j		yérüsalém	Jerusalem
e		éüropa	Europe	k		jénéva	Geneva
f		svis	Switzerland	l		bérné	Bern

2.1.8 Spelling Rules

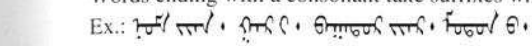
2.1.8.1 SUFFIX RULES

1. Suffixes as consonant-vowel pairs

Words ending with a vowel take suffixes which begin with consonants.

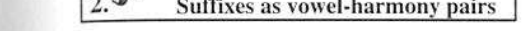
Ex.: 

Words ending with a consonant take suffixes which begin with vowels.

Ex.: 

2. Suffixes as vowel-harmony pairs

Most suffixes must be used in compliance with vowel harmony because they have a strong and weak form from which to choose.

Ex.: 

3. Suffixes independent of vowel harmony

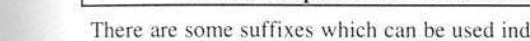
There are some suffixes which can be used independently of vowel harmony, because they are formed with the vowels "a/e", which look the same in a medial or final position in a word.

Ex.:

4. Suffixes as consonant-harmony pairs

There is something like a 'consonant harmony' (see p.13). This consonant division results in the following rules:

☞ **bagarasada**-consonants need suffixes beginning with "t" or "č":

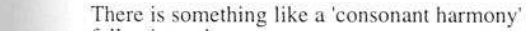
Ex.: 

☞ (Vowels and) **namilang** consonants need suffixes beginning with "d" or "ǰ":

Ex.:

5. Suffixes and final consonants "s" and "d"

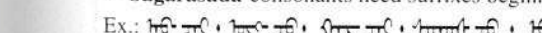
If a suffix beginning with "ᠰ" is added to a word with the **final consonants "s" or "d"**, the "ᠰ" generally changes to a "q":

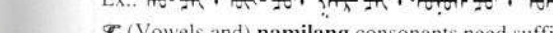
Ex.: 

2.1.8.2 RULES FOR INSERTED VOWEL (EPENTHESIZED VOWEL)

2.1.8.2.1 General Rules

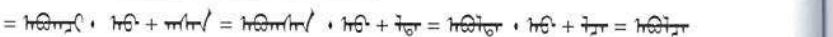
Mongolian word stems can either end with vowels or consonants. All suffixes which are added directly, though, **begin with consonants**. When these suffixes are added to a **word stem which ends with a consonant, there are special rules** for vowel insertion (epenthesis). Usually the inserted vowel is "u/ü", complying with vowel harmony. On a rare occasion (only for noun-building suffixes) "a/e" are used.





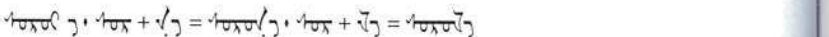
Rules that say when an inserted vowel **is necessary**:

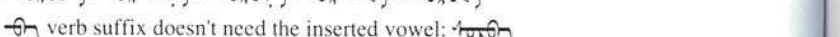
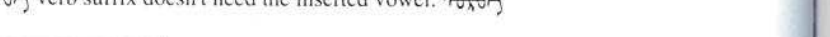
1.☞ Suffix beginning with a double consonant
Single consonant suffix

Ex.1:  • •

Ex.2:

2.☞ Consonant-vowel suffix

Ex.: 

Exception: the  verb suffix doesn't need the inserted vowel: 

3.☞ Sound-complex suffix

When the suffix and the inserted vowel form a sound-complex:

Ex.:

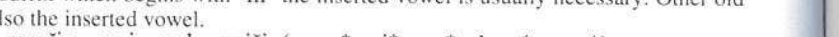
4.☞ "m"-suffix

When adding a suffix which begins with "m" the inserted vowel is usually necessary. Other old suffixes* take also the inserted vowel.
-mar, -maxča, -manjin, -moi, -mal, -maiči, (-nam*, -si*, -yu*, -luxa*, -run*)

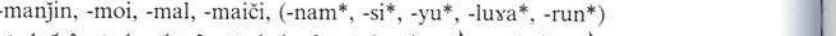
Ex.:

2.1.8.2.2 Exceptions

There are a few verbs which need special connections.

1.☞ Verb  = "to give"

With the verb "ög-" the connection is not only "ü" but "gü".

Ex.: 

2.☞ Verb ="to take"

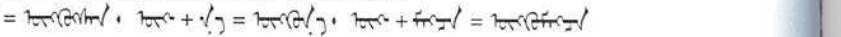
Suffixes beginning with "b" require also the inserted vowel:

Ex.:

3.☞ Verbs (•) = "to drift (to sink)"

With the above three verbs, all of which end with a "b", "bü" is the connector, even when the suffix begins with "b".

Ex.:



2.2 The Cyrillic Alphabet (see text on page 4)

	Printed letters	Cursive	Mongolian name	English sound	Letter in Mongolian words	Approximate sound in English word
1.	А а	*А а*	а	u (in a closed syll.)	<u>а</u>х	father
2.	Б б	*Б б*	бэ	b	<u>б</u>арс	bird
3.	В в	*В в*	вэ	v (b)	а<u>в</u>ах (а<u>в</u>бал)	vase (bad)
4.	Г г	*Г г*	гэ	g (ck)	<u>г</u>ал (ба<u>г</u>а) (о<u>г</u>т)	get (back) (---)
5.	Д д	*Д д*	дэ	d	<u>д</u>ээвэр	day
6.	Е е	*Е е*	е	ye (yi)	<u>е</u>эвэн (<u>е</u>р)	yeah (ye)
7.	Ё ё	*Ё ё*	ё	yo	<u>ё</u>отон	yawn
8.	Ж ж	*Ж ж*	жэ	j	<u>ж</u>аргал	joke
9.	З з	*З з*	зэ	ds	<u>з</u>ураг	seeds
10.	И и	*И и*	и	"ee" (but not long)	<u>и</u>шиг	easy
11.	й	*й*	хагас и	no sound on its own, but changes preceding vowel	най<u>м</u>, ой<u>л</u>гох	like "i" in 'said' (compare: 'sad')
12.	К к	*К к*	ка	k	<u>к</u>ило	kilo
13.	Л л	*Л л*	эл	l (dental)	<u>л</u>ам	-------
14.	М м	*М м*	эм	m	<u>м</u>од	modern
15.	Н н	*Н н*	эн	n (ng)	<u>н</u>ом (авса<u>н</u>)	name (sing)
16.	О о	*О о*	о	o (open)	<u>о</u>лон	bought
17.	Ө ө	*Ө ө*	ө	o (closed)	<u>ө</u>дөр	girl (Br.); put (Am)
18.	П п	*П п*	пэ	p	<u>п</u>арк	park
19.	Р р	*Р р*	эр	r (rolled)	о<u>р</u>ох	rolled "r"
20.	С с	*С с*	эс	s	<u>с</u>амар	sing
21.	Т т	*Т т*	тэ	t	<u>т</u>оос	tall
22.	У у	*У у*	у	u (open)	<u>у</u>ул	similar to 'bone'
23.	Ү ү	*Ү ү*	ү	u (closed)	<u>Ү</u>Үл	soup
24.	Ф ф	*Ф ф*	фэ	f	<u>ф</u>ото	photo
25.	Х х	*Х х*	хэ	not standard English	<u>х</u>амар/ <u>х</u>эл	loch (Scottish)/---
26.	Ц ц	*Ц ц*	цэ	ts	<u>ц</u>ас	its
27.	Ч ч	*Ч ч*	чэ	ch	<u>ч</u>их	cheese
28.	Ш ш	*Ш ш*	иш	sh	<u>ш</u>өл	short
29.	Щ ш	*Щ щ*	шч	shch		English Channel
30.	ъ	*ъ*	хатуугийн тэмдэг	Hard sign	явъя	--------
31.	ы	*ы*	ы	ii	таны	city
32.	ь	*ь*	зөөлний тэмдэг	Soft sign	ирье	--------
33.	Э э	*Э э*	э	e	<u>э</u>мч	get
34.	Ю ю	*Ю ю*	ю	yu (open) yu (closed)	<u>ю</u>м <u>ю</u>Үл	------- you
35.	Я я	*Я я*	я	ya	<u>я</u>вах	yacht

Explanations: (see also page 5)
1.) 12, 24, and 29 only appear in foreign words.
2.) The following sounds are difficult and must be practiced well: 4, 7, 13, 16, 17, 19, 22, 23, 25

2.2.1 Vowels

2.2.1.1 CLASSIFICATION OF VOWELS

Basic vowels (short vowels)	Further vowels based on basic vowels: **Double vowels** (long vowels)	**Diphthongs** (*4)	so called **Y- vowels** (*1)	**Auxiliary vowels** (*2)
а	аа	ай	я	ы
о	оо	ой	ё	
у	уу	уй	ю(у)	
э	ээ	эй	е	ий
ө	өө	non existing		
ү	үү	үй	ю(ү)	
и (й) (*3)	ий (*5)			

Explanations:

*1) The so-called 'Y-vowels' come from using the Russian Cyrillic alphabet and are nothing more than a combination of "y" and a basic vowel (see p.31f), so it is perhaps incorrect to speak of a separate vowel here.

*2) Both auxiliary vowels represent long vowel sounds in their pronunciation. The "ы" comes from Cyrillic. Please note that auxiliary vowels are found as such only in suffixes and follow the rules of vowel harmony: "ы" for strong words and "ий" for weak words.

*3) The **vowel "и"** has 2 forms. As "й", it is used in diphthongs.

*4) **"уа, уай, иа, иу"** look like **diphthongs**, but are not.
"уа" appears in loan words, but only rarely
"уай" (as in "гуай") may be a modern short form of "авгай". Further words with this syllable are unknown.
"иа, иу" are diphthongs which appeared in the Mongolian language through the use of Cyrillic. It is actually a combination sound of a soft consonant and long vowel (see table on page 9).

*5) This diphthong looks like an auxiliary vowel in Cyrillic, but, in fact, they are actually two different phonemes which is clearly evident from the Classical Mongolian Script.

Comparison with English vowels:
Mongolian short vowels are shorter than English short vowels. **Mongolian long vowels** are shorter than English long vowels. **Mongolian diphthongs** are pronounced more united than English diphthongs.

2.2.1.2 VOWEL HARMONY

Mongolian vowels are divided into three groups:

1.) Strong (masculine or back) vowels:

a) Basic vowels	а	о	у	ex.:	ав–	очи–	ул
b) Double vowels	аа	оо	уу (юу)	ex.:	аав	оочи–	уул (юу)
c) Diphthongs	ай	ой	уй	ex.:	айв	ойчи–	уйл–
d) Y-vowels	я	ё	ю(у)	ex.:	ява–	ёс	юм
e) Auxiliary vowels	ы			ex.:	таны		

2.) Weak (feminine or front) vowels:

a) Basic vowels	э	ө	ү	ex.:	эр	өр	үр
b) Double vowels	ээ	өө	үү (юү)	ex.:	ээр	өөр	үүр (юүлэн)
c) Diphthongs	эй		үй (юй)	ex.:	эмэгтэй		үйрэх (юйрэх)
d) Y-vowels	е		ю(ү)	ex.:	ер		юндэн
e) Auxiliary vowels	ий			ex.:	миний		

3.) Neutral (neuter) vowel:

a) Basic vowel	и	ex.:	бичи–	сонин	эрин

In compliance with the rules of vowel harmony, only strong vowels or only weak vowels can appear in one Mongolian word. The vowel "и" is neutral and can occur with either set of vowels. If only the neutral vowel "и" appears, the word is treated like a word with weak vowels (e.g. **бичих, тийм, жимс**).
Rules of vowel harmony do not apply to loan words.

2.2.2 Consonants

2.2.2.1 HARD AND SOFT CONSONANTS

The Mongolian language has hard and soft consonants. The consonants in a strong word are hard, the consonants in a weak word are soft.
In a strong word, the vowel **"i" changes** the preceding hard consonant into a soft one. The **soft sign "ь" shows** that the preceding consonant is soft. Soft consonants **change** the preceding vowel sound to a **palatal** pronunciation.

2.2.2.2 CLASSIFICATION OF CONSONANTS

Many spelling rules (see p.23ff) are based upon this classification of the consonants. It is therefore advisable to memorize the code-word that stands for the first group:

2.2.2.2.1 "7-Consonants" or C^7 (vocalized consonants)

☞ **м, н, г, л, б, в, р**

They are easily remembered with the code-word **монгол баавар**. ('mongol baavar' = silver decoration on a saddle). Before or after such a consonant there needs to be a **vowel**! Therefore they are called, in Mongolian, "эгшигт гийгүүлэгч" (= 'consonants with vowels').
монгол, баавгай, ном, гал, мөнгөн, мал, лаалгавар, нэмэх, намар, нар

2.2.2.2.2 "9-Consonants" or C^9 (non-vocalized consonants)

☞ **д, ж, з, с, т, х, ц, ч, ш**

These 9-consonants can appear without a vowel. Therefore, their Mongolian name is "заримдаг гийгүүлэгч" (= 'incomplete consonants').
сард, Доржж, харз, жимс, галт, талх, орц, товч, багш

2.2.2.3 CONSONANT ORDER IN A WORD

1.) In genuine Mongolian words double consonants never appear at the beginning of a word.
2.) In genuine Mongolian words "**л**" und "**р**" never appear at the beginning of a word.
3.) After "**ж**", "**ч**", and "**ш**" in a second syllable, there is always an "**и**". Exceptions are due to inconsistencies in the Cyrillic (e.g. "хичээл" = actually "хичиел")

2.2.3 Signs

There are two signs which have been borrowed from the Russian Cyrillic alphabet in order to express a special characteristic of Mongolian pronunciation. They are the hard sign and the soft sign.

2.2.3.1 THE HARD SIGN "ъ"

The hard sign has only one function:
1. It **separates** the **PTS "–я"** (see page 175) from strong verb stems ending with a consonant.
Verb stems that end with a vowel or soft sign , don't need this sign.
ex.: явъя, оръё, авъя, оръё, but: ярая, болаё, солёё, болгоё, буцаая

2.2.3.2 THE SOFT SIGN "ь"

The soft sign has two functions:

1.) It **separates** the **PTS "–е"** from weak verb stems ending with a consonant. Verb stems that end with a vowel don't need this sign.
ex.: ирьe, эрьe, өгьe but: хийe, нээe, бүтээe

2.) It serves as a sign of softness **to mark** the preceding hard consonant as a soft consonant.
ex.: минь, чинь, нь, хонь, морь, сургууль,
The soft consonant influences the preceding vowel, causing it to be pronounced ***palatally***
ex.: хаНь, (compare with "хан/хана") *он*ь (он), *ам*ь (ам), *уул*ь (уул)

Please note that in Classical Mongolian these words always end with the vowel "i" which causes the preceding consonants to become soft. Therefore the ***palatal*** pronunciation also applies where the vowel "и" is used in a strong word.
ex.: *анги*, *солих*, *олонхи*

Because this **palatal** function is very important, the soft sign (or the vowel "и") should not be dropped accidentally (see spelling rules on page 27).

2.2.4 Syllables

(C=consonant, V=vowel)
Genuine Mongolian words use the following syllable structures:
1.) V-syllables: улаан, аймаг, оосор, ахуй, ашиг, амар, ойтой, олон, овоо
2.) VC-syllables: алдар, амжих, эдлэх, үсрэх, устах, орлох, өвчин, өмнө
3.) CV-syllables: та, чи, буудах, ширээ, бороо, тараг, шийдэх, зурах, тэгэх
4.) CVC-syllables: мэдрэх, тосгон, тэмдэг, халдах, сүүлдэх, чанга, шалгах

Through the Cyrillic script, the following **artificial** syllables came into usage:
5.) VCC-syllables: эмч, эгч, илт, амт, урт, эрт, ёст, өмч, үйлт, үст
These are actually two syllables where the last vowel was simply dropped (see page 12).
6.) CVCC-syllables: хамтрал, товчлох, мэндлэх, жимс, талх, цамц, тэрс, тэгш
These are also words where vowels (and therefore whole syllables) have been dropped.
7.) VCCC-syllables: эрхтнээ
Such syllables are a product of the vowel dropping (see page 24f).
8.) CVCCC-syllables: идэвхтнээр, төрөлхтний, шархтныг

2.2.5 Rules

Rules in Cyrillic are not as simple as in Classical Mongolian, because the transcription of Mongolian into the Cyrillic Script was done too quickly without paying close enough attention to traditional Mongolian lingusitic and word formation. Therefore it's not surprising that there are a lot of inconsistencies. We will try to provide some of the basic rules which have been developed for the Cyrillic Script.

2.2.5.1 PRONUNCIATION RULES

1.☞ "...н + б..." = "...м + б..."

If "**н**" appears before "**б**", it is pronounced as "**м**".
ex.: Сайн байна уу? = Сайм байна уу?
Энэ хэн бэ? = Энэ хэм бэ?

2.☞ "вб" = "бб"

If "**в**" appears before "**б**", it is pronounced as "**б**".
ex.: авбал = аббал

3.☞ "н" + vowel = "n" "н" without vowel = "ng"

If "**н**" is followed by a vowel, it is pronounced as "**n**".
ex.: шинэ, энэ, сонгино
If there is no vowel following "**н**", it is pronounced as "**ng**".
ex.: хүн, авсан, хэлэн

4.☞ "г" + vowel = "ck" "г" without vowel = "g"

In a strong word, if "**г**" is followed by a vowel, it is pronounced like "**ck**".
ex.: багa, зорилгo
If there is no vowel, it is pronounced as "**g**".
ex.: баг, тараг

2.2.5.2 SPELLING RULES

Spelling rules could be divided into the following sub-groups:
1.) General basic rules 2.) Declension rules
3.) "–ла[4]" rules 4.) "ь/и" rules
5.) "–ж/–ч" rules 6.) Capitalization rules
7.) Abbreviation rules 8.) Division rules

2.2.5.2.1 General Basic Rules

According to what we have said about **assimilation** (see page 7) we can come up with the following rule about the vowel order in a word:

1.☞ "о/ө" can never be in combination with "а/э"!

Only exception:
• Lack of the suffix "*–төй*": *өөлтэй*, *өнгөтэй*,

Examples:
о/у: орүүл–, оюутан, сонгүүль, согтуу, тосгүүр, etc.
ө/ү: өвлүүл– , өгүүлэ–, өгсүүр, өнгөрүү, өглөөгүүр, өвчүү, өчүүхэн, etc.
а/у: ааруул, ариун, ларуу, etc.
у/а: улаан, урам, булан, etc.
э/ү: эрүүл, эрүү, эерүү, etc.
ү/э: үнээ, үнэг, үнэ, etc.

For foreign students who mix up **"о" and "у"** the following rule should be very helpful. "О" and "а" do not appear together in the same genuine Mongolian word. Therefore the letter that can't be made out ("о" or "у"?) must be "у".
ex. : урам, зүслан, хүлалда–, сурагч, түсла–, үүлза–, гурав, үзэм, үзэг, хүүхэд

2.☞ C[7] consonants ("монгол баавар") + vowel

As mentioned before, the C[7] consonants need a vowel before or after them.

2.2.5.2.2 Declension Rules

If a suffix is added to a word stem, the pronunciation is changed because of the new syllable structure. The vowel in a first syllable is always stressed, the other short vowels are not. These unstressed vowels are called 'unstressed vowels'. There are rules that determine whether or not such an unstressed vowel (it can hardly be heard) must be written or not. If they can be dropped, they are called 'dropping vowels', if they need to be written, they are called 'functional vowels' because they have to carry out a function (see exception rules on next pages).

2.2.5.2.2.1 Basic Rules

1. Strong word stem ending with "г" + *weak suffixes!*

ex. зургийг, байшингийн, нутгийг, сангийн

2. "ж, ч, ш, к" + *weak suffixes!*

ex.: Доржийн, сурагчийг, багшийг, католикийн

3. Adding a suffix beginning with a vowel causes the unstressed vowel to drop!

If the **unstressed vowel** has no function it can drop. For exceptions, see the next paragraph.

$C^7 + C^7$			$C^9 + C^7$		
орон	+ ы	→ орны	дуудал	+ аас	→ дуудлаас
гэрэл	+ ийг	→ гэрлийг	анхил	+ ыг	→ анхлыг
аймаг	+ ийг	→ аймгийг	мөнөөн	+ оос	→ мөнхөөс
болор	+ ыг	→ болрыг	үзэр	+ ийн	→ үзрийн
гөлөг	+ ийн	→ гөлгийн	нутаг	+ ийг	→ нутгийг
C^7-C^9 + C^7					
суртал	+ аар	→ суртлаар	дархан	+ ы	→ дархны
орчин	+ ы	→ орчны	малчин	+ ы	→ малчны
дэвтэр	+ ээ	→ дэвтрээ	нэгдэл	+ ийг	→ нэгдлийг
алхам	+ аас	→ алхмаас	өнгөр	+ ийн	→ өнгрийн
гомдол	+ оор	→ гомдлоор	санар	+ ын	→ санрын
хайрцаг	+ аас	→ хайрцгаас	алдар	+ аа	→ алдраа
C^7-C^9-C^9 + C^7					
төрөлхтөн	+ ий	→ төрөлхтний	эрхтэн	+ ээ	→ эрхтнээ
шархтан	+ ыг	→ шархтныг	идэвхтэн	+ ээр	→ идэвхтнээр
(Here are exceptions to the exception rule 4)					

2.2.5.2.2.2 Exception Rules

The 3rd basic rule does not apply if one of the following conditions becomes true. Then, the unstressed vowel has a function to fulfil and may not be dropped.

1. C^7

If a C^7 consonant would be without a vowel, dropping of the unstressed vowel is forbidden!

салбар	→ салбарын	хөдөлмөр	→ хөдөлмөрийн
итгэл	→ итгэлийг	бичлэг	→ бичлэгийг
нислэг	→ нислэгээс	амраг	→ амрагаа
засвар	→ засвараас	төгсгөл	→ төгсгөлийн

2. г/н

Because the pronunciation changes, whether there is a vowel after "г"/"н" or not (see p.22-23) the vowel that follows those two consonants may not be dropped. It has the function of differentiation.

чанар	→ чанарыг	үжэн	→ үжэнээр
тэнэг	→ тэнэгээс	манан	→ маныг
самал	→ самалын	шагнал	→ шагналаас

For "г" this rule only applies in strong words:

онгоц	→ онгоцоос	амьсгал	→ амьсгалыг
жаргал	→жаргалын	шугам	→ шугамаас
хонгор	→ хонгорын	онгон	→ онгоно

If a word that ends with one of those 2 consonants is declined, the **vowel may not be dropped** if either "г" or "н" becomes the third consonant in a serie:

жижиг	→ жижгээр	харцага	→ харцагаас
эрдэнэ	→ эрдэнийн	зулзага	→ зулзагыг

3. NDS "-х"

If another suffix is added to the NDS "-х" (see page 147), the vowel that precedes this suffix may not be dropped. It has the function of differentiation.

эсэх	→ эсэхээр	илэрхийлэх	→ илэрхийлэхийг
өнгөрөх	→ өнгөрөхөд	унших	→ уншихаар
уулзах	→ уулзахаас	алхах	→ алхахыг
орох	→ орохын	дэмжих	→ дэмжихээр

4. $C^9 + C^9$

If two C^9 consonants appear one after the other, a vowel must follow the second C^9 and may not be dropped.

дуссан	→ дуссанаар	үндсэн	→ үндсэний
мэдсэн	→ мэдсэнийг	төгссөн	→ төгссөнөөс
чаддаг	→ чаддагаас	ганцхан	→ ганцханыг
ачтан	→ ачтаны	өвчтөн	→ өвчтөнийг
модхон	→ модхоныг	цавчгас	→ цавчгасын
нөхөл	→ нөхөлөө	хурцхан	→ хурцханы
бусдал	→ бусдалаар	далавчтан	→ далавчтанаар

5. Proper names & loan words

In proper names likes "Улаанбаатар, Дархан, Төмөр, Баатар, Ертөнцийн Эзэн" or in loan words, the unstressed vowel may not be dropped:

Улаанбаатараар, Дарханыг, Төмөрийн, Баатарынх, Ертөнцийн Эзэнээ
арифметикийн, атомаас, контороос, физикийн, трактороыг

2.2.5.2.3 "-ла" Rules

If the derivational suffix "-ла", which makes a verb from a noun, is added to a word stem, the following rules need to be observed:

1. Word stem ending with C^7, -ла[4]

Word stem	Infinitive*	Imperative	With suffixes
төлөв	төлөвлө-	төлөвлө!	төлөвлөсөн, төлөвлөдөг, төлөвлөгөө
мал	малла-	малла!	малласан,маллалаг,маллагаа
таваг	тавагла-	тавагла!	тавагласан,таваглалаг,таваглана
баяр	баярла-	баярла!	баярласан,баярлалаг,баярлалаа
ном	номло-	номло!	номлосон,номлолог,номлол

2. ☞ Word stem ending with C^9, -ал[5]

Word stem	Infinitive*	Imperative	With suffixes
тус	тусла-	тусал!	тусалсан,тусаллаг,тусална, тусалж
зүрх	зүрхлэ-	зүрхэл!	зүрхэлсэн,зүрхэллэг,зүрхэлнэ, зүрхэлж
цээж	цээжлэ-	цээжил!	цээжилсэн,цээжиллэг,цээжилнэ, цээжилж
зарц	зарцла-	зарцал!	зарцалсан,зарцаллаг,зарцална, зарцалж
баримт	баримтла-	баримтал!	баримталсан, баримталлаг, баримтална
багш	багшла-	багшил!	багшилсан, багшиллаг, багшилна, багшилж
эмч	эмчлэ-	эмчил!	эмчилсэн, эмчиллэг, эмчилнэ, эмчилж
шүд	шүдлэ-	шүдэл!	шүдэлсэн, шүдэллэг, шүдэлнэ, шүдэлж
янз	янзла-	янзал!	янзалсан, янзаллаг, янзална, янзалж

***Explanation:**
Many traditional grammars give the infinitive as follows: "тусал-", "зүрхэл-". In keeping with our system, we will only drop the vowel from the infinitive stem if there is no vowel in Classical Mongolian.
If another suffix is joined to a word stem with the "-ла" suffix, the usual rules about dropping of vowels apply. To make that more clear we have shown some examples of how sometimes the ***unstressed vowel*** is dropped and how sometimes an inserted vowel is needed.

no need for an inserted vowel:		**need for an inserted vowel:**		
тусалаач	→ туслаач	тусалагтун	→ туслагтун	(not тусалгтун)
тусалуузай	→ туслуузай	тусалмж	→ тусламж	(not тусалмж)
тусалаагүй	→ туслаагүй	тусалан	→ туслан	(not тусалн)

3. ☞ Word stem ending with vowel, -ла[4]

Word stem	Infinitive	Imperative	With suffixes (Note, that the ***unstressed vowel*** of the "-ла" suffix is dropped)
үнэ	үнэлэ-	үнэл!	үнэлсэн, үнэллэг, үнэлнэ,
урма	урмала-	урмал!	урмалсан, урмаллаг, урмална
тоо	тоолo-	тоол!	тоолсон, тооллог, тоолно

2.2.4.2.3.1 Exception Rule to "-ла" Suffix

☞ Word stem with two C^9 consonants, -ла[4]

According to the basic rules, the vowel between two C^9 consonants is not dropped. That's why the suffix is used in its original form "-ла" with such word stems.

Word stem	Infinitive*	Imperative	With suffixes
хавтас	хавтасла-	хавтасла!	хавтасласан, хавтасладаг, хавтаслана
эцэс	эцэслэ-	эцэслэ!	эцэслэсэн, эцэслэлэг, эцэслэнэ
идээш	идээшлэ-	идээшлэ!	идээшлэсэн, идээшлэлэг, идээшлэнэ

These "-ла" rules apply also for other derivational suffixes like "-ра[4]", "-да[4]".

2.2.5.2.4 "ь/и" Rules

The vowel **"и"** has a special task: it causes the preceding **consonant to be soft** which in turn causes a **palatal pronunciation** of the preceding vowel. The soft sign in Cyrillic stands for this vowel and carries out the same function. Therefore the vowel "и" or the soft sign may not be dropped carelessly. The following rules apply:

1. ☞ 1C, "ь" 2C, "и"

A single consonant is always followed by the soft sign "ь", a double consonant is always followed by the vowel "и", thus indicating double softness:
толь, хонь, хазь, сургуульь, морь арми, тамхи, ангги, анги, горхи, салби,

2. ☞ After C^7, "ь/и"

Infinitive	Imperative	$C^7 + C^9$, "ь"	$C^7 + C^7$ / Vowel, "и"
таниг-	таньс!	таньсан, таньсан,таньсаг, таниг*	таниха, таниж, таниглаа
солир-	сольс!	сольсон, сольсон, сольсог, солир*	солирно, солиж, солилоо
тавиг-	тавьс!	тавьсан, тавьсан, тавьсаг, тавиг*	тавиха, тавиж, тавиглаа
ярим-	ярьс!	ярьсан, ярьсан, ярьсаг, ярим*	яриха, яриж, яримлаа
*The vowel before a "-х" suffix may not be dropped or reduced (for explanation see page 25).			
Nouns:			
хонь	хоньчин	хонин, хонинл	
морь	морьтон	мориг, мориглл	
амьс	амьсрал, амьстан, амьстай	амиха,амихаас	
сургуульс	сургуульсь,	сургуулиха, сургуулижр	

3. ☞ After C^9, always "и"

Infinitive	Imperative (Exception!)	$C^9 + C^9$, "и"	$C^9 + C^7$ / Vowel, "и"
зожи-	зожь!	зожигог, зожигон зожигээ	зожино, зожилоо,зожиж
сажи-	сажь!	сажигаг, сажиган сажигээ	сажиха, сажилаа, сажилга
ажи-	ажь!	ажигаг, ажиган ажигээ	ажиха, ажилаа, ажилаг
захи-	захь!	захигаг, захиган, захигээ	захиха, захилаа, захиж
Nouns (rare)			
бодь	бодиг,	бодигс,	

4. ☞ Word stem with "ь/и" influences suffix!

1. Noun suffixes

	-уул[2]	-ын	-ыг	-аас[4]	-аар[4]	-аа[4]
ангги	анггуул	анггийн	анггийг	анггаас	анггаар	анггаа
тамхи	*	*	тамхийг	*	тамхиар	тамхиа
хонь	*	*	хонийг	*	хонор	хоно
морь	*	*	мориг	*	морор	моро

* These suffixes are not relevant to this rule.

2. Verb-suffixes: Word changing (inflectional)

	−уул[2]	−аад[4]	−аа[4] (−гүй)	−уушгай[2]	−аач[4]	−аарай[4] −аасай[4]	−уузай[2]
тани−	тан□ул−	тан□ад	тан□а−гүй	тан□ушгай	тан□ач	тан□арай тан□асай	тан□узай
яри−	яр□ул−	яр□ад	яр□а−гүй	яр□ушгай	яр□ач	яр□арай яр□асай	яр□узай
боли−	бол□ул−	бол□од	бол□о−гүй	бол□ушгай	бол□оч	бол□орой бол□осой	бол□узай

Also derivational suffixes (word-building) are influenced according to this rule:
ex. : бар□ул, яр□а, хор□о, бар□у,

5. ☞ Only after "ж, ч, ш, к" in 2nd syllable: dropping allowed

а□иг	→ а□гаас	а□ил	→ а□лаар
эг□иг	→ эг□гийг	ман□ин	→ ман□ныг
хүч□ин	→ хүч□нээр	хөн□ил	→ хөн□лийн
уч□ир	→ уч□раас	бич□иг	→ бич□гийн

2.2.5.2.5 "−ж/−ч" Rules

In the **Classical Mongolian script** these two letters and their suffixes are no problem. There is a straight forward rule:

☞ **"Bagaraşada" consonants need "−ч"**
☞ **Vowels and "namilang" consonants need "−ж"**

Some scholars have tried correctly to base the Cyrillic "−ж/−ч" rules on the Classical script. We will pay attention to this attempt in little "note" notes, but in general we have kept to the official spelling rules that have been in use until now. These rules have been worked out **according to the pronunciation** of the Mongolian language.

Please notice that our **infinitive forms** (in parentheses) vary sometimes from the official ones. We think it's important to see whether the Classical script verb stem contains a vowel or not.

Note:

1.) From all the examples of rule No. 1 only "бос-", "нис-", "өвд-" and "бэлэд-" are contrary to the Classical Mongolian rule. According to pronunciation rules, "−ч" cannot be directly joined to -д", but can to "−с". Therefore forms like "босч", "нисч" are also widely used. In our book we treat verb stems that end with "-с" and consist of either a CVC or VC syllable structure (see page 22) as exceptions to rule No. 1 (exceptions of C^9) and use the following spellings:
CVC examples: **босч, босчээ, нисч, нисчээ, хүсч, хүсчээ, дуусч, дуусчээ**
VC examples: **өсч, өсчээ**

2.) Notice that all spellings in group 5 on the next page (exceptions to rule 2) can be explained with the Classical Mongolian rule.

Here now the **official Cyrillic spelling rules:**

1. ☞ In general, "−ж" suffix is used

- After vowels, C^9 consonants, "л" and "м", "−ж" **always** follows.
- After "г" and "в", "−ж" **almost always** follows (exceptions see under rule 2).
- After "р", "−ж" only follows **if** the word stem consists of ***one*** **syllable with *short* vowels** (= exception to rule 2)

1.) Verb stem ending with vowel

хаа−	хаа**ж**	хаа**жээ**
нээ−	нээ**ж**	нээ**жээ**
суу−	суу**ж**	суу**жээ**
орхи−	орхи**ж**	орхи**жээ**
нэрлэ−	нэрлэ**ж**	нэрлэ**жээ**

хий−	хий**ж**	хий**жээ**
боо−	боо**ж**	боо**жээ**
нөө−	нөө**ж**	нөө**жээ**
мана−	мана**ж**	мана**жээ**
бөглө−	бөглө**ж**	бөглө**жээ**

2.) Verb stem ending with C^9

бод(о)−	бод**ож**	бод**жээ**
бүд(а)−	бүд**аж**	бүд**жээ**
гад(а)−	гад**аж**	гад**жээ**
нис− *	нис**эж** *	нис**үүд** *
өвд−	өвд**өж**	өвд**жээ**

хат(а)−	хат**аж**	хат**жээ**
орш(и)−	орш**иж**	орш**жээ**
бялц(а)−	бялц**аж**	бялц**жээ**
бос− *	бос**ож** *	бос**жээ** *
бэлэд−	бэлэд**эж**	бэлэд**жээ**

* see explanation on previous page under "Note 1".

3.) Verb stem ending with "л" or "м"

ол−	ол**ж**	ол**жээ**
нэм(э)−	нэм**эж**	нэм**жээ**

ний л(э)−	ний л**ж**	ний л**жээ**
хам(а)−	хам**аж**	хам**жээ**

4.) Verb stem ending with "в" or "г" (exceptions to rule 2)

яв(а)−	яв**ж**	яв**жээ**
эг(э)−	эг**жээ**	эг**жээ**

сэв(э)−	сэв**ж**	сэв**жээ**
бүг(э)−	бүг**ж**	бүг**жээ**

5.) Verb stem ending with "р" (exceptions to rule 2)

зур(а)−	зур**аж**	зур**жээ**
ор(о)−	ор**ж**	ор**жээ**
тар**ь**−	тар**ьж**	тар**ьжээ**

ир(э)−	ир**ж**	ир**жээ**
ха р(а)−	ха р**ж**	ха р**жээ**
хө р(ө)−	хө р**ж**	хө р**жээ**

2. ☞ After "р" and exceptions to rule 1, "−ч" suffix is used

• After "-р" usually follows the "-ч" suffux (exception see rule 1)
Note: Exceptions 3 and 4 are explained very easily with the Classical Mongolian rule.

1.) One-syllable verb stem with *long vowel* ending with "р"

таа р(а)−	таа р**ч**	таа р**чээ**
хай р(а)−	хай р**ч**	хай р**чээ**

хуу р−	хуу р**ч**	хуу р**чээ**
хөө р−	хөө р**ч**	хөө р**чээ**

2.) Verb stem of more syllables ending with "р"

ава р− (авч а−)	ава р**ч**	ава р**чээ**
амьда р− (амьд р а−)	амьда р**ч**	амьда р**чээ**
биши р− (биш р э−)	биши р**ч**	биши р**чээ**

ама р− (ам р а−)	ама р**ч**	ама р**чээ**
анхаа р−	анхаа р**ч**	анхаа р**чээ**
захи р−	захи р**ч**	захи р**чээ**

3.) One-syllable verb stem with short vowel ending with "р" (exceptions to rule 1)

су р−	су р**ч**	су р**чээ**
хү р−	хү р**ч**	хү р**чээ**

га р−	га р**ч**	га р**чээ**

4.) One-syllable verb stem ending with "в" or "г" (exceptions to rule 1)

а в−	а в**ч**	а в**чээ**

ө г−	ө г**ч**	ө г**чээ**

2.2.5.2.6 Capitalization Rules

In the following cases, the first letter is **capitalized**:

1.☞ First letters of a sentence

Гадаа цас орлоо. Өнөөдөр их хүйтэн байна.

2.☞ Initials

Д.Н. / Э. Баатар / Ц. Ганболд

3.☞ Geographic names

Бид нар 1991 онд Япон явсан. Энэ жил Туул гол их устай байна. 5-р сард Францын ерөнхийлөгч Монголд ирнэ.

4.☞ Proper names

Болд, Сараа, Дорж бид дөрөв дэлгүүр явсан. Нааш ир, Банхар минь!
Холбооны Бүгд Найрамдах Герман Улс, Шинжлэх Ухаан, Боловсролын Яам

5.☞ Quotations

Та "Ардын эрх" сонин уншдаг уу? Есүс "Би бол хорвоогийн гэрэл" гэж хэлэв.

6.☞ Politeness: "Та, Таны, Танд"

Хүндэт Таны амрыг эрье. Есүс Та Аврагч Эзэн.

2.2.5.2.7 Abbreviation Rules

There are two ways to make abbreviations:

1.) **By syllables:**
ня-бо (book keeper) → нягтлан бодогч,
МОНЦАМЭ (name of the Mongolian news agency) → Монголын Цахилгаан Мэдээ
Such abbreviations can be written with capital letters only or with capital letters for each syllable (МонЦаМэ).

2.) **By letters:**

ШУА	= Шинжлэх Ухааны Академи	(Academy of Sciences)
ДОХ	= Дархлалын Олдмол Хам шинж	(AIDS)
МАХН	= Монгол Ардын Хувьсгалт Нам	(Mongolian People's Revolutionary Party)

2.2.5.2.8 Division Rules

There are only two very simple division rules:

1.☞ Division by syllables! New line starts with a consonant!

мон-гол, ар-дын, амь-дар-сан, явс-ны, амьд-рал, ээ-лийн, эг-сэс, төрөлхтөөрөө

2.☞ No division after single letters!

элим (not э-лим), үсэг (not ү-сэг), элаа-ны (not э-лаа-ны)

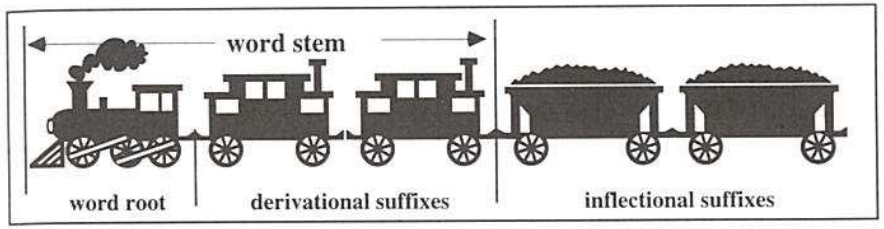
2.3 Comparison of both Alphabets

	Printed Classical Mongolian	Cursive Classical M.	Printed Cyrillic	Cursive Cyrillic	Notes (see also 2.1.2 on p.5)
1.			Аа	*Аа*	
2.			Ээ	*Ээ*	
3.			Ии (й)	*Ии (й)*	й for diphthongs
4.			Оо	*Оо*	In Classical Mongolian script there is no difference between these 2 vowels.
5.			Уу	*Уу*	
6.			Өө	*Өө*	In Classical Mongolian script there is no difference between these 2 vowels.
7.			Үү	*Үү*	
8.			Нн	*Нн*	
9.			Бб	*Бб*	
10a			Хх	*Хх*	Cyrillic uses only one letter for these consonants.
10b			Хх	*Хх*	
11a			Гг	*Гг*	Cyrillic uses only one letter for these consonants.
11b			Гг	*Гг*	
12.			Лл	*Лл*	
13.			Мм	*Мм*	
14.			Сс/Шш	*Сс (Шш)*	Note: "s"+"i" in Classical Mongolian gives "sh".
15.			Ш ш	*Ш ш*	
16.			Тт	*Тт*	In Classical Mongolian script there is no difference between these 2 consonants.
17.			Дд	*Дд*	
18.			Цц/Чч	*Цц/Чч*	In some dialects (e.g. Khalkh) these 2 Classical letters are pronounced differently in different words.
19.			Зз/Жж	*Зз/Жж*	
20.			(Яя/Ее/Ёё/Юю)	*(Яя Ее/Ёё/Юю)*	Cyrillic developed the so-called Y-vowels.
21.			Рр	*Рр*	
22.			Вв	*Вв*	

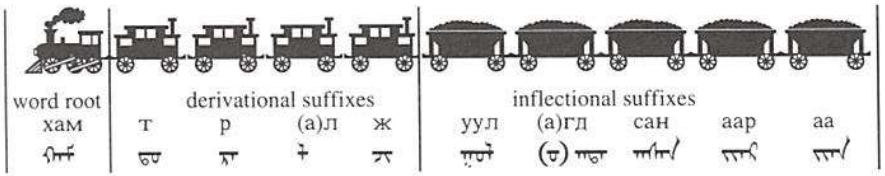
23.	ᠫ	ᠫ	Пп	*Пп*	
24.	ᠹ	ᠹ	Фф	*Фф*	
25.	ᠺ	ᠺ	Кк	*Кк*	
26.	ᡝ	ᡝ	Ее	*Ее*	
27.	ᠵ	ᠵ	Цц	*Цц*	These 2 loan-word letters aren't needed in Cyrillic; there are already two forms for 18 and 19 each.
28.	ᠽ	ᠽ	Зз	*Зз*	
29.	ᡦ	ᡦ	Хх	*Хх*	Cyrillic has no "h", "x" or "г" are used instead.
30.	ᡮ	ᡮ	Жж	*Жж*	This loan-word letter is similar to a cyrillic "ж".
31.	ᡯ	ᡯ	Ёё	*Ёё*	Y-vowel (y + "o")
32.			Щш	*щ Щ*	Russian loan-word letter
33.			ь	*ь*	Soft sign, in Classical Mongolian always "i".
34.			ъ	*ъ*	Hard sign, only relevant in Cyrillic.
35.	ᡩ	ᡩ	ы	*ы*	Pronounced as long vowel "ii".
36.	ᡯ ᡰ	ᡯ ᡰ	Юю	*Юю*	Y-vowel (y + "y/ү")
37.	ᡱ	ᡱ	Яя	*Яя*	Y-vowel (y + "a")

3. MONGOLIAN WORD STRUCTURE

The Mongolian language belongs to the so-called **agglutinated languages** (latin 'agglutinare' = 'to glue to'). This is because Mongolian words are constructed **by sticking one morpheme** (a meaningful unit) **to another** to form a longer word. This type of word-building can be understood easily with the **example of a train**.



Every train needs a locomotive (word root), but the number of derivational suffixes (passenger cars) and inflectional suffixes (freight cars) varies. One of the **longest Mongolian words** shows this construction clearly:



Тосгоныхон хамтралцуулагдсанаараа илүү сайн амьдрах болов.
Village people, in that they were caused to be organized into collective farms, improved their lives ("lived better").

It is impressive that an idea which takes 11 English words to say can be expressed with 3 Classical Mongolian words or 1 Cyrillic word.

3.1 Roots

The Mongolian language has two different kinds of roots:

3.1.1 Active or Living Roots

The morpheme at the beginning of a word, which **carries the original meaning of a word**, is called an active root. **An active root is always the word stem**, so both derivational and inflectional suffixes can be directly added to it.

Example 1:

Active word root			**Active root + derivational suffix**		
Classical	Cyril.	English	Classical	Cyrillic	English
	Үзэ–	to watch		<u>Үз</u>вэр	cultural sights (e.g. circus, film)
				<u>Үз</u>лэг	investigation, examination
+inflectional suffix				<u>Үз</u>мэр	exhibit
	Үзэв	watched		<u>Үз</u>эл	(pol.) views
	Үзээрэй	please watch		<u>Үз</u>эсгэлэн	exhibition
	Үзсэн	watched		<u>Үз</u>үүл–	to show to
	Үзнэ	will watch		<u>Үз</u>үүлэн	visual aid
				<u>Үз</u>эгдэ–	to be seen
				<u>Үз</u>эгч	"audience" (singular)

Example 2:

	их	great, big		<u>их</u>эд	a great deal, many
				<u>их</u>энх	greatest part, majority
+inflectional suffix				<u>их</u>ээхэн	pretty big
	ихээс	from the great (one)		<u>их</u>эвчлэн	mostly
	ихийг	the Great (Acc.)		<u>их</u>эрхэ–	to be arrogant, proud
	ихийн	of the Great		<u>их</u>эмсэг	majestic, arrogant

Example 3:

	мал	animal		<u>мал</u>ч	gifted with animals
				<u>мал</u>чин	herdsman
+ inflectional suffix				<u>мал</u>саг	'animal lover', loves to take care of animals
	малын	animal's		<u>мал</u>ла–	to take care of animals
	малууд	animals		<u>мал</u>жи–	to expand the flocks
	малаас	from the animal		<u>мал</u>лагч	animal trainer, tamer

Example 4:

	үйл	deed		<u>үйл</u>д–	to do
				<u>үйл</u>двэр	plant, factory
+ inflectional suffix				<u>үйл</u>двэрлэ–	to produce, to make
	Үйлээ	my/his/ your deed		<u>үйл</u>двэрлэл	production
	Үй–лээр	through the deed		<u>үйл</u>двэрчин	(factory) worker
	Үй–лийн	the deed's		<u>үйл</u>члэ–	to serve, to wait on
				<u>үйл</u>члэгч	server, waiter

Example 5:

	сур–	to learn		<u>сур</u>агч	pupil
				<u>сур</u>лага	learning
+ inflectional suffix				<u>сур</u>га–	to instruct, to teach
	сурсан	learned		<u>сур</u>гаал	teaching, doctrine
	сурна	will learn		<u>сур</u>галт	training, study situation
	сураач	please learn		<u>сур</u>гамж	lesson*, admonition (*"that'll be a lesson to you")
				<u>сур</u>гууль	school

3.1.2 Passive or Dead Roots

If we compare words beginning with the same morpheme, we can often discover the passive root of these words. The passive root has **a very general and often abstract meaning**. This meaning usually cannot be determined by analyzing one single word, but comes by comparing many. Not every word has a passive root. A passive root **cannot be a word stem**.

Example 1:

Passive word root			**Passive root in many words**		
Classical M.	Cyrillic	English (general meaning)	Classical Mongolian	Cyrillic	English
	ца–	"white"		<u>ца</u>с	snow
				<u>ца</u>ас	paper
				<u>ца</u>гаан	white
				<u>ца</u>гаала–	to celebrate New Year (White Month)
				<u>ца</u>йлган	innocent, good-hearted

Example 2:

	хо–	"two"		<u>хо</u>ёр	two
				<u>хо</u>с	pair
				<u>хо</u>лбоо	relationship, association, connection
				<u>хо</u>лбогдо–	to be connected, to have a relationship
				<u>хо</u>рши–	to do together, to work together
				<u>хо</u>рь	twenty
				<u>хо</u>шой	twice, two-time, double (e.g. gold medal winner)
				<u>хо</u>оронд	between
				<u>хо</u>ли–	to mix
				<u>хо</u>ч	nickname ("2nd name")

Example 3:

	сай-	"good"		сайн	good
				сайхан	pretty, beautiful
				сайд	minister, dignitary
				сайтар	well, nicely, carefully
				сайтай	have a good ...
				сайшаа-	to praise, to consider as good

Example 4:

	га-	"outside"		гална	outside (of)
				галаа	outdoors, outside, open air
				галаад	outer, foreign, alien
				галуур	outside, exterior, external

Example 5:

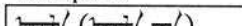
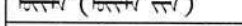
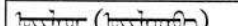
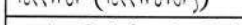
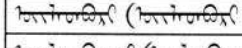
	бая-	"rich"		баян	rich
				баялаг	riches, wealth
				баяжи-	to become rich
				баячууд	the rich, the wealthy
				баярха-	to show off
				баяс-	to rejoice, to be happy
				баяр	happiness
				баяртай	joyful, happy (good bye)
				баярла-	to be happy

There are not many passive roots in the Mongolian language, so it is worth it to learn them thoroughly. In the **Appendix** (p. 407ff), you will find a list of most of them.

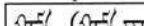
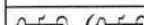
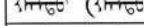
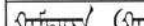
3.2 Stems

The word stem is the part of the word to which **inflectional suffixes are added**. In other words, the stem can always be **declined**. An active root is the shortest word stem, but a root with one or more derivational suffixes can also be a stem. Here are several examples of word stems with their declensions (added inflectional suffixes) in parentheses. It should be clear from the examples that stems can vary in length depending on how many derivational suffixes are used.

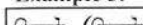
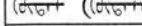
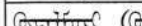
Example 1:

	үйл (үйлийн)	act, deed (the act's)
	үйлд- (үйлдэв)	to produce (produced)
	үйлдвэр (үйлдвэрийн)	factory (the factory's)
	үйлдвэржи- (үйлдвэржлээ)	to become industrialized (was industrialized)
	үйлдвэржилт (үйлдвэржилтийг)	industrialization (the industrialization; Acc.)

Example 2:

	хам (хамаар)	colleague, fellow member (by the colleague)
	хамт (хамтын)	together (communally)
	хамтра- (хамтраач)	to participate (please take part)
	хамтрал (хамтралаас)	collective (from the collective)
	хамтралжи- (хамтралжсан)	to be in the collective (was in the collective)

Example 3:

	хөдөл- (хөдөлсөн)	to move (moved)
	хөдөлмөр (хөдөлмөрөөр)	work (by working)
	хөдөлмөрчил (хөдөлмөрчлийн)	worker (the worker's)

3.3 Suffixes

The word "suffix" comes from the latin 'suffigere' = 'to fasten behind or underneath'. There are other kinds of affixes (e.g. 'prefixes' attached to the front or 'infixes' in the middle), but the Mongolian language does not use them.

There are **2 kinds of suffixes**:

3.3.1 Derivational Suffixes (Word-Building Suffixes)

When a suffix is added to an active or passive root or develops the word stem further **giving the original word a new meaning**, it is called a derivational suffix. In the Mongolian language, there are **a great many of these suffixes**. We will talk more thoroughly about word-building and derivation in Part II (Lexicology) on p. 41ff. For that reason, we only give a few examples here.

Example 1:

Derivational Suffix			New Words			
Classical	Cyrillic	Function	Classical	Cyrillic	English	
	-ч	**noun** ⇓ **noun** (profession)		эмч	medicine	→ doctor
				хулгайч	theft	→ thief
				сэтгүүлч	magazine	→ journalist
				жолооч	steering wheel	→ driver
				тогооч	wok	→ cook

Example 2:

	-г	**verb** ⇓ **noun**		зураг	to draw	→ picture
				бичиг	to write	→ script
				буда г	to paint	→ color
				зориг	to intend	→ courage
				гуниг	to grieve	→ grief, sorrow
				сураг	to inquire	→ news
				бүжиг	to dance	→ dance

Example 3:

	−pa[4]	adjective ⇓ verb		хөхрө−	blue	→ to become blue
				чангара−	strong	→ to grow strong
				томро−	large	→ to become large
				өтгөрө−	thick	→ to thicken

Example 4:

	−ла[4]	noun ⇓ verb		амла−	mouth	→ to promise
				цэвэрлэ−	clean	→ to clean
				гэрлэ−	yurt	→ to marry
				тэмдэглэ−	sign celebrate	→ to make a note, to
				номло−	book	→ to teach, preach
				ашигла−	profit	→ to exploit

Example 5:

	−мал[4]	verb ⇓ adjective		нэгдмэл	to unify	→ united
				хиймэл	to do, to make	→ artificial
				нэхмэл	to knit	→ knitted
				таримал	to plant	→ planted

Example 6: (inserted vowel)

	−рхуу[2]	noun ⇓ adjective		хүүхдэрхүү	child	→ childish
				бороорхуу	rain	→ rainy
				ёсорхуу	law	→ legalistic
				ноёрхуу	lord	→ lordly
				атаархуу	jealousy	→ jealous

Example 7:

	−мсаг[4]	adjective ⇓ adjective		ихэмсэг	great	→ majestic, haughty
				торгомсог	silken	→ silky
				хөнгөмсөг	light	→ careless, promiscuous
				гоёмсог	beautiful	→ elegant

3.3.2 Inflectional Suffixes (Word-Changing Suffixes)

When a suffix is added to a word stem and only gives the original word **a grammatical meaning** (no lexical meaning), it is called an **inflectional suffix.** These suffixes serve to **integrate a word into the sentence.** They **decline** word stems. We can divide these suffixes into **three groups** according to what kind of **relationship** they express. Please compare with Chapter 4 of the Appendix on page 418ff.

1.) Non-relational suffixes (only grammatical function):
- Plural suffix (PS)
- Voice suffix (VoS)
- Aspect suffix (AsS)

2.) Subordinating relational suffixes (syntagma building between two words):
- Case suffix (CS)
- Determining suffix (DS)

3.) Possessive relational suffixes (sentence building between two parts):
- Terminating suffix (TS): for subject-predicate relationship
- Reflexive suffix (RS): for subject-syntagma relationship

In this book, however, we will follow a **morphological structure** which is more relevant for learners. In **Part III (Morphology)** on page 70ff, we will consider the different parts of speech and their possible suffixes. Here is a short overview:

According to the traditional morphological structure, there are **6 groups** of inflectional suffixes:

for nouns:		**for verbs:**	
Plural	PS's (Plural suffixes)	Voice	VoS's (Voice suffixes)
Case	CS's (Case suffixes)	Aspect	AsS's (Aspect suffixes)
Reflexive	RS (Reflexive suffix)	Mood	MS's (Mood suffixes)

3.3.2.1 INFLECTIONAL SUFFIXES FOR NOUNS

The following three groups of suffixes can be added to nouns in the **prescribed order**, although it is not necessary for a suffix from each group to be present. However, **every noun must have a case suffix** but they are **not always expressed** (e.g. accusative). In such a case, we talk about a zero-suffix and mark it with "-ø".

☞ **Noun + PS + *CS* + RS**

Noun	Classical Mongolian	Cyrillic	English
		оюутнууд	student**s**
оюутан		оюутнуудын	the student**s**'
student		оюутнуудынхаа	my/your/his/her student**s**'
a)			
b)			
c)			
a) Би оюутн**ы**хаа хүсэлтийг сонсдог. (noun stem + ***case*** + **reflexive**)			
b) Би зарим оюутн**ы** хүсэлтийг сонсдог. (noun stem + ***case***)			
c) Би оюутн**уудын**хаа хүсэлтийг сонсдог. (noun stem + plural + ***case*** + **reflexive**)			
a) I listen to the requests ***of*** **my** student.			
b) I listen to the requests ***of*** some student**s**.			
c) I listen to the requests ***of*** **my** student**s**.			
		ах нар	older brothers
ах		ах нар***аас***	from the older brothers
older brother		ах нар***аас***аа	from my/your/his older brother
a)			
b)			
c)			
a) Чи ах***аас***аа энэ тухай асуугаарай! (noun stem + ***case*** + **reflexive**)			
b) Чи түүний ах***аас*** энэ тухай асуугаарай!. (noun stem + ***case***)			
c) Чи ах нар***аас***аа энэ тухай асуугаарай! (noun stem + plural + ***case*** + **reflexive**)			
a) Please ask **your** older brother about it.			
b) Please ask his older brother about it.			
c) Please ask **your** older brother**s** about it.			

3.3.2.2 INFLECTIONAL SUFFIXES FOR VERBS

The following three groups of suffixes can be added to verbs in the **prescribed order**, although it is not necessary for a suffix from each group to be present. However, **every verb needs a mood.** If no suffix is expressed, we're talking about the **active** voice and the **simple** aspect. Each group is explained thoroughly on page 113ff.

☞ **Verb + VoS + *AsS* + MS**

Verb	Classical Mongolian	Cyrillic	English
бари-		барив	built
бари-		барилуав	had (it) built, let be built
to build		барьчихав	have built
		барилучихав	have had (it) built

a) Би байшин барив.
b) Би байшин барилуав.
c) Би байшин барьчихав.
d) Би байшин барилучихав.

a) Би байшин барив.	(verb stem + **mood**)
b) Би байшин барилуав.	(verb stem + voice + **mood**)
c) Би байшин барьчихав.	(verb stem + ***aspect*** + **mood**)
d) Би байшин барилучихав.	(verb stem + voice + ***aspect*** + **mood**)

a) I built the house.
b) I had the house built.
c) I ***have built*** the house.
d) I have had the house built.

гүй-		гүйсэн	ran
гүй-		гүйлгэсэн	had (him/her) run
to run		гүйцгээсэн	ran ***together***
		гүйлгэцгээсэн	we ***together*** had (him) run

a) Би дэлгүүр луу гүйсэн.
b) Би хүүгээ дэлгүүр луу гүйлгэсэн.
c) Бид дэлгүүр луу гүйцгээсэн.
d) Бид хүүгээ дэлгүүр луу гүйлгэцгээсэн.

a) Би дэлгүүр луу гүйсэн.	(verb stem + **mood**)
b) Би хүүгээ дэлгүүр луу гүйлгэсэн.	(verb stem + voice + **mood**)
c) Бид дэлгүүр луу гүйцгээсэн.	(verb stem + ***aspect*** + **mood**)
d) Бид хүүгээ дэлгүүр луу гүйлгэцгээсэн.	(verb stem + voice + ***aspect*** + **mood**)

a) I ran to the store.
b) I had my son run to the store.
c) We ran to the store ***together***.
d) We (***together***) had our sons run to the store.

Part II:

Lexicology

Chapter 1:

Word-Building

pages 41-60

Chapter 2:

Special Parts of Lexis

pages 60-69

1. Word-Building

1.1 Derivational Suffixes (Word-Building Suffixes)

As we already mentioned on page 37, derivational suffixes (the proper term for the word-building suffixes) give a word a **new lexical meaning.** This method of building words is very important in the Mongolian language. Here is a list of derivational suffixes with examples.

Explanation of the tables:

1) In the English translation, the **original word**, to which the suffix is added, is in parentheses.
2) "–тан[4]" means that this suffix varies in compliance with **vowel harmony** with the following four vowels: "а, э, о, ө" → "тан, тэн, тон, төн"
3) "–тай[3]" means that this suffix varies in compliance with **vowel harmony** with the following three vowels: "а, э, о" → "тай, тэй, той"
4) "–мгай[3]" means that this suffix varies in compliance with **vowel harmony** with the following three vowels: "а, о, и" → "мгай, мгой, мгий"
5) "–уур[2]" means that this suffix varies in compliance with **vowel harmony** with the following two vowels: "у, ү" → "уур, үүр"
6) If a suffix is added to a strong word ending with "и" or "ь", the **"и" appears in the suffix**. (see rule on page 27)
7) It isn't always possible to clearly define the function of a derivational suffix. If it isn't clear, we've omitted naming the function.
8) It would go beyond the limitations of this book to give all the possible examples of all the suffixes. It is very important to know, however, which suffixes are used to build the most words, i.e. which are the most productive. For this reason the suffixes are listed here in the **order of their productivity**.
9) To add a suffix, sometimes an **inserted vowel** must be used. Some rules for these vowels - although they are not so strictly followed with derivational suffixes as for inflectional suffixes - are listed on pages 17-18.

1.1.1 Noun-Building

1.1.1.1 FROM NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

1	Classical Mongolian	Cyrillic	Translation and function if defined
	ᠴᠢ (ex. a-e)	–ч (ex. a-e)	changes a noun to an **activity** or **profession**
	ᠴᠢᠨ (ex. f-j)	–чин (ex. f-j)	
Example words			
a	ᠡᠮᠴᠢ	эмч	doctor (medicine)
b	ᠬᠤᠯᠭᠠᠶᠴᠢ	хулгайч	thief (theft)
c	ᠮᠣᠩᠭᠣᠯᠴᠢ	монголч	Mongolist (Mongolia)
d	ᠰᠡᠳᠭᠦᠯᠴᠢ	сэтгүүлч	journalist (journal, magazine)
e	ᠵᠣᠯᠣᠭᠴᠢ	жолооч	driver (steering wheel, reins)
f	ᠮᠠᠯᠴᠢᠨ	малчин	herdsman (livestock)
g	ᠮᠣᠯᠴᠢᠨ	молчин	carpenter (wood)
h	ᠨᠤᠭᠤᠳᠴᠢᠨ	нүүдэлчин	nomad (movement from place to place)
i	ᠦᠰᠴᠢᠨ	үсчин	hairdresser/barber (hair)
j	ᠭᠤᠶᠤᠯᠭᠠᠴᠢᠨ	гуйлгачин	beggar (begging)

2	ᠲᠠᠨ	–тан[4]	**with "..."** (usually a person)
a	ᠠᠮᠢᠲᠠᠨ	амьтан	animal, creature (life)
b	ᠣᠶᠤᠭᠠᠨ (ᠣᠶᠤᠨ)	оюутан (оюун)	student (mind)
c	ᠪᠤᠷᠤᠭᠤᠲᠠᠨ	бурууТан	wrongdoer, guilty one (wrong, guilt)
d	ᠡᠷᠳᠡᠮᠲᠡᠨ	эрдэмтэн	scholar (knowledge, wisdom)
e	ᠦᠨᠳᠡᠰᠲᠡᠨ	үндэстэн	nationality (root, base)
f	ᠬᠣᠯᠪᠣᠭᠠᠲᠣᠨ	холбооТон	ally (tie, bond, connection)
g	ᠥᠪᠴᠢᠨ (ᠥᠪᠴᠢᠨ)	өвчтөн (өвчин)	patient (sickness)
h	ᠥᠷᠡᠩᠭᠡᠲᠡᠨ	хөрөнгөтөн	capitalist (capital)

3	ᠪᠴᠢ	–вч *(inserted vowel)*	the "..."-**covering**
a	ᠴᠢᠬᠡᠪᠴᠢ	чихэвч	earmuff (ear)
b	ᠬᠥᠭᠡᠪᠴᠢ	хөхөвч	bra, (breast)
c	ᠤᠯᠠᠪᠴᠢ	улавч	inner sole (sole of foot)
d	ᠬᠦᠵᠦᠦᠪᠴᠢ	хүзүүвч	collar (neck)
e	ᠰᠠᠯᠬᠢᠪᠴᠢ	салхивч	small window, ventilator (wind)
f	ᠵᠡᠭᠡᠵᠢᠪᠴᠢ	цээживч	vest (chest)

4	ᠯᠠᠨ	–лан[4]	
a	ᠲᠠᠷᠢᠠᠯᠠᠨ	тариалан	plantation (grain, crop)
b	ᠳᠦᠭᠦᠶᠢᠯᠡᠨ	дугуйлан	club, course, circle (wheel, circle)
c	ᠬᠦᠷᠡᠶᠡᠯᠡᠨ	хүрээлэн	institute (border, fence, something enclosed)

5	ᠯᠠᠭ · ᠯᠡᠭ	–лаг[4]	
a	ᠨᠡᠶᠢᠭᠡᠮᠯᠡᠭ	нийгэмлэг	association, club, union (society, community)
b	ᠲᠥᠮᠥᠷᠯᠥᠭ	төмөрлөг	iron-like metal (iron, metal)
c	ᠪᠠᠶᠠᠯᠠᠭ	баялаг * (баян)	wealth, riches (rich, abundant)

Seldom used suffixes:

6	ᠰᠠᠨ · ᠰᠡᠨ	–с(ан)[4]	7	ᠵᠢ · ᠵᠢᠨ	–ж(ин)
8	ᠴᠠᠭ · ᠴᠡᠭ	–цаг[4]	9	ᠮ	–м
10	ᠮᠵᠢ	–мж	11	ᠮᠠᠳ	–мад[4]
12	ᠨᠴᠠᠷ	–нцар[4]	13	ᠭᠠᠢ · ᠭᠡᠢ	–гай[3]
14	ᠭᠲᠠᠢ · ᠭᠲᠡᠢ	–гтай[3]	15	ᠯᠠᠭ · ᠯᠡᠭ	–лаг[4]
16	ᠭᠠᠨᠠ · ᠭᠡᠨᠡ	–гана[4]	17	ᠯ	–л
18	ᠴᠠᠠ · ᠴᠡᠡ	–цаа[4]			

1.1.1.2 FROM VERBS

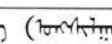
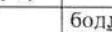
1	-ᠯᠠᠳ	-л	
a	ᠰᠠᠨᠠᠬᠤ	санал	idea, opinion, suggestion (to remember)
b	ᠲᠠᠨᠢᠬᠤ	танил	acquaintance (to recognize, to know)
c	ᠠᠪᠤᠷᠠᠬᠤ	аврал	rescue, salvation (to rescue, to save)
d	ᠠᠮᠢᠳᠤᠷᠠᠯ	амьдрал	life (to live)
e	ᠬᠦᠰᠡᠬᠦ	хүсэл	wish, desire (to want, to wish)
f	ᠬᠡᠪᠯᠡᠯ	хэвлэл	publication, press, printing (to print)
g	ᠢᠲᠭᠡᠯ	итгэл	faith, believe (to believe)
h	ᠨᠣᠮᠯᠠᠬᠤ	номлол	doctrine, teaching (to teach, to preach)
i	ᠲᠤᠤᠯᠠᠬᠤ	тоолол	counting, calendar (to count, to calculate)
j	ᠰᠣᠨᠢᠷᠬᠤᠯ	сонирхол	interest (to be interested)
k	ᠥᠷᠭᠡᠯ	өргөл	offering, donation (to lift up, to offer)
l	ᠡᠷᠡᠭᠦᠯ	ерөөл	blessing (to bless)

2	-ᠴᠢ -ᠴᠢ	-гч	Changes the verb to a **profession or activity**. This is an **NDS** (see page 149ff). Actually *another noun* should accompany these words (e.g. сурагч *хүн*), but over the years the noun was dropped, so this "-гч" suffix became a derivational suffix. *(inserted vowel)*
a	ᠰᠤᠷᠠᠭᠴᠢ	сурагч	pupil (to learn)
b	ᠪᠠᠷᠢᠭᠴᠢ	бариг**ч** [эх бариг**ч**]	someone who holds or builds [midwife] (to hold, to build)
c	ᠯᠠᠭᠴᠢ	ялаг**ч**	winner, conqueror (to win)
d	ᠠᠪᠠᠭᠴᠢ	аврагч	savior, rescuer (to save, to rescue)
e	ᠡᠷᠬᠡᠯᠡᠭᠴᠢ	эрхлэгч	manager (to be in charge, to manage)
f	ᠨᠢᠰᠡᠭᠴᠢ	нисэгч	pilot (to fly)
g	ᠣᠷᠴᠢᠭᠤᠯᠠᠭᠴᠢ	орчуулагч	translator (to translate)
h	ᠰᠣᠨᠰᠣᠭᠴᠢ	сонсогч	listener, audience (to listen)
i	ᠡᠷᠡᠭᠦᠨᠬᠡᠢᠯᠡᠭᠴᠢ	ерөнхийлөгч	president (to preside)
j	ᠲᠥᠯᠥᠭᠯᠡᠭᠴᠢ	төлөөлөгч	representative, delegate (to represent)

3	-ᠠᠨ (-ᠨ/) -ᠤ (-ᠤ/) (ex. a-k, o-x) -ᠦ (-ᠦ/) (*ex. l-n)	-аа(н)[4] (ex. a-n) -гаа(н)[4] (ex. o-t) -га[2] (ex.u-x)	This suffix is in most cases built with a **long vowel**. The **hidden "n"** returns when other suffixes are added. Sometimes the hidden "n" is part of the Cyrillic word stem (ex. h-k). The y-form (*) grew from assimilation and usually appears after sibilants (ex. l-n). In ex. u-x, the suffix doesn't result in a long vowel, so there is no "n" and a different pronunciation.
a	ᠰᠠᠨᠠᠨ (ᠰᠠᠨᠠᠨ/)	санаа	idea, thought (to remember, to think)
b	ᠬᠠᠷᠠᠨ (ᠬᠠᠷᠠᠨ/)	хараа	sight (to see)
c	ᠢᠯᠡᠭᠦ (ᠢᠯᠡᠭᠦ/)	илэ	food (to eat)

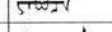
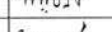
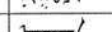
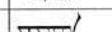
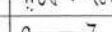
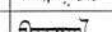
d	ᠮᠡᠳᠡᠭᠦ (ᠮᠡᠳᠡᠭᠦ/)	мэдэ	news (to know)
e	ᠬᠣᠯᠪᠣᠭᠤᠨ (ᠬᠣᠯᠪᠣᠭᠤᠨ/)	холбоо	connection, communication (to contact)
f	ᠲᠣᠭᠤᠴᠠᠭᠤᠨ (ᠲᠣᠭᠤᠴᠠᠭᠤᠨ/)	тооцоо	calculation, bill (to calculate, to work out)
g	ᠥᠷᠭᠡᠭᠦ (ᠥᠷᠭᠡᠭᠦ/)	өргөө	palace (to lift up, to offer)
h	ᠵᠥᠷᠯᠥᠩᠭᠦ (ᠵᠥᠷᠯᠥᠩᠭᠦ/)	зөрөлдөөн	conflict (to argue, to disagree)
i	ᠴᠤᠭᠯᠠᠭᠠᠨ (ᠴᠤᠭᠯᠠᠭᠠᠨ/)	цуглаан	meeting, assembly (to gather)
j	ᠬᠥᠳᠡᠯᠭᠡᠭᠡᠨ (ᠬᠥᠳᠡᠯᠭᠡᠭᠡᠨ/)	хөдөлгөөн	movement (to move)
k	ᠤᠷᠠᠯᠳᠠᠭᠠᠨ (ᠤᠷᠠᠯᠳᠠᠭᠠᠨ/)	уралдаан	competition, race (to compete)
l	ᠠᠴᠠ (ᠠᠴᠠᠭ/)	ачаа	load, cargo, burden (to load)
m	ᠬᠡᠮᠵᠡᠭᠡ (ᠬᠡᠮᠵᠡᠭᠡ/)	хэмжээ	size, measurement (to measure)
n	ᠬᠥᠰᠥᠭᠡᠡ (ᠬᠥᠰᠥᠭᠡᠡ/)	хөшөө	monument (to harden)
o	ᠠᠵᠢᠯᠯᠠᠭᠠ (ᠠᠵᠢᠯᠯᠠᠭᠠ/)	ажиллагаа	work, activity (to work)
p	ᠪᠠᠲᠠᠯᠭᠠᠭᠠ (ᠪᠠᠲᠠᠯᠭᠠᠭᠠ/)	баталгаа	guarantee, confirmation (to confirm)
q	ᠲᠥᠯᠥᠪᠯᠥᠭᠥᠡ (ᠲᠥᠯᠥᠪᠯᠥᠭᠥᠡ/)	төлөвлөгөө	plan (to plan)
r	ᠰᠢᠨᠵᠢᠯᠭᠡᠡ (ᠰᠢᠨᠵᠢᠯᠭᠡᠡ/)	шинжилгээ	research, study (to examine)
s	ᠦᠢᠯᠴᠢᠯᠭᠡᠡ (ᠦᠢᠯᠴᠢᠯᠭᠡᠡ/)	үйлчилгээ	service (to serve)
t	ᠡᠮᠴᠢᠯᠭᠡᠡ	эмчилгээ	medical treatment, health care (to cure)
u	ᠣᠷᠴᠢᠭᠤᠯᠠᠭᠠ	орчуулга	translation (to translate)
v	ᠴᠤᠭᠯᠤᠭᠤᠯᠠᠭᠠ	цуглуулга	collection (to collect)
w	ᠲᠠᠨᠢᠤᠯᠠᠭᠠ	таниулга	elucidation, introduction (to introduce)
x	ᠪᠤᠰᠭᠠ	босго	threshold (to raise)

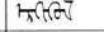
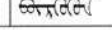
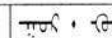
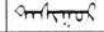
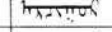
4	-ᠪᠠᠷ (-ᠮᠠᠷ)	-бар[4], вар[4] (-мар[4])	"-мар" (-ᠮᠠᠷ) is rare
a	ᠳᠠᠭᠠᠪᠠᠷ	дагавар	suffix (to follow)
b	ᠴᠢᠳᠠᠪᠠᠷ	чадвар	ability (to be able to)
c	ᠨᠠᠶᠢᠳᠪᠠᠷ	найдвар	hope (to trust, to hope)
d	ᠰᠢᠶᠢᠳᠪᠡᠷ	шийдвэр	decision (to decide)
e	ᠲᠠᠲᠪᠠᠷ	татвар	tax (to pull)
f	ᠥᠭᠦᠯᠪᠡᠷ	өгүүлбэр	sentence (to tell)
g	ᠦᠢᠯᠳᠪᠡᠷ	үйлдвэр	factory (to do, to produce)
h	ᠬᠣᠨᠵᠪᠣᠷ	хонжвор	winning, lottery prize (to win in lottery)
i	ᠬᠥᠳᠥᠯᠮᠥᠷ	хөдөлмөр	labor (to move)

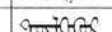
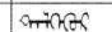
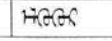
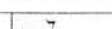
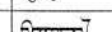
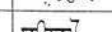
5		−лэг, −лөг (ex.a-d) −лга, −лго (ex.e-i) −лага,−лого (ex. j-l)	The different Cyrillic suffixes are a result of some pronunciation rules. (see p. 23ff) Ex. e is an exception.
a		мэдлэг	knowledge (to know)
b		үзлэг	inspection (to see)
c		эмнэлэг	hospital (to cure)
d		цөллөг	exile (to exile, to banish)
e		гэрчилгээ	certificate (to testify)
f		урилга	invitation (to invite)
g		угаалга	laundry (to wash)
h		сахилга	discipline (to observe, to keep)
i		зорилго	longterm aim, goal (to intend, to aim at)
j	()	уншлага	reading (to read)
k		бодлого	math problem, policy (to think)
l		бослого	rebellion, revolt (to rebel, to rise)

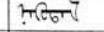
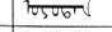
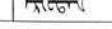
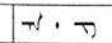
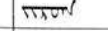
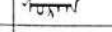
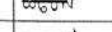
6		−лт	
a		ялалт	victory (to win)
b		хамгаалалт	defense, protection (to defend, to protect)
c		амжилт	success (to achieve in the required time)
d		эхлэлт	start, beginning (to start, to begin)
e		биелэлт	realization, accomplishment (to be realized)
f		бооlт	bandage, wrapper (to wrap, to bind)
g		зорилт	immediate goal, aim (to purpose, to intend)
h		өсөлт	growth (to grow up)
i		хөгжилт	development (to develop)

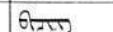
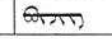
7		−мж	
a		санамж	user's manual, lesson* (to remember) [*event that reminds me of something]
b		тусламж	help (to help)
c		үзэмж	appearance (to look)
d		нийлэмж	agreement, harmony (to unite, to correspond)
e		ойлгомж	understanding (to understand)
f		болгоомж	caution, heed (to be careful)

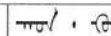
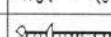
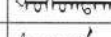
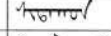
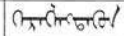
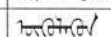
8		−ц	
a		ургац	harvest (for plants to grow)
b		явц	process (to go)
c		сууц	residence, living quarters (to sit, to live)
d		нууц	secret (to hide)
e		орц	entrance (to enter)
f		зарц	servant (to employ as a servant)

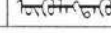
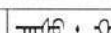
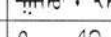
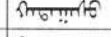
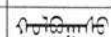
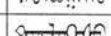
9		−уул[2]	
a		харуул	guard (to see)
b		бариул	handle (to hold)
c		эргүүл	patrol (to turn or move around)
d		бүрхүүл	lamp shade, cover (to cover)

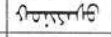
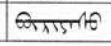
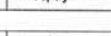
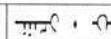
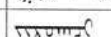
10		−уур[2]	
a		ташуур	whip (to beat, to hit)
b	 ()	алчуур (арчи−)	scarf, kerchief (to wipe, to cleanse)
c		зодуур	beating staff (to beat)
d		түлхүүр	key (to push)
e		дэлгүүр	shop (to spread, to uncover)
f		өлгүүр	hanger, coat rack (to hang)

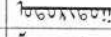
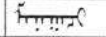
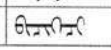
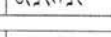
11		−дал[4]	
a		буудал	staying place, landing stage, stop (to settle down)
b		суудал	seat (to sit down)
c		захидал	letter (to ask someone to do something)
d		нүүдэл	move, nomadic movement (to move)
e		оёдол	seam, sewing (to sew)
f		өргөдөл	petition (to offer, to lift up)

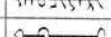
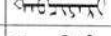
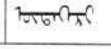
12		−г	
a		зураг	picture (to draw)
b		сураг	news (to inquire)
c		будаг	paint (to paint)
d		зориг	courage (to intend, to aim at)
e		бичиг	script (to write)
f		бүжиг	dance (to dance)

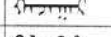
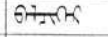
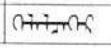
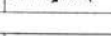
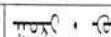
13		−хуун[2]	
a		тусагдахуун	object (to be hit, to be reflected)
b		шатахуун	fuel (to burn)
c		хэрэглэгдэхүүн	necessary material (to be used)
d		өгүүлэхүүн	predicate (to speak / lit.)
e		өгүүлэгдэхүүн	subject (to be spoken)

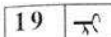
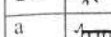
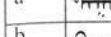
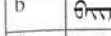
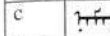
14		−аас (н)[4]	
a		хадаас	nail (to nail, to drive)
b		бичээс	inscription (to write)
c		холбоос	link, hyphen (to connect)
d		төлөөс	compensation (to pay)
e		хуниас	folds (to fold)
f		бүрээс	yurt covering, cover (to cover)

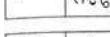
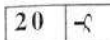
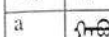
15		−аач[4]	
a		зураач	painter (to draw)
b		удирдаач	conductor (to lead, to guide)
c		манаач	watchman, guard (to guard)
d		бичээч	typist, clerk (to write)

16		−аар[4]	
a		хавчаар	clip (to oppress, to squeeze)
b		тэвчээр	self-control, patience (to abstain from)
c		үдээр	leather tie used in a yurt wall, fastening thong (to fasten, to bind)

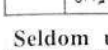
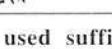
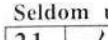
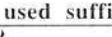
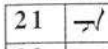
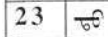
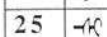
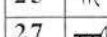
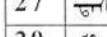
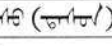
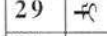
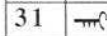
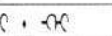
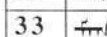
17		−аар[4]	
a		хазаар	bridle (to bite)
b		бэлчээр	pasture (to pasture)
c		хэлэлцээр	agreement (to discuss)

18	 ()	−уурь[2] (−уулъ[2])	
a		сургууль	school (to teach)
b		сонгууль	election (to choose, to elect)
c		зовуурь	pain (to suffer)

19		−р, −рь	
a		суурь	foundation (to sit)
b		байр	place, apartment (to be)
c		нэмэр	contribution (to add)
d		хэвтэр	place for animals to lie down (to lie down)

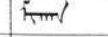
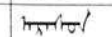
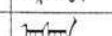
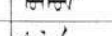
20		−р	
a		хавдар	swelling, tumor (to swell, to puff up)
b		цайр	zinc (to become white, to turn pale)
c		шүүр	broom, filter (to filter)
d		бэлчир	confluence, nice pasture area (to be in a pasture)

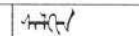
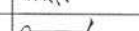
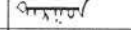
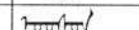
Seldom used suffixes:

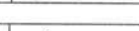
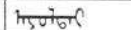
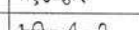
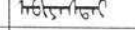
21		−з	22		−мт
23		−д	24		−с(н)
25		−ш	26		−м
27		−дас(н)[4]	28		−ль/−л
29		−мь	30		−в
31		−хай[5]	32		−мсар[4]
33		−маг[4]	34		−лан(г)[4]/н(г)
35		−галан(г)[4]	36		−хуй[2]
37		−аал[4]	38		−мшиг
39		−нтаг[4]			

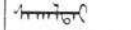
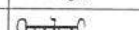
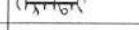
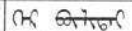
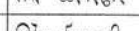
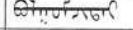
1.1.2 Adjective-Building

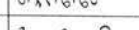
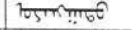
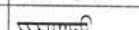
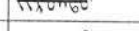
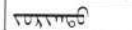
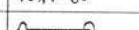
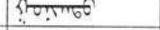
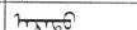
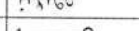
1.1.2.1 FROM NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

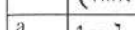
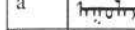
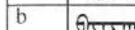
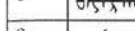
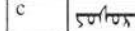
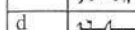
	Classical Mongolian	Cyrillic	English translation or explanation	
1	-/	−н	There is a disagreement whether or not this "n" is a derivational suffix. Some argue that it is as **hidden "n"** part of the classical stem (which in fact is true) and therefore can't be considered as a derivational suffix. **Ex. d** would then be an exception. Others say, this "n" gives certain nouns adjective characteristics and is used - like in English - to build **compound words.**	
a		махан	meat --- [e.g. soup]	(meat)
b		арьсан	leather --- [e.g. jacket]	(leather)
c		усан	water --- [e.g. bed]	(water)
d		шилэн	glass --- [e.g. door]	(glass)
e		чулуун	stone --- [e.g. age]	(stone)
f		даавуун	cotton --- [e.g. gloves]	(cotton)

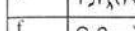
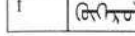
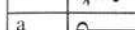
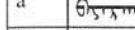
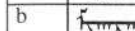
g		салхин	wind --- [e.g. mill] (wind)
h		таргaн	fat, corpulent (fatness, corpulence)
i		ноосон	woolen (wool)
j		модон	wooden (wood)

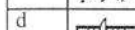
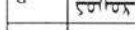
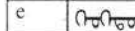
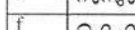
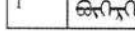
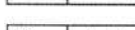
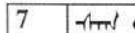
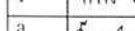
2		−тай[3]	This suffix is actually the **comitative CS**, which has become a derivational suffix. Note the opposite form of "тай" which is the negative particle "-гүй". It isn't added directly in the Classical script. In English, the translations of "гүй" would vary from "in---", "un---", "not ---" or even new words.
a	(...)	аюултай (−гүй)	dangerous (danger)
b	(...)	авьяастай (−гүй)	talented (talent)
c	(...)	ухаантай (−гүй)	intelligent, clever (wisdom, intellect)
d	(...)	сахалтай (−гүй)	bearded (beard)
e	(...)	гэрэлтэй (−гүй)	bright (light)
f	 (...)	гэр бүлтэй (−гүй)	married (family)
g	 (...)	болгоомжтой (−гүй)	careful (caution)
h	 (...)	ойлгомжтой (−гүй)	clear, comprehensible (understanding)

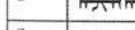
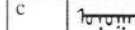
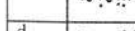
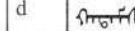
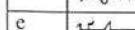
3		−т	This suffix is originally a short form of the CS "тай".
a		баримтат	documentary (fact, proof)
b		уянгат	melodious (melody)
c		зураг	illustrated, television = "with picture" (picture)
d		зоригт	courageous (courage)
e		гунигт	sad (sorrow, sadness)
f		нэрт	famous, well-known (name)
g		эрдэнэт	precious (treasure)
h		хүндэт	dear, honored (respect)

4		−лаг[4]	
a		махлаг	corpulent, fleshy, fat (meat)
b		баатарлаг	heroic, courageous (hero)
c		яслаг	bony (bone)
d		ноёлог (ноён)	lordly, haughty, dominant (lord, chief)
e		тослог	oily (oil)
f		эвлэг	harmonious, polite, courteous (harmony)
g		үслэг	hairy (hair)
h		хөрөнгөлөг	wealthy (wealth)

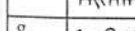
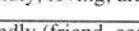
5	( )	−рхаг[4] (−лхаг[4]) (inserted vowel)	
a		уулархаг	hilly, mountainous (mountain)
b		баярхаг (баян)	boastful of one's wealth, quite rich (joy, gladness)
c		ёсорхог	ceremonious, formalistic (law, custom)
d		элсэрхэг	sandy, sand-like (sand)
e		эзэрхэг (эзэн)	despotic, aggressive (lord, ruler)
f		хөөрэлхэг	boastful, swaggering (cheer, joy)

6		−рхуу[2] (inserted vowel)	* compare with suffix 4
a		баярхуу (баян)	behaving like a rich person (wealth)
b		махархуу	fleshy, meaty (meat)
c		ноёрхуу (ноён)	behaving like a lord (lord, ruler)
d		ёсархуу	formalistic, ceremonious (law)
e		хүүхдэрхүү	childish (child)
f		бөхархуу	behaving like a wrestler (wrestler)

7		−саг[4]	This suffix expresses a light form of dependancy
a		махсаг	fond of meat (meat)
b		ажилсаг	hard-working, workaholic (work)
c		унаасаг	fond of transportation means = too lazy to walk (transportation)
d		хадамсаг	affectionate to one's in-laws (in-laws)
e		эмсэг	fond of women, womanizing (female)
f		элэгсэг	friendly, loving, affectionate (liver)
g		нөхөрсөг	friendly (friend, comrade)

8		−мсаг[4] (inserted vowel)	
a		нялхамсаг	babyish, baby-like (new-born baby)
b		хүүхэмсэг (хүүхэн)	womanizing, girlish, lady-like (lady, woman)
c		ихамсэг	proud, majestic (big, much)
d		өөриймсөг (өөрийн)	like oneself (self, own)

Seldom used suffixes:

9		−саг[4]	10		−хан[4]

1.1.2.2 FROM VERBS

1		−мал[4]	
a		бари<u>мал</u>	sculptural (to build)
b		тари<u>мал</u>	planted (to plant)
c		нэх<u>мэл</u>	knitted, woven (to knit, to weave)
d		бич<u>мэл</u>	handwritten (to write)
e		хий<u>мэл</u>	artificial (to make)
f		оё<u>мол</u>	(hand-)sewn (to sew)
g		өргө<u>мөл</u>	adopted, step--- [e.g. brother] (to lift up)
h		өнж<u>мөл</u>	last year's, yesterday's (to pass over, to skip a day, to stay one day or one year)

2	(-)	−уу[2]	
a		хат<u>уу</u>	hard, stiff (to dry up, to harden)
b		гарг<u>уу</u>	unusual, outstanding (to go out)
c		согт<u>уу</u>	drunken (to get/be drunk)
d		эрг<u>үү</u>	foolish (to spin, to turn around)
e		хөлд<u>үү</u>	frozen (to freeze)
f		зүд<u>үү</u>	poor, suffering (to suffer)
g		бари<u>у</u>	tight (to hold)

3		−мгай[3]	Similar in meaning to suffix 10 Ex. e is an **exception** (noun--->adjective)
a		чада<u>мгай</u>	competent, capable, skillful (to be able to)
b		сура<u>мгай</u>	trained, experienced (to learn)
c		гара<u>мгай</u>	outstanding (to go out)
d		түрэ<u>мгий</u>	aggressive, brutal (to force, to press)
e		нүүрэ<u>мгий</u>	shameless, brazen (face)
f		хэлэ<u>мгий</u>	eloquent, voluble (to tell)

4		−мхай[3]	Suffix 4/5 are **similar** and **often interchangeable** (ex.a, d) and in their **meanings similar to suffix 8**. Adjectives with suffixes 4/5 express the character traits not as strongly as adjectives with suffix 8.
a		ай<u>мхай</u>/ ай<u>мтгай</u>	timid (to be afraid)
b		идэ<u>мхий</u>	gluttonous (to eat)
c		мэдэ<u>мхий</u>	know-it-all (to know)
d		ичи<u>мхий</u>/ ичи<u>мтгий</u>	shy, embarrassed (to be embarrassed)

5		−мтгай[3]	see suffix 4
a		даса<u>мтгай</u>/ даса<u>мхай</u>	familiar (to get used to)
b		муула<u>мтгай</u>/ муула<u>мхай</u>	gossipy (to slander)
c		марта<u>мтгай</u>/ марта<u>мхай</u>	forgetful (to forget)
d		тогло<u>мтгой</u>/ тогло<u>мхой</u>	fun-loving (to play, to make fun of)
e		цочи<u>мтгой</u>/ цочи<u>мхой</u>	easily frightened (to be startled)
f		зочло<u>мтгой</u>/ зочло<u>мхой</u>	hospitable (to visit, to receive visitors)

6		−уун[2]	
a		хал<u>уун</u>	hot (to warm up)
b		нял<u>уун</u>	extremely sweet (to smear)
c		хөш<u>үүн</u>	stiff, rigid (to stiffen)
d		өрн<u>үүн</u>	abundant, thriving (to spread, to grow)

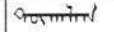
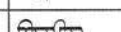
7		−нгуй[2]	This suffix adds the meaning "quite ---, rather ---" to the adjectives. * Ex. d is an exception: adverb ---> adjective
a		ядра<u>нгуй</u>	weak (to be tired)
b		боловсро<u>нгуй</u>	developed, refined (to mature, to develop)
c		хоцро<u>нгуй</u>	underdeveloped (to be late)
d		дээрэ<u>нгүй</u> *	arrogant, haughty (above)
e		хичээ<u>нгүй</u>	diligent, enthusiastic (to strive)
f		өршөө<u>нгүй</u>	merciful (to pardon)

8		−аа[4]	Compare with the note to suffix 4
a		уйм<u>раа</u>	nervous, agitated (to feel/be uneasy)
b		чалч<u>аа</u>	idle talk (to chatter, to talk nonsense)
c		мох<u>оо</u>	blunt, dull, crooked (to become blunt/dull)
d		үгл<u>ээ</u>	grumbling, scolding (to grumble, to scold)

9		−хай[3]	Ex. c is mostly used together with other adjectives.
a		шуна<u>хай</u>	greedy (to be greedy)
b		тодор<u>хой</u>	clear, direct (to become clear)
c		хэтэр<u>хий</u>	extremely, too --- (to go over the limit)
d		нэвтэр<u>хий</u>	thoroughly, perfectly (to penetrate, to pass through)

10		−маг[4]	compare with suffix 3
a		чад<u>маг</u>	skillful, competent (to be able to)
b		сур<u>маг</u>	trained (to learn)
c		холи<u>мог</u>	mixed (to mix)

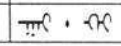
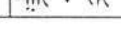
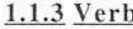
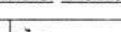
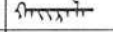
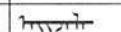
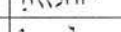
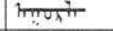
d		шийдмэг	decisive (to decide)

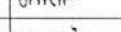
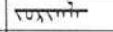
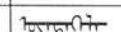
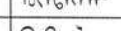
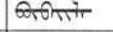
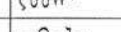
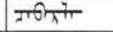
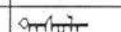
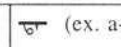
11		-г	
a		тухлаг	comfortable (to relax)
b		бүрхэг	gloomy, dark (to cover up)
c		сийрэг	scattered, not thick (to scatter, to become thin)

Seldom used suffixes:

12		-уур[2]	13		-хай[3]
14		-нхай[3]	15		-н(г)
16		-гай[3]			

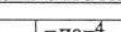
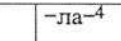
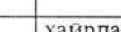
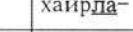
1.1.3 Verb-Building

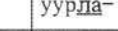
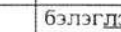
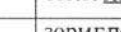
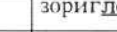
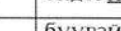
1		-ла-[4]	Usually added to a **noun**. However, it could be joined to an adjective (ex. i), an interjection (ex. h), an adverb (ex.j).
a		хайрла-	to love (love)
b		найзла-	to be friends (friend)
c		уурла-	to be angry (anger)
d		бэлэглэ-	to give a present (gift)
e		зоригло-	to intend (aim, courage)
f		өндөглө-	to lay eggs (egg)
g		бүүвэйлэ-	to soothe a child with a lullaby (lullaby)
h		ёоло-	to groan (ouch!)
i		цэвэрлэ-	to clean (clean, neat)
j		тасла-	to interrupt, to cut (completely)

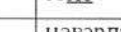
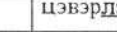
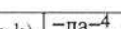
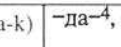
2	 (ex. a-k)  (ex. l-o)	-да-[4], (ex. a-k) -д-, -т- (ex. l-o)	Can be added to the negative particle "-гүй" (ex.j-k).
a		эртдэ-	to be early (early)
b		намда-	to be (too) low, to subside (low)
c		томдо-	to be (too) big (big, large)
d		мууда-	to worsen, to decline (bad)
e		илүүдэ-	to exceed, to be unnecessary (more)
f		зөвдө-	to be right (correct)
g		айрагда-	to be placed among the first 5 in a horse race ('airag') [expl.:the winners' horses are crowned with 'airag']
h		утасда-	to call, to phone (wire, thread = telephone)
i		хөгжимдө-	to play a musical instrument (music)
j		ажилгүйдэ-	to be jobless (without work)

k		азгүйдэ-	to be unlucky (without luck)
l		багад-	to be/become small/insufficient (small, little)
m		сайд- (сайн)	to reconcile, to be friends again (good)
n		буруут-/бурууд-	to be wrong, to be at fault (wrong)
o		илүүт-	to be or to have too much, to exceed (more)

3		-та-[4]	
a		уста-	to perish, to become annihilated (water)
b		гэрэлтэ-	to shine (light)
c		гэмтэ-	to be hurt, damaged or wounded (sin, damage)
d		сэвтэ-	to be/become flawed/rough (defect, flaw)
e		хорхойто-	for decay to set in, to crave for (worms, insects)

4		-чла-[4]	
a		санаачла-	to suggest (idea, suggestion)
b		айлчла-	to visit (household, family)
c		үгчлэ-	to act according to instructions (word)
d		эзгүйчлэ-	to take advantage of someone's absence ("without lord"=absent, deserted)
e		монголчло-	to translate into Mongolian, to mongolize (Mongolia)
f		өнгөчлө-	to select the best things for oneself (color)

5		-ши-	
a		амтши-	to develop a taste or liking for (taste)
b		гарши-	to be experienced at doing something (hand)
c		гэмши-	to repent, to regret (sin, damage)
d		үүлши-	to become cloudy (cloud)
e		бороошиі-	to be/become rainy (rain)
f		зөвши-	to discuss, to consider (correct, right)

6		-жи-[4]	
a		малжи-	to acquire/enlarge livestock (animal, livestock)
b		амаржи-	to give birth (peace, rest)
c		зүлэгжи-	to be turned into a meadow (green meadow, grass)
d		өнөржи-	to become a large family (abounding in relatives)
e		өвөлжи-	to pass the winter season (winter)
f		хаваржи-	to pass the spring season (spring)

7		−ра−4	
a		амьдра−	to live, to exist (alive)
b		томро−	to become big (big, large)
c		ногоорo− (ногоон)	to become green (green)
d		хөгшрө− (хөгшин)	to become old (old)

8	•	−рха−4 (inserted vowels)	
a		найзарха−	to behave like a friend (friend)
b		атаарха−	to envy (envy, jealousy)
c		ихэрхэ−	to be arrogant (much, very)
d		сонирхо−	to be interested (interest, news)

9		−шаа−4	general meaning : "to **consider as** ---"
a		муушаа−	to blame, to gossip, to disapprove (bad)
b		зүрхшээ−	to lose heart, to consider as too difficult (heart)
c		ойшоо−	to pay attention, to heed (mind, intellect)
d		зөвшөө−	to approve, to agree (right, correct)

10		−на−4	
a		замна−	to follow a road [abstract meaning] (road)
b		эмнэ−	to treat (medicine)
c		жигнэ−	to steam (compress)
d		зөгнө−	to foretell, to prophesy (presentiment, foreboding)

11		−с− (inserted vowels)	This suffix is used for comparison and its meaning is: "to become ---er".
a		багасс−	to become smaller (small)
b		ихэс−	to become bigger, to increase (many, a lot)
c		түргэс− (түргэн)	to become quicker, to accelerate (quick)
d		өргөс− (өргөн)	to become wider (wide, broad)

Seldom used suffixes:

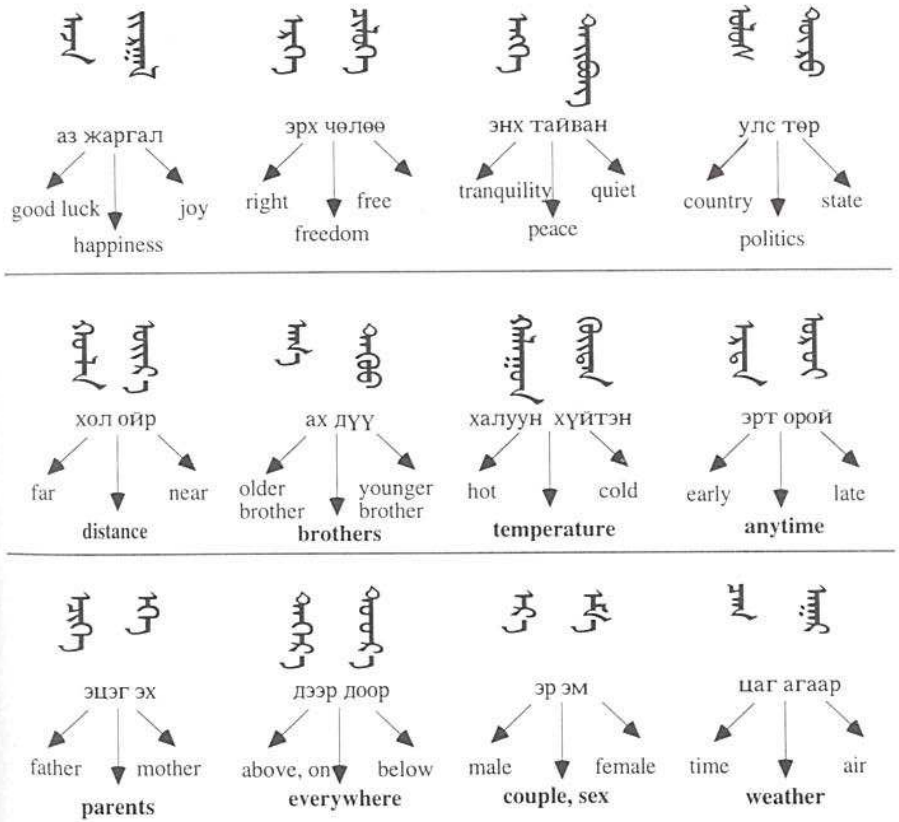
12		−шира−4	13		−жира−4
14		−ца−4	15	•	−са−4
16		−вчла−4	17	• •	−гана−4
18		−тна−4	19		−гна−4
20	•	−жигна−4	21		−хира4

1.2 Word-Building by Word Combinations

The Mongolian language is enriched by many word combinations which express ideas. These can be divided into three groups.

1.2.1 Coordinate Word Combinations (Compound Words)

In such compound words **neither of the two words is more important than the other.** These combinations do not use one word to describe or clarify the other. Note that the word pairs may be similar (land/state) or opposite (man/woman).

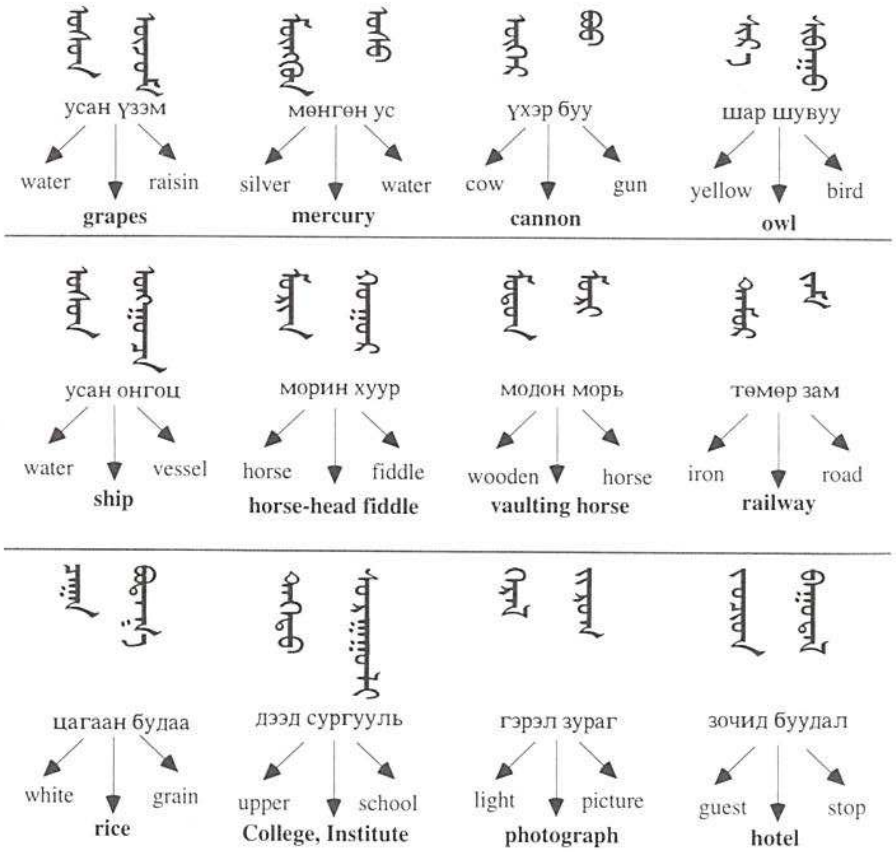


1.2.2 Subordinate Word Combinations

As the name expresses, this combination has a main word and an assistant word which attributively clarifies the main word. We have subordinate combinations in English as well (e.g. wind + mill = windmill). In the Mongolian language, these can be added with or without the help of a suffix.

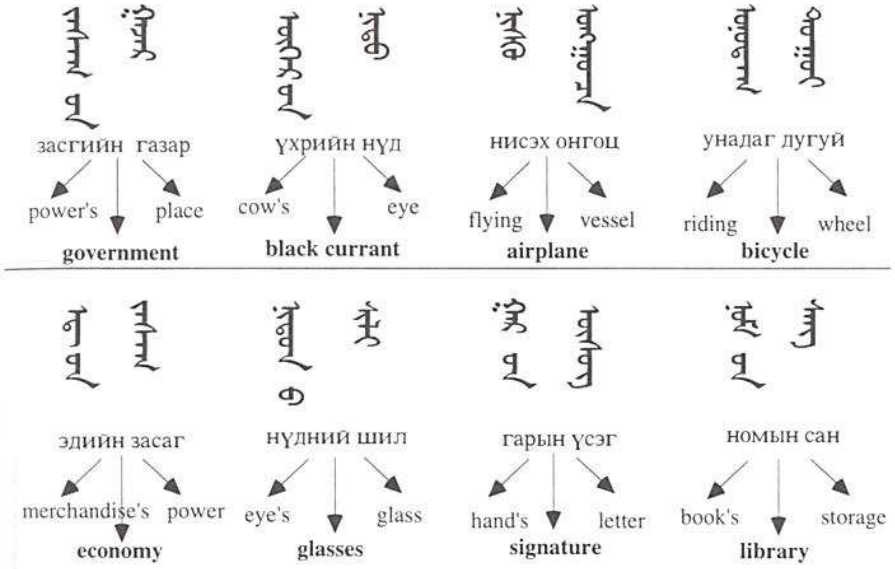
1.2.2.1 SUBORDINATE WORD COMBINATIONS WITHOUT SUFFIXES

Usually the subordinated word is an **adjective** or a **noun used as an adjective.**



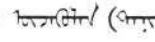
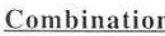
1.2.2.2 SUBORDINATE WORD COMBINATIONS WITH INFLECTIONAL SUFFIXES

Here the subordinated word is seldom an adjective, but a verb with an NDS or a noun with a CS.



Notice that sometimes the second or even the third word in a longer combination is dropped and the subordinated word is used alone as the idea. It can be confusing if the student doesn't know the origin of the idea.

Examples:

лавлах (товчоо)		information office
нягтлан (бодох хүн)		book-keeper, accountant
үзүүлэн (таниулах материал)		visual aid

1.2.3 Repetitive Word Combinations

The same word is repeated, similar to the English 'sing-song' or 'hurly-burly'. The meaning is more similar to word combinations in English with '---ware' (silverware) or '--- goods' (leather goods). The meaning could be **very wide** or **very narrow** depending on the idea which the speaker has in mind:

"талх малх" could be translated as 'bakery things', 'basic food stuff' or even only 'foodstuff', depending on the situation and the speaker. In the same way,

"ном зом" could refer to 'books in general', 'stationery items' or even 'knowledge'.

Such repetitive combinations are used only in the **colloquial language** and therefore have no Classical Mongolian writing. The **general rule** is:

If a word begins with a vowel, **"m" is usually added** to the second word. If the word begins with any consonant other than "m", that consonant is **replaced with an "m"** in the repeated word. If the word starts with an "m", the "m" is **replaced with "c" or "з"** in the repeated word:

Ex.: адуу мадуу, үзэг мүзэг, талх малх, аар саар, мах сах, ном зом (сом)

2. SPECIAL PARTS OF LEXIS

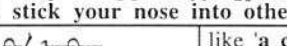
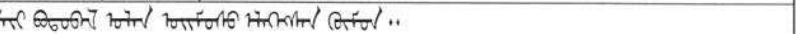
2.1 Idioms

The Mongolian language is full of idioms. Two or more words can form an idiom. The individual words lose their own meanings, and the combination creates a new meaning.

Examples:

1. хөл алда– "to lose one's foot"	something like **'to walk on air'; 'to be over the moon'** is used for situations that are not common, every day situations. Usually linked to some happy feeling, though not necessarily.
Түүний ээж хөдөөнөөс ирсэнд <u>хөл алдан</u> баярлав. He **walked on air** (and rejoiced) when his mother came from the countryside.	
Найзаа үзээд тэр <u>хөл алдаж</u> байна. He sees his friend and **walks on air.**	
2. ам бузарла– "to defile one's mouth"	something like **'to put one's foot in one's mouth'** a negative expression: it would have been better not to have asked or made the suggestion
Миний хүсэлт <u>ам бузарласан</u> хэрэг болов. I **put my foot in my mouth** with my suggestion.	
Түүнээс мөнгө гуйж дэмий <u>ам бузарлав</u>. By asking him for money **I put my foot in my mouth**.	
3. сүнс зайла– "to have one's spirit leave"	something like **'one's heart leaps into one's throat'** to be very afraid of something
Би аянга буухаас <u>сүнсээ зайлтал</u> айдаг. I am so afraid of lightning that **my heart leaps into my throat**.	
Би гэнэт чоно үзээд <u>сүнс зайлав</u>. I suddenly saw the wolf and **my heart leapt into my throat**.	
4. магнай хагара– "to break one's forehead"	like **'to be in seventh heaven'; 'to be on cloud 9'** to be overjoyed
Шалгалт өгөөд онц аваад <u>магнай хагартлаа</u> баярлав. I received the best grade on the test I had taken and **was in seventh heaven**.	
Би энэ зун эцэг эхтэйгээ уулзвал <u>магнай хагартлаа</u> баярлана. When I see my parents this summer, **I'll be on cloud 9.**	

5. алтан гартай хүн "person with golden hands"	like **'to be good with one's hands'** a person who has a natural ability to fix things or do things not formally learned
Манай ээж <u>алтан гартай</u> хүн. My mother is **good with her hands.**	
6. арван хуруу тэгш хүн "a person equal to ten fingers"	like **'well-rounded person'** a person of many gifts
Би бүх талаараа сайн сайхан <u>арван хуруу тэгш хүн</u> байхыг хүсдэг. I wish I were a more **well-rounded person**.	
7. амыг тагла– "to cork the mouth"	like **'to cork the mouth'**
Дорж тэдний <u>амыг таглаад</u> буцаажээ. Dorj sent them home **having made them cork their mouths.**	
Би нэг удаа <u>амаа таглуулснаас</u> хойш энэ тухай ярихаа больсон. After **my mouth had been corked** on that topic, I've stopped talking about it.	
8. гар хумхи– "to fold one's hands/arms"	like **'lazy bones'; 'to slack[en] off'; 'to laze around'**
Зах зээлийн үед <u>гар хумхих</u> аргагүй. In the days of a market economy, you can't afford **to laze around**.	
Чи хийх ёстой ажлаа хий, битгий <u>гар хумхиж</u> суу. Do the work you need to do and **don't slacken off!**	
9. ам өг– "to give one's mouth"	like **'to give one's word'** to make a promise
Би архи уухгүй гэж ээждээ <u>ам өгсөн</u>. I **gave my mother my word** not to drink alcohol.	
10. хүний сэтгэл үймүүл– "to disturb someone's soul"	like **'to disturb someone's feelings'; 'to play with someone's affections'; 'to send mixed messages'** to confuse someone by something you say
Энэ хүн надад дэмий юм ярьж <u>сэтгэл үймүүлчихлээ</u>. This person had me totally **confused** by the useless thing he said.	
Түүнтэй суухгүй бол <u>сэтгэлийг</u> нь бүү <u>үймүүл</u>! **Don't play with her emotions**, if you don't have good intensions!	

11. хошуу дүрэ– "to stick one's beak into something"	like **'to put one's nose in someone else's business'**
 Бусдын хэрэгт бүү <u>хошуу дүр</u>! **Don't stick your nose into other people's business!**	
12.  эцгээ өвчи– "to skin one's father"	like **'a chip off the old block'**
 Энэ хүүхэд яг л <u>эцгээ өвчжээ</u>. This child is a **chip off the old block.**	
13. морь хара– "to look after the horse"	like **'I've got to go'; 'to powder one's nose'** (for women), **'to see a man about a horse'**(for men) to need a restroom/toilet
 Би <u>морь хараад</u> ирье. **I need to see a man about a horse.**	 Би <u>морь хармаар</u> байна. **I've got to go**, be right back.
14. олон оймс элэ– "to wear out many socks"	something like **'to have been around the block'** to have more experience than someone else
 Би чамайг бодвол <u>олон оймс элээсэн</u> хүн. In comparison to you, **I have more experience.**	

For further idioms, we refer to the book by **Г.Аким**: *"Монгол өвөрмөц хэлцийн товч тайлбар толь"*, Улсын хэвлэлийн газар, Улаанбаатар, 1982

2.2 Homonyms

Homonyms ('homo' = 'same' and 'nym' = 'name') are words which have the same **pronunciation and spelling** but have different meanings. In English, the word 'mail' would be an example:
mail: a) postal matter b) a form of armor using metal links or plates.
If we look at Classical Mongolian, there are not so many homonyms (**true homonyms**). However in the Cyrillic Script, there are many (**false homonyms**) because of the phonetic influences on the Cyrillic (e.g. long vowels, diphthongs, the assimilation process).

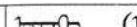
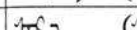
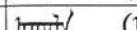
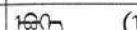
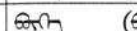
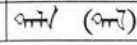
2.2.1 Lexical Homonyms

These homonyms are formed with words from the same parts of speech: all nouns, all verbs, etc.

2.2.1.1 TRUE LEXICAL HOMONYMS

a		ач	1) grandchild	2) favor, benefit, result, help		
b		тал	1) field, steppe	2) side	3) favor	4) half
c		ой	1) anniversary	2) forest	3) mind, intellect	
d		хөрөнгө	1) yeast, seed	2) capital, property		
e		нэхэ–	1) to demand	2) to weave, to knit		

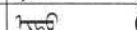
2.2.1.2 FALSE LEXICAL HOMONYMS

a		өтөг	bear	(manure, dung)	
b		сар	month	(moon)	
c		үүр	nest	(daybreak)	
d		уул	mountain	(original)	
e		өвөг	ancestor	(bird's crest)	
f		бөх	wrestler, strong	(camel's hump)	
g		дал	70	(livestock barn)	(shoulder blade)

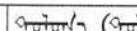
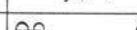
2.2.2 Morphological Homonyms

These homonyms are made up of **different parts of speech**, usually a noun/verb pair. Also here, you can tell from the Classical Mongolian Script which ones are true homonyms.

2.2.2.1 TRUE MORPHOLOGICAL HOMONYMS

a		ор	(ор!)	bed	(come in!)	
b		гар	(гар!)	hand	(go out!)	
c		нүд	(нүд!)	eye	(smash!/crush!)	

2.2.2.2 FALSE MORPHOLOGICAL HOMONYMS

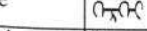
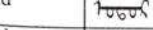
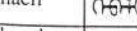
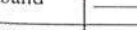
a		долоо	(долоо!)	seven	(lick!)
b		буу	(буу!)	gun	(get down!)
c		бод	(бод!)	the 3 large livestock: horse, camel, cow (think!)	

2.3 Synonyms

Synonyms have the **same or similar meaning**, but are spelled completely different. We can catagorize the synonyms of the Mongolian language in the following four groups:

2.3.1 Stylistic Synonyms

Literary words are not only used in literature, but they are most commonly used there. In comparison, words from colloquial usage are never really written. Also, polite forms or terms of respect can never be used for oneself, but always refer to those of a higher class or rank.

	Term of Respect:		Literary Language:		Colloquial Language:	
wife		гэргий		эхнэр		авгай
hand		мутар		гар		
meal		зоог		хоол		
stomach		хэвлий		гэдэс		
husband				нөхөр		хар хүн
money				төгрөг		цаас

2.3.2 Loan - Word Synonyms

During various epochs of Mongolian history, many **foreign words became fashionable** in the Mongolian language, even though there were already Mongolian words for these ideas. After the communist revolution, for example, **many Russian words** were used. These loan words, albeit with Mongolian pronunciation, are still common in colloquial usage, while the Mongolian equivalent is used in the written language.

English:	Loan word:		Pronunciation:	Cyrillic:	Classical:
table	стол	(Russian)	stol	ширээ	
wardrobe	шкаф	(Russian)	shkaf	шүүгээ	
cake	торт	(Italian)	tort	бялуу	
skirt	юбка	(French)	upick	банзал	
ice-cream	мороженое	(Russian)	maroojeng	мөхөөлдөс	

The following words were used in the written language for a long time, because there was no equivalent in Mongolian. But for different reasons, modern scholars **created Mongolian words**.

	Loan Words:		Created Mongolian Words:		
Korea	Гуулин (Chinese)		Солонгос		
Sunday	ням (Tibetan)		бүтэн сайн өдөр		full good day
Saturday	бямба (Tibetan)		хагас сайн өдөр		half good day
telephone	телефон (English)		утас		thread, wire
officer	офицер (German)		цэргийн дарга		soldier's chief
furniture	мебель (German)		тавилга		things to put down

2.3.3 Dialect Synonyms

Words from various Mongolian dialects are also used in common Mongolian language. These words have become acceptable in literary Mongolian and are widely known, but can still be traced back to their dialect origin.

English:	Khalkh-Dialect:		Oirat-Dialect:		Buriat-Dialect:	
girl	охин		сэвгэр		басган	
whip	ташуур		малиа			
white	цагаан		гялаан			

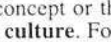
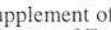
2.3.4 Taboo Synonyms (Euphemisms)

Some people (mostly **rural people**) don't like to use certain words like 'wolf', 'snake', 'to die', etc. Such words are taboo for them. Therefore, certain synonyms have developed:

Common word (which is avoided)			Taboo-synonym (which is used instead)		
чоно		wolf	боохой, гайхал		'wolf', strange
могой		snake	хайрхан		merciful
сувд		pearl	шижир шүр		pure coral
үхрийн мялзан		cattle plague	цагаан өвгөн		earth god (represented in the 'Tsam' dance)
үхэ-		to die	нас бара-		to finish one's age
			бурхан бол-		to become a Buddha
all possible words which have become taboo			хэцүү нэрт		to have a difficult name

2.4 Indigenous Mongolian Vocabulary

Every language has **original words** which are difficult to translate into other languages because the concept or the object is not present elsewhere. Most special vocabulary is a **window into that culture**. For this reason, it is very helpful for students of the Mongolian language to know these words. This is a very **limited selection**. For a more complete list we refer the readers to the supplement of the book by **Ц. Дашдондов** *"Англи хэлний хураангуй үгсийн толь"* (Dictionary of English abbreviations), Ulan Bator, 1983.

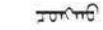
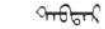
Classical	Cyrillic	Translation and Explanation
	хорхог	a kind of Irish Stew prepared with hot stones in a pot (often a milk can) over an open fire
	боодог	meal of goat or marmot (hot stones are put into the gutted-out belly of the animal and it cooks from the inside out)
	ааруул	dried, very hard curds
	бантан	meat soup with lumps of flour (often eaten after a hangover)
	банш	meat dumplings cooked in water or soup
	бууз	large, steamed meat dumplings (eaten at the festival meal on Tsagaan Sar = lunar New Year celebration)
	хуушуур	fried meat dumplings
	өрөм	creamy milk skin, eaten on bread
	айраг	kumiss (fermented mare's milk)
	дээж	the part of the meal offered to the gods
	араг	loosely woven basket for collecting dung
	домбо	decorated copper jug used like a thermos
	дээл	traditional Mongolian tunic/dress/coat which is buttoned on the side
	баавар	round metal (silver) decoration on a horse's saddle
	овоо	pile of rocks on a mountain top where travelers appease the spirits
	наадам	festival of the 3 manly sports: horse racing, archery, and wrestling (always on July 11/12th)
	оторло-	to take one's herd and belongings to a better pasture, often far away

2.5 Loan Words

As with all other languages, Mongolian has borrowed many foreign words. Many came in hundreds of years ago, have changed and look now like Mongolian words.

2.5.1 Integration of Loan Words

The pronunciation of foreign words changed considerably after coming into Mongolian:

грва-чань	(Tibetan)	лацан		temple
цуан-хү	(Chinese)	цонх		window
ноомос	(Greek)	ном		book
дифтэра	(Greek)	дэвтэр		notebook

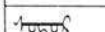
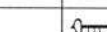
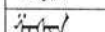
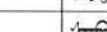
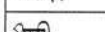
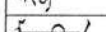
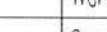
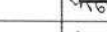
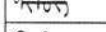
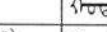
Sometimes the meaning also changed after time. "Чамин", for example, was a market in Beijing where Mongolians used to buy luxury items. Today, "чамин" means 'luxury' or 'exquisite'.

Before the revolution, most of the foreign words came from other Asian languages. After the revolution, many European words entered the language through Russian.

2.5.2 Loan Words from Different Languages

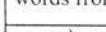
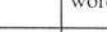
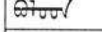
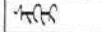
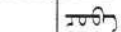
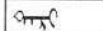
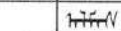
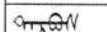
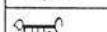
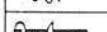
2.5.2.1 SANSKRIT, UIGHUR

Religious vocabulary was introduced together with the introduction of Buddhism.

words from Sanskrit:			words from Uighur:		
	сударь	Sutra		хувраг	monk
	шашин	religion		суврага	stupa, pagoda
	тив	continent		лавай	conch trumpet
	махбод	body (element)		титэм	crown
	шүлэг	poem		хутагт	religious title
	боть	volume (of books)		хөрш	neighbor

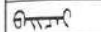
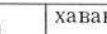
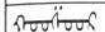
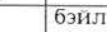
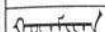
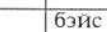
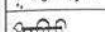
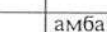
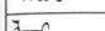
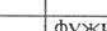
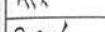
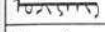
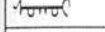
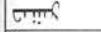
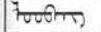
2.5.2.2 PERSIAN, ARABIC

These are words that have to do mainly with **goods and wares**.

words from Persian:			words from Arabic:		
	болд	steel		архи	alcohol
	чихэр	candy, sweets		цув	raincoat
	дарь	gunpowder		алмас	diamond
	тарвас	watermelon		саван	soap
	тоть	parrot			
	байшин	building, house			
	дарга	boss, leader, chief			

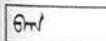
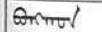
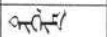
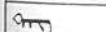
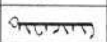
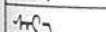
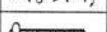
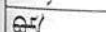
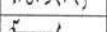
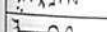
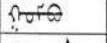
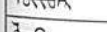
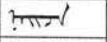
2.5.2.3 CHINESE, MANCHURIAN

Mongolia had very close contact with China and Manchuria, resulting in the absorption of many words into the Mongolian language. These words usually have to do with **household items, handicrafts, construction**, etc. From Manchurian came **administrative titles and concepts**.

words from Chinese:			words from Manchurian:		
	байцаа	cabbage		хаван	officer
	хуушуур	khuushuur (dish)		бэйл	administrative title
	гоймон	noodles		бэйс	administrative title
	даавуу	(cotton) material		амбан	governor
	лийр	pear		фүжин	lady
	банз	board, plank			
	мужаан	carpenter			
	шохой	chalk			
	ваар	vase, tile			
	лууван	carrot			
	яндан	stove pipe			

2.5.2.4 TIBETAN

Many **Buddhist concepts** came from Tibet and are expressed with Tibetan words, including names for the **days of the week.** Almost all foreign given names come from the Tibetan language.

	баг	mask		маяг	style, manner
	бунхан	tomb, grave		дэглэм	rule, order
	тэг	zero		диваажин	paradise
	сая	million		хонзон	revenge, grudge
	бум	100,000		мадаг	fault, error, mistake
	гарчиг	table of contents		гомбо	patron of the Mongolians
	луйвар	cheat, swindle		найз	friend
	луу	dragon		бурам	cane sugar

2.5.2.5 EUROPEAN

Most **technological words** come from Europe. Many 'international' words which we know from English, came originally from Greek or Latin. One example is 'television', a combination of a Greek prefix and a Latin word.

words from Russian:			words from English:		
[illegible]	станц	station	[illegible]	клуб	club
[illegible]	размер	size (of clothing)	[illegible]	спорт	sport
[illegible]	район	district	[illegible]	бокс	boxing
[illegible]	винтов	rifle	[illegible]	театр	theatre
[illegible]	вокзал	train station	[illegible]	телевиз	television
[illegible]	печень	cookie/biscuit			
[illegible]	шит	electrical box			
[illegible]	пропуск	identity card			
[illegible]	расписани	schedule			

words from German and Italian:			words from French and Dutch:		
[illegible]	цемент (Ger.)	cement	[illegible]	билет (French)	ticket
[illegible]	контор (Ger.)	office	[illegible]	такси (French)	taxi
[illegible]	рам (Ger.)	frame	[illegible]	прокурор (French)	prosecutor
[illegible]	лозунг (Ger.)	slogan, password	[illegible]	фронт (French)	front
[illegible]	лагерь (Ger.)	camp	[illegible]	плакат (French)	poster
[illegible]	опер (Ital.)	opera	[illegible]	талон (French)	coupon, voucher
[illegible]	концерт (Ital.)	concert	[illegible]	банк (French)	bank
[illegible]	бензин (Ital.)	petrol, gasoline	[illegible]	руль (Dutch)	steering wheel

words from Latin:					
[illegible]	машин	car, machine	[illegible]	архив	archives, files
[illegible]	радио	radio	[illegible]	трактор	tractor
[illegible]	комбинат	group of enterprises	[illegible]	локтор	doctor
[illegible]	колони	colony	[illegible]	материал	material
[illegible]	агент	agent	[illegible]	градус	degree
[illegible]	облигац	debenture, bond	[illegible]	арми	army
[illegible]	фабрик	factory	[illegible]	компас	compass
[illegible]	хими	chemistry	[illegible]	экспорт	export
[illegible]	акт	file	[illegible]	аспирант	graduate student

words from Greek:					
[illegible]	телефон	telephone	[illegible]	атом	atom
[illegible]	систем	system	[illegible]	геометр	geometry
[illegible]	музей	museum	[illegible]	практик	practice
[illegible]	бактер	bacteria	[illegible]	техник	technique
[illegible]	фото	photograph	[illegible]	килограмм	kilogram
[illegible]	стадион	stadium	[illegible]	километр	kilometer
[illegible]	физик	physics			

Part III:

Morphology

Chapter 1:

Concrete Parts of Speech

pages 72 - 281

Real Parts of Speech
Nouns
Verbs
Adwords

Representative Parts of Speech
Prowords

Chapter 2:

Abstract Parts of Speech

pages 282 - 358

Postpositions
Conjunctions
Particles
Interjections

In Part III of this book, called Morphology (from Greek 'morphe' = 'form'), we will study **morphemes**. They can be divided into **2 groups**:

1.) **Lexical morphemes** (also called **'derivational suffixes'**) which are used to form the words that enter a dictionary. (In English like 'work**er**', 'legal**istic**', 'pleas**ure**'.)

2.) **Grammatical morphemes** which give lexical morphemes a new grammatical meaning. (In English like 'workers', 'legalistic**ally**', 'pleasures'.)

In Part II (Lexicology) we studied the different lexical or derivational morphemes and how they are used to build words. In this part we will mainly deal with the different **grammatical morphemes and their rules of application**. We will also look at some analytical forms when necessary.

Notice that the rules of the Cyrillic and the Classical script often do not agree. We might say that there are two grammars. For further explanation see Part I of the book.

For the Classical Mongolian script we stick in this book to the **revised forms**, which have been used in Inner Mongolia for some time. Where these forms differ from the old traditional forms, which appear in old historical works or some newly published books, we try to give also these old forms under the note 'old forms'.

The **parts of speech**, which actually are the subject of morphology, can be divided into **2 groups.** We will consider each group and its members with their appropriate grammatical morphemes (= inflectional suffixes):

1. Concrete parts of speech:

1.1 Real parts of speech:
- **1.1.1 Noun** (person, place or thing; has a name)
- **1.1.2 Verb** (words of action, state of being)
- **1.1.3 Adword*** (adjective, adverb, numeral/number)

1.2 Representative parts of speech:
- **1.2.1 Proword*** (Pronoun)

(* these are two new terms that we created to express Mongolian grammatical ideas)

2. Abstract parts of speech:
- **2.1 Postposition** (following word)
- **2.2 Conjunction** (joining word)
- **2.3 Particle** (piece of word)
- **2.4 Interjection** (exclamations, onomatopoetic word)

Concrete parts of speech make up the **language structure**. In Chapter 4 of the **Appendix** (p.418ff) the reader will find the '**structural and functional system of relational suffixes**' which shows this structure clearly.
Abstract parts of speech are used to **express speech**.

1. CONCRETE PARTS OF SPEECH

1.1 Real Parts of Speech

1.1.1 Nouns

Words which describe people, animals, objects, bodies, ideas and appearances, and answer the question **'who?' or 'what?'** are called nouns.
As mentioned at the end of Part I, three different kinds of inflectional suffixes can be added to nouns. Their grammatical meaning and subsequent order is as follows:

1. Plural **2. Case** **3. Reflexivization**

In order to understand better the following suffixes and their rules, we must mention again that Cyrillic and Classical Mongolian suffix rules sometimes disagree. This becomes especially clear with nouns with a **hidden "n"/"g"**. It's important to be able to discern whether the "n"/"g" belongs to the suffix or the word stem. ('Hidden' means that the letter belongs to the Classical Mongolian word stem, but doesn't always appear.)

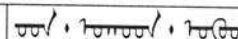
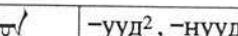
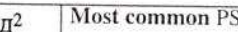
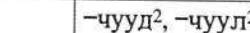
1.1.1.1 PLURAL

In contrast to English, the plural form has **no great meaning**. Originally, there were very strict rules for plural usage, but through the centuries they have been lost, and we could almost say that you can get by without the plural. Basically, **the plural form is never used if it is already clear from the context that the noun is plural**. In English, this basic rule would lead to the following impossible sentences:
I bought three **apple** yesterday. Did you see all these **child**? How many **book** do you need? **Horse** and **cow** are grazing in the meadow.

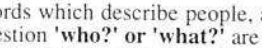
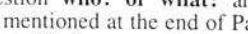
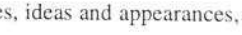
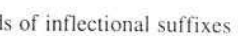
There are **five different plural suffixes**. Although it was probably pretty clear earlier which suffix was used where, **we cannot draw those parameters today**. So the rule that the "нар" suffix is for intelligent beings is still valid, but it would be dangerous to apply it strictly, otherwise students would be thought to have no intellect! It makes more sense to memorize the plural suffixes for the most important nouns.

1.1.1.1.1 Plural Suffixes (PS's)

Overview:

1.	 •  • 	–УУД², –НУУД²	**Most common** PS
2.	• 	–ЧУУД², –ЧУУЛ²	**Collective** PS
3.		НАР	Usually for **intelligent beings**
4.		–Д	mainly used for the suffixes "–Ч(ИД)" and "–ГЧ(ИД)"
5.		–С	**rare**, only for certain words

1.1.1.1.1.1 Plural Suffix "–УУД" (Most Common PS)

Suffix	**Rules:** for nouns, ending with p	**Examples in Cyrillic and Classical Script**	**English translation**
(uud/üüd)	☞ **consonants except "n"**		books
			heroes
			yurts
			children
(nuxud)	☞ **vowels or "n"** (Notice that the form  is written without the usual ü-letter-stroke in order to keep it from being confused with  (= comrades).		students
			seas
(nügüd)			birds
			tables
–УУД –ҮҮД	☞ **all consonants and vowels**	номУУД	books
		гарУУД	hands
		баатарУУД	heroes
		оюутнУУД	students
		гэрҮҮД	yurts
	Pay attention:	хҮҮхдҮҮД	children
	• Short vowels are dropped	бугУУД (бугэ)	deer
		ханУУД (хана)	walls
		хулганУУД (хулганэ)	mice
	• "–Н, –Ъ" stay in suffix	анг□УД (анг□)	classes
		тарн□УД (тарн□)	mantras
		сургуул□УД (сургуулъ)	schools
	• The hidden "n" appears	шувуу□ УУД	birds
		тэмээ□ҮҮД	camels
		ширээ□ҮҮД	tables
		өрөө□ҮҮД	rooms
		талх□УУД	loaves of bread
	• The hidden "g" appears	байшин□УУД	houses
		сан□УУД	treasures
		хүрээлэн□ҮҮД	institutes
	• Inserted vowel "n" is needed for long vowels and diphthongs.	гэрээ□ҮҮД	contracts
		харандаа□УУД	pencils
		бөө□ҮҮД	shamans
		дэгдээхий□ҮҮД	chicks
		далай□УУД	seas
		туулай□УУД	hares

1.1.1.1.1.2 Plural Suffix "– чууд, – чуул" (Collective PS)

Suffix	Example Classical M.	Example Cyrillic	English translation
(–čuud/–čüüd) – чууд, –чүүд (–čuul/–čüül) –чуул, –чүүл The first suffix is the most common although the second can also always be used.	•	монголчууд/–чуул	Mongolians
	•	англичууд/–чуул	the British
	•	Дарханчууд/–чуул	residents of Darhan
	•	залуучууд/–чуул	youths
	•	багачууд/–чуул	little ones
	•	баячууд/–чуул	the wealthy
	•	ядуучууд/–чуул	the poor
	•	сайчууд/–чуул	the good
	•	эхчүүд/–чүүл	mothers
	•	эмэгтэйчүүд/–чүүл	women
	•	бүсгүйчүүд/–чүүл	young women
	•	эрэгтэйчүүд/–чүүл	men
	•	ажилгүйчүүд/–чүүл	the unemployed

1.1.1.1.1.3 Plural Suffix "нар"

Suffix	Ex. Classical M.	Ex. Cyrillic	English translation
(nar) нар This suffix is the only PS which is not added directly to the Cyrillic word stem. * Note, that this suffix, when added to the 1st and 3rd person plural, strengthens the plural meaning.	•	багш нар	teachers
	•	тогооч нар	cooks
	•	эмч нар	doctors
	•	ах нар	older brothers
	•	дүү нар	younger siblings
	•	эгч нар	older sisters
	•	лам нар	Lamas
	•	жолооч нар	drivers
	•	авга нар	paternal relatives
	•	нагац нар	maternal relatives
	•	ажилтан нар	employees
	•	сүсэгтэн нар	believers
	•	дарга нар	leaders, bosses
	• *	бид нар	we (all)
	• *	тэд нар	they (all)

1.1.1.1.1.4 Plural Suffix "– д"

This suffix is used mainly when the noun ends with the derivational suffixes **"–ч(ин)"/"–гч"**. The final "н" is dropped and the PS "д" is written instead. Note that the hidden *"и"* reappears. This suffix is also used with a few other nouns in which one of the following **final letters** is dropped when the PS is added: "н, р, л, й.(ь)".

Suffix	Example Classical	Example Cyrillic	English transl.
(–d) – д ☞ derivational suffixes: • –ч(ин) • –гч ☞ final letters н, р, л, й (ь)	• (•)	ажилчид	workers
	• (•)	малчид	herdsmen
	• (•)	зохиолчид	writers
	• (•)	сэтгүүлчид	journalists
	• (•)	сурагчид	pupils
	• (•)	худалдагчид	salesclerks
	• (•)	охид (охин)	daughters, girls
	• (•)	хаад (хаан)	kings
	• (•)	өвгөд (өвгөн)	old men
	• (•)	нөхөд (нөхөр)	comrades
	• (•)	түшмэд (түшмэл)	officials
	• (•)	ноход (нохой)	dogs
	• (• , •)	морьд (морь / морин)	horses

1.1.1.1.1.5 Plural Suffix "– с"

Suffix	Example Classical	Ex. Cyrillic	English translation
(–s) –с This suffix is **not exchanged** with another vowel, but **added** to the final letter. **Note,** that some words have a ***hidden "n"*** which is dropped when the suffix is added.	•	үйлс	deeds
	•	эрс	men
	•	нэрс	names
	•	залуус	youths
	•	үрс	descendants
	•	дээдэс	ancestors, upper class
	•	доодос	lower class
	• (•)	юмс (юман)	things
	• (•)	үгс (үгэн)	words
	• (•)	уулс (уулан)	mountains

1.1.1.1.2 Plural Usage Without Suffixes

Mongolian PS's, as already mentioned, are only used when it is not already clear from the **overall context** that the plural is intended. Below we have described the circumstances when **plural usage is unnecessary**.

1.1.1.1.2.1 Numerals

a) Надад <u>гурван</u> хуурцаг бий.
I have **three** tapes.

b) Би <u>таван</u> найзтайгаа кино үзэв.
I saw a film together with my **five** friends.

c) Би дэлгүүрээс <u>олон</u> ном авлаа.
I bought **many** books at the store.

d) Өнөөдөр <u>зарим</u> оюутан ирсэнгүй.
Some students didn't come today.

e) Манай хүү <u>цөөн</u> алдаа хийсэн.
Our son made **few** mistakes.

f) Ангид <u>хэдэн</u> сандал байна вэ?
How many chairs are in the classroom?

1.1.1.1.2.2 Repeated Words

a) <u>Орон орны</u> төлөөлөгч иржээ.
Delegates came from different **countries.**

b) <u>Гэр гэр</u>тээ харьцгаа!
Go back to your **homes**!

c) Энд <u>хэн хэн</u> байна вэ?
Who (all) is here?

d) Та дэлгүүрээс <u>юу юу</u> авсан бэ?
What (all) did you get at the store?

e) Тэр хөдөөнөөс ирээд <u>хүн хүн</u>тэй уулзсаар явна.
He came from the countryside and has been meeting with many **people**.

f) Би Берлинд байхдаа <u>сайхан сайхан</u> юм идлэг байсан.
When I was in Berlin, I ate many good **things**.

g) Манай хүү <u>байх байх</u>гүй юм дандаа нэхдэг.
My son constantly demands extraordinary **things.**
("... being and not being things.")

h) Тэр олон жил <u>чадах чадах</u>гүй ажил хийж байна.
For many years he has been going about doing all **kinds of work**.
("...things he can and things he can't do.")

1.1.1.1.2.3 Verbs that Demand Plural

a) Худаг дээр үхэр <u>цугларчээ.</u>
The cattle **gathered** at the well.

b) Баяр ширээн дээр мөнгө <u>дэлгэжээ</u>.
Bayar **spread out** the money on the table.

c) Би ууланд мөөг <u>түүсэн</u>.
I **picked** mushrooms on the mountain.

d) Сараа урилга <u>тарааж</u> байна.
Saraa **is distributing** invitations.

e) Талд хонь <u>бэлчиж</u> байна.
The sheep are **grazing** on the steppe.

f) Бид намар хүнсний ногоо <u>хураадаг</u>.
We always **harvest** vegetables in the fall.

1.1.1.1.2.4 Quantitative Words

a) <u>сүрэг</u> чоно
a **pack** of wolves

b) <u>хайрцаг</u> янжуур
a **pack** of cigarettes

c) <u>боодол</u> цаас
a **packet** of paper

d) <u>багц</u> мод
a **bundle** of wood

e) <u>атга</u> чихэр
a **handful** of candies

f) <u>хэсэг</u> ном
a **pile/stack** of books

1.1.1.1.2.5 Abstract Ideas

a) <u>санаа</u>
idea

b) <u>хайр</u>
love

c) <u>мөрөөдөл</u>
longing

d) <u>бодол</u>
thought

1.1.1.2 CASES

The Mongolian language has **8 cases** (7 traditional and 1 new). A lot of English prepositions are expressed in Mongolian with a case (see pages 90-100). We will study the 8 cases with their suffixes and applications.

When adding a Cyrillic suffix, some vowels are dropped. We refer to the **spelling rules** (p. 23-25) which contain many helpful hints for the usage of the case suffixes. **Genitive, dative-locative and ablative cases** require the **hidden "n"** in the Classical Mongolian word stem. In some cases, the **hidden "g"** appears.

We can find out which case a word belongs to by **asking certain questions**. For this reason the appropriate question and answer sentences are given.

Example in English:

My **mother** sat at the table in *Dad's* bathrobe, and gave me *my* plate .

a) **Who** sat at the table?	→ my **mother**	**nominative** (subject)
b) *Whose* mother sat at the table?	→ *my* mother	*genitive* (possessive)
c) *Whose* plate did my mother give?	→ *my* plate	*genitive* (possessive)
d) In *whose* bathrobe?	→ *Dad's* bathrobe	*genitive* (possessive)
e) (To) whom did she give the plate?	→ (to) me	dative (indirect object)
f) Whom or what did she give me?	→ the plate	accusative (direct object)

1.1.1.2.1 The 8 Cases and Their Suffixes (CS's)

Overview:

Cases:	Questions:	Cyrillic Suffixes:	Classical Suffixes:
Nominative	**who?**		
Genitive	**whose?**	**–ын, –ийн, –ы, –ий, –н**	ᠤᠨ ᠂ ᠤ ᠂ ᠢᠨ
Dative-Locative	**(to) whom?**	**–д, –т**	ᠳᠤ ᠂ ᠲᠤ
Accusative	**whom?**	**–ыг, –ийг, –г , –ø**	ᠶᠢ ᠂ ᠢ ᠂ (–ø)
Ablative	**from whom?**	**–аас**[4]	ᠡᠴᠡ
Instrumental	**by whom?**	**–аар**[4]	ᠪᠠᠷ ᠂ ᠤᠷ
Comitative	**with whom?**	**–тай**[3]	ᠲᠠᠢ
Directive	**towards whom?**	**руу**[2] **(луу**[2]**)**	ᠯᠤᠭᠤ

1.1.1.2.1.1 Nominative Case

The nominative has no suffixes. **The subject of a sentence stands in the nominative case.**

1.1.1.2.1.1.1 Question Words

Who went?	**Father** went.	**What**'s this?	**This** is a table.
ᠬᠡᠨ ᠶᠠᠪᠰᠠᠨ ᠪᠡ᠃	ᠠᠪ ᠶᠠᠪᠰᠠᠨ᠃᠃	ᠶᠡᠨᠡ ᠶᠤᠮᠤ ᠪᠡ᠃	ᠶᠡᠨᠡ – ᠱᠢᠷᠡᠭᠡ᠃᠃
Хэн явсан бэ?	Аав явсан.	Энэ юу вэ?	Энэ – ширээ.
Who (all) came?		**Dorj, Baatar, and Naraa** came.	
ᠬᠡᠨ ᠬᠡᠨ ᠢᠷᠡᠪᠡ ᠪᠡ ᠃		ᠳᠣᠷᠵ ᠂ ᠪᠠᠭᠠᠲᠠᠷ ᠂ ᠨᠠᠷ ᠠᠨ ᠤ ᠢᠷᠡᠪᠡ᠃᠃	
Хэн хэн ирсэн бэ?		Дорж, Баатар, Нараа гурав ирсэн.	
What (all) is there?		There are **books, notebooks, and bags** there.	
ᠲᠡᠨᠳ ᠶᠤᠮᠤ ᠶᠤᠮᠤ ᠪᠠᠢᠨᠠ ᠪᠡ᠃		ᠲᠡᠨᠳ ᠨᠣᠮ ᠂ ᠲᠡᠪᠲᠡᠷ ᠂ ᠴᠦᠩᠬ ᠪᠠᠢᠨᠠ᠃᠃	
Тэнд юу юу байна вэ?		Тэнд ном, дэвтэр, цүнх байна.	

1.1.1.2.1.2 Genitive Case

1.1.1.2.1.2.1 Genitive CS's, Rules, Examples

Suffixes	Rules: For words ending with p	Examples		English ("---'s" or "**of the** ---")
ᠤᠨ (yin)	☞ **vowels**	ᠡᠮᠡᠳᠡᠴᠢᠶᠢᠨ ᠤᠨ		the doctor's
		ᠨᠣᠬᠣᠶᠢᠨ ᠤᠨ		the dog's
		ᠨᠡᠷᠡᠶᠢᠨ ᠤᠨ		the name's
		ᠡᠵᠢᠨ ᠤᠨ		Mother's
ᠤᠨ (un/ün)	☞ **consonants except "n"**	ᠠᠮᠢᠲᠠᠨ ᠤᠨ		the animal's
		ᠨᠣᠮ ᠤᠨ		the book's
		ᠲᠡᠮᠳᠡᠭᠯᠡᠯ ᠤᠨ		the notebook's
ᠦ (u/ü)	☞ **"n"**	ᠰᠠᠷ ᠦ		the moon's
		ᠨᠠᠷ ᠦ		the sun's
		ᠱᠢᠷᠡᠭᠡ ᠦ		the table's
		ᠲᠡᠷ ᠦ		their
–ын	**strong words:** ☞ **short vowels** (which are then dropped)	зорилго	зорилгын	the goal's
		буга	бугын	the deer's
		хана	ханын	the wall's
	☞ **consonants except "n"**	найз	найзын	the friend's
		ном	номын	the book's
		хурал	хурлын	the meeting's
		аав	аавын	Father's
		улс	улсын	the country's
		ах	ахын	the older brother's
		сар	сарын	the month's
(ийн)	**Note the exceptions :**	анги	ангийн	the class's
	◦ й, –ь (are dropped)	технологи	технологийн	technology's
		Аз	Азийн	Asia's
		сургуул	сургуулийн	the school's
		гов	говийн	the Gobi Desert's
	◦ ж, –ч, –ш, –х (have "i" in the Classical Mongolian word stem)	Дорж	Доржийн	Dorj's
		сураг	сурагчийн	the pupil's
		баг	багшийн	the teacher's
		католи	католикийн	catholic
	◦ г (final consonant) (hidden "g" appears)	зура	зургийн	the picture's
		байшин(г)	байшингийн	the house's
		сан(г)	сангийн	the treasury's
	(inserted consonant "g" is needed for *long vowels*)	залуу	залуугийн	the youth's
		бөө	бөөгийн	the shaman's
		дараа	дараагийн	(**of the**) next

−ы (-ны)	**strong words:** ☛ "n" **Note:** ○ hidden "n" *(some list this as a suffix, but the "н" is part of the noun stem)* * exception	оюутан олон малчин хаан морь(и) сар(а) нар(а) талх(а) харандаа(*!)	оюутны олны малчны хааны мори-ы сар-ы нар-ы талх-ы харандаа-ы	the student's **of** many the herdsman's the king's the horse's the moon's the sun's the bread's the pencil's
−ийн	**weak words:** ☛ **short vowels** (which are then dropped)	шөнө эрдэнэ бие	шөнийн эрдэнийн биеийн	the night's the jewel's the body's
	☛ **consonants except "n"** (see exceptions to −ын)	гэр эм билет эх	гэрийн эмийн билетийн эхийн	the yurt's the medicine's the ticket's Mother's
−ий (-ний)	**weak words:** ☛ "n" **Note:** ○ hidden "n" *(some list this as a suffix, but the "н" is part of the noun stem)* *exception	хэн үнэн хүн мөрөн эзэн ширээ(-) жимс(э-) гүү(-) гэрээ (*!)	хэний үнэний хүний мөрний эзэний ширээ-ий жимс-ий гүү-ий гэрээ-ий	whose the truth's the person's the river's the lord's the table's the fruit's the mare's the contract's
−н	☛ **diphthongs**	далай орой дэлхий	далайн оройн дэлхийн	the sea's the evening's the world's

1.1.1.2.1.2.2 Question Words

Whose mother is this?
Энэ хэний ээж вэ?
What kind of meat did you buy? ("**Whose** meat...")
Чи юуны мах авсан бэ?

This is **Baatar's** mother.
Энэ Баатарын ээж.
I bought **beef**. ("... cow's meat.")
Би үхрийн мах авлаа.

1.1.1.2.1.2.3 Usage

1.) Postpositions which demand genitive case:

a		жилийн дараа	**after** a year
b		хүүхдийн төлөө	**for** the children
c		уулзахын тулд	**in order to** meet ...
d		номын тухай	**about** the book
e		хичээлийн өмнө	**before** the lesson
f		таван жилийн турш	**during** five years

2.) Nouns used as modifiers:
a) Noun + **material** from which it's made
b) noun + **part** of the noun
c) **place** where the noun appears
d) noun + its **container**

a		талхны гурил	bread **flour**
		гутлын савхи	boot **leather**
		эмийн ургамал	medicinal **plant**
		гэрийн мод	yurt's **wood**
		дэрний өд	pillow **feathers**
b		номын хавтас	book **cover**
		ширээний хөл	table **leg**
		орны даавуу	bed **sheet**
		уулын орой	mountain **peak**
c		хотын музей	**city** museum
		усны шувуу	**water** bird
		говийн ургамал	**desert** plant
d		бичгийн сав	letter **case**
		гурилын шуудай	flour **sack**
		захианы дугтуй	envelope (**letter** wrapping)

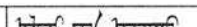
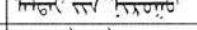
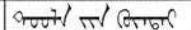
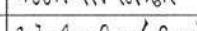
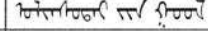
3.) Possession:

a		миний сандал	**my** chair
b		чиний ах	**your** brother
c		тэдний ээж	**their** mother
d		монголын нутаг	**Mongolian** territory
e		Баатарын эхнэр	**Baatar's** wife
f		эмчийн үзлэг	**the doctor's** examination
g		малын тэжээл	(**animal**) fodder

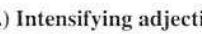
4.) Time:

a		1984 оны 9-р сар	September (**of the year**) 1984
b		маргаашийн хурал	**tomorrow's** meeting
c		намрын бороо	**autumn** rain
d		өнөөдрийн сонин	**today's** newspaper
e		оройн хоол	**evening** meal, supper

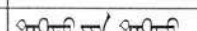
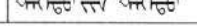
5.) Geographical names:

a		Алтайн нуруу	**Altai** Mountain Range
b		Туулын хөндий	**Tuul** Valley
c		Улиастайн гол	**Uliastai** River
d		Хүйсийн говь	**Khuis** Desert
e		Улаанбаатарын орчим	**Ulaanbaatar's** surroundings

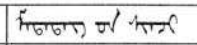
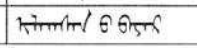
6.) Intensifying adjectives:

a		муугийн муу	**very** worst ("**bad of** bad")
b		холын хол	**very** furthest ("**far of** far")
c		дээдийн дээд	**very** highest, **very** best ("**high of** high")

7.) Together with an *NDS*:

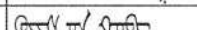
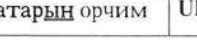
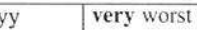
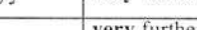
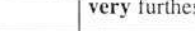
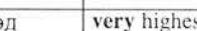
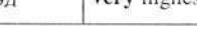
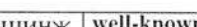
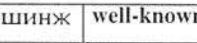
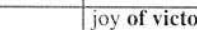
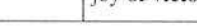
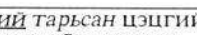
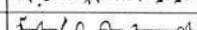
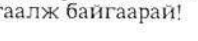
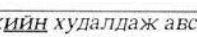
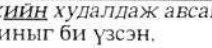
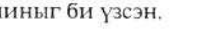
a		мэдэгийн шинж	**well-known** appearance
b		ялсны баяр	joy **of victory** ("**having-won** joy")

8.) Subject of an *attribute clause* (see page 392):

a		*Миний тарьсан* цэцгийг хамгаалж байгаарай!	Please take care of the flowers *that* ***I*** *planted.*
b		*Доржийн худалдаж авсан* машиныг би үзсэн.	I saw the car *that* **Dorj** *bought.*

1.1.1.2.1.3 Dative-Locative Case

1.1.1.2.1.3.1 Dative-Locative CS's, Rules, Examples

Suffixes	**Rules:** For words ending with p	**Examples**		**English translation**
(du/dü) –д  (old forms)	☞ **vowels**		даргад	**to** the leader
			ангид	**in** the class
			сургуульд	**in** the school
			нохойд	**for** the dog
			дэлхийд	**in** the world
	note:		далайд	**in** the sea
	◦ final vowel can't		аавд *	**to** the father
	be seen in Cyrillic		сард *	**in** the month
	☞ **n, m, l, ng**		номд (номонд)	**in** the book
	code word: namilang		малд	**for** the animal
			санд	**in** storage
	note:		байшинд	**in** the house
	◦ hidden "n"		усанд	**in** the water
			мориндд	**to** the horse
			модонд	**in** the tree
	◦ inserted vowel		Батад	**to** Baatar
	is necessary after		найзад	**to** the friend
	д, з, т, х, ц, ш, ж, ч		ахад	**to** the older brother
	in Cyrillic script		багшид	**to** the teacher
			эмчид	**to** the doctor
			мужид	**in** the district
			нөөцөд	**to** the stock
(tu/tü) –т  (old forms)	☞ **(b*),g,r,s,(d*)**		сэдэвт	**in** the title
	code word: bagarasada		төсөвт	**in** the budget
			аймагт	**in** the 'aimag'
			цагт	**at** --- o'clock
			гарт	**in** the hand
			гэрт	**in** the yurt
			эцэст	**at** the end
	Cyrillic exceptions*		тивд	**on** the continent
	* **Note:** in Cyrillic, an inserted vowel follows after final –д		ардад	**for** the people
			хүүхдэд	**for** the child

1.1.1.2.1.3.2 Question Words

(To) **whom** did the teacher give the book?
Багш хэнд ном өгсөн бэ?

The teacher gave the book **to the pupil**.
Багш **сурагчид** ном өгсөн.

What do you love?
Чи юунд хайртай вэ?

I love **birds**.
Би **шувуунд** хайртай.

Where is Baatar?
Баатар **хаана** байна вэ?

Baatar is **in the street.**
Баатар **гудамжинд** байна.

When are you coming?
Чи хэзээ ирэх вэ?

I'll come **at 5 o'clock**.
Би **таван цагт** ирнэ.

1.1.1.2.1.3.3 Usage

1.) Indirect object:

a		Дулмаад цай өг!	Give **Dulmaa** some tea!
b		Би та нарт хичээл заана.	I will teach **you**.
c		Бид тэмээнд ачаа ачив.	We loaded the pack **on the camel**.
d		Сараа Батад тэр номын тухай ярив.	Saraa told **Bat** about that book.

2.) Location (locative):
Notice that with some words, dative-locative **is not necessary** (e.g. "хөлөө").

a		Тэд гэрт суудаг.	They live **in a yurt**.
b		Тэр Монголд ирсэн.	He came to **Mongolia**.
c		Би хөлөө **усанд** угаалаа.	I washed my feet **in water.**
d		Би Дарханд амьдарч байна.	I live **in Darkhan**.
e		Тэр өчигдөр манайд ирсэн.	Yesterday he came **to** my home.
f		Бид ууланд гарсан.	We hiked **on the mountain.**
g		Бат адуунд, Нараа түлээнд явав.	Bat went **for the horses**, and Naraa for fire wood.
h		Миний аав ажилд орсон.	My father got a job. ("My father entered **into work**.")

3.) Time (temporal locative):
Notice that words like "орой, өглөө, шөнө, өдөр, үдээс хойш", etc. need **no CS**.

a		Өнөөдөр 6 цагт хичээл эхлэнэ.	Today the lesson starts **at 6 o'clock**.
b		Дараа долоо хоногт тэр ирнэ.	He will come **next week.**

c		Би 1960 онд төрсөн.	I was born **in 1960.**
d		7-р сард хамгийн халуун болдог.	It is warmest **in July.**

4.) Possession:

a		Надад ном бий.	**I have** a book.
b		Баатарт олон хурдан морь бий.	**Baatar has** many fast horses.
c		Чамд талх бий юу?	**Do you have** any bread?

5.) Causative structures:

a		Нэг хонь чононд идүүлжээ.	A sheep **was eaten** by a wolf.
b		Муур нохойнд баригдав.	A cat **was caught** by a dog.

6.) Like an English prepositional object:

a		Гараа алчуурт үр!	Rub your hands **on the towel**.
b		Бид хөлдөө гутал өмсдөг, гартаа бээлий хийдэг.	We wear boots **on our feet**, and gloves **on our hands.**

7.) Like the English preposition 'for':
Ex. c and d are used similarly, but notice that ex. e is used the other way round. If one translates хэрэгтэй with "...is needed.", then confusion is not likely to happen.

a		Тэр бүсгүй хүүдээ дээл хийв.	That young woman made a 'deel' **for her son**.
b		Би эхнэртээ үнэртэй ус авав.	I bought perfume **for my wife.**
c		Би чамд хайртай.	I love you. ("I am with love **for you**.")
d		Би өөхөнд дургүй.	I don't like fat. ("I am without liking **for fat**.")
e		Надад мөнгө хэрэгтэй. *and not:* *Би мөнгөнд хэрэгтэй.*	I need money. ("**For me** money is needed.")

8.) Expressing quality of action:

a		Дорж англи хэлэнд сайн.	Dorj is **good at** English.
b		Монголчууд моринд гаргуу.	The Mongolians are **excellent at** horseback riding.
c		Тэр хоолонд муу.	He is a picky eater. ("He is **bad at** eating.")

9.) Listing similar things:

a		Араатанд арслан, бар, чоно гэх мэт амьтад ордог.	Lions, tigers, wolves, etc. **belong to** the wild animal category.

1.1.1.2.1.4 Accusative Case

1.1.1.2.1.4.1 Accusative CS's, Rules, Examples

Suffix	Rules: For words ending with p	Examples		English translation
ᠢ (i)	☛ **consonants**	ᠭᠠᠷ ᠢ		the hand
		ᠠᠷᠳ ᠢ		the people
		ᠭᠡᠷᠦᠯ ᠢ		the light
ᠦ (yi)	☛ **vowels**	ᠰᠢᠯᠦ ᠦ		the mirror
		ᠪᠤᠭᠤᠯᠠ ᠦ		the loaf of bread
		ᠠᠪᠤ ᠦ		the father
–ыг	**strong words:**	дарга	даргыг	the leader
	☛ **short vowels**	чоно	чоныг	the wolf
	(which are then dropped)	зорилго	зорилгыг	the aim
	☛ **consonants**	ууд	уулыг	the mountain
		ард	ардыг	the people
		ном	номыг	the book
		давс	давсыг	the salt
		гар	гарыг	the hand
(ийг)	**Note the exceptions:**	салхᠢᠨ	салхийг	the wind
	◦ ᠨ, ᠩ (are dropped)	анг	ангийг	the class
		хон	хонийг	the sheep
		сургуул	сургуулийг	the school
	◦ ᠡ, ᠡᠶ, ᠡᠢᠨ, ᠡᠢ (have "i" in the Classical Mongolian word stem)	ээ	ээжийг	the mother
		а	ачийг	the favor
		баг	багшийг	the teacher
		католи	католикийг	the Catholic
	◦ ᠷ (final consonant)	зура	зургийг	the picture
		нута	нутгийг	the homeland
–ийг	**weak words:**	мөнгө	мөнгийг	the money
	☛ **short vowels**	өнгө	өнгийг	the color
	(which are then dropped)	эрдэнэ	эрдэнийг	the treasure
		шөнө	шөнийг	the night
	☛ **consonants**	гэрэл	гэрлийг	the light
		хүн	хүнийг	the person
		эх	эхийг	the mother
		үнэг	үнэгийг	the fox

–г	☛ **diphthongs**	дэлхий	дэлхийг	the world
		шохой	шохойг	the chalk
		бээлий	бээлийг	the glove
		нохой	нохойг	the dog
	☛ **long vowels**	ширээ	ширээг	the table
		дүү	дүүг	the younger sibling
		гэрээ	гэрээг	the contract
		өрөө	өрөөг	the room
	☛ **hidden "g"**	ан	ан᠌г	the hunt
	The hidden "g" of the Classical Mongolian stem builds the accusative CS.	дэн	дэн᠌г	the lantern
		амгалан	амгалан᠌г	the peace

1.1.1.2.1.4.2 Question Words

Whom did you see?
ᠴᠢ ᠤᠨ᠎ᠠ ᠠᠵᠢᠯᠯᠠᠭ᠎ᠠ ᠪᠤᠢ ᠤᠤ᠃
Чи хэнийг харсан бэ?

I saw **the teacher.**
ᠪᠢ ᠪᠠᠭᠰᠢ ᠶᠢᠨ ᠠᠵᠢᠯᠯᠠᠭ᠎ᠠ ᠃᠃
Би багшийг харсан.

What did Saraa read?
ᠰᠠᠷᠠ ᠶᠠᠮᠠᠷ ᠨᠣᠮ ᠤᠩᠰᠠᠵᠠᠯᠯᠠᠭ᠎ᠠ ᠪᠤᠢ ᠤᠤ᠃
Сараа юу уншсан бэ?

Saraa read **a book.**
ᠰᠠᠷᠠ ᠨᠣᠮ᠎ᠤᠢ ᠤᠩᠰᠠᠵᠠᠯᠯᠠᠭ᠎ᠠ ᠃᠃
Сараа ном уншсан.

What did Baatar read from this book?
ᠪᠠᠭᠠᠲᠠᠷ ᠨᠠᠷ᠎ᠤᠨ ᠨᠣᠮ᠎ᠤᠨ᠎ᠠᠴ᠎ᠠ ᠶᠠᠮᠠᠷ ᠤᠩᠰᠠᠵᠠᠭᠰᠠᠨ ᠤᠤ᠃
Баатар энэ номоос юу уншив ?

Baatar read **the 2nd chapter** from this book.
ᠪᠠᠭᠠᠲᠠᠷ ᠨᠠᠷ᠎ᠤᠨ ᠨᠣᠮ᠎ᠤᠨ᠎ᠠᠴ᠎ᠠ ᠬᠣᠶᠠᠳᠤᠭᠠᠷ ᠪᠦᠯᠡᠭ᠎ᠢᠶᠢᠨ ᠤᠩᠰᠠᠵᠠᠭᠰᠠᠨ ᠃᠃
Баатар энэ номоос 2–р бүлгийг уншив.

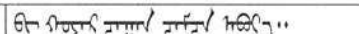
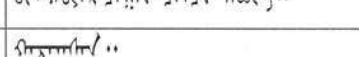
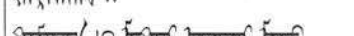
1.1.1.2.1.4.3 Usage

Until recently, Mongolian scholars believed that the Mongolian language didn't distinguish between definite and indefinite nouns because the articles which western European languages have are not present in the Mongolian language. However, linguists have now discovered how to **determine definite and indefinite nouns** in Mongolian: they are clarified **with the help of accusative case suffixes**, as we explain below.

1.1.1.2.1.4.3.1 Indefinite Noun

If a noun is indefinite (as expressed in English with an indefinite article), then **the zero-suffix of the accusative** is needed (–ø).

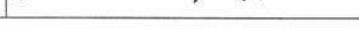
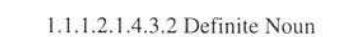
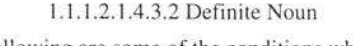
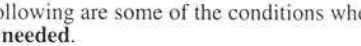
a	ᠪᠢ ᠨᠣᠮ᠎ᠤᠢ ᠠᠪᠯᠠᠭ᠎ᠠ ᠃᠃	Би ном авлаа.	I bought **a book.**
b	ᠤᠶᠤᠲᠠᠨ᠎ᠤ ᠰᠤᠨᠢᠨ᠎ᠠ ᠤᠩᠰᠠᠵᠠ ᠪᠠᠢᠨ᠎ᠠ ᠃᠃	Оюутан сонин уншиж байна.	The student is reading **a newspaper.**
c	ᠳᠣᠷᠵ᠎ᠠ ᠺᠢᠨᠣ ᠦᠵᠡᠪᠡ ᠃᠃	Дорж кино үзэв.	Dorj saw **a film.**
d	ᠪᠢ ᠥᠴᠢᠭᠳᠥᠷ ᠣᠯᠠᠨ᠎ ᠬᠦᠨ᠎ ᠦᠵᠡᠭᠰᠡᠨ᠎ ᠃᠃	Би өчигдөр олон хүн үзсэн.	I saw **many people** yesterday.
e	ᠮᠢᠨᠢ᠎ ᠬᠦᠦ ᠴᠣᠭᠣᠣ᠎ ᠮᠣᠯ ᠠᠮᠢᠯᠵᠠ᠎ ᠃᠃	Миний хүү цөөн мал малладаг.	My son herds **a few animals.**
f	ᠪᠢ ᠮᠠᠭᠠᠷ᠎ ᠳᠤᠭᠤᠷ᠎ ᠳᠤᠤ ᠳᠤᠤᠯᠤᠨ᠎ ᠃᠃	Би маргааш хоёр дуу дуулна.	I'll sing **two songs** tomorrow.

g		Би хоёр цагаан цамц авья.	I want to buy **two white shirts.**
h		Тэмүүжин 5 метр өндөр мод харсан.	Temüüjin saw **a tree 5 meters tall.**
i		Надад том талх аваарай!	Please buy me **a big loaf of bread.**

1.1.1.2.1.4.3.2 Definite Noun

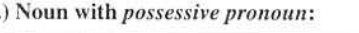
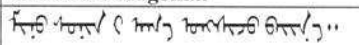
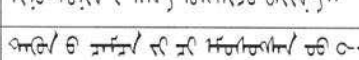
Following are some of the conditions when the noun is definite and therefore the **accusative CS is needed.**

1.) Noun with *possessive pronoun*:

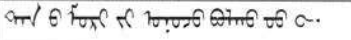
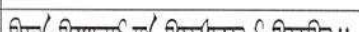
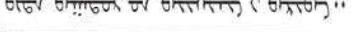
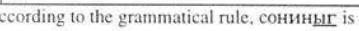
	Classical Mongolian	Cyrillic	English
a		*Миний* сонин(ы)г* ах уншиж байна.	The older brother is reading *my* **newspaper.**
b		*Түүний* цамцыг чи өмссөн үү?	Did you wear *his* **sweater**?
c		*Таны* морийг унаж болох уу?	May (I) ride *your* **horse**?
d		Бид *Баатарын* байшинг барив.	We built *Baatar's* **house.**

*according to the grammatical rule, сонинын is correct, but сонинг has become an acceptable form.

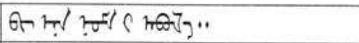
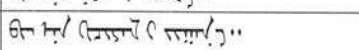
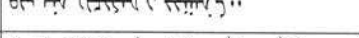
2.) Noun with *demonstrative pronoun*:

a		Би *энэ* номыг авлаа.	I took *this* **book.**
b		Би *энэ* хичээлийг заана.	I will teach *this* **lesson.**
c		*Иймэрхүү* тоог тэр сайн бодлог.	*Such* **numbers** *as these* he calculates well.
d		*Тэр* юмсыг хаанаас авч чадах вэ?	Where can we buy *those* **things?**

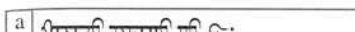
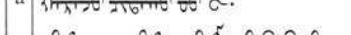
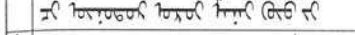
3.) Personal pronouns:

a		Чи намайг харсан уу?	Did you see **me**?
b		Би түүнийг явуулна.	I will send **him.**
c		Бид тэднийг санана.	We will miss **them.**
d		Би чамайг хайрладаг.	I love**you.**

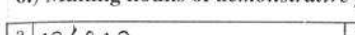
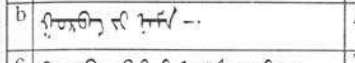
4.) Proper names:

a		Бид маргааш Хэрлэнг туулна.	We will cross **the Kherlen** tomorrow.
b		Би Сүрэнг олон удаа дуудсан.	I called **Süren** many times.
c		Жаргалыг гэр лүү нь явуулсан уу?	Did someone send **Jargal** home?

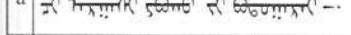
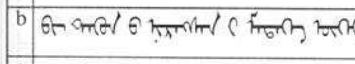
5.) Relatives:

a		Чи өнөөдөр орой манай хүүг харж чадах уу?	Could you look after **my son** tonight?
b		Бид машин байхгүй тул хөдөө явахад ахыг гуйсан.	Because we didn't have a car, we asked **my brother** to take us to the countryside.
c		Энэ цуглаанд аавыг урья!	Let's invite **Dad** to this meeting.

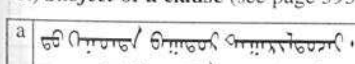
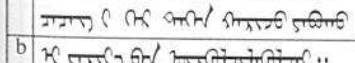
6.) Making nouns of *demonstrative pronouns* and *numerals*:

a		*Үүнийг* ав!	Take ***this***!
b		*Гурвыг* нэм!	Add ***three*** to it.
c		Та нар маргааш хүртэл *дөрөвдүгээрийг* уншаач!	Please read ***the 4th*** by tomorrow. (e.g. chapter)

7.) Verbs with an *NDS*:

a		Чи маргааш явахыг бодоорой!	Please think about **going tomorrow.**
b		Би түүний ирснийг мэдээгүй.	I didn't know **that he *had* come.**
c		Зөвшөөрөлгүй явдгийг зогсоох хэрэгтэй.	One has to stop **the illegal crossings.** (e.g. over the border)

8.) *Subject* of a clause (see page 393):

a		*Цэцгийг* гэртээ харьж явахад гэнэт Баатар дайралджээ.	As *Tsetseg* **was going home**, Baatar suddenly ran into her.
b		*Түүнийг* гэртээ харихад бусад нь яриагаа үргэлжлүүлжээ.	As ***he*** **went home**, the others continued talking.

1.1.1.2.1.4.3.3 Hierarchy List

There's something similar to a **hierarchy which clarifies when the accusative CS is necessary or when it can be dropped.** This list is especially important for syntax (subordinate clauses). It is based on the possibility of different grammatical categories being definite **without using** an attribute which would make them definite.

	Category of word	Accusative CS ... necessary	Examples:
1.	Personal Pronoun	always	Би түүнийг таньсан.
2.	Demonstrative Pronoun	always	Чи үүнийг чадах уу?
3.	Names	almost always	Баатарыг луул!
4.	Relatives	usually	Би эх(ийг)ээ луудсан.
5.	Professional titles	half of the time	Багш(ийг) ирвэл би уулзана.
6.	Animals	almost never	Би морь унах дуртай.
7.	Things	never	Би цонх угаасан.

Using the plural reduces the chance that an accusative CS is written.

1.1.1.2.1.5 Ablative Case

1.1.1.2.1.5.1 Ablative CS's, Rules, Examples

Suffixes	Rules: For words ending with p	Examples		English translation
ᠲᠤ/ (еče) −аас −ээс −оос −өөс	☞ **all vowels and consonants** Note:	ᠡᠷᠳᠡᠨᠡ ᠲᠤ/	эрдэнэ**эс**	**from** the treasure
		ᠬᠠᠨ ᠲᠤ/	хан**аас**	**from** the wall
		ᠳᠠᠷᠭ᠎ᠠ ᠲᠤ/	дарга**ас**	**from** the leader
		ᠠᠬᠠ ᠲᠤ/	ах**аас**	**from** (my) older brother
		ᠡᠬᠡ ᠲᠤ/	эх**ээс**	**from** (my) mother
		ᠨᠣᠮ ᠲᠤ/	ном**оос**	**from** the book
		ᠲᠥᠷᠥ ᠲᠤ/	төр**өөс**	**from** the state
	◦ "е" in 'бие' already has an "э".	ᠪᠢᠶᠡ ᠲᠤ/	бие**эс**	**from** the body
	◦ hidden "n"	ᠲᠠᠯᠬ᠋ᠠ ᠲᠤ/	талх**аас**	**from** the bread
		ᠮᠣᠳ᠋ᠣ ᠲᠤ/	мод**оос**	**from** the tree
		ᠬᠣᠨᠢ ᠲᠤ/	хони**оос**	**from** the sheep
	exceptions*	ᠬᠠᠷᠠᠨᠳᠠᠠ ᠲᠤ/	харандаа**аас***	**from** the pencil
		ᠭᠡᠷᠡᠭ᠎ᠡ ᠲᠤ/	гэрээ**эс***	**from** the contract
	◦ hidden "g"	ᠪᠠᠶᠢᠰᠢᠨ᠎ᠠ ᠲᠤ/	байшин**аас**	**from** the house
		ᠴᠢᠳᠡᠨ᠎ᠡ ᠲᠤ/	чийдэн**эс**	**from** the lamp
	◦ −н /−ъ	ᠠᠩᠬ᠎ᠠ ᠲᠤ/	анг**ас** (анги)	**from** the class
		ᠬᠠᠨᠢ ᠲᠤ/	хан**ас** (хань)	**from** the friend
	◦ inserted vowel "g" for *long vowels* and *diphthongs*	ᠬᠦᠦ ᠲᠤ/	хүү**эс**	**from** (my) son
		ᠪᠥᠥ᠎ᠭ᠎ᠡ ᠲᠤ/	бөө**гөөс**	**from** the shaman
		ᠳᠠᠯᠠᠢ᠎ᠭ᠎ᠠ ᠲᠤ/	далай**аас**	**from** the sea

1.1.1.2.1.5.2 Question Words

From whom did you get this book?
ᠲᠤᠨ᠎ᠤ ᠨᠤᠮ᠎ᠤ᠋ ᠶᠠ ᠲᠤ/ ᠠᠪᠴᠢᠬᠤᠯ᠎ᠠᠭ ᠪᠠ ᠣ᠃᠃
Энэ номыг **хэнээс** авсан бэ?

I got this book **from my teacher.**
ᠪᠢ ᠲᠤᠨ᠎ᠤ ᠨᠤᠮ᠎ᠤ᠋ ᠶᠠ ᠪᠠᠭᠰ᠎ᠠ ᠲᠤ/ ᠪᠢ ᠠᠪᠴᠢᠬᠤᠯ᠎ᠠ᠃᠃
Би энэ номыг **багшаасаа** авсан.

Where did/do you come **from**?
ᠴᠢ ᠰᠠᠭᠤᠨ᠎ᠠ ᠲᠤ/ ᠢᠷᠡᠬᠦᠯ᠎ᠡ ᠪᠠ ᠣ᠃᠃
Чи **хаанаас** ирсэн бэ?

I came/come **from Germany.**
ᠪᠢ ᠭᠧᠷᠮᠠᠨ ᠲᠤ/ ᠢᠷᠡᠬᠦᠯ᠎ᠡ᠃᠃
Би **Германаас** ирсэн.

When does your brother's vacation begin?
("**From when on** does your brother rest?")
ᠲᠠᠨᠤ ᠭᠡᠷᠦᠭ᠎ᠦᠨ ᠬᠡᠳᠡᠨ ᠠᠴᠠ ᠲᠤ/ ᠡᠬᠢᠯᠡᠨ᠎ᠡ ᠪᠠ ᠣ᠃᠃
Дүү чинь **хэзээнээс** амрах вэ?

His vacation begins on June 1st.
("He rests **from June 1st on.**")
ᠲᠡᠭ᠎ᠡ ᠣ ᠵᠢᠨ ᠨᠠᠨ ᠲᠤ/ ᠡᠬᠢᠯᠡᠨ᠎ᠡ᠃᠃
Тэр 6 **сарын нэгнээс** амарна.

What are you afraid **of**?
ᠴᠢ ᠶᠤᠨ᠎ᠠ ᠲᠤ/ ᠠᠶᠤᠬᠤᠯ᠎ᠠᠭ ᠪᠠ ᠣ᠃᠃
Чи **юунаас** айдаг вэ?

I'm afraid **of snakes.**
ᠪᠢ ᠮᠣᠭᠣᠢ ᠲᠤ/ ᠠᠶᠤᠬᠤᠯ᠎ᠠ᠃᠃
Би **могойноос** айдаг.

1.1.1.2.1.5.3 Usage

1.) Postpositions and adverbs in postpositional function which require ablative case:
Notice that "−ын өмнө" means 'directly before ...' and "−аас өмнө" mean 'a longer period of time before...'.

a	ᠲᠡᠷ᠎ᠡ ᠲᠠᠨᠢᠭᠴᠢᠯᠠᠭ᠎ᠠ ᠲᠤᠭᠠᠢ ᠪᠢᠳᠡᠭᠰᠡᠨ᠎ᠦ᠃᠃ ᠤᠴᠢᠷ᠎ᠠᠴᠠ ᠲᠤ/ ᠮᠣᠷᠢ᠎ᠨ ᠪᠠ	Тэр уулзалт**аас** өмнө би түүнийг таньдаггүй байсан.	***Before* that meeting** I didn't know him.
b	ᠡᠨᠡᠭᠡᠨᠡᠴᠡ ᠲᠤᠭᠠᠢ᠃᠃ ᠬᠤᠢ ᠲᠤ/ ᠠᠯᠳᠠᠭᠠᠳ ᠪᠠ ᠲᠤ/ ᠠᠪᠲᠠᠬᠤ᠎ᠭ᠎ᠠ ᠭᠦ	Үүн**ээс** хойш би энэ алдаар давтахгүй.	**From now *on***, I won't make this mistake again.
c	ᠰᠸᠢᠴᠠᠷ ᠭᠧᠷᠮᠠᠨ ᠲᠤ/ ᠥᠭᠰᠥᠭᠡᠳ ᠪᠠᠢᠳᠠᠭ᠃᠃	Швейцарь Герман**аас** урагш байдаг.	Switzerland is ***south* of** Germany.
d	ᠴᠢᠭᠠᠰᠤᠨ᠎ᠠᠴᠠ ᠲᠤᠭᠠᠢ᠃᠃ ᠪᠠ ᠳᠠᠭᠠ ᠲᠤ/ ᠳᠤᠤᠷᠠᠭᠰ᠎ᠠᠨ ᠴᠠᠭᠠᠰᠤ	Би түүн**ээс** доош явж чадахгүй.	I can't go **further *down* than that.**

2.) Time or place an action begins:

a	ᠴᠢ ᠨᠠᠷ ᠪᠧᠷᠯᠢᠨ᠎ᠡ ᠲᠤ/ ᠢᠷᠡᠭᠰᠡᠨ ᠤᠤ ᠣ᠃᠃	Та нар Берлин**ээс** ирэв үү?	Did you come **from *Berlin*?**
b	ᠬᠥᠳᠡᠭᠡᠨ᠎ᠡ ᠲᠤ/ ᠬᠦᠨ ᠢᠷᠡᠭᠰᠡᠨ᠃᠃	Хөдөө**нөөс** хүн ирсэн.	Someone came **from the *countryside*.**
c	ᠭᠡᠷᠡᠯ ᠤᠳᠤᠷ ᠲᠤ/ ᠵᠠᠭᠤᠭ ᠮᠠᠨᠳᠠᠭ᠃᠃	Зүүн зүг**ээс** нар манддаг.	The sun rises **in the *East.***
d	ᠭᠧᠷᠮᠠᠨ᠎ᠠᠴᠠ ᠲᠤ/ ᠲᠤᠰᠯᠠᠮᠵ ᠢᠷᠡᠭᠰᠡᠨ᠃᠃	Герман**аас** тусламж ирсэн.	Aid came **from *Germany*.**
e	ᠪᠢ ᠮᠠᠷᠭᠠᠭᠠᠰᠢ ᠲᠤ/ ᠬᠥᠳᠡᠭᠡᠨ᠎ᠡ ᠶᠠᠪᠤᠨ᠎ᠠ᠃᠃	Би маргаашаас хөдөө явна.	I'm going to the country-side ***tomorrow*** or soon after.
f	ᠥᠯᠥᠭᠡᠨ᠎ᠡ ᠣᠷᠣᠭᠯᠠᠭᠰᠠᠨ᠃᠃ ᠪᠢ ᠣᠷᠣᠢᠨᠤ᠎ᠨ ᠲᠤ/ ᠣᠭᠲᠤᠷᠭᠤᠢ ᠪᠣᠯᠲᠤᠯ ᠶᠤᠮ ᠤᠩᠰᠠᠨ᠃	Би өглөө**нөөс** орой болтол юм уншсан.	I read **from *morning*** until evening.
g	ᠪᠢᠴᠢᠭᠰᠡᠨ᠎ᠡ ᠴᠤᠷᠤ᠃᠃ ᠪᠢ ᠪᠠᠭ᠎ᠠ ᠲᠤ/ ᠪᠠ/ ᠰᠤᠨᠢ ᠰᠠᠭᠠᠵᠠᠯᠠᠭ	Би баг**аасаа** хонь хариулж байсан юм.	I've herded sheep **since *my childhood*.**
h	ᠪᠢ ᠮᠣᠩᠭᠣᠯᠳ ᠪᠠᠢᠨ᠎ᠠ᠃᠃ ᠪᠢ ᠠᠩᠭᠡᠷᠰᠡᠨ ᠽᠤᠨ᠎ᠠᠴᠠ ᠲᠤ/ ᠮᠣᠩᠭᠣᠯ	Би өнгөрсөн зун**аас** Монголд амьдарч байна.	I've been living in Mon-golia **since *last summer*.**

3.) Like the English prepositions 'from/of':

a	ᠪᠢ ᠴᠠᠮ᠎ᠠᠴᠠ ᠨᠡᠭ ᠨᠣᠮ᠎ᠤ᠋ ᠠᠪᠪᠠᠭᠠᠷ ᠪᠠᠢᠨ᠎ᠠ᠃᠃	Би чам**аас** нэг ном авмаар байна.	I want to get a book **from you.**
b	ᠡᠨᠡ ᠴᠠᠢ᠎ᠨᠠᠴᠠ ᠤᠭᠤᠵ᠂ ᠬᠣᠣᠯ᠎ᠨᠣᠣᠰ ᠢᠳᠡᠶ᠎ᠢᠯᠡ᠃᠃	Энэ цай**наас** ууж, хоол**ноос** идээрэй!	Please drink **some of this tea** and eat **some of this food.**
c	ᠨᠠᠭᠠᠳ ᠮᠠᠬᠠᠨ᠎ᠠᠴᠠ ᠬᠤᠶᠠᠷ ᠺᠢᠯᠣ ᠥᠭᠥᠬᠦᠨ᠎ᠡ᠃᠃	Надад мах**наасаа** 2 кило өгөөч.	Would you give me 2 kg **of the meat**, please.
d	ᠪᠢᠳᠡᠨᠳᠡᠭᠡ ᠨᠡᠭ ᠨᠢ ᠪᠠᠭᠰᠢᠲᠠᠢ ᠤᠤᠯᠵᠶᠠჰ᠃᠃ ᠪᠠᠭᠰ᠎ᠠ ᠲᠤ/ ᠵᠠᠨᠤ ᠨᠢ ᠪᠠᠭᠰᠢ ᠶᠠ	Бид**нээс** нэг нь багштай уулзъя.	Let one **of us** meet with the teacher.
e	ᠲᠠᠪᠤᠨ᠎ᠠᠴᠠ ᠶᠠᠪᠤᠭᠠᠳ ᠲᠠᠪ ᠴᠢ ᠬᠠᠰᠤ ᠪᠠჰ᠃᠃	Арв**аас** тавыг хас!	Subtract 5 **from 10**!
f	ᠶᠠᠪᠤᠭ᠎ᠠ ᠲᠤ/ ᠳᠥᠩ ᠨᠢ ᠢᠷᠡᠭᠰᠡᠨ᠃᠃	Тэднээс 4 нь ирсэнгүй.	Four **of them** didn't come.

g	[illegible]	Хонь, тэмээнээс ноос авдаг.	We get wool **from sheep and camels.**
h	[illegible]	Надад ахаас захидал ирсэн.	I got a letter **from my older brother.** ("A letter arrived to me ...")
i	[illegible]	Би найзаасаа мөнгө зээлэв.	I borrowed money **from my friend.**
j	[illegible]	Ургамалаас тос гардаг.	Oil comes **from plants.**

4.) Like the English preposition 'out of':

a	[illegible]	Тэр машинаас буув.	He got **out of the car.**
b	[illegible]	Би номын сангаас ном авав.	I took a book **out of the library.**
c	[illegible]	Амьд явбал алтан аяганаас ус ууна.	When you keep on living you'll drink water **out of a golden bowl.**
d	[illegible]	Гэнэт тэр харанхуйгаас гарлаа.	Suddenly he came **out of the darkness.**

5.) Comparative constructions:

a	[illegible]	Миний өрөө чиний өрөөнөөс том.	My room is **bigger than your room.**
b	[illegible]	Дорж нь Батаас дөрөв ах.	Dorj is **4 years older than Bat.**
c	[illegible]	Энэ хүн тэр хүнээс өндөр.	This person is **taller than that person.**
d	[illegible]	Танай хонь манай хониноос олон.	You have more sheep than I do. ("...are **more numerous than** ...")
e	[illegible]	Эхийн сэтгэл сүүнээс цагаан.	A mother's heart is **whiter than milk.**
f	[illegible]	Бялуу талхнаас үнэтэй.	Cake is **more expensive than bread.**
g	[illegible]	сайхнаас сайхан	breathtakingly beautiful (**"more beautiful than beautiful'**)

6.) Useful constructions with the ablative case:

a	[illegible]	Бид бороонооос болоод ууланд явж чадсангүй.	**Because of the rain** we couldn't go to the mountain.
b	[illegible]	Тэр надаас болж уурласан.	He was angry **because of me.**
c	[illegible]	Надад зуун төгрөгнөөс өөр мөнгө байхгүй.	I don't have **any money other than 100** tögrögs.
d	[illegible]	Би таныг 2 цагаас 2 цаг хагас хүртэл хүлээе.	I'll wait for you **from 2:00** to 2:30. ("Let me wait...")

1.1.1.2.1.6 Instrumental Case

Hardly any other case is translated in as many different ways as is the instrumental case. **Many different English prepositions express it:** 'through, by, with, from, as, of, in,' etc.

1.1.1.2.1.6.1 Instrumental CS's, Rules, Examples

Suffixes	Rules: For words ending with p	Examples		English translation (only in context clear)
өр (bar/ber)	☛ **vowels**	[illegible]		**through** the window
		[illegible]		**from** wood
		[illegible]		**with** jewels
		[illegible]		**through** the forest
		[illegible]		**of** silk
ийр (iyar/iyer)	☛ **consonants**	[illegible]		**through** the fire
		[illegible]		**by** hand
		[illegible]		**through** the country
		[illegible]		**by** the people
		[illegible]		**through** the aimag
–аар –оор –ээр –өөр	☛ **all vowels and consonants** **Note:** ◦ short vowels are dropped	эрдэн	эрдэнээр	**with** jewels (e.g. to decorate)
		торг	торгоор	**of** silk (e.g. to make)
		даргa	даргаар	**by** the leader (e.g. to send)
		мөнгө	мөнгөөр	**with/for** money (e.g. to play)
		мал	малаар	(e.g. rich) **in** livestock
		сэтгэл	сэтгэлээр	**with** (e.g. my whole) heart
		мод	модоор	**from** wood (e.g. to make)
	◦ "е/э" contain already an "э/а"	биэ	биеэр	(e.g. great) **of** figure
		аэ	аяар	**along** the melody (e.g.to sing)
	◦ hidden "g" appears	сан(г)	сангаар	**about** the library (e.g.to brag)
		ан(г)	ангаар	(e.g. rich) **in** game
	◦ –ш/–ъ	анш	аншаар	**as** a class (e.g. to participate)
		амь	амьаар	**with** one's life (e.g.to defend)
	◦ inserted vowel "g" is necessary after *long vowels* and *diphthongs*	дэлхий	дэлхийгээр	**through** the world (e.g.to travel)
		хүү	хүүгээр	**with** the son (e.g. to send)
		далай	далайгаар	**by** sea (e.g. to travel)
		ой	ойгоор	**through** the forest (e.g.to walk)

1.1.1.2.1.6.2 Question Words

With whom did you send the letter?
Чи хэнээр захиа явуулсан бэ?

I sent the letter **with Baatar.**
Би Баатараар захиа явуулсан.

With what did you make this meal?
Та энэ хоолыг юугаар хийсэн бэ?

I made this meal **with meat, flour and vegetables.**
Би энэ хоолыг мах, гурил, ногооогоор хийсэн.

As what did (the people) elect Dorj?
Доржийг юугаар сонгосон бэ?

(They) elected Dorj **as class president.**
Доржийг ангийн ахлагчаар сонгов.

About when will you come?
Та хэдийгээр ирэх вэ?

I'll come **at the end of the month.**
Би энэ сарын сүүлчээр ирнэ.

1.1.1.2.1.6.3 Usage

1.) Different Means: a) transportation; b) object; c) material; d) people

a		Би онгоцоор ирэв.	I flew. ("I came **by plane.**")
		Тэр дугуйгаар явдаг.	He always goes **by bike.**
		Тэр галт тэргээр явна.	She'll leave **by train.**
b		Би дараа утсаар ярина.	I'll call afterwards. ("I'll speak **by wire**....")
		Хутгаар юм огтолдог.	You cut things **with a knife.**
		Шатаар гар!	Go **up the stairs.**
		Аав өндөр дуугаар хүүхдүүдийг дуудсан.	Father called the children **with a loud voice.**
		Би биеэр ирнэ.	I'll come **in person.** ("I'll come **in the flesh.**")
c		Би хөх торгоор дээл хийв.	I made a 'deel' **out of blue silk.**
		Миний аав модоор ширээ хийв.	My father made a table **out of wood.**
		Үүнийг халуун усаар угаа!	Wash this **with hot water!**
		Монголчууд үүний сүүгээр айраг хийдэг.	Mongolians make 'airag' **from mare's milk.**
		Арьсаар гутал хийдэг.	(We) make boots **from leather.**
d		Багшийн ачаар бид эрдэм ном сурчээ.	**Thanks to the teacher** we have received an education.
		Бат таны дэмжлэгээр сургуульд оров.	**Thanks to you,** Bat entered school. ("Through your help...")

2.) With logical subject in *causative voice:*

a		Би Баатараар захиа *явуулав.*	I *sent* a letter **with Baatar.**
b		Та эгчээр дээл *хийлгэх* үү?	Will you *have* **the older sister** *make* you a 'deel'?
c		Би ахаараа орос хэл *заалгадаг.*	I *have* **my older brother** *teach* me Russian.

3.) Like English prepositions:

a		Танай хонь голоор гарлаа.	Your sheep went **through the river.**
b		Багшийг үүдээр орж ирэхэд сурагчид огт яриагүй байсан.	As the teacher came in **through the door** the pupils were not talking at all.
c		Шил цонхоор битгий шид!	Don't throw glass **out of the window.**
d		Чи энэ шилээр юм харж чадах уу?	Can you see anything **through this glass?**

4.) Indefinite time or place:

a		Та монголд ямар хугацаагаар ирсэн бэ?	**For how long** have you come to Mongolia?
b		Би Монголд 3 жилээр ирсэн.	I have come to Mongolia **for about three years.**
c		Тэр энэ сарын эхээр Германаас ирсэн.	She came from Germany **at the beginning of this month.**
d		Миний ээж үүрээр явдаг.	My mother leaves **at daybreak.**
e		Гуламжаар олон хүн явж байна.	Many people are walking **along the streets.**
f		Бид хөдөөгөөр явах санаатай.	We intend to travel **through the countryside.**
g		Ойгоор зугаалах сайхан.	Walking **through the forest** is wonderful.

5.) Explaining activities and work:

a		Би эрдэм шинжилгээний ажилтнаар ажилладаг.	I work **as a research worker.**
b		Тэр 1986 онд Их сургуульд оюутнаар элсэв.	He registered **as a student** at the university in 1986.
c		Монголын ард түмэн П. Очирбатыг **ерөнхийлөгчөөр** сонгов.	The Mongolian people elected P. Ochirbat **as president.**
d		Би Монголд хувийн ажлаар ирэв.	I came to Mongolia **for private reasons.**

6.) Money and prices:

a	ᠳᠤᠮᠳᠠ ᠮᠥᠩᠭᠡ ᠪᠠᠢᠨ ᠪᠠ ᠣ᠃᠃ ᠮᠣᠩᠭᠣᠯ ᠳᠤ ᠶᠠᠮᠠ ᠵᠤᠪᠠᠭᠠᠨ ᠤᠷᠴᠢᠨ ᠤᠤ	Монголд нэг доллараар юу авч болох вэ?	What can you buy in Mongolia **for one dollar?**
b	ᠪᠢ ᠮᠠᠩᠭᠠᠨ ᠲᠥᠭᠥᠷᠭ᠋᠋᠋

d	(□□□□□□□) .. □□□□□□ □□/□□□□/ □□/ □□ □□□□□□	Монгол хэл япон хэлтэй төстэй (төсөөтэй).	The Mongolian language is **similar to the Japanese language.**
e	□□□□□□□□/□ □□□□□□ .. □□□□ □□ □□□□ □□□□□□□□□ □□	Манай гэр их сургуультай ойролцоо байдаг.	Our house is **close to the university.**

1.1.1.2.1.7.3.1 True Comitative

Through the years, the comitative CS has became a derivational suffix (−тай/−т; □□ • □□ ; see page 50) and as such now forms an adjective. There are a **few guidelines** in order to discern whether the "тай" is a CS or a derivational suffix:

1.) As a CS, the suffix joins a noun to a *verb*.
Ex.: хүнтэй *яри−*, багштай *уулза−*, найзтай хамт *ява−*

2.) As a derivational suffix, the suffix (now a part of an **adjective**) usually ties a noun to a *noun* (exceptions are the adverbial adjectives).
Ex.: аягатай *цай*, таваг*тай* *хоол*, том цонхтой *байшин*, дээлтэй *эмэгтэй*

3.) You can add the **reflexive suffix** (□□) to a CS:
Ex.: аавтай□□□, ээжтэй□□□ , but not: цэцэгтэй□□□ даавуу

4.) You can usually add the **postpositions** *"цуг"* **or** *"хамт"* to a CS:
Ex.: ахтай *хамт* ява− , эгчтэй *цуг* дуула−, but not: малгайтай *хамт* хүн

5.) Wherever you see the **old form** of the Classical comitative CS (see page 97), it's a CS.

1.1.1.2.1.7.3.2 False Comitative

a	□□/ □□□□□/ □□□/ □□/ □□ ..	Энэ оюутан олон номтой (оюутан).	This student has many books. ("This student is a student **with** many books.")
b	□□ □□/□ □□ ..	Би ахтай (хүн).	I have an older brother. ("I am a person **with** an older brother.")
c	□□□ □□ □□□ □□□□□/ .. □□□□□□□□□/ □□/ □□ □□□□/	Монголчууд хэлтэй хүн хөлтэй гэж ярьдаг.	The Mongolians say, "A person **with** language is a person **with** legs."
d	□□ □□/ □□□□□□ □□□□□ .. □□/□ □□□□ □□/□□□□□□□/□□□□/	Бага ангийн сурагчид зурагтай ном унших дуртай.	Pupils in primary school like to read illustrated books. ("...books **with** pictures.")
e	□□□□ □□ □□□□	эхнэртэй хүн	a married man ("a man **with** a wife")
f	□□□□□/□ □□ □□□□□/	ногоотой хоол	a vegetable dish ("a meal **with** vegetables")

1.1.1.2.1.8 Directive Case

From the **adverb "уруу"** (□□□□) an eighth case has developed in modern times which we will discuss here. The suffix is often **written separately** from the noun because it was an adverb, but occasionally it is added to the noun.

1.1.1.2.1.8.1 Directive CS's, Rules, Examples

Suffix	**Rules:** For words ending with р	Examples	Examples English
□□□□ (uruxu)	☞ **all vowels and consonants**	□□□/ □□□□ □□/ □□□□ □□□□/ □□□□ □□/ □□□□	**to** the city **to** me **to** the river **to** the cloud
руу, рүү	☞ **all vowels and consonants except −р**	хөдөө руу чам руу түүн рүү Москва руу	**to** the countryside **to** you **to** him **to** Moscow
луу, лүү	☞ **−р**	та нар луу гэр лүү сар луу Баатар луу	**to** you (pl.) **to** the yurt **to** the moon **to** Baatar

1.1.1.2.1.8.2 Question Words

Where did your father go last night?
□□□ □□ □□□□□□/ □□□□□/ □□ □..
Чиний аав **хаашаа** явсан бэ?

To whom did the little boy run?
□□□□/ □□□ □□/ □□□□□ □□□□□ □□□□/ □□ □..
Бяцхан хүү **хэн рүү** гүйж явсан бэ?

At what did he throw stones?
□□□/ □□□ □□□□□ □□□□□ □□□□/ □□ □..
Тэр юу **руу** чулуу шидсэн бэ?

My father went **to the river** last night.
□□□ □□ □□□□ □□□□□ □□□□/ ..
Миний аав **гол руу** явсан.

He ran **to his mother.**
□□□/ □□ □□□□□ □□/ □□□□□ □□□□/ ..
Тэр **ээж рүү**гээ гүйж явсан.

He threw stones **at the window.**
□□□/ □□□□ □□□□□ □□□□□ □□□□/ ..
Тэр **цонх руу** чулуу шидсэн.

1.1.1.2.1.8.3 Usage

a	□□□/ □□□/ □□□□□ □□□□□ □□□□/□ ..	Тэр үүл рүү харж байна.	He's looking up **at the clouds.**
b	□□□/ □□□□□ □□□□□□□□□ ..	Над руу утасдаарай.	Please call **me**. ("Please phone [to] me.")
c	□□□/ □□□□ □□ □□□□□□□□ □□□□□ □□□□□ ..	Тэр мориор сургууль руу ирэв.	He came **to school** on horseback.
d	□□□/ □□□□□ □□□ −. □□□/ □□□□□ □□□ −.	Тэр луу оч! / Түүн рүү оч!	Go **to it**! / Go **to him**!
e	□□ □□□□□□ □□□□□ □□□□□ □□□□□ □□ □.	Та Москва руу хэзээ явах вэ?	When are you leaving **for Moscow**?
f	□□□/ □□ □□□□□ □□ □□□□□ ..	Бид гэр лүүгээ явъя.	Let's go **home**!

1.1.1.2.1.8.4 New Form of Directive Case

The adverb "урүү" (ᠤᠷᠤᠭᠤ) means '**to(wards)**, downwards, down'. The adverb "өөд" (ᠳᠤᠷᠤ) means '**to(wards)**, upwards, up'. So just as the adverb "урүү" became a case, "өөд" could also be treated as one. This has already happened in colloquial language where the forms "**–аад, –ээд, –оод, –өөд**" have replaced the adverb "өөд". Following are some examples of the use of "өөд" in written and colloquial language:

Classical Mongolian	**Cyrillic Written Language**	**Cyrillic Colloquial Language**	**English**
ᠮᠠ ᠳᠤᠷᠤ/ ᠪᠠ/ ᠭᠡᠷ	гэр **өөд**өө хари–	гэрээдээ хари–	to return home ("to return **to** one's yurt")
ᠬᠤᠤᠷᠤᠭᠠᠠᠷ ᠪᠠ ᠵᠠᠭᠠᠭ/ ᠳᠤᠷᠤ/ ᠲᠡᠮᠳᠡᠭ	хуруугаар хүн **өөд** заа–	хуруугаар хүнээд заа–	to point the finger **at** someone
ᠬᠢᠨᠢ ᠬᠦᠮ/ᠤ ᠮᠠ ᠳᠤᠷᠤ/ ᠪᠠ/ ᠰᠡᠭᠡᠭᠯᠡ/ ..	Миний ах гэр **өөд**өө явсан.	Миний ах гэрээдээ явсан.	My older brother went home.
ᠴᠢ ᠠᠷᠠ/ ᠬᠤᠭᠤᠤ/ ᠳᠤᠷᠤ/ ᠬᠠᠷ/ –.	Чи тэр уул **өөд** хар!	Чи тэр уул**аад** хар!	Look **up at** that mountain!

1.1.1.2.2 Case-bound Suffixes (CbS's)

These suffixes are not further cases, but suffixes which are **added to a noun with a CS**. It's not common in the Mongolian language structure that another suffix follows a CS. These CbS's are neither derivational nor inflectional suffixes and have **various functions**. From their **origin** they are **one suffix** with two forms:

originally singular: –х, –хи, (–их) ᠴᠢ (ki)

originally plural: –хан, –хэн,–хон,–хөн ᠴᠢ/ (kin)

The following **meanings/ functions** are recognized today:

Suffixes			**meaning/function**	**Mongolian ex.**	**English transl.**
Possessive CbS	–х	–ᠴᠢ, ᠴ	**possessive** function	миний**х** ᠮᠢᠨᠢᠬ	**mine**
Local CbS	–х	–ᠴᠢ, ᠴ	abstract meaning for **'house, yurt'**	манай**х**аас ᠮᠠᠨᠠᠶᠬᠠᠠᠴ ᠡᠴ/	from **my home**
Collective CbS	–хан[4]	–ᠴᠢ/, ᠴ/	people of the **same group**	Говийн**х**он ᠭᠣᠪᠢᠨᠬᠣᠨ ᠲᠤ/ ᠴᠢ/	**people** of the Gobi
Attributive CbS	–х, –хи	–ᠴᠢ, ᠴ	**attributive** function	урдуур**х**и ᠤᠷᠳᠤᠤᠷᠬᠢ	**being** in front; **being** in the south

The possessive CbS has a **grammatical** function. Both, **local and collective CbS's** have a **lexical** function. The **attributive CbS changes the grammatical function** in a sentence.

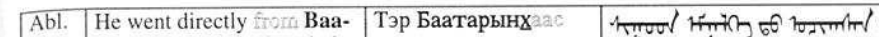
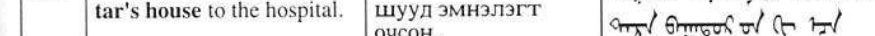
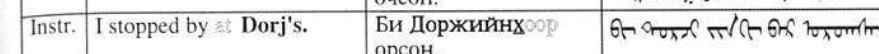
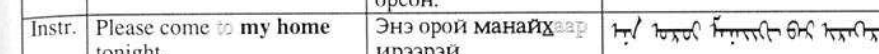
1.1.1.2.2.1 Possessive CbS "–х"

This CbS is always added to a **word with a genitive CS**. It's **used a lot** in colloquial language. Compare with the possessive pronouns on pages 260ff.

1a	Is this Baatar's book?	Энэ – Баатарын ном мөн үү?	ᠢᠨᠡ/ - ᠪᠠᠭᠠᠲᠤᠷ ᠤ/ ᠨᠣᠮ/ ᠪᠤᠤ/ᠤᠤ ᠣ..
1b	No, it **belongs to** Dorj.	Үгүй, энэ Доржийн**х**.	ᠦᠭᠦᠢ, ᠢᠨᠡ ᠳᠣᠷᠵᠢᠢᠨ ᠲᠤ/ ᠴᠢ..
2a	**Whose** is this?/ **To** whom does it **belong**?	Энэ – хэний**х** вэ?	ᠢᠨᠡ/ – ᠤᠨ/ ᠪ ᠴᠢ ᠪᠡ ᠣ..
2b	This is **yours**./ This **belongs to** you.	Энэ – таны**х**.	ᠢᠨᠡ/ – ᠲᠤᠨ/ ᠪ ᠴᠢ..
2c	This is **mine**./ This **belongs to** me.	Энэ – миний**х**.	ᠢᠨᠡ/ – ᠮᠢᠨᠢᠬ..
2d	This is Walter's./ This **belongs to** Walter.	Энэ – Валтерын**х**.	ᠢᠨᠡ/ – ᠸᠠᠯᠲᠧᠷᠤᠨ ᠤ/ ᠴᠢ..
3a	Where does this child **belong**?	Энэ юун хүүхэд вэ?	ᠢᠨᠡ/ ᠵᠤᠭᠤᠨ/ ᠬᠦᠦᠬᠡᠳ/ ᠪᠡ ᠣ..
3b	It' s a child **from** our class. ("...**belonging to** our class.")	Энэ манай ангийн**х**.	ᠢᠨᠡ/ ᠮᠠᠨᠠᠢ ᠠᠩᠢᠢᠨ ᠲᠤ/ ᠴᠢ..
4a	Is this cream **for** the face? ("...**belonging to** the face?")	Энэ тос нүүрний**х** үү?	ᠢᠨᠡ/ ᠲᠤᠰ/ᠤᠭ ᠨᠦᠦᠷᠨᠢᠢᠬ ᠤ/ ᠴᠢ ᠤᠤ ᠣ..
4b	No, **for** the hands. ("...**belonging to** the hands.")	Үгүй, гарын**х**.	ᠦᠭᠦᠢ, ᠭᠠᠷᠤᠨ ᠤ/ ᠴᠢ..

Other suffixes can be added to this suffix if the word is used **as a noun**:

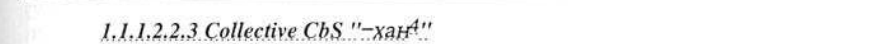
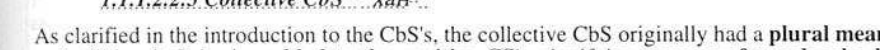
Gen.	Compared to **yours, mine** is quite new. (e.g. pen)	Миний**х** чиний–хийн дэргэд шинэ.	ᠮᠢᠨᠢᠬ ᠴᠢᠨᠢᠭ ᠲᠤ/ᠤᠨ/ᠳᠤ/ ᠰᠢᠨᠡ/ ᠰᠡ/ᠭ..
Dat.	Someone gave some food to **mine**. (e.g. dog)	Миний**х**эд хоол өгчээ.	ᠮᠢᠨᠢᠬᠡᠳ ᠬᠤᠤᠯ ᠥᠭᠴᠡᠡ/ ᠪᠡᠷᠡᠭ..
Acc.	Please read Baatar**'s**. (e.g. book)	Чи Баатарын**х**ыг унш.	ᠴᠢ ᠪᠠᠭᠠᠲᠤᠷ ᠤ/ ᠴᠢ ᠴ ᠤᠩᠰ..

Abl.	**Yours** is better than **mine**. (e.g. book)	Чинийх минийхээс сайн.	
Instr	With a Chinese? (e.g. plane)	Хятадынхаар уу?	
Com	**Yours** left together with the older brother**'s.** (e.g. horse)	Таных ахынхтай хамт явжээ.	
Dir.	I want to go and look in a private **(one)**. (e.g. shop)	Би хувийнх руу очиж үзмээр байна.	

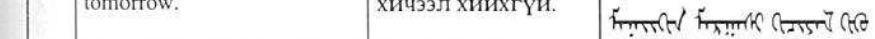
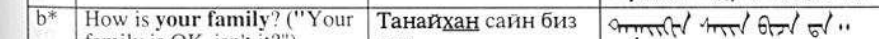
1.1.1.2.2.2 Local CbS "–х"

The CbS has a very exact meaning in this function, yet it can't be easily translated with one word. The idea of this suffix has to do with **the place, the home, the apartment of a particular person or family**. It seldom means simply 'family'.
Notice that the following forms are not possible: "миний, чиний, түүний, бидний, таных". "Тэдний" is possible, but only in the meaning 'his house', 'his yurt', etc.

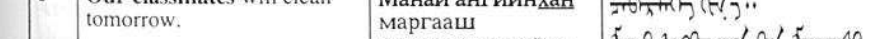
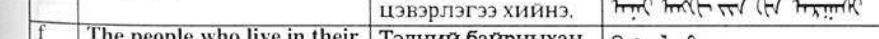
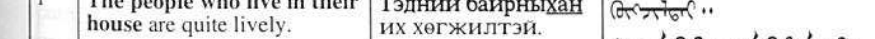
Example to show **the difference between the possessive CbS and the local CbS**:

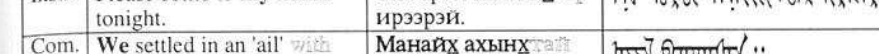
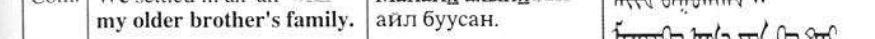
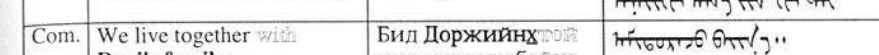
	Word with CbS	English	Cyrillic	Classical
Posses-sive CbS	brother's ахынхыг	I read **my older brother's**. (What? e.g. book)	Би ахынхыг уншив.	
Local CbS	the **yurt** of my brother ахынхыг	I helped move **the yurt/household** of my older brother.	Би ахынхыг нүүлгэлцэв.	

Other examples:

a	**We** moved. (with all our household)	Манайх нүүсэн.	
b	Here is my **teacher's home**.	Манай багшийнх энд байна.	
c	Where do **you (and your family)** live?	Танайх хаана байна?	

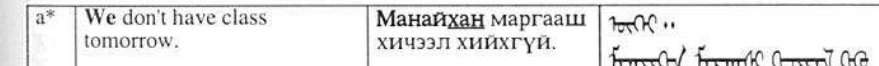
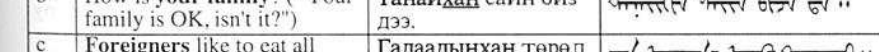
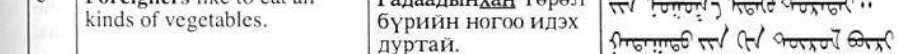
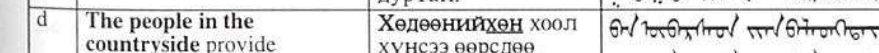
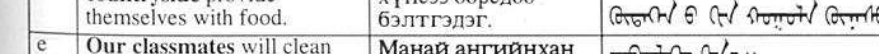
A CC can be added to this CbS, since it has the meaning of a noun (house/yurt). But because its meaning is more abstract there are **no sentences with a genitive CS**. When used with a **dative CS**, the CbS "–х" is **dropped**.
This combination of a dative-locative CS + zero-suffix of local CbS can be compared with the English equivalent 'We ate **at Millers'**; 'There was a party going on **at Birds'**.

Dat.	I haven't been to **their home**.	Тэдний би орж үзээгүй.	
Dat.	Do you regularly go to **your older brother's home**?	Та ахынхаа очдог уу?	
Acc.	I showed him **my older brother's home.**	Би түүнд ахынхыг зааж өгсөн.	
Acc.	He kept on looking for **Baa-tar's house**, but didn't find it.	Тэр Баатарынхыг эрээд эрээд олсонгүй.	
Abl.	From **my house** we went to the mountains.	Бид манайхаас ууланд явсан.	

Abl.	He went directly from **Baa-tar's house** to the hospital.	Тэр Баатарынхаас шууд эмнэлэгт очсон.	
Instr.	I stopped by at **Dorj's.**	Би Доржийнхоор орсон.	
Instr.	Please come to **my home** tonight.	Энэ орой манайхаар ирээрэй.	
Com.	**We** settled in an 'ail' with **my older brother's family.**	Манайх ахынхтай айл буусан.	
Com.	We live together with **Dorj's family.**	Бид Доржийнхтой цуг амьдарч байна.	
Dir.	He went to **the* teacher's home.** (*clear from context)	Тэр багшийнх руу явсан.	
Dir.	One rider is coming towards **my yurt.**	Нэг морьтой хүн манайх руу ирж явна.	

1.1.1.2.2.3 Collective CbS "–хан[4]"

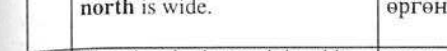
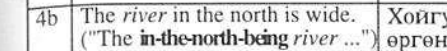
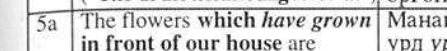
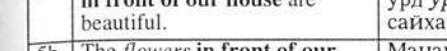
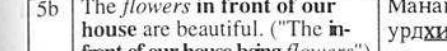
As clarified in the introduction to the CbS's, the collective CbS originally had a **plural meaning** and still has it. It is also **added to the genitive CS**'s, signifying a **group of people who have something in common** (e.g. a table that they all sit around) or **who somehow belong together** (relatives, classmates, etc.). The same word can describe different groups of people, **depending on the context**. For example: "манайхан" can mean any of the following:
'the people in a family', 'close relatives', or 'the people with which one lives/works/studies', etc.

a*	**We** don't have class tomorrow.	Манайхан маргааш хичээл хийхгүй.	
b*	How is **your family**? ("Your family is OK, isn't it?")	Танайхан сайн биз дээ.	
c	**Foreigners** like to eat all kinds of vegetables.	Гадаадынхан төрөл бүрийн ногоо идэх дуртай.	
d	**The people in the countryside** provide themselves with food.	**Хөдөөнийхөн** хоол хүнсээ өөрсдөө бэлтгэдэг.	
e	**Our classmates** will clean tomorrow.	Манай ангийнхан маргааш цэвэрлэгээ хийнэ.	
f	**The people who live in their house** are quite lively.	Тэдний байрныхан их хөгжилтэй.	

(* see "Note" on next page)

All CC's can be added to this suffix.

Gen.	Last winter was some-what hard for the **in-habitants of the capital**.	Өнгөрсөн өвөл нийс-лэлийнхний хувьд хатуухан болсон.	
Dat.	For **people living in the Gobi,** a draught year is difficult.	Говийнхонд гантай жил хэцүү байдаг.	

Acc.	Do you know **the people at my table**?	Та манай **ширээнийх–нийг** таних уу?	
Abl.	Three people came from **Dorj's family/relatives.**	**Доржийнхноос** гурван хүн иржээ.	
Instr.	I want to have **my roommates** play this game.	Би энэ тоглоомыг **манай өрөөнийхөөр** тоглуулья.	
Com. *	Will **you** compete with **us** ? (e.g. clubs)	**Танайхан манайхан–тай** уралдах уу?	
Dir.	He looked in amazement at **the people in our church.**	Тэр манай **цуглааны–хан** руу гайхан харсан.	

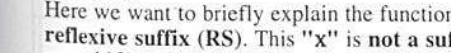
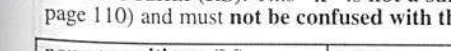
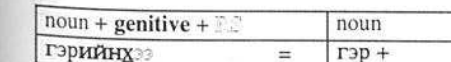
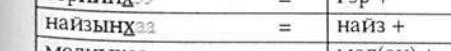
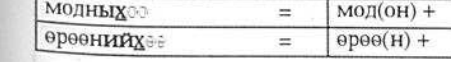
*** Note:**

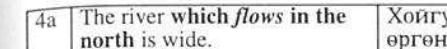
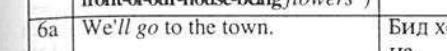
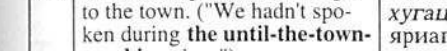
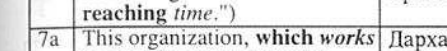
The collective CbS is **often joined to the words манай** () **and танай** (). For this reason, we want to add clarity at this point. These two pronouns are usually thought of as plural forms, but actually they are words which **reflect a modest attitude**. So it is common to hear **"манай эхнэр"** for 'my wife' although the **plural form is absolutely unnecessary.** Whenever the possessive pronoun doesn't fit a situation (perhaps because the person doesn't really **possess** the noun), the forms "манай/ танай" are used.

манай хүүхдүүд	**my** children	normal **modest** attitude (not mine alone)
миний хүүхдүүд	**my** children	emphasis on"**my**"
бидний хүүхдүүд	**our** children	emphasis on "**our**"
Таны эхнэр сайн уу?	Is your wife doing well?	**No difference** because it's only important for the 1st person to be modest.
Танай эхнэр сайн уу?	Is your wife doing well?	

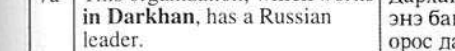
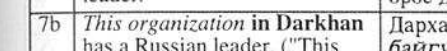
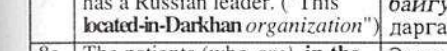
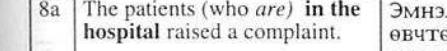
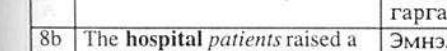
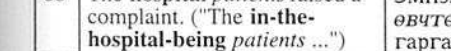
1.1.1.2.2.4 Attributive CbS "–х, –хи"

Most words with a case suffix are followed by verbs. Only the genitive case can be followed by a noun. Because of this, the attributive CbS is called on to help **balance out this weakness** by changing the sentence structure **to allow a *noun* rather than a *verb* to follow it** (see the *italicized words* in the examples). In English we often use a **subordinate clause** to express this, but in the following examples, a **literal translation** will also be given.
Please notice also that dative-locative CS and this attributive CbS, when used together, create the new word-pair **дахь/ дэх** (,) (see ex. 7-8).

1a	The road *lies* ahead (southward).	Зам урд *байна.*	
1b	On the **southern** *road*, children are playing. ("In the **south-lying** *road*...")	Урд**хи** *замд* хүүхдүүд тоглож байна.	
2a	I *went* to a summer camp.	Би зуслан руу *явав.*	
2b	The *road* **to the summer camp** is bad. ("The to-the-**summer-camp-going** *road* ...")	Зуслан руу**хи** *зам* муу байна.	
3a	I'*m holding* this pen in my hand.	Би энэ үзгийг гартаа *барьж* байна.	
3b	The *pen* **that I'm holding in my hand** is very good. ("The **in-my-hand-being** *pen* ...")	Миний гарт**хи** *үзэг* их сайн.	

4a	The river **which *flows* in the north** is wide.	Хойгуур *урсдаг* гол өргөн.	
4b	The *river* in the north is wide. ("The **in-the-north-being** *river* ...")	Хойгуур**хи** *гол* өргөн.	
5a	The flowers **which *have grown* in front of our house** are beautiful.	Манай байшингийн урд *ургасан* цэцэг сайхан.	
5b	The *flowers* **in front of our house** are beautiful. ("The **in-front-of-our-house-being** *flowers*")	Манай байшингийн урд**хи** *цэцэг* сайхан.	
6a	We'*ll go* to the town.	Бид хот хүртэл *яв–на.*	
6b	We hadn't spoken until we got to the town. ("We hadn't spoken during **the until-the-town-reaching** *time*.")	Хот хүртэл**х** *хугацаанд* бид юу ч яриагүй.	
7a	This organization, **which *works* in Darkhan**, has a Russian leader.	Дарханд *ажилладаг* энэ байгууллага орос даргатай.	
7b	*This organization* **in Darkhan** has a Russian leader. ("This **located-in-Darkhan** *organization*")	Дархан **дахь** *энэ байгууллага* орос даргатай.	
8a	The patients (who *are)* **in the hospital** raised a complaint.	Эмнэлэгт *байгаа* өвчтөнүүд гомдол гаргажээ.	
8b	The **hospital** *patients* raised a complaint. ("The **in-the-hospital-being** *patients* ...")	Эмнэлэг **дэх** *өвчтөнүүд* гомдол гаргажээ.	

More words (adverbs) which are often used with this suffix:

9	being above/on	дээр	дээр**х**		
	being below/under	доор	доор**хи**		
	upwards going	дээш	дээш**их** (дээш**хи**)		
	downwards going	доош	доош**их** (доош**хи**)		
	being close, this side	наашаа	наашаа**ших** (наашаа**хи**)		
	being further, that side	цаашаа	цаашаа**ших** (цаашаа**хи**)		

Attention!
Here we want to briefly explain the function of the **"х", which connects genitive CS with the reflexive suffix (RS)**. This **"х"** is **not a suffix**, but serves only as an **inserted consonant** (see page 110) and must **not be confused with the CbS's!**

noun + **genitive** + RS		noun	genitive CS	**inserted consonant**	RS
гэрийн**х**ээ	=	гэр +	ийн +	х +	ээ
найзын**х**аа	=	найз +	ын +	х +	аа
модны**х**оо	=	мод(он) +	ы +	х +	оо
өрөөний**х**өө	=	өрөө(н) +	ий +	х +	өө

1.1.1.2.3 Case-bound Particles (CbP's)

In Mongolian there is another **group of words** (not suffixes, because they are written seperately from the word stem) which **appear together with a CS**. In some of their functions they are similar to the **reflexive suffix**, which we will look at on page 108.

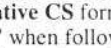
These CbP's have 2 major functions: one in connection with nouns, which we will look at in this paragraph and one in connection with syntax (e.g. "тэгсэн чинь, миний эхнэр чинь", etc.)

Characteristics of the CbP's:

1.) They follow **after a noun with a** CS (nominative case is also possible, which is an essential difference to the RS; see the 3rd example of each).
2.) They **relate to a person** which means, every CbP relates only to one specific person.
3.) They **can't be considered as possessive pronouns** because the possessive function, which seems to come through in the translation, is not the most important function. More importantly, they express the **relationship** between the person to which this CbP refers and the noun.
4.) They never **refer to the subject**, but to the 1st, 2nd or 3rd person.

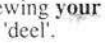
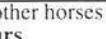
wrong:	**correct:**
Би ээжид минь цай авчирсан. **I** brought **my** mother tea. (CbP can't refer to the subject!)	Би ээждээ цай авчирсан. (see RS) **I** brought **my** mother tea. Би ээжид чинь цай авчирсан. **I** brought **your** mother tea. Ээж минь цай уусан. (nominative case) **My** mother drank tea.
Би ахад минь хэлсэн. **I** told **my** older brother. (CbP can't refer to the subject!)	Би ахлаа хэлсэн. (see RS) **I** told **my** older brother. Би ахад нь хэлсэн. **I** told **his/her** older brother. Ах чинь надад хэлсэн. (nominative case) **Your** brother told me.

1.1.1.2.3.1 CbP's, Rules, Examples

Person	**Cyrillic** (equivalent pronoun)	**Classical**	**Examples:**		
			English	**Cyrillic**	**Classical**
1st p. singular	**минь** (миний/ манай)		**my** father	аав минь	
			my wife	эхнэр минь	
1st p. plural	**маань** (бидний/ манай)		**our** children	хүүхдүүд маань	
			our father	аав маань	
2nd p. singular	**чинь** (чиний)		**your** father	аав чинь	
			your mother	ээж чинь	
2nd p. plural/ polite form	**тань** (та нарын/ таны)		**your** father	аав тань	
			your mother	ээж тань	
			your friend	найз тань	
3rd p. singular/ plural	**нь** (түүний/ тэдний)	 *old forms: strong/weak (•)	**his/her/its** father	аав нь	(*)
			his/her/its mother	ээж нь	(*)
			his/her/its friend	найз нь	(*)

1.1.1.2.3.2 Usage

In the English translation, we cannot see the difference between a possessive pronoun and a CbP, because we don't express this "Mongolian feeling of relationship". In the following examples, the CbP's are translated to English possessive pronouns, but, as stated before, **their main function is not emphasis on possession**.

Cases	**English**	**Cyrillic**	**Classical**
Nom.	**My** horse came.	Морь минь иржээ.	
	His /Her sister lives in Darkhan.	Эгч нь Дарханд суудаг.	
Gen.	I've finished sewing **your** older brother's 'deel'.	Би ахын чинь дээ-лийг оёж гүйцлээ.	
	This is **my** horse's saddle.	Морины минь эмээл энэ.	
Dat.	Father gives **her/his** sister lessons.	Аав эгчид нь хичээл заадаг.	
	He brought **our** older brother bread and milk.	Тэр ахад маань мах, сүү авчирлаа.	
Acc.	Please bring **my** horse.	Морийг минь чи аваад ирээч.	
	I know **your** older brother.	Би ахыг чинь танина.	
Abl.	There are no other horses there than **yours**.	Адуунаас тань өөр адуу тэнд алга.	
	I asked **his/her** sister.	Би эгчээс нь асуулаа.	
Instr.	Several books were sent to you with **our** Dorj.	Доржоор маань танд хэдэн ном иржээ.	
	I usually have **his/her** mother cut my hair.	Би ээжээр нь үсээ засуулдаг.	
Com.	Bat's horse left together with **my** horse.	Батын морь морьтой минь хамт явжээ.	
	I'm not like **your** older brother.	Би ахтай чинь адилгүй.	
Dir.	Let's go to **his/her** yurt.	Гэр лүү нь явцгаая.	
	Let's go to **your** school.	Сургууль руу чинь очъё.	

Note: Some grammar books list **special accusative CS**'s (-ы, -ий; not to be confused with genitive CS's!) for the case that a CbP follows. This is because in the colloquial the "g" can hardly be distinguished, but it is still more logical to keep writing it. However, since we often do see this **half-accusative CS** form presented, we want to briefly introduce it here:
"-ийг" becomes "**ий**" when followed by "минь/ чинь/ маань/ тань/ нь"
"-ыг" becomes "**ы**" when followed by минь/ чинь/ маань/ тань/ нь".

1.1.1.3 THE REFLEXIVE SUFFIX "-аа⁴" (RS)

1.1.1.3.1 Function of the RS

The English language has **no equivalent** to the RS. For that reason we want to explain its function clearly.

The RS has **two main characteristics** that can be explained as follows:
1.) It is never added to the subject of the sentence.
Because the RS links a syntagma* **to the subject,** it can't be added to the subject itself.
2.) It is always added to a CS or a VDS.
A **CS** or a **VDS** is the nucleus of any syntagma. Therefore, in order to link a syntagma to the subject, the RS must be **added to the CS or the VDS** of that syntagma.

*What is a syntagma?
The **case suffixes (CS**'s) connect either **nouns with nouns** (N-N-syntagma) or **nouns with verbs** (N-V-syntagma). The **Verb Determining Suffixes (VDS**'s) connect **verbs with verbs** (V-V-syntagma). The **RS** helps **to integrate** these three syntagmas in a sentence **coupling them to the subject**. Because the subject is at the beginning of the sentence, this is a 'reverse' coupling and is therefore called 'reflexive'. Sometimes one could be tempted to put this RS simply into the category 'possessive pronouns', but this **possesssive function** is only one function among several.

1.) Example for N-N syntagma:
Би найзынхаа захиаг авав. I received my friend's letter.

who?	I (Би)	subject
what happened?	received (авав)	predicate (verb)
what?	the letter (захиа+г)	direct object (noun)
what kind of?	friend's (найз+ын)	attribute (noun)
N-N syntagma?	the friend's letter (найзын захиа)	noun + noun
relationship?	my (-хаа)	refl. relationship of the syntagma to the subject

2.) Example for N-V syntagma:
Хүүхдүүд ааваасаа асуув. The children asked their father .

who?	The children (Хүүхдүүд)	subject
what happened?	asked (асуув)	predicate (verb)
whom?	the father (аавaac)	indirect object (noun)
N-V syntagma?	to ask the father (аавaac асуу-)	noun + verb
relationship?	their (-аа)	refl. relationship of the syntagma to the subj.

3.) Example for V-V syntagma:
Би гэртээ ирмэгцээ цай уув. As soon as I came home, I drank tea.

who?	I (Би)	subject
what happened?	drank (уув)	predicate (verb)
when?	As soon as I came (ир+мэгц)	adverbial clause (with VDS)
V-V syntagma?	to drink as soon as one comes (ирмэгц уу-)	verb + verb
relationship?	**I** came, **I** drank(-аа) (**my** coming and drinking)	refl. relationship of the syntagma to the subj.

In this part we'll only look at the **first two syntagmas,** because they are **related to the noun and the CS**'s. On page 173, other examples will be included for the third syntagma (V-V). Please see also Chapter 4 in the Appendix (page 418f).

1.1.1.3.2 RS, Rules, Examples

Suffix	**Rules:** For words ending with р	**Examples**	(English translation not possible without context)
-ын/ (iyan/iyen)	☞ **consonants**	найз+ын/	найзын/
		нэр+ын/	нэрын/
		ном+ын/	номын/
		хүүхэд+ын/	хүүхдийн/
-он/ (ban/ben)	☞ vowels	аав+он/	аавынхаа+он/
		гэрээс+он/	гэрээсээ+он/
		дээр+он/	дээрээ+он/
		хөдөө+он/	хөдөөгөө+он/
	RS combined with CS's		
	Dative-Locative: (often)		
-дээр/ , -дөр/ daxan/degen	☞ vowels	гэр+ээ+дээр/	гэрээсээ+дөр/
		аав+дээр/	аавынхаа+дөр/
	☞ "namilaŋ"	найз+ын+дээр/	найзынхаа+дөр/
		нэрэ+ээ+дээр/	нэрэндээ+дөр/
-тээ/ , -тэй/ taxan/tegen	☞ "bagaraŋasada"	нэр+ээ+тээ/	нэрээ+тэй/
		хүүхэд+ээ+тээ/	хүүхдийн+тэй/
	Accusative: (old forms)		
-гээ/ , -гэй/ yuxan/yügen	conforming with vowel harmony	аав+гээ/	аавыг+гэй/
		хүү+ээ+гээ/	хүүгээ+гэй/
	Ablative: (quite common)		
-ээсэ/ ečexan -өөс/ ečegen	conforming with vowel harmony	гэр+ээсэ/	гэрээс+өөс/
		нэр+ээсэ/	нэрэнд+өөс/
	Comitative: (old forms)		
-тэйгээ/ taixan -тэй/ teigen	conforming with vowel harmony	аав+тэйгээ/	аавтай+тэй/
		бүгдээр+тэйгээ/	бүгдэд+тэй/

¬аа ¬оо ¬ээ ¬өө	☞ **one suffix for everything** conforming with vowel harmony (see exceptions below)	**Dative:** аавд аавдаа ээжид ээждээ охинд охиндоо өрөөнд өрөөндөө	**Ablative:** аавaac аавaacаа гэрээс гэрээсээ номоос номоосоо өвөөс өвөөсөө
		Accusative : аав аавaа (аавыгаа) ээж ээжээ (ээжийгээ) хог хогоо өндөг өндгөө	**Instrumental:** аавaар аавaараа ээжээр ээжээрээ номоор номоороо өндөөр өндгөөрөө
	Attention! ◦ "¬ъ" and "¬ь" • inserted consonant "х" for genitive case suffix • inserted consonant "г" for diphthongs and long vowels; always used with: -zero-suffix accusative (–ø) -comitative (–тай) -directive (руу)	анги анга сургууль сургуулиа **Genitive:** аавын аавынхаа ээжийн ээжийнхээ **Accusative (–ø) :** харандаа харандаагаа бөө бөөгөө **Comitative:** аавтай аавтайгаа ээжтэй ээжтэйгээ	арх архаа мор моро өдрийн өдрийнхөө модны модныоо нохой нохойоо гэрээ гэрээгээ **Directive:** ах руу ах руугаа гэр лүү гэр лүүгээ

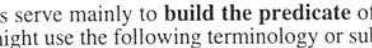
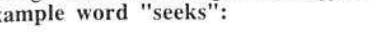
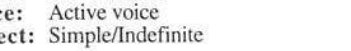
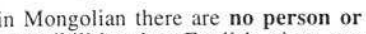
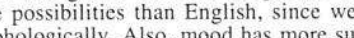
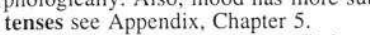
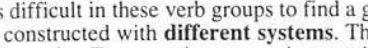
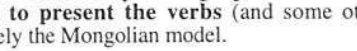
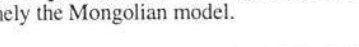
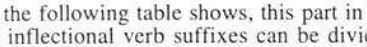
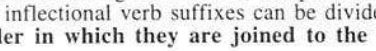
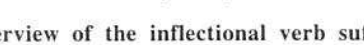
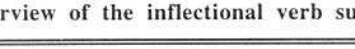
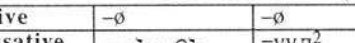
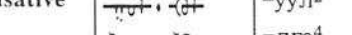
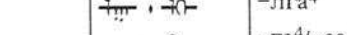
1.1.1.3.3 Usage of the RS

We tried to make it clear in the introduction that the **RS is never added to the subject** of the sentence, and thus does not follow the nominative case. The accusative case can have a **zero-suffix (–ø)** which means, the noun is in the accusative case but misses the suffix. For further explanation look up the **hierarchy list** (on p. 89) and the examples below with an asterisk (*).

Case	English	Cyrillic	Classical
Gen. a	I read **my** friend's letter.	Би найзынхаа захиаг уншсан.	
b	Turn off the light in **your** room!	Чи өрөөнийхөө гэрлийг унтраа!	
c	The children will eat **their** fruit after **their** meal.	Хүүхдүүд жимсээ хоолныхоо дараа иднэ.	
d	She/He closed the door of **her/his** house.	Тэр гэрийнхээ хаалгыг хаав.	
Dat. a	I wrote **my** friend a letter.	Би найздаа захиа бичсэн.	
b	She bought **her** husband a shirt.	Тэр нөхөртөө цамц авав.	
c	Did you buy **your** daughter a bag?	Чи охиндоо цүнх авсан уу?	

Dat. d	He/She loves **his/her** older sister a lot.	Тэр эгчдээ их хайртай.	
Acc. a*	I won't forget you, **my dear.** (pers. pronoun)	Би чамайгаа мартахгүй.	
b*	I took **my** stuff. (demonstr. pronoun)	Би үүнийгээ авсан.	
c*	Please take **your** Dorj with you. (name)	Чи Доржийгоо (Доржоо) аваад яваарай.	
d*	I miss **my** Dad. (relatives)	Би аавыгаа/ааваа санаж байна.	
e*	Please remember **your** teacher always.	Багшаа (Багшийгаа) дурсаж яваарай.	
f	She/He's looking after **her/his** cattle. (animals)	Тэр үхрээ хариулж байна.	
g	Please take **your** garbage. (things)	Чи энэ хогоо аваарай.	
h	Bat forgot **his** pen today. (things)	Бат өнөөдөр үзгээ мартжээ.	
i	We have to love **our** earth. (things)	Бид дэлхийгээ хайрлах хэрэгтэй.	
Abl. a	The children asked **their** Dad many things.	Хүүхдүүд ааваасаа зөндөө юм асуусан.	
b	Dorj is taller than **his** older sister.	Доржэгчээсээ өндөр.	
c	She/He isn't afraid of **her/his** dog.	Тэр нохойноосоо айдаггүй.	
d	We received a letter from **our** grandfather.	Бид өвөөгөөсөө захиа авсан.	
Instr. a	We had **our** teacher teach us this.	Бид багшаараа үүнийг заалгасан.	
b	Please send this with **your** child.	Чи үүнийг хүүхдээрээ явуулаарай.	
c	They are proud of **their** daughter.	Тэд охиноороо бахархдаг.	
d	That tree is 3 meters tall. ("in **its** height")	Тэр мод өндрөөрөө 3 метр.	
Com. a	He/She went together with **his/her** friend.	Тэр найзтайгаа хамт явсан.	
b	The mother met with **her** son.	Ээж нь хүүтэйгээ уулзав.	
c	We played cards with **our** friends.	Бид нөхөдтэйгөө хөзөр тоглов.	
d	The mother had **her** picture taken with **her** daughter.	Ээж нь охинтойгоо зургаа авахуулав.	
Dir. a	He/She went by car to **his/her** summer camp.	Тэр зуслан руугаа машинаар явсан.	
b	I went ("to **my**") home.	Би гэр лүүгээ харьсан.	

1.1.1.3.4 Comparison with CbP's

	English	Cyrillic	Classical
1a	**My** older brother came from the countryside.	**Миний** ах хөдөөнөөс ирсэн.	
1b		Ах **минь** хөдөөнөөс ирсэн.	
1c	not possible in nominative case!		
2a	He/She took **your** older brother's book.	Тэр **таны** ахын номыг авсан.	
2b		Тэр ахын **тань** номыг авсан.	
2c	He/She took **his/her** older brother's book.	Тэр ахын**хаа** номыг авсан.	
3a	He/She sent **my** older brother a book.	Тэр **миний** ахад ном явуулсан.	
3b		Тэр ахад **минь** ном явуулсан.	
3c	He/She sent **his/her** older brother a book.	Тэр ахд**аа** ном явуулсан.	
4a	He/She doesn't know **my** older brother.	Тэр **миний** ахыг мэдэхгүй.	
4b		Тэр ахыг **минь** мэдэхгүй.	
4c	He/She doesn't know **his/her** older brother.	Тэр ах(ыг)**аа** мэдэхгүй.	
5a	He/She took a book from **my** older brother.	Тэр **миний** ахаас ном авсан.	
5b		Тэр ахаас **минь** ном авсан.	
5c	He/She took a book from **his/her** older brother.	Тэр ахаас**аа** ном авсан.	
6a	He/She had **my** older brother teach him/her.	Тэр **миний** ахаар хичээл заалгав.	
6b		Тэр ахаар **минь** хичээл заалгав.	
6c	He/She had **his/her** older brother teach him/her.	Тэр ахаар**аа** хичээл заалгав.	
7a	He/She went to the countryside with **my** older brother.	Тэр **миний** ах-тай хөдөө явсан.	
7b		Тэр ахтай **минь** хөдөө явсан.	
7c	He/She went to the countryside with **his/her** older brother.	Тэр ахтай**гаа** хөдөө явсан.	

1.1.2 Verbs

Verbs serve mainly to **build the predicate** of a sentence. In English, when talking about verbs, we might use the following terminology or subgroups:
Example word "seeks":

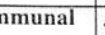
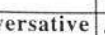
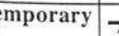
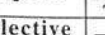
Tense: Present tense
Voice: Active voice
Aspect: Simple/Indefinite
Mood: Indicative
Person: 3rd person
Number: Singular

But in Mongolian there are **no person or number suffixes. Voice and aspect** have many more possibilities than English, since we often don't express various conditions or aspects morphologically. Also, mood has more subgroups than English. For a **comparative chart of the tenses** see Appendix, Chapter 5.
It is difficult in these verb groups to find a good and correct equivalent since these two languages are constructed with **different systems**. The Latin system, which forms the basis for English as well as other European languages, is not suitable for the Mongolian language. Therefore, we have tried **to present the verbs** (and some other parts of this book) **using a different model,** namely the Mongolian model.

1.1.2.1 CONJUGATION OF VERBS

As the following table shows, this part in Mongolian is **extensive**. As mentioned on page 40, the inflectional verb suffixes can be divided into groups. **We'll present the suffixes in the order in which they are joined to the verb stem.**

Overview of the inflectional verb suffixes:

1.1.2.1.1 Voice (Voice Suffixes = VoS's)			
Active	–ø	–ø	Би явна.
Causative		–уул[2]	Би захиа явуулсан.
		–лга[4]	Чи намайг яагаад айлгав?
		–га[4]/–аа[4]	Багш биднийг монгол хэлэнд сургана. Баяр чийдэнгээ унтраав.
Passive		–гд	Тэдний баг хожигдов.
		–д/–т	Аавын ном олдсон. Тариалан үерийн усанд автав.
Communal		–лц	Би ахтайгаа байшин барилцав.
Adversative		–лд	Тэр хоёр удаан үнсэлдэв.

1.1.2.1.2 Aspect (Aspect Suffixes = AsS's)			
Synthetically expressed Aspect			
Quick		–схий	Та жаахан явсхийгээрэй.
Temporary		–зана[4]	Та намайг хүлээзнэж байгаарай.
Complete		–чих	Би хоолоо идчихсэн.
Collective		–цгаа[4]	Сайн байцгаана уу?
Repetitive		–л	Миний зүрх хүчтэй цохидж байна.
Others		–лз	Хүний юм руу бүү өнгөлз!
		–валз[2]/–галз[2]	Холоос их хотын гэрэл анивалзана. Тэр үүнээс татгалзаж байна.
		–гана[4]	Жаал хүү юу ч хэлэхгүй бүлтгэнэнэ.

Analytically Expressed Aspects			
Progressive		-ж бай-	Тэр унтаж байна.
Perfect		-аад бай-	Намайг ирэхэд тэр ажлаа дуусчи- хаад байсан. / Намайг ирэхэд тэр ажлаа дуусчихсан байсан.
		-сан бай-	
Progressive - Perfect		-саар бай-	Бид даалгавраа болсоор байна.

1.1.2.1.3 Mood

Determining Suffixes (DS's)			
Noun Determining Suffixes (NDS's)			
Past		-сан[4]	Тийшээ явсан хүн миний аав.
Indefinite Present		-даг[4]	Энд германаар ярьдаг хүн байна уу?
Progressive Present		-аа[4]	Тэнд байгаа номыг авч яваарай.
Future		-х	Би хөдөө явах ажлаас чөлөөлөгдөв!
"Doer"		-гч	Орчуулагч хүү хаана байна вэ?
Adword Determining Suffixes (AwDS's)			
Wish		-маар[4]	Энэ үзмээр (сайхан) кино байна.
Possibility		-хуйц[2]	Надад хүрэлцэхүйц (их) мөнгө бий.
Necessity		-уушгай[2]	Энэ бол уншуушгай (сонин) ном.
Others		-шгүй	Бид эх орноо хэвгаарлашгүй (их) хайрладаг.
		-лтай[3]	Энэ бол мориор явалтай (бэрх) газар.
		-лтгүй	Энэ бол машинаар явалтгүй (муу) зам.
		-м	Хайрлам (сайхан) эх орон минь!
		-мгүй	Монгол хүнд морь саламгүй (чухал) унаа.
Verb Determining Suffixes (VDS's)			
Coordinating Verb Determining Suffixes (cVDS's)			
Simultaneous		-ж/-ч	Ээж хоол хийж аав цай уув.
Associative		-н	Өвгөн үүдээ нээн оров.
Anterior		-аад[4]	Миний аав хоёр хоноод буцна.
Subordinating Verb Determining Suffixes (sVDS's)			
Conditional		-в(б)ал[4]	Ажлыг эхэлбэл дуусгах хэрэгтэй.
Concessive		-вч/-бч	Чамайг явавч байдал өөрчлөгдөхгүй
Immediat. succeeding		-магц[4]	Тэр сургуулиа төгсмөгц хөдөө явсан.
Logically succeeding		-хлаар[4]	Нар гарахлаар дулаан болдог.
Intending		-хаар[4]	Сарнай түүнийг дуудахаар гарсан.
Limiting		-тал[4]	Намайг иртэл хүлээгээрэй!
Progressive		-саар[4]	Би хүн болсоор ийм юм үзээгүй.
Succeeding		-нгуут[2]	Аавыг явангуут ээж ирлээ.
Seizing opportunity		-нгаа[4]	Дорж явангаа тамхиа асаалаа.
Excluding		-маажин[4]	Сурмаажин сая мэднэ.

Terminating Suffixes (TS's)			
Person-bound Terminating Suffixes (PTS's)			
Intention (1st p.)		-я[3]	Би явъя!
Decision (1st p.)		-сугай[2]	Хөдөө аж ахуйг эрчимтэй хөгжүүлсүгэй!
Command (2nd p.)		-ø	Номоо нээ!
Request (2nd p.)		-аач[4]	Чи энэ ажлыг хийгээч!
Demand (2nd p.)		-аарай[4]	Энэ эмийг хоолны өмнө уугаарай!
Admonition (2nd p.)		-уузай[2]	Чи мартуузай!
Appeal (2nd p.)		-гтун[2]	Мөнгөө банканд хадгалуулагтун!
Permission (3rd p.)		-г	Тэр үзвэл үзэг.
Hope (3rd p.)		-аасай[4]	Тэр архи битгий уугаасай!
Blessing (3rd p.)		-тугай[2]	Танай гэрт аз жаргал дэлгэртүгэй!
Tense-bound Terminating Suffixes (TTS's)			
General Past		-сан[4]	Би өглөө хоол идсэн.
Past		-жээ/-чээ	Орой болжээ.
Past		-в	Тэр надаас олон юм асуув.
Past		-лаа[4]	Би саяхан сонин ном уншлаа.
Indefinite Present		-даг[4]	Би их сургуульд ажилладаг.
Progress. Present		-аа[4]	Миний ном Доржид байгаа.
Present		-на[4]	Намар бороо орно.
Future		-на[4]	Би маргааш явна.

General explanation of the verb suffixes:

1.) Some **vowels are dropped** when a suffix is added (see pages 23-25), in other cases an inserted vowel is needed.

2.) Some Classical verb stems which end with consonants need an **inserted vowel. Rules** for these are found on pages 17-18, and they are referred to in the suffix tables, where necessary.

1.1.2.1.1 Voice Suffixes (VoS's)

In English we are **familiar with the active and passive voices**, but not with the causative, communal or adversative voices, because we express causative, communal or adversative conditions **not with suffixes,** but with other words like '**to have** someone **do** something', 'against', 'together', etc.

Here are some **characteristics** of a Mongolian VoS:

1.) The VoS **does not indicate a tense**. This is the task of a 'terminating suffix' (TS).

2.) Sometimes **more than one VoS** can be added to a verb stem:
Examples: устгуул-, хүргүүл-, гүйлгүүл-, уулгуул-, зөөлгүүл-

3.) Often, the verb stem gets a **completely new meaning** when the VoS is acting like a **derivational suffix**. In these cases, the exact English translation can be traced down but is not used.

ява-	= to go	явуул-	= to cause to go	**= to send**
бай-	= to be	байгуул-	= to cause to be	**= to build**
ол-	= to find	олго-	= to cause to find	**= to give, to grant**
бари-	= to grasp	барилда-	= to grasp each other	**= to wrestle**

Because some of these VoS's have turned into derivational suffixes, other derivational suffixes can now be added to those new verb stems:

Examples: явуул– --> явууллага = contrivance, espionage
ярилца– --> ярилцлага = discussion
барилда– --> барилдаан = wrestling match

On the following pages we'll talk about **'syntactic subject'** and **'logical subject'**. Therefore, let's explain what we mean by these two terms:

'I had my sister sew me a dress.'
predicate? ---> to sew
subject of sentence? ---> I
logical subject? Who sews? ---> my sister (in fact, this is an object)
In this example, the object of the sentence (my sister) has clearly **subject character**. (She is the one doing the job and not me).

'With Dorj's help I made my son drink the medicine.'
predicate? ---> to (make to) drink
subject ? ---> I
logical subject? Who drinks? ---> my son (object)
How did I do it? ---> with Dorj's help (2 people together caused the action)

(Finally, we have to admit, the Mongolian voices **are causing some headaches** for the Mongolian linguists. So the reader shouldn't be too frustrated if not everything is clear to him.)

1.1.2.1.1.1 Active VoS (–ø)

***Cyrillic Rules*:**
Zero-suffix (–ø)

***Classical Rules*:**
Zero-suffix (–ø)

***Explanations*:**
1.) The subject of the sentence is **active.**
2.) Though some verbs express a **passive** condition (e.g. to be), they are in the active voice (**j,k**).

***Frequency*:** Written language: **very often**
Colloquial language: **very often**

a	My father went to Germany.	Миний аав Герман явсан.	
b	Have you eaten anything?	Чи юм идсэн үү?	
c	We study at a college.	Бид дээд сургуульд сурдаг.	
d	Bat slept very late yesterday.	Бат өчигдөр их орой унтсан.	
e	Will you go to your sheep?	Та хониндоо явах уу?	
f	I will be at home writing a letter.	Би гэртээ суугаад захиа бичнэ.	
g	Please come quickly!	Чи хурдан ирээрэй!	
h	The older brother will go there tomorrow.	Ах нөгөөдөр очно.	
i	They have reviewed their lessons well.	Тэд хичээлээ сайн давтсан.	
j	The clothes are drying.	Хувцас хатаж байна	
k	The water is getting hot.	Ус халж байна.	

1.1.2.1.1.2 Causative Voice

The causative (from Latin 'causa' = 'reason') is used when the subject (which sometimes doesn't appear) **causes something to happen**. The subject is the reason why something happens. But sometimes the causative expresses an action that hasn't been caused purposely but just happened. In English, the causative is expressed with verbs like '**to have** someone do something', '**to cause** ...', '**to make** ...', '**to see to it, that** ...', '**to make sure, that** ...', etc. In Mongolian, all this is expressed by the causative suffixes.

Here some of their **characteristics**:

1.) The **main function** of a causative suffix is to change **intransitive verbs into transitive verbs**. Transitive verbs need a **direct object**; intransitive verbs never have one.
English transitive verbs: to put, to set, to bring, to buy, etc.
English intransitive verbs: to occur, to faint, to sleep, to die, etc.

2.) Verbs with a causative suffix often gain a **new meaning**, that is, they are translated very differently from the original verb (see explanation 3 on page 115).

3.) There are **four different suffixes** which are used to build the causative voice. The **following rules** should prove to be of some help in finding one's way through the causative labyrinth. Unfortunately, we can't do without exceptions since the Cyrillic has developed for so long without conforming to the Classical script. (Example of an exception: үнс– ---> үнсүүл–, although the stem ends with an "s", a fact that is not visible in the traditional Cyrillic verb stem үнсэ–).

Classical verb stem ending with:	Classical suffix	Cyrillic suffix
- short i **- short vowel**		–уул, –үүл
- short vowel except i		–аа, –ээ, –оо, –өө
- consonants **("d")**		–га, –гэ, –го, –гө
- long vowel **- diphthongs**		–лга, –лгэ, –лго, –лгө

4.) If **two or even three causative suffixes** are used together, it could indicate that the subject **causes an action with the help of some other person(s)**. In colloquial language, verbs with more than one causative suffix are often used. There are many subtle reasons for this which fall beyond the scope of this book.

Possible suffix combinations are:
-лга + -уул -га + -уул -аа + -лга -аа + -лга + -уул

Examples:
шата– = to burn (intransitive; the thing burns by itself, e.g. the fire)
шатаа– = to burn (transitive; someone burns something)
шатаалга– = to have someone burn something (causative)
шатаалгуул– = to have someone burn something (causative)

1.1.2.1.1.2.1 Causative VoS "-уул²"

***Cyrillic Rules*:**

-уул, -үүл complying with vowel harmony
(-иул) for verb stems ending with "-ь" or "-и" (**ex. e,h**)
(-ул) after "ё/я/е/ю"; these "y-vowels" already contain a vowel (**ex. b**)

***Classical Rules*:**

[illegible] complying with vowel harmony

This suffix follows only verb stems **ending with a vowel**. Therefore the inserted vowel is never needed.

***Explanations*:**
1.) This suffix always follows a verb stem which ends in Classical script with a **short vowel**. A verb stem ending with **"i"** always demands this suffix.
2.) The **subject is omitted**, which often gives a translation in the passive voice (**ex. f**).
3.) Action is caused unintentionally (**ex. g**).

***Frequency*:** Written language: **very often**
Colloquial language: **very often**

a	The teacher **had** her clean the blackboard and the table.	Багш түүнээр самбар ширээ арчуулав.	[illegible]
b	The older sister **has** me write things; I **have** her sew things.	Эгч надаар юм бичүүлдэг, би эгчээр юм оёулдаг.	[illegible]
c	Mother will **see to it that** Pagma fetches water.	Ээж Пагмаар ус авчуулна.	[illegible]
d	Someone **let** us enter the flat. ("to **have** us come in")	Нэг хүн биднийг байранд оруулсан.	[illegible]
e	Recently, Luvsan **had** his dog catch a hare.	Лувсан сая нохойгоороо нэг туулай бариуллаа.	[illegible]
f	Dorj's family will be informed about this tomorrow. ("[A] will **cause** [B] to say this to Dorj's family.")	Доржийнхонд үүний тухай маргааш хэлүүлнэ.	[illegible]
g	Bayar **had** some lambs and goat kids die.	Баяр хэд хэдэн хурга, ишиг үхүүлэв.	[illegible]
h	Bat **made sure** his mother stayed in the hospital. ("to **cause** to lie down")	Бат эхийгээ эмнэлэгт хэвтүүлжээ.	[illegible]

1.1.2.1.1.2.2 Causative VoS "-лга⁴"

***Cyrillic Rules*:**

-лга, -лго, -лгэ, -лгө complying with vowel harmony
(When adding yet another suffix, the vowel may be dropped.)

***Classical Rules*:**

[illegible] complying with vowel harmony

***Explanations*:**
1.) This suffix always follows a verb stem ending with a **long vowel** or a **diphthong**.
2.) The subject is omitted (**ex. c,d**). In English, we need either the passive or insertion of a neutral subject.
3.) The action is caused by 2 persons = *double suffix* (**ex. h,i**)
4.) People often use *double suffix* in colloquial language (**ex. a,b,d,e**)

***Frequency*:** Written language: **very often**
Colloquial language: **very often**

a	The teacher **makes sure that** we review our lessons. ("to **cause** to review")	Багш биднээр давтлага хийлгэлэг (хийлгүүлдэг).	[illegible]
b	I **had** a lady make me a pair of nice gloves.	Би эгчээр нэг сайхан бээлий хийлгэсэн (хийлгүүлсэн).	[illegible]
c	In winter, animal fodder is transported into the 'aimags' of the Gobi. ("to **cause** to be transported")	Өвөл говийн аймгуудад машинаар малын тэжээл тээлгэлэг.	[illegible]
d	(Someone) **had** the pupils move the chairs and tables.	Сурагчдаар сандал, ширээ зөөлгөв (зөөлгүүлэв).	[illegible]
e	The sports teacher **made** the students run a long distance.	Биеийн тамирын багш оюутнуудыг хол газар гүйлгэлээ (гүйлгүүллээ).	[illegible]
f	Why did you **frighten** me? ("to **cause** to be afraid")	Чи намайг юунд айлгав?	[illegible]
g	Dorj **made** his son drink milk.	Дорж хүүдээ сүү уулгав.	[illegible]
h	With Dorj's help, I **made** my son drink the medicine.	Би Доржоор хүүдээ эмий(г) нь уулгуулаа.	[illegible]
i	By asking Dorj, I **arranged** for my younger sister **to live** in a dormitory.	Би Доржийг гуйж дүүгээ байранд суулгав (суулгуулав).	[illegible]

1.1.2.1.1.2.3 Causative VoS's "-га⁴" and "-аа⁴"

In Classical script there is only **one suffix**. Because of the different pronunciations in Cyrillic, **two Cyrillic suffix forms** have developed:

1.1.2.1.1.2.3.1 VoS "-га⁴"

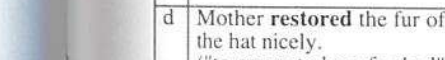
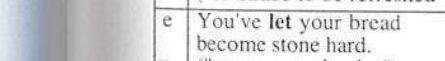
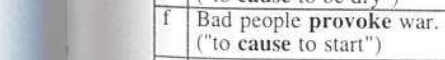
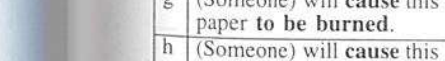
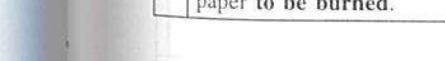
Cyrillic Rules:
-га, -го, -гэ, -гө complying with vowel harmony

Classical Rules:

complying with vowel harmony
For verb stems ending with a **"d"** see on page 17 the 5th rule. (**ex. c,d**)

Explanations:
1.) This Cyrillic suffix is used when the Classical verb stem **ends with a consonant.** Due to the missing final vowel **no sound complex** is being formed in Classical Script when the suffix is added and therefore the suffix is pronounced "-га".
2.) This suffix often gives the verb stems to which it is added a **new meaning** (becomes a derivational suffix). That's why the typical English translations for the causative 'to have, to make, to cause', etc.) don't appear (**ex. a,b,e**).
3.) *Double* causative suffix (**ex. g,h**).
4.) The subject is omitted (**ex. f,h**). In English we need a translation in the passive or insertion of a subject.
5.) With Cyrillic verb stems ending with "д", this suffix changes "д" into "т" (**ex.b-c**).

Frequency: Written language: **very often**
Colloquial language: **very often**

a	Can't you **discharge** me from the hospital soon? ("to **cause** to get out")	Та намайг эмнэлгээс мөд гарга**г**аж өгч чадахгүй юу?	
b	Uyanga **losened** her belt. ("to **cause** to become loose")	Уянга бүсэ султ**г**алаа.	
c	Study well for your exams! ("prepare well")	Та нар шалгалтанд сайн бэлт**г**э!	
d	You have really **starved** your child. ("to **cause** to be hungry")	Та хүүхдээ их л өлс**г**өжээ.	
e	The teacher is **instructing** us well in the Mongolian language. ("to **cause** to learn")	Багш биднийг монгол хэлэнд сайн сур**г**аж байна.	
f	(They')ll let the airplane to Khovd fly tomorrow at 8 o'clock. ("to **cause** to fly")	Ховдын нисэх онгоцыг маргааш 8 цагт нис**г**энэ.	
g	I **had** Dorj deliver some books to Bat. ("to **cause** to reach")	Би Батад Доржоор хэдэн ном хүр**г**үүллээ.	
h	(They) **asked** someone **to kill** the cockroaches in (their) flat. ("to **cause** to be exterminated")	Байрныхаа жоомыг хүн гуйж уст**г**уулсан.	

1.1.2.1.1.2.3.2 VoS "-аа⁴"

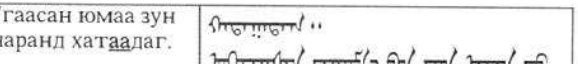
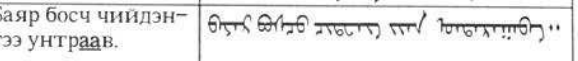
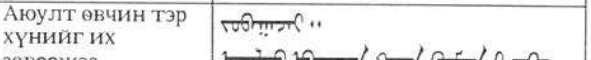
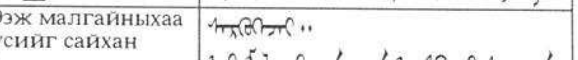
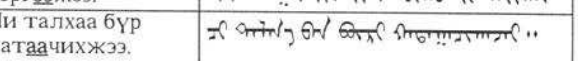
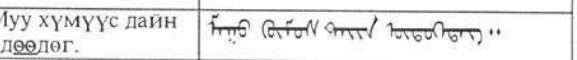
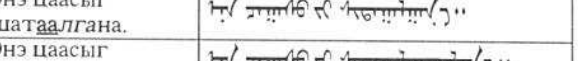
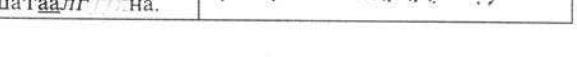
Cyrillic Rules:
-аа, -оо, -ээ, -өө complying with vowel harmony

Classical Rules:

complying with vowel harmony

Explanations:
1.) This Cyrillic suffix is used when the Classical verb stem **ends with a short vowel**. Because of this final vowel a **sound complex** for long vowels comes into being (see p. 9) and therefore the suffix is pronounced "-аа".
2.) The subject is omitted; therefore, a **translation in the passive** is most common (**ex. a,g,h**).
3.) *Double* and triple causative suffix (**ex. g,h**).

Frequency: Written language: **often**
Colloquial language: **often**

a	In summer the washed articles are **left to dry** in the sun. ("to **cause** to be dry")	Угаасан юмаа зун наранд хат**аа**лаг.	
b	Bayar got up and **turned off** the light. (to **cause** to be extinguished")	Баяр босч чийдэнгэ**э** унтр**аа**в.	
c	A dangerous illness **made** that person suffer a lot.	Аюулт өвчин тэр хүнийг их зов**оо**жээ.	
d	Mother **restored** the fur of the hat nicely. ("to **cause** to be refreshed")	Ээж малгайныхаа үсийг сайхан сэргэ**э**жээ.	
e	You've **let** your bread become stone hard. ("to **cause** to be dry")	Чи талхаа бүр хат**аа**чихжээ.	
f	Bad people **provoke** war. ("to **cause** to start")	Муу хүмүүс дайн өдө**ө**дөг.	
g	(Someone) will **cause** this paper **to be burned**.	Энэ цаасыг шат**аа**лгана.	
h	(Someone) will **cause** this paper **to be burned**.	Энэ цаасыг шат**аа**лг[illegible]на.	

1.1.2.1.1.2.4 Functions of Causative

1.1.2.1.1.2.4.1 Intransitive ---> Transitive

The main function of the causative is to **change intransitive verbs into transitive verbs**: **Intransitive verbs** have no direct (accusative) object. **Transitive verbs** need a *direct object*. In our examples these are written in *italics*.

a	He'll **go** to Darkhan. He'll **send** *a letter*. ("to cause to go")	Тэр Дархан явна. Тэр *захиа* явуулна.	
b	Please **sit down**! Please **plant** *this tree*! ("to cause to sit down")	Чи суугаарай! Энэ *модыг* суулгаарай!	
c	I **grew up** in Switzerland. I **brought up** *my children* in Switzerland. ("to cause to grow up")	Би Швейцарьт өссөн. Би *хүүхдүүдээ* Швейцарьт өсгөсөн.	
d	The paper **burns**. I'm **burning** *the paper*. ("to cause to burn")	Цаас шатаж байна. Би *цаас* шатааж байна.	
e	The grass **is dry**. The herders **dry** *the grass* in summer. ("to cause to be dry")	Өвс хатаж байна. Малчид зун *өвс* хатаадаг.	
f	The children **go to sleep** early. I **have** *my children* **go to sleep** early.	Хүүхдүүд эрт унтдаг. Би *хүүхдүүдээ* эрт унтуулдаг.	
g	Those two **met**. We **arranged for** *those two (people)* to meet. ("to cause to meet")	Тэр хоёр уулзсан. Бид *тэр хоёрыг* уулзуулсан.	

Note that there are certain suffixes that either make verbs transitive or intransitive:
Intransitive verb suffixes.: тасра–, хагара– өвгөрө–
Transitive verb suffixes: тасал–, хагал–

a	The electricity **was cut**. The power station **cut** *the electrical supply*.	Тог (цахилгаан) тасарсан. Цахилгаан станц *тог* тасалсан.	
b	My father **is getting old**.	Миний аав өвгөрч байна.	
c	-Why **did** the cup **break**? -Who **broke** *this cup*?	-Аяга яагаад хагарсан бэ? -*Энэ аягыг* хэн хагалсан бэ?	

1.1.2.1.1.2.4.2 Transitive ---> Causative

The second function is to **change a transitive verb into a causative**. That means, **the action** which is expressed by a transitive verb (with a *direct object*) **is done through someone else**. Person A uses person B to achieve something.

Notice that the logical subject is the same in both sentences, but the syntactic subject changes. In the second sentence the logical subject demands the instrumental case.

a	We had *lessons*. The teacher **made sure that** we **had** *lessons*.	Бид *хичээл* хийв. Багш биднээр *хичээл* хийлгэв.	
b	I typed a *document*. My boss **had** me **type** *a document*.	Би *бичиг* машиндав. Дарга надаар *бичиг* машиндуулав.	
c	Hey cleaning lady, empty *the trash*! **Have** your cleaning lady **empty** *the trash*!	Цэвэрлэгч эм, *хогоо* аса. Та цэвэрлэгчээрээ *хогоо* асгуул.	
d	I repaired *my watch*. My friend **had** me **repair** *his watch*.	Би *цагаа* засав. Миний найз надаар *цагаа* засуулав.	
e	I translated a *one-page paper*. / The teacher **had** me **translate** *a one-page paper*.	Би *нэг хуудас зүйл* орчуулав. / Багш надаар *нэг хуудас* *зүйл* орчуулуулав.* (*exception to causative-rule)	

1.1.2.1.1.2.4.3 Transitive ---> Passive

The third function is to **change a transitive verb into the passive**. The action which is expressed with a transitive verb (*with direct object*) is changed into a passive voice by means of causative suffixes. It's very important to know that the passive voice is **quite rarely used** in Mongolian. More often, **a passive voice is expressed with a causative suffix**. That's why this third function has **great significance**.
The syntactic subject in the first sentence changes into an indirect object (instrumental or dative) in the passive sentence and the *direct object (accusative)* of the first sentence becomes the *syntactic subject*.

a	I tested *the students*. *The students* were **tested** by me.	Би *оюутнуудыг* шал- гав./*Оюутнууд* надаар (надаар) шалгуулав.	
b	I brought *Dorj* home. *Dorj* was **brought** home by me.	Би *Доржийг* гэрт нь хүргэв./*Дорж* надаар гэртээ хүргүүлэв.	
c	The dog bit *the cat*. *The cat* was **bitten** by the dog.	Нохой *муурыг* хазав. *Муур* нохойгоор (но- хойгоор) хазуулав.	
d	I rode *a horse*.*A horse* was **ridden** by me.	Би *морь* унасан. *Морь* надаар унуулсан.	
e	The tree has hit *her sister's leg*. *Her sister's leg* has been **hit** by a tree.	Мод *эгчийнх нь* *хөлийг* цохичихсон. *Эгчийнх нь хөл* мо- нгоор цохиулчихсан.	

1.1.2.1.1.3 Passive VoS "-ГД⁵"

***Cyrillic Rules*:**

-ГД normal suffix; exceptions see below
(-Д) for verb stems ending with "**-Л**" **or** "**-С**" (**ex. d**)
(-Т) for verb stems ending with "**-В**"; very rare (**ex. e**)

***Classical Rules*:**

ᠮᠠᠨ ᠴᠠᠨ complying with vowel harmony

(ᠳᠠᠨ) = da/de/ta/te: exceptions! (**ex. d,e**)
Inserted vowel necessary (**ex. b,f**)

***Explanations*:**

1.) Very similar to the English passive voice, yet **not widely used.** The example sentences have verbs that **often** take the passive voice; nevertheless, people prefer the active voice.
2.) In colloquial language, the passive is often expressed with the **causative** voice, thus losing its causative meaning (**ex. j,k,l;** compare also with page 23).
3.) Some passive VoS's have turned into derivational suffixes and give the verbs a **new meaning** (**ex. m-t**).

***Frequency*:** Written language: **seldom**
Colloquial language: **seldom**

a	This wooden house **was built** in 1935.	Энэ модон байшин 1935 онд **баригдсан.**	ᠪᠤ ᠪᠠᠢᠰᠢᠨ ᠪᠠᠭᠤᠷᠭᠠᠭᠳᠠᠪ᠂᠂ ᠡᠨᠡ ᠮᠣᠳᠣᠨ ᠪᠠᠢᠰᠢᠨ ᠢ ᠪᠠᠭᠤᠷᠭᠠᠭᠳᠠᠪ
b	In 1991, the United Germany **was founded.**	1991 онд Нэгдсэн Герман Улс **байгуулагджээ.**	ᠪᠢᠳᠡᠨ ᠤᠨ ᠳᠤᠮᠳᠠᠳᠤ ᠭᠡᠷᠮᠠᠨ ᠤᠯᠤᠰ ᠢ᠂᠂ ᠨᠡᠭᠡᠳᠦᠯ ᠪᠤᠯ ᠪᠢᠳᠡᠨ ᠤᠨ ᠳᠤᠮᠳᠠᠳᠤ ᠭᠡᠷᠮᠠᠨ ᠤᠯᠤᠰ
c	Bajar **was elected** class president.	Баяр ангийн даргаар **сонгогдлоо.**	ᠪᠠᠶᠠᠷ ᠠᠩᠭᠢᠶᠢᠨ ᠳᠠᠷᠭᠠᠭᠠᠷ᠂᠂ ᠪᠠᠶᠠᠷ ᠤᠨ ᠠᠩᠭᠢ ᠶᠢᠨ ᠳᠠᠷᠭᠠᠭᠠᠷ ᠪᠣᠯᠣᠭᠰᠠᠨ
d	His books and notebooks **were** not **found.**	Түүний ном, дэвтэр **олдсонгүй.**	ᠲᠡᠷᠡ᠂᠂ ᠲᠡᠷᠡ ᠶᠢᠨ ᠨᠣᠮ᠂ ᠲᠡᠮᠳᠡᠭᠯᠡᠯ ᠤᠨ ᠳᠤᠮᠳᠠᠳᠤ ᠣᠯᠳᠤᠭᠰᠠᠨ ᠦᠭᠡᠢ
e	The field **was taken away** by the floods.	Тариалан үерийн усанд **автав.**	ᠣᠭᠲᠠᠪᠤ᠂᠂ ᠲᠤᠲᠠᠮᠠᠯ ᠤᠨ ᠭᠤᠤᠯᠠ ᠪᠤᠷᠤᠭᠤ ᠶᠢᠨ ᠤᠰᠠᠨ ᠳᠤ ᠠᠪᠠᠭᠰᠠᠨ
f	His life **was devoted to** science.	Түүний амьдрал шинжлэх ухаанд **зориулагдсан.**	ᠲᠡᠷᠡ ᠤᠨ ᠠᠮᠢᠳᠤᠷᠠᠯ ᠨᠢ᠂ ᠡᠷᠳᠡᠮ ᠤᠨ ᠤᠭᠰᠠᠷᠠᠯ ᠢᠶᠠᠨ ᠰᠢᠨᠵᠢᠯᠡᠬᠦ ᠤᠨ ᠲᠤᠯᠠᠳ ᠵᠣᠬᠢᠭᠤᠯᠵᠤ ᠪᠠᠭᠰᠠᠨ
g	Recently this young man **was released from** prison.	Энэ залуу саяхан шоронгоос **суллагдсан.**	ᠡᠨᠡ ᠬᠦᠦᠬᠡᠨ ᠰᠠᠭᠤᠰᠢᠨ ᠠᠴᠠ᠂᠂ ᠡᠨᠡ ᠬᠦᠦᠬᠡᠳ ᠤᠨᠳᠤᠰᠤᠨ ᠤ ᠬᠣᠷᠢᠶᠠᠨ ᠠᠴᠠ ᠪᠠᠭᠤᠯᠭᠠᠭᠰᠠᠨ
h	Our food **has been used up.**	Бидний хоол **барагдсан.**	ᠪᠢᠳᠡᠨ ᠤ ᠬᠣᠨᠢᠲ ᠤᠨ ᠪᠠᠭᠤᠷᠭᠠᠭᠳᠠᠪ᠂᠂
i	All my money **has been spent.**	Миний бүх мөнгө **үрэгдсэн.**	ᠮᠢᠨᠤ ᠪᠦᠬᠦ ᠮᠥᠩᠭᠡ ᠲᠤᠭᠠᠷᠴᠠᠭᠤᠯᠭᠠᠭᠰᠠᠨ ᠪᠠᠢᠨ᠂᠂
j	One deer **was eaten by** a wolf.	Нэг буга чононд **идэгджээ.** (идүүлжээ)	(ᠨᠢᠭᠡᠳᠦᠯᠵᠡᠶ)᠂᠂ ᠨᠢᠭᠡᠨ ᠪᠤᠭᠠ ᠴᠢᠨᠤ ᠶᠢᠨ ᠨᠣᠬᠣᠶᠠᠨ ᠳᠤ ᠨᠢᠭᠡᠭᠳᠡᠭᠳᠡᠪ
k	A cat **was bitten by** a dog.	Муур нохойнд **хазуулав.**	ᠮᠤᠭᠤᠢ ᠨᠣᠬᠠᠢ ᠳᠤ ᠬᠠᠵᠠᠭᠤᠯᠠᠭᠰᠠᠨ᠂᠂

l	She **let** me **kiss** her. / She came to greet me (e.g. at the New Year's celebration) ("She **was kissed by** me.")	Тэр надад **үнсүүлсэн.**	ᠡᠷᠡ᠂ ᠨᠠᠳᠠᠭ ᠳᠤ ᠬᠣᠯᠪᠣᠭᠳᠤᠭᠤᠯᠵᠤ ᠪᠠᠭᠰᠠᠨ᠂᠂
m	Something white **appeared** in the darkness. ("was seen")	Харанхуйд нэгэн цагаан юм **үзэгдэв.**	ᠬᠠᠷᠠᠩᠬᠤᠢ ᠳᠤ᠂᠂ ᠬᠠᠷᠠᠩᠬᠤᠢ ᠳᠤ ᠨᠢᠭᠡ᠂ ᠴᠠᠭᠠᠭᠠᠨ᠂ ᠶᠤᠮ᠂ ᠦᠵᠡᠭᠳᠡᠪᠦ
n	Mongolia is an economically **underdeveloped** country. ("to be behind")	Монгол бол эдийн засгийн хувьд **хоцрогдсон** орон.	ᠮᠣᠩᠭᠣᠯ ᠪᠤᠯ ᠡᠳᠦᠷ ᠤᠨ ᠵᠠᠰᠠᠭ ᠤᠨ ᠪᠠᠶᠢᠳᠠᠯ᠂᠂ ᠬᠣᠶᠢᠨᠢᠴᠠ ᠪᠠᠢᠭᠠᠯᠢ ᠶᠢᠨ ᠣᠷᠤᠨ ᠳᠤ ᠬᠣᠶᠢᠰᠤᠨ
o	My team **lost.** / My team **was beaten.**	Манай баг хожигдов.	ᠪᠢᠳᠡᠨ ᠤ ᠠᠯᠪᠠᠨ ᠤᠨᠳᠤᠰᠤᠨ ᠤ᠂᠂
p	Some animals **can be seen** at the foot of that mountain.	Тэр уулын бэлд хэдэн мал **харагдаж байна.**	ᠡᠨᠡ ᠤᠷᠤᠨ ᠳᠤ᠂᠂ ᠡᠷᠡ᠂ ᠤᠷᠤᠨ᠂ ᠲᠤ᠂ ᠪᠠᠢ ᠭᠠᠨ ᠴᠢᠨᠢ
q	We are **under the auspices** of the Academy of Sciences. ("to be under someone's authority")	Бид Шинжлэх ухааны академид **харьяалагдлаг.**	ᠪᠢᠳᠡᠨ᠂᠂ ᠪᠢᠳᠡ ᠨᠠᠷ ᠤᠨ ᠮᠡᠳᠡᠯᠭᠡ᠂ ᠤᠯᠠᠰ ᠤᠨ ᠰᠢᠨᠵᠢᠯᠡᠬᠦ ᠤᠭᠰᠠᠷᠠᠯ ᠤᠨ ᠠᠺᠠᠳᠧᠮᠢ ᠳᠤ
r	Yesterday a party **took place** at the university. ("to be gone =to take place")	Өчигдөр их сургууль дээр үдэшлэг **явагдсан.**	ᠥᠴᠢᠭᠳᠥᠷ᠂᠂ ᠥᠴᠢᠭᠳᠥᠷ ᠤᠨ᠂ ᠤᠯᠠᠰ ᠤᠨ ᠰᠤᠷᠭᠠᠭᠤᠯᠢ ᠳᠤ᠂ ᠦᠳᠡᠰᠬᠡᠯᠡᠭ ᠪᠣᠯᠵᠤ ᠪᠠᠭᠰᠠᠨ
s	I **like** you a lot. ("You **are being liked** by me.")	Та надад их **таалагдаж байна.**	ᠲᠠ᠂᠂ ᠲᠠ ᠨᠠᠳᠠᠭ ᠳᠤᠨᠳ᠂ ᠠᠶᠢᠯᠠᠯᠭᠠᠲᠠᠢ ᠪᠠᠢᠨᠠ
t	I **miss** my home land. ("Home land of mine **is being missed**.")	Нутаг маань их **санагдаж байна.**	ᠨᠤᠲᠠᠭ ᠮᠠᠨᠢ ᠳᠤᠨᠳ ᠠᠰᠠᠭᠠᠭᠳᠠᠵ ᠪᠠᠢᠨ᠂᠂

Attention: Don't use these passive forms:
If the object is **not a living thing**, then the passive is almost never used. The following phrases (a selection) are grammatically correct but **are never used**:

кино үзэгдэ-	a film to be seen
хоол идэгдэ-	food to be eaten
захиа бичигдэ-	a letter to be written
ном уншигда-	a book to be read
хичээл хийгдэ-	a lesson to be taught
тамхи татагда-	tobacco to be smoked
бичиг машиндагда-	a document to be typed
машин жолоодогдо-	a car to be driven
дээл өмсөгдө-	a coat to be worn
архи уугда-	vodka to be drunk
радио сонсогдо-	a radio to be listened to

1.1.2.1.1.4 Communal VoS "-лц[5]"

***Cyrillic Rules*:**
-лц

***Classical Rules*:**
ᠯᠴᠠ
Inserted vowel necessary (**ex. g,m**)

***Explanations*:**
1.) The communal VoS expresses that the **action of the subject is associated** with the action(s) of other(s). The subject is usually a **helper** (**ex. a-e**), but the action of 'helping' is not the main thing, rather we want to stress that someone **takes part/is involved** in the action.
2.) Some verbs with this suffix take on a **new meaning** and lose the communal meaning (**f-i**).
3.) Some verbs which can't take the adversative suffix need the communal suffix to express a **mutual action** (see next VoS on page 127 and **ex. j-n**).

***Frequency*:** Written language: **often**
Colloquial language: **often**

a	Bat **helped set up** Bayar's yurt.	Бат Баярын гэрийг **барилцав.**	ᠪᠠᠲᠤ ᠪᠠᠶᠠᠷ ᠤ᠋ ᠭᠡᠷ ᠢ᠋ ᠪᠠᠷᠢᠯᠴᠠᠪ᠃
b	Mother **helped wash** my things.	Ээж миний юмнаас **угаалцсан.**	ᠡᠵᠢ ᠮᠢᠨᠢ᠋ ᠶᠦᠮᠡᠨᠡᠴ ᠤᠭᠠᠯᠴᠠᠰᠠᠨ᠃
c	My younger brother, please **help me*** with my work!(*your older brother)	Дүү минь, чи ахынхаа ажлаас **хийлцээч!**	ᠳᠦᠦ ᠮᠢᠨᠡ᠂ ᠴᠢ ᠠᠬᠤᠨᠬᠠᠠ ᠠᠵᠯᠠᠠᠰ ᠬᠢᠢᠯᠴᠡᠡᠴ!
d	In fall, students go to the agricultural cooperatives and **help with bringing in** the harvest.	Оюутнууд намарт сангийн аж ахуйд очиж ургац **хураалцдаг.**	ᠣᠶᠤᠤᠲᠨᠤᠤᠳ ᠨᠠᠮᠠᠷᠲ ᠰᠠᠩᠭᠢᠶᠢᠨ ᠠᠵ ᠠᠬᠤᠢᠳ ᠣᠴᠢᠵ ᠤᠷᠭᠠᠴ ᠬᠤᠷᠠᠭᠠᠯᠴᠳᠠᠭ᠃
e	Together with my father, I **killed** a sheep.	Би аавтайгаа хонь **гаргалцав.**	ᠪᠢ ᠠᠪ ᠲᠠᠢ ᠪᠠ᠋ᠷ ᠬᠣᠨᠢ᠋ ᠭᠠᠷᠭᠠᠯᠴᠠᠪ᠃
f	I **introduced** myself to him.	Би түүнтэй **танилцав.**	ᠪᠢ ᠲᠦᠦᠨᠲᠡᠢ ᠲᠠᠨᠢᠯᠴᠠᠪ᠃
g	I **study** at the university.	Би их сургуульд **суралцдаг.**	ᠪᠢ ᠶᠠᠭ ᠰᠤᠷᠭᠠᠭᠤᠤᠯᠢ᠋᠂ ᠳᠤ ᠰᠤᠷᠠᠯᠴᠳᠠᠭ᠃
h	I **took part in** the meeting.	Би уулзалтад **оролцсон.**	ᠪᠢ ᠤᠤᠯᠵᠠᠯᠲᠠᠳ ᠣᠷᠣᠯᠴᠠᠰᠠᠨ᠃
i	I'm **in contact** with many foreign scientists.	Би гадаадын олон эр-дэмтэдтэй **харилцдаг**	ᠪᠢ ᠭᠠᠳᠠᠳᠤᠨ ᠣᠯᠠᠨ ᠡᠷ-ᠳᠡᠮᠲᠡᠳᠲᠡᠢ ᠬᠠᠷᠢᠯᠴᠳᠠᠭ᠃

Attention: The following examples carry **the meaning of the adversative VoS**, although they are written with a communal VoS.

j	For many days, the two sides **shot at each other.**	Хоёр тал олон өдрийн турш **буудалцав.**	ᠬᠣᠶᠠᠷ ᠲᠠᠯ ᠣᠯᠠᠨ ᠥᠳᠷᠢᠶᠢᠨ ᠲᠤᠷᠰᠢ ᠪᠤᠤᠳᠠᠯᠴᠠᠪ᠃
k	They **talked** about this for a long time. ("to talk with **each other**")	Тэд үүний тухай удаан **ярилцав.**	ᠲᠡᠳ ᠦᠦᠨᠢᠢ ᠲᠤᠬᠠᠢ ᠤᠳᠠᠠᠨ ᠶᠠᠷᠢᠯᠴᠠᠪ᠃
l	We shall **discuss** this problem tomorrow. ("to say to **each other**")	Бид энэ асуудлыг маргааш хэлэлцэнэ.	ᠪᠢᠳ ᠡᠨᠡ ᠠᠰᠤᠤᠳᠯᠠᠭ ᠮᠠᠷᠭᠠᠠᠱ ᠬᠡᠯᠡᠯᠴᠡᠨᠡ᠃

m	In the park, young couples walk **hand-in-hand**. ("to guide **each other** by the hand")	Залуу хосууд цэцэр-лэгт **хөтлөлцөн** явна.	ᠵᠠᠯᠤᠤ ᠬᠣᠰᠤᠤᠳ ᠴᠡᠴᠡᠷ-ᠯᠡᠭᠲ ᠬᠥᠲᠯᠥᠯᠴᠥᠨ ᠶᠠᠪᠨᠠ᠃
n	Two unparallel lines will surely **cross each other**.	Параллель биш хоёр шулуун заавал **огтлолцолог.**	ᠫᠠᠷᠠᠯᠯᠸᠯ ᠪᠢᠰᠢ ᠬᠣᠶᠠᠷ ᠱᠤᠯᠤᠤᠨ ᠵᠠᠠᠪᠠᠯ ᠣᠭᠲᠯᠣᠯᠴᠯᠣᠭ᠃

1.1.2.1.1.5 Adversative VoS "-лд[5]"

***Cyrillic Rules*:**
-лд

***Classical Rules*:**
ᠯᠳᠠ
Inserted vowel necessary (**ex. d**)

***Explanations*:**
1.) Although the adversative VoS (Latin 'adversus' = **'against each other'**) expresses that the action happens against each other, it does not always indicate a negative meaning. Therefore it's also common to translate as **'with each other'** or **'each other'**. It is an action of two or more subjects which happens **simultaneously**. The 'each other' meaning is limited to a physical realm. Therefore English verbs like **'to hate each other'** or **'to forgive each other'** are **not expressed with this suffix**.
2.) Sometimes, verbs with this suffix are **translated very freely** but the simultaneous action can still be discovered (**ex. g-k**).
3.) This VoS could also serve as a **derivational suffix** and thus loses its adversative function (**ex. l-o**).

***Frequency*:** Written language: **often**
Colloquial language: **often**

a	Those two children **are squabbling with each other.**	Тэр хоёр хүүхэд **ноцолдож байна.**	ᠲᠡᠷ ᠬᠣᠶᠠᠷ ᠬᠦᠦᠬᠡᠳ ᠨᠣᠴᠣᠯᠳᠣᠵ ᠪᠠᠶᠨᠠ᠃
b	Listen! You're not going to fight with children! ("to beat **each other**")	За, чи хүүхэдтэй **зодолдож** болохгүй шүү.	ᠵᠠ᠃ ᠴᠢ ᠬᠦᠦᠬᠡᠳᠲᠡᠢ ᠵᠣᠳᠣᠯᠳᠣᠵ ᠪᠣᠯᠣᠬᠭᠦᠢ ᠱᠦᠦ᠃
c	See! These two bulls are really butting "nicely". ("to push **against each other**'s head")	Энэ хоёр бух мөн сайхан **мөргөл-дөж байна** даа.	ᠡᠨᠡ ᠬᠣᠶᠠᠷ ᠪᠤᠬ ᠮᠥᠨ ᠰᠠᠶᠬᠠᠨ ᠮᠥᠷᠭᠥᠯᠳᠥᠵ ᠪᠠᠶᠨᠠ ᠳᠠᠠ᠃
d	Mother and son met, **embraced each other** and **kissed.**	Эх хүү хоёр уул-заж **тэврэлдэн унсэлдлээ.**	ᠡᠬ ᠬᠦᠦ ᠬᠣᠶᠠᠷ ᠤᠤᠯᠵᠠᠵ ᠲᠡᠪᠷᠡᠯᠳᠡᠨ ᠤᠨᠰᠡᠯᠳᠯᠡᠡ᠃
e	There, many people **cried together.**	Тэнд олон хүн **уйлалдсан.**	ᠲᠡᠨᠳ ᠣᠯᠠᠨ ᠬᠦᠨ ᠦᠢᠯᠠᠯᠳᠰᠠᠨ᠃
f	My friend and I always **consult with each other.**	Би дандаа найзтайгаа **зөвлөлдөг.**	ᠪᠢ ᠳᠠᠨᠳᠠᠠ ᠨᠠᠶᠢᠵᠲᠠᠢᠭᠠᠠ ᠵᠥᠪᠯᠥᠯᠳᠥᠭ᠃
g	64 strong wrestlers **wrestled** in the main sports palace. ("to grasp **each other**")	Спортын төв ордонд хүчит 64 **бөх барилдав.**	ᠰᠫᠣᠷᠲᠤᠨ ᠲᠥᠪ ᠣᠷᠳᠣᠨᠳ ᠬᠦᠴᠢᠲ ᠢᠷᠪᠡᠭᠡ ᠪᠥᠬ ᠪᠠᠷᠢᠯᠳᠠᠪ᠃
h	I heard that those two **are having an affair.** ("to go **with each other**")	Тэр хоёр **яваллаг** гэж би сонссон.	ᠲᠡᠷ ᠬᠣᠶᠠᠷ ᠶᠠᠪᠠᠯᠯᠠᠭ ᠭᠡᠵ ᠪᠢ ᠰᠣᠨᠰᠰᠣᠨ᠃

i	They **fought** among themselves **over** the stolen money. ("to snatch away from **each other**")	Тэд нар хоорондоо дээрэмдсэн мөнгөө **булаалдсан.**	[illegible]
k	I've had bad luck. ("Bad luck **encountered** me.")	Надад азгүй яв**дал тохиолдсон.**	[illegible]

Attention: The following examples have **lost their adversative meaning** and gained a new one:

l	I **tried** this a lot yesterday.	Би үүнийг өчигдөр их **оролдсон.**	[illegible]
m	–Are you learning Mongolian? –I'm **trying** to.	–Та монгол хэл сурч байна уу? –Би **оролдож** л байна.	[illegible]
n	Yesterday our two classes **entered a competition.**	Өчигдөр манай хоёр анги **уралдсан.**	[illegible]

1.1.2.1.1.6 Comparison of VoS's

Example sentences: a = active; b = passive; c = causative; d = communal; e = adversative

1.	**to build**	**бари–**	[illegible]
1a	I **built** a house.	Би байшин **барьсан.**	[illegible]
1b	This wooden house **was built** in 1935.	Энэ модон байшин 1935 онд **баригдсан.**	[illegible]
1c	I **had** construction workers **build** (me) a wooden house.	Би барилгачдаар модон байшин **бариулсан.**	[illegible]
1d	I **helped build** this house.	Би энэ байшинг **барилцсан.**	[illegible]
2.	**to hold**	**бари–**	[illegible]
2a	I **held** a flag in front of the parade.	Би жагсаалын эхэнд туг **барив.**	[illegible]
2c	I **had** them **hold** the flag.	Би тэднээр туг **бариулав.**	[illegible]
2d	I **helped hold** the flag.	Би туг **барилцав.**	[illegible]
2e	I **wrestled** with Dorj. ("to **grasp each other**")	Би Доржтой **барилдав.**	[illegible]
3.	**to treat**	**бари–**	[illegible]
3a	The masseur **treated** the patient.	Бариач өвчтөнийг **барив.**	[illegible]
3c (b)	The patient **was treated** by the masseur. (Passive expressed with causative VoS)	Өвчтөн бариачид (бариачаар) **бариулав.**	[illegible]
3d	I **assisted** the masseur in **treating** the patient.	Би бариачтай хамт өвчтнийг **барилцав.**	[illegible]

4.	**to go**	**ява–**	[illegible]
4a	My younger sister will **go** to the city.	Миний дүү хот руу **явна.**	[illegible]
4b	This month, international competitions will **take place** in Ulaanbaatar.	Энэ сард Улаанбаатар хотод олон улсын тэмцээн **явагдана.**	[illegible]
4c	I will **send** my younger sister to the city. ("to cause to go")	Би дүүгээ хот руу **явуулна.**	[illegible]
4d	I **accompanied** my younger sister to the city. ("to go with each other")	Би дүүтэйгээ хамт хот руу **явалцсан.**	[illegible]
4e	I heard that those two **are having an affair**. ("to go with each other")	Тэр хоёр **яваллаг** гэж би сонссон.	[illegible]
5.	**to kill**	**ала–**	[illegible]
5a	I **killed** a sheep.*	Би хонь **алав.***	[illegible]
5b	In World War II, many people **were killed.**	Дэлхийн 2-р дайнд олон хүн **алагдав.**	[illegible]
5c	The father **made** me **kill** a sheep.*	Аав надаар хонь **алуулав.***	[illegible]
5d	Together with my father I **killed** a sheep. *	Би аавтайгаа хамт хонь **алалцав.***	[illegible]
5e	On the battlefield many soldiers **were killing each other.**	Тулаалдааны талбарт олон цэрэг **алалдаж** байсан.	[illegible]
* In this context "ала–" is a taboo word. It would be better to use "гарга–" for 'to slaughter'.			
6.	**to occupy**	**булаа–**	[illegible]
6a	Iraq **occupied** Kuwaiti territory.	Ирак Кувейтын газар нутгийг **булаав.**	[illegible]
6b	Kuwaiti territory **was occupied** by Iraq.	Кувейтын газар нутаг Ирактаг **булаагдав.**	[illegible]
6c	Kuwait **had** Iraq **occupy** its territory.	Кувейт Ирактаг газар нутгаа **булаалгав.**	[illegible]
6d	The allies of Iraq **helped occupy** Kuwait.	Ирагийн холбоотнууд Кувейтын газар нутгийг **булаалцав.**	[illegible]
6e	Due to the **occupation of each other's** territory, war breaks out.	Газар нутгаа **булаалдсанаас** болж дайн гардаг.	[illegible]
7.	**to kiss**	**үнс–**	[illegible]
7a	I **kissed** her.	Би түүнийг **үнслээ.**	[illegible]
7 (b)	She let me kiss her. ("She **was kissed** by me.") [Passive with causative VoS]	Тэр надад **үнсүүлээ**	[illegible]
7c	He **made** me **kiss** you.	Тэр чамайг надаар **үнсүүлээ.**	[illegible]
7e	These two **kissed each other.**	Энэ хоёр **үнсэлцлээ.**	[illegible]

8.	**to find**	ол–	
8a	(My) son has to **find** his book.	Хүү номоо олох хэрэгтэй.	
8b	Our son's book **has been found.**	Манай хүүгийн ном олдсон.	
8c	The father **had** (someone) **find** the book.	Эцэг нь номыг олуулав.	
8d	I **helped** my son find the book. ("Together with my son I found the book.")	Би хүүтэйгээ хамт номыг ололцов.	
9.	**to release**	сулла–	
9a	The director **released** that young man.	Дарга тэр залууг сулласан.	
9b	That young man **was released** from prison.	Тэр залуу шорон-гоос суллагдсан.	
9c	That young man's wife **had** (someone) **release** him.	Эхнэр нь тэр залууг суллуулсан.	
9d	I **helped** have (someone) release that young man.	Би тэр залууг сул-луулалцсан.	

1.1.2.1.1.7 Combinations of VoS's

***passive* + causative**			
a	We will **have** their matter ***be*** finished soon.	Бид тэдний хэргийг түргэн барагдуулна.	
b	**Make sure that** the country's capital *is*n't wast*ed* in vain.	Та нар улсын хөрөнгийг дэмий бүү үрэгдүүл!	
causative + *passive*			
a	Many factories ***are being*** established here. ("are being **caused to be**")	Энд олон үйлдвэр байгуулагдаж байна.	
b	I ***was* questioned** about this problem many times.	Би энэ асуудлаар олон удаа байцаагдсан.	
causative + communal			
a	I **helped burn** this garbage.	Би энэ хогийг шатаалцсан.	
b	I **helped** him **deliver** the load to his yurt.	Би түүний гэрт ачааг нь хүргэлцсэн.	
communal + causative			
a	I **had** (them) **dis-cuss** my report.	Би илтгэлээ хэлэлцүүлэв.	
b	I **made** my son **assist** them.	Би хүүгээрээ тэдэнд туслалцуулав.	
adversative **+ causative**			
a	You two! Please **have** the two wrestlers close to you wrestle quickly. ("grasp each other")	Та хоёр наад хоёр бөхөө түргэн барилдуулаач!	
b	Dorj **caused** those two child-ren to beat each other up.	Дорж тэр хоёр хүүхдийг хооронд нь зодолдуулжээ.	

1.1.2.1.2 Aspect

Aspect expresses **how the action happens**: quickly, repeatedly, continuously, always, etc. In **English** we're well familiar with **the simple** (or indefinite), **the progressive** (or continuous), **the perfect** and the **progressive-perfect** aspects. In Mongolian, these aspects are expressed with analytical forms (see pages 136-38). Besides these, there are other actions that are **described by the means of an aspect suffix** (AsS).

Here are some **characteristics** of the AsS's:

1.) When combined with a VoS, the **AsS always follow the VoS** (for examples, see p.138).
2.) There is also a **simple form** that has a zero-suffix.

1.1.2.1.2.1 Synthetically Expressed Aspects (With Suffixes = AsS's)

1.1.2.1.2.1.1 AsS "-схий": Quick Action

Cyrillic Rules:
-схий

Classical Rules:

Inserted vowel necessary (**ex. f**)

Explanations:
1.) The action happens **quickly** and **in a short time**. Sometimes it could be translated with 'a little, a bit' (**ex. c,d**).
2.) Complying with vowel harmony, **weak suffixes** follow this AsS.
3.) Often used with a **PTS**, i.e., this quick action is demanded from others (**ex. a,b,c**).
4.) Often used **for verbs expressing a movement** (**ex. a,c,f**).
5.) **Very often** appears with the verb stems "**бай–**", "**тэгэ–**", "**ингэ–**"; see explanation of next paragraph (page 132)

Frequency: Written language: **seldom**
Colloquial language: **very often,** but only with a few verbs

a	Please hurry up **a bit.** ("Please go a bit faster.")	Та жаахан явсхийгээрэй.	
b	Think again **a bit!**	Та ахиад жаахан бодосхий!	
c	Please run **a bit faster;** we'll be too late.	Гүйсхийгээрэй, бид хожигдох нь!	
d	They were **a little** worried about you.		
e	The teacher gave **a quick glance** at the things I had done.	Багш миний хийсэн юмыг дөнгөж харсхийсэн болсон.	
f	Please move **a bit** (more actively)!	Та жаахан хөдөлсхий!	

1.1.2.1.2.1.1.1 "–схий" in Colloquial Language

In colloquial language, this suffix is very often added to the verb stems "**бай–**", "**тэгэ–**", and "**ингэ–**".

1.) "байсхийгээд л" + NDS "–даг"
This combination of **verb stem + AsS "–схий" + VDS "–ээд" + particle "л"** intensifies the meaning of the following NDS "–даг". Such phrases could be translated with **'keep ...ing'**. The literary translation would be 'after having been only a short while'.

a	My older sister's boyfriend **keeps coming to visit**.	Эгчийн найз залуу нь **байсхийгээд** л дандаа ирдэг.	ᠡᠭᠴᠢᠶᠢᠨ ᠨᠠᠶᠢᠵ ᠵᠠᠯᠤᠤ ᠨᠢ ᠪᠠᠶᠰᠬᠢᠶᠭᠡᠡᠳ ᠯ ᠳᠠᠨᠳᠠᠠ ᠢᠷᠳᠡᠭ ·· ᠬᠦᠨ ᠲᠦ/ ᠶᠡᠬᠡᠴᠢᠯᠡᠨ ᠲᠠᠢᠮᠠᠭ ᠢᠨ ᠪᠠᠶᠢᠭᠠᠭᠠᠭᠠ/
b	Different kinds of shoes **keep coming** into that shop.	Тэр дэлгүүрт **байсхийгээд** л янз бүрийн гутал ирдэг.	ᠪᠠᠶᠢᠰᠬᠢᠶᠭᠡᠡᠳ ᠯ ᠶᠠᠨᠵ ᠪᠦᠷᠢᠶᠢᠨ ᠭᠤᠲᠠᠯ ᠢᠷᠳᠡᠭ ·· ᠡᠳᠡ/ ᠳᠡᠯᠭᠦᠦᠷᠲ ᠲᠡᠭᠡ ᠪᠠᠶᠢᠭᠠᠭᠠᠭᠠ/ ᠳᠤ ᠭᠤᠷᠪᠠ

2.) "ингэсхийгээд/ ингэсхийж" + verb
This combination of **verb stem + AsS "–схий" + verb** has the rough meaning of 'to do something like this/that'.

a	He has gone to his lesson. I'm sure he'll come soon. ("[he] will **do a bit in this way** and then he will surely come.")	Тэр хичээлдээ явчих-сан. **Ингэсхийгээд** ирнэ л дээ.	ᠲᠡᠭᠡ ᠬᠢᠴᠢᠶᠡᠯᠳᠡᠡ ᠶᠠᠪᠴᠢᠬᠠᠨ/ ᠨᠠᠭᠠᠳ/ ᠵᠢ ᠪᠠ ·· ᠡᠳᠡ/ ᠴᠠᠭ ᠪᠠᠭᠠ ᠳᠤᠤᠷᠠᠳ ᠪᠠᠭᠠ ᠭᠠᠷᠴᠤᠤᠷᠠᠭᠠ/ ··
b	Well then, may be (we) can do it **like that**.	Харин ээ, **тэгэсхийж** хийж болох болов уу?	ᠬᠠᠷᠢᠨ ᠡᠡ ᠂ ᠲᠡᠭᠡᠰᠬᠡᠶᠵ ᠴᠢᠳᠠᠵ ᠪᠤᠢᠨᠠ ᠤᠤ?
c	Well, **that's the way** we live.	Бид **тэгэсхийгээд** л амьдарч байна даа.	ᠪᠢᠳ ᠲᠡᠭᠡᠰᠬᠡᠶᠭᠡᠡᠳ ᠯ ᠠᠮᠢᠳᠠᠷᠴ ᠪᠠᠶᠨᠠ ᠳᠠᠠ.
d	Oh, (look at that)! They've made it **this way.**	Өө, тэд нар **ингэсхийгээд** хий-чихсэн байна шүү дээ.	ᠡᠳᠡ/ ᠲᠡᠳ ᠨᠠᠷ ᠢᠩᠭᠡᠰᠬᠡᠶᠭᠡᠡᠳ ᠬᠢᠢ-ᠴᠢᠬᠰᠡᠨ ᠪᠠᠶᠨᠠ ᠱᠦᠦ ᠳᠡᠭᠡ ··
e	Please keep holding it **like that.**	**Тэгэсхийгээд** барьж байгаарай!	ᠲᠡᠭᠡᠰᠬᠡᠶᠭᠡᠡᠳ ᠪᠠᠷᠢᠵ ᠪᠠᠶᠭᠠᠠᠷᠠᠢ –·

1.1.2.1.2.1.2 AsS "–зана[4]": Temporary Action

Cyrillic Rules:
–зана, –зэнэ, –зоно, –зөнө complying with vowel harmony
Note that the ***first vowel*** of the suffix is usually dropped.

Classical Rules:
ᠵᠠᠨᠠ (this is a **new form** which was first introduced in the colloquial language)
Inserted vowel necessary (**ex. j**)

Explanations:
1.) The action is **to continue for a little while**, but has **temporary character.**
2.) This suffix is supported in its meaning by the word "**жаахан**" = 'a little' (**ex. a,c,f,j**).
3.) Usually this suffix is used with verbs that express **no movement**.
4.) Very often it appears together with the auxiliary verb "**бай–**" (**ex. a-e,g-j**).

Frequency: Written language: **quite often**
Colloquial language: **quite often**

a	Please stay **a bit** longer./ Please stay **for another minute.**	Жаахан байзнаж байгаарай!	ᠵᠠᠭᠠᠬᠠᠨ ᠪᠠᠶᠵᠨᠠᠵ ᠪᠠᠶᠭᠠᠠᠷᠠᠢ –·

b	Please keep an eye on this **for a minute.**	Та үүнийг харзнаж байгаарай!	ᠲᠠ/ ᠦᠦ/ ᠢ ᠬᠠᠷᠵᠨᠠᠵ ᠪᠠᠶᠭᠠᠠᠷᠠᠢ –·
c	Keep waiting **a little bit longer**, please!	Та жаахан хүлээзнэж байгаач!	ᠲᠠ/ᠵᠠᠭᠠᠬᠠᠨ/ ᠬᠦᠯᠡᠡᠵᠨᠡᠵ ᠪᠠᠶᠭᠠᠠᠴ –·
d	He had been waiting for a few minutes and then he left.	Тэр хэдэн минут байзнаж байгаад явсан.	ᠪᠠᠶᠭᠠᠠᠳ/ ᠬᠡᠳᠡᠨ/ ᠮᠢᠨᠤᠲ/ ·· ᠡᠳᠡ/ ᠨᠠᠭᠤᠳ/ ᠶᠠᠪᠤᠭᠰᠠᠨ ᠪᠠᠶᠭᠠᠠᠵᠨᠠᠵ
e	Hey sir, wouldn't you keep an eye on my bag, **just for a minute?**	Ах аа, та миний цүнхийг харзнаж байхгүй юү?	ᠠᠬ ᠠᠠ, ᠲᠠ ᠮᠢᠨᠢᠢ ᠴᠦᠨᠬᠢᠢᠭ ᠬᠠᠷᠵᠨᠠᠵ ᠪᠠᠶᠬᠭᠦᠢ ᠶᠦ? ·· ᠡᠳᠡ/ ᠨᠠᠭᠤᠳ/ ᠬᠦᠨ ᠲᠦ/ ᠮᠢᠨᠤ ᠵᠤᠭᠰᠤᠭᠠᠯ ᠳᠤ
f	Excuse me! Please wait **a minute.**	Уучлаарай, жаахан хүлээзнээрэй!	ᠦᠦᠴᠯᠠᠭᠠᠷᠠᠢ ·· ᠬᠦᠯᠡᠡᠵᠨᠡᠭᠡᠷᠡᠢ ᠂ ᠵᠠᠭᠠᠬᠠᠨ/
g	My daughter is **temporarily** watching my son.	Хүүг маань эгч нь харзнаж байгаа.	ᠪᠠᠶᠭᠠᠠ/ ·· ᠬᠦᠦᠭ ᠮᠠᠠᠨᠢ ᠡᠭᠴ ᠨᠢ ᠬᠠᠷᠵᠨᠠᠵ ᠪᠠᠶᠭᠠᠠ.
h	Let me call **after a while.**	Би байзнаж байгаад утасдъя!	ᠪᠢ ᠪᠠᠶᠵᠨᠠᠵ ᠪᠠᠶᠭᠠᠠᠳ/ ᠤᠲᠠᠰᠳᠤᠭᠢ –·
i	Why don't you come **a bit later**! ("Will you not come after having waited a while?")	Та хүлээзнэж байгаад ирэхгүй юү?	ᠬᠤᠭᠣᠢ ᠪᠠᠭᠰ ᠤ· ᠡᠳᠡ/ ᠪᠠᠶᠵᠨᠠᠵ ᠪᠠᠶᠭᠠᠠᠳ/ ᠬᠤᠭᠣᠢ
j	Go out **for a minute**, please.	Чи жаахан гарзнаж байгаарай.	ᠴᠢ ᠵᠠᠭᠠᠬᠠᠨ/ ᠭᠠᠷᠵᠨᠠᠵ ᠪᠠᠶᠭᠠᠠᠷᠠᠢ ··

1.1.2.1.2.1.3 AsS "–чих": Completed Action

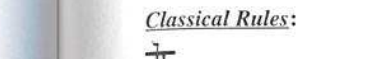
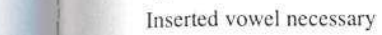
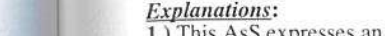
Cyrillic Rules:
–чих

Classical Rules:
ᠵᠢᠬᠰᠡ ᠂ ᠵᠢᠬᠠ complying with vowel harmony

Explanations:
1.) This suffix expresses an action which is **fully completed**.
2.) It appears very often together with the analytically expressed **perfect aspect** "–аад бай–" (see page 137). Therefore this suffix itself bears a slight **perfect meaning.**
3.) The action might be completed in the future (**ex. g-i**).
4.) In the colloquial language this suffix appears at the end of the sentence (with –ø TS) (**ex. j-k**).

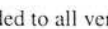
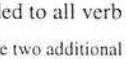
Frequency: Written language: **very often**
Colloquial language: **very often**

a	I've **eaten** my whole meal.	Би хоолоо бүгдийг **идчихлээ.**	ᠪᠢ ᠬᠣᠣᠯᠤᠤ ᠪᠦᠭᠳᠢᠢᠭ ᠢᠳᠴᠢᠬᠯᠡᠭ ··
b	She's **lost** her purse.	Тэр хэтэвчээ **гээчихэв.**	ᠡᠳᠡ/ ᠨᠠᠭᠤᠳᠠ ᠪᠢ/ ᠭᠡᠶᠴᠢᠬᠡᠪ ··
c	Our conversation has been interrupted. ("Someone **has interrupted** ...").	Бидний яриаг **тасалчихлаа.**	ᠪᠢᠳᠠ/ ᠪ ᠶᠠᠷᠢᠭ ᠲ ᠲᠠᠰᠠᠯᠴᠢᠬᠯᠠᠭ ··
d	If you **had told** me, it would have been easy, you know.	Та надад **хэлчихсэн** бол амар байж л дээ.	ᠪᠠᠶᠵᠠᠭ ᠵᠢ/ ᠪ/ ·· ᠡᠳᠡ/ ᠨᠠᠭᠤᠳ/ ᠪᠤ ᠬᠡᠯᠴᠢᠬᠡᠭᠰᠡᠨ/ ᠪᠤᠯ ᠠᠮᠠᠷ
e	They've **finished** (it).	Тэд **дуусчихжээ.**	ᠡᠳᠡ/ ᠳᠤᠤᠰᠴᠢᠬᠵᠢᠶᠡᠭ ··
f	Bat's family **moved** yesterday.	Батынх өчигдөр **нүүчихсэн.**	ᠪᠠᠭᠠ ᠲᠤ/ ᠲᠠ ᠪᠠᠲᠠᠭᠠᠨᠳᠠ ᠨᠦᠦᠴᠢᠬᠰᠡᠨ/ ··

g	He **will have left** by this time tomorrow.	Тэр маргааш өдийд **явчихна**.	
h	I **will have done** it.	Би үүнийг **хийчихнэ**.	
i	I **want to have talked** with him by tomorrow evening.	Би маргааш орой хүртэл түүнтэй **ярьчихъя**.	
j	Stop talking to him! ("Your talking to him **has been**.")	Түүнтэй ярихаа **байчих**!	
k	Shut up! ("**Have been** without sound.")	Дуугүй **байчих**!	

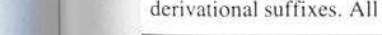
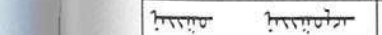
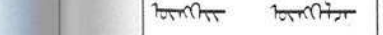
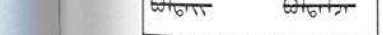
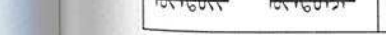
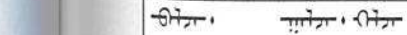
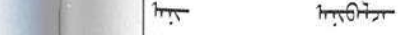
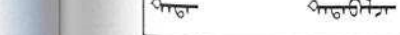
1.1.2.1.2.1.4 AsS "-цгаа[4]": Collective Action

***Cyrillic Rules*:**
-цгаа, -цгээ, -цгоо, -цгөө complying with vowel harmony

***Classical Rules*:**
 added to all verb stems complying with vowel harmony
() * these two additional forms are used in Inner Mongolia, where they use the above suffix for "bagarasada" and this one for vowels and "namilang". (**all examples except c**)

***Explanations*:**
1.) This collective AsS reveals that **many people** (usually more than two) are involved in the action. Therefore the subject is in the plural.
2.) If the subject already indicates the plural, the collective AsS may be dropped (**ex. b-e,h**).

***Frequency*:** Written language: **quite often**
Colloquial language: **quite often**

a	Hello **everybody**! ("Are you (pl.) well?")	Сайн байцгаана уу?	
b	They left yesterday.	Тэд өчигдөр явцгаасан (явсан).	
c	We took our exams yesterday.	Бид өчигдөр шалгалтаа өгцгөөсөн (өгсөн).	
d	Come tomorrow morning!	Та нар маргааш өглөө ирцгээ (ир)!	
e	Bayar, Bat, Süren and Tsend entered the cafeteria.	Баяр, Бат, Сүрэн, Цэнд нар гуанзанд орцгоожээ (оржээ).	
f	Let's drink to our friendship!	Найрамдлын төлөө ууцгаая!	
g	Study the picture and answer the question(s)!	Зургийг ажиглаад асуултад хариулцгаа!	
h	They are playing.	Тэд нар тоглоцгоож байна (тоглож байна).	
i	Now let's always talk in Mongolian!	Одоо дандаа монголоор ярьцгааж байя!	

1.1.2.1.2.1.5 AsS "-л": Repetitive Action

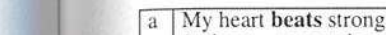
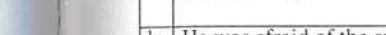
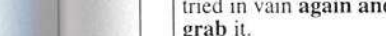
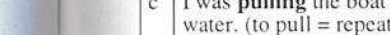
***Cyrillic Rules*:**
-л

***Classical Rules*:**

Inserted vowel necessary

***Explanations*:**
1.) This AsS expresses an action which is **repeated again and again**.
2.) Some consider this suffix to be a derivational suffix.

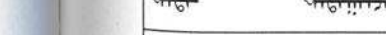
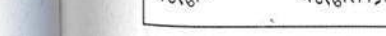
***Frequency*:** Written language: **only used with a few verbs**
Colloquial language: **only used with a few verbs**

a	My heart **beats** strongly. (to beat = repeated action)	Миний зүрх хүчтэй **цохилж байна**.	
b	He was afraid of the snake and tried in vain **again and again to grab** it.	Тэр могойноос айж **барилж** ядан байв.	
c	I was **pulling** the boat out of the water. (to pull = repeated action)	Би завийг **таталсаар** уснаас гаргав.	
d	Why **isn't** the wall clock **ticking**? (to tick = repeated action)	Ханын цаг яагаад **цохилдохгүй байна** вэ?	

1.1.2.1.2.1.6 AsS "-лз, -валз[2]/-галз[2], -гана[4]": Other Repetitive Actions

The following AsS's are added to the **passive roots** of a few words. They could be considered as derivational suffixes. All have a more or less strong meaning of repetition.

		-лз	The subject repeats itself (with intransitive verbs) Note: ***diphthong*** is dropped.
		найга- найга**лз**а-	to swing in the wind
		өнгий- өнгө**лз**ө-	to encroach upon, to lean forward in order to see to keep looking, to envy
		бултай- булта**лз**а-	to stick out to keep sticking out
		өндий- өндө**лз**ө-	to raise one's head, to straighten up to impatiently wait for

		-валз[2]/-галз[2]	This suffix is a left-over of the combination "б"/"г" + "-лз".
		ани- ани**валз**а-	to close one's eyes to blink, to wink
		тата- тат**валз**а-	to pull to writhe with convulsions
		тата- тат**галз**а-	to pull to abstain/refrain from
		түлэ- түл**гэлз**э-	to hesitate, to tarry to delay, to be neutral

[illegible]		−гана[4]	When adding this suffix, the ***diphthongs*** are dropped.
[illegible]	[illegible]	бүлтий− бүлтгэнэ−	to stare to stare in terror
[illegible]	[illegible]	бөндий− бөндгөнө−	to be rounded for a round object to move

1.1.2.1.2.2 Analytically Expressed Aspects

Besides the AsS's, the Mongolian language expresses some aspects in an analytical way which means that different suffixes and verbs are used in a **fixed combination**.
The **three English aspects** 'progressive (continuous)', 'perfect' and 'progressive-perfect' are all expressed analytically **using a VDS and the auxiliary verb** "бай−".

1.1.2.1.2.2.1 Progressive Action: "−ж/ч бай−"

Cyrillic Rules:
−ж бай−/−ч бай− for rules see pages 28-29

Classical Rules:

[illegible] after the **consonants** of the code word '**b**a**g**a**r**a**ṣ**a**d**a'

[illegible] after **vowels** and the **consonants** of the code word '**n**a**m**i**l**a**ng**'

Explanations:
1.) This combination of VDS and auxiliary verb expresses the **progressive aspect** of an action. The time when the action happens can be known by the **TTS** at the verb stem "бай−": past (**ex. a-c**),present (**ex. d-f**), future (**ex. g**).
2.) An interesting construction is built with the **NDS "−х" + "гэж" + "бай−".** The English equivalent would be: 'to be about to do something' (**ex. h-i**).
3.) **Interrogative and negative sentences** are formed according to the rules of TTS's.

Frequency: Written language: **very often**
Colloquial language: **very often**

a	When it started raining, the children **were playing**.	Бороо орж эхлэхэд хүүхдүүд тоглож байсан.	[illegible]
b	**Were** you **writing** an essay when I came?	Намайг ирэхэд чи зохион бичлэг бичиж байсан уу?	[illegible]
c	When he came, I **was writing** something.	Түүнийг ирэхэд би юм бичиж байлаа.	[illegible]
d	The teacher **is sitting** there.	Багш тэнд суужбайна.	[illegible]
e	He **is sleeping** on the bed.	Тэр орон дээр унтаж байна.	[illegible]
f	**Am I disturbing** you? ("Am I being a hindrance to you?")	Би танд саад хийж байна уу?	[illegible]
g	Do come by. ("**Be coming** to us.")	Та манайд ирж бай.	[illegible]
h	**I'm about to** leave for the countryside.	Би хөдөө явахгэж байна.	[illegible]
i	**I'm about to** meet him.	Би түүнтэй уулзахгэж байна.	[illegible]

1.1.2.1.2.2.2 Perfect Action: "−(чих)аад[4]/−(чих)сан[4] бай−"

Cyrillic Rules:
−(чих)аад/−ээд/−ood/−өөд бай− complying with vowel harmony
−(чих)сан/−сэн/−сон/−сөн бай− complying with vowel harmony

Classical Rules:
[illegible] complying with vowel harmony
[illegible] complying with vowel harmony

Explanations:
1.) A **perfect action** is an action **that continues up to a certain selected point of time** in the past (**ex. b**), present (**ex. a**), or future (**ex. c-d**). This aspect is the equivalent of the English perfect aspect.
2.) Because the action is **completed**, the **AsS "−чих"** is part of this analytical construction (above, the suffix is in parentheses; see also pages 133-134).
3.) Whether this analytical form is built with the **VDS "−аад"** or the **NDS "−сан"** doesn't make a big difference. The only slight difference might be that the relationship to the selected point of time is stronger with the form "−(чих)аад бай−" (the reason for this is explained by the original meaning of "−аад"; see pages 159-160).

Frequency: Written language: **not so often**
Colloquial language: **not so often**

a	This **has become** too dry.	Энэ хэтэрхий хатчихсан байна.	[illegible]
		Энэ хэтэрхий хатчихаад байна.	[illegible]
b	When I came, he **had** finish**ed** his work.	Намайг ирэхэд тэр ажлаа дуусчихсан байсан.	[illegible]
		Намайг ирэхэд тэр ажлаа дуусчихаад байсан.	[illegible]
c	By the time I come, he'll **have** finished his work. ("When I come...")	Намайг ирэхэд тэр ажлаа дуусчихсан байх болно.	[illegible]
		Намайг ирэхэд тэр ажлаа дуусчихаад байх болно.	[illegible]
d	When I came, he should **have had** his work **finished**.	Намайг ирэхэд тэр ажлаа дуусчихсан байх байсан.	[illegible]
		Намайг ирэхэд тэр ажлаа дуусчихаад байх байсан.	[illegible]

1.1.2.1.2.2.3 Progressive-Perfect Action: "−саар[4] бай−"

Cyrillic Rules:
−саар /−сээр/−соор/−сөөр бай− complying with vowel harmony

Classical Rules:
[illegible] complying with vowel harmony
Inserted vowel necessary (**ex. d,g**)

Explanations:
1.) This aspect is a combination of the two previous aspects. Whether the action happens in the present, past, or future, depends on the **TTS** being added to the auxiliary verb "бай–".
2.) The English progressive-perfect tense usually demands time words such as 'all day long', for two hours', etc. (**ex. d**, 2nd sentence). If this is not given in Mongolian, it is better to translate as **'still be ...ing"** (**ex. d, 1st sentence; c,e**) or for the future tense **'...will continue to...'** (**ex. f-h**).
3.) The **particle** *"л"* expresses here the meaning of *'still'*.
4.) **Interrogative and negative sentences** are built according to the rules for TTS's (**ex. d,h**).

Frequency: Written language: **quite often**
Colloquial language: **quite often**

a	He **has been** think**ing** about his homework.	Тэр даалгавраа бодсоор байна.	
b	The students **are** *still* com**ing** from the countryside./ The students **have been** com**ing** from the countryside.	Хөдөөнөөс оюутнууд ирсээр л байна.	
c	We're *still* do**ing** our work.	Манайхан ажлаа хийсээр л байгаа.	
d	**Are** you *still* receiv**ing** letters from home? / **Have** you **been** receiv**ing** letters from home lately?	Та гэрээсээ захиа авсаар л байна уу?	
e	(When I woke up) it **was** *still* snow**ing** outside.	(Намайг сэрэхэд) гадаа цас орсоор л байлаа.	
f	We will **continue to** live in Mongolia.	Бид Монголд амьдарсаар л байх болно.	
g	I will **continue to** receive letters from home.	Би гэрээсээ захиа хүлээн авсаар байх болно.	
h	Will you **continue to** live in Mongolia?	Та Монголд амьдарсаар байх уу?	

1.1.2.1.2.3 Combination of VoS's and AsS's

Voice suffixes (VoS's) in *italics*, aspect suffixes (AsS's) underlined.

a	I **have** *open***ed** a window wide. *("caused ... to be open")*	Би цонх онгойлгочихсон.	
b	We *had* our notebooks signed by him.	Бид дэвтэртээ түүгээр гарын үсгийг нь зуруулцгаав.	
c	Please *have* your horse go **a bit faster**.	Та морио жаахан явуулсхийгээрэй.	
d	Our wrestlers *wrestled* well at the competition.	Манай бөхчүүд тэмцээнд сайн барилдацгаав!	

1.1.2.1.3 Mood

By **means of different verb forms**, the content of a sentence is influenced or **modified by the speaker in a certain way**. Thus, the sentence has a certain mood. Depending upon which mood the speaker chooses for his statement, he can make real, desired, impossible, conditional, "second-hand", and other statements.

The **English** language knows three sets of mood:
- Indicative (fact, action)
- Imperative (command)
- Subjunctive (doubt, wish, hope, etc.)

In Mongolian there are **2 main groups of mood suffixes**. But unlike English, these groups haven't come about because of their similar modal expressions. What makes the suffixes belong to one or the other group is their **placement and function within the sentence**. Therefore, it is difficult to use the European model to classify Mongolian mood suffixes. We have tried to classify them with a view to Mongolian language structure. If we were to **compare Mongolian mood suffixes with the three sets in English**, they would be as follows:
• NDS's, VDS's and TTS's are similar to the indicative forms.
• Most of the PTS's are similar to the imperative forms.
• AwDS's and some PTS's are similar to the subjunctive forms.

Furthermore, it needs to be said that modal statements can also be **expressed with modal constructions** or **modal verbs** (see pages 201-207).

Overview of the mood suffixes:
[In parentheses are the traditional names]

1.) **Determining Suffixes (DS's):**
- Noun Determining Suffixes (NDS's) [verbal noun suffixes]
- Adword Determining Suffixes (AwDS's) [verbal noun suffixes; converb suffixes]
- Verb Determining Suffixes (VDS's) [converb suffixes]

2.) **Terminating Suffixes (TS's):**
- Person-bound Terminating Suffixes (PTS's) [imperative and subjunctive suffixes]
- Tense-bound Terminating Suffixes (TTS's) [indicative suffixes]

Here are some **characteristics of the mood suffixes (MS)**:
1.) The MS's are always added as the **last suffix to the verb stem**.
2.) **One verb stem** can only have **one MS**.

1.1.2.1.3.1 Determining Suffixes (DS's)

1.1.2.1.3.1.1 Noun Determining Suffixes (NDS's)

Because the NDS's are absent in the English language we will explain exactly what they are. However, there are be a few **parallels to the English** grammar.

1.1.2.1.3.1.1.1 Functions of NDS's

a) The **main function** of a NDS is **to bring a verb into a relationship with the succeeding noun**. In this function, the NDS serves as a verbal adjective to a noun and has the **form of a participle** in English. But these participles are **not commonly used in English** and therefore many such words have to be translated by means of an attribute clause.

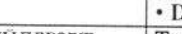
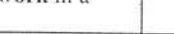
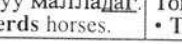
a	the person **who came** ("the **having come** person")	ирсэн хүн	
b	the snow **that falls** in spring ("the spring-fall**ing** snow")	хавар ордог цас	
c	the bag **which** Dorj **has** ("the with Dorj be**ing** bag")	Доржид байгаа цүнх	
d	the book **which I will read** ("my **going to** read book")	миний унших ном	
e	a **pupil** ("a learn**ing** [person]")	сурагч [хүн]	

b) If a **verb with an NDS serves as a noun** (the original noun has been dropped), then this 'verbal noun' can fulfill **all the different functions of a noun in a sentence**:
- it can be **declined** (other suffixes can be added to it; see the following table with the *CS's*)
- it can be a **subject**
- it can be an **object**, etc.

Examples (NDS "−сан" declined with all ***case suffixes***)**:**
The first sentence **(a)** shows the verb with a NDS and a following noun.
The second sentence **(b)** shows the verb with a NDS in the **function of a noun** (verbal noun)
Note **the CbP "нь"** which, in this instance, serves as a **noun marker.**

N a	A person **who came** from Germany will return tomorrow.	Германаас ирсэн нэг хүн маргааш буцна.
b	**The one who came** from Germany will return tomorrow.	Германаас ирсэн нь маргааш буцна.
G a	This is the bag *of* the person **who came** from Germany.	Германаас ирсэн хүний цүнх энэ байна.
b	This is the bag *of* **the one who came** from Germany.	Германаас ирснийх нь цүнх энэ байна.
D a	I provided a flat *for* the person **who had come** from Germany.	Би Германаас ирсэн хүнд байр олж өгсөн.
b	I provided a flat *for* **the one who had come** from Germany.	Би Германаас ирсэнд нь байр олж өгсөн.
A a	Do you know the person **who came** from Germany?	Германаас ирсэн хүнийг та таних уу?
b	Do you know **the one who came** from Germany?	Германаас ирснийг нь та таних уу?
A a	I bought this *from* the person **who had come** from Germany.	Би үүнийг Германаас ирсэн хүнээс худалдаж авсан.
b	I bought this *from* **the one who had come** from Germany.	Би үүнийг Германаас ирснээс нь худалдаж авсан.
I a	My friend sent me a letter *with* the person **who had come** from Germany. ("... sent a letter *through*...)	Миний найз Германаас ирсэн хүнээр надад захиа явуулсан.
b	My friend sent me a letter *with* **the one who had come** from Germany.	Миний найз Германаас ирснээр нь надад захиа явуулсан.
C a	I acquainted myself *with* a person **who had come** from Germany.	Би Германаас ирсэн нэг хүнтэй танилцсан.
b	I acquainted myself *with* **the one who had come** from Germany.	Би Германаас ирсэнтэй нь танилцсан.

c) Contrary to verbs with TTS's, verbs with NDS's can be **followed by the *particle "юм"*** or by an **auxiliary verb** [e.g. "бай−"] **(ex. a,b,d,f,g)**. This is an advantage because people's moods **(ex. b,d,f,g)** can be expressed. Some NDS's can take upon themselves the **terminating function of a TTS** (see pages 184-191).

a	He **has left.**	Тэр явсан байна.	
b	He **left** *(indeed)*.	Тэр явсан *юм*.	
c	He **left.**	Тэр явсан.	
d	I *really* get up early in the morning.	Би өглөө эрт босдог *юм*.	
e	I get up early in the morning.	Би өглөө эрт босдог.	
f	What do you have for drinks, *then*? (What do you have for drinks?)	Танайд уух юм юу байгаа *юм* бэ? (Танайд уух юм юу байна вэ?)	

g	What, *then*, is in this thing you're sending? (What is in this thing you're sending?)	Таны явуулах юманд юу байгаа *юм* бэ? (Таны явуулах юманд юу байна вэ?)	

d) Contrary to the TTS's, ***negative particles*** can be added to verbs with an NDS. That's why most **negative sentences** are built with verbs having an NDS.

a	He did***n't*** go.	Тэр явсангүй.	
b	He does***n't*** get up early.	Тэр эрт босдоггүй.	
c	She has***n't*** come (yet).	Тэр ирээгүй.	
d	We wo***n't*** go there.	Бид тэнд очихгүй.	

e) Similar to the negation, **interrogative forms** are usually built with verbs having an NDS to which an ***interrogative particle*** is added.

a	Did he come to the shop?	Тэр дэлгүүрт очсон *уу*?	
b	Do you get up early?	Чи эрт босдог *уу*?	
c	What, then, is there?	Тэнд юу байгаа юм *вэ*?	
d	Why hasn't she come?	Тэр яагаад ирээгүй байна *вэ* ?	
e	Will we go there together with him?	Бид түүнтэй хамт очих *уу*?	

f) Every simple sentence can be **turned into a complex sentence** by using NDS's. Theoretically, the number of nouns which exist equals the number of clauses which can be built.

a	Тэр жил үер болдоо. In that year **there was** a flood.	Үер болсон тэр жил олон хүн нас барав. • **In that year of the flood**, many people died. ("**In that year, when there was a flood,** many people died.")
b	Тэр хүн өглөө хоол идэв. That person **ate** breakfast in the morning.	Тэр хүний өглөө идсэн хоол сайхан байлаа. • **The breakfast that that person ate in the morning** was nice. Өглөө хоол идсэн тэр хүн онгоцоор ирсэн. • **The person, who had eaten the breakfast in the morning,** came by plane.
c	Дорж моринд өвс өгчээ. Dorj **gave** grass to the horse.	Доржийн өвс өгсөн морь надад таалагдав. • I liked **the horse that Dorj gave grass to.** Доржийн моринд өгсөн өвс их шимтэй. • **The grass that Dorj gave to the horse** is very nourishing. Моринд өвс өгсөн Дорж миний найз. • **Dorj, who gave the horse grass,** is my friend.
d	Тэр хоёр үйлдвэрт ажилладаг. Those two **work** in a factory.	Тэр хоёрын ажилладаг үйлдвэр маш том. • **The factory in which those two work** is very big.
e	Тогтох адуу малладаг. Togtokh **herds** horses.	Тогтохын малладаг адуу тарган байна. • **The horses which Togtokh herds** are fat.

f	Хавар цас орно. It **snows** in spring.	Хавар ордог цас хурдан хайлдаг. • **The snow falling in spring** melts fast. Цас ордог хавар та үзсэн үү? • Have you seen **a spring with snowfall?** ("Have you seen a snow-**falling** spring?")
g	Ах минь хөдөө яваа. My older brother **is traveling** in the countryside.	Хөдөө яваа ах минь надад захиа явуулсан. • **My older brother, who is traveling in the countryside,** sent me a letter.
h	Миний ном Доржид байгаа. Dorj has my book. ("My book **is** with Dorj.")	Доржид байгаа миний ном их сонирхолтой. • **My book, which Dorj has,** is very interesting. Миний ном байгаа Дорж германаар ярьдаг. • **Dorj, who has my book,** speaks German.
i	Тэр хүн машинд ачаа ачиж байна. That person **is loading** the truck.	Машинд ачаа ачиж байгаа тэр хүн хөдөөнөөс ирсэн. • **That person, who is loading the truck,** came from the countryside. Тэр хүний ачаа ачиж байгаа машин их хуучин юм. • **The truck, which that person is loading,** is really very old. Тэр хүний машинд ачиж байгаа ачаа юу вэ? • What's **the cargo that that person is loading on the truck?**
j	Тэр морь унана. He **will ride** a horse.	Түүний унах морь их хурдан. • **The horse he will ride** is very fast.
k	Энэ хүн хөдөө явна. This person **will go** to the countryside.	Би хөдөө явах энэ хүнтэй уулзах хэрэгтэй. • I have to meet **the person going to the countryside.** Энэ хүний явах хөдөө их сонин газар. • **The rural aera that this person is going to** is a very interesting place.
l	Багш хичээл заана. The teacher **will teach** (lessons).	Багшийн заах хичээл хэзээ эхлэх вэ? • "When do **the lessons the teacher is going to teach** start?" Хичээл заах багш хаанаас ирсэн бэ? • Where did/does **the teacher who is going to teach** comefrom?
m	Бат сургуульд сурдаг. Bat **studies** at school.	Сургуульд сурагч Батыг би мэднэ. • I know the **Bat who studies at school.**
n	Тэр эмэгтэй амьтан сургадаг. That lady **trains** animals.	Амьтан сургагч тэр эмэгтэйтэй би уулзана. • I'll meet **that lady who trains animals.**

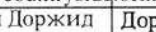
g) With the NDS's, many **different parts of speech** and many **clauses** can be constructed. Here is a selection of a few (for more see Part IV on pages 359ff).

subject clause (subject)	*Чиний эрт ирсэн нь* их сайн.	It's very good *that you **came** early.* ("Your ***having come*** early...")
predicate (see explanation under **c)**)	Тэр явсан.	He **went.**
object clause - accusative - dative-locative	*Онгоц хэзээ ирснийг* та мэдэх үү? *Таны ирсэнд* би их баярлаж байна.	Do you know *when the plane **came**?* I'm very glad *that you **came.***
adverbial clause - temporal (time) - causal (reason)	*Тэр явснаас* энэ ажил бүтсэнгүй. *Бид явсангүй* юм өөрчлөгдсөнгүй.	*Since he **left,*** this work has not been progressing. Nothing changed *by us **having left.***
attribute (attribute clause)	*Хот орсон* ах маань маргааш ирнэ.	Our older brother, *who **has gone** to town,* will come tomorrow.

h) The NDS's **relate to all three persons** in singular and plural and have **no special person endings.**

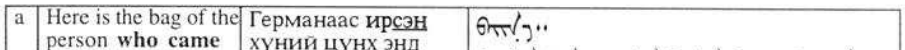
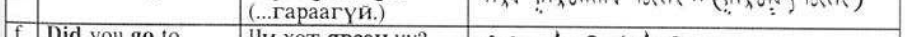
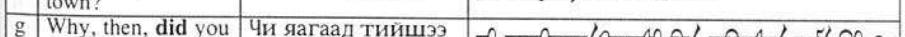
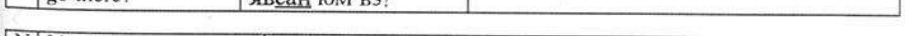
1.1.2.1.3.1.1.2 Past Tense NDS "–сан[4]"

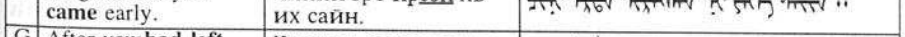
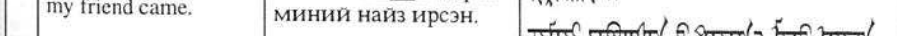
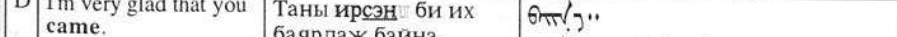
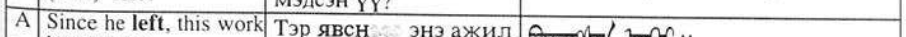
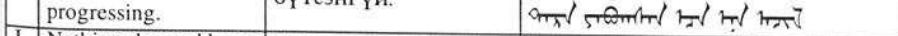
***Cyrillic Rules*:**
–сан, –сон, –сэн, –сөн complying with vowel harmony

***Classical Rules*:**
 complying with vowel harmony
Inserted vowel necessary (**ex. c,e**)

***Explanations*:** [the small letters **a)** to **e)** refer to the points in the introduction to the NDS's]
1. This NDS expresses **past tense**.
a) It is very often used as a **verbal adjective** to the noun. In English, such sentences are best translated with a relative clause since **past participles** are not very commonly used (**ex. a**).
b) All NDS's can be added (**ex. with case abbreviations: N-D**)
c) In modern Mongolian, this NDS appears very often at the **end of a sentence** and is used like a TTS (see pages 184-185 and **ex. b-f**).
It's often used together with particles (**ex. g**).
d) It can be used to build **negative sentences**, but only if the action happens against what is being expected. Usually, the NDS "–аа" (—> ааГүй) is used (**ex. e**).
e) It's often used to build **interrogative sentences** (**ex. f,g**).

***Frequency*:** Written language: **very often**
Colloquial language: **very often**

a	Here is the bag of the person **who came** from Germany.	Германаас ирсэн хүний цүнх энд байна.	
b	He **went** there.	Тэр очсон.	
c	I **ate** breakfast this morning.	Би өглөө хоол идсэн.	
d	I **gave** this to you.	Би үүнийг чамд өгсөн.	
e	He **did**n't **go out**.	Тэр гарсангүй. (...гараагүй.)	
f	**Did** you **go** to town?	Чи хот явсан уу?	
g	Why, then, **did** you **go** there?	Чи яагаад тийшээ явсан юм вэ?	

N	It's good that you **came** early.	Чиний эрт ирсэн нь их сайн.	
G	After you **had left,** my friend came.	Чамайг явсни дараа миний найз ирсэн.	
D	I'm very glad that you **came**.	Таны ирсэнд би их баярлаж байна.	
A	Did you know that he **(had) left**?	Чи түүний явсныг мэдсэн үү?	
A	Since he **left**, this work hasn't been progressing.	Тэр явснаас энэ ажил бүтсэнгүй.	
I	Nothing changed by us **having left**.	Бид явснаар юм өөрчлөгдсөнгүй.	

C	Mongolia wasn't like I **had thought** it would be.	Монгол орон миний **бодсон** адилгүй байсан.	[illegible] .. [illegible]
D	You don't have to follow everything you **have seen**. (proverb)	**Харагдсан** руугаа хошуурах хэрэггүй.	[illegible] .. [illegible]

1.1.2.1.3.1.1.3 Indefinite Present NDS "-даг[4]"

***Cyrillic Rules*:**
-даг, -дог, -дэг, -дөг complying with vowel harmony

***Classical Rules*:**
[illegible] complying with vowel harmony

***Explanations*:** (the small letters refer to the points in the introduction to the NDS's)
1.) This NDS expresses an action of **indefinite time** [e.g. to live, to work] (**ex. b,c,g,h**) or an action which is **repeated** (**ex. a,d,e,f**).
a) It can be compared with the **present participle**: **sing**ing children, work**ing** man, etc. (**ex.a**).
b) All CD's can be added (**ex. with case abbreviations: N-D**).
c) Very often used as a TTS at the end of a sentence (see page 188 and **ex. b-h**).
d) Often used in **negative sentences** (**ex. f**).
e) Very often used in **interrogative sentences** (**ex. g-h**).

***Frequency*:** Written language: **very often**
Colloquial language: **very often**

a	In Ulaanbaatar there are many people **who smoke**.	Улаанбаатарт тамхи **татдаг** хүн олон бий.	[illegible] .. [illegible]
b	My Mongolian friend **lives** in Ulaanbaatar.	Миний монгол найз Улаанбаатарт **суудаг**.	[illegible] .. [illegible]
c	I **work** at the university.	Би их сургуульд **ажилладаг**.	[illegible] .. [illegible]
d	Every morning I **get up** at 7 o'clock.	Би өглөө бүр долоон цагт **босдог**.	[illegible] .. [illegible]
e	In summer it **gets** hot.	Зун халуун **болдог**.	[illegible] .. [illegible]
f	I **don't work** on Sundays.	Би бүтэн сайн өдөр **ажилладаггүй**.	[illegible] .. [illegible]
g	**Do** you **speak** German?	Та германаар **ярьдаг** уу?	[illegible] .. [illegible]
h	What **do** you **call** this in Mongolian?	Үүнийг монголоор юу **гэдэг** вэ?	[illegible] .. [illegible]

N	It's (very) right **to do** homework regularly.	Даалгавар тогтмол **хийдэг** нь маш зөв.	[illegible] .. [illegible]
G	What's the reason that they (**always**) **leave** so early?	Тэд ийм эрт **явдаг** учир юу вэ?	[illegible] .. [illegible]
D	I'm glad that you (**always**) **help** me.	Таныг надад **тусалдаг** би баярладаг.	[illegible] .. [illegible]

A	We don't know where this bus **goes**.	Энэ автобус хаашаа **явдаг** бид мэдэхгүй.	[illegible] .. [illegible]
A	Because he **drinks** alcohol, he has become jobless.	Тэр архи **уудаг**аа болоод ажилгүй болсон.	[illegible] .. [illegible]
I	I am writing with a pen or a pencil as I **usually do**.	Би **бичдэг**ээр л үзэг, харандаагаар бичиж сууна.	[illegible] .. [illegible]
C	I can read as well as you. ("I can read similar to your reading.")	Би чиний **уншдаг**тай адил уншиж чадна.	[illegible] .. [illegible]
D	Go where it pleases you! ("Please go where you **always go**.")	Чи **очдог** руугаа очоорой.	[illegible] .. [illegible]

1.1.2.1.3.1.1.4 Progressive Present NDS "-аа[4]"

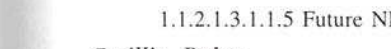
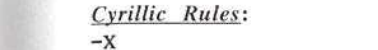
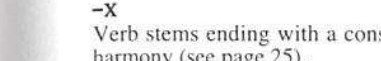
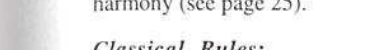
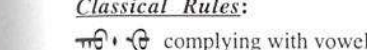
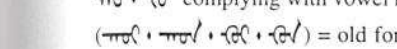
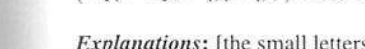
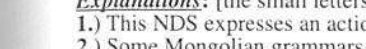
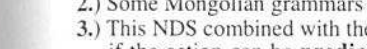
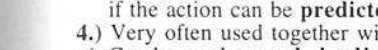
***Cyrillic Rules*:**
-аа, -ээ, -оо, -өө complying with vowel harmony
(-гаа[4]) for verb stems ending with a **long vowel** or **diphthong**; because of the auxiliary verb "**бай-**", this form is very often used (**almost all examples**).
(-иа[2]) for verb stems ending with "**-и**" **or** "**-ь**" (**ex. l**)

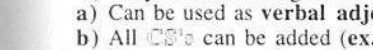
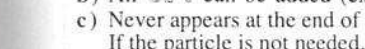
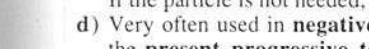
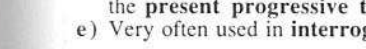
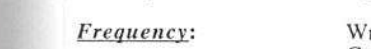
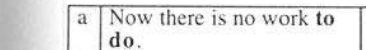
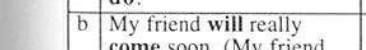
***Classical Rules*:**
[illegible] complying with vowel harmony
Inserted vowel necessary (**ex. k**)
([illegible] = [illegible] = [illegible]) = old forms

***Explanations*:** (the small letters refer to the points in the introduction to the NDS's)
1.) This NDS expresses an action which **started in the past and is continuing into the present**, with the end time of the action not being defined.
2.) It is added to **a few full verbs** (e.g. "**яв-**", "**суу-**"; **ex. a,b**), particularly in poems.
3.) It usually appears together with the auxiliary verb "**бай-**" (**ex. d-h, N-D**).
a) Often used as a **verbal adjective**; equivalent to the **present participle** (progressive present) (**ex. f**)
b) All CD's can be added (**ex. with case abbreviations: N-D**).
c) Often appears at the **end of the sentence** (with "**бай-**") (**ex. a-f**).
In colloquial language often used with **particles** (**ex. g,h**).
d) Very **widely used** in **negative sentences;** forming the **simple past** tense (**ex. i,j**).
In combination with the auxiliary verb "**бай-**", forming the **present perfect** tense (**ex. k**).
But there is a tendency for the auxiliary verb to **drop** in the present tense.
e) If used in **interrogative sentences** then only as a **rhetorical** means [e.g. to start a conversation] (**ex. l,m**).

***Frequency*:** Written language: **often**
Colloquial language: **often**

a	The father **is traveling** in the countryside.	Аав хөдөө **яваа**.	[illegible] .. [illegible]
b	My mother **lives** in the countryside. (lyrical)	Эзж минь хөдөө **суугаа**.	[illegible] .. [illegible]
c	Dorj **has** my book. ("My book is with Dorj.")	Миний ном Доржид **байгаа**.	[illegible] .. [illegible]

d	My mother **is looking** after our children today.	Миний эзэж өнөөдөр манай хүүхдүүдийг харж **байгаа**.	
e	I **work** (at the moment) at the university.	Би их сургуульд ажиллаж **байгаа**.	
f	Do you know that person who **is coming**?	Та тэр ирж **байгаа** хүнийг таних уу?	
g	What do you **have** for drinks, then?	Танайд уух юм юу **байгаа** юм бэ?	
h	What, then, **is** in the thing you're sending?	Таны явуулах юманд юу **байгаа** юм бэ?	
i	No, I **didn't read** this book.	Үгүй, би энэ номыг **уншаагүй**.	
j	He **didn't decide**.	Тэр **шийдээгүй**.	
k	He **hasn't gone** out.	Тэр **гараагүй** (байна).	
l	**Has** your friend **returned** home?	Чиний найз гэртээ **хариа** юу?	
m	**Did** you **get** a job? ("Have you entered into work?")	Чи ажилд **орсоо** юу?	

N	What you'**re thinking** is wrong.	Чиний бодож **байгаа** буруу байна.	
G	I just found out the reason for what you'**re talking** about.	Таны хэлж **байгаа**- шалтгааныг би сая мэдлээ.	
D	One could envy you two for **being** so **happy**.	Та хоёрын ингэж жар- галтай **байгаа** хүн атаархмаар байна.	
A	Do you understand what I'**m saying**?	Та миний юу хэлж **байгаа** ойлгож байна уу?	
A	Bat missed several hours of lessons only because of his bad health. ("Because of Bat's body **being** ill...")	Батын бие нь муу **байгаа** л хэдэн цагийн хичээл тасалжээ.	
I	Not only **is** Dorj **working**, but he also studies at an evening school.	Дорж ажил хийж **байгаа** барахгүй оройн сургуульд сурдаг.	
C	Let me try to adjust this to the one I'**m making**.	Би хийж **байгаа**- **гаа** үүнийг тааруулж үзье!	
D	It's better if you don't look at what you'**re doing**.	Хийж **байгаа** **гаа** харахгүй бол сайн.	

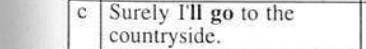
1.1.2.1.3.1.1.5 Future NDS "-х"

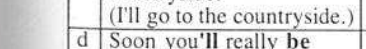
***Cyrillic Rules*:**

-х

Verb stems ending with a consonant **always** need an **inserted vowel** complying with vowel harmony (see page 25).

***Classical Rules*:**

 complying with vowel harmony

() = old forms

***Explanations*:** [the small letters refer to the points in the introduction of the NDS's]

1.) This NDS expresses an action that will take place in the **future**.

2.) Some Mongolian grammars form the infinitive with this suffix (e.g. явах, хэлэх).

3.) This NDS combined with the CbP "**нь**" can be used as a predicate (at the end of a sentence), if the action can be **predicted** and **will happen soon** (**ex. k-o**).

4.) Very often used together with **modal constructions** (**ex. p-s**).

a) Can be used as **verbal adjective**: the book I'**m going to read** (**ex. a**).

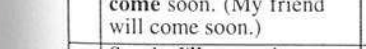
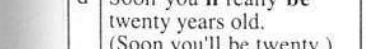
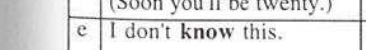
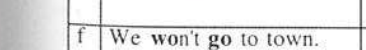
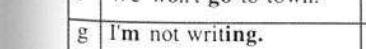
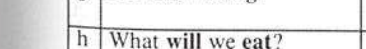
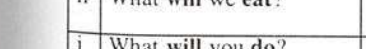
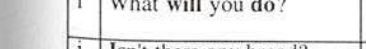
b) All CS's can be added (**ex. with abbreviations: N-D**).

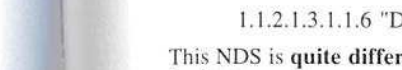
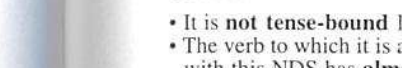
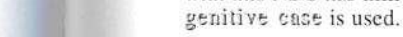
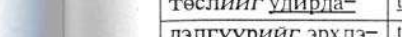
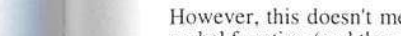
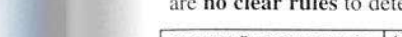
c) Never appears at the end of a declarative sentence without auxiliary verb or particle (**ex. b-d**) If the particle is not needed, it is much better to use the TTS "-на" (**ex. b-d**).

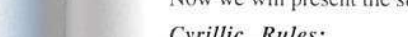
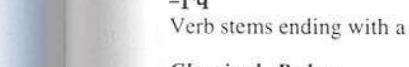
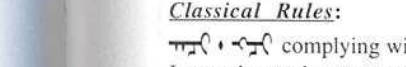
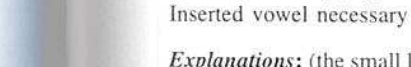
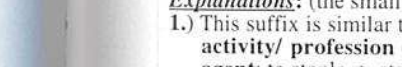
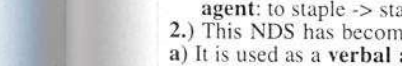
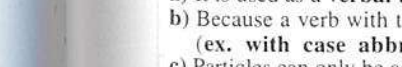
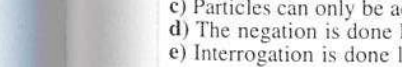
d) Very often used in **negative sentences** where it **replaces the Future-TTS "-на"** and the **present progressive tense "-ж бай-"** (**ex. e-h**).

e) Very often used in **interrogative sentences** where it replaces the TTS "-на" (**ex. h-j**).

***Frequency*:** Written language: **very often**
Colloquial language: **very often**

a	Now there is no work **to do**.	Одоо **хийх** ажил байхгүй.	
b	My friend **will** really **come** soon. (My friend will come soon.)	Миний найз удахгүй **ирэх** юм. (... ирнэ.)	
c	Surely I'**ll go** to the countryside. (I'll go to the countryside.)	Би хөдөө **яваx** юм. (... явна.)	
d	Soon you'**ll** really **be** twenty years old. (Soon you'll be twenty.)	Чи удахгүй хорин нас **хүрэх** юм. (... хүрнэ.)	
e	I don't **know** this.	Би **үүнийг мэдэхгүй**.	
f	We **won't go** to town.	Бид хот **яваxгүй**.	
g	I'**m** not writ**ing**.	Би одоо **бичиxгүй** байна.	
h	What **will** we **eat**?	Бид юу **идэx** вэ?	
i	What **will** you **do**?	Чи одоо **яаx** вэ?	
j	**Isn't** there any bread?	Талх **байxгүй** юу?	
k	The lesson **is about to begin**; let's go quickly!	Хичээл **ороx нь**, түргэн явъя!	
l	**Isn't** the lesson **about to begin**?	Хичээл **ороx нь** уу?	

m	**It appears that** the teacher **isn't going to** come; let's do our homework!	Багш ирэхгүй нь, даалгавраа хийе!	
n	**Is** the hot water **about to come** or not?	Халуун ус ирэх нь үү, үгүй юү?	
o	Where **are** you **about to go**?	Та хаачих нь вэ?	
p	You have **to go** now.	Чи одоо явах хэрэгтэй.	
q	He must **eat** now.	Тэр одоо хоол идэх ёстой.	
r	Dorj likes taking showers. ("...**going** into the water.")	Дорж усанд орох дуртай.	
s	It's not possible for me **to meet** him.	Би түүнтэй уулзах боломжгүй.	

N	It's lucrative **to learn** a foreign language.	Гадаад хэл сурах нь ашигтай.	
G	Please come to my home before you **leave**.	Та явахынхаа өмнө манайд ирээрэй.	
D	Mongolians like it a lot when it **snows**.	Цас оройхон монголчуул их дуртай.	
A	Do you know when the plane **will come**?	Онгоц хэзээ ирэхийг та мэдэх үү?	
A	Don't be afraid of **going** to the countryside!	Чи хөдөө явахаас битгий ай!	
I	When you **read** at night, your eyes go bad. ("Because of nightly **reading**...")	Шөнө ном уншихаар нүд мууддаг.	
C	Please come to us when this lesson **is finished**. ("with the ending of this lesson")	Энэ хичээлийг дуусахтай хамт манайд очоорой.	
D	This work **is coming to an end**. (... is approaching to its ending.")	Энэ ажил дуусах дүүгээ дөхөж байна.	

The NDS "-х" in every day expressions:
Sometimes the verb with this NDS is used by today's people **like a noun**. This is because the original noun has been dropped. The meaning of the suffix relates more to **present** than future tense (like NDS "-даг").

Examples:

original expression:	today's **shortened** expression:	**English** expression:
сурах бичиг	сурах (to learn)	text book
лавлах товчоо	лавлах (to inquire)	information office
нисэх буудал	нисэх (to fly)	airport
цагдан сэргийлэх газар	цагдан сэргийлэх (to guard and prevent)	police
тооцоолон бодох төв	тооцоолон бодох (to account and calculate)	statistical office
нягтлан бодох хүн	нягтлан (бодох) (examining carefully)	bookkeeper

1.1.2.1.3.1.1.6 "Doer" NDS "-гч"

This NDS is **quite different** from the previous four NDS's. This difference shall be accounted for here:

- It is **not tense-bound** like the other NDS's.
- The verb to which it is added is more ***noun-related*** than verb-related, in other words, a verb with this NDS has **almost lost its verbal function** being evident from the fact that often the genitive case is used.

төслийг удирда-	to lead a **project**	төслийн *удирдагч*	a project ***leader***
дэлгүүрийг эрхлэ-	to manage a **shop**	дэлгүүрийн *эрхлэгч*	a shop ***manager***

However, this doesn't mean that the genitive case is prevalent. There are verbs that keep their verbal function (and therefore *accusative case*) despite the use of this suffix. Unfortunately, there are **no clear rules** to determine which function (verb or ***noun***) is stronger.

шинийг санаачла-	to invent (**new things**)	шинийг санаачлагч	inventor
тоглолтыг үзэ-	to watch a **game**	тоглолтыг үзэгч	audience (singular)

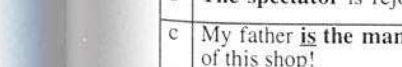
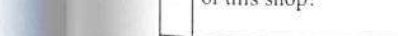
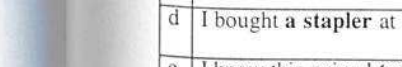
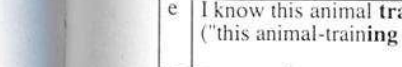
Now we will present the suffix and its rules and examples:

***Cyrillic Rules*:**
-гч
Verb stems ending with a consonant need an **inserted vowel** complying with vowel harmony.

***Classical Rules*:**
 complying with vowel harmony
Inserted vowel necessary (**ex. g,h,j**)

***Explanations*:** (the small letters refer to the points of the introduction to the NDS's)
1.) This suffix is similar to the English suffix '-er', which forms from a verb either the **activity/ profession** (to sing -> sing**er**, to build -> build**er**: **ex. a-c**) or the equivalent **agent**: to staple -> stapl**er**, to play -> tape play**er**, to carry -> carri**er**, etc. (**ex. d**).
2.) This NDS has become a **derivational suffix** (see page 44).
a) It is used as a **verbal adjective**, thus describing the kind of action the noun does (**ex. e-f**).
b) Because a verb with this NDS often has a noun function, declension **is very common** (**ex. with case abbreviations: N-D**).
c) Particles can only be added if the verb clearly has a noun function (**ex. g**).
d) The negation is done like a noun (**ex. h-j**).
e) Interrogation is done like a noun (**ex. k-l**).

Frequency: Written/Colloquial language: as a NDS not very often used, but **very often** used in noun function.

a	**The passenger** was late.	Зорчигч хожимдлоо.	
b	**The spectator** is rejoicing.	Үзэгч баярлаж байна.	
c	My father **is the manager** of this shop!	Миний аав энэ дэлгүүрийн эрхлэгч мөн.	
d	I bought **a stapler** at the shop.	Би дэлгүүрээс үдэгч авав.	
e	I know this animal **trainer**. ("this animal-train**ing** man")	Би энэ амьтан сургагч эрэгтэйг мэднэ.	
f	The conference of female **inventors** took place. ("The new-thing-invent**ing** ladies")	Шинийг санаачлагч эмэгтэйчүүдийн чуулган болов.	

g	He really is **a pupil**	Тэр бол **сурагч** юм.	
h	He is not **a pupil**.	Тэр **сурагч** биш.	
i	I don't know a country without **a leader.**	**Жолоодогч**гүй улсыг би мэдэхгүй.	
j	He went to the countryside without **a translator.**	Тэр **орчуулагч**гүй хөдөө явсан.	
k	Should this **liar** be a lawyer?	Энэ худал **яриг**ч хуульч гэж үү?	
l	Who is the **service station attendant**?("petrol distributor")	Шатахуун **түгээгч** хэн бэ?	

N	**The passenger** was late.	**Зорчиг**ч хожимдлоо	
G	Our people praise the work and deeds of this **servant/ waiter**.	Манайхан энэ **үйлчлэгч**ийн ажил үйлсийг магтдаг.	
D	Please give this to our **investigator**. ("person who finds out")	Үүнийг манай мөрдөн **байцаагч**ид өгөөрэй!	
A	I make **the** new **pupil** happy.	Би шинэ **сурагч**ийг баярлуулдаг.	
A	Did you ask **the film producer** about this?	Чи энэ тухай кино **найруулагч**аас асуув уу?	
I	The teacher had that **pupil** of his draw something.	Багш нь тэр **сурагч**аа-раа нэг юм зуруулав.	
C	Yesterday I came with one of my **pupils**.	Би өчигдөр нэг **сурагч**тайгаа хамт ирсэн.	
D	He looked angrily at the **prison warden**.	Тэр **харгалзагч** руу муухай харав.	

1.1.2.1.3.1.2 Adword Determining Suffixes (AwDS's)

The NDS's have the main function of linking a verb with a noun although this function is already weakened with the NDS "гч". The following adword determining suffixes have the main function of **linking a verb to an adword** (for definition of 'adword' see p. 211). But in today's speech, most of these **adwords are missing** because the context of the whole sentence is clear without them (e.g.: films **worthwhile seeing** are always ***nice*** films, thus the adword '***nice***' is dropped; something **which needs to be considered** is always ***important***, thus the adword '***important***' is dropped). This adword-dropping explains why some grammars consider these AwDS's to be NDS's or VDS's. As a matter of fact, after the adword is dropped, the verb seems to be linked to a noun or a verb, thus **serving as a NDS or a VDS**.
Examples will clarify this process as it might have developed:

1a Энэ бол **үзмээр** (сайхан) кино.
This is a (nice) film **worth seeing**.
1b Би үүнийг **үзмээр** (сайхан) санагдаж байна.
This seems to me **worth seeing** (beautiful).
2a Энэ **уншихуйц** (гоё) ном бололтой.
It appears to be a (nice) book **worth reading**.
2b Энэ мөнгө хөдөө явахад **хүрэлцэхүйц** (их) байсан.
This money was (big) **sufficient enough** to go to the countryside.
3a Энэ бол **анхааруушгай** (чухал) асуудал байна.
This is a (important) problem **that needs to be looked at.**
3b Тэр үүнийг **анхааруушгай** (чухал) санагдсан.
It seemed to him to be something (important) **that needed attention.**

We shall now look at these suffixes in view of **both functions**. Please keep in mind that the sentence structure is quite different from English. Therefore, we often needed to translate freely.

1.1.2.1.3.1.2.1 Wish-AwDS "-маар[4]"

Cyrillic Rules:

-маар, -мээр, -моор, -мөөр complying with vowel harmony

Classical Rules:

Inserted vowel necessary (**ex. a, i, o, p**)

Explanations:

1.) This suffix expresses a **wish or a desire that can be realized,** or an **intention**. It is stronger in its meaning than the expression "-х хүсэлтэй" and also indicates that someone does something **for a good reason**. It is very rarely used for the 2nd or 3rd person; only if someone passes on another person's statement (compare with **ex. s-t** and their remarks).
2.) In function of a **VDS**; only with a certain number of verbs (**ex. a-k**).
-negation (**ex. f-g,k**)
-interrogation (**ex. h-k**)
3.) In function of an **NDS** (**ex. l-t**).
-declined (**ex. p-r**)
-"...маар *юм хэл-/ярь-*" [communicating another person's wishes] (**ex. s**).
4.) See also **modal constructions** (see pages 201-207).
5.) The auxiliary verb "бай-" isn't always needed (**ex. t**).

Frequency: Written/Colloquial language: together with "бай-" **very often**

a	I'd **like to learn** Mongolian.	Би монгол хэл **сурмаар** байна.	
b	We'**d like** something **to drink**.	Бид нэг юм **уумаар** байна.	

c	I **wanted to meet** you.	Би тантай **уулзмаар** байсан.	
d	You **wanted to read** in the library yesterday, and did you?	Чи өчигдөр номын санд сууж ном **уншмаар** байна гэсэн, уншсан уу?	
e	**I'd like to** (always) **review** the lessons together with you.	Би чамтай хамт хичээл **давтмаар** байдаг.	
f	I don't **want to go** to the countryside this month.	Би энэ сар хөдөө **явмаар**гүй байна.	
g	I don't **want to call** now.	Би одоо утсаар **ярьмаар**гүй байна.	
h	**Would** you **like to drink** this tea?	Чи энэ цайг **уумаар** байна уу?	
i	**Would** you **like to learn** Mongolian?	Чи монгол хэл **сурмаар** байна уу?	
j	**Would** you **like to ask** anything else?	Чи өөр юм **асуумаар** байна уу?	
k	Why on earth don't you ever **want to meet** him?	Чи яагаад түүнтэй **уулзмаар**гүй байдаг юм бэ?	
l	This is a book **worth reading**.	Энэ бол **уншмаар** ном байна.	
m	My father is the kind of person that people **would like to have as a friend.**	Миний аав бол **ханилмаар** хүн.	
n	This is indeed a yurt one **would like to live** in.	Энэ бол **суумаар** гэр мөн.	
o	This is a coat one **would like to buy.**	Энэ бол худалдаж **авмаар** дээл.	
p	Out of all this meat, this is the (part) which people **would like to buy**.	Энэ олон махнаас **авмаар** нь энэ байна.	
q	Among all those blouses, I looked at those which **would fit** me.	Би тэр олон цамцнаас биедээ **таармаар** нь үзлээ.	
r	Please get married to the one of your three friends who **suits** you most.	Та тэр гурван най-зынхаа аль **таармаар**-сан нь суугаарай!	
s	My friend **talked about wanting to go** to the countryside this summer.	Миний найз зун хөдөө **явмаар** *юм ярьсан.*	
t	When looking at him from the outside, one **would think** that he's an angry person.	Түүний гаднаас нь харахад их ууртай хүн гэж **бодмоор**.	

1.1.2.1.3.1.2.2 Possibility-AwDS "-хуйц²"

Cyrillic Rules:

-хуйц, -хүйц complying with vowel harmony
With verb stems ending with a consonant, the **inserted vowel** is needed.

Classical Rules:

complying with vowel harmony

Explanations:

1.) This suffix expresses that an **action is possible and feasible**, yet it's not clear whether the action will happen or not.
2.) In function of an **NDS** (**ex. a-g**)
-declined (**ex. f-g**)
3.) In function of a **VDS** (**ex. h-j**)
4.) See also **modal constructions** (pages 201-207)

Frequency: Written language: **seldom**
Colloquial language: **seldom**

a	This is really a work we **could be proud of.**	Энэ бол бидний бахар-ха**хуйц** хөдөлмөр мөн.	
b	This is a job I **could do.**	Энэ бол миний **чадахуйц** ажил байна.	
c	Where is a person who **could do** this?	Үүнийг хийж **чадахуйц** хүн хаана байна вэ?	
d	Do you have the ability to know this?	Танд үүнийг мэдэ**хуйц** чадвар байгаа юу?	
e	That is definitely not a problem that **deserves attention**.	Тэр бол **анхаарахуйц** асуудал огт биш.	
f	Out of those youths, let the ones wrestle who **can**.	Тэлгээр залуучуудаас барилдаж **чадахуйц**-сан нь барилдуул!	
g	Please cut with one of the many knives that **cut.**	Олон хутганы **даахуйц**-аар нь огтлооч.	
h	It seems that English is a language that **can be learned.**	Англи хэлийг сурч **болохуйц** санагдлаг.	
i	We have so much food reserves that it's **sufficient.**	Бидэнд хүнсний нөөц **хүрэлцэхүйц** байгаа.	
j	I have become **able to** talk with any Mongolian person.	Би ямар ч монгол хүнтэй ярьж **чадахуйц** болсон.	

1.1.2.1.3.1.2.3 Necessity-AwDS "-ууштай[2]"

***Cyrillic Rules*:**

-ууштай, үүштэй complying with vowel harmony
(-гуушгай[2]) for verb stems ending with **long vowel** or **diphthong** (**ex. d**)
(-иуштай) for verb stems ending with "**и** "or "**ъ**"

***Classical Rules*:**

[illegible] • [illegible] complying with vowel harmony
Inserted vowel necessary (**ex. b,i**)

***Explanations*:**

1.) This suffix is similar to the AwDS "-хуйц". Also, with this suffix, it isn't clear whether the action will happen or not. The only statement is that the **action should be done**. It's **worth doing it.**
2.) In function of an **NDS** (**ex. a-f**)
3.) In function of a **VDS** (**ex. g-j**)
4.) We could look at the AwDS **"-шгүй"** as a short version of this suffix being used for the negation. It is explained on the next page.

***Frequency*:** Written language: **seldom**
Colloquial language: **seldom**

a	That's indeed a problem that you **should** pay attention to.	Та үүнийг анхаарч **үзүүштэй** асуудал мөн.	[illegible]
b	English is indeed a language that one **should** learn.	Англи хэл бол **сурууштай** хэл мөн.	[illegible]
c	This is a book one really **should** read.	Энэ **уншуушгай** ном мөн.	[illegible]
d	Is this really the medicine I **have to** take?	Энэ миний **уугуушгай** эм мөн үү?	[illegible]
e	This is not a film that one **should** watch.	Энэ **үзүүштэй** кино биш.	[illegible]
f	Is this really a film that one **has to** watch?	Энэ **үзүүштэй** кино мөн үү?	[illegible]
g	We **should** go quickly.	Бид нар хурдан **явууштай** байна.	[illegible]
h	(Someone) **should** help your child.	Таны хүүхдэд **туслуушгай** байна.	[illegible]
i	We thought that this **should** be decided.	Бид үүнийг **шийдүүштэй** гэж бодож байсан.	[illegible]
j	It seemed to us that one **should** travel through the countryside.	Бидэнд хөдөө нутгаар **явууштай** санагдсан.	[illegible]

1.1.2.1.3.1.2.4 Other AwDS's "-шгүй", "-лтай[3]", "-лгүй", "-м", "-мгүй"

There are some other AwDS's as well. The difference between such an AwDS and a derivational suffix is rather small. That's the reason why some people consider them as **derivational suffixes**. Both approaches seem to be justified. We list these suffixes here for the sake of completeness. Even for Mongolians it is difficult to make out the little shades of meaning.

Examples: (N= in function of an NDS; V= in function of a VDS)

1.) Suffix "-шгүй" = -ᠬᠦᠢ ᠲᠡᠭᠦᠢ (Short negative form of "-ууштай")			
N	There is **never-ending** love.	Дуусашгүй хайр байдаг.	[illegible]
N	In this book there are many **incomprehensible** questions.	Энэ номонд олон ойлгогдошгүй асуудал байна.	[illegible]
N	Mongolia has **endless** livestock.	[illegible]
V	We love our motherland **beyond all measure.**	Бид эх орноо хязгаар-лашгүй хайрладаг.	[illegible]
2.) Suffixes "-лтэй"/"-лтгүй" = -ᠲᠠᠢ • -ᠭᠦᠢ ᠲᠡᠭᠦᠢ			
N	Switzerland is a country that's **worth** travelling to and seeing.	Швейцарь бол очиж үзэлтэй орон. (similar to үзүүштэй)	[illegible]
N	This is an area where one **should** go on horseback.	Энэ бол мориор явалтай газар. (similar to "явахуйц / явууштай")	[illegible]
N	This is a way where it's **almost impossible** to go by car.	Энэ бол машинаар явалтгүй зам. (inserted "т")	[illegible]
N	Moscow is a place one **shouldn't** go to.	Москва бол очилтгүй газар. (inserted "т")	[illegible]
V	It seems that one **shouldn't** eat fish every day.	Загасны махыг өдөр бүр идэлтгүй санагддаг.	[illegible]
3.) Suffixes "-м/-мгүй" = -ᠮᠦ • -ᠮᠤ ᠲᠡᠭᠦᠢ (especially in poems; short form of "-маар")			
N	My **be**loved motherland!	Хайрлам эх орон минь!	[illegible]
V	His talking was very cute.	Түүний ярих нь их энхрийлэм байсан.	[illegible]
N	For Mongolians, horses are a means of transport **they wouldn't want to be without**.	Монгол хүнд морь сала**мгүй** унаа.	[illegible]
N	One has to make use of this opportunity; it **won't come again**.	Энэ олдомгүй болом-жийг ашиглах хэрэгтэй. (similar to "олдошгүй")	[illegible]

1.1.2.1.3.1.3 Verb Determining Suffixes (VDS's)

Here are some **characteristics:**

1.) The VDS's, traditionally called converb suffixes, are verb forms **not standing at the end of the sentences** (as predicates), but verb forms which are **connected or somehow linked with another verb** (=main verb of sentence, predicate). The VDS's link verbs with verbs and **build V-V-syntagmas**. Linking doesn't mean that one verb must immediately follow the other:

linked verbs **adjacent**	гүйж ирэ– хүлээн ав–	run + come = to come running wait + take = to receive ("waitingly take")
linked verbs **not adjacent**	ирвэл ... ярь– ирмэгц ... мэндлэ– иртэл ... унши–	if come ... talk as soon as come ... greet until come ... read

2.) The VDS's on their own **cannot build the predicate** of a finite sentence.

3.) The VDS's **don't** usually **express a tense**. The tense in which the action happens is dependent upon the TTS's (=Tense-bound Terminating Suffixes; see pages 184-191).

1a Yesterday I **got up** at 7 o'clock and brought my mother some tea.
1b Өчигдөр би 7 цагт босч, ээждээ цай аваачиж өгөв.
1c [illegible]

2a Tomorrow I'll **get up** at 7 o'clock and bring my mother some tea.
2b Маргааш би 7 цагт босч, ээждээ цай аваачиж өгнө.
2c [illegible]

4.) Usually, negative particles are added to the predicate at the end of a sentence and not to the VDS's. However, if the sentence structure demands a **negation of the VDS's**, the negative particles **"эс" or "үл"** are used (see pages 332-333).

5.) The VDS's refer to **all persons** singular and plural.

The VDS's can be **divided** into the following **2 groups**:

Groups	Action(s):	Sentence structure:	English examples:
Coordinating VDS (cVDS) **–ж** **–н** **–аад**	Neither of the two actions is more important than the other, neither one is subordinated. Only in the temporal aspect is there a certain subsequence.	The verb with the cVDS is situated in the middle of the (Mongolian!) sentence. **cVDS's build compound sentences.**	He **washes** his car and **drives** away. I **got up** and **ate** breakfast. I **went** away **thinking** about his answer.
Subordinating VDS's (sVDS's) all others	The action of the main sentence is described by the action of the subordinated clause sentence. The clause sentence expresses the circumstances under which the main action happens.	The verb with the sVDS is situated in the middle of the (Mongolian) sentence and forms the **predicate of the clause sentence**. **sVDS's build complex sentences.**	As soon as he came I called my dad. If you need me, please come over. You have to wait until she comes.

1.1.2.1.3.1.3.1 Coordinating Verb Determining Suffixes (cVDS's)

1.1.2.1.3.1.3.1.1 Simultaneous cVDS "–ж/–ч"

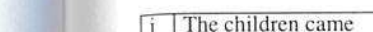
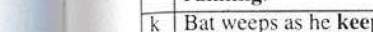
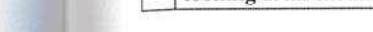
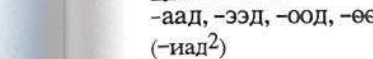
Cyrillic Rules:
–ж/–ч complying with orthographic rules (see pages 28-29)

Classical Rules:
[illegible] for verb stems ending with '**namiłang**' or **vowels**
[illegible] for verb stems ending with '**bagarasada**' (**ex. c,d**)

Explanations:
1.) Two actions happen **parallel** to each other. That could mean **simultaneously** or, like the VDS "–аад", **in succession**. When one follows the other then they are **not so closely linked** as they would be with the VDS "–аад" (**ex. a-c**).
2.) If the main verb is already **negated** then the verb with the VDS is automatically negated as well (**ex. d**). If only the action which is expressed with the VDS needs to be negated, this can be done with the **negative particles** "эс" **or** "үл".(**ex. e**).
3.) This VDS is used **to link two verbs** which complement each other's meanings (**ex. f-h**).
4.) Often used with **auxiliary verbs** and **modifying verbs** (**ex. i-o**).
"**–ж бай–**" expresses the **progressive aspect**; compare with page 136 (**ex. i-j**).
5.) In order to express that the action continues and that one is a bit fed up with that, the verb can be **repeated** (**ex. p-q**).

Frequency: Written language: **very often**
Colloquial language: **very often**

a	Mother **is** cook**ing**, Father is drink**ing** tea.	Ээж хоол **хийж**, аав цай ууж байна.	[illegible]
b	Bat **came** early in the morning and cleaned his classroom.	Бат өглөө эрт **ирж** ангиа цэвэрлэжээ.	[illegible]
c	I **usually get up** at 7 o'clock and do morning exercises.	Би 7 цагт **босч** биеийн тамирын дасгал хийдэг.	[illegible]
d	When I'm tired I **don't listen** to music and don't watch TV.	Би ядарсан үедээ хөгжим **сонсож** зураг үздэг**гүй**.	[illegible]
e	He ***dis*regarded** and humiliated me.	Тэр намайг **үл ой–шоож** доромжилсон.	[illegible]
f	I began **to write**.	Би **бичиж** эхлэв.	[illegible]
g	In summer, I mainly **go** to my homeland and rest.	Би зун голдуу ну–тагтаа **яв**ж амардаг.	[illegible]
h	I **changed** my clothes.	Би хувцаа**сольж** өмссөн.	[illegible]
i	I **live** well in Mongolia.	Би Монголд сайхан **амьдарч** байна	[illegible]
j	We **used to live** here.	Бид энд **суужс** байсан.	[illegible]
k	You may **go**.	Та **яв**ж болно.	[illegible]
l	I can't **come**.	Би **ирж** чадахгүй.	[illegible]

m	Please **show** me the way! ("showingly give")	Надад зам **зааж** өгөөч.	
n	I copied this.	Би үүнийг **бичиж** авсан.	
o	I'll try to **control** myself.	Би биеэ **барьж** үзнэ.	
p	It **raines and rained**, and a short while ago it stopped.	Бороо **орж орж** сая зогслоо.	
q	He **talked and talked** about this and left.	Тэр энэ тухай **ярьж ярьж** явсан.	

1.1.2.1.3.1.3.1.2 Associative cVDS "-н"

***Cyrillic Rules*:**

-н

Verb stems ending with a consonant or a soft sign need an **inserted vowel** complying with vowel harmony.

***Classical Rules*:**

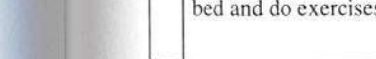
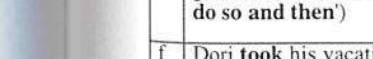
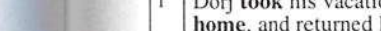
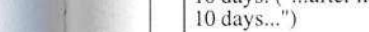
-/

Inserted vowel necessary (**ex. e-f**)

***Explanations*:**

1.) The action expressed with this VDS **happens right before** the second action and is closely linked with it (**ex. a-b**).
2.) The action expressed with this VDS happens at the **same time** as the second action, like in English 'to come runn**ing**' (**ex. c-g**).
3.) This suffix **linkes two very similar verbs**. Such a combination often leads to a new meaning, a **new verb** (**ex. h-i**).
4.) A verb with this VDS can be **repeatedly used** (**ex. j-k**).

***Frequency*:** Written language: **often**
Colloquial language: **often**

a	I **turned off** the light and lay down.	Би чийдэнгээ **унтраа**н хэвтлээ.	
b	The old man **opened** the door and entered.	Өвгөн үүдээ **нээ**н оров.	
c	Don't **stare** at me! ("star**ing**ly look")	Намайг битгий **ширтэ**н хар!	
d	They celebrated the feast with **eating** and drinking. ("eatingly and drinkingly celebrate")	Тэд баярыг ууж **идэ**н тэмдэглэжээ.	
e	I ate my meal half-**standing** and half-**sitting**.	Би хоолоо **босо**н **суу**н идлээ.	
f	The child ran up to me **crying** and **waving**.	Хүүхэд над руу **хашгира**н **дуллан** гүйлээ.	
g	He sits **pondering**.	Тэр бодлогошро**н** сууна.	
h	I **received** a gift. ("to get **waitingly**")	Би бэлэг **хүлээ**н авсан.	
i	I bought a book. ("to take **bargaining**")	Би ном **худалда**н авав.	

j	The children came **running**.	Хүүхдүүд **гүйн гүйн** ирлээ.	
k	Bat weeps as he **keeps looking** at his mother.	Батээжийгээ **хара**н **хара**н уйлна.	

1.1.2.1.3.1.3.1.3 Anterior cVDS "-аад[4]"

***Cyrillic Rules*:**

-аад, -ээд, -оод, -өөд complying with vowel harmony
(**-иад**[2]) for verb stems ending with :**-и" or "-ь"** (**ex. f**)
(**-гаад**[4]) for verb stems ending with **long vowels** or **diphthongs** (**ex. e**)

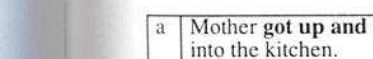
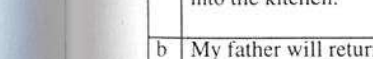
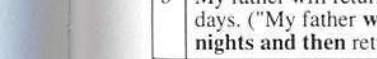
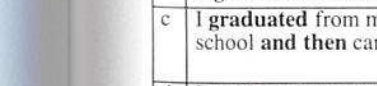
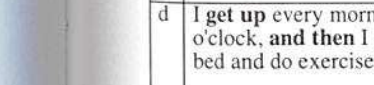
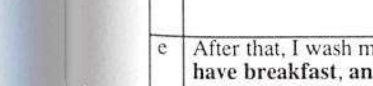
***Classical Rules*:**

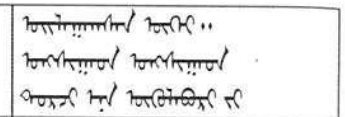
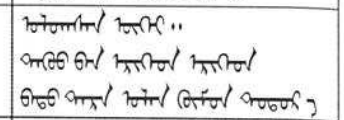
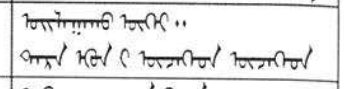
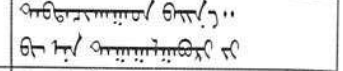
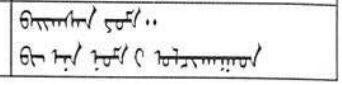
 complying with vowel harmony
Inserted vowel necessary (**ex. a,c,d**)

***Explanations*:**

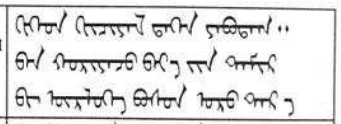
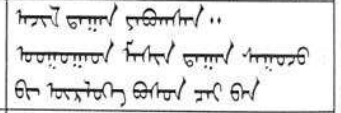
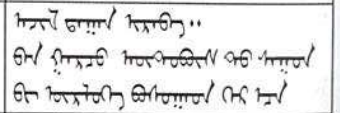
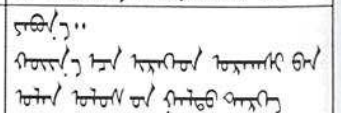
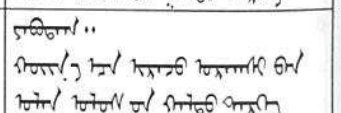
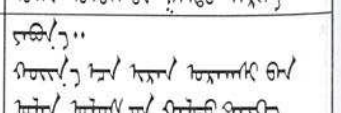
1.) The action expressed with this VDS happens **before the main action**. The main action is like a follow-up of the first action. That's why one could translate **"and then"** or even "after". The problem with the translation 'after...' is that it produces structurally a clause sentence, whereas in Mongolian it isn't a complex, but a **compound sentence** (see explanations on page 156).
2.) A verb with this VDS can be **used repeatedly**, thus expressing that the action continues , but without a satisfactory result. Therefore this structure is always used in negation (**ex. g-i**).
3.) Together with the AsS "**-чих**" and the auxiliary verb **"бай-"** this suffix expresses the **perfect aspect**. Compare with page 137 (**ex. j-k**).

***Frequency*:** Written language: **often**
Colloquial language: **often**

a	Mother **got up and** walked into the kitchen.	Ээж **босоод** галын өрөөнд оров.	
b	My father will return in 2 days. ("My father **will pass 2 nights and then** return.")	Миний аав хоёр **хоноод** буцна.	
c	I **graduated** from middle school **and then** came here.	Би дунд сургууль **төгсөөд** энд ирсэн.	
d	I **get up** every morning at 7 o'clock, **and then** I make my bed and do exercises.	Би өглөө бүр 7 цагт **босоод** ор дэрээ хураан биеийн тамирын дасгал хийдэг.	
e	After that, I wash myself, **have breakfast, and then** I go to school. ("тэгээд" = 'I **do so and then**')	**Тэгээд** гар нүүрээ угааж цайгаа **уугаад** хичээлдээ явдаг.	
f	Dorj **took** his vacation, **went home**, and returned here **after** 10 days. ("...after having spent 10 days...")	Дорж амралтаа **аваад** гэртээ **хариад** арваад **хоноод** иржээ.	

g	Dorj **read** this sentence **again and again** ***without*** understanding it.	Дорж энэ өгүүлбэрийг **уншаад** **уншаад** ойлгосон*гүй*.	
h	Bat **kept searching** for his younger brother among all those people, but could***n't*** find him.	Бат тэр олон хүн дотор дүүгээ **эрээд** **эрээд** олсон*гүй*.	
i	Even if **he looks at** this **again and again**, he won't understand it.	Тэр үүнийг **үзээд** **үзээд** ойлгох*гүй*.	
j	I **have reviewed** this homework.	Би энэ даалгаврыг **давтчихаад** *байна*.	
k	I **had found** this book.	Би энэ номыг **олчихоод** *байсан*.	

1.1.2.1.3.1.3.1.4 Comparison of cVDS's

a	I **get up** in the mornings, **make** my bed, **do** exercises, **and then** go to school.	Би өглөө **босон** ор дэрээ **хураажж** биеийн тамир **хийгээд** хичээлдээ явдаг.	
b	I **got up** in the morning, **had** breakfast, **and then** drove to work. ("go to work **sitting** in a car")	Би өглөө **босон** цайгаа **уугаад** машиндаа **сууж** ажилдаа явсан.	
c	I **got up** in the morning, (**and then** I) **left** my house, **took** a bus, and arrived at my work.	Би өглөө **босоод** гэрээсээ **гарч** автобусанд **суун** ажилдаа ирэв.	
e	The international train **will come** from the north (Russia) **and then** go to the south (China).	Олон улсын галт тэрэг хойноос **ирээд** урагшаа явна.	
f	The international train **comes** from the north (Russia) **and** goes to the south (China).	Олон улсын галт тэрэг хойноос **ирж** урагшаа явдаг.	
g	The international train **comes** from the north (Russia) **and continues on** to the south (China).	Олон улсын галт тэрэг хойноос **ирэн** урагшаа явна.	

1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2 Subordinating Verb Determining Suffixes (sVDS's)

The sVDS's can be characterized as follows:

1.) The circumstances under which an action happens are expressed with an sVDS in Mongolian, but **in English, extra words** like 'although', 'as soon as', 'since', 'in order to', etc." are used to express such circumstances.

2.) With sVDS's, as the word already indicates, we always have a **subordination** and therefore these suffixes build **complex sentences**. The subject of the clauses can be in **nominative, accusative or genitive case** (see explanations on page 392-394 and page 89: hierarchy list).

c) To some sVDS's the **reflexive suffix** (see p. 108) can be added. This is always the case when the subject in the main sentence and the subject in the clause are identical (see page 392).

1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2.1 Conditional sVDS "–бал⁴, –вал⁴"

Cyrillic Rules:

–вал, –вол, –вэл, –вөл	complying with vowel harmony
–бал, –бол, –бэл, –бөл	for verb stems ending with the **consonants** "**в/л/м**" (**ex. e,g,h,k**)
(–баас⁴, –ваас⁴)	(equivalent to the classical suffix , which is used in modern Mongolian to express a highly traditional style of writing)

Classical Rules:

	complying with vowel harmony
( )	old forms
()	parallel form

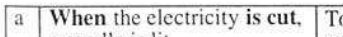
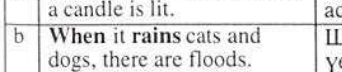
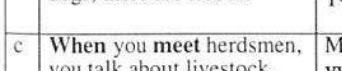
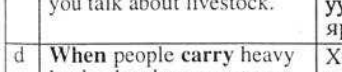
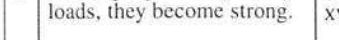
Explanations:

1.) This suffix can be translated as **'when'**, if **general conditional statements** are made. In this case, it's mainly used in the **indefinite present time** and is similar to the conjunction "**–хад**" (see **ex. a-e** and page 315).

2.) It can be translated as **'if, in case'** for clauses which express the condition under which the main action happens. In this function it is mainly used in imperative or future sentences (**ex. f-k**).

3.) For **all other sentences** (past tense, negation, subjunctive, etc.), the **conditional particle "бол"** must be used (see pages 342-343).

Frequency: Written language: **often**
Colloquial language: **often**

a	**When** the electricity **is cut**, a candle is lit.	Тог **тасарвал** лаа асаадаг.	
b	**When** it **rains** cats and dogs, there are floods.	Ширүүн бороо **орвол** үер болдог.	
c	**When** you **meet** herdsmen, you talk about livestock.	Малчин хүнтэй **уулзвал** малын тухай ярьдаг.	
d	**When** people **carry** heavy loads, they become strong.	Хүнд ачаа **өргөвөл** хүчтэй болно.	
e	**When** you **start** a job, you have to finish it.	Ажил **эхэлбэл** дуусгах хэрэгтэй.	

f	**If** Dad **comes**, we'll eat together.	Аавыг **ирвэл** бид хамт хоол иднэ.	ᠠᠪᠤᠭ᠎ᠠ ᠢᠷᠪᠡᠯ ᠪᠢᠳᠡ ᠬᠤᠶᠠᠷ ᠬᠤᠤᠯ ᠢᠳᠡᠨᠡ᠃
g	**If I buy** this bike, I won't go by bus.	Энэ дугуйг **авбал** би автобусаар явахгүй.	ᠡᠨᠡ ᠳᠤᠭᠤᠢᠭ ᠠᠪᠪᠠᠯ ᠪᠢ ᠠᠪᠲᠤᠪᠤᠰᠠᠭᠠᠷ ᠶᠠᠪᠠᠬᠭᠦᠢ᠃
h	**If** you **find** a bag, please give it to me.	Цүнх **олбол** надад өгөөрэй.	ᠴᠦᠩᠬ ᠣᠯᠪᠤᠯ ᠨᠠᠳᠠᠳ ᠥᠭᠥᠭᠡᠷᠡᠢჰ᠃
i	**If** any probem arises, please come to my home.	Ямар нэгэн бэрхшээл **гарвал** манайд очоорой.	ᠶᠠᠮᠠᠷ ᠨᠡᠭᠡᠨ ᠪᠡᠷᠬᠡᠱᠢᠶᠡᠯ ᠭᠠᠷᠪᠠᠯ ᠮᠠᠨᠠᠶᠢᠳ ᠣᠴᠤᠤᠷᠤᠢჰ᠃
j	Is it OK like this? ("Am (I) allowed to **do it this way**?")	**Ингэвэл** болох уу?	ᠢᠩᠭᠡᠪᠡᠯ ᠪᠣᠯᠣᠬᠤ ᠤᠤ᠃
k	How much interest do I get **if** I **invest** money with you?	Би танайд мөнгө **хадгалуулбал** хичнээн хүү авах вэ?	ᠪᠢ ᠲᠠᠨᠠᠶᠢᠳ ᠮᠥᠩᠭᠥ ᠬᠠᠳᠭᠠᠯᠤᠤᠯᠪᠠᠯ ᠬᠢᠴᠢᠨᠡᠭᠡᠨ ᠬᠦᠦ ᠠᠪᠠᠬ ᠸᠡჰ

1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2.2 Concessive sVDS "-вч"

***Cyrillic Rules*:**

-вч

For verb stems ending with a consonant or a soft sign, **the inserted vowel** is necessary.

***Classical Rules*:**

ᠪᠴᠤ

***Explanations*:**

1.) This suffix can be translated as **'although, though'** and expresses that the action in the main sentence happens **despite the circumstances** mentioned in the clause sentence.

2.) It's usually added to **full verbs**, if the main sentence is in a present or future tense (**ex. a-i**), otherwise **auxiliary verbs** must be used:
- a) NDS [e.g. past tense] (**ex. j-k,o,p,s**)
- b) Negation (**ex. k,n**)
- c) Nouns (**ex. m,q**)
- d) Adjectives (**ex. l,r**)

3.) The following **auxiliary verbs** are used:
- **"бол-"--> "боловч"** [most common, can be used for "авч" or "гэвч"] (**ex.j-n**)
- **"а-" --> "авч"** [only in poems and for personal feelings; old form of "бай-"] (**ex. o-q**)
- **"гэ-" --> "гэвч"** [rare] (**ex. r,s**)

***Frequency*:** Written language: **often** in the form "боловч"
Colloquial language: **often** in the form "боловч"

a	**Although** Dorj **is leaving** now, he won't get home today.	Дорж одоо **явавч** өнөөдөр гэртээ хүрэхгүй.	ᠳᠤᠷᠵ᠎ ᠣᠳᠤᠤ ᠶᠠᠪᠠᠪᠴ ᠪᠤᠴᠤᠵ ᠪᠠᠢᠨ᠎ᠠჰ᠃ ᠥᠨᠥᠥᠳᠥᠷ ᠬᠦᠷᠡᠬᠦᠢ ᠪᠠᠢᠨ᠎ᠠჰ᠃
b	**No matter** how much you **stare** in this direction, you won't see your beloved husband. ("...your beloved husband will not be seen.")	Тэр зүг хичнээн **ширтэвч** амраг нөхөр чинь харагдахгүй.	ᠪᠠᠢᠨ᠎ᠠჰ᠃ ᠮᠠᠨᠠᠢ ᠨᠥᠬᠥᠷ ᠴᠢᠨᠢ ᠰᠢᠷᠲᠡᠪᠴ ᠬᠢᠴᠢᠨᠡᠭᠡᠨ ᠪᠠᠢᠨ᠎ᠠჰ᠃
c	**Although it snows** in Mongolia in September, it's not cold.	Монголд 9-р сард цас **оровч** гадаа хүйтэн биш.	ᠮᠣᠩᠭᠣᠯᠳ ᠶᠢᠰᠦᠳᠦᠭᠡᠷ ᠰᠠᠷᠳ ᠴᠠᠰ ᠣᠷᠪᠠᠪᠴ ᠭᠠᠳᠠᠠ ᠬᠦᠢᠲᠡᠨ ᠪᠢᠰᠢჰ᠃

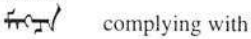
d	**Even though** you **have graduated** from school, you always have to increase your knowledge and education.	Та нар сургуулиа **төгсөвч** мэдлэг боловсролоо ямагт дээшлүүлж байх ёстой.	ᠲᠠ ᠨᠠᠭᠤᠷ ᠰᠤᠷᠭᠤᠤᠯᠢᠶᠠ ᠲᠥᠭᠰᠥᠪᠴ ᠮᠡᠳᠯᠡᠭ ᠪᠣᠯᠤᠪᠰᠣᠷᠣᠯᠤᠠ ᠶᠠᠮᠠᠭᠲ ᠳᠡᠭᠡᠱᠯᠦᠦᠯᠵ ᠪᠠᠢᠬ ᠶᠡᠰᠲᠠᠢჰ᠃
e	**Even when** he **gets** a cold, he doesn't take medicine.	Тэр ханиад **хүрэвч** эм уудаггүй.	ᠬᠠᠨᠢᠠᠳ ᠬᠦᠷᠡᠪᠴ ᠡᠮ ᠤᠤᠳᠠᠭᠭᠦᠢჰ᠃ ᠡᠮᠴ᠎ ᠴᠢᠮᠡᠭᠯᠡᠬᠦ ᠪᠠᠭᠲᠤᠭᠤᠢჰ ᠂᠍
f	**Even when** he **is angry**, he doesn't quarrel with people.	Тэр **уурлавч** хүнтэй хэрэлддэггүй.	ᠤᠤᠷᠯᠠᠪᠴ ᠬᠦᠨᠲᠡᠢ ᠬᠡᠷᠡᠯᠳᠡᠭᠭᠦᠢჰ᠃ ᠡᠮᠴ᠎ ᠬᠦᠮᠦᠨᠲᠡᠢ ᠪᠠᠭᠲᠤᠭᠤᠢჰ ᠂᠍
g	**Even when** his work **is over** for the day, he doesn't go home.	Тэр ажлаа **таравч** гэртээ харьдаггүй.	ᠠᠵᠢᠯᠠᠠ ᠲᠠᠷᠠᠪᠴ ᠭᠡᠷᠲᠡᠭᠡ ᠬᠠᠷᠢᠳᠠᠭᠭᠦᠢჰ᠃ ᠡᠮᠴ᠎ ᠬᠣᠷᠢᠲ ᠭᠠᠷᠴ ᠠᠮᠠᠷᠪᠴ ᠣᠷᠣᠬᠭᠦᠢჰ᠃
h	**No matter** how much we **hurry**, this will not be finished today.	Бид хичнээн **яаравч** энэ өнөөдөр дуусахгүй.	ᠪᠢᠳᠡ ᠬᠢᠴᠢᠨᠡᠭᠡᠨ ᠶᠠᠪᠠᠪᠴ ᠡᠨᠡ ᠥᠨᠥᠥᠳᠥᠷ ᠳᠤᠤᠰᠠᠬᠭᠦᠢჰ᠃ ᠥᠳᠥᠷ᠎ ᠴᠢᠮᠡᠭᠯᠡᠬᠦ ᠪᠠᠭᠲᠤᠭᠤᠢჰ ᠂᠍
i	At my home there is an axe, but it has no handle; there is a knife, but it's blunt. ("**Although** there **is** an axe, it has no handle...")	Манайд сүх **байвч** ишгүй, хутга **байвч** мохоо доо.	ᠮᠠᠨᠠᠢᠳ ᠰᠦᠬ ᠪᠠᠢᠪᠴ ᠢᠰᠢᠭᠦᠢ ᠂᠍ ᠬᠤᠲᠭ᠎ᠠ ᠪᠠᠢᠪᠴ ᠮᠣᠬᠣᠣ ᠳᠣᠣჰ᠃
j	**Although** the weather* is nice, Tsetseg can't go walking today. (*"sky")	Тэнгэр сайхан **байгаа** **боловч** Цэцэг өнөөдөр зугаалж чадахгүй.	ᠲᠡᠩᠭᠡᠷ ᠰᠠᠶᠬᠠᠨ ᠪᠠᠢᠭᠠᠠ ᠪᠣᠯᠤᠪᠴ ᠴᠡᠴᠡᠭ ᠥᠨᠥᠥᠳᠥᠷ ᠵᠤᠭᠠᠯᠵ ᠴᠠᠳᠠᠬᠭᠦᠢჰ᠃
k	**Although** he **didn't talk** to me about this, I knew it.	Тэр надад энэ тухай *яриагүй* **боловч** би мэдсэн.	ᠲᠡᠷ ᠨᠠᠳᠠᠳ ᠡᠨᠡ ᠲᠤᠬᠠᠢ ᠶᠠᠷᠢᠵᠤ ᠪᠠᠢᠬᠭᠦᠢჰ᠃ ᠨᠠᠳᠠ᠎ ᠨᠢᠭᠡ ᠪᠢ ᠮᠡᠳᠡᠰᠡᠨჰ᠃
l	**Although** Tuya **has** a lot of work, she studies Russian.	Туяа ажил *ихтэй* **боловч** орос хэл сурч байна.	ᠲᠤᠶᠠ ᠠᠵᠢᠯ ᠢᠬᠲᠡᠢ ᠪᠣᠯᠪᠴ ᠣᠷᠣᠰ ᠬᠡᠯ ᠰᠤᠷᠴ ᠪᠠᠢᠨ᠎ᠠჰ᠃
m	**Although** he **is** an English teacher, he speaks poor English.	Тэр англи хэлний *багш* **боловч** англиар муу ярьдаг.	ᠠᠩᠭᠯᠢ ᠬᠡᠯᠨᠢᠢ ᠪᠠᠭᠱ ᠪᠣᠯᠪᠴ ᠠᠩᠭᠯᠢᠠᠷ ᠮᠤᠤ ᠶᠠᠷᠢᠵᠠᠭჰ᠃
n	**Although** he **isn't sick**, he isn't coming to work.	Тэр өвчтэй *биш* **боловч** ажилдаа ирэхгүй байна.	ᠲᠡᠷ ᠥᠪᠴᠲᠡᠢ ᠪᠢᠰ ᠪᠣᠯᠪᠴ ᠠᠵᠢᠯᠳᠠ ᠢᠷᠡᠬᠦᠢ ᠪᠠᠢᠨ᠎ᠠჰ᠃
o	**Although** the guest **will arrive** tomorrow, a flat hasn't been found.	Зочин маргааш ирэх **авч** байр олоогүй байна.	ᠵᠣᠴᠢᠨ ᠮᠠᠷᠭᠠᠠᠰᠢ ᠢᠷᠡᠬ ᠠᠪᠴ ᠪᠠᠢᠷ ᠣᠯᠤᠭᠤᠭᠦᠢ ᠪᠠᠢᠨ᠎ᠠჰ᠃
p	**Although** the (first) summer month **has come**, it's still cool.	Зуны сар *гарсан* **авч** зэврүүн л байна.	ᠵᠤᠨᠤ ᠰᠠᠷ ᠭᠠᠷᠴᠠᠨ ᠠᠪᠴ ᠵᠡᠪᠷᠦᠦᠨ ᠯ ᠪᠠᠢᠨ᠎ᠠჰ᠃
q	**Although** I'm *Mongolian*, I didn't understand this.	Би монгол *хүн* **авч** үүнийг ойлгосонгүй.	ᠪᠢ ᠮᠣᠩᠭᠣᠯ ᠬᠦᠨ ᠠᠪᠴ ᠦᠦᠨᠢᠶᠡᠭ ᠣᠢᠯᠭᠣᠰᠣᠩᠭᠦᠢჰ᠃
r	An 'ail' where people don't ride **although** they **have** ***horses*** and don't milk **although** they **have** ***cows***, is probably rare.	*Морьтой* **гэвч** унадаггүй, *үнээтэй* **гэвч** саадаггүй айл ховор байхаа.	ᠮᠣᠷᠢᠲᠤ ᠭᠡᠪᠴ ᠤᠨᠠᠳᠠᠭᠭᠦᠢ ᠂᠍ ᠦᠨᠡᠡᠲᠡᠢ ᠭᠡᠪᠴ ᠰᠠᠭᠠᠳᠠᠭᠭᠦᠢ ᠠᠢᠯ ᠬᠣᠪᠣᠷ ᠪᠠᠢᠬᠠ᠎ᠠჰ᠃
s	**Although** Tuya **plays an instrument** well, she can't sing.	Туяа сайхан хөгжимдөг **гэвч** дуулж чаддаггүй.	ᠲᠤᠶᠠ ᠰᠠᠶᠬᠠᠨ ᠬᠥᠭᠵᠢᠮ ᠳᠥᠭ ᠭᠡᠪᠴ ᠳᠤᠤᠯᠵ ᠴᠠᠳᠳᠠᠭᠭᠦᠢჰ᠃

1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2.3 Immediately Succeeding sVDS "–магц[4]"

***Cyrillic Rules*:**

–магц, –могц, –мэгц, –мөгц complying with vowel harmony

***Classical Rules*:**

 complying with vowel harmony

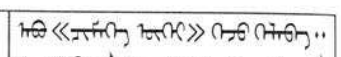
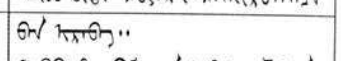
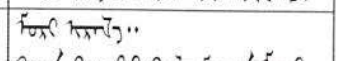
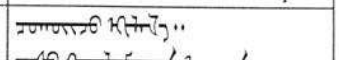
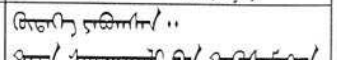
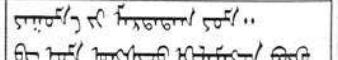
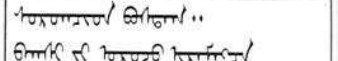
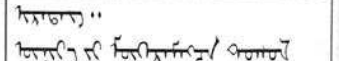
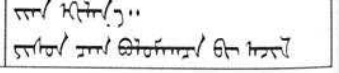
Inserted vowel necessary (**ex. a,d,e,i**)

***Explanations*:**

1.) This suffix is usually translated as **'as soon as'** or **'just as'** and expresses that the main action happens **immediately after** the action in the clause sentence. The action of the clause sentence is always finished (similar to the sVDS "–нгуут"; see page 170).

2.) This suffix is most commonly used for **past** and **indefinite present tenses**, rarely for the future.

***Frequency*:** Written language: **quite often**
Colloquial language: **quite often**

a	**As soon as** my younger sister and I **screamed**, Dad said, "Be quiet!"	Дүү бид хоёрыг **хашгирмагц** аав «Чимээгүй» гэж хэлэв.	
b	**Just after** (my) younger brother **left**, Mother came from work.	Дүүг **явмагц** ээж ажлаасаа ирэв.	
c	**As soon as** those two **went away**, our horse came.	Тэр хоёрыг **холдмогц** манай морь ирлээ.	
d	**As soon as** the snow **had melted**, green began to appear.	Цас **хайлмагц** ногоо цухуйж эхэллээ.	
e	**As soon as** he **had graduated** from school, he went to the countryside.	Тэр сургуулиа **төгсмөгц** хөдөө явсан.	
f	**As soon as** I **start** to read a book, I forget everything!	Би ном **уншиж эхэлмэгц** бүх юмыг мартдаг юм.	
g	**As soon as** the teacher **enters,** the pupils stand up.	Багшийг орж **ирмэгц** сурагчид босдог.	
h	**As soon as** the cow **moos**, the calf comes.	Үнээг **мөөрмөгц** тугал ирдэг.	
i	**As soon as** it's 9 o'clock, I'll start my work.	Есөн цаг **болмогц** би ажлаа эхэлнэ.	

1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2.4 Logically Succeeding sVDS "–хлаар[4]"

***Cyrillic Rules*:**

–хлаар, –хлоор, –хлээр, –хлөөр complying with vowel harmony

For verb stems ending with a consonant or a soft sign, the **inserted vowel** is necessary.

***Classical Rules*:**

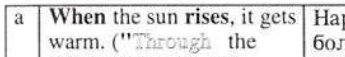
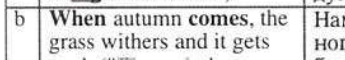
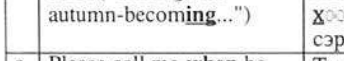
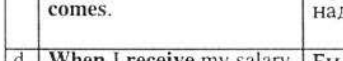
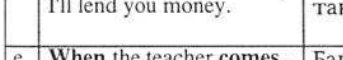
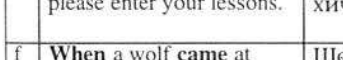
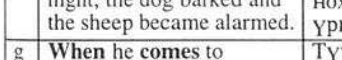
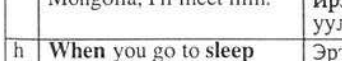
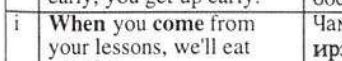
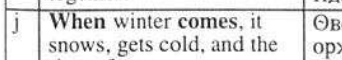
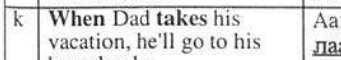
 complying with vowel harmony

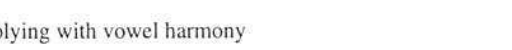
***Explanations*:**

1.) This suffix is used when two actions follow each other logically. In English it's often translated as 'when' but has nothing to do with the conditional 'when'. It is commonly used for sentences in the **future** or **indefinite present** tense, almost **never for the past**.

2.) Note that, instead of this sVDS, often the NDS "–х" + the CS "–аар" [–> **хаар**] is used, because this combination gives the same grammatical meaning [see p. 96 No. 9] (**ex. a-b**). Compare with the explanations to the sVDS "–хаар" on the next page.

***Frequency*:** Written language: **seldom**
Colloquial language: **seldom**

a	**When** the sun **rises**, it gets warm. ("Through the rising of the sun...")	Нар **гарахлаар** дулаан болдог. (Нар **гарах**аар дулаан болдог.)	
b	**When** autumn **comes**, the grass withers and it gets cool. ("Through the autumn-becoming...")	Намар **болохлоор** ногоо гандаж сэрүүн болдог. (Намар боло–**х**оор ногоо гандаж сэрүүн болдог.)	
c	Please call me **when** he **comes**.	Түүнийг **ирэхлээр** над руу утасдаарай.	
d	**When** I **receive** my salary, I'll lend you money.	Би цалин **авахлаараа** танд мөнгө зээлнэ.	
e	**When** the teacher **comes** , please enter your lessons.	Багшийг **ирэхлээр** хичээлдээ ороорой.	
f	**When** a wolf **came** at night, the dog barked and the sheep became alarmed.	Шөнө чоно **ирэхлээр**, нохой хуцаж, хонь үргэлээ.	
g	**When** he **comes** to Mongolia, I'll meet him.	Түүнийг Монголд **ирэхлээр** би түүнтэй уулзана.	
h	**When** you go to **sleep** early, you get up early.	Эрт **унтахлаар** эрт босдог.	
i	**When** you **come** from your lessons, we'll eat together.	Чамайг хичээлээс **ирэхлээр** бид хоолоо идэх болно.	
j	**When** winter **comes**, it snows, gets cold, and the rivers freeze.	Өвөл **болохлоор** цас орж, хүйтэн болж гол хөлддөг.	
k	**When** Dad **takes** his vacation, he'll go to his homeland.	Аав амралтаа **авах–лаараа** нутагтаа явна.	

l	**When** you **drink** this alcohol, you get a headache.	Энэ архийг **уухлаар** толгой өвддөг.	
m	**When** you **run up** a mountain, you get tired quickly.	Уул өөд **гүйхлээр** хурдан ядардаг.	

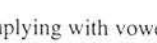
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2.5 Intending sVDS "–хаар[4]"

***Cyrillic Rules*:**

–хаар, –хоор, –хээр, –хөөр complying with vowel harmony

For verb stems ending with a consonant or a soft sign, the **inserted vowel** is necessary.

***Classical Rules*:**

 complying with vowel harmony

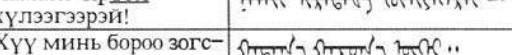
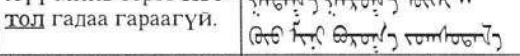
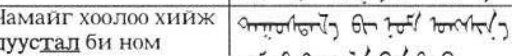
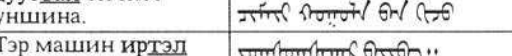
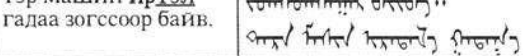
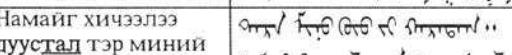
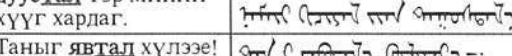
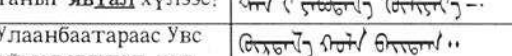
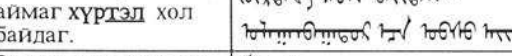
old form

***Explanations*:**

1.) This suffix is translated as **'(in order) to**' and expresses the **reason** why the main action happens. However, it **can't be used for general statements** because these are expressed with the conjunction "–хад" (= NDS "–х" + dative-locative CS "–д"; see page 315).

2.) In Cyrillic this suffix looks like the combination NDS "–х" + CS "–аар" = "–хаар". It probably developed from this combination, but in Classical script there are two different written forms (), and therefore, we also differentiate the two forms.

***Frequency*:** Written language: **quite often**
Colloquial language: **quite often**

a	I went to the shop (**in order**) **to buy** vegetables.	Би ногоо **авахаар** дэлгүүр явсан.	
b	**In order to do well** on an exam, I prepare early.	Би шалгалтаа сайн **өгөхөөр** эртнээс бэлтгэж байна.	
c	I came to Mongolia (**in order**) **to study** Mongolian.	Би монгол хэл **сурахаар** Монголд ирсэн.	
d	Baatar went **to give** his friend something.	Баатар найздаа юм **өгөхөөр** явжээ.	
e	They left yesterday **to go** to Moscow.	Тэд Москва **орохоор** өчигдөр хөдөллөө.	
f	My family went to the countryside **to relax.**	Манайхан **амрахаар** хөдөө явсан.	
g	Sarnai went out **to call** him.	Сарнай түүнийг **дуудахаар** гарсан.	
h	She went to the countryside **to do** this job.	Тэр энэ ажлыг **хийхээр** хөдөө явсан.	
i	He left with his family **to live** in Germany.	Тэр Германд **суухаар** гэр бүлийнхэнтэй явсан.	

1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2.6 Limiting sVDS "–тал[4]"

***Cyrillic Rules*:**

–тал, –тол, –тэл, –төл complying with vowel harmony

***Classical Rules*:**

***Explanations*:**

1.) This suffix is translated as **'until**', and expresses that the action in the main sentence **continues until the action of the clause sentence begins** (**ex. a-h**).

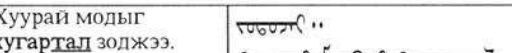
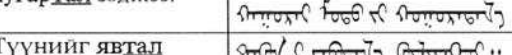
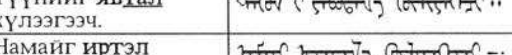
2.) **Local and temporal** limitations are also expressed with this suffix. In this case, the clause is often dropped in the translation (**ex. i-l**).

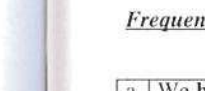
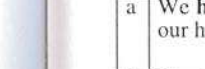
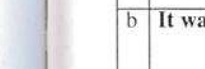
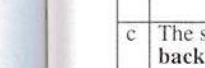
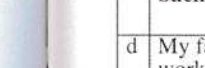
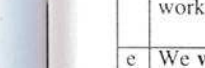
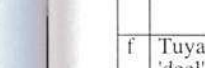
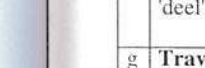
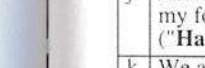
3.) In some sentences this suffix is translated as '**when**' like the sVDS "–нгуут"(p. 170) or "–магц" (p. 164). The difference is as follows: Clause sentences with "–тал" always express that the action of the main sentence happens **surprisingly**. It can't be planned (**ex. m-q**).

3.) The analytical form "**–саар байтал**" expresses **'although**' (**ex. r**).

4.) Many **colloquial expressions** use this suffix. The sVDS describes, like an adverb, the following verb (**ex. s-x**). Some of these expressions could take the PS if there is a common subject and if the verbs don't only serve to describe, but might actually happen (**ex. y-z**).

***Frequency*:** Written language: **often**
Colloquial language: **often**

a	Someone was beaten **until** the dry stick **broke** apart.	Хуурай модыг **хугартал** зоджээ.	
b	Please wait **until** he **leaves**.	Түүнийг **явтал** хүлээгээч.	
c	Please wait **until** I **come**.	Намайг **иртэл** хүлээгээрэй!	
d	My son didn't go out **until** the rain **had stopped.**	Хүү минь бороо **зогстол** гадаа гараагүй.	
e	I'll read a book **until** you've **finished** cooking the meal.	Чамайг хоолоо хийж **дуустал** би ном уншина.	
f	He stood outside **until** the car **came**.	Тэр машин **иртэл** гадаа зогссоор байв.	
g	She looks after my son **until** I **have finished** my lessons.	Намайг хичээлээ **дуустал** тэр миний хүүг хардаг.	
h	Let me wait **until** you've **left**.	Таныг **явтал** хүлээе!	
i	It's a long way from Ulaanbaatar **to** the Uvs 'Aimag'.	Улаанбаатараас Увс аймаг **хүртэл** хол байдаг.	
j	It's 25 meters from here **to** there.	Эндээс тэнд **хүртэл** 25 метр.	
k	Every year, the students are on vacation **until** September 1st. ("until it becomes Sept.")	Оюутнууд жил бүр 9–р сарын нэгэн **болтол** амардаг.	
l	I'll be in Mongolia **until the beginning** of June. ("until June comes out")	Би 6–р сар **гартал** Монголд байна.	

m	The woman embraced her son **as** he **got out** of the car.	Хүүгээ машинаас **буутал** эх нь тэврэн авчээ.	
n	His dog came running **as** he had barely **gone out** the door.	Түүнийг үүдээр **дөнгөж гартал** нохой нь давхин ирлээ.	
o	**As** he **picked up** the phone, he got cut off.	Тэр утас **автал** тасарчихав.	
p	**As** (they) **went out**side, it started to rain.	Гадаа **гартал** бороо орж эхлэв.	
q	**As** he **shouted**, everybody woke up with a start.	Түүнийг **хашгиртал** бүгд цочин сэрэв.	
r	**Although** he **had been told repeatedly** (not to), he left.	Түүнд хэлсээр **байтал** тэр явчихсан.	
s	to roar with laughter ("to laugh **until cackling**")	**тачигнатал** инээ-	
t	to sob ("to cry **until bellowing**")	**хэнгэнэтэл** уйла-	
u	to fall with a bump ("to fall **until making a 'thud'** [pid]")	**пидхийтэл** уна-	
v	to sing shrilly (" to sing **until shrilling**)	**хангинатал** луула-	
w	to break into a smile, to grin ("to laugh **until grinning**")	**маасайтал** инээ-	
x	to slap strongly with the hands ("to slap **until jumping**")	**үсэртэл** алгада-	
y	to eat until one bursts ("to eat **until** one's **bursting**	**хагартал**(аа) идэ-	
z	to work like mad ("to work until one's tired")	**ядартал**(аа) ажилла-	

1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2.7 Progressive sVDS "-caap[4]"

Cyrillic Rules:

-caap, -coop, -сээр, -сөөр complying with vowel harmony

Classical Rules:

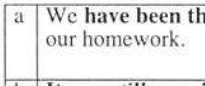
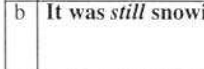
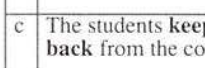
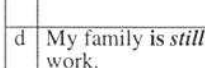
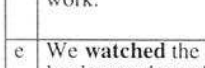
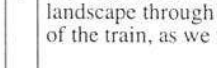
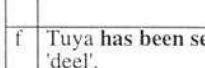
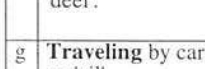
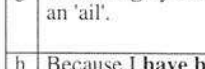
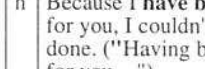
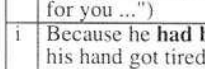
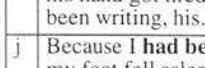
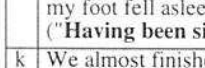
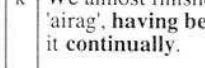
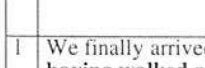
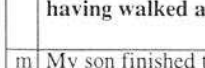
complying with vowel harmony

Inserted vowel necessary (**ex. a**)

Explanations:

1.) This suffix is used to express the **progressive perfect aspect** (see pages 137-138).
2.) Note that the ***particle "л"*** here expresses a meaning similar to '**still**' (**ex. b-d**).
3.) The auxiliary verb "бай-" can be exchanged with another verb (**ex. e-f**) which doesn't even have to follow immediately (**ex. g**).
4.) Very commonly, this suffix is used in the expression "**-caap байгаад**" (**ex. h-j**). Note that the literary translation (in parentheses) is not common in English.
5.) The **action can be intensified** by doubling the verb with this suffix (**ex. k**) or by using it together with the **cVDS "-н"** (**ex. l-m**).
5.) Often, the two actions **happen simultaneously**, thus giving the translation 'since' (**ex. n-p**).
6.) The **subjects** of the main and clause sentences must be **identical.**

Frequency: Written language: **often**
Colloquial language: **often**

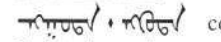
a	We **have been thinking** about our homework.	Бид даалгавраа **бодсоор байна**.	
b	**It was *still* snowing** outside.	Гадаа цас **орсоор л байлаа**.	
c	The students **keep coming back** from the countryside.	Хөдөөнөөс оюутнууд **ирсээр л байна**.	
d	My family **is *still* doing** their work.	Манайхан ажлаа **хийсээр л байгаа**.	
e	We **watched** the Mongolian landscape through the window of the train, as we traveled.	Бид галт тэргэний цонхоор Монгол орны байгалыг **харсаар** явлаа.	
f	Tuya **has been sewing** her 'deel'.	Туяа дээлээ **оёсоор** суув.	
g	**Traveling** by car, we came to an 'ail'.	Бид машинаар **яв-саар** нэг айлд хүрэв.	
h	Because I **have been waiting** for you, I couldn't get anything done. ("Having been waiting for you ...")	Би чамайг хүлээ-**сээр байгаад** юу ч хийж амжсангүй.	
i	Because he **had been writing**, his hand got tired. ("Having been writing, his...")	**Бичсээр байгаад** гар нь цуцав.	
j	Because I **had been sitting**, my foot fell asleep. ("**Having been sitting**, my...")	Би **суусаар байгаад** хөлөө оршоов.	
k	We almost finished this good 'airag', **having been drinking** it **continually**.	Бид нар энэ сайхан айргийг **уусаар уусаар** бараг дуусгачихлаа.	
l	We finally arrived there, **having walked and walked**.	Бид яван **явсаар** тэнд хүрлээ.	
m	My son finished this book, **having read** it **continually**.	Миний хүү энэ номыг **уншин уншсаар** дуусгажээ.	
n	**Since** I **was born,** I've never seen such a thing. ("Since I have become a person...")	Би хүн **болсоор** ийм юм үзээгүй.	
o	**Since** Bat **began** to study Mongolian, one year has passed. ("...it's becoming one year.")	Бат монгол хэл сурч **эхэлсээр** нэг жил болж байна.	
p	I **have been living** in the city for ten years. ("**While** I **have been living** in the city, 10 years have passed.")	Би хотод **суусаар** 10 жил боллоо.	

1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2.8 Succeeding sVDS "–нгуут²"

***Cyrillic Rules*:**

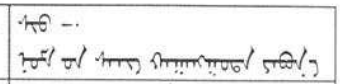
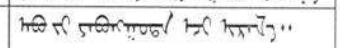
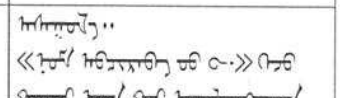
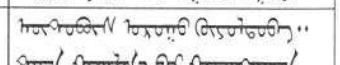
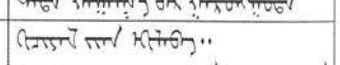
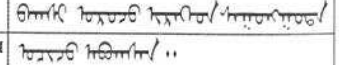
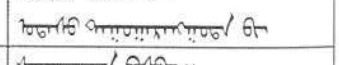
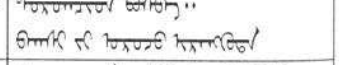
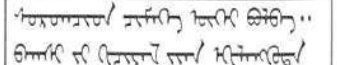
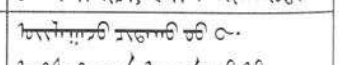
–нгуут , –нгүүт complying with vowel harmony
Verb stems ending with a **consonant** or a soft sign need the **inserted vowel**.
* **–уут, –үүт** complying with vowel harmony (**ex. g-k**)
(**–гуут²**) [for verb stems ending with a **long vowel** or **diphthong**] (**ex. l**).

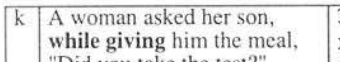
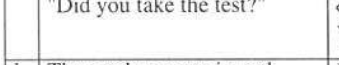
***Classical Rules*:**

 complying with vowel harmony
Inserted vowel necessary (**ex. d,j,k**)

***Explanations*:**
1.) This suffix is best translated as '**as soon as**' or '**the moment**' and expresses that the two actions happen shortly after each other (**ex. a-h.** It is very similar to the sVDS "–магц".
2.) The **suffixes with** * only have the meaning '**while**', if the two **subjects are identical**. Because they express an **uninterrupted action** they can't be used for all verbs (**ex. i-l**).

***Frequency*:** Written language: **seldom ("–уут" very seldom)**
Colloquial language: **seldom ("–уут" very seldom)**

a	**As soon as** the library **closes**, we'll surely go.	Номын сан **хаа**нгуут явна шүү!	
b	**As soon as** Dad **had left**, Mother came.	Аавыг **яв**ангуут ээж ирлээ.	
c	**As soon as** Dorj **met** me, he asked, "Did you bring the book?"	Дорж надтай **уулза**нгуут «Ном авчрав уу?» гэж асуулаа.	
d	**The moment** they went out the door, they ran toward the bus.	Тэд хаалгаар **гара**нгуут автобус руу гүйлдэв.	
e	**As soon as** the teacher had come in and **sat down**, the lesson started.	Багш орж ирээд **суу**нгуут хичээлээ эхлэв.	
f	**The moment** the phone **rang**, I went and got it.	Утас **дуугара**нгуут би очиж авсан.	
g	**The moment** the teacher **came in**, the pupils stood up.	Багшийг орж **ир**үүт сурагчид босов.	
h	**As soon as** the teacher **began** his lesson, the pupils became quiet.	Багшийг хичээлээ **эхл**үүт сурагчид чимээгүй болов.	
i	Can you understand the meaning in Mongolian **while** you are **reading** (it)?	Та монголоор юм **уншу**үт утгыг нь ойлгож чадах уу?	
j	**While putting on** his sweater, he ran out.	Тэр цамцаа **өмс**үүт гүйн гарав.	

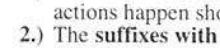
k	A woman asked her son, **while giving** him the meal, "Did you take the test?"	Эх нь хүүдээ хоол хийж **өг**үүт «Шалгалтаа өгөв үү?» гэж асуув.	
l	The teacher came in and **while** he **sat down,** he greeted them, "Good morning, class."	Багш орж ирээд **суу**гуут «Сайн байцгаана уу?» гэж мэндлэв.	

1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2.9 Seizing an Opportunity sVDS "–нгаа⁴"

***Cyrillic Rules*:**

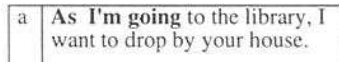
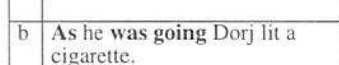
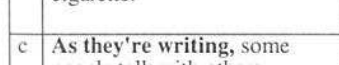
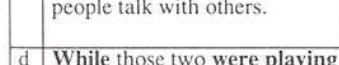
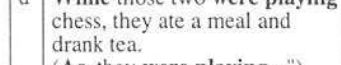
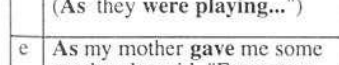
–нгаа, –нгоо, –нгээ, –нгөө complying with vowel harmony
Verb stems ending with a consonant or a soft sign need the **inserted vowel**.

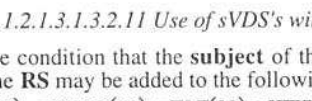
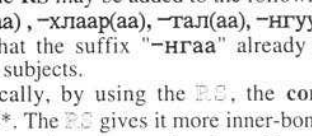
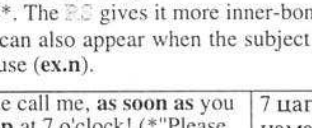
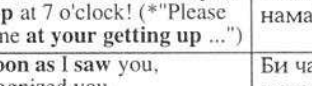
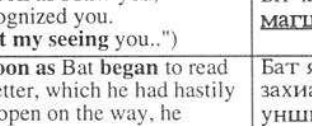
***Classical Rules*:**

 complying with vowel harmony
Inserted vowel necessary (**ex. e,g,h,k**)

***Explanations*:**
1.) This suffix can be translated as '**as**' or '**while**', and expresses an **opportunity which should be taken advantage of**. The action of the main sentence is not as important as the action of the clause. This level of importance can be expressed with this suffix, but not with the similar expression "–ж байхад" (see page 315).
2.) The suffix "**–нг**aa" already carries in it the P.S (p. 108), which is clearly seen by the Classical suffix. For this reason, the two **subjects must be identical**.

***Frequency*:** Written language: **seldom**
Colloquial language: **seldom**

a	**As I'm going** to the library, I want to drop by your house.	Би номын сан руу **яв**ангаа танайд очмоор байна.	
b	**As** he **was going** Dorj lit a cigarette.	Дорж **яв**ангаа тамхиа асаалаа.	
c	**As they're writing,** some people talk with others.	Зарим хүн юм **бичи**нгээ хүнтэй ярьдаг.	
d	**While** those two **were playing** chess, they ate a meal and drank tea. (**As** they **were playing...**")	Тэр хоёр шатар **тави**нгаа хоол идэж цай уун суув.	
e	**As** my mother **gave** me some candys she said, "From now on, study even harder, please."	Ээж минь чихэр **өг**өнгөө «Үүнээс хойш улам сайн сураарай» гэв.	
f	A short while ago, **as** Bat **was going** to his apartment and came back, he bought some 'buuz'.	Бат сая байрандаа **оч**ингоо замдаа хэдэн бууз аваад иржээ.	

g	**As** you **stand up**, pass me my cup!	Чи босонгоо аягыг минь аваад аль!	
h	Tomorrow, **as** I **go** to the mountains, I'll pick nice flowers for my younger sister.	Би маргааш ууланд гарангаа дүүдээ сайхан цэцэг түүж ирнэ.	
i	**On his way** to the market on Sundays, Bayar used to meet with a young lad.	Баяр бүтэн сайн өдөр зах оронгоо нэг залуутай дандаа уулздаг байж.	
j	**While eating** my meals, I like to watch TV.	Би хоолоо идэнгээ телевизор үзэх дуртай.	
k	In order to help her mother, Sarnai works **besides studying**.	Сарнай ээждээ туслахын тулд сурангаа ажиллаж байгаа.	

1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2.10 Excluding sVDS "–маажин⁴"

***Cyrillic Rules*:**

–маажин, –мээжин , –моожин, –мөөжин complying with vowel harmony

***Classical Rules*:**

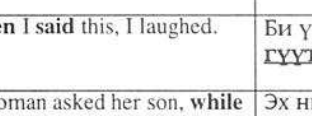
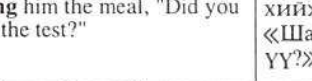
Inserted vowel necessary (**ex. a**)

***Explanations* :**

1.) This suffix, which is more widely used in Inner Mongolia, expresses a limiting condition and can be translated as **'only if'**. In Mongolia, people prefer to use the particle "л" to get the "only" meaning ["–бал + л"; see examples in parentheses and page 161]. The suffix маажин" is then reserved for poems and such literary uses.

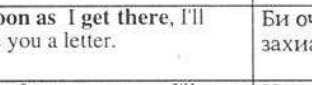
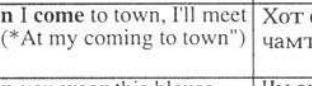
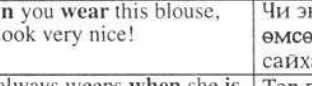
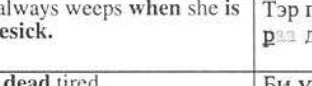
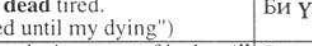
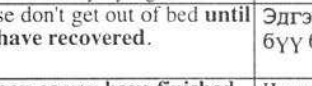
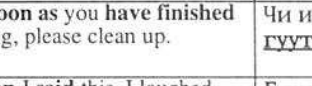
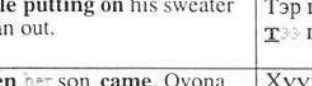
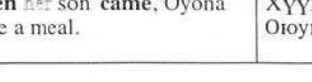
2.) It's always used in **future** (or present tense) sentences.

***Frequency*:** Written language: **very rare**
Colloquial language: **not used** in Mongolia

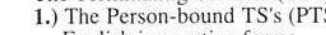
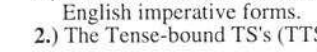
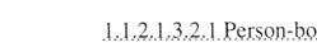
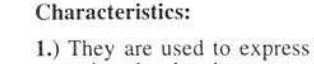
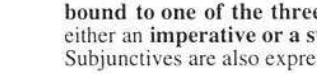
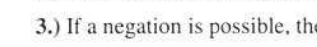
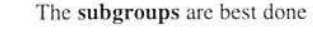
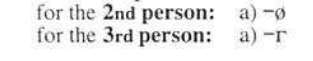
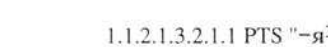
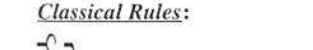
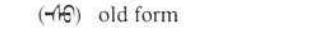
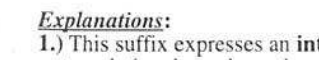
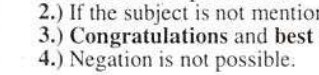
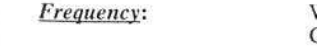
a	**Only if** you **learn**, then you know.	Сурмаажин сая мэднэ.	
b	**Only if** you **live** among Mongolians, will you understand them well.	Та монголчуудын дунд амьдармаажин (амьдарвал л) тэднийг сайн ойлгоно.	
c	**Only if** you **do it this way**, will it be fitting.	Ингэмээжин (ингэвэл л) сая таарна.	

1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2.11 Use of sVDS's with the RS

Under the condition that the **subject** of the main sentence **is identical** with the subject of the clause, the **RS** may be added to the following sVDS's:
–магц(аа) , –хлаар(аа), –гал(аа), –нгуут(аа) , –уут(аа)
Notice that the suffix "**–нгаа**" already contains an RS and therefore is always used with common subjects.
Theoretically, by using the RS, the **complex sentence** could be translated **like a simple sentence***. The RS gives it more inner-bonding.
The RS can also appear when the subject of the clause sentence is related to the subject of the main clause (**ex.n**).

a	Please call me, **as soon as** you **get up** at 7 o'clock! (*"Please call me **at your getting up** ...")	7 цагт босмогцоо намайг дуудаарай!	
b	**As soon as** I **saw** you, I recognized you. (*"**At my seeing** you..")	Би чамайг хармагцаа л таньсан.	
c	**As soon as** Bat **began** to read his letter, which he had hastily torn open on the way, he smiled.	Бат явангаа яаран захиагаа задалж уншиж эхэлмэгцээ инээмсэглэв.	
d	**As soon as** I **get there**, I'll write you a letter.	Би очмогцоо чамд захиа бичнэ.	
e	**When** I **come** to town, I'll meet you. (*At my coming to town")	Хот ороххоорээ би чамтай уулзана.	
f	**When** you **wear** this blouse, you look very nice!	Чи энэ цамцыг өмсөхлөөрээ их сайхан харагдах юм.	
g	She always weeps **when** she **is homesick.**	Тэр гэрээ санахлаарээ дандаа уйлдаг.	
h	I am **dead** tired. ("tired until my dying")	Би үхтлээ ядарлаа.	
i	Please don't get out of bed **until** you **have recovered**.	Эдгэртлээ орноосоо бүү босоорой!	
j	**As soon as** you **have finished** eating, please clean up.	Чи идэж дуусангуутаа цэвэрлээрэй.	
k	**When** I **said** this, I laughed.	Би үүнийг хэлэнгүүтээ инээсэн.	
l	A woman asked her son, **while giving** him the meal, "Did you take the test?"	Эх нь хүүдээ хоол хийж өгүүтээ «Шалгалтаа өгөв үү?» гэж асуув.	
m	**While putting on** his sweater he ran out.	Тэр цамцаа өмсүүтээ гүйн гарав.	
n	**When** her son **came**, Oyona made a meal.	Хүүтээ ирэхлээр Оюуна хоол хийсэн.	

1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2.12 Comparison of sVDS's

	Conditional		
a	**If** the teacher **comes**, I'll talk with him. (conditional)	Багшийг ирвэл би түүнтэй ярина.	
b	**When** the teacher **enters** (the classroom), the pupils stand up. (general)	Багшийг орж ирвэл сурагчид босдог.	
	Concessive		
a	**Although** the teacher **enters** (the classroom), the pupils don't stand up.	Багшийг орж ирэвч сурагчид босдоггүй.	
b	**Although** the teacher **had entered** (the classroom), the pupils didn't stand up.	Багшийг орж ирсэн боловч сурагчид боссонгүй.	
	Immediately succeeding		
a	**As soon as** the teacher **entered** the classroom, the pupils stood up.	Багшийг орж ирмэгц сурагчид бослоо.	
	Logically succeeding		
a	**When** the teacher **enters** the classroom, the pupils stand up.	Багшийг орж ирэхлээр сурагчид босдог.	
	Intending		
a	The teacher entered (the classroom) **(in order) to teach**.	Багш хичээл заахаар орж ирэв.	
	Limiting		
a	The pupils had been talking loudly **until** the teacher **entered** (the classroom).	Багшийг орж иртэл сурагчид чанга ярьсаар байв.	
b	**As** the teacher **entered** (the classroom), the pupils suddenly got quiet. ('surprise')	Багшийг орж иртэл сурагчид гэнэт чимээгүй болов.	
	Progressive		
a	A half an hour has passed **since** the teacher **entered** the classroom.	Багш орж ирсээр хагас цаг болж байна.	
b	**Having been teaching**, the teacher got tired.	Багш хичээл заасаар байгаад ядарсан.	
	Succeeding		
a	**As soon as** the teacher **entered**, the pupils stood up.	Багшийг орж ирэнгүүт /ирүүт сурагчид босов.	
b	The teacher was explaining **while writing** on the blackboard.	Багш самбар дээр бичүүт тайлбарлав.	
	Seizing an opportunity		
a	**As** the teacher **entered**, he greeted, "Good morning."	Багш орж ирэнгээ «Сайн байна уу?» гэв.	
	Excluding		
a	**Only if** the teacher **enters**, must the pupils stand up.	Багш орж ирмээжин сурагчид босох ёстой.	

1.1.2.1.3.2 Terminating Suffixes (TS's)

The Terminating Suffixes (TS's) can be divided in **two groups**:
1.) The Person-bound TS's (PTS's) are **bound to a specific person** and can be compared to the English imperative forms.
2.) The Tense-bound TS's (TTS's) are **bound to the specific tense** in which the action happens.

The TS's are always **added to the verb at the end of the sentence**, thus building predicates and helping **to build sentences** (see Chapter 4 of Appendix on page 421f).

1.1.2.1.3.2.1 Person-bound Terminating Suffixes (PTS's)

Characteristics:

1.) They are used to express **the subjective attitude** or **the wish** of the speaker towards an action that has been caused by himself or another person. That's why these suffixes **are bound to one of the three persons**. Most of these suffixes are translated in English with either an **imperative or a subjunctive** form. That's where their traditional name comes from. Subjunctives are also expressed in other ways (see pages 201-207).

2.) The PTS's are not meant to express a tense, but logically they are usually **future oriented**.

3.) If a negation is possible, the **negative particles** "**битгий**" or "**бүү**" are used (see p. 334).

4.) Interrogation is logically impossible with these PTS's.

The **subgroups** are best done according to the **person** they are bound to:

for the **1st person:** a) **–я** b) **–сугай**
for the **2nd person:** a) **–ø** b) **–аач** c) **–аарай** d) **–уузай** e) **–гтун**
for the **3rd person:** a) **–г** b) **–тугай** c) **–аасай**

1.1.2.1.3.2.1.1 PTS "**–я**[3]": Intention (1st person)

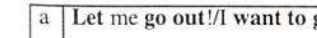
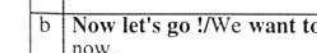
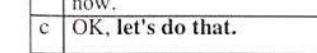
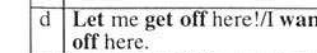
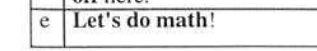
***Cyrillic Rules*:**
–я, –ё, –е complying with vowel harmony (**ex. d,i**), see also pages 21-22 for spelling.

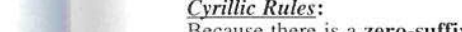
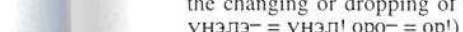
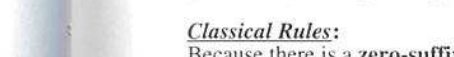
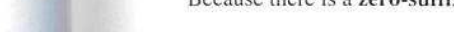
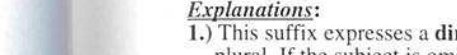
***Classical Rules*:**

Inserted vowel necessary (**ex. a,f**)
( ) old form

***Explanations*:**
1.) This suffix expresses an **intention** or a **wish** of the 1st person singular or plural. An exact translation depends on the whole context.
2.) If the subject is not mentioned, the suffix usually refers to the 1st person plural (**ex. c,e,h**).
3.) **Congratulations** and **best wishes** are commonly expressed with this suffix (**ex. i-k**).
4.) Negation is not possible.

***Frequency*:** Written language: **very often**
Colloquial language: **very often**

a	Let me **go out**!/I **want to go out.**	Би гаръя!	
b	**Now let's go !**/We **want to go** now.	Бид одоо явъя!	
c	OK, **let's do that.**	За, тэгье!	
d	**Let** me **get off** here!/I **want to get off** here.	Би энд буя.	
e	**Let's do math**!	Тоо бодъё!	

f	Please stop. **Let** me **take** a picture.	Зогсооч, би зураг **авъя**.	
g	**Let** me **tell** you a story!	Би чамд нэг үлгэр **ярья**.	
h	**Let's change** our clothes!	Хувцсаа **сольё**!	
i	I **wish** you a happy New Year! ("**Let** me **cause** the New Year's wishes to **arrive**.")	Шинэ жилийн баярын мэнд **хүргэе**!	
j	I **wish** you all the best! ("**Let** me **desire** all the best.")	Сайн сайхныг **хүсье**!	
k	Please accept my sincere condolences. ("**Let** me **express** to you my condolences.")	Би танд гашууд-лаа **илэрхийлье**.	

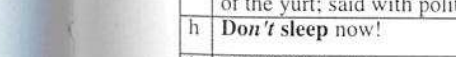
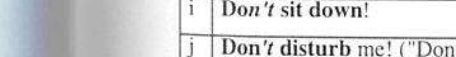
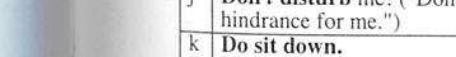
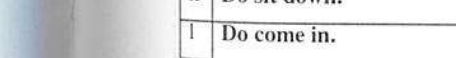
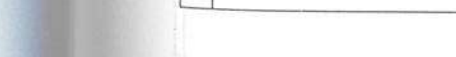
1.1.2.1.3.2.1.2 PTS "−сугай[2]": Decision (1st person)

Cyrillic Rules:
−сугай, −сүгэй complying with vowel harmony

Classical Rules:
complying with vowel harmony

Explanations:
1.) This suffix is only used today to express **resolutions and official decisions**. For that, you could imagine the following introduction to the example sentences: "At the XXX meeting, the following has been decided: ....."
2.) Earlier on, this suffix was used like the "−я" suffix, expressing something like 'Let them...'. Maybe that's the reason why it is considered to belong to the 1st person.
3.) For the **negation,** the negative particle "**бүү**" (p. 334) is used (**ex. e**).

Frequency: Written language: **very rare**
Colloquial language: **not used**

a	- **to learn** the Mongolian language well.	Монгол хэлийг сайтар **суралцсугай**!	
b	- **to** qualitatively **accomplish** this task.	Энэ даалгаврыг чанар-тай **биелүүлсүгэй**!	
c	- **to quickly develop** the agriculture	Хөдөө аж ахуйг хурдан **хөгжүүлсүгэй**!	
d	- **to honor** comrade Gongor with the title of "Hero of the Mongolian People's Republic".	Нөхөр Гонгорыг БНМАУ-ын баатар цолоор **шагнасугай**!	
e	- **not to grant** him salary for extra work.	Түүнд нэмэгдэл ажлын хөлсийг *бүү* **олгосугай**.	

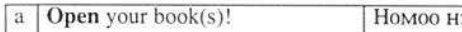
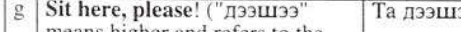
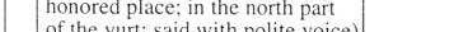
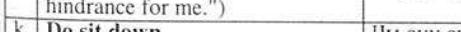
1.1.2.1.3.2.1.3 PTS "−ø": Command (2nd person)

Cyrillic Rules:
Because there is a **zero-suffix (−ø)**, the verb stem itself expresses this imperative form. Note the changing or dropping of vowels in building this imperative form (see pages 23-26; e.g. үнэлэ− = үнэл! оро− = ор!)

Classical Rules:
Because there is a **zero-suffix (−ø)**, the verb stem itself expresses this imperative form.

Explanations:
1.) This suffix expresses a **direct command** which is **addressed to the 2nd person** singular or plural. If the subject is omitted, only the context will show whether it is singular or plural (**ex. a-e**).
2.) This form of imperative is **often used** among good friends and in the family as a **familiar way** to make a request.
2.) For negation, the **negative particles** "**битгий**" and "**бүү**" (p. 334) are used (**ex. h-j**).
3.) To give this command a **polite** note, it can be **doubled** (**ex. k-l**).

Frequency: Written language: **very often**
Colloquial language: **very often**

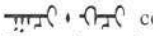
a	**Open** your book(s)!	Номоо нээ!	
b	**Come** tomorrow!	Маргааш ир!	
c	**Buy** tickets!	Билет ав!	
d	**Go out** from here!	Эндээс гар!	
e	**Turn** to your left!	Зүүн гар тийшээ эргэ!	
f	**Speak!**	Та ярь!	
g	**Sit here, please**! ("дээшээ" means higher and refers to the honored place; in the north part of the yurt; said with polite voice)	Та дээшээ суу!	
h	**Don't sleep** now!	Чи одоо *битгий* унт!	
i	**Don't sit down**!	Та нар *битгий* суу!	
j	**Don't disturb** me! ("Don't make a hindrance for me.")	Надад *бүү* саад хий!	
k	**Do sit down.**	Чи суу суу!	
l	**Do come in.**	Та ор ор!	

1.1.2.1.3.2.1.4 PTS "–аач[4]": Request (2nd person)

Cyrillic Rules:

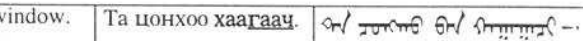
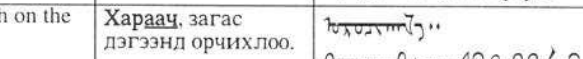
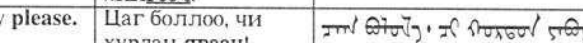
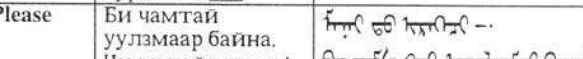
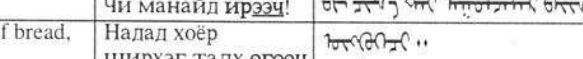
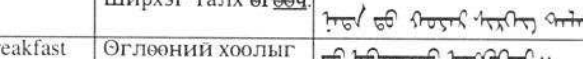
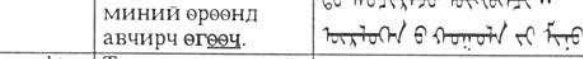
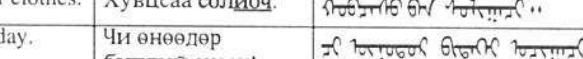
–аач, –ооч, –ээч, –өөч complying with vowel harmony
(–иач[2]) for verb stems ending with "**–и**" or "**–ь**" (**ex. i,l**)
(–гаач[4]) for verb stems ending with **diphthongs** or **long vowels** (**ex. a,c,k**)

Classical Rules:

 complying with vowel harmony
Inserted vowel necessary (**ex. f-h**)

Explanations:
1.) This suffix expresses a **concrete demand** or an **urgent request**. Usually it's used with "чи".
2.) Very often it appears together with the **modifying verb** "**өг–**" (**ex. f-h**; see also p. 208-210).
3.) For negation, the negative particle "**битгий**" (p. 334) is commonly used (**ex. j-l**).
4.) In **dialects**, the suffixes "–аат, –оот, –ээт, –өөт" are also used. The "–ч", refering to "чи" ['you'/singular], is exchanged with the "–т", refering to "та" ['you'/honorary].

Frequency: Written language: **often**
Colloquial language: **often**

a	**Please close** your window.	Та цонхоо **хаагаач**.	
b	**Look**, there is a fish on the line.	**Хараач**, загас дэгээнд орчихлоо.	
c	**Please do** this work.	Чи энэ ажлыг **хийгээч**.	
d	It's time; **go** quickly **please.**	Цаг боллоо, чи хурдан **яваач**!	
e	I want to see you. **Please come** to my home.	Би чамтай уулзмаар байна. Чи манайд **ирээч**!	
f	**Give** me 2 loaves of bread, **please**.	Надад хоёр ширхэг талх **өгөөч**.	
g	**Please bring** the breakfast to my room.	Өглөөний хоолыг миний өрөөнд авчирч **өгөөч**.	
h	**Please explain** this word to me.	Та надад энэ үгийг тайлбарлаж **өгөөч**.	
i	**Please change** your clothes.	Хувцсаа **солиоч**.	
j	**Do*n't* go** (there) today.	Чи өнөөдөр *битгий* **очоох**!	
k	**Do*n't* disturb** me, please! ("**Please do*n't* make** a hindrance for me.")	Та надад *битгий* саад **хийгээч**.	
l	**Please do *not* talk** loudly.	Чанга *бүү* **яриач**.	

1.1.2.1.3.2.1.5 PTS "–аарай[4]": Demand (2nd person)

Cyrillic Rules:

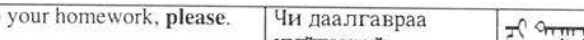
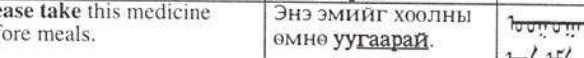
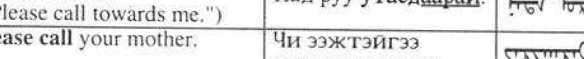
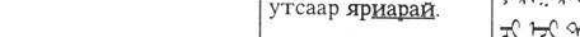
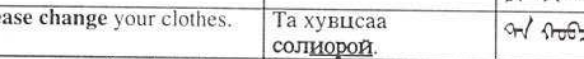
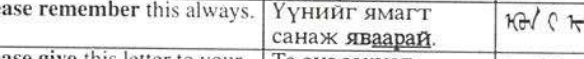
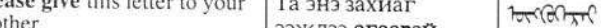
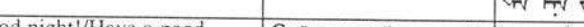
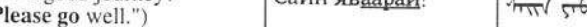
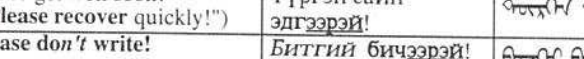
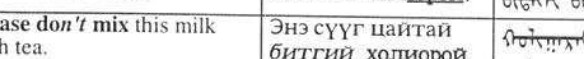
–аарай, –оорой, –ээрэй, –өөрэй complying with vowel harmony
(–иарай[2]) for verb stems ending with "**–и**" or "**–ь**" (**ex. d,e,l**)
(–гаарай[4]) for verb stems ending with a **diphthong** or a **long vowel** (**ex. a,b**)

Classical Rules:

 complying with vowel harmony
Inserted vowel necessary (**ex. g**)

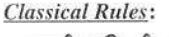
Explanations:
1.) This suffix is similar to the PTS of Request, only **more demanding**. Since the person asking in this way is quite sure that his demand will be met, this suffix **shouldn't be used for open requests**, where the one being asked should have the chance to refuse.
2.) **Good-bye wishes** are often expressed with this suffix (**ex. h-j**).
3.) For the negation, the negative particle "**битгий**" (p. 334) is widely used (**ex. k-n**).

Frequency: Written language: **very often**
Colloquial language: **very often**

a	**Do** your homework, **please**.	Чи даалгавраа **хийгээрэй**.	
b	**Please take** this medicine before meals.	Энэ эмийг хоолны өмнө **уугаарай**.	
c	**Please call** me. ("Please call towards me.")	Над руу **утасдаарай**.	
d	**Please call** your mother.	Чи ээжтэйгээ утсаар **яриарай**.	
e	**Please change** your clothes.	Та хувцсаа **солиорой**.	
f	**Please remember** this always.	Үүнийг ямагт санаж **яваарай**.	
g	**Please give** this letter to your mother.	Та энэ захиаг ээждээ **өгөөрэй**.	
h	Good night!/Have a good night! ("**Please sleep** well.")	Сайхан **нойрсоорой**!	
i	Have a good journey! ("**Please go** well.")	Сайн **яваарай**!	
j	Please get well soon! ("**Please recover** quickly!")	Түргэн сайн **эдгээрэй**!	
k	**Please do*n't* write!**	*Битгий* **бичээрэй**!	
l	**Please do*n't* mix** this milk with tea.	Энэ сүүг цайтай *битгий* **холиорой**.	
m	**Please do*n't* cut** my hair too short. ("Please **do*n't* let** my hair **become** too short.")	Миний үсийг дэндүү богино *битгий* **болгоорой**!	
n	**Please do*n't* forget** what I said.	Миний хэлснийг *битгий* **мартаарай**.	

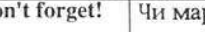
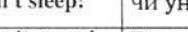
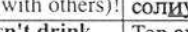
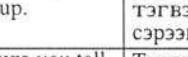
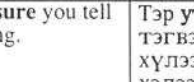
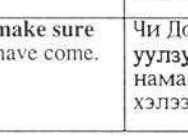
1.1.2.1.3.2.1.6 PTS "−уузай²": Admonition (2nd person)

Cyrillic Rules:
−уузай, −ҮҮзэй complying with vowel harmony
(**−иузай²**) for verb stems ending with "**−и**" or "**−ь**" (**ex. f**)
(**−гуузай²**) for verb stems ending with a **diphthong** or a **long vowel** (**ex. g**)

Classical Rules:
 complying with vowel harmony
Inserted vowel necessary (**ex. d-e**)

Explanations:
1.) This suffix expresses **admonitions** and **precautionary guidelines**. Even if the verb to which this suffix is added stands in the 3rd person, the admonition is addressed to the 2nd person singular or plural. In the English translation, a **negation** is needed (**ex. a-g**).
2.) If a second person **has to be strongly reminded of something**, this suffix can also be used, but the negated translation disappears. The suffix meaning has to be expressed by many English words (**ex. h-j**).
3.) **Negation** is logically not possible.

Frequency: Written language: **quite often**
Colloquial language: **quite often**

a	**Make sure** you're **not late!**	Та **хожигдуузай**!	
b	**Make sure** you **don't forget!**	Чи **мартуузай**!	
c	**Make sure** you **don't sleep!**	Чи **унтуузай**!	
d	**Make sure** he **doesn't move!**	Тэр **хөдлҮҮзэй**!	
e	**Make sure that no** fire **breaks out!**	Гал **гаруузай**!	
f	**Make sure that** you **don't confuse** this book (with others)!	Та энэ номыг **солиузай**!	
g	**Make sure** he **doesn't drink any** alcohol!	Тэр **архи уугуузай**!	
h	**If** he **comes** to my home, **make sure** you wake me up.	Тэр манайд **ирҮҮзэй**, тэгвэл намайг сэрээгээрэй.	
i	**If** he **calls, make sure** you tell him that I'm waiting.	Тэр **утасдуузай**, тэгвэл намайг хүлээж байна гэж хэлээрэй.	
j	**If** you **meet** Dorj, **make sure** you tell him that I have come.	Чи Доржтой **уулзуузай**, тэгвэл намайг ирсэн гэж хэлээрэй.	

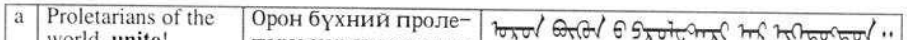
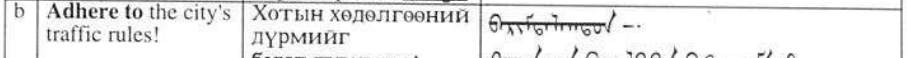
1.1.2.1.3.2.1.7 PTS "−гтун²": Appeal (2nd person)

Cyrillic Rules:
−гтун, −гтүн complying with vowel harmony
Verb stems ending with a **consonant** or a **soft sign** need the inserted vowel.

Classical Rules:
 complying with vowel harmony
Inserted vowel necessary (**ex. a,c,e**)

Explanations:
1.) This suffix is mainly used in **slogans and resolutions** (**ex. a-c**).
2.) It may be used as a **very polite form** of addressing **very important persons** (**ex. d**).
3.) Negation is done with the formal **negative particle** "**бүү**" (**ex. e** and see page 334).

Frequency: Written language: **very rare**
Colloquial language: **very official, therefore almost never used**

a	Proletarians of the world, **unite**!	Орон бүхний пролетари нар **нэгдэгтүн**.	
b	**Adhere to** the city's traffic rules!	Хотын хөдөлгөөний дүрмийг **баримтлагтүн**!	
c	**Invest** your money in a bank!	Мөнгөө банканд **хадгалуулагтүн**!	
d	**Be seated, please.**	Та **суугтүн**!	
e	**Don't listen!**	*Бүү* **сонсогтүн**!	

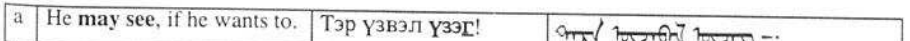
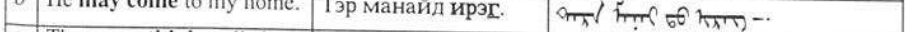
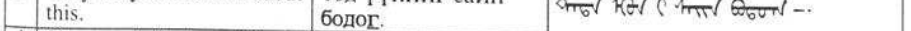
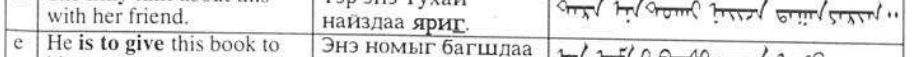
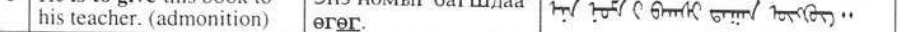
1.1.2.1.3.2.1.8 PTS "−г": Permission (3rd person)

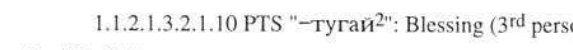
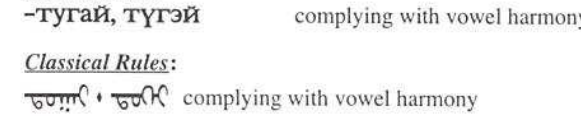
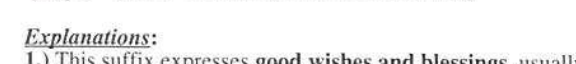
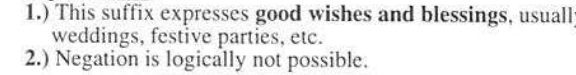
Cyrillic Rules:
−г
Verb stems ending with a **consonant** or a **soft sign** need the inserted vowel.

Classical Rules:
 complying with vowel harmony
Inserted vowel necessary (**ex. e**)

Explanations:
1.) This suffix expresses a **permission** or sometimes an **admonition**. In a sentence where this suffix is used, **3 parties** are always involved: 2 people talk and decide about a third one.
2.) Negation is done with the **negative particles**, mainly "**бүү**" (**ex. h-i** and see p. 334).

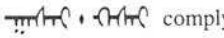
Frequency: Written language: **quite often**
Colloquial language: **quite often**

a	He **may see**, if he wants to.	Тэр **үзвэл үзэг**!	
b	He **may come** to my home.	Тэр манайд **ирэг**.	
c	They **may think** well about this.	Тэд үүнийг сайн **бодог**.	
d	She **may talk** about this with her friend.	Тэр энэ тухай найздаа **яриг**.	
e	He **is to give** this book to his teacher. (admonition)	Энэ номыг багшдаа **өгөг**.	

f	Don't stop her. She **may go** where she wants to.	Түүнд бүү саад бол. Тэр хүссэн зүгтээ **яваг**!	
g	Let's give him one month's holiday. He **may** go home and **meet** his parents.	Түүнд 1 сарын чөлөө өгье. Тэр нутагтаа очиж эцэг эхтэйгээ **уулзаг**.	
h	He **is *not* to meet** my friend!	Тэр миний найзтай *битгий* **уулзаг**.	
i	They **are *not* to come** to my home.	Тэд манайд *бүү* **ирэг**.	

1.1.2.1.3.2.1.9 PTS "-аасай[4]": Hope (3rd person)

Cyrillic Rules:
-аасай, -оосой, -ээсэй, -өөсэй complying with vowel harmony
(**-иасай**[2]) for verb stems ending with "**-и**" or "**-ь**" (**ex. d**)
(**-гаасай**[4]) for verb stems ending with a **diphthong** or a **long vowel** (**ex. g**)

Classical Rules:
 complying with vowel harmony
Inserted vowel necessary (**ex. c-f**)

Explanations:
1.) This suffix expresses **exclamations of hope, longing, and desire**. Sometimes the translation **'I hope'** is most suitable (**ex.h-i**).
2.) Negation is done with the negative particles, mainly "**битгий**" (**ex. g-i** and see p. 334).

Frequency: Written language: **quite often**
Colloquial language: **quite often**

a	**If only** Baatar **would come**!	Баатар **ирээсэй**!	
b	**If only** they **would go!**	Тэд **яваасай**!	
c	**If only** my son **would grow** up quickly!	Хүү минь хурдан том **болоосой**!	
d	**If only** he **would change** his clothes!	Тэр хувцаа **солиосой**!	
e	**If only** the rain **would subside**! I want to go to the countryside.	Бороо **намдаасай**, би хөдөө явах гэсэн юм.	
f	**If only** my salary **would be given** quickly (to me)!	Манай цалинг хурдан **өгөөсэй**.	
g	**If only** he **would*n't* drink** alcohol!	Тэр архи *битгий* **уугаасай**.	
h	**I hope** he **does*n't* lose!**	Тэр *битгий* **хожигдоосой**!	
i	**I hope** she **does*n't* come!**	Тэр *битгий* **ирээсэй**!	

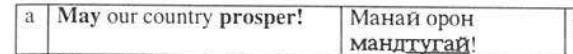
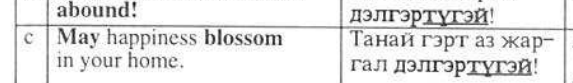
1.1.2.1.3.2.1.10 PTS "-тугай[2]": Blessing (3rd person)

Cyrillic Rules:
-тугай, түгэй complying with vowel harmony

Classical Rules:
 complying with vowel harmony

Explanations:
1.) This suffix expresses **good wishes and blessings**, usually said at official meetings, weddings, festive parties, etc.
2.) Negation is logically not possible.

Frequency: Written language: **seldom**
Colloquial language: **seldom**

a	**May** our country **prosper!**	Манай орон **мандтугай**!	
b	**May** culture and education **abound!**	Соёл боловсрол **дэлгэртүгэй**!	
c	**May** happiness **blossom** in your home.	Танай гэрт аз жаргал **дэлгэртүгэй**!	
d	**May** your livestock **become many**!	Танай мал олон **болтугай**!	

1.1.2.1.3.2.2 Tense-bound Terminating Suffixes (TTS's)

Characteristics:

1.) The TTS's are used to express **real actions** that actually happened, are happening or will happen.

2.) They always **indicate a specific tense**, therefore the name 'tense-bound TS's'.

3.) They refer to all persons singular or plural, and don't have special person endings as in English 'I go', 'he goes', etc.

4.) **Particles** can follow them, but not copulas.

5.) In Mongolian, there are 4 suffixes that can **only** be added to the **verb at the end** of the sentence (as predicate). These are the **true TTS**'s. For interrogative and negative sentences, usually the tense-corresponding NDS's (p. 139-150) are used, 3 of which can also be used as predicates and, therefore, earn the right to be called a TTS. It's even possible that some of the NDS's have developed from TTS's. However, today we know **3 NDS's that have a double function**. A fourth, namely the NDS "-x", is only used for interrogation and negation. If we put all these explanations in a chart we get the following:

Suffixes	Past tense	Present tense	Future Tense
True TTS's:	-жээ -в -лаа	(-на)	-на (-лаа)
NDS's as TTS's:	-сан	-даг -аа	(-х)

Now we'll present these TTS's in the order: past, present, future. Because the NDS's are the most versatile, we will start with them.
Furthermore, we need to mention that we have already talked about the **analytically expressed aspects** with which progressive or perfect tense predicates can be built (see page 136-138).

1.1.2.1.3.2.2.1 NDS "-сан[4]" as a TTS (General Past)

Cyrillic Rules:
-сан, -сэн, -сон, -сөн complying with vowel harmony

Classical Rules:
-ᠰᠠᠨ/ ᠪᠠᠨ/ complying with vowel harmony
Inserted vowel necessary (**ex. c,g,j**)

Explanations:
1.) This suffix is used for all kinds of past actions and is clearly the most commonly used past tense suffix in colloquial language (**ex. a-d**).
2.) **Questions** are often expressed with this suffix (**ex. e-f**).
3.) For **negation** it should only be used if the action happens **against one's assumption** (**ex. g-h**). Otherwise the NDS "-аа" with the negative particle "-гүй" (p. 331) is used ["-аагүй"], which then indicates that the expected thing could still happen (**ex. g-h; parentheses**)
4.) **Particles** (p. 335ff) can follow (**ex. i-k**).

Frequency: Written language: **very often**
Colloquial language: **extremely often**

a	He arrived.	Тэр очсон.	ᠲᠡᠷᠡ ᠣᠴᠰᠠᠨ᠃᠃
b	This morning I **ate** breakfast.	Би өглөө хоол идсэн.	ᠪᠢ ᠥᠭᠯᠥᠥ ᠬᠤᠤᠯ ᠢᠳᠰᠡᠨ᠃᠃
c	I **gave** this to you.	Би үүнийг чамд өгсөн.	ᠪᠢ ᠦᠦᠨᠢᠶᠡᠭ ᠴᠠᠮᠳ ᠥᠭᠰᠡᠨ᠃᠃

d	He **arrived** yesterday in Ulaanbaatar.	Тэр өчигдөр Улаанбаатарт ирсэн.	ᠲᠡᠷᠡ ᠥᠴᠢᠭᠳᠥᠷ ᠤᠯᠠᠭᠠᠨᠪᠠᠭᠠᠲᠠᠷᠲ ᠢᠷᠡᠰᠡᠨ᠃᠃
e	**Did** you **go** to town?	Чи хот явсан уу?	ᠴᠢ ᠬᠣᠲ ᠶᠠᠪᠰᠠᠨ ᠤᠤ᠃᠃
f	What **was** she **afraid of**?	Тэр юунаас айсан бэ?	ᠲᠡᠷᠡ ᠶᠤᠤᠨᠠᠠᠰ ᠠᠢᠰᠠᠨ ᠪᠡ᠃᠃
g	He **did*n't* go out**. (He **has*n't* gone out.**)	Тэр гарсангүй. (гараагүй.)	ᠲᠡᠷᠡ ᠭᠠᠷᠰᠠᠩᠭᠦᠢ᠃᠃ (ᠭᠠᠷᠠᠭᠦᠢ ᠪᠠᠢᠨ)
h	I **did*n't* see** her. (I **have*n't* seen** her.)	Би түүнийг харсангүй. (хараагүй)	ᠪᠢ ᠲᠡᠭᠦᠨᠢᠶᠡᠭ ᠬᠠᠷᠰᠠᠩᠭᠦᠢ᠃᠃ (ᠬᠠᠷᠠᠭᠦᠢ ᠪᠠᠢᠨ)
i	Why, *then*, **did** you **go** there?	Чи яагаад тийшээ явсан *юм* вэ?	ᠴᠢ ᠶᠠᠭᠠᠭᠠᠳ ᠲᠡᠶᠢᠰᠡ ᠶᠠᠪᠰᠠᠨ ᠶᠤᠮ ᠤᠤ᠃᠃
j	**Did** she **buy** such an expensive 'deel'?!	Тэр ийм үнэтэй дээл авсан *юм* уу?	ᠲᠡᠷᠡ ᠢᠮᠦ ᠦᠨᠡᠲᠡᠶ ᠳᠡᠭᠦᠯ ᠠᠪᠰᠠᠨ ᠶᠤᠮ ᠤᠤ᠃᠃
k	What **was** your name *again*? ("What **were** you **called** again?")	Таны нэрийг хэн гэсэн *билээ*?	ᠲᠠ ᠪᠢ ᠨᠡᠷᠡᠶᠢᠳᠦᠯ ᠬᠡᠨ ᠭᠡᠵᠡᠨ ᠪᠢᠯᠡᠡ᠃᠃

1.1.2.1.3.2.2.2 TTS "-жээ/-чээ" (Past)

Cyrillic Rules:
-жээ / -чээ see spelling rules on pages 28-29.

Classical Rules:
ᠵᠠ ᠠᠴᠠ after **consonants** of code word '**bagaraşada** '
ᠵᠡ ᠡᠴᠡ after **consonants** of code word '**namilang**' and **vowels**
(ᠵᠤᠨ ᠴᠤᠨ ᠵᠦᠨ ᠴᠦᠨ) old forms (complying with vowel harmony)

Explanations:
1.) In some ways this suffix is an **exception**, as it can't be used for all the 3 persons. It's always used for actions that one **hasn't observed**. That's why this suffix is **not used for the 1st person**. Actions that happened **suddenly** or unintentionally often have this suffix (**ex. e-f**). **Stories** often begin with this suffix (**ex. b**), as do other actions that happened a long time ago (**ex. b-c**).
2.) **Questions** in the past are **not built** with this suffix. However, in colloquial language there is a **shortened form** being used to ask question, but it's only possible in the **3rd person**. This kind of question is used when one is sure that the person being asked can know the answer (**ex. g-h**).
3.) **Negation** could be done in the written language with the **negative particles** "эс" or "үл" (**ex. i** and see p. 332-333), but most commonly the negated NDS's "**-аагүй/-сангүй**" are being used.

Frequency: Written language: **often**
Colloquial language: **often**

a	Help **came** from Germany for the frost-and snow-plagued 'aimags'.	Зудтай аймгуудад Германаас тусламж иржээ.	ᠲᠠ ᠬᠥᠯᠢᠮᠡᠷᠲᠡᠢ ᠠᠰᠠᠭᠴᠠᠨ᠃᠃ ᠲᠤᠤᠳ ᠤᠨ ᠠᠶᠢᠮᠠᠭ ᠲᠤᠤᠳ ᠤᠳ ᠢᠷᠡᠵᠡᠢ
b	Once upon a time, there **lived** an old man and an old woman.	Эрт урьд цагт эмгэн өвгөн хоёр амьдарч байжээ.	ᠡᠷᠲᠦᠨ ᠦᠷᠢᠳᠤᠨ ᠴᠠᠭᠲ᠃᠃ ᠡᠮᠭᠡᠨ ᠦᠭᠡᠭᠡᠨ ᠬᠤᠶᠠᠷ ᠠᠮᠢᠳᠠᠷᠴ ᠪᠠᠢᠵᠡᠢ
c	The People's Revolution **gained victory** in Mongolia in the year 1921.	Монголд 1921 онд ардын хувьсгал ялжээ.	ᠮᠤ ᠨᠤᠭᠤᠳᠤᠯᠳ ᠬᠤᠪᠢᠰᠭᠠᠯ᠃᠃ ᠶᠡᠷᠥᠨᠬᠡ ᠴᠤ ᠣᠨᠳ ᠨᠤ ᠴᠤ ᠬᠠᠯᠵᠡᠢ
d	You **told** a lie.	Чи худал хэлжээ.	ᠴᠢ ᠬᠤᠳᠠᠯ ᠬᠡᠯᠵᠡᠢ᠃᠃

e	My watch **has stopped**.	Миний цаг зогсжээ.	[illegible]
f	It **became** late/evening.	Орой болжээ.	[illegible]
g	**Did** the teacher **go** to the countryside?	Багш хөдөө явж уу?	Only in colloquial
h	**Was** today's newspaper **released**?	Өнөөдрийн сонин гарч уу?	Only in colloquial
i	We **were*n't* given** what we had asked for.	Бидний гуйсныг эс өгчээ.	[illegible]

1.1.2.1.3.2.2.3 TTS "−в" (Past)

***Cyrillic Rules*:**

−в

Verb stems ending with a **consonant** or a **soft sign** need the inserted vowel.

***Classical Rules*:**

[illegible]

([illegible]) old form

***Explanations*:**

1.) This suffix is used **in writing** to account for actions that were **witnessed** and which **are finished** (**ex. a-d**).
2.) It is a widely used suffix for **interrogation** about **recent** events (**ex. e-h**).
3.) **Negation** is possible with the negative particles **"эс"** or **"үл"** (**ex. i-j** and see p. 332-333), but it's better to use the negated NDS's **"−аагүй/−сангүй"**.

***Frequency*:** Written language: **often**
Colloquial language: **not so often**

a	I **sat down**.	Би суув.	[illegible]
b	We **said 'hello'**. ("We greeted [each other].")	Бид мэндлэв.	[illegible]
c	The waitress **came** to us.	Үйлчлэгч бидэн дээр ирэв.	[illegible]
d	"So, what shall we order?", I **asked** Baatar.	«За, юу авах вэ?» гэж би Баатараас асуув.	[illegible]
e	Tuya, **did** you **see** 'Naadam'?	Туяа, чи наадам үзэв үү?	[illegible]
f	Why do you ask? ("Why **did** you **ask**?")	Чи яагаад асуув?	[illegible]
g	How **did** our wrestlers **do**? ("How **did** ... **wrestle**?")	Манай бөхчүүд ямар барилдав?	[illegible]
h	**Did** Dorj **get married**?	Дорж гэрлэв үү?	[illegible]
i	I **did*n't* learn** a new song.	Би шинэ дуу эс сурав.	[illegible]
j	He **did*n't* understand** this word.	Энэ үгийг тэр үл ойлгов.	[illegible]

1.1.2.1.3.2.2.4 TTS "−лаа[4]" (Past)

***Cyrillic Rules*:**

−лаа, −лоо, −лээ, −лөө complying with vowel harmony

***Classical Rules*:**

[illegible]

Inserted vowel necessary (**ex. b,i,p**)

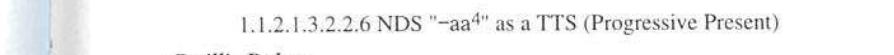
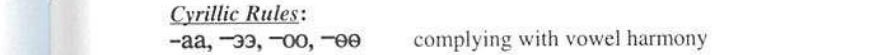
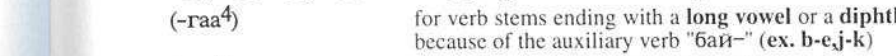
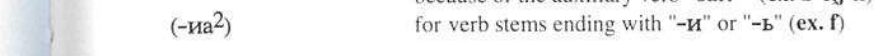
([illegible], [illegible]) old forms

***Explanations*:**

1.) This suffix expresses an action that one **witnessed** and that happened in the **recent past** (**ex. a-f**).
2.) **Interrogation** is only possible with the **shortened form** in colloquial language to express that one can't remember, although one witnessed the action (**ex. g-h**). Usually, for interrogation, the NDS "−сан" is used (**ex. g-h**; parentheses).
3.) **Negation** could be done with the negative particles **"эс"** or **"үл"** (**ex. i** and see pages 332-333), but the negated NDS's **"−аагүй/−сангүй"** are commonly used.
4.) As in English, this tense could be used for the **immediate future** as in 'I'**m gone**' meaning 'I'm about to go'. Because of confusion, it's good to use **temporal adverbs** (**ex. j-m**).
In the colloquial language, this future meaning can even extend to **questions.** They express that one has good reason to believe that the action will take place (**ex. n-p**).
5.) **Particles** (p. 335ff) can be added (**ex. q**).

***Frequency*:** Written language: **often**
Colloquial language: **often**

a	Recently, I **read** an interesting book.	Би саяхан сонин ном уншлаа.	[illegible]
b	We wonderfully **celebrated** the day off.	Бид амралтын өдрийг сайхан өнгөрүүллээ.	[illegible]
c	Sorry, I'm late. ("I **was late**.")	Уучлаарай! Би хожимдлоо.	[illegible]
d	I liked it very much. (It **seemed** [to me] very pleasing.")	Их аятайхан санагдлаа.	[illegible]
e	The rain **has stopped.**	Бороо зогсчихлоо.	[illegible]
f	I **memorized** many new words.	Би олон шинэ үг тогтоолоо.	[illegible]
g	**Have** you **been** to the post office?	Та шуудан явад уу? (явсан уу?)	only in colloquial language
h	**Have** you **heard** that interesting news?	Чи тэр сонин мэдээг сонсод уу? (сонссон уу?)	only in colloquial language
i	His idea **was*n't* accepted**. ("[They] **did*n't* accept** his idea.")	Түүний саналыг эс авлаа.	[illegible]
j	Very soon it **will snow.** Let's go before that.	Юу юугүй цас орлоо. Түүнээс өмнө явцгаая.	[illegible]
k	Mom and Dad **are coming** now.	Одоо аав ээж ирлээ.	[illegible]
l	The day **is almost over**. Let's do it rather quickly.	Өдөр өнгөрлөө. За, бушуухан хийцгээе.	[illegible]

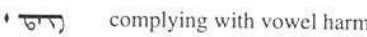
m	**I'm leaving for** Ulaanbaatar. Do you have things you want me to bring?	Би Улаанбаатар явлаа. Захих юм байна уу?	
n	**Are** you **leaving** [**now**]? (Are you going to go?)	Чи явлаа юу? (Та явах уу?)	
o	**Are** you **going to sleep** [**now**]? (Are you going to sleep?)	Та нар унтлаа юу? (Та унтах уу?)	
p	**Are** you **getting up** [**now**]? (Are you getting up?)	Чи бослоо юу? (Чи босох уу?)	
q	***You know***, **I'm leaving** tomorrow	Би маргааш явлаа *шүү (дээ).*	

1.1.2.1.3.2.2.5 NDS "−даг[4]" as a TTS (Indefinite Present)

Cyrillic Rules:

−даг, −дэг, −дог, −дөг complying with vowel harmony

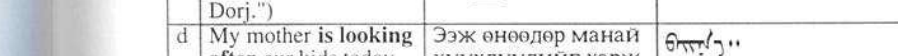
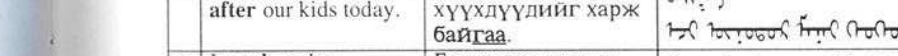
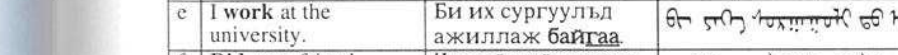
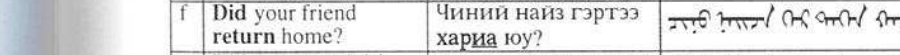
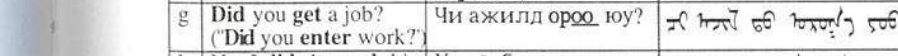
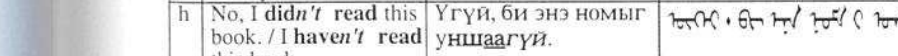
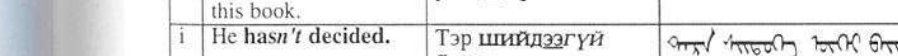
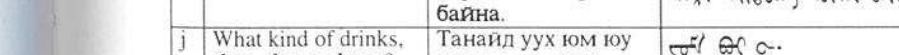
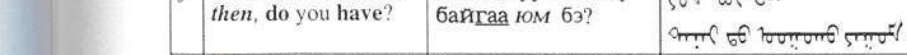
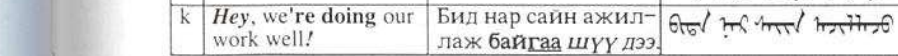
Classical Rules:

 complying with vowel harmony

Explanations:

1.) This suffix expresses that the action continues for an **indefinite time**, like 'to live', 'to work' (**ex. a,b,e-f,h**) or that the action is **habitual** (**ex. c-d,g,j**).
2.) **Interrogation** is **widely used** with this suffix (**ex. e-f**).
3.) **Negation** is done with the **negative particle** "**−гүй**" (**ex. g-h** and see p. 331).
4.) **Particles** (p. 335ff) can follow (**ex. i-j**).

Frequency: Written language: **very often**
Colloquial language: **very often**

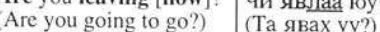
a	My Mongolian friend **lives** in Ulaanbaatar.	Миний монгол найз Улаанбаатарт **суудаг**.	
b	I **work** at the university.	Би их сургуульд **ажилладаг**.	
c	I **get up** every morning at 7 o'clock.	Би өглөө бүр долоон цагт **босдог**.	
d	In summer it **gets** hot.	Зун халуун **болдог**.	
e	**Do** you **speak** German?	Та германаар **ярьдаг** уу?	
f	What **is** this **called** in Mongolian?	Үүнийг монголоор юу **гэдэг** вэ?	
g	I **don't work** on Sundays.	Би бүтэн сайн өдөр **ажилладаггүй**.	
h	My mother **doesn't smoke.**	Ээж минь тамхи **татдаггүй**.	
i	I **go to sleep** ***really*** early at night.	Би орой эрт **унтдаг** *юм*.	
j	In Germany, people **live** well, ***don't they***?	Германд хүмүүс сайхан **амьдардаг** *биз*?	

1.1.2.1.3.2.2.6 NDS "−аа[4]" as a TTS (Progressive Present)

Cyrillic Rules:

−аа, −ээ, −оо, −өө complying with vowel harmony
(−гаа[4]) for verb stems ending with a **long vowel** or a **diphthong**; very often because of the auxiliary verb "**бай−**" (**ex. b-e,j-k**)
(−иа[2]) for verb stems ending with "**−и**" or "**−ь**" (**ex. f**)

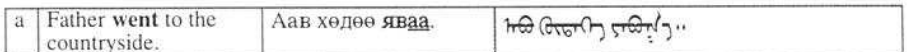
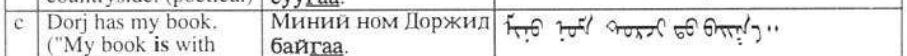
Classical Rules:

 complying with vowel harmony
Inserted vowel necessary (**ex. i**)

Explanations:

1.) This suffix expresses an action that **started in the past** and still **continues in the present**, whereas the end of the action is open. This suffix can be added to a few selected **full verbs** (**ex. a-b**) but usually appears at the verb stem "**бай−**" (**ex. c-e, j-k**).
2.) When this suffix is used in the **interrogative**, it expresses a **rhetorical form**, used e.g. to start a conversation (**ex. f-g**).
3.) **Negation** is widely done with the **negative particle** "**−гүй**"(p. 331)., thus forming the **simple past,** or the **present perfect tense** (**ex. h**; see explanation on p. 145).
4.) Together with the **auxiliary verb** "**бай−**" the **present perfect** is formed (**ex. i**).
5.) **Particles** (p. 335ff) can follow (**ex. j-k**).

Frequency: Written language: **quite often**
Colloquial language: **quite often**

a	Father **went** to the countryside.	Аав хөдөө **яваа**.	
b	My mother **lives** in the countryside. (poetical)	Ээж минь хөдөө **сууга**.	
c	Dorj has my book. ("My book **is** with Dorj.")	Миний ном Доржид **байгаа**.	
d	My mother **is looking after** our kids today.	Ээж өнөөдөр манай хүүхдүүдийг харж **байгаа**.	
e	I **work** at the university.	Би их сургуульд ажиллаж **байгаа**.	
f	**Did** your friend **return** home?	Чиний найз гэртээ **харив** юу?	
g	**Did** you **get** a job? ("**Did** you **enter** work?")	Чи ажилд **орсоо** юу?	
h	No, I **did*n't*** **read** this book. / I **have*n't*** **read** this book.	Үгүй, би энэ номыг **уншаагүй**.	
i	He **has*n't*** **decided.**	Тэр **шийдээгүй** байна.	
j	What kind of drinks, ***then***, **do** you **have**?	Танайд уух юм юу **байгаа** *юм* бэ?	
k	***Hey***, we're **doing** our work well!	Бид нар сайн ажилласан **байгаа** *шүү дээ*.	

1.1.2.1.3.2.2.7 TTS "−на[4]" (Present)

***Cyrillic Rules*:**
−на, −нэ, −но, −нө complying with vowel harmony

***Classical Rules*:**
−/ˌ complying with vowel harmony
Inserted vowel necessary (**ex. c**)
(**−ᡵ/**) old form

***Explanations*:**
1.) This suffix, mainly used for the future, is similar to the NDS "−даг" (p. 188) and is not so often used in the colloquial language because of its **lyrical sound** (**ex. a-c**). In literature, it's often used as a **present tense suffix** when writing **exciting** or **romantic novels** (**ex. d-e**). In colloquial language it's only used for actions that **remain the same** or for **lasting truths** (**ex. f-h**). Often, actions expressed with this suffix have a **future meaning** (**ex. g-h**) and can in this way be distinguished from the NDS "−даг".
2.) **Interrogation** is best formed with the analytically expressed aspect **"−ж байна"** (p. 136) or with the Present tense NDS's "−аа/−даг" (p. 144-145).
3.) **Negative** particles are not used. Other ways to negate the present tense are: "−хгүй байна/−даггүй" (compare with page 422).

***Frequency*:** Written language: **quite often**
Colloquial language: **seldom**

a	It **snows** in winter.	Өвөл цас орно.	ᡥᡳᡳᡵ ᡴᡠᡵᡳᡵ ᡥᡠᡵᡠᡵ/ˌ ··
b	It **rains** in the fall.	Намар бороо орно.	ᡳᡵᡠᡵ ᡤᡠᡵᡠᡵ/ˌ ᡥᡠᡵᡠᡵ/ˌ ··
c	Boats **swim** on the sea.	Далайд завь хөвнө.	ᡩᡠᡵᡳᡵ ᡤᡳ ᡵᡠᡤᡳᡵ ᡤᡠᡤᡤᡳᡵ/ˌ ··
d	When the nice springtime comes, old people **think** of themselves as having become young.	Хаврын сайхан цаг ирэхэд хөгшин хүн өөрийгөө залуу болсон шиг санана.	ᡤᡤᡳᡵᡠᡵ/ ᡵᡠᡵ/ ᡵᡳᡵᡳ/ˌ ·· ᡤᡵᡳᡵ/ ᡤᡵᡳᡵ/ ᡥᡠᡤᡳᡵ ᡴ ᡤᡳ/ ᡵᡳᡵᡳᡵᡳᡵ ᡥᡳᡤᡳ ᡤᡳ/ ᡵᡳᡵᡳᡵ/ ᡵᡳᡵ/ ᡥᡠᡵᡤ ᡤᡳ
e	The snow that fell in winter melts in the spring sun and **wets** Luvsang's boots.	Өвөл орсон цас хаврын наранд хайлж Лувсангийн гутлыг норгоно.	ᡳᡥᡳᡵᡳᡵ/ˌ ·· ᡤᡳ ᡵᡳᡵᡳᡵᡳᡵ ᡥᡤᡤᡳᡵᡳᡵ ᡤᡳ/ ᡴᡳᡤᡤᡳᡵ ᡴ ᡥᡳᡳᡵ ᡥᡠᡵᡠᡵᡳᡵ/ ᡵᡳᡵᡳᡵ ᡵᡳᡵᡳ ᡤᡳ/ ᡳᡵᡳᡵ/
f	We know that water **freezes**.	Ус хөлддөгийг бид мэднэ (мэддэг).	ᡥᡳᡳᡵ ᡤᡵᡳᡤᡳᡵᡠᡵ ᡴ ᡤᡵᡳᡵ/ ᡥᡳᡳᡵ/ˌ ··
g	My older brother **knows** Japanese.	Миний ах япон хэл мэднэ (мэддэг).	ᡴᡳᡳᡵ ᡥᡳᡵ/ˌ ᡵᡳᡵᡳᡵ ᡤᡳᡵ/ ᡥᡳᡳᡵ/ˌ ··
h	I **can** drive a car.	Би машин барьж чадна (чаддаг).	ᡤᡵ ᡴᡳᡳᡵ/ ᡤᡵᡳᡵᡳᡵ ᡵᡳᡵᡳᡵ/ˌ ··

1.1.2.1.3.2.2.8 TTS "−на[4]" (Future)

***Cyrillic Rules*:**
−на, −нэ, −но, −нө complying with vowel harmony

***Classical Rules*:**
−/ˌ complying with vowel harmony
Inserted vowel necessary (**ex. c**)
(**−ᡵᡠ, −ᡵᡳ/**) old forms (also used for present tense)

***Explanations*:**
1.) This suffix, also used for present tense, is mainly used for the **indefinite future**, with no stress on the immediate future (see explanation 4 on page 187).
2.) **Interrogative** sentences are built with the future NDS **"−х"** (p. 147-148). If questions are built with this suffix they have a **completely different meaning**, expressing a **polite request** similar to what we have in English (**ex. h-i**).
3.) **Negation** is also done with the future NDS **"−х"**. A **formal** negation is also possible with the negative particles "эс" or "үл" (**ex. j-k** and see p. 332-333).
4.) **Particles** (p. 335ff) can follow (**ex. l**).
5.) Note the **expressions** that are built with this suffix and an interrogative pronoun (**ex. m-o**).

***Frequency*:** Written language: **very often**
Colloquial language: **very often**

a	I'll **go** tomorrow.	Би маргааш явна.	ᡤᡵ ᡴᡠᡵᡤᡳᡵ ᡤᡠᡤ/ˌ ··
b	The train **will leave** now.	Галт тэрэг одоохон явна.	ᡤᡳᡵᡳᡵᡳᡵ ᡵᡳᡵᡳᡵ ᡥᡠᡵᡠᡵᡳᡵ/ ᡤᡠᡤ/ˌ ··
c	My sister **will arrive** this morning in Mongolia.	Миний эгч өнөө өглөө Монголд ирнэ.	ᡥᡳᡳᡵ/ˌ ·· ᡴᡳᡳᡵ ᡴᡳᡵᡳᡵ ᡥᡳᡳᡵᡳᡵ ᡥᡳᡳᡵᡳᡵᡳᡵ ᡴᡳᡳᡵᡳᡵᡳᡵ ᡤᡳ
d	Soon, I'll **be** 25 years old. ("I'll **reach** ...")	Би удахгүй хорин таван нас хүрнэ.	ᡤᡵᡳᡵᡳᡵ/ˌ ·· ᡤᡵ ᡥᡠᡵᡳᡵᡳᡵ ᡥᡳᡳᡵᡳᡵ ᡵᡳᡵᡳᡵ/ ᡵᡳᡵᡳᡵ/ ᡵᡳᡵᡳᡵ ᡳᡵᡳᡵ
e	In 2 hours we'll **arrive** there. ("2 hours will become and then ...")	Хоёр цаг боолоод бид очно.	ᡵᡳᡵᡳᡵ ᡤᡳᡵ/ ᡤᡳᡵᡳᡵᡳᡵᡳᡵ ᡤᡳᡵ/ ᡥᡳᡳᡵ/ˌ ··
f	I'll **receive** you at 4pm.	Би таныг арван зургаан цагт хүлээж авна.	ᡤᡳᡵᡳᡵᡳᡵᡳᡵ ᡥᡤᡤ/ˌ ·· ᡤᡵ ᡵᡳᡵ/ ᡴ ᡥᡳᡤᡳᡵ/ ᡵᡳᡵᡳᡵᡳᡵᡳᡵᡳᡵ/ ᡤᡳᡵ/ ᡵᡳᡤ
g	I'll **work** with you.	Би чамтай ажиллана.	ᡤᡵ ᡤᡳᡵ/ˌ ᡵᡳᡵ ᡥᡳᡳᡵᡳᡵᡳᡵ/ˌ ··
h	**Would** you **please come in?**	Та орно уу.	ᡵᡳᡵ/ ᡥᡳᡳᡵ/ˌ ᡤᡤ ··
i	**Would** you **give** me your clothes, **please?**	Та надад хувцаа өгнө үү.	ᡵᡳᡵ/ ᡳᡵᡳᡵ/ ᡤᡤ ᡵᡳᡤᡤᡳᡵᡳᡤ ᡤᡳ/ ᡥᡳᡳᡵᡳᡵ/ˌ ᡤᡤ ··
j	Smoking is ***not* allowed**! ("[You] **may** ***not*** pull tobacco.")	Тамхи татаж *үл* болно.	ᡵᡳᡵᡳᡵᡳᡵ ᡵᡳᡤᡳᡵᡳᡵ ᡥᡳᡳᡵᡳᡵ ᡤᡳᡵᡳᡵ/ˌ ··
k	Staff only! ("Outside people **may** ***not*** enter!")	Гадны хүн орж *үл* болно.	ᡤᡳᡵᡳᡵ/ˌ ·· ᡳᡵᡳᡵᡳᡵ/ˌ ᡵᡵ/ ᡤᡵᡳᡵᡳᡵ/ ᡥᡳᡳᡵᡳᡵ ᡥᡳᡳᡵᡳᡵ
l	She **is leaving** tomorrow!	Тэр маргааш явна *шүү дээ*.	ᡵᡳᡵ/ ᡴᡳᡳᡵᡳᡵ ᡤᡠᡤ/ˌ ᡵᡳᡤ ᡤᡳ/ ··
m	***Wherever*** he **goes**, I'll follow.	Тэр *хаана* явна, би дагана.	ᡵᡳᡵ/ ᡵᡳᡵᡳᡵᡳᡵ/ ᡤᡠᡤ/ˌ ᡤᡵ ᡵᡳᡳᡵ/ˌ ··
n	***Whoever*** **talks** a lot fails a lot. [proverb]	*Хэн* их ярина, тэр их алдана.	ᡵᡳᡵ ᡤᡠᡵᡳᡵ ᡤᡳᡵᡳᡵ/ˌ ᡵᡳᡵᡳᡵ/ ᡤᡠᡵᡳᡵ ᡥᡳᡳᡵ/ˌ ··

1.1.2.2 FUNCTIONAL CLASSIFICATION OF VERBS

In Mongolian, verbs can be divided into the following groups according to their functions:

1.) Full verbs
2.) Auxiliary verbs
3.) Modal verbs (and modal constructions)
4.) Modifying verbs
5.) Conjunction verb

1.1.2.2.1 Full Verbs

Full verbs can carry out all the functions of a verb. They can **build the predicate** of a sentence **by themselves**. Obviously, there are thousands of full verbs. We'll only consider here the two full verbs "**бай–**" and "**бол–**" which also serve as auxiliary verbs in order to show the difference.

1.1.2.2.1.1 Full Verb "бай–"

1.1.2.2.1.1.1 In the Function of 'there are'

In this function, the full verb "**бай–**" always demands a local adverbial in the ***dative-locative case***, which is always placed **before the subject** of the sentence. This full verb can express all tenses, but since "**байна**" usually refers to the present tense, the *auxiliary "бол–"* is used to express the future (**ex. e**).

a	**There were** 4 tables *in* this room.	Энэ өрөөнд 4 ширээ байсан.	ᠡᠨᠡ ᠥᠷᠥᠡᠨᠳ 4 ᠱᠢᠷᠡᠡ ᠪᠠᠢᠰᠠᠨ᠃
b	**Are there** wolves *on* this mountain?	Энэ уулаад чоно байдаг уу?	ᠡᠨᠡ ᠤᠤᠯᠠᠳ ᠴᠣᠨᠣ ᠪᠠᠢᠳᠠᠭ ᠤᠤ?
c	**There are** 11 chairs *in* this room.	Энэ өрөөнд 11 сандал байна.	ᠡᠨᠡ ᠥᠷᠥᠡᠨᠳ 11 ᠰᠠᠨᠳᠠᠯ ᠪᠠᠢᠨᠠ᠃
d	Yesterday, **there were** some horses *at* the foot of that mountain.	Өчигдөр тэр уулын бэлд хэдэн адуу байсан.	ᠥᠴᠢᠭᠳᠥᠷ ᠲᠡᠷ ᠤᠤᠯᠤᠨ ᠪᠡᠯᠳ ᠬᠡᠳᠡᠨ ᠠᠳᠠᠭ ᠪᠠᠢᠰᠠᠨ᠃
e	Tomorrow, **there will be** a piano in this hall.	Маргааш энэ танхимд төгөлдөр хуур байх *болно*.	ᠮᠠᠷᠭᠠᠰᠢ ᠡᠨᠡ ᠲᠠᠨᠬᠢᠮᠳ ᠲᠥᠭᠥᠯᠳᠥᠷ ᠬᠤᠤᠷ ᠪᠠᠢᠬ ᠪᠣᠯᠨᠣ᠃

Notice that "**бай–**" in function of 'there are' is also used to express the English **'(I) have ...'**. Mongolian sentence structure demands a logical subject in ***dative-locative case***. The literal translation would be **'With (me) there are ...'** or **'For (me) ... exists'**. The English accusative object becomes the Mongolian syntactic subject and the English subject becomes a dative-locative object. This function is not used for the future.

a	I **had** one older brother and one older sister. ("With me **there were ...**")	Надад нэг ах, нэг эгч байсан .	ᠨᠠᠳᠠᠳ ᠨᠢᠭᠡ ᠠᠬ, ᠨᠢᠭᠡ ᠡᠭᠴ ᠪᠠᠢᠰᠠᠨ᠃
b	He **owns** some fast horses. ("With him **there are**...")	Түүнд хэдэн хурдан морь байдаг.	ᠲᠡᠭᠦᠨᠳ ᠬᠡᠳᠡᠨ ᠬᠤᠷᠳᠠᠨ ᠮᠣᠷᠢ ᠪᠠᠢᠳᠠᠭ᠃
c	He **has** some fast horses. ("With him **there are being**...")	Түүнд хэдэн хурдан морь байгаа.	ᠲᠡᠭᠦᠨᠳ ᠬᠡᠳᠡᠨ ᠬᠤᠷᠳᠠᠨ ᠮᠣᠷᠢ ᠪᠠᠢᠭᠠᠠ᠃
d	**(At the moment,)** he **has** some fast horses. ("With him **there are being** ...")	Түүнд хэдэн хурдан морь байна.	ᠲᠡᠭᠦᠨᠳ ᠬᠡᠳᠡᠨ ᠬᠤᠷᠳᠠᠨ ᠮᠣᠷᠢ ᠪᠠᠢᠨᠠ᠃

e	**Do** you **have** 500 tögrögs? ("**Are there** 500 tögrögs with you?")	Танд 500 төгрөг байна уу?	ᠲᠠᠨᠳ ᠲᠤᠭ᠋ᠤᠷᠢᠭ 500 ᠲᠥᠭᠦᠷᠥᠭ ᠪᠠᠢᠨᠠ ᠤᠤ?
f	I **have** bread. I **don't have** bread. ("With me **there is** no bread.")	Надад талх байна. Надад талх байхгүй.	ᠨᠠᠳᠠᠳ ᠲᠠᠯᠬ ᠪᠠᠢᠨᠠ᠃ ᠨᠠᠳᠠᠳ ᠲᠠᠯᠬ ᠪᠠᠢᠬᠭᠦᠢ ᠪᠤᠯᠨᠣ᠃

1.1.2.2.1.1.2 In the Function of 'to be'

If "**бай–**" has the function 'to be', usually a local adverbial (in ***dative-locative case***) is needed. But this time, it comes **after the subject** in the sentence.

a	Once upon a time, there **was** an old couple.	Эрт урьд цагт эмгэн өвгөн хоёр байжээ.	ᠡᠷᠲ ᠦᠷᠢᠳ ᠴᠠᠭᠲ ᠡᠮᠭᠡᠨ ᠥᠪᠭᠥᠨ ᠬᠣᠶᠠᠷ ᠪᠠᠢᠵᠡᠡ᠃
b	My father **is** at home today.	Миний аав өнөө-дөр гэрээсээ байна.	ᠮᠢᠨᠢ᠋ ᠠᠪ ᠥᠨᠥᠥ-ᠳᠥᠷ ᠭᠡᠷᠡᠡᠰᠡᠡ ᠪᠠᠢᠨᠠ᠃
c	My 'deel' **is** in the cloakroom.	Миний дээл өлгүүрт байгаа.	ᠮᠢᠨᠢ᠋ ᠳᠡᠭᠡᠯ ᠥᠯᠭᠦᠦᠷᠲ ᠪᠠᠢᠭᠠᠠ᠃
d	**Please be** at home at 8 o'clock.	Чи орой 8 цагт гэрээсээ байгаарай.	ᠴᠢ ᠣᠷᠣᠢ 8 ᠴᠠᠭᠲ ᠭᠡᠷᠡᠡᠰᠡᠡ ᠪᠠᠢᠭᠠᠭᠠᠷᠠᠢ᠃
e	Tomorrow I'**ll be** here .	Маргааш би энд байна.	ᠮᠠᠷᠭᠠᠰᠢ ᠪᠢ ᠡᠨᠳ ᠪᠠᠢᠨᠠ᠃

1.1.2.2.1.2 Full Verb "бол–"

The full verb "**бол–**" has the main meaning **'to become'** (**ex. a-e**). But this is not always the best translation in English because many verbs like 'to ripen', 'to be ready' or 'to take place' are expressed in Mongolian with "**бол–**" (**ex. f-i**). This full verb can be used in all tenses: present (**ex. a-b,f**), past (**ex. c,g-i**), and future (**ex. d-e**).

a	Water freezes and **becomes** ice.	Ус хөлдөөд мөс болдог.	ᠤᠰ ᠬᠥᠯᠳᠥᠥᠳ ᠮᠥᠰ ᠪᠣᠯᠳᠣᠭ᠃
b	It's **becoming** winter now.	Одоо өвөл болж байна.	ᠣᠳᠣᠣ ᠥᠪᠥᠯ ᠪᠣᠯᠵ ᠪᠠᠢᠨᠠ᠃
c	Now it **has become** winter.	Одоо өвөл болчихсон байна.	ᠣᠳᠣᠣ ᠥᠪᠥᠯ ᠪᠣᠯᠴᠢᠬᠰᠣᠨ ᠪᠠᠢᠨᠠ᠃
d	I'll graduate from my school and then I'll **become** a teacher.	Би суургуулиа төгсөөд багш болно.	ᠪᠢ ᠰᠤᠤᠷᠭᠤᠤᠯᠢᠠ ᠲᠥᠭᠰᠥᠥᠳ ᠪᠠᠭᠱ ᠪᠣᠯᠨᠣ᠃ ᠪᠢ ᠰᠤᠷᠭᠠᠭᠴ ᠪᠣᠯᠣᠨ᠎ᠠ
e	Don't disturb him! ("Don't **become** a hindrance to him.")	Түүнд бүү саад бол!	ᠲᠡᠭᠦᠨᠳ ᠪᠦ ᠰᠠᠭᠠᠳ ᠪᠣᠯ!
f	On July 11th, the Mongolian national holiday takes place. ("..**becomes**")	7-р сарын 11-нд Монголын үндэсний баяр болдог.	ᠳ᠋ ᠰᠠᠷᠠᠨ ᠤ ᠪᠢᠰᠢ ᠪᠣᠯᠳᠣᠭ᠃
g	The tea and the meal are ready. ("...**have become**")	Цай, хоол болсон.	ᠴᠠᠢ, ᠬᠣᠣᠯ ᠪᠣᠯᠰᠣᠨ᠃
h	These grapes are ripe. ("...**have become** nice") Ripe apples taste good. ("Apples which **have become** have a good taste.")	Энэ усан үзэм сайхан болжээ. Болсон алим сайхан амттай.	ᠪᠣᠯᠰᠣᠨ ᠤᠰᠠᠨ ᠦᠵᠡᠮ ᠰᠠᠶᠬᠠᠨ ᠪᠣᠯᠵᠠᠠ᠃ ᠲᠠ ᠲᠠᠷᠬ ᠲᠣᠭᠣᠷᠤᠨᠳ ᠪᠣᠯᠰᠣᠨ ᠠᠯᠢᠮ ᠰᠠᠶᠬᠠᠨ ᠠᠮᠲᠲᠠᠢ᠃
i	Recently there was a snow- storm in Ulaanbaatar. ("...there **became** ...)	Саяхан Улаанбаатарт цасан шуурга боллоо.	ᠰᠠᠶᠬᠠᠨ ᠤᠯᠠᠭᠠᠨᠪᠠᠭᠠᠲᠤᠷ ᠳ᠋ ᠴᠠᠰᠠᠨ ᠰᠢᠤᠷᠭ᠎ᠠ ᠪᠣᠯᠯᠣᠭ᠃

1.1.2.2.2 Auxiliary Verbs

Auxiliary verbs are verbs that can't build the predicate of a sentence on their own. They are used **together with** other verbs or parts of speech in predicate function. Such combinations we call **compound predicates** because the predicate meaning and its grammatical functions are distributed to more than one word.

Examples in English (underlined: full verb; **bold**: auxiliary verb):

I **have** done my work.
By next week, this rubbish **will have been** removed.
Shall I help you?

1.1.2.2.2.1 Auxiliary Verb "бай–"

1.1.2.2.2.1.1 Building Copula (after Nouns and Adjectives)

The auxiliary verb "бай–" has the function of a **copula** if it **connects two elements** which are to **be equated with each other** ('copulare' = to connect). **Nouns** or **adjectives** can be connected in this manner. The **particles** "мөн" or "юм" can also serve as copulas. If there is no written copula, the **particle** "бол" marks the **subject** and thus makes it impossible to confuse the subject with other parts of speech.

1.) Examples of noun-copula:
Usually, the copula is used for the past tense (**ex. a-b**), rarely for the future and almost never for the present (**ex.c**). However, under **certain circumstances,** such a present tense copula is needed (e.g. if the fact being told is only temporary [**ex. d**] or if the fact that is told has just been found out [**ex. e-g**]).

a	Five years ago, he **was** a worker. (he = worker)	Таван жилийн өмнө тэр (бол) ажилчин **байсан**.	
b	In the good old days, I **was** a boss. (I = boss)	Би цагийн сайхан дарга **байлаа**.	
c	This is a hotel.	Энэ бол зочид буудал.	
d	I **am** the person that has come from Germany. (I = person who came from G.)	Би Германаас ирсэн хүн **байна**.	
e	This **is** a hotel. (this = hotel)	Энэ (бол) зочид буудал **байна**.	
f	This one **is** your book, that one **is** Bat's book. (that one = Bat's book)	Энэ нь чиний, тэр нь Батын ном **байна**.	
g	Oh, this **is** very expensive!	Энэ (бол) их үнэтэй ном **байна**.	

2.) Examples of adjective-copula:
Whether the copula is needed or not depends on the permanent or temporary meaning that is expressed through the adjective: temporary = copula needed [**ex. a**]; permanent = without copula [**ex. b**]. Tense doesn't play a role. Some adjectives tend to be used more temporarily (**ex. 6-7**), others more permanently (**ex. 8**). Note **example 9**, where the word 'always' demands the copula "бай–" with the NDS "–даг". For the meaning of the particle "бол", see above.

1a	He **is** joyful (now).	Тэр баясгалантай **байна**.	
1b	He **is** a joyful person.	Тэр бол баясгалантай.	
2a	She **is** angry (now).	Тэр ууртай **байна**. Тэр ууртай **байгаа**.	

2b	She **is** an angry person.	Тэр бол ууртай.	
3a	When I was in school, I **was** short and thin.	Би сургуульд байхдаа намхан, туранхай **байсан**.	
3b	My father **is** short and thin.	Миний аав (бол) намхан, туранхай.	
4a	Your hat **is** (too) small (for you).	Таны малгай жижиг **байна**.	
4b	This hat **is** small.	Энэ малгай (бол) жижиг.	
5a	He's **been** ill these days.	Тэр ойрдоо өвчтэй **байгаа**.	
5b	He **is** a bit mad. ("He **is** ill.")	Тэр бол өвчтэй.	
6a	I **am** hungry.	Би өлсгөлөн **байна**.	
7a	This picture **is** crooked.	Энэ зураг хазгай **байна**.	
8b	Those two ladies have a beautiful face.	Тэр хоёр хүүхэн (бол) царайлаг.	
9b	This mountain is always snow-covered. ("**is** always with snow")	Энэ уул дандаа цастай **байдаг**.	

1.1.2.2.2.1.2 Building Compound Predicates (after Verbs)

1.) Building analytical aspects
Usually aspects are built with aspect suffixes (see pages 131-136). But aspects can be built using analytical verb forms, as we have already mentioned on page 136ff. These analytical aspects are all built **using the auxiliary verb "бай–"**. Here is a summary again:

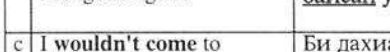
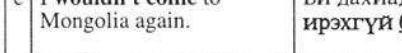
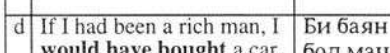
–ж	**+ бай–**	**= progressive** aspect	(see page 136)	**ex. 1**
–(чих)аад	**+ бай–**	**= perfect** aspect	(see page 137)	**ex. 2**
–(чих)сан	**+ бай–**	**= perfect** aspect	(see page 137)	**ex. 2**
–саар	**+ бай–**	**= progressive-perfect** aspect	(see page 138)	**ex. 3**

The **tense** in which the action happens is shown by the **TTS** added to the verb "бай–", resp. "бол–" for the future. Since the future NDS "–х" can't be used as a TTS, and because the TTS "–на" already has a fixed present tense meaning here, the auxiliary verb "бол–" is used to express the future tense (compare with pages 198-199).

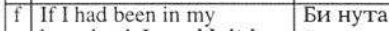
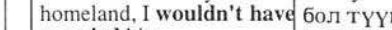
	Present tense	**Past tense**	**Future tense**
1	Би унтаж **байна**.	Би унтаж **байсан**.	Би унтаж байх **болно**.
	I'**m** sleeping.	I **was** sleeping.	I **will be** sleeping.
2	Тэр унтчихаад **байна**. Тэр унтчихсан **байна**.	Тэр унтчихаад **байв**. Тэр унтчихсан **байв**.	Тэр унтчихаад байх **болно**. Тэр унтчихсан байх **болно**.
	He **has** slept.	He **had** slept.	He **will have** slept.
3	Тэд ажилласаар **байна**.	Тэд ажилласаар **байжээ**.	Тэд ажилласаар байх **болно**.
	They **have been** working.	They **had been** working.	They **will have been** working.

2.) Putting the NDS "–даг" into past tense

If an action is **habitual** in the present, the **NDS "–даг"** is used to express this. If we talk about a habitual action in the past, we need the auxiliary verb "бай–". In English, we best translate with **'... used to ...'**.

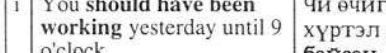
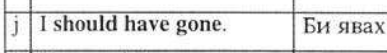
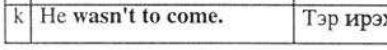
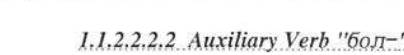
a	Their children always **used to** clean their flat.	Тэдний хүүхдүүд гэрээ дандаа цэвэрлэдэг байсан.	
b	When he was young, he **used to** go there.	Тэр бага байхдаа тийшээ очдог байжээ.	
c	When I was in Mongolia, I **used to** celebrate the New Year.	Би Монголд байхдаа цагаан сар тэмдэглэдэг байлаа.	

3.) Building the predicate with *AwDS's*

a	I'*d like* to go.	Би явмаар байна.	
b	I *wanted* to go.	Би явмаар байсан.	
c	(We) *should* help your child.	Таны хүүхдэд туслуушатай байна.	
d	(We) *should* **have** helped your child.	Таны хүүхдэд туслуушатай байлаа.	

4.) Building the past of the construction "... тай бай–"

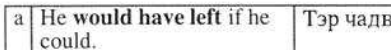
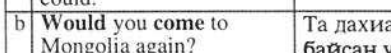
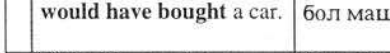
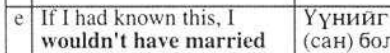
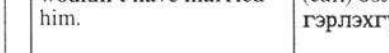
This construction **'subject + ...–тай бай–'** can be literally translated as 'subject + **to be with ...**' meaning **'to have, to own'**. This construction is widely used for the past tense (**ex. a-c**). To express the indefinite present, the auxiliary verb "байна" is omitted since the suffix "–тай" expresses enough of a 'having' meaning (**ex. d**). But in order to stress the **temporary owning** of something, "байна" is spoken, thus expressing this meaning (**ex. e**).

a	I had an older brother and an older sister. ("I **was with** an older ...")	Би нэг ах, нэг эгчтэй байсан.	
b	I had one nice book. ("I **was with**...")	Би нэг сайхан номтой байсан.	
c	He **had** only one daughter. ("He **was with** only...")	Тэр ганц охинтой байжээ.	
d	He owns some fast horses. ("He **is with**...")	Тэр хэдэн хурдан морьтой. (zero-form)	
e	I have right now 500 tögrögs. ("I **am with**...")	Би одоо таван зуун төгрөгтэй байна.	

1.1.2.2.2.1.3 Building Subjunctive

When using the subjunctive mood, the speaker or writer indicates that the things he says are not real actions that have happened or will happen, but thoughts, desires or wishes. Thus, the subjunctive is a **mood of imagination**. We'll look at some of these imaginary constructions on pages 201-207. Here, we only give a few examples to show how the auxiliary verb "бай–" is used.

The particle "сан" (p. 339) in parentheses (derived from the defective auxiliary verb "асан") intensifies the imaginary meaning. It can be used in the first or second part of the sentence. In colloquial language, it can be used in **both** parts.

a	He **would have left** if he could.	Тэр чадвал явах байсан.	
b	**Would** you **come** to Mongolia again?	Та дахиад Монголд ирэх байсан уу?	
c	I **wouldn't come** to Mongolia again.	Би дахиад Монголд ирэхгүй байсан.	
d	If I had been a rich man, I **would have bought** a car.	Би баян хүн байсан(сан) бол машин авах байсан.	
e	If I had known this, I **wouldn't have married** him.	Үүнийг мэдэж байсан (сан) бол би түүнтэй гэрлэхгүй байх байсан.	
f	If I had been in my homeland, I **wouldn't have married** him.	Би нутагтаа байсан(сан) бол түүнтэй гэрлээгүй байх байсан.	
g	By the time he came, I **was supposed to have eaten**.	Түүнийг орж ирэхэд би хоолоо идчихээд байх байсан.	
h	If you hadn't disturbed me, I **would have finished** this job by now.	Чамайг надад саад хийгээгүй(сэн) бол би энэ ажлыг дуусчихаад байх байлаа.	
i	You **should have been working** yesterday until 9 o'clock.	Чи өчигдөр орой 9 цаг хүртэл ажилласаар байх байсан.	
j	I **should have gone**.	Би явах хэрэгтэй байсан.	
k	He **wasn't to come.**	Тэр ирэх ёсгүй байжээ.	

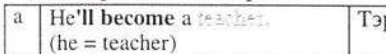
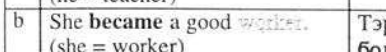
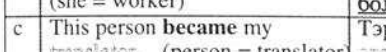
1.1.2.2.2.2 Auxiliary Verb "бол–"

The auxiliary verb "бол–" can, like "бай–", fulfill different functions. In all these functions, the original meaning of 'to become' is still evident.

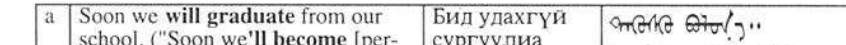
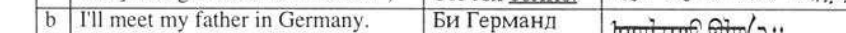
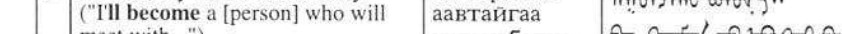
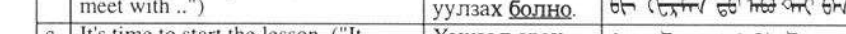
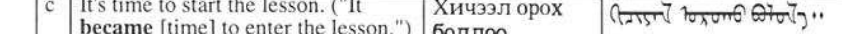
1.1.2.2.2.2.1 Building Copula (after Nouns and Adjectives)

See explanation of 'copula' on page 194.

1.) Examples of noun-copula:

a	**He'll become** a teacher. (he = teacher)	Тэр багш болно.	
b	She **became** a good worker. (she = worker)	Тэр сайн ажилчин болсон.	
c	This person **became** my translator. (person = translator)	Тэр хүн миний орчуулагч боллоо.	

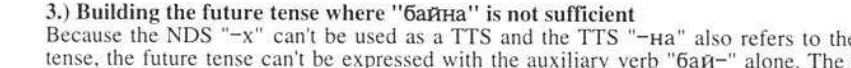
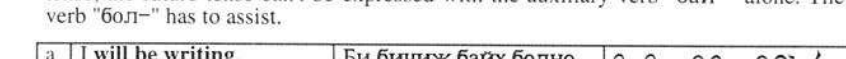
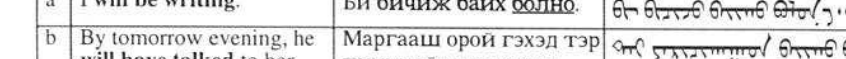
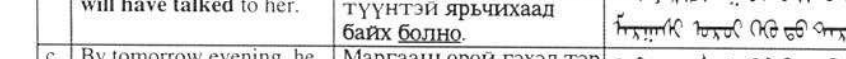
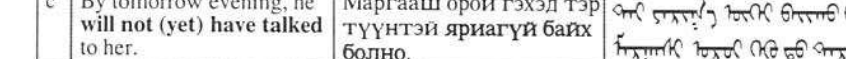
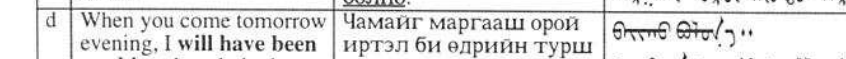
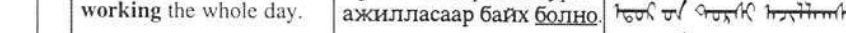
2.) Examples of adjective-copula:

a	He'll **get** fat like a swine. (he = fat)	Тэр гахай шиг бүдүүн болно.	
b	He **got** angry. (he = angry)	Тэр уурлаж болсон.	
c	My father **has gotten** old. (father = old)	Аав минь хөгшрөөд болжээ.	
d	I **got** well. (my body = well)	Миний бие эдүгээр болсон.	
e	Her pitch-black hair **turned** gray. (hair = gray)	Тас хар үс нь бууралаа болов.	
f	My book disappeared. ("My book **has become** absent. ") (book = absent)	Миний ном алга болчихжээ.	

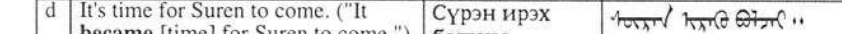
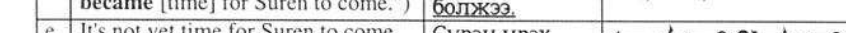
1.1.2.2.2.2.2 Building Compound Predicates (after Verbs)

After verbs, "бол−" has the main function of **showing the future tense**:

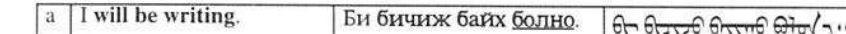
1.) Following the NDS "−даг"
In all these sentences, the literal translation in parentheses shows that the noun [...], which logically would follow this **NDS**, has been dropped, which explains the free translation in English.

a	Their children will get in the habit of cleaning their flat. ("...**will become** regularly cleaning [children].")	Тэдний хүүхдүүд гэрээ дандаа цэвэрлэдэг болно	
b	When I am grown up, I'**ll be going** there. ("...I'**ll become** a [person] who is going there.")	Би том болоод тийшээ очдог болно.	
c	At this time next year, your son will be walking and talking. ("... your son **will become** a walking and talking [son].")	Хүү чинь ирэх жилийн өдийд явдаг, юм ярьдаг болно.	
d	After a few days, your eyes will adjust. ("...your eyes **will become** well seeing [eyes].")	Таны нүд хэд хоноод юм сайн хардаг болно.	
e	We're in the process of becoming able to read, write and speak in Mongolian. ("We **are becoming** [persons] who are reading, writing and speaking in Mongolian.")	Бид монголоор уншдаг, бичдэг, ярьдаг болж байна.	
f	Father is getting better and can eat again. ("Father's body took care of its illness and he **became** a food-eating [person].")	Аавын бие нь засарч хоол идэдэг болсон.	
g	Bat has become a fast reader. ("Bat **became** a quick-reading [person].")	Бат хурдан уншдаг болжээ.	

2.) Following the NDS "−х"
In order to stress a future meaning when using the **NDS "−х"**, the auxiliary verb "бол−" can be added (**ex. a-b**).
A second meaning of such an analytical structure is the English expression **'It's time...'**. Again, the noun (e.g. 'time') which logically follows an NDS has been dropped (**ex. a-f**). Depending on the whole context of the sentences, it could also be translated as 'it was decided that...' (see **ex. g-i**).

a	Soon we **will graduate** from our school. ("Soon we'**ll become** [persons] who graduate from school.")	Бид удахгүй сургуулиа төгсөх болно.	
b	I'll meet my father in Germany. ("I'**ll become** a [person] who will meet with ..")	Би Германд аавтайгаа уулзах болно.	
c	It's time to start the lesson. ("It **became** [time] to enter the lesson.")	Хичээл орох боллоо.	
d	It's time for Suren to come. ("It **became** [time] for Suren to come.")	Сүрэн ирэх болжээ.	
e	It's not yet time for Suren to come. ("It **didn't become** [time] for Suren to come.")	Сүрэн ирэх болоогүй.	
f	It's time for me to go. ("It **is becoming** [time] for me to go.")	Би явах болж байна.	
g	**It was decided that** the lesson would start.	Хичээл орох боллоо.	
h	**It was decided that** Suren will come.	Сүрэн ирэх болжээ.	
i	**It was decided that** Suren wouldn't come.	Сүрэн ирэхгүй болжээ.	

3.) Building the future tense where "байна" is not sufficient
Because the NDS "−х" can't be used as a TTS and the TTS "−на" also refers to the present tense, the future tense can't be expressed with the auxiliary verb "бай−" alone. The auxiliary verb "бол−" has to assist.

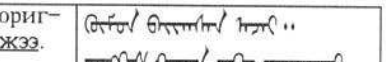
a	I **will be writing**.	Би бичиж байх болно.	
b	By tomorrow evening, he **will have talked** to her.	Маргааш орой гэхэд тэр түүнтэй ярьчихаад байх болно.	
c	By tomorrow evening, he **will not (yet) have talked** to her.	Маргааш орой гэхэд тэр түүнтэй яриагүй байх болно.	
d	When you come tomorrow evening, I **will have been working** the whole day.	Чамайг маргааш орой иртэл би өдрийн турш ажилласаар байх болно.	
e	If he does not write me a letter first, I **won't write** a letter to him.	Тэр надад эхэлж захиа бичихгүй бол би түүнд захиа бичихгүй байсаар байх болно.	

1.1.2.2.2.3 Defective Auxiliary Verbs

In the preclassical period, the auxiliary verbs "**а–**" and "**бü–**" were used instead of today's "бай–" and "бол–". At that time, they could be fully conjugated as any other verb. But today, only **leftovers of these verb conjugations** exist and they are mainly used in **literary language**. Here is a list of the most important ones:

1.1.2.2.2.3.1 Defective Auxiliary Verbs "ажээ, атал, аваас"

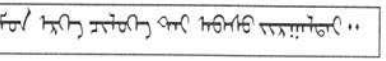
"**ажээ**" has the meaning of "**байжээ**": One has heard about something.

a	Genghis Khan **is said to** have been a very brave man.	Чингис хаан их зориг–той хүн байсан ажээ.	

"**атал**" has the meaning of "**байтал**" (together with the VDS "–саар", see pages 168-169)

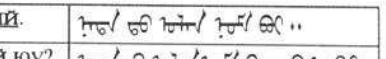
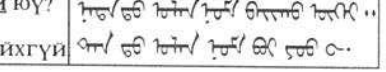
a	**Although** I had warned him, he left.	Би түүнд хэлсээр атал тэр явчихсан.	

"**аваас**" has the meaning of "**байвал**" ("–ваас" = old form of "–бал")

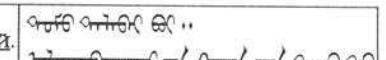
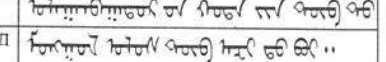
a	**If** a man has freedom, he is happy.	Хүн эрх чөлөөтэй аваас жаргалтай.	

1.1.2.2.2.3.2 Defective Auxiliary Verbs "буй, бий, билээ"

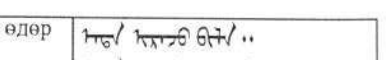
"**бий**" has the meaning of "**байгаа**": Whatever someone has, he **owns**.

a	I **have (own)** a lot of books.	Надад олон ном бий.	
b	Do you **have** a lot of books?	Танд олон ном бий юү?	
	I **don't have** a lot of books.	Надад олон ном байхгүй	

"**буй**" has the meaning of "**байдаг**": Used for more **official situations**.

a	In the center of Ulaanbaa–tar, **there is** a big square.	Улаанбаатар хотын төвд том талбай буй.	
b	Mongolia **is situated** in Central Asia.	Монгол улс Төв Азид буй.	

"**билээ**" has a similar meaning to "**байлаа**": To remind someone or oneself of something. See also page 338 (modal particle "билээ").

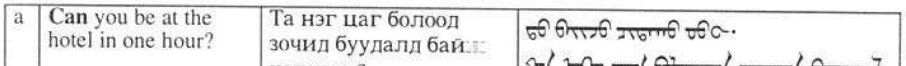
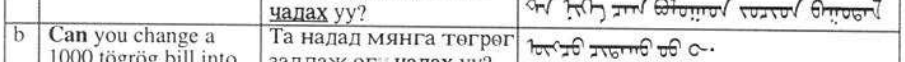
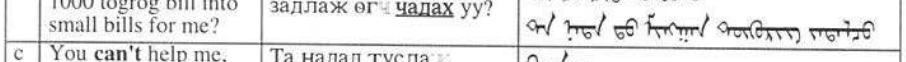
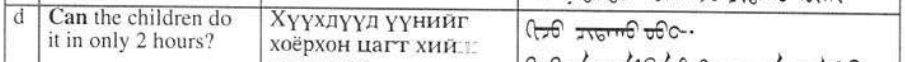
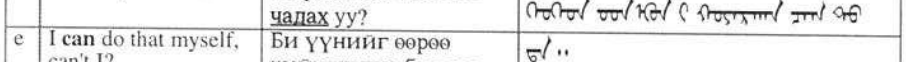
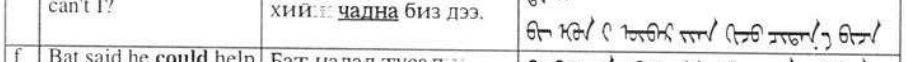
a	We first arrived here on a rainy day, (do you remember)?	Бид анх бороотой өдөр энд ирж билээ. (...ирсэн билээ)	

1.1.2.2.3 Modal Verbs and Modal Constructions

What is expressed in English with **modals** like 'will', 'shall', 'would', 'should', 'ought to', 'can', 'might', 'must', 'need', etc. is expressed in Mongolian with either **modal suffixes** (e.g. "–аасай, –я"), **modal verbs** (see the following paragraph) or **modal constructions** (see below).

1.1.2.2.3.1 Modal Verb "чада–"

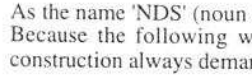
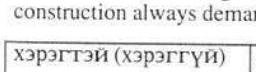
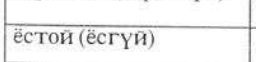
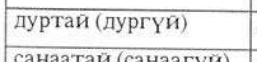
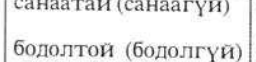
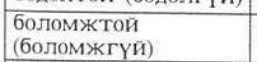
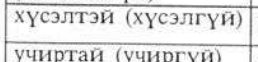
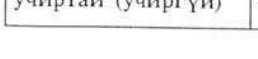
Please note that the modal verb "чада–" always demands the cVDS "–ж/–ч".

a	**Can** you be at the hotel in one hour?	Та нэг цаг болоод зочид буудалд бай**ж** чадах уу?	
b	**Can** you change a 1000 tögrög bill into small bills for me?	Та надад мянга төгрөг задлаж өг**ч** чадах уу?	
c	You **can't** help me, can you?	Та надад тусла**ж** чадахгүй биз!	
d	**Can** the children do it in only 2 hours?	Хүүхдүүд үүнийг хоёрхон цагт хий**ж** чадах уу?	
e	I **can** do that myself, can't I?	Би үүнийг өөрөө хий**ж** чадна биз дээ.	
f	Bat said he **could** help me.	Бат надад тусал**ж** чадна гэсэн.	
g	We hope that he **is able to** do this work (of his).	Манайхан түүнийг энэ ажлаа хий**ж** чадна гэж найдаж байна.	

1.1.2.2.3.2 Modal Constructions

1.1.2.2.3.2.1 "...–х ...–тай[3]/–гүй"

As the name 'NDS' (noun determining suffix) indicates, the verb suffix "–х" determines a noun. Because the following word, to which the comitative CS "тай" is added, is a noun, this construction always demands the NDS "–х" and never the VDS "–ж/–ч".

хэрэгтэй (хэрэггүй)		**have to, ought to, need to, should** ("with the **necessity**")
ёстой (ёсгүй)		**must** ("with the **law**")
дуртай (дургүй)		**to like** ("with the **pleasure**")
санаатай (санаагүй)		**to intend** ("with the **thought**")
бодолтой (бодолгүй)		
боломжтой (боломжгүй)		**to be possible** ("with the **possibility**")
хүсэлтэй (хүсэлгүй)		**to desire** ("with the **desire**")
учиртай (учиргүй)		**to have reason to** ("with the **reason**")

Examples:

a	You **have to/ought to/ need to** go now./You **should go** now.	Чи одоо явах хэрэгтэй.	[illegible]
b	You **don't need** to cry./ You **shouldn't** cry.	Чи уйлах хэрэггүй.	[illegible]
c	He **must** eat now.	Тэр одоо хоол идэх ёстой.	[illegible]
d	He **must not** eat now./ He **is not to** eat now./ He **is not supposed to** eat now.	Тэр одоо хоол идэх ёсгүй.	[illegible]
e	Dorj **likes** swimming/bathing.	Дорж усанд орох дуртай.	[illegible]
f	Bat **doesn't like** swimming/bathing.	Бат усанд орох дургүй.	[illegible]
g	I **intend to** learn Mongolian.	Би монгол хэл сурах санаатай.	[illegible]
h	We **intend to** go to Germany by train.	Бид галт тэргээр Герман явах бодолтой.	[illegible]
i	He **doesn't think of** going abroad.	Тэр гадаадад явах бодолгүй.	[illegible]
j	**It's possible for me to** work together with you.	Би тантай хамт ажиллах боломжтой.	[illegible]
k	**It's impossible** for me **to** meet him.	Би түүнтэй уулзах боломжгүй.	[illegible]
l	I **desire to** live in Mongolia.	Би Монголд амьдрах хүсэлтэй.	[illegible]
m	He **has (no) reason to** come to my home.	Тэр манайд ирэх учиртай./учиргүй.	[illegible]

1.1.2.2.3.2.2 "... -байх(аа)"

If "байх" is used at the end of a sentence, it indicates that the statement is a **presumption.** The meaning is **stronger than** "магадгүй" (=perhaps, may be). So this modal is best translated as **'probably'** or **'most likely'**. If "байх" is used together with the **particle "aa"**, then the meaning is similar to a tag question. If a true and maybe hurting statement is meant to be more **polite**, this construction is used (**ex. d**). Very often, sentences with this construction are used **in the future** (presumptions are usually future related) and therefore the *NDS "-х"* is commonly used.

a	It's **probably** from China. (It's from China, **isn't it?**)	Хятадынх байх(аа).	[illegible]
b	**Most likely**, the Gobi will be very interesting to you.	Говь танд их сонин санагдах байх(аа).	[illegible]
c	These sweets are **probably** very tasty, **aren't they?**	Энэ чихэр их амттай байхаа.	[illegible]
d	He **might be** stupid. (instead of 'he is stupid')	Тэр тэнэг байхаа.	[illegible]
e	**Most likely,** you'll be pleased with the concert.	Концерт танд их аятай санагдах байх.	[illegible]

f	Ask the teacher, he'll **probably** know it.	Багшаас асуу! Тэр мэдэх байхаа.	[illegible]
g	It will **probably** rain soon.	Удахгүй бороо орох байхаа.	[illegible]
h	You know, **most likely**, I'll be a bit late!	Би жаахан хожимдох байх шүү!	[illegible]
i	He **is likely to** fail the exams, **isn't he**?	Тэр шалгалтандаа унах байхаа.	[illegible]
j	-Can you ride a horse? **-Probably** not, I haven't tried it yet.	-Морь унаж чадах уу? -Чадахгүй байх, би морь унаж үзээгүй!	[illegible]
k	Yesterday it **probably** rained.	Өчигдөр бороо орсон байхаа.	[illegible]
l	**Most likely,** Bat left yesterday for the countryside, **didn't he**?	Өчигдөр Бат хөдөө явчихсан байхаа.	[illegible]

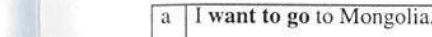
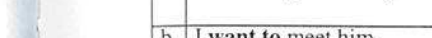
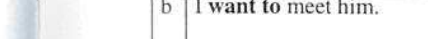
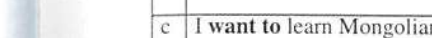
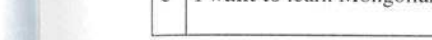
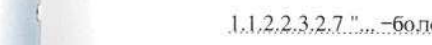
1.1.2.2.3.2.3 "... юм байна"

These two words together express **surprise**. One finds out something that one didn't know before. In colloquial language the particle "лээ" is added to express a **careless attitude**. In English we best translate with **'supposed to be...'** or **'said to be ...'** or use a word that **expresses surprise**.

a	By the way, her husband **is said to** be a very big boss.	Сониноос, түүний нөхөр нь маш том дарга юм байна (лээ).	[illegible]
b	Their house **is said to** be very cold.	Тэдний байр нь их хүйтэн юм байна (лээ).	[illegible]
c	**Wow**, that girl can speak Japanese!	Ооё, тэр охин японоор ярьж чаддаг юм байна.	[illegible]
d	Bat **is said to** be very interested in music.	Бат хөгжим их сонирхдог юм байна (лээ).	[illegible]
e	**I found out that** the children miss their parents a great deal.	Хүүхдүүд нь эцэг эхийгээ их санадаг юм байна.	[illegible]
f	**Ugh**, to do this, one needs a lot of money!	Үүнийг хийхэд их мөнгө хэрэгтэй юм байна.	[illegible]
g	**Boy**, that's difficult!	Хэцүү л юм байна даа!	[illegible]

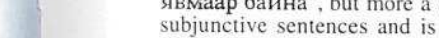
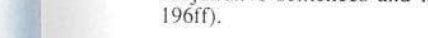
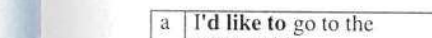
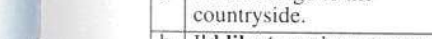
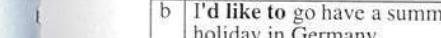
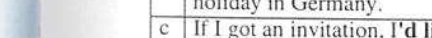
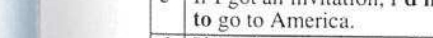
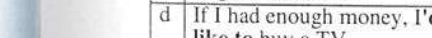
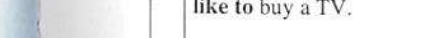
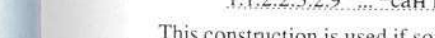
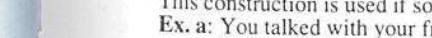
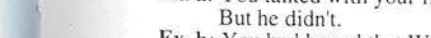
1.1.2.2.3.2.4 "... байлтай/... байлгүй"

Similar to the construction "байхаа", this statement is likely to be true. Using "байлтай" gives a high percentage of truth, as all factors are in favor of one's statement: **'It must be...'**. Using "байлгүй" the chance is less: **'It's likely to...'**.

a	He **must** be Mongolian.	Тэр монгол хүн байлтай.	
b	He **can't** be Mongolian.	Тэр монгол хүн биш байлтай.	
c	He **must** have arrived.	Тэр ирсэн байлтай.	
d	He **is likely to** be Mongolian.	Тэр монгол хүн байлгүй.	
e	He **is not likely to** be Mongolian.	Тэр монгол хүн биш байлгүй.	
f	**I'm likely to** go.	Би явах байлгүй.	

1.1.2.2.3.2.5 "... -сан бол-... "

Primarily, this construction expresses that the action is not done with delight or pleasure, but rather **unwillingly**, forced or just to **pretend**. Contrary to the construction "-хаас даа", this construction is used for an action that continues over a longer period of time. Secondly, it is used to show a **modest attitude**.

a	**Well,** I'm **just** doing my work	Би ажлаа хийсэн болж байна.	
b	I'm **just** reading this book because I have exams soon.	Удахгүй шалгалт өгөх тул би энэ номыг уншсан болж байна.	 
c	These days I haven't been well. I attend classes but I'm only there physically.	Ойрдоо бие муу байна. Хичээлдээ явсан болж л байна.	  
d	Please **just** do what he wants.	Түүний хүссэнийг нь хийсэн болчихооч!	 
e	He speaks Mongolian, **somewhat**.	Тэр монголоор ярьсан болдог.	
f	I cleaned my apartment **somehow**.	Би гэрээ цэвэрлэсэн болсон.	
g	The teacher **gave the impression of** having examined my paper.	Багш миний бичсэн зүйлийг шалгасан болсон.	 
h	I read this book **after a fashion.**	Би тэр номыг нь уншсан болов.	 

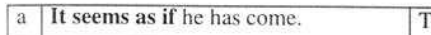
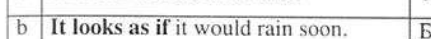
1.1.2.2.3.2.6 "... -х гэсэн юм"

This construction which is widely used in colloquial language expresses a **desire** or a n **intention** of the **1st person**. It is similar to "-маар байна" (see p. 151), but the speaker uses this expression to make **his intention clear**, to avoid being misunderstood.

a	I **want to go** to Mongolia.	Би Монголд очих гэсэн юм.	
b	I **want to** meet him.	Би түүнтэй уулзах гэсэн юм.	
c	I **want to** learn Mongolian.	Би монгол хэл сурах гэсэн юм.	

1.1.2.2.3.2.7 "... -бололтой"

This construction expresses the meaning **'it seems/looks as if'**. There must be reasons for such a presumption.

a	**It seems as if** he has come.	Тэр ирсэн бололтой.	
b	**It looks as if** it would rain soon.	Бороо орох бололтой.	

1.1.2.2.3.2.8 "... -х юмсан/... -хсан"

This construction expresses **'I would ('d) like to...'**. It is **not a realistic desire** as the "Би явмаар байна", but more a imaginary thinking. Note that the **particle "сан"** also appears in subjunctive sentences and is therefore connected with a **mood of imagination** (see pages 196ff).

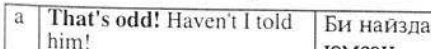
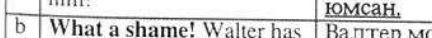
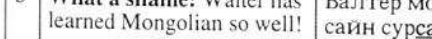
a	**I'd like to** go to the countryside.	Би хөдөө явах юмсан.	
b	**I'd like to** go have a summer holiday in Germany.	Би зун Германд амрах юмсан.	
c	If I got an invitation, **I'd like to** go to America.	Би урилга авбал Америк явахсан.	
d	If I had enough money, **I'd like to** buy a TV.	Би хангалттай мөнгөтэй бол телевиз авахсан.	

1.1.2.2.3.2.9 "... -сан юмсан"

This construction is used if something **doesn't turn out as planned or desired**.

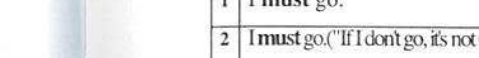
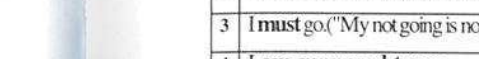
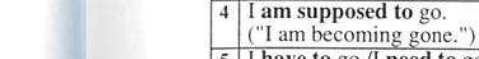
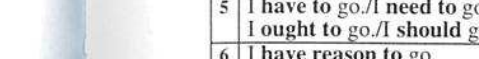
Ex. a: You talked with your friend about something and had hoped he would act accordingly. But he didn't.

Ex. b: You had hoped that Walter would do this or that after learning the language, but now he isn't using his Mongolian at all.

a	**That's odd!** Haven't I told him!	Би найздаа хэлсэн юмсан.	
b	**What a shame!** Walter has learned Mongolian so well!	Валтер монгол хэл сайн сурсан юмсан.	 

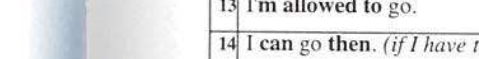
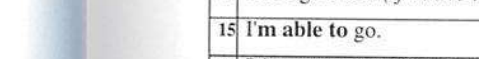
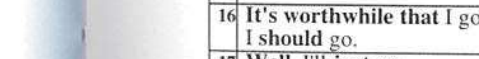
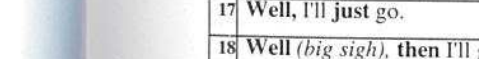
1.1.2.2.3.2.10 "...-сансан/...-дагсан"

These constructions are used if **one is reminded of something**. Depending on whether the action is habitual or not, the "-даг" or "-сан" NDS is used. The particle "сан" originated from the defective auxiliary verb "асан".

a	**Oh yes**, I met him once many years ago.	Би олон жилийн өмнө түүнтэй нэг удаа уулзсансан.	
b	**Oh yes**, my grandpa was a very tall man.	Миний өвөө их өндөр хүн байсансан.	
c	**Oh yes, I remember**, when I was in Huhhot, I always used to meet him.	Би Хөххотод байхдаа түүнтэй дандаа уулздагсан.	
d	**Oh yes**, my granny used to tell me a lot of stories.	Миний эмээ надад олон үлгэр ярьж өгдөгсөн.	

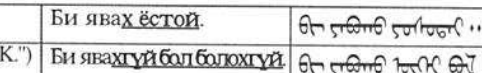
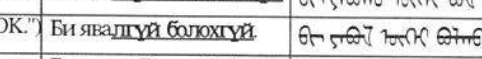
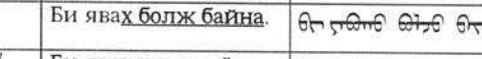
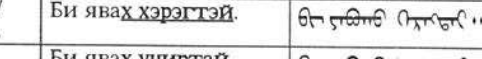
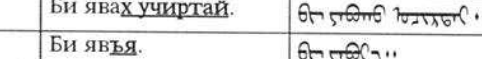
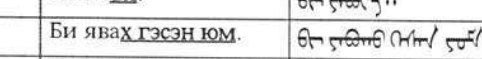
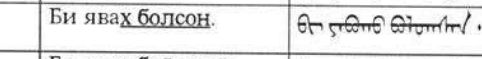
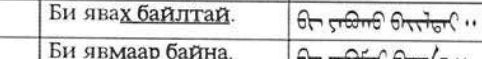
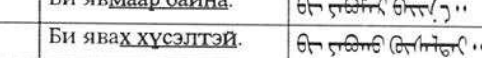
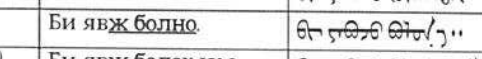
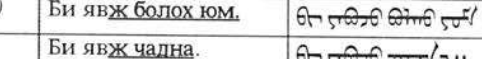
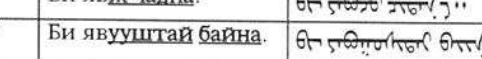
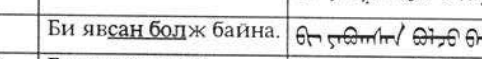
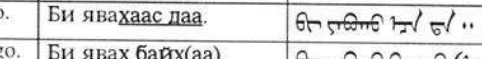
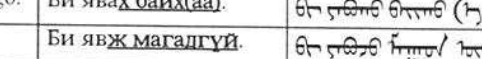
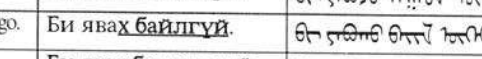
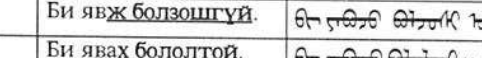
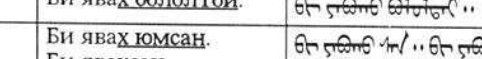
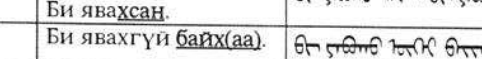
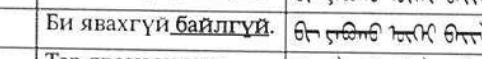
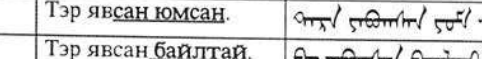
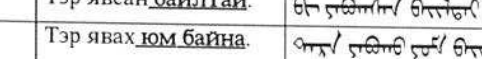
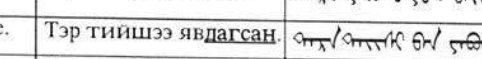
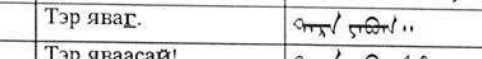
1.1.2.2.3.2.11 "...-хаас даа."

This construction is similar to the "-сан бол-", which also expresses an **unwillingness**. It's likely that this expression which could be literary translated as **'...than to ...'**, originated from the sentence "Тэгэхээс өөр арга байхгүй дээ." meaning: 'There is no other way **than to** do this.' Say the English sentences with a **deep sigh** after the 'well' to get the feeling.

a	**Well, then** I have to cook.	Би хоол хийхээс дээ.	
b	He isn't about to come. **Well, then** I have to go.	Тэр ирэхгүй нь. Би явахаас даа.	
c	**Well**, I'll meet him **then**.	Түүнтэй уулзахаас даа!	
d	**Well, then** I have to live in the countryside.	Хөдөө амьдрахаас даа.	

1.1.2.2.3.2.12 Comparison of Modal Constructions and Modal Suffixes

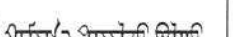
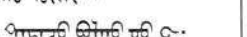
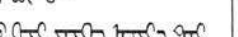
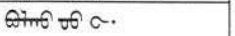
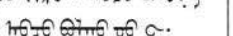
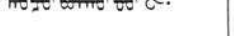
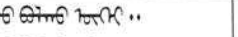
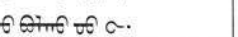
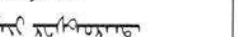
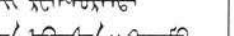
This chart is an attempt to compare all these modals. We don't consider this perfect or complete, as there has been very little research done on this topic.

1	I **must** go.	Би явах ёстой.	
2	I **must** go.("If I don't go, it's not OK.")	Би явахгүй бол болохгүй.	
3	I **must** go.("My not going is not OK.")	Би явалгүй болохгүй.	
4	I **am supposed to** go. ("I am becoming gone.")	Би явах болж байна.	
5	I **have to** go./I **need to** go./ I **ought to** go./I **should** go.	Би явах хэрэгтэй.	
6	I **have reason to** go.	Би явах учиртай.	
7	I **want to** go./**Let** me **go.**	Би явъя.	
8	I **want to** go.	Би явах гэсэн юм.	
9	I'**m made to** go./**It's been decided that** I would go.	Би явах болсон.	
10	I'**m meant to** go.	Би явах байлтай.	
11	I **would like to** go.	Би явмаар байна.	
12	I **desire to** go.	Би явах хүсэлтэй.	
13	I'**m allowed to** go.	Би явж болно.	
14	I **can** go **then**. *(if I have to)*	Би явж болох юм.	
15	I'**m able to** go.	Би явж чадна.	
16	**It's worthwhile that** I go./ I **should** go.	Би явуштай байна.	
17	**Well,** I'll **just** go.	Би явсан болж байна.	
18	**Well** *(big sigh),* **then** I'll go.	Би явахаас даа.	
19	**Most likely/Probably** I'll go.	Би явах байх(аа).	
20	**Maybe** I'll go.	Би явж магадгүй.	
21	I'**m likely to** go./I **think** I'll go.	Би явах байлгүй.	
22	I **might** go.	Би явж болзошгүй.	
23	**It's seems as if** I **will** go.	Би явах бололтой.	
24	I **would** go./**I'd like to** go.	Би явах юмсан. Би явахсан.	
25	**Probably** I won't go.	Би явахгүй байх(аа).	
26	I'**m not likely to** go.	Би явахгүй байлгүй.	
27	**What a shame**, he went!	Тэр явсан юмсан.	
28	He **must have** gone.	Тэр явсан байлтай.	
29	**He is said to** have gone./ **Oh,** he is gone!	Тэр явах юм байна.	
30	**Oh yes**, he **used to** go there.	Тэр тийшээ явдагсан.	
31	He **may** go.	Тэр яваг.	
32	**Hopefully**, he'**ll** go.	Тэр яваасай!	

1.1.2.2.4 Modifying Verbs

Modifying verbs are similar to modal verbs, but they carry - besides their main meaning as a full verb - **one or two other meanings** also. In Mongolian, **two verbs are** always **connected** and therefore one of the **cVDS's** are necessary.

1.1.2.2.4.1 "–ж-ч бол–" in the Function of 'to be allowed to; may'

a	**-May** I talk with Mrs. Dulmaa, **please**? -You **may**.	–Дулмаа гуайтай ярьж болох уу? –Болно.	
b	**-May I** come in? -Yes, do come in.	–Би орж болох уу? –Болноо, болно.	
c	Where **can** I put my clothes?	Хувцаа хаана тайлж болох вэ?	 
d	**-May** I smoke? -No, smoking is not **allowed**.	–Би тамхи татаж болох уу? –Татаж болохгүй.	 
e	How much luggage **can** I take on the plane?	Онгоцонд хир зэрэг ачаатай сууж болох вэ?	 
f	**May** I have the salt, **please**?	Давс авч болох уу?	
g	**-May** I take a picture here? -You **can** take pictures anywhere.	–Энд зураг авч болох уу? –Та хаана ч зураг авч болно.	 
h	This is **allowed/possible**. This is not **allowed**/not **possible**.	Энэ бол байж болно. Энэ бол байж болохгүй.	 
i	Recently I got my salary. Therefore, I **could** treat you at a restaurant.	Би саяхан цалингаа авсан. Тийм болохоор чамайг ресторанд даалж болох юм.	  

1.1.2.2.4.2 Table of Other Modifying Verbs

There is only a limited number of full verbs that can also be used as modifying verbs. They're not commonly used in official language, but mainly in **colloquial and literary** language.

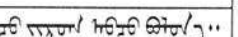
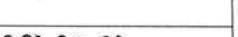
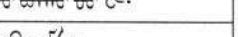
Depending on which **cVDS** is added to the previous full verb, **3 groups** can be formed. We look at these groups in their order of priority. But first, here is a **list of the modifying verbs** and their rough meanings:

	Cyrillic	Classical	English	Modifying meaning
a	өг–		to give	to do something for someone else
b	ав–		to get, to take	to do something for oneself
c	үз–		to watch	to do something for the first time, to try
d	гар–		to go out	to begin

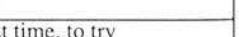
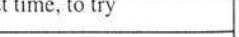
e	–ж алда– –аад алда– –н алда–	 	to loose	to get lost in something, to do s.th. very intensively to be about to do something
f	мэдэ–		to know	maybe, probably
g	суу–		to sit	to keep doing something
h	таара–		to fit	to be convinced of something
i	орхи–		to leave	to do s.th. without being able to undo it again similar to the AsS "–чих"
j	хэвтэ–		to lie	to do something easily, without problems
k	тара–		to end, to dissolve	to persevere in something to the end, to work hard (usually used together with "үзэ–")

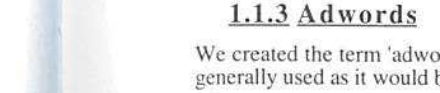
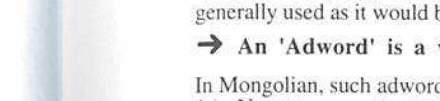
Example sentences:

a) Together with the cVDS "–ж/–ч"

a	*Let* me **tell** you.	Би танд ярьж *өгье*.	
b	Please *try to* **help** me.	Та надад тусалж *үзээрэй*.	
c	He *began* **talking** about a lot of things.	Тэр өдий төдий юм ярьж *гарлаа*.	
d	I **wrote down** everything he said *mechanically*. (without thinking)	Би түүний хэлсэн бүгдийг **бичиж** *алдлаа*.	 
e	He'll *probably* **worry**. ("His heart will probably suffer.")	Түүний сэтгэл нь зовж *мэднэ*.	
f	I'm **waiting** *patiently* for his letter.	Би түүнээс захиа **хүлээж** *сууна*.	
g	He *must* **have known** about this.	Тэр энэ тухай мэдсэн **байж** *таарна*	
h	**I've** *totally* **forgotten** (about this).	Би бүр таг **марта**ж *орхижээ*.	
i	He's on vacation in the countryside, *doing nothing*.	Тэр одоо хөдөө амарч *хэвтээ* биз.	
j	Those two **worked** *really hard* in order to finish this book.	Тэр хоёр энэ номыг луусгах гэж ёстой **үзэж** *тарсан*.	

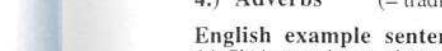
b) Together with the cVDS "–аад"

a	If you don't know something, the teacher ***will*** surely ***tell*** *you*.	Та нарт мэдэхгүй юм байвал багш тань хэлээд *өгнө* шүү дээ.	 
b	Would you please wait a bit; I want to **write** *down* this sentence.	Та жаахан хүлээж байна уу, би энэ өгүүлбэрийг **бичээд** *авъя*.	
c	***Try*** to bring to an end what (you) have started.	Эхэлсэн зүйлээ эцсийг нь хүртэл **оролдоод** *үз*.	

d	Most likely I can't translate this, but let me **try** *anyway*.	Би үүнийг орчуулж чадахгүй байх. Гэхдээ үзээд *алдъя*.	
e	I don't know this very well. But **let** me **buy** one *anyway*.	Би үүнийг сайн мэдэхгүй. Гэвч нэгийг **авааД** *орхиё*.*	

* In colloquial language the form "-аад орхи-" is sometimes written like this: "-аатах-".

c) Together with the cVDS "-н"

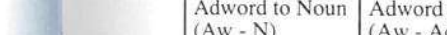
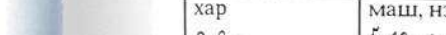
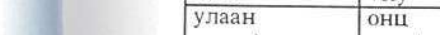
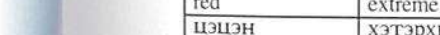
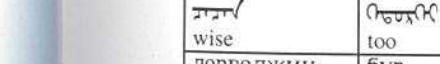
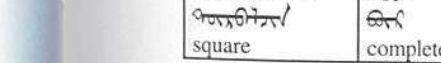
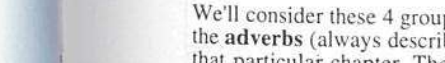
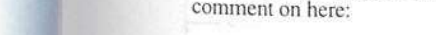
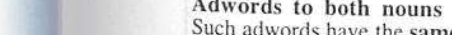
a	I *was about* **to say** something, *but I didn't*.	Би хэлэн *алдлаа*.	

1.1.2.2.5 The Conjunction Verb "гэ-"

A **peculiarity** of the Mongolian language is the **conjunction verb "гэ-"**, which probably originated from the verb "хэмэ-" = 'to say'. This conjunction verb, as the name indicates, has a **connecting function** between parts of speech and words of all kinds.

1.) As a full verb, it has the meaning **'to say, to talk'** and is very important in **direct and indirect speech** (see pages 398-400).

2.) It is also **used as a conjunction** (see page 309).

a	My name is Martin. ("[People] **call** me Martin.")	Намайг Мартин гэдэг.	
b	What was your name again? ("How is your name **called** again?")	Таны нэрийг хэн гэсэн билээ?	
c	I **am** about **to** cook my meal.	Би хоолоо хийх гэж байна.	
d	I **want to** meet him. *	Би түүнтэй уулзах гэсэн юм.	
e	The children went outside **to** play. *	Хүүхдүүд гэрээсээ тоглох гэж гарав.	
f	I came here **with the intention to** study the Mongolian language. *	Би монгол хэл сурах гэж энд ирсэн.	
g	- What does this person **want**? * - (He **wants**) **to** meet you. *	- Тэр хүн яах гэсэн юм бэ? - Тантай уулзах гэсэн юм.	
h	I **heard that** Michael is ill.	Михайлийн бие муу байгаа гэсэн.	
i	Michael **is said to** be ill.	Михайлийн бие муу байгаа гэнэ.	

* The construction "**-х гэ-**" (**ex. d-g**) is similar to the VDS "**-хаар**" (see page 166), but even stronger in its intention.

1.1.3 Adwords

We created the term 'adword' because neither the term 'adjective' nor the term 'adverb' can be so generally used as it would be needed to reflect the Mongolian language structure.

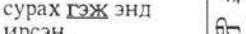
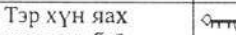
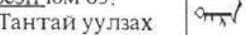
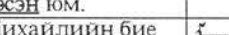
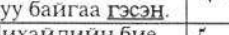
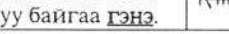
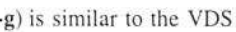
➔ **An 'Adword' is a word that describes the following word**

In Mongolian, such adwords could be used to describe:
1.) **Nouns** (= traditionally **'adjectives'** or '**numerals**')
2.) **Verbs** (= traditionally **'adverbs'**)
3.) **Adjectives** (= traditionally adverbs)
4.) **Adverbs** (= traditionally adverbs)

English example sentences:
1.) She's wearing a **nice** *sweater*. (Adword to 'sweater' = adjective)
I have **three** *dogs*. (Adword to 'dogs' = numeral)
2.) She *sings* **nicely**. (Adword to 'sings' = adverb)
3.) She's wearing a **very** *nice* sweater. (Adword to 'nice' as adjective = adverb)
4.) He works **very** slowly. (Adword to 'slowly' as adverb = adverb)

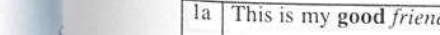
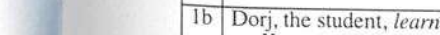
Some of the adwords can be used with both nouns and verbs. Therefore, the adwords can be divided into the **following four groups**:

Overview with examples:
(Compare also with the suffix system in Chapter 4 of the Appendix)

Adword to Noun (Aw - N)	Adword to Adword (Aw - Adw)	Adword to both Noun and Verb (Aw - N/V)	Adword to Verb (Aw - V)
хар black	маш, нэн, тун  very	сайн морь, сайн давхи-  **good** horse/to gallop **well**	сайтар  well, thoroughly
улаан red	онц  extreme	муу хүн, муу сур-  **bad** person, to study **poorly**	үтэр  immediately
цэцэн wise	хэтэрхий,дэндүү  too	хурдан машин, хурдан ява- fast car / to go **fast**	мөд soon
дөрвөлжин square	бүр completely	дэмий ажил, дэмий яри- **futile** work / to talk **in vain**	дандаа always

We'll consider these 4 groups, looking in detail at the **adjectives** (always describing a noun) and the **adverbs** (always describing a verb). We'll explain the **adwords** to adjectives and adverbs in that particular chapter. The third group of the chart above (adwords to nouns or verbs), we'll comment on here:

Adwords to both nouns and verbs:
Such adwords have the **same form** whether they describe nouns or verbs. In English, there are a few adwords like that, e.g. 'a **fast** car', 'to go **fast**', but usually the English form of an adverb is different from that of the adjective (e.g. nice-nice**ly**, quick-quick**ly**, etc.). In Mongolian, the **placement** of this kind of adword will determine whether it is used as an adjective (before a noun) or as an adverb (before a verb). In the following examples, we give the adwords to the *noun* [= adjectives] under (a), and the adwords to *verbs* [=adverbs] under (b).

1a	This is my **good** *friend*.	Энэ миний сайн *найз*.	
1b	Dorj, the student, *learned* **well**.	Оюутан Дорж сайн *сурав*.	

2a	I need a **small** *box*.	Надад <u>жижиг</u> *хайрцаг* хэрэгтэй.	[illegible]
2b	When looking down from high above, all things *appear* **small.**	Өндрөөс доош харахад бүх зүйл <u>жижиг</u> *харагдана*.	[illegible]
3a	What a **loud** *voice* you have!	Чи ямар <u>чанга</u> *дуутай* юм бэ.	[illegible]
3b	Baatar was frightened and *screamed* **loudly**.	Баатар айсандаа бо-лоод <u>чанга</u> *хашгирав*.	[illegible]
4a	Where did you buy this **nice** *blouse*?	Энэ <u>сайхан</u> цамцыг хаанаас авсан бэ?	[illegible]
4b	My older sister *sings* **nicely**.	Миний эгч <u>сайхан</u> *дуулдаг*.	[illegible]
5a	Dorj is a **close** *relative* of my mother.	Дорж манай ээжийн <u>ойр</u> *төрлийн* хүн.	[illegible]
5b	Dorj *lives* **close** to us.	Дорж манайхтай <u>ойр</u> *амьдардаг*.	[illegible]
6a	On a rainy day, one has to be careful when going downhill. ("...when walking on a **going-down** *road*.")	Бороотой өдөр <u>уруу</u> *замаар* болгоомжтой явах хэрэгтэй.	[illegible]
6b	A bad person has a negative influence on his friends. ("... *pulls* his friends **downward**.")	Муу хүн нөхдөө <u>уруу</u> *татдаг*.	[illegible]

1.1.3.1 ADJECTIVES (ADWORDS TO NOUNS)

1.1.3.1.1 Characteristics of Adjectives

1.) Adjectives ('adiectum' ='the added thing') have from their Latin origin a much wider meaning than they have today. These days, they usually refer to words that describe a noun. Since we have created the term 'adword' for a general meaning, 'adjective' in this book always refers to a **word describing a noun**.

2.) The Mongolian adjectives describe **colors, qualities, sizes, masses, characteristics, movements**, etc. of nouns:

a	colors:	улаан, шар	[illegible]	red, yellow
b	qualities:	хатуу, муу	[illegible]	hard, bad
c	sizes:	хонхор, хавтгай	[illegible]	hallow, flat, level
d	masses:	хол, нам	[illegible]	far, short
e	characteristics:	цэцэн, зоригтой	[illegible]	wise, brave
f	movement:	хурдан, удаан	[illegible]	fast, slow

3.) Mongolian adjectives **are never declined** unless they are used like a noun when the noun is dropped. Note that in this case, *the CbP "нь"* marks the omitted noun.

a	Give me **the green** ***one***.	Надад ногоон<u>ыг</u> *нь* өг.	[illegible]
b	Give this **little** ***one*** something to eat.	Энэ баг<u>ад</u> *нь* идэх юм өгөөч.	[illegible]

4.) Mongolian adjectives can be divided into **2 groups**:

original adjectives:	өндөр, ойр, хол	[illegible]	high, close, far
derived adjectives: (see pages 49-54)	модон	[illegible]	wooden
	аюултай	[illegible]	dangerous
	хиймэл	[illegible]	artificial
	халуун	[illegible]	hot

1.1.3.1.2 Placement of Adjectives

The adjectives can be used in two ways:

attributively (as adjectives)	I bought a **nice** shirt.	Би <u>гоё</u> цамц авлаа.	[illegible]
predicatively (as complements)	This shirt is **nice**.	Энэ цамц <u>гоё</u>.	[illegible]

1.1.3.1.2.1 Attributive Adjectives

Such adjectives always stand **in front** of the ***noun***.

a	My book is on a **big** ***table***.	Миний ном <u>том</u> *ширээн* дээр байна.	[illegible]
b	Here are many **new** ***notebooks***.	Энд олон <u>шинэ</u> *дэвтэр* байна.	[illegible]
c	Whose is the **white** *hat* on the stand?	Тавиур дээрх <u>цагаан</u> *малгай* хэнийх вэ?	[illegible]
d	Today the teacher taught us an **interesting** ***lesson***.	Өнөөдөр багш бидэнд <u>сонин</u> *хичээл* заав.	[illegible]
e	In order to draw nicely, one needs a **sharp** ***pencil***.	Сайхан зурахад <u>хурц</u> *харандаа* хэрэгтэй.	[illegible]
f	Our grandfather has two **roan** ***cows***.	Манай өвөөд 2 <u>алаг</u> *үнээ* бий.	[illegible]
g	I like **mottled** *material*.	Би <u>эрээн</u> *даавуунд* дуртай.	[illegible]

1.1.3.1..2.2 Predicative Adjectives (Complements)

These adjectives were originally also attributive adjectives because the ***noun*** that followed was dropped: **'He is big'** ('He is [a] big [***man***]'). Nowadays, the adjective, called a complement here, together with the verb (e.g. to be) builds the predicate. Therefore the name 'predicative adjectives' is given. Such adjectives are always at **the end of a sentence**. The auxiliary verb "бай–" or a particle could follow. See also pages 194-195, where we have explained when "бай–" is needed.

a	My father is **tall**.	Миний аав <u>өндөр</u>.	Хүүе нөө нүүгөөг ᠂᠂
b	This journey is **difficult**.	Энэ аялал <u>хэцүү</u>.	Нүг нүүлгэг ойлгөө ᠂᠂
c	Baatar's horse is **fast**.	Баатарын морь <u>хурдан</u>.	Өнгөөг ө/ хөөг нүүдэг/ ᠂᠂
d	His son is very **humble**.	Түүний хүү нь их <u>даруу</u>.	Үнөө/ ө өгөө ҮГ үгүй үнэтэй ᠂᠂
e	My dog is **cute**.	Миний нохой <u>хөөрхөн</u>.	Хүүе ҮӨӨГ өөрхөнө/ ᠂᠂
f	My book is **light blue**.	Миний ном <u>цэнхэр</u>.	Хүүе ҮӨГ цэнхэр ᠂᠂
g	In the eyes of her children, every mother is **nice**.	Эх хүн бүр үрлээ <u>сайхан</u>. (saying)	Үнэ өөгөө/ өөгүй нөө ү өнө/ үгүүлэг ᠂᠂
h	The spring season is **nice**.	Хаврын улирал <u>сайхан</u>.	Үнөөг ө/ нөөлгүг үгүүлэг ᠂᠂
i	This pig is very **fat**.	Энэ гахай их <u>бүдүүн</u>.	Нүг Үүлэг үнэ өөцөө/ ᠂᠂

1.1.3.1.3 Order of Adjectives

If there is more than one adjective for a word, they are written consecutively with **no commas** between. Exceptions are the predicative adjectives which **demand a conjunction** like *"бөгөөд" = 'and'* **(ex. d-e)**.

a	The **nice, high** mountain ranges of Khentii, Khangai, and Sayan (fromapoem)	Хэнтий, Хангай, Саяны <u>өндөр сайхан</u> нуруунууд	нөөгөө үүгүүг/ үгүүлүүг/ үүлүүд/ Үнөө ᠂ үнэүүг ᠂ үүг/ ө
b	The **clear, sacred** rivers of Kherlen, Onon, and Tuul (from a poem)	Хэрлэн, Онон, Туулын <u>тунгалаг ариун</u> мөрнүүд	үөөүүлгэг/ нүүлүүг/ нөөгүг/ үүлөөг Үүгэг/ ᠂ нөүг/ ᠂ үөөгэ/ гг/
c	I have bought a **small, blue** notebook.	Би нэг <u>жижигхэн цэнхэр</u> дэвтэр авлаа.	нөөГ ᠂᠂ ө нүнэ гггүүнэ/ гггүнэ үнөөгүг
d	My father is **tall** *and* **strong.**	Миний аав <u>өндөр</u> *бөгөөд* <u>хүчтэй</u>.	Хүүе нөө нөөгөөг ө үөгөөгүг ᠂᠂
e	This person is **graceful** *and* **humble.**	Энэ хүн <u>энэрэнгүй</u> *бөгөөд* <u>даруу</u>.	Нүг Өөгөг/ нүүлүүгэг ө үнэөө ᠂᠂

1.1.3.1.3.1 Rule

The adjective which is **most directly linked to the noun** needs to be placed **closest to it**. The more logically and definitely an adjective describes the noun, the closer it is placed. Generally, the following **rule** can be followed which differs from the English adjective order rule only in the adjectives that describe the origin of the noun.

Origin	*Value, Number*	*Mass*	*Age, Temperature*	*Size*	*Color*	*Material*	Noun

a	My **older brother's three, fat, brown** horses ate grass.	Миний <u>ахын гурван тарган бор</u> морь өвс идсэн.	Үнэү нөгөө нээүүг/ ᠂᠂ Үнэө нүг/ үүг/ ү үнэүөг/ үнэүүг/ өөүө

b	I bought a **modern, luxurious, fast, black** *Japanese* car.	Би нэг *Японы* <u>орчин үеийн гоёмсог хурдан хар</u> машин авсан.	нөөгүг/ ᠂᠂ ү үнэүүгүг/ ү үнэүөг/ үнэ ү Үүгэг/ өө нүнэ үүгэг/ ө нэүүг/ нөүг ү үүг/
c	Our grandfather has a **beautiful, small, square, black, locally-made, wooden** table.	Манай өвөөд *дотоодын* <u>гоё жижиг дөрвөлжин хар модон</u> ширээ бий.	үнэүүг өөГ ᠂᠂ үүгүүг үнэүөөгүг/ үнэ ү Үнөөг/ Үнэө нөөг өө үнэөөгүөөө үүг/ ү үнэүө

1.1.3.1.4 Degrees of Adjectives

There are 3 degrees:

Positive degree (normal):	big	nice	beautiful
Comparative degree:	bigger	nicer	**more** beautiful
Superlative degree:	**the** biggest	**the** nicest	**the most** beautiful

1.1.3.1.4.1 Positive Degree

The first degree is called 'positive' (Latin 'positivus' = 'given'). This degree is the same as in English.

a	He gave me **red** flowers.	Тэр надад <u>улаан</u> цэцэг өгөв.	үнэ/ нүө/ өө нөөгүүг/ гггүүг нөүөнэ ᠂᠂
b	I have a **fast** car.	Би <u>хурдан</u> машинтай.	ө үнэөөгөг/ Үүгүг/ үнг ᠂᠂
c	My older brother has many **cute** children.	Манай ах олон <u>хөөрхөн</u> хүүхэдтэй.	Үнэү нүг/ нөөг/ өөгүнэөг/ нөүнэг/ үнг ᠂᠂
d	There was an **interesting** book in the shop.	Дэлгүүрт <u>сонирхолтой</u> ном байсан.	үнөүөг өө үөүүгүүгөг нүг/ өүгүүүг/ ᠂᠂
e	His mother cooks well. ("...makes **good** meals.")	Ээж нь <u>сайхан</u> хоол хийдэг.	нүг үг үнэүүг/ үнөүөг/ Үөүү ᠂᠂
f	I won't go on a **dark** night.("through a dark...")	Би <u>харанхуй</u> шөнөөр явахгүй.	ө үнэүүгөг үөүг өг гөөнө нөүг ᠂᠂
g	Please show me that **red** shirt.	Та надад тэр <u>улаан</u> цамцыг үзүүлээч.	нөүгөөнөүг ᠂᠂ үнэ нүө/ өө үнэ/ нөөгүүг/ гггүг/ үг
h	**Sick** people need help.	<u>Өвчтэй</u> хүнд тусламж хэрэгтэй.	нөөгүгөөг Өөгөг/ өө үөгөөгүгүг Үнэүөг ᠂᠂

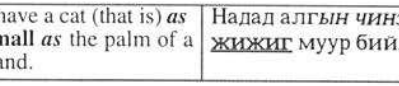
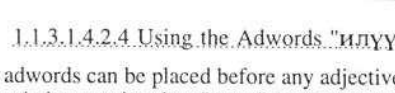
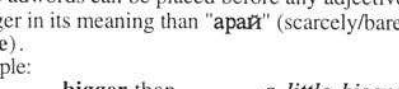
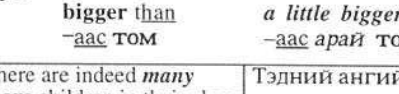
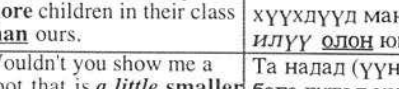
1.1.3.1.4.2 Comparative Degree

The second degree is called '**comparative**' and indicates already, by its name, that things are compared. This degree can be expressed in **many ways**:

1.1.3.1.4.2.1 Using Ablative Case and Adjective

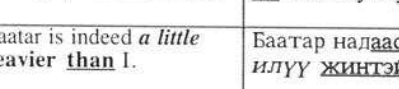
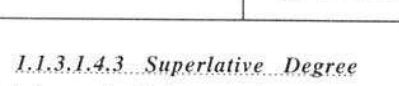
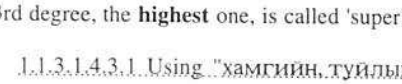
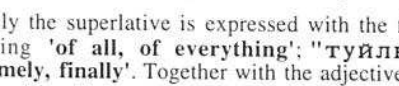
The most widely used comparative degree is built with the *ablative CS*. In poetic language (but also in colloquial language) this form is **very popular**.

a	You are **older** *than* I.	Та надаас <u>настай</u>.	үнэ/ нүө/ нүг/ нөөнөөг ᠂᠂
b	Alcohol is **more expensive** *than* beer.	Архи пивоноос <u>үнэтэй</u>.	нүүлө ЗЭӨ/ нүг/ нөүгөөг ᠂᠂
c	Germany is **more developed** *than* Mongolia.	Герман монголоос <u>хөгжилтэй</u>.	Үөүүг/ Үөүгүүгөг нүг/ Өөгүүгөөг ᠂᠂

d	They traveled by supersonic plane. ("...a plane **faster** ***than*** the sound.")	Тэд дуунаас хурдан онгоцоор явсан.	
e	Because Bold is wearing a snow-white shirt he looks very good. (... a shirt **whiter** ***than*** snow.")	Болд цаснаас цагаан цамц өмссөн тул их сайхан хараглаж байна.	
f	Your son came in, (having gotten) pitch-black! ("... **blacker** ***than*** ashes")	Хүү чинь хөөнөөс хар болчихсон орж ирлээ.	
g	My grandfather is a man with a golden heart. ("...with a heart **whiter** ***than*** milk.")	Өвгөн аав минь сүүнээс цагаан сэтгэлтэй хүн дээ.	
h	My son, my heart's treasure, come here. ("...my **more precious** ***than*** gold son...")	Алтнаас үнэтэй хүү минь, нааш ир.	

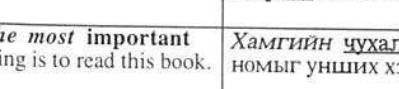
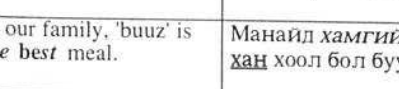
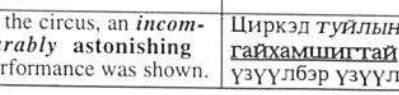
1.1.3.1.4.2.2 Using Repeated Adjectives and the Ablative Case

This comparative degree form is equivalent to the English 'whiter than white', 'hotter than hot', etc. which is not widely used. Instead, we would say '**severely** cold', '**extremely** difficult', or in very colloquial language '**bloody** cold', '**damn** cold'.
Rule: The **adjective is repeated** using the *ablative CS* in between.

a	Outside it's **severely cold**. ("...**colder** ***than*** **cold.**")	Гадаа хүйтнээс хүйтэн байна.	
b	I like eating **rock-hard** 'aaruul'*. ("...**harder** ***than*** **hard.**") [*dried curds]	Би хатуугаас хатуу ааруул идэх дуртай.	
c	Only I was given an **extremely difficult** task. ("**more difficult** ***than*** **difficult.**")	Надад л хүндээс хүнд даалгавар өгчээ.	
d	Your sister is **incredibly sweet.** (...**sweeter** ***than*** **sweet**)	Чиний дүү хөөрхөөс хөөрхөн охин доо.	

1.1.3.1.4.2.3 Using the Postpositions "адил, шиг, мэт, чинээ"

The English word 'like' can be translated with "**мэт**" (as, like, similar), "**шиг**" (like, as, similar), "**адил**" (same, identical) or "**чинээ**" (as big as, equivalent) and be used for a comparison. The words "**мэт**" **and** "**шиг**" could be interchanged with each other, but it's good to make sure that the sentence as a whole sounds good. "**адил**" demands either *comitative* or *genitive CS* (**ex. c**), "**чинээ**" needs *genitive CS* (**ex. d-e**) and is only used for things that can be measured.

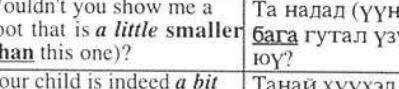
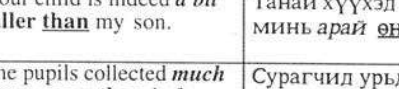
a	"My mother has a heart ***as*** **white** ***as*** milk."	Миний ээж сүү *шиг* (*мэт*) цагаан сэтгэлтэй	
b	He is ***as*** **cunning** ***as*** a fox.	Тэр үнэг *мэт (шиг)* зальтай.	
c	Children wish to become ***as*** **famous** a singer* ***as*** Michael Jackson. (*"actor")	Хүүхдүүд Майкл Жексонтэй адил алдартай жүжигчин болохыг хүсдэг.	
d	In our school there was a fish ***as*** **big** ***as*** a head.	Манай сургуульд толгойн *чинээ* том загас байсан.	

e	I have a cat (that is) ***as*** **small** ***as*** the palm of a hand.	Надад алгын *чинээ* жижиг муур бий.	

1.1.3.1.4.2.4 Using the Adwords "илүү, арай"

These adwords can be placed before any adjectives. "**илүү**" (excessive/superfluous/too much) is stronger in its meaning than "**арай**" (scarcely/barely/a little). Sometimes they can be used together (**ex. e**).
Example:

big	**bigger** than	***a little bigger*** than	***much*** **bigger** than
том	-аас том	-аас *арай* том	-аас *илүү* том

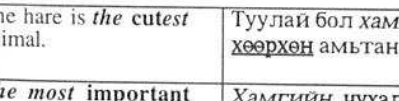
a	There are indeed ***many*** **more** children in their class **than** ours.	Тэдний ангийн хүүхдүүд манайхнаас *илүү* олон юм.	
b	Wouldn't you show me a boot that is ***a little*** **smaller** (**than** this one)?	Та надад (үүнээс) *арай* бага гутал үзүүлэхгүй юү?	
c	Your child is indeed ***a bit*** **taller** **than** my son.	Танай хүүхэд хүүгээс минь *арай* өндөр юм.	
d	The pupils collected ***much*** **more** paper **than** before.	Сурагчид урьдаас *илүү* их цаас цуглуулав.	
e	Baatar is indeed ***a little*** **heavier** **than** I.	Баатар надаас *арай* *илүү* жинтэй юм.	

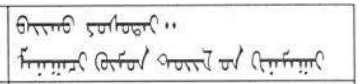
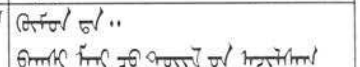
1.1.3.1.4.3 *Superlative Degree*

The 3rd degree, the **highest** one, is called 'superlative'. There are **many ways** to express it:

1.1.3.1.4.3.1 Using "хамгийн, туйлын"

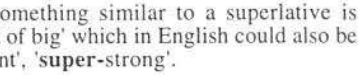
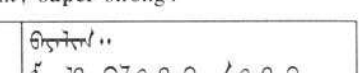
Usually the superlative is expressed with the following two words: "**хамгийн**" with the meaning '**of all, of everything**'; "**туйлын**" with the meaning '**extraordinary, extremely, finally**'. Together with the adjective 'big', we then get the following superlatives: 'bigger than all', 'extremely big', 'the biggest'. In **colloquial language**, mainly "**хамгийн**" is used, and "**туйлын**" is more for the written official language.
Sometimes other words are used to express a superlative, but only in **poems, songs,** or other written forms:
"**хавьгүй**"(incomparable), "**ижилгүй**"(matchless/splendid), "**зүйрлэшгүй**"(incomparable)

a	The hare is ***the*** **cutest** animal.	Туулай бол *хамгийн* хөөрхөн амьтан.	
b	***The most*** **important** thing is to read this book.	*Хамгийн* чухал нь тэр номыг унших хэрэгтэй.	
c	In our family, 'buuz' is ***the*** **best** meal.	Манайд *хамгийн* сайхан хоол бол бууз юм.	
d	In the circus, an ***incomparably*** **astonishing** performance was shown.	Циркэд *туйлын* гайхамшигтай үзүүлбэр үзүүлэв.	

e	Guards must be ***incredibly*** **attentive.**	Манаач хүн *туйлын* хянамгай байх ёстой.	
f	Our teacher is an ***incredibly*** **industrious** person!	Багш маань ч *туйлын* ажилсаг хүн дээ.	

1.1.3.1.4.3.2 Using Genitive Case and Repetition

When using a **double adjective with *genitive CS***, something similar to a superlative is formed with the meaning 'the highest of high'/'the biggest of big' which in English could also be expressed with prewords like '**all-**powerful', '**omni**potent', '**super-**strong'.

a	Knowledge is the highest good. ("...**the highest of the high** wealths").	Мэдлэг бол дээдийн дээд баялаг.	
b	In order to come to Mongolia, we traversed a **super** long way. ("**the longest of long** ways.")	Бид Монголд ирэхийн тулд холын хол зам туулсан.	

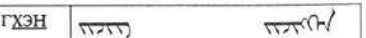
1.1.3.1.5 Modification of Adjectives

Through modification, the **meaning of an adjective can be slightly changed** without changing it to another word category. In Mongolian this is done in two ways:
In order to **weaken the meaning**, suffixes are used which are called **diminutive suffixes**.
In order to **intensify the meaning, adwords** are used. (There is only **one** intensifying suffix.)

1.1.3.1.5.1 Modification with Adword Suffixes (AwS's)

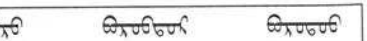
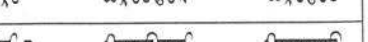
1.1.3.1.5.1.1 Diminutive AwS "-хан[4]"

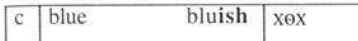
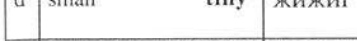
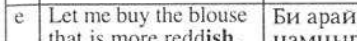
This AwS serves to build **diminutive and affectionate forms**. In English, such forms can be expressed with the suffix **'-ish'** in words like 'redd**ish**', 'yellow**ish**', or with an adverb like **'quite', 'rather'**.
As mentioned before, the meaning changes only slightly. The exception is "сайн" ---> "сайхан" (**ex. f***). Note, that with some adjectives, the final consonant ***"n"*** is dropped when this suffix is added (**ex. e-f**).

a	small	**tiny, minute**	жижиг	жижигхэн	
b	blue	bluish	цэнхэр	цэнхэрхэн	
c	beautiful	**pretty**	гоё	гоёхон	
d	small	**quite** small	бага	багахан	
e	green	greenish	ногоон	ногоохон	
f	good	**nice***	сайн	сайхан*	

1.1.3.1.5.1.2 Diminutive AwS's "-втар[4] and "-луу[2]"

These two AwS's are similar in meaning to the "-хан" suffix, but are mainly used for **colors** and **sizes** and are very **popular in colloquial** language:
-(а)втар, -(э)втэр, -(о)втор, -(ө)втөр, -луу, -лүү.
like '-ish', but used for **comparison** **ex.e**
like '-ish', but used more **generally** **ex.f**

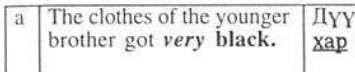
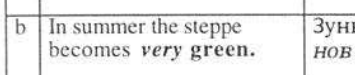
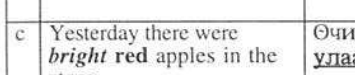
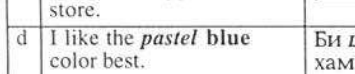
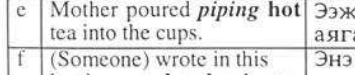
a	brown	brownish	бор	боровтор бордуу	
b	black	blackish	хар	харавтар хардуу	

c	blue	bluish	хөх	хөхөвтөр хөхдүү	
d	small	**tiny**	жижиг	жижгэвтэр жижигдүү	
e	Let me buy the blouse that is more reddish.		Би арай улаавтар цамцыг авъя.		
f	I like reddish (all kinds of red) blouses.		Би улаандуу цамцад дуртай.		

1.1.3.1.5.1.3 Intensifying AwS "-в"

This AwS serves to intensify mainly adjectives which express **colors, sizes, and temperatures**. In English translation, we'd probably use the word **'very'** most of the time.

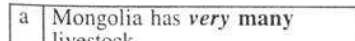
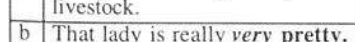
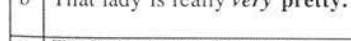
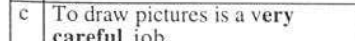
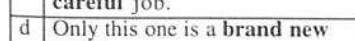
Rule: Take the first syllable of the adjective and add "***-в***", then the adjective follows as a whole.
Example: white = "ца-гаан" ; very white = "*цав* цагаан"
Notice that adjectives that can serve as **adverbs** could also take this AwS (**ex.f**).

a	The clothes of the younger brother got ***very*** **black.**	Дүүгийн хувцас *хав* хар болжээ.	
b	In summer the steppe becomes ***very*** **green.**	Зуны улиралд тал хээр *нов* ногоон болдог.	
c	Yesterday there were ***bright*** **red** apples in the store.	Өчигдөр дэлгүүрт *ув* улаан алим байсан.	
d	I like the ***pastel*** **blue** color best.	Би *цэв* цэнхэр өнгөнд хамгийн дуртай.	
e	Mother poured ***piping*** **hot** tea into the cups.	Ээж *хав* халуун цай аягалав.	
f	(Someone) wrote in this book ***very*** **clearly** about plants.	Энэ номонд ургамлын тухай *тов* тодорхой бичжээ.	

1.1.3.1.5.2 Modification with Adwords

1.1.3.1.5.2.1 Adwords "маш, их, тун, нэн, даан" with the Meaning 'very'

The adwords "**маш**" (very), "**их**" (big, very), "**тун**" (extraordinary), "**нэн**" (even more), and "**даан**" (extreme) show the **degree of the characteristics** the adjective expresses. They can be translated in many different ways. "**тун**" and "**нэн**" are almost exclusively used in the **written language** (poems, songs, or very official: **ex. c-e**). In the **colloquial language**, "**маш**" and "**их**" are most widely used (**ex. a-b**), but among the youth words like "**аймаар**" (frighteningly) have become popular. "**даан**" tends to have a **negative** taste to it (**ex. e**).

a	Mongolia has ***very*** **many** livestock.	Монгол орон *маш* олон малтай.	
b	That lady is really ***very*** **pretty.**	Тэр хүүхэн *маш* хөөрхөн юм.	
c	To draw pictures is a **very careful** job.	Зураг зурах *тун* нарийн ажил.	
d	Only this one is a **brand new** model.	Зөвхөн энэ л *нэн* шинэ загвар.	
e	This is **far too** expensive! ("This is with an ***extremely big*** **price**.")	Энэ *даан* их үнэтэй юм даа.	

1.1.3.1.5.2.2 Adwords "хэтэрхий, дэндүү, дааны" with the Meaning 'too'

These adwords have the meaning **'too...', 'extremely ...', 'over...'**. The strongest in meaning and most **emotional** one is "дааны" (**ex. d**). For a more matter-of-fact statement the other two are used, whereas "хэтэрхий" is stronger than "дэндүү".

a	These trousers are *too* **expensive**.	Энэ өмд *дэндүү* үнэтэй байна.	
b	My father is *too* **strict**.	Миний аав *хэтэрхий* чанга хүн.	
c	You made *too* **many** mistakes.	Чи *хэтэрхий* олон алдаа хийсэн.	
d	You embezzled *too* **much** money. ("You ate far too much money!")	Чи *дааны* их мөнгө идсэн юм.	

1.1.3.1.5.2.3 Different Adwords with the Meaning 'absolutely, totally'

For some selected adjectives there exist **special adwords** which express also a kind of superlative. Sometimes such an adword can only be used for one single adjective.

a	***absolutely*** full	full ***to bursting***	*пиг* дүүрэн	
b	***totally*** wrong	***dead*** wrong	*тэс* буруу	
	completely different		*тэс* өөр / өндөө	
c	***absolutely*** stupid	***thick-headed***	*шал* тэнэг/мангар	
	totally drunk	***three sheets to the wind***	*шал* согтуу	
	totally wrong	***dead*** wrong	*шал* буруу	
d	***completely*** blind	***as blind as a bat***	*таг* сохор	
	completely calm	***deathly*** silent	*таг* дуугүй	
	completely closed	***closed tight as a drum***	*таг* битүү	
e	***totally*** young	***in the bloom of youth***	*цэл* залуу	
	completely blue	***ice***-blue	*цэл* хөх	
	absolutely cold	***ice-cold***	*цэл* хүйтэн	
f	***absolutely*** new	***brand***-new	*цоо* шинэ	
g	***absolutely*** black	***pitch***-black	*пад/тас* хар	
	absolutely dark	***pitch***-dark	*пад/тас* харанхуй	
h	***totally*** red	***fiery***-red	*час* улаан	
	totally hot	***fiery***-hot	*час* халуун	
i	***totally*** grey	***iron***-grey	*цал* бууран	

1.1.3.2 ADVERBS (ADWORDS TO VERBS)

This is one of the 4 subgroups within the adwords. Adverbs **always describe a verb**. In the Mongolian language, adverbs haven't developed a lot. This is already evident from the introduction to the adwords. There are only **a few original adverbs**. Many of the English adverbs are built in Mongolian with either the instrumental or the dative-locative CS, or in a different analytical way.

In this Part, we will divide today's adverbs into **grammatical groups** and then discuss their **usage** (in semantic groups).

1.1.3.2.1 Original Adverbs

Under original adverbs, we understand words that **aren't declined** and **only exist as adverbs**. This means that such words don't serve at the same time as an adjective (like "сайн") or as a noun (like "орой").

a	Please think **carefully**.	Чи сайтар бодоорой.	
c	**Recently**, he came back from the countryside.	Тэр саяхөдөөнөөс ирсэн.	
d	She will not come **soon**.	Тэр мөд ирэхгүй.	
e	(We) have to stop that matter **at once.**	Энэ явдлыг даруй зогсоох хэрэгтэй.	
f	Let me talk to you **later**.	Би тантай аяар ярилцъя.	
g	In the hospital, (you) have to talk **quietly**.	Эмнэлэгт аяар ярих хэрэгтэй.	
h	He **purposely** offended me.	Тэр намайг зориуд гомдоосон.	

1.1.3.2.2 Passive-Root Adverbs

These adverbs can only be used **with certain verbs**. In the same way that passive roots (see page 35-36) bear **a certain meaning in themselves**, so also do these adverbs. Many of them could be translated as 'broken', but the adverbs tell us how something got broken. The chart below shows the difference between transitive and intransitive verbs. The two transitive forms differ in the following way:

- the verb with the adverb (e.g. "хуга цохи–") expresses an action that hasn't been planned.
- the verb with the transitive verb suffix (e.g. "хугал–") expresses an action that has been planned. This difference is clearly evident with the verb:
  "задал–" = 'to analyze' or 'to purposely take apart'
  "зад цохи–" = 'to break in pieces'

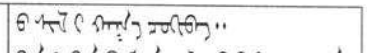
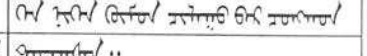
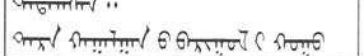
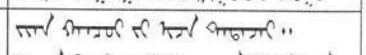
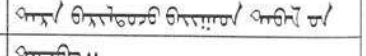
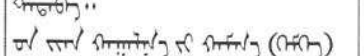
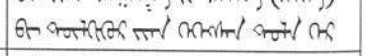
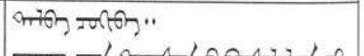
	Intransitive (happens by itself)		Transitive (verb)		Transitive (adverb)= neg. meaning	
a	хугара–	to break in two	хугал–	to break in two	хуга цохи–	to break in pieces to smash up
b	хагара–	to break	хагал–	to break	хага цохи–	to break in pieces,
c	задра–	to fall apart	задал–	to analyse, to take apart	зад цохи–	to smash up

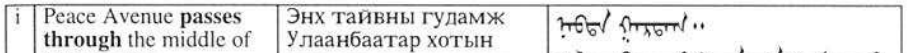
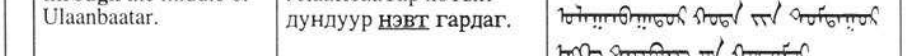
This pen **broke into pieces**.	Энэ үзэг хугарсан.	
He discouraged me. (He **broke** my enthusiasm/my interest.)	Тэр миний урмыг хугалсан.	
He **smashed** this pen.	Тэр энэ үзгийг хуга цохисон.	

1.1.3.2.2.1 Overview of Passive-Root Adverbs

	Adword		with the following verb:	English translation
a	хага		цохи–, тата–	to break **in pieces** (e.g. dishes)
b	хуга		цохи–, тата–, өшиглө–	to break **apart** (e.g. long thin things)
c	яз		цохи–, тата–	to burst, to tear (e.g. material, skin)
d	хамх (хэмх)		цохи–,өшиглө–, дэвсэ–, тата–	to shatter, to splinter (e.g. big hard things)
e	дэлбэ		цохи–, тата–	to smash, to destroy (like a bomb or dynamite)
f	бут		цохи–, ниргэ–	to break up, to scatter (e.g. to win over an army)
g	зад		цохи–, тата–, өшиглө–	to break **apart** (e.g. something that holds together)
h	няц		цохи–, дара–	to crush, to mash, to squash (e.g. insects, soft things)
i	нэвт		хара–, мэдэ–, гар–, цооло–, нүхлэ–	to look **through**, to go **through** (e.g. wall, door, window)
j	мулт		цохи–, тата–, дара–	to knock **out**, to tear **out**, (e.g. joints, eye)
k	суга		тата–	to pull **out** (e.g. book in between two things)

1.1.3.2.2.2 Usage of Passive-Root Adverbs

a	Someone **broke** the glass of the window with stones.	Хэн нэгэн хүн чулуугаар цонхны шилийг хага цохив.	
b	He **broke** the door handle.	Тэр хаалганы бариулыг хуга татсан.	
c	He wrestled and **tore apart** the sleeve of his 'deel'.	Тэр барилдаж байгаад дээлийнхээ ханцуйг яз татжээ.	
d	Because I had lost my key, I **crashed through** the door of my flat.	Би түлхүүрээ гээсэн тул гэрийнхээ хаалгыг хамх (хэмх) татав.	
e	The soldiers **broke up** the enemy's blockade.	Цэргүүд дайсны бүслэлтийг дэлбэ цохив.	
f	In the year 1939, the united forces of the Soviet Union and Mongolia **destroyed** the Japanese army at the Khalkh river.	1939 оны зун Монгол, Зөвлөлтийн хамтарсан хүч Халх голд японы милитаризмыг бут цохив.	
g	My son played football and **tore** his shoe **apart**.	Миний хүү хөл бөмбөг тоглоод гутлаа зад татжээ.	
h	The eggs in the bag were **crushed**.	Цүнхэн дотор байсан өндөг няц дарагджээ.	

i	Peace Avenue **passes through** the middle of Ulaanbaatar.	Энх тайвны гудамж Улаанбаатар хотын дундуур нэвт гардаг.	
j	(Someone) **knocked out** his eye.	Түүний нүдийг мулт цохижээ.	
k	A strong wind **uprooted** a tree.	Хүчтэй салхи ургаа модыг суга татав.	

1.1.3.2.3 Modification of Adverbs

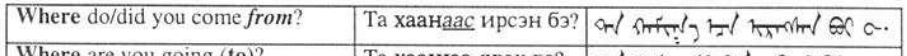
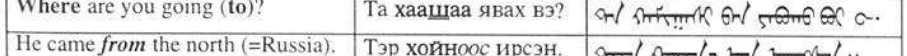
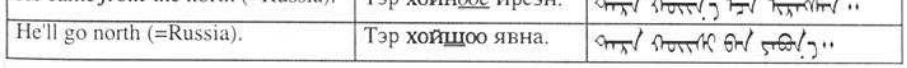
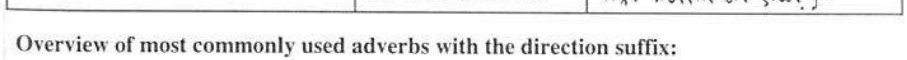
Adverbs can be modified in **three ways**:
- Adding a suffix (declension)
- Using them repeatedly or in combinations
- Using adwords

1.1.3.2.3.1 Modification with Adword Suffixes (AwS's)

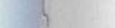
If adverbs are modified with a suffix, they can be called **derivative adverbs** in contrast to the original adverbs. Such derivative adverbs always have their origin with another word. With most of these adverbs, the **derivation is still visible** today. Many of them use the **RS** (see page 108).

1.1.3.2.3.1.1 Direction AwS "–(г)ш"

If the direction suffix "–(г)ш" is added, the adverb **shows a direction** and answers the question **'where to?'** The opposite direction form is built with the *Ablative CS* (question 'where from?').

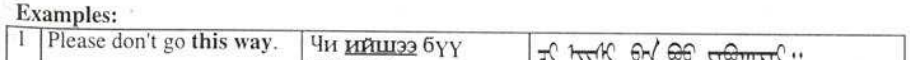
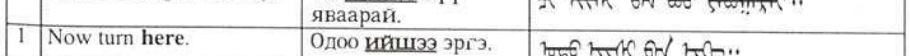
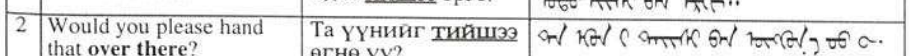
Where do/did you come *from*?	Та хаан*аас* ирсэн бэ?	
Where are you going (**to**)?	Та хаа**шаа** явах вэ?	
He came *from* the north (=Russia).	Тэр хойно*оос* ирсэн.	
He'll go north (=Russia).	Тэр хойш**оо** явна.	

Overview of most commonly used adverbs with the direction suffix:

1	ийш(ээ)		this way ("to here")	2	тийш(ээ)		that way ("to there")
3	наашаа		towards me	4	цаашаа		away from me
5	гадагш(аа)		outwards	6	дотогш(оо)		inwards
7	хойш(оо)		northwards	*			southwards
8	арагш(аа)		backwards	9	урагш(аа)		forwards
10	дээш(ээ)		upwards	11	доошоо		downwards

* This suffix isn't added to "өмнө"; "урагш(аа)" is also used in the meaning 'southwards'.

Examples:

1	Please don't go **this way**.	Чи ийшээ бүү яваарай.	
1	Now turn **here**.	Одоо ийшээ эргэ.	
2	Would you please hand that **over there**?	Та үүнийг тийшээ өгнө үү?	

2	Now **towards** the left.	Одоо зүүн гар тийшээ.	ᠣᠳᠣ ᠵᠡᠭᠦᠨ ᠭᠠᠷ ᠲᠡᠶᠢᠱᠢᠶᠡ ᠪᠠᠢᠨ᠃᠃
1 2	Today, I went **all over the place** for the whole day.	Өнөөдөр би өдөржин **ийш тийш** явлаа.	ᠡᠨᠡᠳᠡᠷ ᠪᠢ ᠡᠳᠡᠷᠵᠢᠨ ᠶᠠᠪᠤᠯᠴᠠᠭᠠᠯᠠᠭᠰᠠᠨ᠃᠃ ᠡᠨᠡᠲᠡᠭᠡᠨ ᠲᠤᠭᠤᠷᠢᠭ ᠲᠡᠭᠢᠱᠢ ᠶᠠᠪᠤᠯᠴᠠᠭᠠᠯᠠᠭᠰᠠᠨ᠃᠃
1 2	Please excuse me (that) I made you run **here and there** so many times.	Би таныг **ийшээ тийшээ** олон явуулсанд уучлаарай.	ᠪᠢ ᠲᠠᠨᠢᠭ ᠠᠯᠢᠪᠠ ᠶᠠᠪᠤᠭᠤᠯᠵᠤ ᠣᠯᠠᠨ ᠤᠳᠠᠭᠠ ᠶᠠᠪᠤᠭᠤᠯᠵᠤ ᠲᠡᠭᠡᠨᠳ ᠤᠤᠴᠯᠠᠭᠠᠷᠠᠢ᠃᠃
3	Come **here**!	**Наашш** ир!	ᠨᠠᠭᠰᠢ ᠢᠷᠡ –᠃
3	Pass me that book, please. (Please take that book and give it to [me] here.)	Тэр номыг **наашш** аваад өгөөч.	ᠲᠡᠷᠡ ᠨᠣᠮᠢᠭ ᠠᠪᠠᠭᠠᠳ ᠤᠭᠡᠭᠡᠭᠡᠢ᠃᠃
4	From here **onwards,** please go alone.	Та **цаашаа** ганцаараа яваарай.	ᠲᠠ ᠴᠢᠨᠭ ᠭᠠᠷ ᠴᠢᠮᠠᠭ ᠭᠠᠵᠠᠷ ᠲᠤᠭᠠᠨᠵᠢᠶᠠᠷᠠᠢ᠃᠃
4	Please go **on** talking.	Та **цаашаа** яриарай.	ᠲᠠ ᠴᠢᠨᠭ ᠭᠠᠷ ᠰᠠᠯᠤᠭᠤᠯᠵᠠᠷᠠᠢ᠃᠃
3 4	People and animals keep on going **back and forth** over this bridge.	Энэ гүүрээр хүн мал **нааш цаашш** үргэлж явж байдаг.	ᠡᠨᠡ ᠭᠦᠦᠷᠡᠭᠡᠷ ᠬᠦᠨ ᠮᠠᠯ ᠲᠡᠪᠴᠢᠭᠡᠳ ᠪᠠᠭᠠᠰᠠᠨ᠃᠃ ᠨᠠᠭᠰᠢ ᠴᠠᠭᠰᠢ ᠭᠠᠷ ᠴᠠᠭᠰᠢ ᠪᠤᠴᠠᠵᠤ ᠶᠠᠪᠵᠤ ᠪᠠᠢᠳᠠᠭ
5	He ran **out** of the yurt.	Тэр гэрээс **гадагш** гүйн гарав.	ᠲᠡᠷᠡ ᠭᠡᠷᠡᠡᠴᠡ ᠭᠠᠳᠠᠭᠰᠢ ᠭᠦᠢᠵᠦ ᠭᠠᠷᠠᠪ᠃᠃
6	Would you please come **in** and close the door?	Та **дотогшоо** орж хаалгаа хаана уу.	ᠲᠠ ᠳᠤᠲᠤᠭᠰᠢᠭᠤᠭ᠎ᠠ ᠣᠷᠵ ᠬᠠᠭᠠᠯᠭᠠᠭᠠ ᠬᠠᠭᠠᠵᠠ ᠤᠤ᠃᠃ ᠲᠠ ᠳᠤᠲᠤᠭᠰᠢᠭᠤᠭ᠎ᠠ ᠣᠷᠵ ᠬᠠᠭᠠᠯᠭᠠᠭᠠ ᠬᠠᠭᠠᠵᠠ ᠤᠤ᠃᠃
7	He always goes **north**. (= to a country in the north)	Тэр дандаа **хойшоо** явдаг.	ᠲᠡᠷᠡ ᠳᠠᠨᠳᠠ ᠬᠤᠶᠢᠱᠤᠭᠤ ᠶᠠᠪᠳᠠᠭ᠃᠃
8	This car drives **backwards**.	Энэ машин **арагшаа** ухарч байна.	ᠡᠨᠡ ᠮᠠᠰᠢᠨ ᠠᠷᠠᠭᠰᠢᠶᠠ ᠤᠬᠠᠷᠴᠤ ᠪᠠᠢᠨᠠ᠃᠃ ᠡᠨᠡ ᠮᠠᠰᠢᠨ ᠠᠷᠠᠭᠰᠢᠶᠠ ᠭᠠᠷ ᠪᠠᠢᠨᠠ
9	Many riders go **to the south**.	Олон морьтой хүн **урагшаа** явж байна.	ᠣᠯᠠᠨ ᠮᠣᠷᠢᠲᠠᠢ ᠬᠦᠨ ᠤᠷᠠᠭᠰᠢᠶᠠ ᠶᠠᠪᠵᠤ ᠪᠠᠢᠨᠠ᠃᠃ ᠣᠯᠠᠨ ᠬᠤᠨ ᠤᠷᠠᠭᠰᠢ ᠭᠠᠷ ᠪᠠᠢᠨᠠ
9	Take a step **forward**!	Нэг алхам **урагш** гар.	ᠨᠢᠭᠡ ᠠᠯᠬᠠᠮ ᠤᠷᠠᠭᠰᠢ ᠭᠠᠷ –᠃
10	Do sit **up**! ("up" means a respected place away from the door)	Та **дээшээ** суу!	ᠲᠠ ᠳᠤᠷᠤᠭᠰᠢ ᠪᠠᠢ ᠰᠤᠭᠤ –᠃
10	The plane **took off**.	Онгоц **дээш** хөөрөв.	ᠣᠩᠭᠣᠴ ᠳᠤᠷᠤᠭᠰᠢ ᠬᠥᠥᠷᠥᠪ᠃᠃
11	The plane fell **down(ward)**.	Онгоц **доош** унав.	ᠣᠩᠭᠣᠴ ᠳᠣᠣᠰᠢ ᠤᠨᠠᠪ᠃᠃
10 11	Many times I went **up and down** these stairs looking for you.	Би таныг эрж энэ шатаар **дээш доош** олон удаа явлаа.	ᠳᠤᠷᠤᠭᠰᠢ ᠪᠢᠳᠡ ᠬᠠᠢᠵᠤ ᠪᠤᠴᠠᠵᠤ ᠪᠠᠢᠨᠠ᠃᠃ ᠪᠢ ᠲᠠᠨᠢᠭ ᠡᠷᠵᠦ ᠡᠨᠡ ᠱᠠᠲᠠᠭᠠᠷ ᠳᠤᠭᠤᠷᠢᠭ ᠳᠤᠷᠤᠭᠰᠢ

1.1.3.2.3.1.2 Movement AwS "–уур/–үүр"

If the movement suffix is added, the adverb expresses a **movement within a certain place**. It answers the questions **'Where abouts?'/'[On] which way?'** Compare this with the usage of the instrumental CS because this suffix has been **derived from the Instrumental CS**. This can be clearly seen with examples 1 and 2 : үүгээр (ᠦᠭᠡᠭᠡᠷ), түүгээр (ᠲᠦᠭᠡᠭᠡᠷ). Note that we have omitted the RS in Classical Script (ᠳᠤᠷ/) in the chart below (due to lack of space).

Overview of the most commonly used adverbs with this suffix:
(The English translation may poorly reflect some of these movements)

1	үүгээр(ээ)	ᠦᠭᠡᠭᠡᠷ	around here	2	түүгээр(ээ)	ᠲᠦᠭᠡᠭᠡᠷ	around there
3	наагуур(аа)	ᠨᠠᠭᠤᠤᠷ	along/on this side	4	цаагуур(аа)	ᠴᠠᠭᠤᠤᠷ	along/on that side
5	гадуур(аа)	ᠭᠠᠳᠤᠤᠷ	outdoors	6	дотуур(аа)	ᠳᠤᠲᠤᠤᠷ	indoors
7	хойгуур(аа)	ᠬᠤᠶᠢᠭᠤᠤᠷ	in the north	8	өмнүүр(ээ)	ᠥᠮᠨᠦᠦᠷ	in the south
9	ардуур(аа)	ᠠᠷᠳᠤᠤᠷ	behind	10	урдуур(аа)	ᠤᠷᠳᠤᠤᠷ	in front
11	дээгүүр(ээ)	ᠳᠡᠭᠦᠦᠷ	above	12	доогуур(аа)	ᠳᠣᠭᠤᠤᠷ	below

Examples:

1	In the old days, the army of Genghis Khan passed by **here.**	Дээр үед **үүгээр** Чингис хааны цэрэг өнгөрсөн.	ᠳᠡᠭᠡᠷ ᠦ ᠴᠠᠭᠲᠤ ᠶᠠᠪᠤᠯᠴᠠᠭᠰᠠᠨ᠃᠃ ᠣᠩᠬᠤ ᠨ ᠬᠠᠭᠠ ᠭᠤ ᠬᠡᠪᠢᠭ ᠴᠡᠷᠢᠭ
2	Now it's raining heavily **over there**.	Одоо **түүгээр** их бороо орж байна.	ᠤᠳᠤᠭ᠃᠃ ᠣᠳᠣ ᠥᠷᠬᠥᠭᠡᠨ ᠪᠣᠷᠤᠭ᠎ᠠ ᠣᠷᠵᠤ ᠪᠠᠢᠨᠠ
3	You have to get everything done **over at your** (place).	Та нар **наагуураа** бүх зүйлийг амжуулах хэрэгтэй.	ᠲᠠᠨᠠᠷ ᠤᠨ ᠨᠤᠭᠤᠭᠤᠷᠠᠨᠳᠠ ᠪᠦᠬᠦ ᠵᠦᠢᠯᠢᠶᠡᠨ᠃᠃ ᠲᠠ ᠨᠠᠷ ᠤᠨ ᠨᠤᠭᠤᠭᠤᠷ ᠲᠤᠯᠠ ᠪᠦᠬᠦ ᠵᠦᠢᠯ ᠢ
4	I don't know what he thinks in the back of his mind. (" what he thinks **over there**/away from me.")	Тэр **цаагуураа** юу бодож байгааг би мэдэхгүй.	ᠤᠳᠤᠭ᠎ᠠ ᠨᠠᠷ ᠲᠡᠷᠡ ᠬᠡᠴᠦᠭᠡ ᠪᠣᠳᠤᠵᠤ ᠲᠡᠷᠡ ᠴᠠᠭᠤᠤᠷ ᠲᠤᠯᠠ ᠰᠡᠳᠬᠡᠵᠤ
5	When walking **outdoors** in the cold season, one has to wear warm clothes.	Хүйтний улиралд **гадуур** явахдаа дулаан хувцас өмсөх хэрэгтэй.	ᠬᠦᠢᠲᠡᠨ ᠤᠯᠢᠷᠠᠯᠳ ᠭᠠᠳᠤᠤᠷ ᠶᠠᠪᠬᠤ ᠳᠤᠯᠠᠭᠠᠨ ᠪᠤᠰᠤ᠂ ᠬᠦᠢᠲᠡᠨ᠂ ᠬᠤᠭᠤᠴᠠᠭ ᠥᠰᠥᠬᠡᠷ᠃ ᠪ ᠬᠡᠪᠲᠡᠢ ᠴᠢ ᠬᠦᠨ
6	A fly is flying **around** in this room.	Нэг ялаа өрөөн **дотуур** нисээд байна.	ᠨᠢᠭᠡ ᠬᠥᠨᠢᠨ᠂ ᠤᠨᠳᠤᠭ᠃᠃ ᠨᠢᠭᠡ ᠬᠥᠨᠢᠨ᠂ ᠳᠤᠲᠤᠭᠤᠷ ᠪᠠᠢᠨᠠ᠃᠃
7	The river flows **in the north.**	Гол **хойгуур** урсаж байна.	ᠭᠤᠯ ᠬᠤᠶᠢᠭᠤᠤᠷ ᠤᠷᠰᠠᠵ ᠪᠠᠢᠨᠠ᠃᠃
8	This horse is always in the lead. ("This horse hasn't seen any dust **in front of it.**")	Энэ морь **өмнүүрээ** тоос гаргаж үзээгүй.	ᠡᠨᠡ ᠮᠣᠷᠢ ᠪᠠᠢᠨᠠ ᠤᠨᠳᠤᠭ᠃᠃ ᠡᠨᠡ ᠮᠣᠷᠢ ᠥᠮᠨᠦᠦᠷᠡᠭᠡ ᠲᠤᠤᠰ ᠭᠠᠷᠭᠠᠵ
9	They're sitting quite far **in the back**.	Тэд нилээд **ардуур** сууж байна.	ᠪᠠᠢᠨᠠ᠃᠃ ᠲᠡᠳ᠂ ᠨᠢᠯᠡᠡᠳ᠂ ᠠᠷᠳᠤᠤᠷ ᠰᠤᠭᠤᠵᠤ ᠪᠠᠢᠨᠠ
10	When watching a concert, it's good to sit **in the front.**	Концерт үзэхэд **урдуур** суувал сайн.	ᠤᠷᠳᠤᠤᠷ᠂ ᠰᠤᠭᠤᠪᠠᠯ ᠰᠠᠶᠢᠨ᠃᠃ ᠬᠣᠲᠣᠯᠭᠣᠨ ᠲᠣᠭᠯᠠᠭᠤᠯᠬᠤ ᠭᠠᠵᠠᠷ ᠲᠠᠢᠯᠪᠤᠷᠢᠨ
11 12	Planes fly **up (there)**, cars drive **down (there).**	Онгоц **дээгүүр** нисч машин **доогуур** явна.	ᠤᠳᠤᠭ᠃᠃ ᠣᠩᠭᠣᠴ᠂ ᠨᠢᠰᠴᠦ ᠴᠢᠳᠠᠭ᠂ ᠮᠠᠰᠢᠨ ᠳᠣᠭᠤᠭᠤᠷ ᠶᠠᠪᠨᠠ᠃᠃

Note:
Many Mongolian adverbs are built in an **analytical way** with the instrumental, dative-locative or another CS. That's why they don't appear as one word (like in English) but rather as a **chain of words,** which is common in adverbials. The borderline between adverbs and adverbials is, therefore, very narrow in Mongolian. It depends on how long such an analytical construction already exists and how much of the original meaning of the words being used is kept alive. From the Classical Script (which has been revised), we can often see which analytical adverbs have become fixed adverbs (e.g. "дандаа").

Illustration:

Analytical form	Classical	English literal translation	English
сүүлд = сүүл + д	=	"in the tail/end"	later; then
ард = ар + д		"in the back"	in the back; behind
харамсалтайгаар = харамсалтай+аар		"through/by the regrettable"	regrettably; by regrettable circumstances
үүрээр = үүр + ээр		"through/by the dawn"	early in the morning; during the dawn
өнөөдөр = өнөө + өдөр	=	"this day"	today
нөгөөдөр = нөгөө өдөр	=	"other day"	the day after tomorrow
бие биедээ = бие бие + д + ээ		"for one's body body"	(for) each other
дандаа = даан + д + аа	= =	"for one's extreme"	always
үнэндээ = үнэн + д + ээ		"in one's truth"	really; indeed; in truth
муудлаа гэхэд		"when saying: It has become bad"	at worst; if worse comes to worst
тэгэлгүй яахав = тэгэ – + лгүй + яа–+ х + вэ		"not doing so, what will happen?"	of course

1.1.3.2.3.2 Modification with Word Combinations

Different **new adverbs** can be built by **creating pairs** of words. Some of these pair words have a meaning by themselves (e.g. "арай"), others are only rhymes to the first one (e.g. "чарай"). Some of the passive root adverbs appear in such pairs (e.g. "нэвт шувт"). Many imitation words (e.g. "ярс ярс") are being used in this way (e.g. noises or movements are imitated).

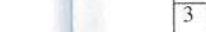
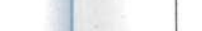
a	We (two) understood each other **with great difficulty**.	Бид хоёр арай чарай ойлголцсон.	
b	Because I was quite drunk, I remember **only vaguely** what he said.	Би нилээд согтуу байсан тул түүний ярьсныг бүрэг бараг (бүдэг бадаг) санаж байна.	
c	I remember my first day of school **vaguely**.	Би анх сургуульд орсноо бүүр түүр санадаг.	

d	Those two wrestlers **balanced one another out**.	Тэр хоёр бөх ач тач (ана мана) барилдсан.	
e	This suit fits me **exactly**.	Энэ костюм надад яв цав таарч байна.	
f	I meet him **once in a while.**	Би түүнтэй мэр сэр уулздаг.	
g	When he was angry, he kicked the door **to pieces**.	Тэр уурласандаа хаалгыг өм цөм өшиглөв.	
h	He left all his belongings in his room **in chaos**.	Тэр өрөөндөө бүх юмаа ундуй сундуй хаяжээ.	
i	Those two had **a quarrel**. ("temporarily tapping")	Тэр хоёр түр тар хийсэн.	
j	On that matter, I agreed with him **completely**.	Би энэ талаар түүнтэй яг таг тохиролцсон.	
k	I know her **through and through**.	Би түүнийг нэвт шувт мэднэ.	
l	I met him **a number of times** in the street.	Би түүнтэй гудамжинд өдий тэдий тааралдсан.	
m	A strong wind **uprooted** the trees.	Хүчтэй салхи ургаа моднуудыг суга суга татав.	
n	(Someone) has **broken** all the windows of the house.	Байшингийн цонхнуудыг цөмийг хага хага цохижээ.	
o	He **tore** all his clothes **apart**.	Тэр хамаг хувцсаа яз яз татсан.	
p	I am a **hopping** round, brown hare. (from a children's song)	Бөн бөн шогшдог бөөрөнхий бор туулай би.	
q	The soldiers **march sharply** in formation.	Цэрэг эрс жагсаалаар ярс ярс алхана.	
r	She walks, **her body bent**, through the streets.	Тэр гудамжаар намс намс алхана.	
s	She walked **click clack** away.	Тэр тог тог алхсаар холдов.	
t	At night a faraway light is seen **flashing**.	Шөнө холын гэрэл гялс гялс харагдана.	
u	Someone **plods** along the road.(very tired or bored; the body swinging up and down)	Нэгэн хүн замын хажуугаар найгас найгас алхана.	
v	Outside, the wind **rustles.**	Гадаа сэр сэр салхилна.	
w	The rain **is drizzling**.	Бороо шивэр шивэр орж байна.	

x	The soup **is bubbling**.	Шөл <u>пор пор</u> буцалж байна.	

1.1.3.2.3.3 Modification with Adwords

As mentioned in the introduction to the adwords, adwords can describe nouns, verbs or other adwords (like adjectives or adverbs). Here we give examples for adwords that are used to describe adverbs. Note that the same adwords can also describe adjectives (see pages 219-220).. Sometimes, such an adword could be dropped if the context of the sentence allows that (**ex. i-j**).

a	Tsolmon sings **very** nicely.	Цолмон <u>маш</u> сайн дуулдаг.	
b	She screamed **extremely** loud.	Тэр <u>тун</u> чанга хашгирав.	
c	He got sick because he worked **too** much.	Тэр <u>хэтэрхий</u> их ажил-ласан учраас өвчилсөн.	
d	That wrestler fought **even** worse.		
e	Let's study **even** better!	<u>Улам</u> сайн сурцгаая!	
f	You behaved **quite** badly yesterday.	Чи өчигдөр <u>нэлээд</u> муухай аашласан.	
g	My father knows this **really** well.	Манай аав үүнийг <u>үнэхээр</u> сайн мэднэ.	
h	You guessed this **exactly** right.	Чи үүнийг <u>яг</u> зөв таав.	
i	Our son studied (**extremely**) well. ("онц" = best grade)	Манай хүү <u>онц</u> (сайн) сурсан.	
j	For some days, he worked **far too** much.	Тэр хэдэн өдөр <u>дэндүү</u> (их) ажилласан.	

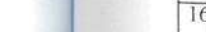
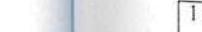
1.1.3.2.4 Semantic Classification of Adverbs

And now we will - without regard to the grammatical groups - divide the adverbs into semantic groups according to their usage in speech. You may also want to refer to the 'adverbs in postpositional functions', explained on page 284.

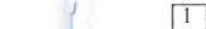
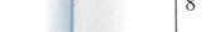
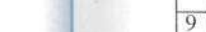
1.1.3.2.4.1 Local Adverbs

Local adverbs always answer the question **'where?'**.

Overview (a selection of the most common ones):

1	энд		here	2	тэнд		there
3	наана		on this side/ here where I am	4	цаана		on that side/ there, away from me
5	гадаа (гадна)		outside, outdoors	6	дотор		inside
7	хойно		in the north	8	өмнө		in the south
9	ард		in the back	10	урд		in the front
11	дээр		upstairs, above	12	доор		downstairs, below

Examples: (The numbers refer to the numbers of the adverbs in the chart on the previous page)

1	Let's meet, the two of us, **here** tomorrow.	Маргааш хоёулаа <u>энд</u> уулзъя.	
2	Now there are many people **there**.	Одоо <u>тэнд</u> олон хүн байна.	
1 2	In Ulaanbaatar there are little kiosks **everywhere**. ("... **here and there** ...")	Улаанбаатарт <u>энд тэндгүй</u> тохирол-цооны жижиг дэлгүүр байдаг.	
3	My house is **on this side/ closer**.	Манай гэр <u>наана</u> байдаг.	
4	Their house is **on that side/further away**.	Тэдний гэр <u>цаана</u> байдаг.	
5 6	Although in winter it's cold **outside**, it's warm **inside**.	Өвөл <u>гадаа</u> хүйтэн байвч <u>дотор</u> дулаан байдаг.	
5 6	**On the outside** shining, **on the inside** filthy. (saying)	<u>Гаднаа</u> гялалцаг, <u>дотроо</u> паланцаг.	
6	My son is **inside**.	Манай хүү <u>дотор</u> байна.	
7	He lived for many years **in the North**. (refers usually to 'Russia')	Тэр олон жил <u>хойно</u> амьдарсан.	
8	I lived for two months **in the South**. (refers usually to 'China')	Би хоёр сар <u>өмнө</u> суусан.	
9	He's sitting **in the back**.	Тэр <u>ард</u> сууж байна.	
10	He always calls the tune. ("He always goes **in the front**.")	Тэр ямагт <u>урд</u> явдаг.	
11	That very book is **above/ upstairs**.	Нөгөө ном чинь <u>дээр</u> байгаа.	
12	Our children are **down-stairs**.	Манай хүүхдүүд <u>доор</u> байгаа.	
13	Shop number 4 is **close by**.	4-р дэлгүүр <u>ойр</u> (хон) байна.	
14	My homeland is very **far** away.	Манай нутаг их <u>хол</u> байдаг.	
15	He is bad in walking **downhill.**	Тэр <u>уруу</u> явахдаа муу.	
16	This car can't go **uphill**.	Энэ машин <u>өөд</u> явж чаддаггүй.	

1.1.3.2.4.2 Temporal Adverbs

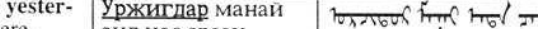
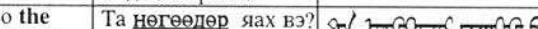
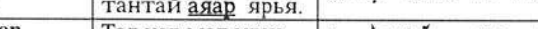
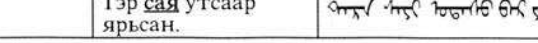
Temporal adverbs always answer the question **'when?'**.

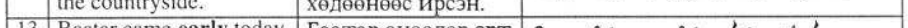
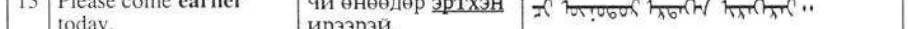
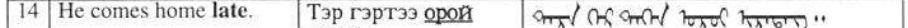
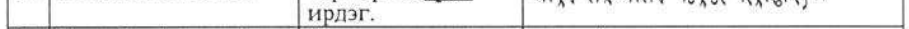
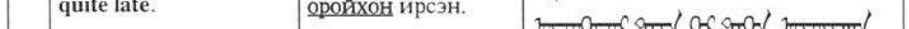
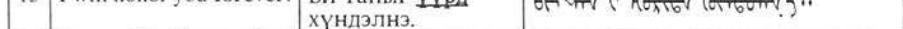
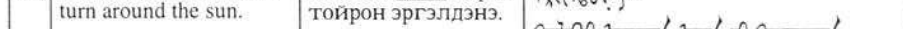
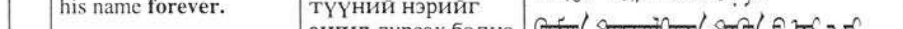
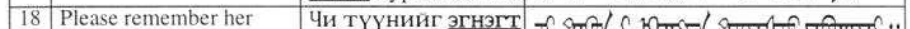
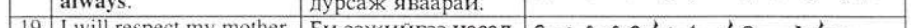
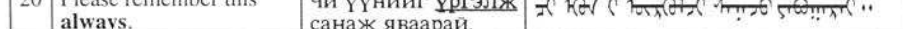
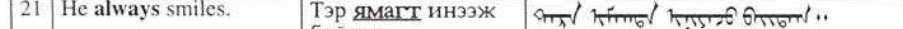
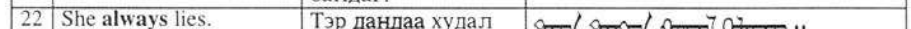
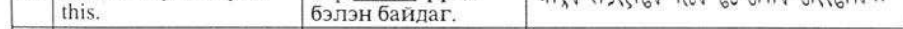
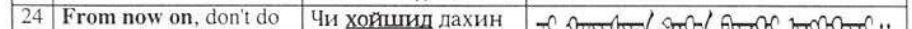
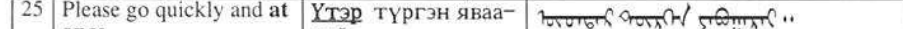
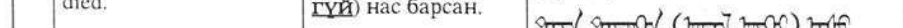
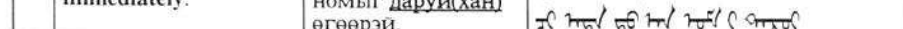
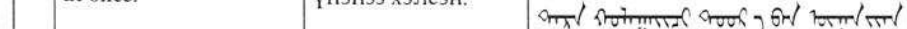
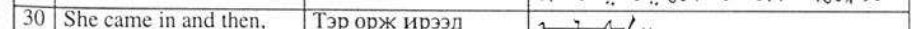
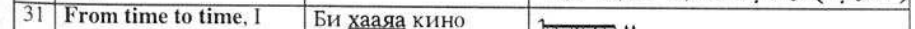
Overview (a selection of the most common ones):

1	өнөөдөр		today	2	маргааш		tomorrow
3	өчигдөр		yesterday	4	уржигдар		the day before yesterday
5	нөгөөдөр		the day after tomorrow	6	одоо		now

7	дараа		afterwards, after that	8	хожим		later, (since)
9	аяар		gradually, later	10	мөд		soon
11	урьд		before	12	сая саяхан	 	just now recently
13	эрт эртхэн	 	early, earlier	14	орой оройхон	 	late (in the evening) later, quite late
15	үүрд		forever, eternally	16	өнөд		forever, for a long time
17	ашид		always, permanently	18	эгнэгт		always, forever
19	насад		always, (lifelong)	20	үргэлж		always, constantly
21	ямагт		always, all the time	22	дандаа		always
23	хэзээд		always	24	хойшид		from now on
25	үтэр		immediately	26	төдхөн		soon thereafter
27	даруйхан	 	right away, immediately	28	дороо		at once
29	түр		temporarily, for a short time	30	гэнэт(хэн)	 	suddenly
31	хааяа		from time to time, seldom	32	заримдаа		sometimes
33	байнга		regularly, often	34	туж		throughout, all the time

Examples:

1	I don't have time **today**.	Би <u>өнөөдөр</u> завгүй.	
2	Baatar will come **tomorrow**.	Баатар <u>маргааш</u> ирнэ.	
3	What did you do **yesterday**?	Та <u>өчигдөр</u> юу хийсэн бэ?	
4	**The day before yesterday** it snowed here.	<u>Уржигдар</u> манай энд цас орсон.	
5	What will you do **the day after tomorrow**?	Та <u>нөгөөдөр</u> яах вэ?	
6	What are you doing **now**?	Та <u>одоо</u> юу хийж байна вэ?	
7	I will meet you **afterwards**.	Би тантай <u>дараа</u> уулзъя.	
8	I haven't seen him **since (then)**.	Би түүнтэй <u>хожим</u> уулзаагүй.	
9	I want to talk with you about this **later**.	Би энэ тухай тантай <u>аяар</u> ярья.	
10	They'll come **soon**.	Тэд нар <u>мөд</u> ирнэ.	
11	Before, this place used to be a big town.	<u>Урьд</u> энэ газар том хот байжээ.	
12	He **just** called.	Тэр <u>сая</u> утсаар ярьсан.	

12	He came **recently** from the countryside.	Тэр <u>саяхан</u> хөдөөнөөс ирсэн.	
13	Baatar came **early** today.	Баатар өнөөдөр <u>эрт</u> ирсэн.	
13	Please come **earlier** today.	Чи өнөөдөр <u>эртхэн</u> ирээрэй.	
14	He comes home **late**.	Тэр гэртээ <u>орой</u> ирдэг.	
14	Yesterday he came home **quite late**.	Өчигдөр тэр гэртээ <u>оройхон</u> ирсэн.	 
15	I will honor you **forever**.	Би таныг <u>үүрд</u> хүндэлнэ.	
16	The earth will **eternally** turn around the sun.	Дэлхий <u>өнөд</u> нарыг тойрон эргэлдэнэ.	 
17	Mankind will remember his name **forever.**	Хүн төрлөхтөн түүний нэрийг <u>ашид</u> дурсах болно.	
18	Please remember her **always**.	Чи түүнийг <u>эгнэгт</u> дурсаж яваарай.	
19	I will respect my mother **all my life**.	Би ээжийгээ <u>насад</u> хүндэлнэ.	
20	Please remember this **always**.	Чи үүнийг <u>үргэлж</u> санаж яваарай.	
21	He **always** smiles.	Тэр <u>ямагт</u> инээж байдаг.	
22	She **always** lies.	Тэр <u>дандаа</u> худал хэлдэг.	
23	He is **always** ready for this.	Тэр <u>хэзээд</u> үүнд бэлэн байдаг.	
24	**From now on**, don't do that again, please.	Чи <u>хойшид</u> дахин битгий ингээрэй.	
25	Please go quickly and **at once**.	<u>Үтэр</u> түргэн яваарай.	
26	**Soon thereafter**, he died.	Тэр <u>төдхөн</u> (удалгүй) нас барсан.	 
27	Please give me this book **immediately**.	Чи надад энэ номыг <u>даруй(хан)</u> өгөөрэй.	
28	That thief told the truth **at once**.	Тэр хулгайч <u>дороо</u> үнэнээ хэлсэн.	
29	I live **temporarily** in Ulaanbaatar.	Би Улаанбаатарт <u>түр</u> амьдарч байна.	
30	She came in and then, **suddenly**, she started to cry.	Тэр орж ирээд <u>гэнэт(хэн)</u> уйлсан.	
31	**From time to time**, I watch a movie at the theater.	Би <u>хааяа</u> кино театрт кино үздэг.	 
32	**Sometimes** I feel like going back to my homeland.	Би <u>заримдаа</u> нутагтаа буцмаар санагддаг.	 

33	I live **permanently** in Ulaanbaatar.	Би Улаанбаатарт байнга амьдардаг.	[illegible]
34	For two days it rained **continuously**.	Хоёр хоног туж бороо орсон.	[illegible]

Temporal adverbs combined with each other:

a	I don't have time **these days**.	Би өнөө маргааш завгүй байна.	[illegible]
b	**Sometime, sooner or later,** I will meet her.	Эрт орой хэзээ нэгэн цагт би түүнтэй уулзана.	[illegible]
c	I am in Ulaanbaatar **for a short while,** waiting for my Chinese visa.	Би Улаанбаатарт Хятадын виз хүлээгээд түр зуур байж байна.	[illegible]

1.1.3.2.4.3 Modal Adverbs

Modal adverbs answer always the question **'how?', 'in what way?'**.

Overview (a selection of the most common ones):

1	голдуу	[illegible]	mainly	2	аяндаа	[illegible]	automatically, for oneself
3	ихэнхдээ	[illegible]	to a large degree, in most cases	4	ихэвчлэн	[illegible]	generally, largely
5	далдуур	[illegible]	secretly	6	зориуд	[illegible]	purposely
7	үнэндээ	[illegible]	as a matter of fact, in fact	8	үнэхээр	[illegible]	really, truly
9	тас түс (түс тас)	[illegible]	absolutely, openly	10	хааш яаш	[illegible]	carelessly
11	арай чарай	[illegible]	merely, somehow	12	санд мэнд	[illegible]	hastily
13	халт(и) мөлт	[illegible]	briefly, superficially	14	дөнгөн данган	[illegible]	hardly, barely
15	яв тав/ цав	[illegible]	exactly, just right	16	ихэд	[illegible]	greatly, very much
17	сайтар	[illegible]	well, thoroughly	18	бүрнээ	[illegible]	completely, entirely
19	гүнээ	[illegible]	deeply (only used positively)	20	бүрмөсөн	[illegible]	completely, entirely

Examples:

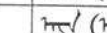
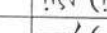
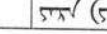
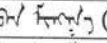
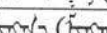
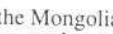
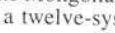
1	In summer, Mongolians use **mainly** milk products*. (*"white food")	Монголчууд зунд голдуу цагаан идээ хэрэглэдэг.	[illegible]
2	If your friend's matter succeeds, your matter will succeed too. ("... **by itself**.")	Нөхрийн хэрэг бүтвэл өөрийн хэрэг аяндаа бүтнэ. (saying)	[illegible]
3	**To a large degree**, Mongolians are engaged in animal husbandry.	Монголчууд ихэнхдээ нүүдлийн мал аж ахуй эрхэлдэг.	[illegible]

4	Mongolians raise **mostly** sheep and cattle.	Монголчууд ихэвчлэн хонь, үхэр өсгөдөг.	[illegible]
5	They talked **secretly** about this person.	Тэд энэ хүний тухай далдуур ярьсан.	[illegible]
6	He **purposely** came too late.	Тэр зориуд хожимдсон.	[illegible]
7	**As a matter of fact,** I don't have money.	Надад үнэндээ мөнгө байхгүй.	[illegible]
8	I **really** can't help you.	Би үнэхээр чамд туслаж чадахгүй.	[illegible]
9	Today (we) have **to come to** a final decision in regard to this problem.	Энэ асуудлыг өнөөдөр тас түс шийдэх хэрэгтэй.	[illegible]
9	We have to talk **openly** about this.	Бид үүний тухай түс тас ярих хэрэгтэй.	[illegible]
10	He does his work **carelessly**.	Тэр ажлаа хааш яаш хийдэг.	[illegible]
11	I **merely** agreed with him.	Би түүнтэй арай чарай тохиролцсон.	[illegible]
12	He heard this and **hastily** left his house.	Тэр энэ тухай сонсоод гэрээсээ санд мэнд явсан.	[illegible]
13	I met him **briefly** in the street.	Би түүнтэй гудамжинд халт(и) мөлт уулзсан.	[illegible]
14	I **barely** get by in life with my salary.	Би цалингаараа дөнгөн данган амьдарч байна.	[illegible]
15	Everything happened **exactly**, according to plan.	Бүх юм төлөвлөснийн дагуу яв тав болж өнгөрсөн.	[illegible]
16	He **greatly** offended me.	Тэр намайг ихэд гомдоосон.	[illegible]
17	You have to consider that **thoroughly** and decide.	Та үүнийг сайтар бодож шийдэх хэрэгтэй.	[illegible]
18	We **completely** support your idea.	Бид нар таны саналыг бүрнээ дэмжиж байна.	[illegible]
19	I respect her **deeply**.	Би түүнийг гүнээ хүндэлдэг.	[illegible]
20	It would be good if we **completely** finished this work today.	Энэ ажлыг өнөөдөр бүрмөсөн дуусгавал сайн байна.	[illegible]

1.1.3.3 NUMERALS

The different numerals (Latin 'numerus' = 'number') also belong to the big group of **adwords** because they **describe nouns and verbs**. In Mongolian, most numerals are formed with suffixes that express meanings like 'approximate', 'about', 'over', 'each', 'times', etc. Sometimes other words, like postpositions, serve to build a particular form of numeral.

1.1.3.3.1 Overview of Numerals and Numeral Suffixes (NuS's):

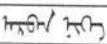
Subgroups	Suffixes (–...) or Words		Examples		
Cardinal			ten	арав	
Ordinal	-дугаар		**number** ten	арав**дугаар**	
	-дүгээр		**number** four	дөрөв**дүгээр**	
	-дахь		(the) ten**th**/10**th**	арав**дахь**	
	-дэх		(the) four**th**/4**th**	дөрөв**дэх**	
Collective	-уул(аа)	()	the **ten (of ...)**	арв**уул(аа)**	()
	-үүл(эз)	()	the **four (of ...)**	дөрв**үүл(эз)**	()
Approximate	-аад, -оод		**at most** ten	арв**аад**	
	-ээд, -өөд		**at most** forty	дөч**өөд**	
(expressed with post-positions)	гаруй		**more than** ten	арав **гаруй**	
	илүү		**more than** ten	арав **илүү**	
	шахам		**almost** ten	арав **шахам**	
	орчим		**about** ten	арав **орчим**	
Multiplying	-таа, -тээ		ten **times**	арван**таа**	
	-тоо, -төө		four **times**	дөрвөн**тээ**	
	дахин		ten **times**	арав **дахин**	
	удаа		four **times**	дөрвөн **удаа**	
Diminutive	-хан, -хон		**only** ten	арав**хан**	
	-хэн, -хөн		**only** four	дөрөв**хөн**	
Distributive	repetitive form	repetitive form	ten **each**	арав арав	
			four **each**	дөрөв дөрөв	

1.1.3.3.2 Cardinal Numerals

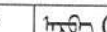
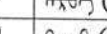
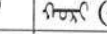
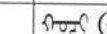
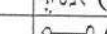
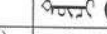
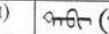
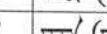
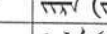
1.1.3.3.2.1 Overview of Cardinal Numerals and Numeral Suffixes (NuS's)

Explanations to the table on the next page:

*1) See next page for an explanation, when the **n-stem** (in parentheses) is necessary.

*2.) Note the exception in Classical Script form of **number 8**! (not  – ·)

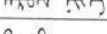
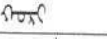
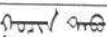
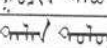
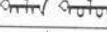
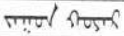
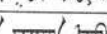
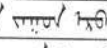
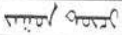
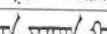
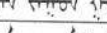
*3.) Usually "арван мянга" and "зуун мянга" are used for 10,000 and 100,000, because the words "түм" and "бум" are a bit **outdated** and often used in the meaning 'very many', 'a great sum of'.

1	нэг (нэгэн) *1		10	арав (арван)	
2	хоёр		20	хорь (хорин)	
3	гурав (гурван)		30	гуч (гучин)	
4	дөрөв (дөрвөн)		40	дөч (дөчин)	
5	тав (таван)		50	тавь (тавин)	
6	зургаа (зургаан)		60	жар (жаран)	
7	долоо (долоон)		70	дал (далан)	
8	найм (найман)	 *2.)	80	ная (наян)	
9	ес (есөн)		90	ер (эн)	
100	зуу(н)				
1,000	мянга(н)				
10,000	түм(эн), арван мянга(н) *3.)				
100,000	бум(ан), зуун мянга(н) *3.)				
1,000,000	сая				
A thousand millions (Brit.) Billion (Am.)	тэрбум				

1.1.3.3.2.2 Usage of Cardinal Numerals

1.1.3.3.2.2.1 Compound Cardinal Numerals

Compound cardinal numerals are already formed after number ten since the Mongolian numeral system is **based on the decimal system** and not - like in English- on a twelve-system (ten, eleven, twelve, dozen, etc.)
Generally speaking, the **n-stem** is used to build compound numerals.
Exceptions are: **хоёр, мянга, түм, бум, сая, тэрбум** (see*).

11	арва**н** нэг		111	зуу**н** арва**н** нэг	
12	арва**н** хоёр		120	зуу**н** хорь	
13	арва**н** гурав		135	зуу**н** гучи**н** тав	
21	хори**н** нэг		177	зуу**н** дала**н** долоо	
22	хори**н** хоёр		202	хоёр (*) зуу**н** хоёр	
28	хори**н** найм		310	гурва**н** зуу**н** арав	
31	гучи**н** нэг		540	тава**н** зуу**н** дөч	
33	гучи**н** гурав		630	зургаа**н** зуу**н** гуч	
39	гучи**н** ес		718	долоо**н** зуу**н** арва**н** найм	
66	жара**н** зургаа		866	наймa**н** зуу**н** жара**н** зургаа	
92	ерэ**н** хоёр		992	есө**н** зуу**н** ерэ**н** хоёр	
1967	мянга(*) есө**н** зуу**н** жара**н** долоо				

2,000	хоёр(*) мянга	
3,744	гурван мянга(*) долоон зуун дөчин дөрөв	
450,000	дөрвөн зуун тавин мянга (450.000)	
822,132	наймаН зуун хориН хоёр(*) мянга(*) нэг(*) зуун гучиН хоёр (822.132)	
3,560,000	гурван сая(*) таваН зуун жараН мянга (3.560.000)	
6,005,014,310	зургааН тэрбум(*) таваН сая(*) арваН дөрвөн мянга(*) гурван зуун арав (6.005.014.310)	

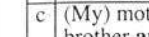
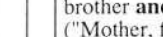
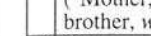
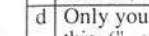
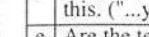
1.1.3.3.2.2.2 Cardinal Numerals as Attributes

In order to use numerals as attributes, the **n-stem is necessary**.
Exceptions are: нэг, хоёр, сая, and **тэрбум** (*).

a	**four** people	дөрвөН хүн	
b	**three** books	гурваН ном	
c	**one** sheep	нэг(*) хонь	
d	**eleven** sheep	арваН нэгэН хонь	
e	**twenty-one** tögrög	хорин нэгэН төгрөг	
f	**seventy** years old	далаН настай	
g	**five hundred** tögrög	таван зуун төгрөг	
h	I have **three** younger brothers and sisters.	Би гурваН дүүтэй.	
i	I need **twenty** notebooks.	Надад хориН дэвтэр хэрэгтэй.	
j	Baatar bought **two** books.	Баатар хоёр(*) ном авсан.	
k	How many **thousand** tögrögs do you get as a monthly salary? ("A how-many-thousand-tögrög salary...")	Та сард хэдэн мянгаН төгрөгийн цалин авдаг вэ?	
l	This house costs **one million** tögrög. ("is with a million-tögrög price")	Энэ байр сая (*) төгрөгийн үнэтэй.	
m	That bank got into a debt of several **billion** dollars.	Тэр банк хэдэн тэрбум (*) долларын өрөнд оржээ.	

1.1.3.3.2.2.3 Cardinal Numerals as Conjunctions

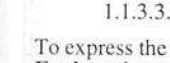
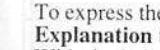
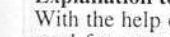
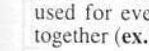
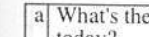
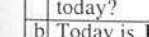
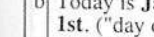
As a conjunction, the numeral is always used **without the n-stem**. When personal pronouns are used instead of names (**ex. b-e**), the **last personal pronoun** has to be ***plural***.

a	Baatar, Dorj **and** Tsetseg went to town. ("Baatar, Dorj, Tsetseg **three**...")	Баатар, Дорж, Цэцэг гурав хот явсан.	
b	You **and** *I* go by car. ("You, *we* **two**...")	Чи *бид* хоёр машинтай явна.	
c	(My) mother, father, older brother **and** *I* will come. ("Mother, father, the older brother, *we* **four**...")	Ээж, аав, ах, *бид* дөрөв ирнэ.	
d	Only you **and** *I* know about this. ("...you *we* **two**...")	Энэ тухай та *бид* хоёр л мэднэ.	
e	Are the teacher **and** you going to a movie? ("The teacher *you* **two**...")	Багш *та* хоёр кинонд явах уу?	

1.1.3.3.2.2.4 Cardinal Numerals in Everyday Life

1.1.3.3.2.2.4.1 Date

To express the date, the **n-stem is necessary** (without exceptions!).
Explanation to the examples k-l:
With the help of the instrumental case, an **approximate** time is expressed (therefore it is only used for even dates: 10, 15, 20, 25...). If dative-locative case and instrumental case appear together (**ex.l**), the **date expressed is more definite** because of certain known factors.

a	What's the date today?	Өнөөдөр хэдэн бэ?	
b	Today is **January 1st**. ("day one of first month")	Өнөөдөр нэгдүгээр сарын нэгэн.	
c	**April 12th** is Astronaunt Day.	Дөрөвдүгээр сарын арван хоёрон бол сансрын нисэгчдийн өдөр.	
d	Today is **May 5th**.	Өнөөдөр тавдугаар сарын таван.	
e	Today is **July 10th.**	Өнөөдөр долдугаар сарын арван.	
f	My birthday is **9-19-1955**. (September nineteenth, nineteen fifty-five)	Миний төрсөн өдөр 1955.9.19. (мянга есөн зуун тавин таван оны есдүгээр сарын арван есөн)	
g	He'll come on (the day of) **May 3rd**.	Тэр 5-р сарын 3-ны өдөр ирнэ.	
h	We'll go on **March 28th**.	Бид нар гуравдугаар сарын хорин найманд явна.	
i	Do you remember **July 27th**?	Чи 7-р сарын 27-ныг санаж байна уу?	

j	The school vacation started on the **15th**. ("from the 15th...")	Сурагчдын амралт <u>арван тавнаас</u> эхэлсэн.	[illegible]
k	He will come around **December 30th**.	Тэр <u>арван хоёрдугаар сарын гучнаар</u> ирнэ.	[illegible]
l	He'll go around **April 15th**.	Тэр <u>дөрвөн сарын арван тавдаар</u> явна.	[illegible]

1.1.3.3.2.2.4.2 Time

- When "цаг" (o'clock) is written, the **attributive numeral** takes the n-stem (**ex.a**)
- When "цаг" is dropped, the **numeral takes the place of the noun**. It can be declined and it never takes the n-stem (**ex. b**).

Please notice that the Mongolian literal translation always uses the verb 'become': 'It is **becoming** 4 o'clock.'

1a	It's **four o'clock**.	<u>Дөрвөн цаг</u> болж байна.	[illegible]
1b	It's **four**.	<u>Дөрөв</u> болж байна.	[illegible]
2a	What's the time? ("**How many** o'clock... ?")	Одоо <u>хэд</u>(эн цаг) болж байна вэ? ("хэд" is more colloquial)	[illegible]
2b	It's **half past ten**.	Одоо <u>арав хагас</u> болж байна.	[illegible]
3a	Please come at **5 o'clock**.	Чи <u>таван цагт</u> ирээрэй.	[illegible]
3b	Please come at **5.**	Чи <u>тавд</u> ирээрэй.	[illegible]
4a	We have lessons **from two to five o'clock**.	Бид <u>хоёр цагаас таван цаг хүртэл</u> хичээллэдэг.	[illegible]
4b	We have lessons **from two to five**.	Бид <u>хоёроос тав хүртэл</u> хичээллэдэг.	[illegible]

1.1.3.3.2.2.4.3 Telephone

In telling someone a telephone number, the usual thing is to say **2 numbers together** (3x2), sometimes 3 numbers together (2x3), but never all numbers separated as is common in Britain. Usually, the Russian word for zero, "ноль", is used.

a	What's your phone number? ("**How many** is...")	Таны утасны дугаар <u>хэд</u> вэ?	[illegible]
b	My work number is **53068**. (fifty-three, zero, sixty-eight)	Миний ажлын утас <u>53068</u> (тавин гурав, ноль, жаран найм)	[illegible]
c	The home number: **312248**. (thirty-one, twenty-two, forty-eight)	Гэрийн утас: <u>312248</u> (гучин нэг, хорин хоёр, дөчин найм)	[illegible]

1.1.3.3.2.3 Declension of Cardinal Numerals

When numerals are used **in place of a noun**, they could be declined, i.e., **CS**'s can be added. Shown in English sentences: 'Give me **the three**.' 'Take **those two**.'

1.1.3.3.2.3.1 Overview of Declined Cardinal Numerals

Explanations:
*1) "сая" has no n-stem
*2) **n-stem** is also used for **fractions**, therefore, we can have it with **big numerals**
*3) **n-stem** for dates, therefore only **until thirty**

	1	10	100 *3)	1000 *3)	10'000 *3)
N	нэг (нэгэн)	арав (арван)	зуу (зуун)	мянга (мянган)	сая *1)
	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]
G.	нэгийн (нэгний)	арвын (аравны)	зуугийн (зууны)*2)	мянгын (мянганы)*2)	саяын *2)
	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]
D.	нэгд (нэгэнд)	аравд/аравт (арванд)	зууд	мянгад	саяд
	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]
A.	нэгийг (нэгнийг)	арвыг (аравныг)	зууг	мянгыг	саяыг
	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]
A.	нэгээс (нэгнээс)	арваас (аравнаас)	зуугаас	мянгаас	саяас
	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]
I.	нэгээр (нэгнээр)	арваар (аравнаар)	зуугаар	мянгаар	саяар
	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]
C.	нэгтэй (нэгэнтэй)	аравтай (арвантай)	зуутай	мянгатай	саятай
	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]
D.	нэг рүү (нэгэн рүү)	арав руу (арван руу)	зуу руу	мянга руу	сая руу
	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]

1.1.3.3.2.3.2 Usage of Declined Cardinal Numerals

The **first example** of each case is always **without the n-stem**, the **second** is always **with** it. The latter is used for dates or fractions. With **dative-locative case**, there are three options, but the difference between two of them only shows in Cyrillic. For **instrumental case**, see explanation on page 237 (date).

N.	Would you please count to **ten**?	Та <u>арав</u> хүртэл тоолно уу?	[illegible]
N.	January **10th** was a Sunday.	Нэгдүгээр сарын <u>арван</u> сайн өдөр байсан.	[illegible]
G.	My younger brother studies in class **10**A.	Миний дүү <u>арв</u>[illegible] «А» ангид сурдаг.	[illegible]
G.	Please take 3/**10ths** of it. (three-tenths)	<u>Арав</u>[illegible] гуравыг нь аваарай.	[illegible]
D.	Please give this [illegible] **ten** (of them).	Үүнийг тэдний <u>арав</u>[illegible] (нь) өгөөрэй.	[illegible]

D.	Let's meet (the two of us) tomorrow at **ten.**	Маргааш хоёулаа **арав**т уулзъя.	
D.	He'll come on the **10th** of this month.	Тэр энэ сарын **арван**д ирнэ.	
A.	I want to buy **2** of these cookies.	Би энэ боовноос **хо**-**ёр**ыг авмаар байна.	
A.	We are waiting for the second.	Бид нар **хоёрн**ыг хүлээж байна.	
A.	Take from these **3** what you like.	Та энэ **гурв**аас дуртайгаа ав.	
A.	We'll have vacation from **the third** on.	Бид **гуравн**аас амарна.	
I.	I bought this loaf of bread for **a hundred**.	Би энэ талхыг **зуу**гаар авсан.	
I.	We'll go around the **20th**.	Бид **хорьд**оор явна.	
I.	But they'll come around **the twenty-fifth**.	Харин тэд нар **хо**-**рин тавн**аар ирнэ.	
C.	I'll meet **one** of them. ("I'll meet with one ..")	Би тэд нарын **нэг**тэй уулзана.	
C.	Our union competes with December **31st**. (Expl.: A production goal had been fixed that has to be reached)	Манай хамт олон 12-р сарын **гучин нэгэн**тэй уралдан ажиллаж байна.	
D.	The hour-hand of the watch moved toward **the 9** and stood still.	Цагийн урт зүү **ес** рүү дөхөж очоод зогсчээ.	
D.	The time drew nearer to May **10th** like an arrow that had been shot.	Хоног хугацаа тав-дугаар сарын **арван** рүү харвасан сум мэт ойртож байлаа.	

1.1.3.3.3 Ordinal Numerals

The name 'ordinals' (Latin 'ordo' = 'order') reveals the **main characteristic** of this numeral group. All ordinal numerals are numbers that are **bound to a certain order**. In English we use the **suffix 'th'** to express this order: the ten**th** man, the four**th** book, but the 1st winner, the 2nd prize, the 3rd choice.

In Mongolian there are two ways to build ordinal numerals:

- **with the suffix "-дахь/-дэх"** (-дахь, -дэх)
- **with the word 'number' = "дугаар"** (дугаар), which actually has a suffix function and therefore exists today in 2 versions (for vowel harmony):
  "-дугаар/-дүгээр" (-дугаар, -дүгээр).

The **usage** of these two suffixes is not always so straight forward. Sometimes they can be used interchangeably, in other cases only one of them is possible. It's best to memorize which suffix is used for which situation.

1.1.3.3.3.1 Ordinal NuS's "дугаар², дахь/-дэх"

These ordinal numerals have their abbreviations: 3-**р**, 3-**дахь**, 4-**р**, 4-**дэх**, etc.
Note the **exceptions in the written forms** of the numbers **2, 6, and 7**(*).

No.1	1-р (нэг**дүгээр**) анх**дугаар**	(нэгдүгээр) 1-р (анхдугаар)	1.	1-дэх (нэг**дэх**) (анхны)	(нэгдэх) анхны
No.2	2-р (хоёр**дугаар**)	2-р (хоёрдугаар)*	2.	2-дахь (хоёр**дахь**)	хоёрдахь
No.3	3-р (гурав**дугаар**)	3-р (гуравдугаар)	3.	3-дахь (гурав**дахь**)	гуравдахь
No.4	4-р (дөрөв**дүгээр**)	4-р (дөрөвдүгээр)	4.	4-дэх (дөрөв**дэх**)	дөрөвдэх
No.5	5-р (тав**дугаар**)	5-р (тавдугаар)	5.	5-дахь (тав**дахь**)	тавдахь
No.6	6-р (зурга**дугаар**)*	6-р (зургадугаар)*	6.	6-дахь (зургаа**дахь**)	зургадугаар
No.7	7-р (дол**дугаар**)*	7-р (долдугаар)*	7.	7-дахь (долоо**дахь**)	долоодугаар
No.8	8-р (найм**дугаар**)	8-р (наймдугаар)	8.	8-дахь (найм**дахь**)	наймдахь
No.9	9-р (ес**дүгээр**)	9-р (есдүгээр)	9.	9-дэх (ес**дэх**)	есдэхь
No.10	10-р (арав**дугаар**)	10-р (аравдугаар)	10.	10-дахь (арав**дахь**)	аравдахь

1.1.3.3.3.2 Usage of Ordinal Numerals

1.1.3.3.3.2.1 Months (-дугаар²)

There are **no names** for the months. Instead, the **months are numbered** like ordinal numerals or else the **cardinal numerals are used with n-stem** (exceptions "нэг/хоёр"). The latter version is better for questions (**ex. b**).

a	I was born **September** 29. ("I was born on the 29th day of the **9th** month.")	Би **есдүгээр** (есөн) сарын хорин есөнд төрсөн.	
b	In which month will you go? ("In the how-many**th**-month...")	Та хэдэн (**хэддү**-**гээр**) сард явах вэ?	
c	The Mongolians mainly have their New Year festival in **February**.	Монголчууд голдуу **2-р** (хоёр) сард ца-гаан сараа хийдэг.	
d	I will be in Mongolia until **June**.	Би **зургадугаар** сар хүртэл Монголд байна.	
e	In Mongolia, the national holiday takes place in **July**.	Монголд **долдугаар** сард үндэсний баяр болдог.	

1.1.3.3.3.2.2 Other uses (-дугаар²)

a	He is in **first** grade.	Тэр **нэгдүгээр** ангид сурдаг.	
b	My class won **second** prize. ("My class entered the **2nd** place.")	Манай анги **хоёрду**-**гаар** байранд орсон.	
c	We live in the **20th** century.	Бид **20-р** зуунд амьдарч байна.	

d	Please show me the **third** volume of this book.	Та надад энэ номын <u>гуравдугаар</u> ботийг нь үзүүлээч.	[illegible]
e	My father was in Hospital **Number 2**. ("..lay in ...")	Миний аав <u>2-р</u> эмнэлэгт хэвтсэн.	[illegible]
f	How expensive is **first-**class beef now?	Одоо үхрийн <u>нэгдүгээр</u> мах ямар үнэтэй байна вэ?	[illegible]
g	On page **10** of this book, something is written about this. ("On the **10th** page..")	Энэ номын <u>аравдугаар</u> хуудсанд энэ тухай бичсэн байгаа.	[illegible]
h	The **first** congress of Mongolists took place in the city of Ulaanbaatar in 1959.	Монголч эрдэмтний <u>анхдугаар</u> их хурал 1959 онд Улаанбаатар хотод болсон.	[illegible]
i	Please take this from **number five**. (e.g. "sportsman with No. 5")	Үүнийг <u>тавдугаараас</u> нь аваарай.	[illegible]

1.1.3.3.3.2.3 Weekdays (-дахь/-дэх)

The Mongolian weekdays originate in the Tibetan language and are similar in their meaning to the European weekdays*. These Tibetan names are used for official publications (e.g. timetables, hours of opening, newspapers, etc.) **In everyday language,** the versions with the **suffix "-дахь/-дэх"** are commonly used. Note the special names for 'Saturday' (half good day) and 'Sunday' ([whole] good day). These weekdays can also be **declined** if the word "өдөр" (day) drops.

Monday	Даваа *(moon)	[illegible]	1. day	нэгдэх (өдөр)	[illegible]
Tuesday	Мягмар	[illegible]	2. day	хоёрдахь (өдөр)	[illegible]
Wednesday	Лхагва	[illegible]	3. day	гуравдахь (өдөр)	[illegible]
Thursday	Пүрэв	[illegible]	4. day	дөрөвдэх (өдөр)	[illegible]
Friday	Баасан	[illegible]	5. day	тавдахь (өдөр)	[illegible]
Saturday	Бямба	[illegible]	6. day	хагас сайн өдөр (зургаадахь өдөр)	[illegible] [illegible]
Sunday	Ням *(sun)	[illegible]	7. day	(бүтэн) сайн өдөр (долоодахь өдөр)	[illegible] [illegible]

Examples:

a	Do the lessons begin on **Monday**? ("from Monday?")	Хичээл <u>нэгдэх</u> өдрөөс <u>(нэгдэхээс)</u> эхлэх үү?	[illegible]
b	I'll go to the hospital on **Wednesday**.	<u>Гуравдахь</u> өдөр <u>(гуравдахид)</u> би эмнэлэг явна.	[illegible]
c	Will you come to my home on **Friday**?	Чи <u>тавдахь</u> өдөр манайд ирэх үү?	[illegible]
d	What will he do on **Thursday**?	<u>4-дэх</u> өдөр тэр юу хийх вэ?	[illegible]
e	Do you remember **Tuesday**? ("the second")	Чи <u>хоёрдахийг</u> санаж байна уу?	[illegible]

f	Please come to my home **Saturday** evening.	Та <u>зургаадахийн</u> орой манайд ирээрэй.	[illegible] [illegible]

1.1.3.3.3.2.4 Other uses (-дахь/-дэх)

Note, that commonly "анхны" is used instead of "нэгдүгээр" (**ex. c**).

a	I'm coming to your home for the **third** time.	Би танайд <u>гуравдахь</u> удаагаа ирж байна.	[illegible] [illegible]
b	This is our **second** meeting.	Энэ бидний <u>хоёрдахь</u> уулзалт юм.	[illegible]
c	She gave birth to her **first** son in 1960.	Тэр <u>анхны</u> хүүгээ 1960 онд төрүүлсэн.	[illegible] [illegible]
d	My **second** daughter plays the violin.	Миний <u>хоёрдахь</u> охин хийл тоглодог.	[illegible]
e	Would you please give this to the **third** child.	Та үүнийг <u>гуравдахь</u> хүүхдэд өгнө үү.	[illegible] [illegible]
f	Please get this from **the fifth one**. (e.g. box)	Үүнийг <u>тавдахиас</u> нь аваарай.	[illegible]

1.1.3.3.3.2.5 Address (-дугаар[2],-дахь/-дэх)

In Ulaanbaatar there are street names, but the address is always given by **telling district, house, entrance, and apartment numbers**. To all these **numbers**, the suffix **"дугаар/-дүгээр"** is usually added, but for the floor number "-дахь/-дэх" is also used. In colloquial language, apartment numbers and floor numbers are often used with *хэдэн* and *n-stem attributes like арван, гурван* (**ex. a,c,d**; нэг doesn't take n-stem). When someone doesn't know the number of a house ("-дугаар/-дүгээр"), the address is explained by refering to well-known places like shops, the four points of the compass, and the order number ("-дахь/-дэх") of the house (e.g. the second one from the right, the last one south of the shop, etc.; see **ex. e-f**)

a	We live in district **11**, house number **4**, entrance number **1**, eigh**th** floor in apartment number 29.	Бид <u>11-р</u> хорооллын <u>4-р</u> байрны <u>1-р</u> орцонд <u>8-р</u> давхарт 29-*н* тоотод амьдардаг.	[illegible] [illegible] [illegible]
b	I live in house number **27** of the **4th** district.	Би <u>4-р</u> хорооллын <u>27-р</u> байшинд суудаг.	[illegible] [illegible]
c	-On which floor do you live? ("On the how-many**th** floor...") -On the **fifth** floor.	-Чи <u>хэддүгээр (хэддэх /хэдэн)</u> давхарт амьдардаг вэ? -<u>Тавдугаар</u> *(5-н)* давхарт.	[illegible] [illegible] [illegible]
d	Clothes are on the **first** floor of the department store.	Их дэлгүүрийн <u>1-р (1-дэх/ нэг)</u> давхарт хувцас байгаа.	[illegible] [illegible]
e	Ours is the **first** house from the north behind the 'Jukov' Museum.	Манайх Жуковын музейн ард хойноосоо <u>нэгдэх</u> байшин.	[illegible] [illegible]
f	My friend lives in the **second** house south of shop **No. 64**, in the **first** entrance from the right.	Манай найз <u>64-р</u> дэлгүүрээс урагш <u>2-дахь</u> байшингийн баруунаас <u>1-дэх</u> орцонд суудаг.	[illegible] [illegible] [illegible]

1.1.3.3.2.6 Roman Numerals in Function of "-дугаар²"

a	We live in the **20th** century.	Бид XX зуунд амьдарч байна.	
b	Where is district **number 14**?	XIV хороолол хаана байдаг вэ?	
c	Were you born in **May**?	Та V сард төрсөн үү?	

1.1.3.3.4 Collective Numerals

The collective numerals (Latin 'colligere' = 'to collect') and their suffixes have no exact equivalents in English. They express something like 'the 4 of [us]', '[we] 6'. They appear often together with the **RS** (compare with p. 108).

1.1.3.3.4.1 Collective NuS "-уул²"

The numerals **2, 6, and 7** have a special written form(*). Where necessary, the Cyrillic suffix changes according to spelling rules ("ь" and "и" must be kept: "хорь" = "хориул") or it is added after the *inserted consonant* which follows long vowels (зуу = зууг**уул**).

the two **of** [**us**], **both**	хоёул(аа) *	
the three **of** [**us**], **all** three	гурвуул(аа)	
the four **of** [**us**], **all** four	дөрвүүл(ээ)	
the five **of** [**us**], **all** five	тавуул(аа)	
the six **of** [**us**], **all** six	зургуул(аа) *	
the seven **of** [**us**], **all** seven	долуул(аа) *	
the eight **of** [**us**], **all** eight	наймуул(аа)	
the nine **of** [**us**], **all** nine	есүүл(ээ)	
the ten **of** [**us**], **all** ten	арвуул(аа)	
all twenty **of** [**us**] together	хориул(аа)	
all hundred **of** [**us**] together	зууугуул(аа)	

1.1.3.3.4.2 Usage of Collective Numerals

Explanations:

1.) If the numeral is used **without an *RS***, the main interest is aimed at the **number**. If the ***RS* is added**, the main focus is on the fact whether all of them have come.

The six of them came. (not the five or the four)	Тэд нар зургуул ирсэн.	
All six of them came. (None stayed behind)	Тэд нар зургуулаа ирсэн.	

2.) In **colloquial language**, the numeral can be **repeated** and thereby often expresses a **surprise** (pleasant or unpleasant). In this case, the *RS* is always added (see **ex. i**). **Ex. f** and **h** are not repetitions in this sense because the "гурав" and the "ес" are part of the subject (та гурав/ та нар ес).

Examples:

a	There are **5 of us** living in our home.	Бид гэртээ тавуул(*аа*) байдаг.	

b	They went there, **the four of them**.	Тэд тийшээ дөрвүүл(ээ) явсан.	
c	Let's do this, **both of us**!	Хоёулаа үүнийг хийчихье.	
d	Have **all ten** (of them) come?	Тэд арвуулаа ирчихсэн үү?	
e	**How many of you** are you at home?	Та нар хэдүүл(ээ) суудаг вэ?	
f	**All three of you** clean **together** please!	Та гурав гурвуулаа цэвэрлээрэй.	
g	Dorj, Baatar, and I, **all three of us**, have paid money.	Дорж, Баатар бид гурвуулаа мөнгө төлсөн.	
h	You nine **all** got an 'unsatisfactory'.	Та нар ес есүүлээ муу авчээ.	
i	Oh, then,**you both, the two of you** have come?	Та хоёр хоёул хоёулаа ирсэн юм уу?	

1.1.3.3.4.3 Declension of Collective Numerals

This suffix has an **n-stem** which is used for **declension**: хоёул(ан), гурвуул(ан), etc. The "г" only appears in Cyrillic with certain cases as an **inserted consonant.**

1.1.3.3.4.3.1 Overview of Declined Collective Numerals

Nom.	хоёул	гурвуул	дөрвүүл	арвуул
Gen.	хоёулан**гийн**	гурвуулан**гийн**	дөрвүүлэн**гийн**	арвуулан**гийн**
Dat.	хоёулан**д**	гурвуулан**д**	дөрвүүлэн**д**	арвуулан**д**
Acc.	хоёулан**г**	гурвуулан**г**	дөрвүүлэн**г**	арвуулан**г**
Abl.	хоёулан**гаас**	гурвуулан**гаас**	дөрвүүлэн**гээс**	арвуулан**гаас**
Instr.	хоёулан**гаар**	гурвуулан**гаар**	дөрвүүлэн**гээр**	арвуулан**гаар**
Com.	хоёулан**тай**	гурвуулан**тай**	дөрвүүлэн**тэй**	арвуулан**тай**
Dir.	хоёулан **руу**	гурвуулан **руу**	дөрвүүлэн **рүү**	арвуулан **руу**

1.1.3.3.4.3.2 Usage of Declined Collective Numerals

Explanations:
The CS is **always** added to the collective numeral, and usually also to the object to which the numeral refers (exception is **ex. G**, where the object is a pronoun that doesn't need the CS). The numbers in parentheses may appear but without any extra meaning.

N	Father and mother, **both of them**, will come from the countryside.	Аав ээж (хоёр) **хоёу-лаа** хөдөөнөөс ирнэ.	
G	The books of **all four of us** are in this chest of drawers.	Бид **дөрвүүлэн**гийнх маань ном энэ шүү-гээнд байдаг юм.	
D	The father bought for his five children, for **all five of them**, new boots.	Эцэг нь таван хүү-хэдлээ **тавуулан**д нь шинэ гутал авчээ.	
A	The teacher calls **you two, both of you**.	Та хоёрыг **хоёулан**г чинь багш луудаж байна.	
A	The teacher asked us, **all six of us**. ("The teacher asked of us, of **all six** ..")	Багш бид (зургаа-гаас) **зургуулан**гаас маань асуулт асуув.	
I	On his way, he entered **four** yurts, **all of them**.	Тэр дөрвөн гэрээр **дөрвүүлэн**гээр нь оржээ.	
C	I am a good acquaintance of those **four** people, **of all of them**. ("..acquaintance with...")	Би тэр дөрвөн хүн-тэй **дөрвүүлэн**гээ нь сайн танил.	
D	He shot simultaneously at **all three**.	Тэр **гурвуулан**гуур зэрэг буудсан.	

1.1.3.3.5 Approximate Numerals

Approximate numerals are expressed in English with words like: **at most, approximate, about, less than, more than, at least, etc**. In Mongolian, suffixes and postpositions are used. The suffixes should only be used for **round figures** like 50, 70, 200, 400, and 500.

1.1.3.3.5.1 Overview of Approximate Numerals

The NuS "-аад[4]" determines the **upper limit**, that means, for example, "арваад" should be translated as '**at most ten**'. But not always the translation 'at most' is the best one.
Please note the special **Cyrillic written forms** that have to do with correct spelling rules:
- "ь" and "и" may not be dropped: "хорь" = "хориод", "тавь" = "тавиад"
- long vowels need the inserted consonant "г": "зуу" = "зуугаад"
- "я" already contains an "а": "ная" = "наяад"

at most 10	арваад		at most 70	далаад	
at most 20	хориод		at most 80	наяад	
at most 30	гучаад		at most 90	ерээд	
at most 40	дөчөөд		at most 100	зуугаад	
at most 50	тавиад		at most 200	хоёр зуугаад	
at most 60	жараад		at most 1000	мянгаад	

1.1.3.3.5.2 Usage of Approximate Numerals

1.1.3.3.5.2.1 Approximate NuS "-аад[4]"

Meaning 'at most', 'about', 'not more than'

a	**About 10** children are playing there.	Тэнд **арваад** хүүхэд тоглож байна.	
b	This school has **not more than 60** teachers.	Энэ сургууль **жараад** багштай.	
c	In our classroom there are, **at most, 40** chairs.	Манай анги **дөчөөд** сандалтай.	
d	In the shop **about 80** meters of material are left.	Дэлгүүрт **наяад** метр даавуу үлджээ.	
e	**At best, 100** people might come today.	Өнөөдөр **зуугаад** хүн ирэх байх.	
g	Father will come in **about 20** days.	Аав **хориод** хоногод ирнэ.	
h	Oh, **about 30** cars are gathered outside.	Хөөх, гадаа **гучаад** машин цугларчээ.	

Meaning '— ies' (talking of years)

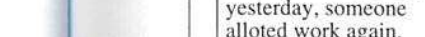
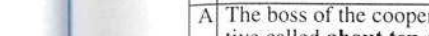
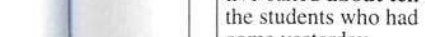
a	In Mongolia in the **fifties,** collectivism won.	Монголд **1950-иад** онд нэгдэлжих хөдөлгөөн ялсан.	
b	Nowadays, life in Mongolia has become very different from that in the **eighties**.	Одоо Монголын амьдрал **наяад** оны-хоос их өөр болжээ.	
c	In the **nineties,** many heavy problems arise in the world.	**Ерээд** онд дэлхий дээр олон чухал асуудал гарч байна.	

1.1.3.3.5.2.2 Postpositions "гаруй, илүү, шахам, орчим"

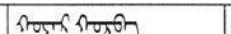
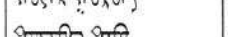
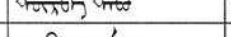
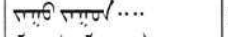
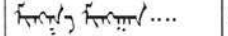
Numerals with the following **postpositions** can be used as approximate numerals:

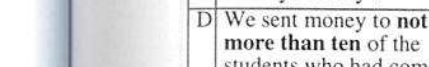
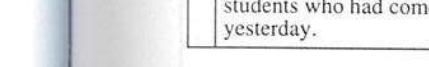
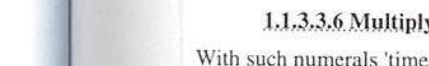
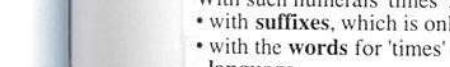
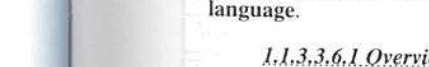
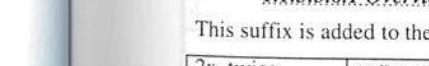
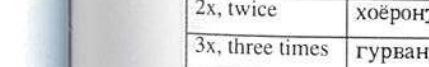
a	гаруй		more than ...	only for tens
b	илүү		more than...	only for tens
c	шахам		almost ...	only for tens
d	орчим		approximate	the number being used is in the middle

a	People discovered this monument after **more than 1000** years.	Энэ дурсгалыг хүмүүс **мянга гаруй** жилийн дараа олсон.	
a	I have **more than 100** camels.	Би **зуу гаруй** тэмээтэй.	
b	This year we harvested **more than 500** hectares.	Бид энэ жил **таван зуу илүү** га-гаас ургац авсан.	
b	**More than 40** people fit in this hall.	Энэ танхимд **40 илүү** хүн багтана.	

c	He owns **almost a hundred** sheep.	Тэр зуу шахам хоньтой.	
c	Baatar is **almost 50** years old.	Баатар тавь шахам настай.	
d	She is **about 20** years old.	Тэр хорь орчим настай.	
d	Their group has **about 70** members.	Тэдний баг дал орчим гишүүнтэй.	

1.1.3.3.5.2.3 Repetition

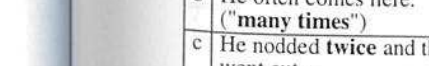
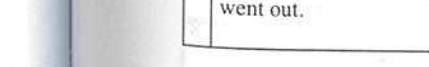
a	хоёр гурав дөрөв тав	 	two three four five	always used with successive numbers
b	зуу зуун... мянга мянган... түм буман ...	  	hundreds of ... thousands of ... very many...	Only with "түм бум" two different numbers ("10,000/ 100,000") are used.

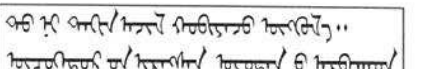
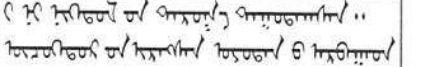
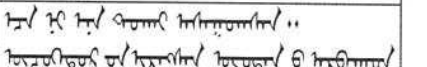
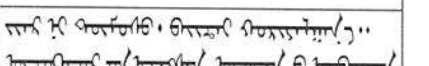
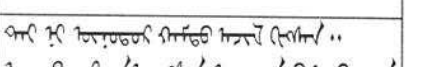
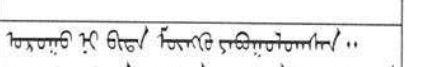
a	Will you come **in three, four** minutes?	Та гурав дөрвөн минутын дараа ирэх үү?	
a	There were only **five, six** eggs.	Зөвхөн тав зургаан өндөг байсан.	
a	Yesterday **four to five hundred** people came.	Өчигдөр дөрөв таван зуун хүн ирэв	
a	It rained around **two, three** o'clock.	Хоёр гурван цагийн үеэр бороо орсон.	
b	He has **hundreds of** dollars.	Түүнд зуу зуун доллар бий.	
b	**Thousands of** families are spending their summer here.	Энд мянга мянган айл өрх зусаж байна.	
b	In the streets, **very many** people behave madly. ("...**10,000, 100,000** living beings are being bewildered.")	Гудамжинд түм буман амьтан бужигнаж байна.	

1.1.3.3.5.3 Declension of Approximate Numerals

The declension of the approximate numerals is done according to general rules.

Examples:

N	**At most, ten** of the students who came yesterday are working here.	Өчигдрийн ирсэн оюутны арваад нь энд ажил хийж байна.	
G	The work of **about ten** of the students who came yesterday is coming to an end.	Өчигдрийн ирсэн оюутны арваадын нь ажил дуусах шахжээ.	

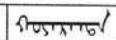
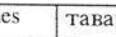
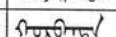
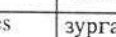
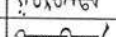
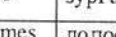
D	To **about ten** of the students who had come yesterday, someone alloted work again.	Өчигдрийн ирсэн оюутны арваадад нь дахин ажил хуваарь өглөө.	
A	The boss of the cooperative called **about ten** of the students who had come yesterday.	Өчигдрийн ирсэн оюутны арваадыг нь нэгдлийн дарга дуудсан.	
A	**About 10** of the students who had come yesterday were asked about this. ("From about ten...")	Өчигдрийн ирсэн оюутны арваадаас нь энэ тухай асуусан.	
I	Potatoes and cabbage will be harvested by, **at most, ten** of the students who came yesterday.	Өчигдрийн ирсэн оюутны арваадаар нь төмс, байцаа хураалгана.	
C	We worked together today with, **at most, ten** of the students who had come yesterday .	Өчигдрийн ирсэн оюутны арваадтай нь бид өнөөдөр хамт ажил хийсэн.	
D	We sent money to **not more than ten** of the students who had come yesterday.	Өчигдрийн ирсэн оюутны арваад [illegible] нь бид мөнгө явуулсан.	

1.1.3.3.6 Multiplying Numerals

With such numerals 'times' is expressed. Again, there are two ways in Mongolian to say this:
- with **suffixes**, which is only done in **written language**
- with the **words** for 'times' **(удаа)** or 'again' **(дахин)**, which are widely used in **colloquial language**.

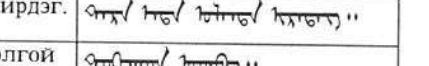
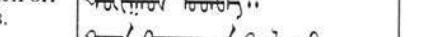
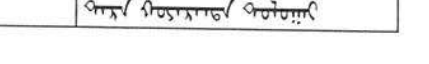
1.1.3.3.6.1 Overview of Multiplying Numerals

This suffix is added to the **n-stem**. It's usually used for **small numbers**.

2x, twice	хоёрон**тоо**		5x, five times	таван**таа**	
3x, three times	гурван**таа**		6x, six times	зургаан**таа**	
4x, four times	дөрвөн**төө**		7x, seven times	долоон**тоо**	

1.1.3.3.6.2 Usage of Multiplying Numerals

1.1.3.3.6.2.1 Multiplying NuS "–таа²"

a	Although he shot **three times**, he didn't hit the target.	Тэр гурвантаа буудсан боловч оносонгүй.	
b	He often comes here. ("**many times**")	Тэр энд олонтоо ирдэг.	
c	He nodded **twice** and then went out.	Тэр хоёрдтоо толгой дохиод гарч одов.	

1.1.3.3.6.2.2 Words "дахин, удаа"

"удаа" needs the **n-stem, "дахин"** does **not.** Generally, these two words can be used interchangeably. The exception is **ex. c**, where a repeated action is logically impossible. To see the difference more clearly, study examples **d and e**. In mathematics, "дахин" is used.

a	I came **twice** to your home.	Би танайд хоёр дахин (удаа) ирсэн.	[illegible] ·· [illegible]
b	My son has had three colds this winter. ("**three times** a cold")	Миний хүү энэ өвөл гурав дахин (гурван удаа) ханиад авсан.	[illegible] ·· [illegible]
c	Please take this medicine **three times** a day.	Та энэ эмийг өдөрт гурван удаа уугаарай.	[illegible] ·· [illegible]
d	He failed **three times in a row** in the exam.	Тэр шалгалтанд гурав дахин унасан.	[illegible] ·· [illegible]
e	He failed the examinations **three times**.	Тэр шалгалтанд гурван удаа унасан.	[illegible] ·· [illegible]

1.1.3.3.7 Diminutive Numerals

This suffix bears the meaning '**only**'. As a matter of fact, it's a derivational suffix for adjectives and serves the numerals in this function.

1.1.3.3.7.1 Diminutive NuS "–хан"

It is always used **without the n-stem**, possible for **all numerals**.

only one	ганц**хан** (нэгхэн)	[illegible]	**only** six	зургаа**хан**	[illegible]
only two	хоёр**хон**	[illegible]	**only** seven	долоо**хон**	[illegible]
only three	гурав**хан**	[illegible]	**only** eight	найм**хан**	[illegible]
only four	дөрөв**хөн**	[illegible]	**only** nine	ес**хөн**	[illegible]
only five	тав**хан**	[illegible]	**only** ten	арав**хан**	[illegible]

1.1.3.3.7.2 Usage of Diminutive Numerals

a	I have **only two** older brothers.	Би **хоёрхон** ахтай.	[illegible] ··
b	Today he **only** worked **five** hours.	Тэр өнөөдөр **тавхан** цаг ажиллав.	[illegible] ··
c	**Only ten** people came into the hall.	Танхимд **аравхан** хүн иржээ.	[illegible] ··
d	Bold had **only one** point less than Baatar.	Болд **ганцхан (нэгхэн)** оноогоор Баатараас дутав.	[illegible] ··
e	My son, I* will come back after **only 2** hours. (* the mother)	Миний хүү, ээж нь **хоёрхон** цагийн дараа ирнэ.	[illegible] ··
f	Sir, please give me **only four**.	Ах аа, та надад **дөрөвхнийг** өгөөч дээ.	[illegible] ··

1.1.3.3.8 Distributive Numerals

The English '**4 each', '8 each', etc.** is expressed in Mongolian with a **repeated number**. Such distributive numerals give either an ***accusative*** or an ***instrumental object***. If the noun is dropped, they can be **declined**.

1.1.3.3.8.1 Usage of Distributive Numerals

Examples "a" always show the **attributive usage**, i.e., they describe a *noun*. If this noun is dropped, the numeral has a noun function and is declined **(ex. b)**. If the noun is mentioned before the numeral, the numeral has to be declined **(ex. b*)**.

1a	The students were given prizes of **a thousand** *tögrögs* **each.**	Оюутнуудыг **мянга мянган** *төгрөгөөр* шагнажээ.	[illegible] ·· [illegible]
1b	The students were given prizes of **a thousand each.**	Оюутнуудыг **мянга мянгаар** шагнажээ.	[illegible] ·· [illegible]
2a	The soldiers stood in *blocks* **of twenty** *rows.*	Цэргүүд **хорь хорин** *эгнээгээр* жагсжээ.	[illegible] ·· [illegible]
2b	The soldiers stood in rows **of twenty.**	Цэргүүд **хорь хорин** эгнэн жагсжээ.	[illegible] ·· [illegible]
3a	The teacher gave **each** of his pupils **five** *thin notebooks.*	Багш сурагчидлаа **тав таван** *нимгэн дэвтэр* өглөө.	[illegible] ·· [illegible]
3b *	The teacher gave **each** of his pupils **five** *thin notebooks.*	Багш сурагчидлаа *нимгэн дэвтэр* **тав тавыг** өглөө.	[illegible] ·· [illegible]
3b	The teacher gave his pupils **five each.**	Багш сурагчидлаа **тав тавыг** өглөө.	[illegible] ·· [illegible]
4a	Please take **two** *notebooks* **each.**	Та нар **хоёр хоёр** *дэвтэр* аваарай.	[illegible] ·· [illegible]
4b *	Please take from these *notebooks* **two each.**	Та нар энэ *дэвтрээс* **хоёр хоёрыг** аваарай.	[illegible] ·· [illegible]
4b	Please take **two each.**	Та нар **хоёр хоёрыг** аваарай.	[illegible] ·· [illegible]
5	Stack these books up on that shelf **ten per** pile.	Наад номоо тэр тавиур дээр **арав арваар** нь давхарлан хураа!	[illegible] –· [illegible]
6	(Someone) bundled the many one-tögrög bills together **by the hundreds.**	Олон нэгтийн төгрөгийг **зуу зуугаар** нь боолоо.	[illegible] ·· [illegible]
7	Enter there **one by one**!	Та нар тийшээ **нэг нэгээр** орцгоо.	[illegible] ·· [illegible]
8	The people made groups **of three each.**	Хүмүүс тэнд **гурав гурваараа** баг болжээ.	[illegible] ·· [illegible]

1.1.3.3.9 Numerals in Mathematics

These are the most commonly used terms in mathematics:

+	нэмэх тэмдэг		plus sign
-	хасах тэмдэг		minus sign
.	үржүүлэх тэмдэг		multiplication sign
:	хуваах тэмдэг		division sign
=	тэнцүүгийн тэмдэг		equal sign

1.1.3.3.9.1 Decimals

"ноль" is a Russian loan word and, until now, has been used in schools, but the Mongolian word for zero "**тэг**" has been reintroduced. A literal translation of **ex. g** would be:
'six (six whole), three hundred and thirty-three of thousand'.

a	0.5 (zero point five)	тэг <u>аравны</u> тав (0,5)	
b	0.6 (zero point six)	тэг <u>аравны</u> зургаа (0,6)	
c	0.3 (zero point three)	тэг <u>аравны</u> гурав (0,3)	
d	0.25 (zero point two five)	тэг <u>зууны</u> хорин тав (0,25)	
e	10.5 (ten point five)	арав (арван бүхэл) <u>аравны</u> тав (10,5)	
f	1.75 (one point seven five)	нэг (бүхэл) <u>зууны</u> далан тав (1,75)	
g	6.334 (six point three three four)	зургаа(зургаан бүхэл) <u>мянганы</u> гурван зуун гучин дөрөв (6,334)	

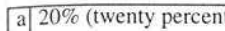
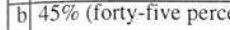
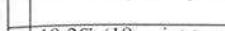
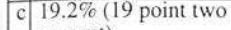
1.1.3.3.9.2 Fractions

In Mongolian, you have to start with the **denominator**, which is in genitive case.

a	1/2 (one half)	<u>хоёрны</u> нэг	
b	1/3 (one third)	<u>гуравны</u> нэг	
c	1/5 (one fifth)	<u>тавны</u> нэг	
d	3/8 (three eighths)	<u>наймны</u> гурав	
e	7/9 (seven nineths)	<u>есний</u> долоо	
f	2 5/6 (two and five sixths)	хоёр бүхэл <u>зургааны</u> тав	
g	5 1/2 (five and a half)	таван бүхэл <u>хоёрны</u> нэг	

1.1.3.3.9.3 Percentages

"**процент**" is a Russian loan word which, until now, has also been used in schools, but the Mongolian word for percent "**хувь**" (share) has been reintroduced.
Because a noun follows (**хувь**), the number is used **attributively**, i.e., with its **n-stem**.

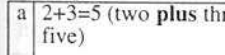
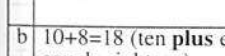
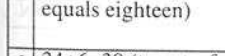
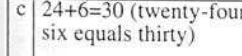
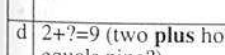
a	20% (twenty percent)	хорин <u>хувь</u>	
b	45% (forty-five percent)	дөчин таван <u>хувь</u>	
c	19.2% (19 point two percent)	арван ес, аравны хоёр <u>хувь</u> (19,2%)	
d	99.8% (ninety-nine point eight percent)	ерөн ес, аравны найман <u>хувь</u> (99,8%)	
e	103.85% (one hundred three point eight five percent)	зуун гурав, зууны наян таван <u>хувь</u> (103,85%)	

1.1.3.3.9.4 Numerals in Basic Arithmetic Functions

1.1.3.3.9.4.1 Addition

Instead of "тэнцүү", one could say "тэнцэх нь". The following versions are also possible:
- Хоёр дээр гурвыг **нэмэхэд** тав болно/болдог.
- Хоёр дээр гурвыг **нэмбэл** тав болно/болдог.

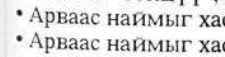
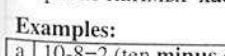
Examples:

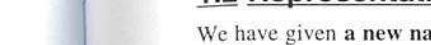
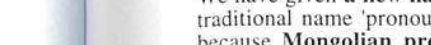
a	2+3=5 (two **plus** three equals five)	хоёр дээр <u>нэмэх нь</u> гурав тэнцүү тав	
b	10+8=18 (ten **plus** eight equals eighteen)	арав дээр <u>нэмэх нь</u> найм тэнцүү арван найм	
c	24+6=30 (twenty-four **plus** six equals thirty)	хорин дөрөв дээр <u>нэмэх нь</u> зургаа тэнцүү гуч	
d	2+?=9 (two **plus** how many equals nine?)	хоёр дээр хэдийг <u>нэмбэл</u> ес вэ?	
e	?+5=20 (how many **plus** five equals twenty?)	хэд дээр тавыг <u>нэмбэл</u> хорь вэ?	

1.1.3.3.9.4.2 Subtraction

Instead of "тэнцүү", one could say "тэнцэх нь". The following versions are also possible:
- Арваас наймыг **хасахад** хоёр үлдэнэ/болно.
- Арваас наймыг **хасвал** хоёр үлдэнэ/болно.

Examples:

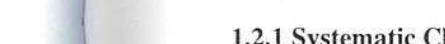
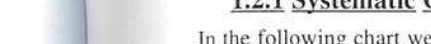
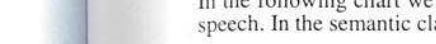
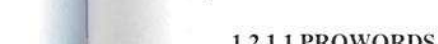
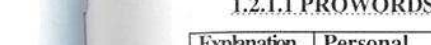
a	10-8=2 (ten **minus** eight equals two)	арваас <u>хасах нь</u> найм тэнцүү хоёр	
b	13-7=6 (thirteen **minus** seven equals six)	арван гурваас <u>хасах нь</u> долоо тэнцүү зургаа	

c	130-71=59 (hundred and thirty **minus** seventy-one equals fifty-nine)	зуун гучаас хасах нь да-лан нэг тэнцүү тавин ес	
d	7-?=4 (seven **minus** how many equals four?)	долоогоос хэдийг хасвал дөрөв бэ?	
e	?-30=18 (how many **minus** thirty equals eighteen?)	Хэдээс гучийг хасвал арван найм бэ?	

1.1.3.3.9.4.3 Multiplication

Instead of "тэнцүү", one could say "тэнцэх нь". The following versions are also possible:
- Гурвыг таваар **үржүүлэхэд** арван тав болно.
- Гурвыг таваар **үржүүлвэл** арван тав болно.

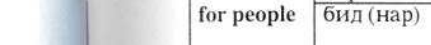
Examples:

a	3·5=15 (three **times** five equals fifteen)	гурвыг **үржих нь** тав тэнцүү арван тав	
b	8·4=32 (eight **times** four equals thirty-two)	наймыг **үржих нь** дөрөв тэнцүү гучин хоёр	
c	9·7=63 (nine **times** seven equals sixty-three)	есийг **үржих нь** долоо тэнцүү жаран гурав	
d	2·?=16 (two **times** how many equals sixteen?)	хоёрыг хэдээр **үржүүлвэл** арван зургаа вэ?	
e	?·4= 36 (how many **times** four equals thirty-six?)	хэдийг дөрвөөр **үржүүл-вэл** гучин зургаа вэ?	

1.1.3.3.9.4.4 Division

Instead of "тэнцүү", one could say "тэнцэх нь". The following versions are also possible:
- Арвыг хоёрт **хуваахад** тав болно.
- Арвыг хоёрт **хуваабал** тав болно.

Examples:

a	10:2=5 (ten **divided by** two equals five)	арвыг **хуваах нь** хоёр тэнцүү тав	
b	40:5=8 (forty **divided by** five equals eight)	дөчийг **хуваах нь** тав тэнцүү найм	
c	20:5=4 (twenty **divided by** five equals four)	хорийг **хуваах нь** тав тэнцүү дөрөв	
d	56:?=7 (fifty-six **divided by** how many equals seven?)	тавин зургааг хэдэд **хуваахад** долоо вэ?	
e	?:8=6 (how many **divided by** eight equals six?)	хэдийг наймд **хуваахад** зургаа вэ?	

1.2 Representative Parts of Speech (Prowords)

We have given **a new name** to those parts of speech that can represent others: **prowords**. The traditional name 'pronouns' (Latin 'pro nomen' = 'for noun') doesn't fully serve our purpose because **Mongolian prowords not only represent nouns**, but also adjectives, adverbs, numerals, and even verbs.

1.2.1 Systematic Classification

In the following chart we will try to show which Mongolian prowords represent which parts of speech. In the semantic classification, we will give examples and translations.

1.2.1.1 PROWORDS FOR NOUNS

Explanation	Personal	Possessive	Reflexive	Demonstr.	Interrog.	Indefinite
for people	би	минийх	өөрөө (singular)	эд нар тэд нар өнөөдүүл нөгөөдүүл	хэн	хэн ч хэн нэгэн хэн хэнгүй хэн ч ..-гүй
	чи/ та	чиний таных				
	тэр	түүнийх				
	бид (нар)	бидний манайх	өөрсдөө (plural)			
	та нар	та нарын танайх				
	тэд (нар)	тэдний тэд нарын				
for things, items				эдгээр тэдгээр өнөөтөх нөгөөтөх	юу	юу ч юу юугүй юу ч ...-гүй

1.2.1.2 PROWORDS FOR VERBS

- There are **no prowords** for verbs in the categories **'personal'**, **'possessive'**, and **'reflexive'**.
- **demonstrative:** ингэ-, тэгэ-
- **interrogative:** яа-, хэрхи-
- **indefinite:** яа- ч

1.2.1.3 PROWORDS FOR ADWORDS

- There are **no prowords** for adwords in the categories **'personal'** and **'possessive'**.
- **reflexive:** өөрийн(хөө), өөрсдийн(хөө)
- **demonstrative:** энэ, тэр, эдгээр, тэдгээр, ийм, тийм, иймэрхүү, тиймэрхүү, өнөө, нөгөө, өдий, тэдий, өчнөөн, тэчнээн,
- **interrogative:** ямар, аль, хэд(эн), хичнээн, хэзээ, хэдийд, хаа(на), хаашаа, хаанаас, хаагуур, хэр, яаж, яагаад
- **indefinite:** ямар ч, ямар нэг(эн), алин ч, аль нэг(эн), аль альгүй, хэд(эн) ч, хичнээн ч, хэзээ ч, хэзээ нэг, хэзээ нэгэнтээ, хэзээ хэзээгүй, хаана ч, хаа нэг, хаа нэгэнтээ, хаа хаагүй, хаашаа ч, хаанаас ч, хаагуур ч, яаж ч, яа- ч.

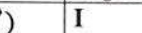
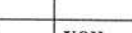
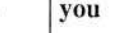
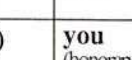
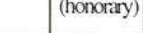
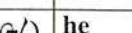
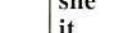
1.2.2 Semantic Classification

The semantic classification follows the traditional way to make subgroups:

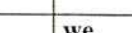
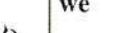
1.2.2.1 PERSONAL PROWORDS

Personal prowords always **represent nouns**. Therefore, we could also use the traditional name 'personal pronouns'.

1.2.2.1.1 Overview of Personal Prowords

Cyrillic	Classical	English	Explanations
би (над-)		**I**	The stem in **parentheses** is always used for **declension** (i.e., to add suffixes). Note the **4 exceptions** to this (see **shadowed** squares under 1.2.2.1.2).
чи (чам-)		**you**	Generally used for **younger** people than oneself or **close friends** around the same age.
та (тан-)		**you** (honorary)	Originally plural form, then changed into **honorary singular** form. Usually used for people **older** than oneself.
тэр (түүн-)		**he she it**	**There is no difference between he/she/it** because originally, there was no proword for the 3rd person. "тэр/ энэ" are actually demonstrative prowords (this/that). For this reason, it's **not very polite** to use this personal proword. Where possible, other words should be used (see examples on page 259).
бид (бидэн-) (ман-) **бид нар**	 [old: ]	**we**	"бид нар" **stresses the plural meaning,** or is used when referring to a **group of individuals**. "ман-" is the old plural stem that has lost its meaning. But with the youth, the usage of "ман-" has become popular. "Биднүс" is a very informal colloquial version.
та нар	 [old:]	**you** (plural)	"та" was originally the personal proword for the **2nd person plural**. Today it's mainly used for a **honorary singular** address. Therefore, the common plural form today is "та нар".
тэд (тэдэн-) **тэд нар**	 [old:]	**they**	"тэд нар" **stresses the plural,** or is used when referring to a **group of individuals**. An explanation for "эд нар" is found on page 264.

Explanations to the declension table on the next page:

1.) We suggest that students **memorize the *word stems*** (in the table above in parentheses) and the **4 exceptions** to it (shadowed squares in table on the next page):
- "миний" and "чиний" don't use the common stem.
- "намайг" has a different declension; in colloquial language people also use "надыг".
- "чамайг" has a different declension; but "чамыг" is wrong!
- «  », the Classical script forms for "намайг/ чамайг", are written as exceptions. «  » are wrong forms.

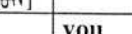
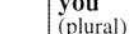
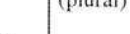
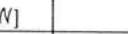
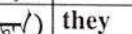
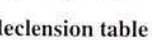
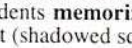
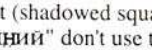
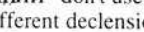
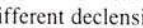
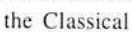
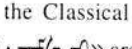
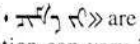
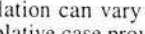
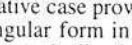
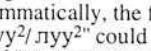
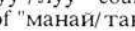
2.) The English translation can vary if these prowords are used in a context, particularly the instrumental and ablative case prowords.

3.) The third person singular form in instrumental case has two acceptable forms: "түүнээр" and "түүгээр". Grammatically, the first form is correct, as it uses the stem "түүн".

4.) The directive CS "руу²/ луу²" could also be added directly as in "надруу, та нарлуу".

5.) For an explanation of "манай/ танай"* (1st/2nd person singular genitive) see page 104.

1.2.2.1.2 Declension of Personal Prowords

	Singular				Plural		
Nom.	**I**	**you**	**you** (hon.)	**he/she/it**	**we**	**you**	**they**
	би	чи	та	тэр	бид (нар)	та нар	тэд (нар)
							
Gen.	**my**	**your**	**your**	**his/her/its**	**our**	**your**	**their**
	миний *манай	чиний *танай	таны	түүний	бидний бид нарын (манай*)	та нарын	тэдний тэд нарын
	 *	 *			  ( *)		 
Dat.	**(to) me**	**(to) you**	**(to) you**	**(to) him/her/it**	**(to) us**	**(to) you**	**(to) them**
	надад	чамд	танд	түүнд	бидэнд бид нарт	та нарт	тэдэнд тэд нарт
					 		
Acc.	**me**	**you**	**you**	**him/her/it**	**us**	**you**	**them**
	намайг надыг	чамайг	таныг	түүнийг	бидний бид нарыг	та нарыг	тэдний тэд нарыг
Abl.	**from me**	**from you**	**from you**	**from him/her/it**	**from us**	**from you**	**from them**
	надаас	чамаас	танаас	түүнээс	биднээс бид нараас	та нараас	тэднээс тэд нараас
Instr.	**by me**	**by you**	**by you**	**by him/her/it**	**by us**	**by you**	**by them**
	надаар	чамаар	танаар	түүнээр түүгээр	биднээр бид нараар	та нараар	тэднээр тэд нараар
Com.	**with me**	**with you**	**with you**	**with him/her/it**	**with us**	**with you**	**with them**
	надтай	чамтай	тантай	түүнтэй	бидэнтэй бид нартай	та нартай	тэдэнтэй тэд нартай
Dir.	**toward me**	**toward you**	**toward you**	**toward him/her/it**	**toward us**	**toward you**	**toward them**
	над руу	чам руу	тан руу	түүн рүү	бидэн рүү бид нар луу	та нар луу	тэдэн рүү тэд нар луу

1.2.2.1.3 Usage of Personal Prowords

1.2.2.1.3.1 "би" = "I"

a	**I** am rejoicing.	<u>Би</u> баярлаж байна.	Би баярлаж байна..
b	**My** father is a teacher. (**My*** wife returned to her job.)	<u>Миний</u> аав багш. (**Манай*** эхнэр ажилдаа орсон.)	(Миний аав багш. Манай эхнэр ажилдаа орсон..)
c	Please give **me** this notebook.	<u>Надад</u> энэ дэвтрийг өгөөч!	Надад энэ дэвтрийг өгөөч –.
d	Dorj saw **me**.	Дорж <u>намайг</u> харсан.	Доржийг намайг харсан..
e	What did you ask me? ("What did you ask **from me**?")	Чи <u>надаас</u> юу асуусан бэ?	Чи надаас юу асуусан бэ?
f	He had me help him. ("He was helped **by me**.")	Тэр <u>надаар</u> туслуулсан.	Тэр надаар туслуулсан..
g	When will you meet me? ("...meet **with me**?")	Чи <u>надтай</u> хэзээ уулзах вэ?	Чи надтай хэзээ уулзах вэ?
h	Please call me. ("Please talk **toward me** through the wire.")	Та <u>над руу</u> утсаар яриарай.	Та над руу утсаар ярианаа..

* see explanation to the words "манай/танай" on page 104.

1.2.2.1.3.2 "чи" = "you"

a	When will **you** go?	<u>Чи</u> хэзээ явах вэ?	Чи хэзээ явах вэ?
b	Where is **your** book? (Is **your*** child well?)	<u>Чиний</u> ном хаа байна? (**Танай** * хүүхэд сайн уу?)	(Чиний ном хаа байна? Танай хүүхэд сайн уу?)
c	I will teach a lesson **to you**./ I will teach **you**.	Би <u>чамд</u> хичээл заана.	Би чамд хичээл заана..
d	I know **you**.	Би <u>чамайг</u> танина.	Би чамайг танина..
e	I took a book **from you**.	Би <u>чамаас</u> ном авсан.	Би чамаас ном авсан..
f	Did the mother send the letter with you? ("...**through you**?")	Ээж <u>чамаар</u> захиа явуулсан уу?	Ээж чамаар захиа явуулсан уу? Ээж чамаар захиа явуулсан уу?
g	I study together **with you**.	Би <u>чамтай</u> хамт сурдаг.	Би чамтай хамт сурдаг..
h	I will come **to(ward) you**.	Би <u>чам руу</u> очно.	Би чам руу очно..

* see explanation to the words "манай/танай" on page 104.

1.2.2.1.3.3 "та" = "you" (honorary)

a	Do **you** have time?	<u>Та</u> завтай юу?	Та завтай юу?
b	What's **your** name? (Where does **your*** husband work?)	<u>Таны</u> нэр хэн бэ? (<u>Танай</u>* нөхөр хаана ажилладаг вэ?)	Таны нэр хэн бэ? (Танай нөхөр хаана ажилладаг вэ?)
c	I will give **you** bread.	Би <u>танд</u> талх өгнө.	Би танд талх өгнө..
d	I waited for **you**.	Би <u>таныг</u> хүлээсэн.	Би таныг хүлээсэн..
e	I'd like to buy dollars **from you**.	Би <u>танаас</u> доллар авмаар байна.	Би танаас доллар авмаар байна.
f	I want to have a 'deel' made **by you**.	Би <u>танаар</u> дээл хийлгэмээр байна.	Би танаар дээл хийлгэмээр байна..

g	I will go together **with you**.	Би <u>тантай</u> хамт явна.	Би тантай хамт явна..
h	I will send this **to you** afterwards.	Би үүнийг дараа <u>тан руу</u> явуулна.	Би үүнийг дараа тан руу явуулна..

* see explanation to the words "манай/танай" on page 104.

1.2.2.1.3.4 "тэр" = "he/she/it"

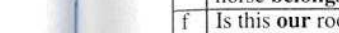
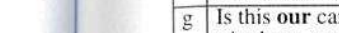
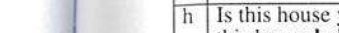
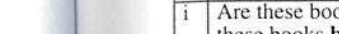
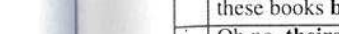
This personal proword is **not very polite** in its nominative form and should only be used if there is no better way to say it (see **ex. a** in parentheses). **Ex. f** gives the grammatically correct form "түүнээр", but "түүгээр" is widely used in colloquial language.

a	**He/She/It** left. (Baatar.../My older brother.../The person who came to your home...)	<u>Тэр</u> явсан. (Баатар/ Манай ах.../ Танайд ирсэн хүн...)	Тэр явсан.. Тэр явсан.. (Баатар. Манай ах. Танайд ирсэн хүн..)
b	Where is **his/her** father?	<u>Түүний</u> аав хаа байна?	Түүний аав хаа байна?
c	Give **him/her/it** something to drink.	<u>Түүнд</u> нэг уух юм өг!	Түүнд нэг уух юм өг –.
d	Will you see **him/her/it**?	Чи <u>түүнийг</u> харах уу?	Чи түүнийг харах уу?
e	Ask him/her. ("Ask **from him/her**.")	<u>Түүнээс</u> асуу!	Түүнээс асуу –.
f	I have him/her teach me English. ("I am being taught English **by him/her**.")	Би <u>түүнээр</u> англи хэл заалгадаг.	Би түүнээр англи хэл заалгадаг..
g	I talked **with him/her** on the phone.	Би <u>түүнтэй</u> утсаар ярьсан.	Би түүнтэй утсаар ярьсан..
h	My teacher sent him/her a fax. ("...a fax **to him/her**.")	Манай багш <u>түүн руу</u> факс явуулсан.	Манай багш түүнрүү факс явуулсан.. Манай багш түүнрүү факс явуулсан..

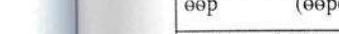
1.2.2.1.3.5 "бид (нар)" = "we"

a	We shall arrive tomorrow.	<u>Бид (нар)</u> маргааш ирнэ.	Бид (нар) маргааш ирнэ..
b	**Our** beds are hard. (**Our** house has 4 rooms.)	<u>Бидний (Бид нарын)</u> ор хатуу байна. (<u>Манай</u> байр 4 өрөөтэй.)	Бидний ор хатуу байна.. (Манай байр 4 өрөөтэй..) Бидний ор (Бид нар) хатуу байна.
c	Please give **us** something to eat.	<u>Бидэнд (Бид нарт)</u> нэг идэх юм өгөөрэй!	Бидэнд идэх юм өгөөрэй –. Бидэнд юм (Бид нар) идэх хэрэг
d	Who called **us**?	<u>Биднийг (Бид нарыг)</u> хэн дуудсан бэ?	Биднийг (Бид нар) дуудсан/ хэн дуудсан/ хэн дуудсан бэ?
e	He was bored with us. ("He was bored **from us**.")	Тэр <u>биднээс (бид нараас)</u> уйдсан.	Биднээс уйдсан.. Тэр Бидэнд (Бид нар) уйдсан..
f	He made us help him./He was helped **by us**.	Тэр <u>биднээр (бид нараар)</u> туслуулсан.	Тэр биднээр туслуулсан.. Тэр Бидэнд (Бид нар) туслуулсан
g	They (always) play together **with us**.	Тэд <u>бидэнтэй (бид нартай)</u> тоглодог.	Тэр Бидэнтэй (Бид нар) тоглодог..
h	The puppy ran **toward us**.	Гөлөг <u>бидэн руу (бид нар луу)</u> гүйсэн.	Гүйсэн.. Гөлөг Бидэн (Бид нар) руу

1.2.2.1.3.6 "та нар" = "you" (plural)

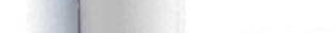
a	What will **you** do tomorrow?	Та нар маргааш юу хийх вэ?	
b	**Your** books are there.	Та нарын номууд тэнд байна.	
c	I won't give **you** money.	Би та нарт мөнгө өгөхгүй.	
d	I saw **you**.	Би та нарыг харсан.	
e	She is embarrassed in your presence. ("She is embarrassed **from you**.")	Тэр та нараас ичдэг.	
f	Does the teacher have **you** clean his classroom? (*causative* takes instr. CS)	Багш өрөөгөө та нараар цэвэрлүүлдэг үү?	
g	The doctor will meet **you**. ("... meet **with you**")	Эмч та нартай уулзана.	
h	I sent you a letter. ("... **toward you**.")	Би та нар луу захиа илгээв.	

1.2.2.1.3.7 "тэд (нар)" = "they"

a	**They** are playing.	Тэд (нар) тоглож байна.	
b	**Their** father is a teacher.	Тэдний (Тэд нарын) аав багш.	
c	Give **them** many balls.	Тэдэнд (Тэд нарт) олон бөмбөг өг!	
d	Please train **them** in the German language.	Тэднийг (Тэд нарыг) герман хэлэнд сургаач.	
e	Don't ask them. ("...**from them**.")	Тэднээс (Тэд нараас) битгий асуу!	
f	Have them write it./ Have it be written **by them**."	Чи тэднээр (тэд нараар) бичүүл.	
g	Come **with them** tomorrow to my home.	Маргааш тэдэнтэй (тэд нартай) манайд ир!	
h	Please go **to(ward) them**.	Та тэд нар луу очоорой.	

1.2.2.2 POSSESSIVE PROWORDS

In order to build possessive prowords, the **personal prowords** are used in the **genitive case with the possessive CbS "–x"** which is explained on page 101.

a	This book is **mine**./This book **belongs to me**.	Энэ ном минийх.	
b	That pen is **yours**./That pen **belongs to you**.	Тэр үзэг чинийх.	
c	Is this **yours**?/Does this **belong to you**?	Энэ таных уу?	
d	Is this **his/hers**?/Does this **belong to him/her**?	Энэ түүнийх мөн үү?	

e	This horse is **ours**./This horse **belongs to us**.	Энэ морь манайх.	
f	Is this **our** room? (e.g. in a hotel; here, not belonging!)	Энэ өрөө биднийх мөн үү?	
g	Is this **our** car? (e.g. on a trip; here, not belonging!)	Энэ машин бид нарынх мөн үү?	
h	Is this house **yours**?/Does this house **belong to you**?	Энэ байшин танайх уу?	
i	Are these books **yours**?/Do these books **belong to you**?	Энэ номууд та нарынх уу?	
j	Oh no, **theirs**./Oh no, they **belong to them**.	Үгүй ээ, тэд нарынх.	

1.2.2.3 REFLEXIVE PROWORDS

There are **2 words** which often appear together with the personal prowords and are **coupled back** to them by adding either the **RS** (see p. 108) or a **CbP** (see p. 106-107). Thus, the name '**reflexive** proword' is only correct if it refers to the expression as a whole (with RS or CbP).

өөр (өөрөө)		-self/own	for singular
өөрсөд (өөрсдөө)		-selves/own	for plural

1.2.2.3.1 Declension of Reflexive Prowords

refers to the **CbP**'s "минь/ маань/ чинь/ тань/ нь" ( ) which, for reasons of space, we won't write in the table below.

Case	Singular		Plural	
Nom	өөрөө		өөрсдөө	
Gen.	өөрийнхөө		өөрсдийнхөө	
	өөрийн #		өөрсдийн #	
Dat.	өөртөө		өөрсөлдөө	
	өөрт #		өөрсөд #	
Acc.	өөрийгөө		өөрсдийгөө	
	өөрий(г) #		өөрсдий(г) #	
Abl.	өөрөөсөө		өөрсдөөсөө	
	өөрөөс #		өөрсдөөс #	
Instr.	өөрөөрөө		өөрсдөөрөө	
	өөрөөр #		өөрсдөөр #	
Com.	өөртэйгөө		өөрсөлтэйгөө	
	өөртэй #		өөрсөлтэй #	
Dir.	өөр луугээ		өөрсөд рүүгээ	
	өөр луу #		өөрсөд рүү #	

1.2.2.3.2 Usage of Reflexive Prowords

When the reflexive proword is **coupled to the subject**, it is translated as **'-self/-selves'**. When it has adjective function and is **coupled to an object** which is in genitive case, it is translated as **'own'**. In the nominative case, the RS is always needed.

1.2.2.3.2.1 Examples in Nominative Case

a	I made this **myself**.	Би үүнийг **өөрөө** хийсэн.	
b	Where do **you** work? ("**Self***, where work?")	(Та/чи) **Өөрөө*** хаана ажилладаг вэ?	
c	How old are **you**? ("**Self***, how many age?")	(Та/чи) **Өөрөө*** хэдэн настай вэ?	
d	He/She can do this **him/herself**.	Тэр **өөрөө** үүнийг хийж чадна.	
e	We learn English by **ourselves**.	Бид англи хэл **өөрсдөө** сурч байна.	
f	Last year, we were living in Germany **too**.	Бид өнгөрсөн жил **өөрсдөө** Германд амьдарч байсан.	
g	We'll do this **ourselves**.	Манайхан **өөрсдөө** үүнийг хийнэ.	
h	Children! Help **yourselves**! ("Please serve to you **yourselves**.")	Хүүхдүүд ээ! **Өөрөө** өөртөө үйлчлээрэй! (double plural unnecessary!)	
i	The parents, **themselves,** have come up with such an idea.	Эцэг эхчүүд **өөрсдөө** ийм санал гаргажээ.	

* Explanation:
If you don't know whether to say "та" or "чи" (e.g. in a "get-to-know" situation of people of the same age) this reflexive proword can be used instead. (English speakers don't have this problem, as 'you' can be direct or honorary.)

1.2.2.3.2.2 Examples in Genitive Case

"өөрийнхөө"="**өөр**"(proword) + "**ийн**"(genitive CS) + "**х**"(inserted consonant) + "**өө**"(RS)

a	Why, then, didn't you sit on **your own** chair?	Чи яагаад **өөрийнхөө** сандал дээр суугаагүй юм бэ?	
b	Saraa, clean **your own** room nicely, please.	Сараа, **өөрийнхөө** өрөөг сайхан цэвэрлээрэй!	
c	Saraa finished **her own** tasks and then she helped Bold.	Сараа **өөрийнхөө** үүргийг биелүүлчи-хээд Болдод туслав.	
d	We must do **our own** jobs ourselves.	Бид өөрсдөө **өөрсдийн-хөө** ажлыг хийх ёстой.	
f *	I cleaned **your** room.	**Өөрийн чинь** өрөөг би цэвэрлэсэн.	
g *	What's **your** name?	**Өөрийн тань** нэр хэн бэ?	

h	One's **own** things are debtless.	**Өөрийн** юм өргүй. (proverb; general statement, therefore no RS)	

* **ex. f-g**: Here the **neutral word "өөр"** is used to avoid having to say "та" or "чи". The CbP's "чинь/тань" are not so strict in their meaning of 'honorary' or 'direct' as are the personal prowords "та/чи".

1.2.2.3.2.3 Examples in Other Cases

a	Please give this **to him** and only **him**!	Үүнийг зөвхөн **өөрт нь** өгөөрэй.	
b	I bought this **for myself**.	Би үүнийг **өөртөө** авсан.	
c *	We bought a gift for **you**.	Бид нар **өөрт чинь** бэлэг авсан. (танд/чамд)	
d	Would you please introduce **yourselves**.	Та нар **өөрсдийгөө** танилцуулна уу.	
e	Don't praise **yourself**!	**Өөрийгөө** битгий магт!	
f	It's their fault they're late. ("It 's because **of themselves**...")	Тэд нар **өөрсдөөсөө** болж хожимдсон.	
g	Please have them do this **by themselves**.	Үүнийг тэд нараар **өөрсдөөр нь** хийлгээрэй.	
h	I talked **to myself**.	Би **өөртэйгөө** ярьсан.	
i	Could you pull that table a little **toward yourself/yourselves**?	Энэ ширээг **өөр лүүгээ** жаахан татаж болох уу?	

* **ex. c**: Here the neutral word "өөр" is used to avoid having to say "та" or "чи". The CbP's "чинь/тань" are not so strict in their meaning of 'honorary' or 'direct' as the personal prowords "та/чи".

1.2.2.3.3 Other Reflexive Words

Some **other words** can also be **coupled back to the subject** with the help of the **RS**. Such phrases must not be taken apart as they form a **new unit** and are mostly translated with new English words (alone, throughout, etc.).

a	I'm at home **alone**. ("...**by my single**.")	Би гэртээ **ганцаараа** байна. (ганц+аар+аа)	
b	We **all** will watch a movie **together**. ("We **by us all**...")	Бид **бүгдээрээ** кино үзнэ. (бүгд+ээр+ээ)	
c	We **all** love our motherland. ("We **by us all** ...")	Бид **цөмөөрөө** эх орондоо хайртай. (цөм+өөр+өө)	
d	**In the whole** world, people fight for peace. (World **by its total**...")	Дэлхий **нийтээрээ** энх тайвны төлөө тэмцэж байна. (нийт+ээр+ээ)	
e	**Throughout** the country, people are talking about this. ("Country **by whole**...")	Орон **даяараа** энэ тухай ярьж байна. (даяар+аа)	

1.2.2.4 DEMONSTRATIVE PROWORDS

Demonstrative prowords, as the name already indicates, point or refer to something. They can take on the function of a noun and can then be **declined**. Most of these demonstrative prowords appear in **pairs**. Usually, the **distance to the speaker** is the main difference between these two pair words.

1.2.2.4.1 Overview of Demonstrative Prowords

The word stems in parentheses are used for the declension (to add suffixes). In colloquial language, some people decline the **stems "тэр/энэ"** (e.g. тэрийг, энийг, тэрэнд, тэрнээс).

Cyrillic	Classical	English	Explanations
энэ (үүн-) тэр (түүн-)	 	this (here) that (there)	**Singular**; represent **adjectives**. Note that "энэ (үүн)" can never represent a noun (person).
эдгээр тэдгээр **as nouns:** эд нар (эдэн-) тэд нар (тэдэн-)	 **as nouns:** 	these (here) those (there)	**Plural**; represent **adjectives**. When used as nouns, "эдгээр/тэдгээр" represent **things**, and "эд (нар)/тэд (нар)" represent **people**. **Ex.:** *Эдгээрийг* чи аваарай. *(хонь)* **Эднийг/Эд нарыг** чи хараарай. (хүүхдүүд)
ийм тийм	 	such, as ... as this such, as ... as that	Represent **adjectives**.
иймэрхүү тиймэрхүү	 	this kind that kind	Represent **adjectives**. They are **more general** than "ийм/тийм".
өнөө нөгөө	 	this other .... that other	Represent **adjectives** and always refer to something that is known to the speaker, something that was **mentioned before**.
өнөөтөх нөгөөтөх	 	this other one that other one	Represent **adjectives in a noun function**.
өнөөдүүл нөгөөдүүл	 	these others those others	Represent **nouns (people)**.
өдий төдий	 	as many as this as many as that	Represent **numerals**, usually **countable** numerals.
өчнөөн төчнөөн	 	as much as this as much as that	Represent **numerals,** usually **uncountable** numerals. [(т)өчнөөн = (т)өдий+ чинээ]
ингэ- тэгэ-	 	to do it this way to do it that way	Represent **verbs** and can be **conjugated** like verbs.

1.2.2.4.2 Usage of Demonstrative Prowords

Many of the demonstrative prowords can be **used in pairs** and then gain a **new meaning** (see the examples with an "*" on the next pages).

1.2.2.4.2.1 "энэ/тэр, (т)эдгээр, (т)эд (нар)" = "this/that, these/those"

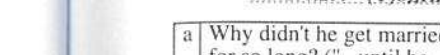
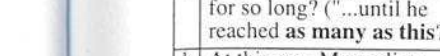
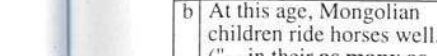
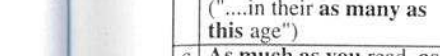
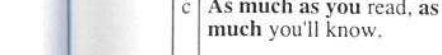
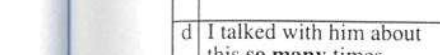
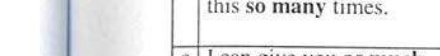
When these demonstrative prowords are **used as nouns** (example sentences in parentheses), the following has to be considered:

- If "энэ/тэр" are referring to **people in singular**, the "түүн-" stem has to be used and, in English, it's translated with **personal prowords**: **ex. c,d.**
- If "энэ/тэр" are referring to **people in plural**, "(т)эд нар/(т)эдэн" are used and,in English, it's translated with **personal prowords**: **ex.g-h.**
- If "энэ/тэр" are referring to **things in singular**, the "үүн-" stem should be used, but often people add the case suffixes to the "энэ" stem (энийг), which is wrong. In English, it's best to add the word 'one', thus saying **'this one (here)', 'that one (there)'**: **ex. e-f**
- If "энэ/тэр/(т)эдгээр" are referring to **things in plural**, "(т)эдгээр" is used and, in English, it's translated as **'these (ones) here', 'those (ones) there'**: **ex. i-j.**

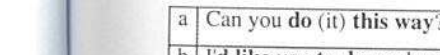
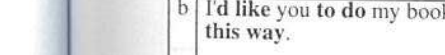
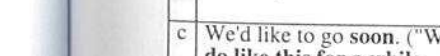
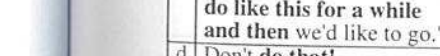
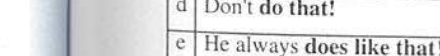
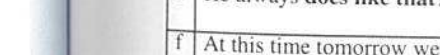
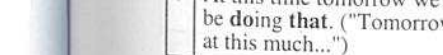
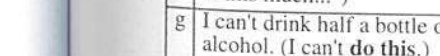
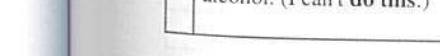
a	What's **this**?	Энэ юу вэ?	
b	What's **that**?	Тэр юу вэ?	
c	Do you know **this** person? (Do you know **him**?)	Та энэ хүнийг таних уу? (Та түүнийг таних уу?)	
d	Please ask **that** student. (Please ask **him**.)	Та тэр оюутнаас асуугаарай. (Та түүнээс асуугаарай.)	
e	I bought **this** cup. (I bought **this one**.)	Би энэ аягыг авсан. (Би үүнийг авсан.) [Би энийг авсан.= colloquial]	
f	Please take **that** car. (Please take **that one**.)	Та тэр машинаар яваарай. (Та түүгээр яваарай.)	
g	What are **these** people doing here? (What are **they** doing here?)	Энэ хүмүүс энд юу хийж байна вэ? (Эд [нар] энд юу хийж байна вэ?)	
h	Please have this work done by **those** people. (Please have this work done by **them**.)	Энэ ажлыг тэдгээр хүмүүсээр хийлгээрэй. (Энэ ажлыг тэд нараар [тэднээр] хийлгээрэй.)	
i	Let's move **these** tables from this room. (Let's move **these here/the ones here** from this room.)	Элгээр ширээг энэ өрөөнөөс гаргая. (Элгээрийг энэ өрөөнөөс гаргая.)	
j	Please put this book together with **those** books. (Please put this book together with **those over there**.)	Энэ номыг тэдгээр номтой хамт тавиарай. (Энэ номыг тэдгээртэй хамт тавиарай.)	
k *	We didn't notice that it had become late, having been talking about **this and that.**	Бид хоёр энэ тэрийг ярьсаар орой болсныг мэдсэнгүй.	

1.2.2.4.2.2 "(т)ийм, (т)иймэрхүү"= "such, this/that kind of"

a	My father is **as** big **as this**.	Миний аав ийм өндөр.	
b	My father is **as** big **as that**.	Миний аав тийм өндөр.	

c	I don't need a table **like this**.	Надад **ийм** ширээ хэрэггүй.	
d	I won't buy something from a person **like that**.	Би **тийм** хүнээс юм авахгүй.	
e	Let me buy **such** a blouse. (Let me buy **one like this**.)	Би **ийм** цамц авъя. (Би **иймийг** авъя.)	
f	**This kind of** math problem he solves well.	**Иймэрхүү** тоог тэр сайн бодлог.	
g	I don't like talking about **this kind of** thing.	Би **иймэрхүү** юмны тухай ярих дургүй.	
h	I am looking for **that kind of** a house.	Би **тиймэрхүү** байшин хайж байна.	
i	I can't cook **that kind of** meal.	Би **тиймэрхүү** хоол хийж чаддаггүй.	
j*	Decide for yourself! But make sure you don't bring this up again. ("make sure you don't talk **this and that.**")	Чи өөрийнхөөрөө шийд. Харин дараа **ийм тийм** юм яриузай.	

1.2.2.4.2.3 "өнөө(төх)/ нөгөө(төх), өнөөдүүл/ нөгөөдүүл"="this/that other (one)"

a	Did you watch **that one** film to the end?	Та **нөгөө** киногоо дуустал үзсэн үү?	
b	Did you watch **that other one** to the end?	Та **нөгөөтхөө** дуустал үзсэн үү?	
c	Did you talk with your husband about **that other** matter?	Та нөхөртэйгөө **нөгөө** юмны тухай ярьсан уу?	
d	Did you talk with your husband about **that other one**?	Та нөхөртэйгөө **нөгөөтхийн** тухай ярьсан уу?	
e	Please give me **this very** book./Please give me the book **you mentioned**.	Та надад **өнөө** номоо өгөөч.	
f	Please give me **this very one**./Please give me **the one you mentioned**.	Та надад **өнөөтхөө** өгөөч.	
g	**Those other** people, you know, have come.	**Нөгөө** хүмүүс чинь ирлээ.	
h	**Those other ones,** you know, have come.	**Нөгөөдүүл** чинь ирлээ.	
i	Where are **the others**?	**Өнөөдүүл** маань хаана байна?	

1.2.2.4.2.4 "(т)өлий, (т)өчнөөн" = "as many/much as this/that"

a	Why didn't he get married for so long? ("...until he reached **as many as this**?")	Тэр яагаад **өдий** хүртэл гэрлээгүй вэ?	
b	At this age, Mongolian children ride horses well. ("....in their **as many as this** age")	Монгол хүүхдүүд **өдий** насандаа морь сайн унадаг.	
c	**As much as you** read, **as much** you'll know.	Хэдий чинээ их уншвал **төдий** чинээ их мэднэ.	
d	I talked with him about this **so many** times.	Би түүнд энэ тухай **өчнөөн** ярьсан.	
e	I can give you **as much** money **as** you need. ("How much money do you need? I can give you **that much**.")	Танд хичнээн мөнгө хэрэгтэй байна, би **төчнөөнийг** өгч чадна.	
f *	I have **a lot of** books about the Mongolian language.	Надад монгол хэлний тухай **өдий төдий** ном бий.	
g *	I talked with him about that **hundreds of** times.	Би түүнд энэ тухай **өчнөөн төчнөөн** (удаа) ярьсан.	

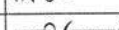
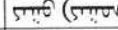
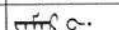
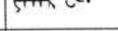
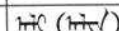
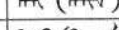
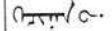
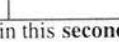
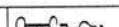
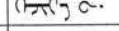
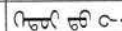
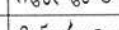
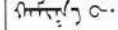
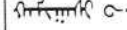
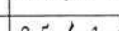
1.2.2.4.2.5 "ингэ-/тэгэ-" = "to do this/that way"

a	Can you **do** (it) **this way**?	Та **ингэж** чадах уу?	
b	I'**d like** you **to do** my book **this way**.	Би бас номоо танаар **ингүүлмээр** байна.	
c	We'd like to go **soon**. ("We **do like this for a while and then** we'd like to go.")	Бид нар **ингэсхий-гээд** явмаар байна.	
d	Don't **do that!**	Битгий **тэг**!	
e	He always **does like that**!	Тэр дандаа **тэгдэг** юм.	
f	At this time tomorrow we'll be **doing that**. ("Tomorrow at this much...")	Маргааш өдийд бид **тэгэж** байх болно.	
g	I can't drink half a bottle of alcohol. (I can't **do this**.)	Би хагас шил архи ууж чадахгүй. (Би **ингэж** чадахгүй.)	

1.2.2.5 INTERROGATIVE PROWORDS

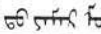
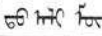
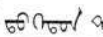
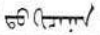
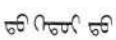
Interrogative prowords are used to form questions. They can **represent different parts of speech**. Therefore, what other grammars call interrogative adverbs (where, when, how, why, what for, etc.), we have included in this big group of interrogative representatives.

1.2.2.5.1 Overview of Interrogative Prowords

Cyrillic	Classical	English	What they ask for	Represent:
The words in this **first group** can be **declined in all cases** as they **represent nouns** or parts of speech that can be declined like nouns.				
хэн?		who?	**people**	nouns
юу (юун-)?		what?	**things** or **animals**	nouns
ямар?		what kind of?	**characteristics** of people or things	adjectives
аль (алин-)?		which?	**choices** of things or people	adjectives
хэд (хэдэн-)?		how many?	**countable things** (not strictly)	numerals
хичнээн?		how much? about how much?	**uncountable things** or **approximate mass** (not strictly)	numerals
The prowords in this **second group can't be declined** as they **never represent a noun**.				
хэзээ?		when?	**point of time (exactly)**	temporal adverb
хэдийд?		about when?	**point of time (approx.)**	temporal adverb
хаана? (хаа? = colloquial)		where?	**place**	local adverb
хаашаа?		where to?	**direction** (aim is important)	local adverb
хаанаас?		where from?	**local starting-point**	local adverb
хаагуур?		which way?	**direction** ('way' needed)	local adverb
хэр?		how? (e.g.big)	**manner,** (followed by adjective)	modal adverb --> adword
хэрхэн? (from:хэрхи-)		how?	**manner** (rather detailed)	modal adverb
яаж? (from: яа-)		how?	**manner** (rather general)	modal adverb
яагаад? (from: яа-)		why?	**reason**	causal adverb
The prowords in this third group **represent verbs** and can be **conjugated like verbs**.				
хэрхи-?		to do in what way?	**actions**	verbs
яа-?		to do in what way?	**actions**	verbs

1.2.2.5.2 Comparison of Interrogative Prowords

In a sentence, the interrogative prowords take the place of the words they represent. For emphasis, the prowords could be placed at the beginning of the sentence.

a	**-Who** gave Dorj money? **-Bat.**	-Доржид <u>хэн</u> мөнгө өгсөн бэ? -<u>Бат.</u>	- -
b	**-What** did Bat give to Dorj? **-Money.**	-Бат Доржид <u>юу</u> өгсөн бэ? -<u>Мөнгө</u>.	-  -
c	**-What kind of money** did Bat give to Dorj? **-Filthy** money.	-Бат Доржид <u>ямар</u> мөнгө өгсөн бэ? -<u>Бохир</u> мөнгө.	- -
d	**-Which** money did Bat give to Dorj? **-His own** money.	-Бат Доржид <u>аль</u> мөнгийг өгсөн бэ? -<u>Өөрийнхөө</u> мөнгийг.	-  -
e	**-How many** tögrögs did Bat give to Dorj? **-A thousand.**	-Бат Доржид <u>хэдэн</u> төгрөг өгсөн бэ? -<u>Мянган</u>.	-  -
f	**-How much** money did Bat give to Dorj? **-More than 2 million.**	-Бат Доржид <u>хичнээн</u> мөнгө өгсөн бэ? -<u>2 сая гаруй</u>.	- -
g	**-When** did Bat give money to Dorj? **-Yesterday.**	-Бат Доржид <u>хэзээ</u> мөнгө өгсөн бэ? -<u>Өчигдөр</u>.	-  -
h	**-About when** did Bat give money to Dorj? **-Last week.**	-Бат Доржид <u>хэдийд</u> мөнгө өгсөн бэ? -<u>Онгөрсөн долоо хоногт</u>.	- -
i	**-Where** did Bat give money to Dorj? **-At home.**	-Бат Доржид <u>хаана</u> мөнгө өгсөн бэ? -<u>Гэртээ</u>.	- -
j	**-Where** did Bat send Dorj **to**? **-To the bank.**	-Бат Доржийг <u>хаашаа</u> явуулсан бэ? -<u>Банк руу</u>.	-  -
k	**-From where** did Bat send Dorj? **-From his home.**	-Бат Доржийг <u>хаанаас</u> явуулсан бэ? -<u>Гэрээсээ</u>.	- -
l	**-Which way** did Bat guide Dorj? **-Along the corridor.**	-Бат Доржийг <u>хаагуур</u> гаргасан бэ? -<u>Хонгилоор</u>.	- -

m	**-How** much money did Bat give to Dorj? -A lot. ("**Very** much.")	–Бат Доржид <u>хэр</u> (их) мөнгө өгсөн бэ? –<u>Маш</u> их.	- [illegible] .. [illegible] - [illegible]
n	**-How** did Bat give money to Dorj? -**Straight away.**	–Бат Доржид <u>хэрхэн</u> мөнгө өгсөн бэ? –<u>Шуудхан</u>.	- [illegible] .. [illegible] - [illegible]
o	**-How** did Bat give money to Dorj? -**Secretly.**	–Бат Доржид <u>яаж</u> мөнгө өгсөн бэ? –<u>Нууцаар</u>.	- [illegible] .. [illegible] - [illegible]
p	**-Why** did Bat give money to Dorj? -Because **he had a debt.**	–Бат Доржид <u>яагаад</u> мөнгө өгсөн бэ? –<u>Тэр өртэй байсан учраас</u>.	- [illegible] .. [illegible] - [illegible]
q	**-What did** Bat **do** with Dorj? -Bat **deceived** Dorj.	–Бат Доржийг <u>хэрхсэн</u> бэ? –Бат Доржийг <u>хуурсан</u>.	- [illegible] .. - [illegible]
r	I wonder **what** Bat **will do** with Dorj.	Бат Доржийг <u>яах</u> бол!	[illegible] –

1.2.2.5.3 Usage of Interrogative Prowords

As mentioned before, some interrogative prowords can be declined, others cannot. In our examples, small letters (a,b,c,d) are used for undeclined examples and the big letters N-G-D-A-A-I-C-D represent the 8 cases. The stem in parentheses (see table on page 268) is not always used for declensions. Sometimes, **nuances in meanings** are expressed by using different stems (see page 272 "хэд").

1.2.2.5.3.1 "хэн?" = "who?"

a	**Who** are you?	Та <u>хэн</u> бэ?	[illegible]
b	**Who** came?	<u>Хэн</u> ирсэн бэ?	[illegible]
c	What's your name? ("**Who** do [they] call your name?")	Таны нэрийг <u>хэн</u> гэдэг вэ?	[illegible]
G.	**Whose** animal is this?	Энэ <u>хэний</u> мал вэ?	[illegible]
D.	**To whom** did you give bread?	Чи <u>хэнд</u> талх өгсөн бэ?	[illegible]
A.	**Who** did you see?	Чи <u>хэнийг</u> харсан бэ?	[illegible]
A.	Who did you ask? ("**From whom** did ...")	Та <u>хэнээс</u> асуусан бэ?	[illegible]
I.	Who did you have help you?/**By whom** were you helped?	Та <u>хэнээр</u> туслуулсан бэ?	[illegible]
C.	**With whom** will he talk?/To whom will ...	Тэр <u>хэнтэй</u> ярих вэ?	[illegible]
D.	**To(wards) whom** is Bat walking?	Бат <u>хэн рүү</u> явж байна вэ?	[illegible]

1.2.2.5.3.2 "юу(н)?" = "what?"

a	**What** is this?	Энэ <u>юу</u> вэ?	[illegible]
b	**What** came? (e.g. cat, ship)	<u>Юу</u> ирсэн бэ?	[illegible]
G.	**What** do you teach? ("**What** teacher are you?")	Та <u>юуны</u> багш вэ?	[illegible]
D.	**What** is this medicine **for**? ("хэрэгтэй" demands dat.)	Энэ эм <u>юунд</u> хэрэгтэй вэ?	[illegible]
A.	**What** did he ask?	Тэр <u>юу</u> асуусан бэ?	[illegible]
A.	What are you afraid of? ("**From what** are you...")	Чи <u>юунаас</u> айдаг вэ?	[illegible]
I.	How did you come? ("**By what** did you come?")	Чи <u>юугаар</u> ирсэн бэ?	[illegible]
C.	**What** will you wear? ("**With what** [clothes] will you come?	Та <u>юутай</u> ирэх вэ?	[illegible]
D.	**What** are you yearning **for**? ("**Towards what** are you rushing?")	Чи <u>юу руу</u> тэмүүлж байна вэ?	[illegible] [illegible]

1.2.2.5.3.3 "ямар?" = "what kind of?"

Note: the CbP "*нь*" serves here as a **noun marker** (**ex. D,A**).

a	How much is this? ("With **what kind of** price is this?")	Энэ <u>ямар</u> үнэтэй вэ?	[illegible]
b	**What kind of** hat is this?	Энэ <u>ямар</u> малгай вэ?	[illegible]
c	**What kind of** animal did you see?	Чи <u>ямар</u> амьтан харсан бэ?	[illegible]
D.	**What kind of** ***one*** do you like? (e.g. car)	Та <u>ямарт</u> *нь* дуртай вэ?	[illegible]
A.	**What kind of** ***one*** will you buy? (e.g. table)	Чи <u>ямрыг</u> *нь* авах вэ?	[illegible]

1.2.2.5.3.4 "аль/алин?" = "which?"

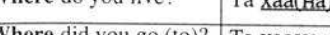
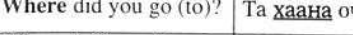
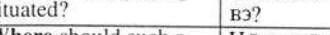
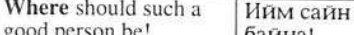
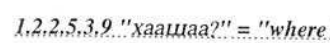
Sometimes these prowords are used in very different expressions (**ex. c-e**). The CbP "нь" refers here to the **other things (3rd person)** from which the choice is being made. The translation for this "нь" could be '***one***', thus serving also as a **noun marker**.

a	**Which** color do you like?/ **Which *one* of these** colors do you like?	Чи <u>аль</u> өнгөнд *нь* дуртай вэ?	[illegible]
b	**Which** car pleases you?/ **Which *one* of these** cars pleases you?	<u>Аль</u> машин *нь* чамд таалагдаж байна вэ?	[illegible] [illegible]
c	Go as quickly as you can!	Чи <u>аль</u> болохоор хурдан яв!	[illegible] –
d	Take the best *one*!	<u>Аль</u> сайныг *нь* аваарай.	[illegible] ..
e	One can't stop telling all his bad things.	Түүний <u>аль</u> муу хэлж барах вэ!	[illegible]
D.	**In which *one*** of those two houses do you live?	Та тэр хоёр байшингийн <u>алинд</u> *нь* суудаг вэ?	[illegible] [illegible]

A.	Are you afraid of cats or dogs? ("**From which** *one* of the two, cat or dog, are you afraid?")	Та муур нохой хоёрын <u>алинаас *нь*</u> айдаг вэ?	
C.	**Which *one*** of them will you meet? ("**With which one** ...")	Та тэдний <u>алинтай нь</u> уулзах вэ?	

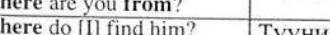
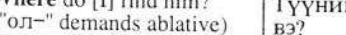
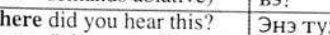
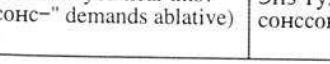
<u>1,2,2,5,3,5 "хэд(эн)?" = "how many?"</u>

By using **different *stems***, different *meanings* can be expressed (see **ex. D**).

a	How old are you? ("With **how many** age are you?")	Чи <u>хэдэн</u> настай вэ?	
b	**How many** tögrögs is this?	Энэ <u>хэдэн</u> төгрөг вэ?	
c	**How much** is this?	Энэ <u>хэд</u> вэ?	
D.	What *time* did you come? ("**At how many** did you come?")	Чи <u>*хэдэд*</u> ирсэн бэ?	
D.	What *date* did you come? ("**At how many** did you come?")	Чи <u>*хэдэнд*</u> ирсэн бэ?	
A.	**How many** will you buy?	Чи <u>хэдийг</u> авах вэ?	
I.	**For how much** will you give this?	Та үүнийг <u>хэдээр</u> өгөх вэ?	
C.	How old are you? ("**With how many** are you?")	Чи <u>хэдтэй</u> вэ?	

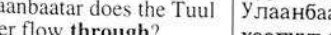
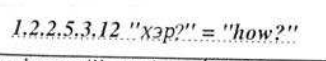
<u>1,2,2,5,3,6 "хичнээн?" = "(about) how much?"</u>

The CbP "*нь*" serves here as a **noun marker**.

a	**How much** snow fell there?	Тэнд <u>хичнээн</u> цас орсон бэ?	
b	**About how much** do you need?	Чамд <u>хичнээн</u> хэрэгтэй вэ?	
A.	**How many** of those *(ones)* will you buy?	Тэдгээрээс <u>хичнээ–нийг *нь*</u> чи авах вэ?	
C.	**How many** of them will you meet **with**? ("**With how many** of those *ones*...")	Та тэдгээрээс <u>хичнээнтэй *нь*</u> уулзах вэ?	

<u>1,2,2,5,3,7 "хэзээ?/хэдийд?" = "(about) when?"</u>

The **difference** between these two prowords is only a **matter of exactness**. With "хэзээ", an **exact answer** is expected, with "хэдийд", a **general answer** will do. Thus, the answer to "Чи хэзээ ирэх вэ?" could be 'I'll come at 3pm.' and to "Чи хэдийд ирэх вэ?" it could be 'Sometime in the afternoon'. But what is called 'exact' and 'general' always depends on the whole context of the conversation.

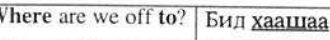
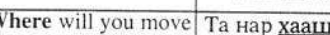
a	**When** will you come?	Та <u>хэзээ / хэдийд</u> ирэх вэ?	
b	**When** will it be ready?	Энэ <u>хэзээ / хэдийд</u> бэлэн болох вэ?	
c	**When** did you meet her?	Та түүнтэй <u>хэзээ / хэдийд</u> уулзсан бэ?	

d	**When** is your national holiday?	Танай үндэсний баяр <u>хэзээ / хэдийд</u> болдог вэ?	
e	**When** were you born?	Чи <u>хэзээ / хэдийд</u> төрсөн бэ?	

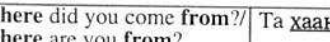
<u>1,2,2,5,3,8 "хаа(на)?" = "where?"</u>

a	**Where** was I born? (title of a poem)	Би <u>хаана</u> төрөө вэ?	
b	**Where** do you live?	Та <u>хаа(на)</u> амьдардаг вэ?	
c	**Where** did you go (to)?	Та <u>хаана</u> очсон бэ?	
d	**Where** is Hong Kong situated?	Гонгконг <u>хаана</u> оршдог вэ?	
e	**Where** should such a good person be!	Ийм сайн хүн <u>хаа</u> байна!	

<u>1,2,2,5,3,9 "хаашаа?" = "where to?"</u>

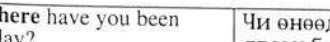
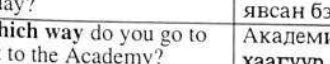
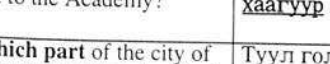
a	**Where** are we off **to**?	Бид <u>хаашаа</u> явж байна вэ?	
b	**Where** will you move **to**?	Та нар <u>хаашаа</u> нүүх вэ?	
c	**Where** will (we) go **to** next?	Дараа нь <u>хаашаа</u> очих вэ?	

<u>1,2,2,5,3,10 "хаанаас?" = "where from?"</u>

a	**Where** did you come **from**?/ **Where** are you **from**?	Та <u>хаанаас</u> ирсэн бэ?	
b	**Where** do [I] find him? ("ол–" demands ablative)	Түүнийг <u>хаанаас</u> олох вэ?	
c	**Where** did you hear this? ("сонс–" demands ablative)	Энэ тухай чи <u>хаанаас</u> сонссон бэ?	

<u>1,2,2,5,3,11 "хаагуур?" = "which way"?</u>

To understand the meaning of "хаагуур", one has to understand the meaning of the instrumental case **as "хаагуур" is derived from "хаа(на)" plus instrumental CS.** This proword always refers to a **movement that happens in a certain place/area**.

a	**Where** have you been today?	Чи өнөөдөр <u>хаагуур</u> явсан бэ?	
b	**Which way** do you go to get to the Academy?	Академид очиход <u>хаагуур</u> явах вэ?	
c	**Which part** of the city of Ulaanbaatar does the Tuul river flow **through**?	Туул гол Улаанбаатар хотын <u>хаагуур</u> урсдаг вэ?	

<u>1,2,2,5,3,12 "хэр?" = "how?"</u>

a	**How** long will you be living in Mongolia?	Та Монголд <u>хэр</u> удаан амьдрах вэ?	

b	**-How** are you living in Mongolia?/-**What's** your living standard like in Mongolia? -We live here OK./-It's OK.	–Та Монголд <u>хэр</u> зэрэг амьдарч байна вэ? –Би энд зүгээр амьдарч байна.	- Өө тэр монгол ямар амьдарч байгаа вэ? Өнчин ээ. - Бид энэ газар сайн амьдарч байна.
c	**How** long of a wire does one need to make an antenna?	Антена хийхэд <u>хэр</u> урт утас хэрэгтэй вэ?	Мэдэхгүй ээ. Энэ тухай ер нь ярьж байгаагүй
d	**How** big a table am I supposed to buy?	Би <u>хэр</u> том ширээ авах хэрэгтэй вэ?	Ээ. Өө ярьж онгоц нисэж байгаа

1.2.2.5.3.13 "хэрхэн?" = "how?"

Please compare the **examples b-c** (with their answers) with "яаж" below to see the difference.

a	**-How** do you live in Mongolia? -I get a small salary from my organization.	–Та Монголд <u>хэрхэн</u> амьдарч байна вэ? –Би байгууллагаасаа бага зэрэг цалин авдаг.	Зүтгэгч нөөцгөө. - Өө өчүүхэнөөр нь ч ёж ёзгүй гэрэл өнчин ээ. - Бид монголд ер нь ирсэн
b	**-How** did you come to Mongolia? -I came to Mongolia voluntarily.	–Та Монголд <u>хэрхэн</u> ирсэн бэ? –Би Монголд сайн дураараа ирсэн.	Ингэлээ. - Өө монголд ер нь чөлөө гэж гэрэл - Бид монголд ер нь ингэлээ/ээ.
c	**-How** did you do this? -I asked many people and then I did it by myself.	–Чи үүнийг <u>хэрхэн</u> хийсэн бэ? –Би олон хүнээс асуугаад өөрөө бие дааж хийсэн.	Тэгээд гэгч өөрөө олигтой сайхан. - Өө тэгж бодоод ч гэгээлэг - Би хэн с нь ярьж сайхан ээ.
d	**How** do (they) manufacture Mercedes cars?	Мерседес машиныг <u>хэрхэн</u> хийдэг вэ?	Гүйцэтгэлийн бичлэг с нь ярьж сайхан ээ.
e	**How** do you calm her down?	Түүнийг <u>хэрхэн</u> тайвшруулах вэ?	Энэ с нь ярьж ойлгуулахгүйгээр ээ.

1.2.2.5.3.14 "яаж?" = "how?"

Please compare the **examples b-c** with "хэрхэн" above to see the difference.

a	**-How** did you come to Mongolia? -I came **via Hong Kong**.	–Та Монголд <u>яаж</u> ирсэн бэ? –Би Гонконгоор дамжиж ирсэн.	- Өө Гонконгоор гэгч очихгүй ингэлээ. - Бид монголд ер гэдэггүй ингэлээ/ээ.
b	**-How** did you do this? -I did it easily.	–Чи үүнийг <u>яаж</u> хийсэн бэ? –Би үүнийг амархан хийсэн.	- Өө ёж с нь ингэлээ. - Би ёж с нь гэдэггүй ээ.
c	**How** does one quickly learn English?	Англи хэлийг <u>яаж</u> хурдан сурах вэ?	Ээ. Хүүхэд нь/ ер гэдэггүй онгоцоо/ ингэлээ

1.2.2.5.3.15 "яагаад?" = "why, for what reason?"

a	**Why** hasn't he come?	Тэр <u>яагаад</u> ирээгүй вэ?	Энэ/ гэдэггүйгээ/ ингэж ингэж ээ.
b	**Why** were you late?	Чи <u>яагаад</u> хожимдсон бэ?	Би гэдэггүйгээ/ онгоцоогоо/ ээ.
c	**Why** isn't this computer working?	Энэ компьютер <u>яагаад</u> ажиллахгүй байна вэ?	Ингэж өгөөгүй. Би/ хэрэгтэй гэдэггүйгээ/ ингэлээ

1.2.2.5.3.16 "хэрхи–?" = "to do what?"

a	Do you know **what** they **did** with him?	Түүнийг тэд нар <u>хэрхсэн</u>ийг чи мэдэх үү?	Ингэж өө. Энэ/ с энэ/ нь ингэхийг/ с би
b	Talk well with each other and then please tell me **what** you're **going to do**.	Та нар сайн ярилцаад <u>хэрхэх</u> тухайгаа надад хэлээрэй.	Өөгөө/ би нэг/ өө ингэлээ. Би/ нь энэ/ гэдэггүйгээ/ ингэлээ

1.2.2.5.3.17 "яа–?" = "to do what?"

With this interrogative proword, many **expressions** are formed (**ex. g-l**), some of which are difficult to trace back to their original meaning.

a	**What happened**?	<u>Яасан</u> бэ?	гэдэггүйгээ/ ээ.
b	**What** shall I **do**?	Би <u>яах</u> вэ?	Өө гэдэггүйгээ ээ.
c	**What would** you **like to do?**	Та <u>яамаар</u> байна бэ?	Би/ гэдэггүйгээ өгөөгүй ээ.
d	**What in the world**!	<u>Яах</u> нь вэ?	гэдэггүйгээ үү ээ.
e	(I) don't know **what to do**!	<u>Яахыг</u> бүү мэд!	гэдэггүйгээ дүү ээ ёзгүй –.
f	This is impossible for me to do. ("**No matter what** I do, I can't achieve it.")	Би <u>яавч</u> амжихгүй.	Өө гэдэггүйгээр ингэлээ ингэж..
g	**What** nice flowers!	<u>Яасан</u> сайхан цэцэг вэ!	гэдэггүйгээ/ ингэлээ/загалаа ээ –.
h	I don't mind!/Either way is OK. ("**Whatever happened, what shall happen**?")	<u>Яасан</u> ч <u>яахав</u>! (note: яах +вэ)	гэдэггүйгээ/ ээ гэдэггүйгээ ээ.
i	**Of course!** ("What will happen if [we] don't do it that way?")	Тэгэлгүй <u>яахав</u>! (note: яах +вэ)	Өнөө ингэж гэдэггүйгээ ээ –.
j	**No matter what happened,** we have to help him.	<u>Яагаад</u> ч гэсэн түүнд туслах хэрэгтэй.	Өгөөгөөгөө ингэлээ. гэдэггүйгээ/ ээ ингэж/ өнөө/ ээ
k	**There's no way out**. ("Whatever happens, there is no means; whatever happens, a means is absent.")	<u>Яах</u> ч аргагүй, <u>яах</u> ч арга алга.	гэдэггүйгээ ээ ингэлээ ингэлээ. гэдэггүйгээ ээ ингэлээ ингэж.
l	There is **still plenty of** time.	Цаг <u>яагаа</u> ч үгүй.	Энэ/ гэдэггүйгээ/ ээ ингэж..

1.2.2.5.3.18 Repeated Interrogative Prowords Expressing Plural

When **asking for different** things, people, characteristics, etc. the interrogative proword is **used twice**. By putting this principle in English, we get the following impossible sentences:
'What what is here?' '**What kind of, what kind of** book is this?' '**Who who** do you see?'
By using this repeated form in Mongolian, the **plural suffixes can be omitted** (see page 76).

a	**Who all** has come?	Хэн хэн ирсэн бэ?	
b	**Who all** did you ask?	Чи хэн хэнээс асуусан бэ?	
c	**What all** is here?	Энд юу юу байна вэ?	
d	**What all** did you ask?	Чи юу юу асуусан бэ?	
e	What all did you bring from the countryside? ("**With what all** did you come?")	Чи юу юутай хөдөөнөөс ирсэн бэ?	
f	**What kind of** books are here?	Энд ямар ямар ном байна вэ?	
g	In **which** buildings do foreigners live?	Гадаадын хүмүүс аль аль байшинд суудаг вэ?	

1.2.2.6 INDEFINITE PROWORDS

Those words which represent an **indefinite person, object, kind, characteristic, circumstance, mass, etc**. are called indefinite prowords. They are mostly formed with the help of the **focus particle "ч"**. Often they are used in **negation** with the negative particle "–гүй". Therefore, the translations vary a lot, depending on whether the sentence is affirmative (e.g. 'everyone/anyone') or negative (e.g. 'no one'). Some indefinite prowords can be **declined**, but note that the case suffix is not added to the particle "ч", but to the proword itself.

1.2.2.6.1 Overview of Indefinite Prowords

хэн ч		who(so)ever, no matter who, anybody, anyone
хэн ч ... –гүй		nobody, no one (at all)
хэн нэг(эн)		somebody, someone, anybody
хэн хэнгүй		everyone; all, no matter who
юу ч		what(so)ever, no matter what, anything
юу ч ... –гүй		nothing, none (at all)
юу юугүй		"just like that", very soon, for no reason at all
ямар ч		whatever kind of, no matter what kind of, any kind of
ямар ч ... –гүй		no ... at all, no ... whatsoever
ямар нэг(эн)		any, some (kind of)
алин ч		whichever, no matter which (one)
алин ч ... –гүй		none (at all)
аль нэг(эн)		any, any one
аль альгүй		none of them

хэд(эн) ч		no matter how many
хэд(эн) ч ... –гүй		none at all
хичнээн ч		no matter how much
хичнээн ч ... –гүй		nothing at all
хэзээ ч (хэдийд ч)		whenever, no matter when, always
хэзээ ч ... –гүй		never
хэзээ нэг(эн) (цагт, үед) хэзээ нэгэнтээ		sometime at any time
хэзээ хэзээгүй		every (moment) now
хаана ч		wherever, no matter where, everywhere
хаана ч ... –гүй		nowhere (at all)
хаа нэг(эн) (газар...) хаа нэгэнтээ		somewhere at any place
хаа хаагүй		everywhere
хаашаа ч		no matter where to
хаашаа ч ... –гүй		nowhere
хаанаас ч		no matter where from
хаанаас ч ... –гүй		from nowhere
хаагуур ч		wherever (movement) whichever way
хаагуур ч ... –гүй		nowhere (movement)
яаж ч		however, no matter how, in every way
яаж ч ... –гүй		in no way
яа– ч ...		to do whatever

1.2.2.6.2 Usage of Indefinite Prowords

1.2.2.6.2.1 "хэн ч" = "who(so)ever, everyone, anyone, no one"

a	**Anybody/Everybody** can do this work.	Энэ ажлыг хэн ч хийж чадна.	
b	When he returned, **no one/nobody** recognized him.	Түүнийг буцаж ирэхэд хэн ч таньсангүй.	
c	**No matter which person** in my class (you) charge with this, (it) will be done well.	Манай ангийн хэнд ч (иг) даалгасан сайн биелүүлнэ. (хэнд +ч +гэсэн)	
d	Call **anyone** of them, no matter which one.	Тэднээс хэнийг нь ч хамаагүй дууд!	

e	Bat can make friends with **anybody/anyone/everybody/everyone**.	Бат <u>хэнтэй ч</u> нөхөрлөж чаддаг.	Бат хэнтэй ч нөхөрлөж чаддаг.
f	**Nobody/No one** knows this.	Үүнийг <u>хэн ч</u> мэдэх<u>гүй</u>.	Үүнийг хэн ч мэдэхгүй.
g	If **somebody/ someone/ anybody/anyone** comes, please call me.	<u>Хэн нэгэн</u> хүн ирвэл намайг дуудаарай.	Хэн нэгэн хүн ирвэл намайг дуудаарай.
h	**Someone/Somebody** gave this to me.	Үүнийг <u>хэн нэгэн нь</u> надад өгчээ.	Үүнийг хэн нэгэн нь надад өгчээ.
i	**Everyone** has to learn English well, **no matter who**.	<u>Хэн хэнгүй</u> англи хэл сайн сурах хэрэгтэй.	Хэн хэнгүй англи хэл сайн сурах хэрэгтэй.

1,2,2,6,2,2 "юу ч" = "what(so)ever, everything, anything, nothing"

a	**Whatever** I rub on, it suits me.	Надад <u>юу ч</u> түрхсэн сайхан таардаг.	Надад юу ч түрхсэн сайхан таардаг. Юнэ би ямар ч зүйл зөв тохирдог.
b	After we two get a gun, we won't be afraid of **anything**.	Буутай хойно <u>юу ч</u> болсон бид хоёр айхгүй.	Буутай хойно юу ч болсон бид хоёр ямар ч зүйл зөв шийдэгдэнэ.
c	**Whatever** he gives me, I won't give my dog (away).	Түүнийг <u>юу ч</u> өгсөн би нохойгоо өгөхгүй.	Түүний өг- нь надад өгсөн ямар ч зүйл зөв тохирдохгүй.
d	He doesn't know **anything**. /He knows **nothing**.	Тэр <u>юу ч</u> мэдэх<u>гүй</u>.	Тэр юу ч мэдэхгүй.
e	They returned from the countryside with **nothing**.	Тэд хөдөөнөөс <u>юу ч</u> <u>үгүй</u> ирсэн.	Тэд хөдөөнөөс юу ч үгүй ирсэн.
f	Please give me something to drink, **no matter what**!	Надад <u>юу ч</u> хамаа<u>гүй</u> уух юм өгөөч!	Надад юу ч хамаагүй уух юм өгөөч!
g	As soon as she came in, she broke into tears **for no reason.**	Тэр орж ирмэгцээ <u>юу</u> <u>юугүй</u> уйлж гарав.	Тэр орж ирмэгцээ юу юугүй уйлж гарав.

1,2,2,6,2,3 "ямар ч" = "whatever kind of, any kind, no ... whatsoever"

a	**Every** nation has its own customs. ("**No matter what** nation...")	<u>Ямар ч(иг)</u> ард түмэн өөрийн ёс заншилтай. ("чиг" is colloquial)	Ямар ч(иг) ард түмэн өөрийн ёс заншилтай.
b	**Every/Any** person knows this. ("**No matter what kind of** ..")	<u>Ямар ч</u> хүн үүнийг мэднэ.	Ямар ч хүн үүнийг мэднэ.
c	He did this without the slightest attention. ("...**with no** attention **whatsoever**.")	Тэр үүнийг <u>ямар ч</u> хяналт<u>гүй</u>гээр хийсэн.	Тэр үүнийг ямар ч хяналтгүйгээр хийсэн.
d	At the moment, there is **no** news **whatsoever**.	Одоохондоо <u>ямар ч</u> сонин<u>гүй</u>.	Одоохондоо ямар ч сонингүй.
e	Yesterday, **not one** single person **whatsoever** came to my home.	Өчигдөр манайд <u>ямар</u> <u>ч</u> хүн ирээ<u>гүй</u>.	Өчигдөр манайд ямар ч хүн ирээгүй.

f	What's the matter? Has **something** happened?	Яав, <u>ямар нэгэн</u> юм болов уу?	Яав, ямар нэгэн юм болов уу?
g	Well, do (you) have **any** news?	За, <u>ямар нэгэн</u> сонинтой юу?	За, ямар нэгэн сонинтой юу?

1,2,2,6,2,4 "аль ч" = "whichever, none"

a	In **every** big city, many people live. ("In **whichever** big city...")	<u>Аль ч (иг)</u> том хотод олон хүн суудаг.	Аль ч(иг) том хотод олон хүн суудаг.
b	I don't mind **which** one. ("To me **whichever** has **no** relation.")	Надад бол <u>аль нь ч</u> хамаа<u>гүй</u>.	Надад бол аль нь ч хамаагүй.
c	Mother pleased **none**.	Ээжид <u>аль нь ч</u> таалагдсан<u>гүй</u>.	Ээжид аль нь ч таалагдсангүй.
d	He doesn't live in **either** of these two buildings.	Тэр энэ хоёр байшингийн <u>алинд</u> <u>нь ч</u> суудаг<u>гүй</u>.	Тэр энэ хоёр байшингийн алинд нь ч суудаггүй.
e	Give me **any one** of those.	Тэндээс <u>аль нэгийг</u> <u>нь</u> аваад өг.	Тэндээс аль нэгийг нь аваад өг.
f	The person who follows two rabbits is left with **neither** of them.	Хоёр туулай хөөсөн хүн <u>аль альгүй</u> хоцордог. (proverb)	Хоёр туулай хөөсөн хүн аль альгүй хоцордог.

1,2,2,6,2,5 "хэд(эн) ч" = "no matter how many"

a	**No matter how many** times I've seen this movie, I don't get bored.	Би энэ киног <u>хэдэн ч</u> удаа үзсэн уйдахгүй.	Би энэ киног хэдэн ч удаа үзсэн уйдахгүй.
c	I have **no** tögrögs **at all.**	Надад <u>хэдэн ч</u> төгрөг байх<u>гүй</u>.	Надад хэдэн ч төгрөг байхгүй.
d	He returned from the countryside with **no** tögrögs **at all**.	Тэр <u>хэдэн ч</u> төгрөг<u>гүй</u> хөдөөнөөс ирсэн.	Тэр хэдэн ч төгрөг- гүй хөдөөнөөс ирсэн.

1,2,2,6,2,6 "хичнээн ч" = "no matter how much"

a	(I) told him this **a hundred** times, but it's pointless. (" ... **no matter how many** times ")	Түүнд энэ тухай <u>хичнээн ч</u> хэлээд нэмэргүй.	Түүнд энэ тухай хичнээн ч хэлээд нэмэргүй.
b	He'll probably give you **as much** money **as** you ask for.	Та түүнээс <u>хичнээн</u> <u>ч</u> мөнгө гуйсан тэр өгөх байх.	Та түүнээс хичнээн ч мөнгө гуйсан тэр өгөх байх.
c	Even if he has **no** money **at all**, he'll help you.	Тэр <u>хичнээн ч</u> мөнгө<u>гүй</u> байсан танд туслана.	Тэр хичнээн ч мөнгөгүй байсан танд туслана.
d	Even if he does**n't** exercise **at all**, he'll win this contest.	Тэр <u>хичнээн ч</u> дас-гал хийх<u>гүй</u> байсан энэ тэмцээнд түрүүлнэ.	Тэр хичнээн ч дас- гал хийхгүй байсан энэ тэмцээнд түрүүлнэ.

1.2.2.6.2.7 "хэзээ ч" = whenever, always, never"

"хэдийд" can be used instead of "хэзээ" **only** in **ex. a.**

a	You may come to my home **any time/always.**	Та хэзээ ч манайд ирж болно.	ᠴᠠ ᠪᠣᠯᠣᠵ ᠪᠤᠢ ᠭᠡᠷ ᠲᠤ ᠢᠷᠡᠵ ᠪᠣᠯᠣᠨ᠎ᠠ᠃᠃
b	(I) will **never** go there!	Тийшээ хэзээ ч очихгүй!	ᠲᠡᠭᠡᠭᠡᠨ ᠳᠤ ᠪᠣᠯᠣᠵ ᠲᠤ ᠬᠡᠵᠢᠶᠡᠨ ᠪᠤᠰᠤ᠃᠃
c	His mother is probably **never** coming again.	Түүний ээж дахин хэзээ ч ирэхгүй байх	ᠪᠤᠰᠤ ᠡᠵᠡᠨ᠃᠃ ᠳᠠᠬᠢᠵ ᠪ ᠢᠷᠡ ᠬᠡᠵᠢ ᠪᠣᠯᠣᠵ ᠲᠤ ᠬᠡᠷᠡ
d	This one is a longing that will **never** come true.	Энэ чинь хэзээ ч биелэхгүй мөрөөдөл.	ᠡᠨᠡ ᠴᠢᠨᠢ ᠪᠢᠶᠡᠯᠡᠬᠦ᠃᠃ ᠢᠨᠡ ᠵᠠᠭᠰᠠᠯ ᠪᠣᠯᠣᠵ ᠲᠤ ᠥᠭᠡᠷᠡᠭᠡ ᠪᠤᠰᠤ
e	Well, we'll meet **sometime**, won't we?	За, хэзээ нэгэн цагт уулзана биз дээ.	ᠥᠭᠡᠷ᠎ᠡ ᠴᠤ᠃᠃ ᠵᠠ᠃ ᠪᠣᠯᠣᠵ ᠵᠠᠮ ᠳᠤ ᠦᠵᠡᠯᠴᠡᠨᠡ᠂
f	**Sometime (in the future)** I'll do that.	Хэзээ нэгэн цагт би үүнийг хийнэ.	ᠪᠣᠯᠣᠵ ᠪᠤᠰᠤ ᠵᠠᠮ ᠳᠤ ᠪᠢ ᠬᠢ᠍ᠶᠡ ᠶᠤᠮ᠂᠃᠃
g	**Sometime (in the future)** I'll return to my homeland.	Би хэзээ нэгэнтээ нутагтаа буцах болно.	ᠪᠢ ᠬᠡᠵᠢᠶᠡᠨ ᠲᠡᠭᠡᠨᠲᠡᠭᠡ᠃᠃ ᠥᠪᠥᠭ ᠪᠣᠯᠣᠵ᠂
h	**Any time now**, my friend will come from Germany.	Манай найз Германаас хэзээ хэзээгүй ирнэ.	ᠪᠤᠰᠤ ᠨᠢᠭᠡᠳᠦᠭᠡᠷ ᠴᠠᠭ᠎ᠠᠴᠠᠨ ᠢᠷᠡ ᠪᠣᠯᠣᠵ ᠪᠤᠰᠤ᠃᠃ ᠪᠢᠳᠡᠨ ᠤᠨᠳᠤᠷ ᠭᠡᠷᠮᠠᠨ᠎ᠠᠴᠠᠨ ᠢᠷᠡ ᠪᠣᠯᠣᠵ ᠪᠤᠰᠤ

1.2.2.6.2.8 "хаана ч/хаанаас ч/хаашаа ч/хаагуур ч" = 'wherever/everywhere/nowhere'

a	Good friends are **everywhere**.	Сайн найз хаана ч бий.	ᠰᠠᠶᠢᠨ ᠨᠠᠭᠤᠳ ᠬᠠᠭᠠᠨ᠎ᠠ ᠴᠤ ᠪᠠᠢ᠃᠃
b	Although (I) went into most shops and looked, (it) was **nowhere**.	Ихэнх дэлгүүрээр орж хайсан боловч хаана ч байсангүй.	ᠡᠬᠡᠨᠬᠡ ᠬᠠᠭᠠᠨ᠎ᠠ ᠴᠤ ᠥᠭᠡᠭᠡᠳᠦ ᠪᠣᠯᠣᠵ ᠪᠤᠰᠤ᠃᠃ ᠪᠣᠯᠪᠠᠴᠤ ᠥᠨᠳᠥᠭᠡᠨ ᠳᠡᠯᠭᠦᠦᠷ ᠣᠷᠵ ᠬᠠᠶᠢᠰᠠᠨ ᠪᠠᠢᠰᠠᠨᠭᠦᠢ
c	This is news that has**n't** been heard **anywhere**.	Энэ хаана ч дуулдаагүй мэдээ шүү.	ᠡᠨᠡ ᠬᠠᠭᠠᠨ᠎ᠠ ᠴᠤ᠃᠃ ᠢᠨᠡ ᠬᠠᠭᠠᠨ᠎ᠠ ᠴᠤ ᠥᠭᠰᠦᠭᠡᠭᠰᠡᠨ᠎ᠡ ᠪᠤᠰᠤ
d	That other book of mine must be **somewhere**!	Миний тэр ном хаана нэгэн газар л байх ёстой.	ᠮᠢᠨᠢ ᠲᠡᠷ ᠨᠣᠮ ᠪᠠᠢᠭᠠᠯ᠎ᠢ᠃᠃ ᠬᠠᠭᠠᠨ᠎ᠠ ᠨᠡᠭᠡ ᠪᠠᠢᠬᠤ ᠶᠡᠬᠡ ᠭᠠᠵᠠᠷ
e	I met this person **somewhere**.	Би энэ хүнтэй хаа нэгэнтээ уулзсан.	ᠥᠭᠡᠭᠡᠳᠦᠮ᠎ᠡ᠃᠃ ᠪᠢ ᠢᠨᠡ ᠬᠦᠮᠦᠨ ᠲᠡᠶ ᠬᠠᠭᠠᠨ᠎ᠠ ᠨᠡᠭᠡᠨᠲᠡ
f	We have to tackle this problem from every side. ("... **everywhere**.")	Бид энэ асуудлыг хаа хаагүй сайн анхаарах хэрэгтэй.	ᠪᠢᠳᠡ ᠡᠨᠡ ᠠᠰᠠᠭᠤᠳᠠᠯ ᠢ ᠪᠦᠬᠦᠢ᠌ᠯᠡᠭᠡᠨ ᠨᠤᠭᠣᠳᠠᠭ᠃᠃ ᠪᠤᠭᠤ ᠢᠨᠡ ᠠᠩᠬᠠᠷᠠᠯ ᠲᠠᠢ ᠬᠠᠭᠠᠨ᠎ᠠ ᠬᠠᠭᠠᠨ᠎ᠠ
g	I haven't found my key anywhere.	Би түлхүүрээ хаанаас ч олоогүй.	ᠣᠯᠤᠭᠤᠯᠠᠭᠤᠢ᠃᠃ ᠪᠢ ᠲᠦᠯᠬᠢᠬᠦᠷ ᠲᠡᠶ ᠬᠠᠭᠠᠨ᠎ᠠ ᠴᠤ ᠵᠤ
h	We can go **anywhere** for summer vacation.	Бид энэ зуны амралтаар хаашаа ч явж болно.	ᠬᠠᠭᠠᠭᠤᠷ ᠵᠤ ᠴᠠᠭᠰᠠᠨ ᠪᠣᠯᠣᠵ᠂᠃᠃ ᠪᠤᠭᠤ ᠢᠨᠡ ᠲᠤᠭ᠎ᠠ ᠪ ᠮᠣᠷᠢᠨᠠᠬᠤ ᠪᠣᠯ
i	**Whichever way** you go, it's OK.	Та хаагуур ч явсан болно.	ᠴᠠ ᠬᠠᠭᠠᠭᠤᠭᠤᠷ ᠴᠤ ᠶᠠᠪᠤᠮᠠᠷ ᠪᠣᠯᠣᠵ᠂᠃᠃

1.2.2.6.2.9 "яаж ч" = "however, in every way, in no way"

a	**However** you **do** this, it's OK.	Чи үүнийг яаж ч хийсэн болно.	ᠴᠢ ᠬᠢ᠍ᠶᠡ ᠶᠤᠮ᠂ ᠶᠠᠪᠤᠭᠰᠠᠨ ᠴᠤ ᠪᠣᠯᠣᠵ ᠪᠤᠰᠤ᠃᠃
b	He can harm you in **all kinds of ways**.	Тэр таныг яаж ч чадна.	ᠲᠡᠷ ᠲᠠᠨᠢ ᠶᠠᠪᠤᠭᠰᠠᠨ ᠴᠤ ᠴᠢᠳᠠᠨ᠎ᠠ᠃᠃
c	**However** I tried **to do** (it), I couldn't translate it.	Би яаж ч оролдоод үүнийг орчуулж чадсангүй.	ᠪᠢ ᠶᠠᠪᠤᠭᠰᠠᠨ ᠴᠤ ᠬᠢᠵᠤ ᠪᠠᠢᠴᠠᠭᠰᠠᠨ᠎ᠠ᠃᠃ ᠪᠢ ᠬᠢ᠍ᠶᠡᠵᠦ ᠴᠤ ᠴᠢᠳᠠᠭᠰᠠᠨᠭᠦᠢ ᠪᠤᠰᠤ᠃᠃
d	He ca**n't** do **anything** to you.	Тэр таныг яаж ч чадахгүй.	ᠲᠡᠷ ᠲᠠᠨᠢ ᠶᠠᠪᠤᠭᠰᠠᠨ ᠴᠤ ᠴᠢᠳᠠᠨ᠎ᠠ ᠪᠤᠰᠤ᠃᠃

1.2.2.6.2.10 "яа- ч" = "to do whatever"

a	**No matter what happens**, I won't leave.	Яаж ч байсан би эндээс явахгүй.	ᠶᠠᠪᠤᠭᠰᠠᠨ ᠪᠤᠰᠤ᠃᠃ ᠪᠢᠳᠡᠨ ᠲᠤ ᠥᠭᠡᠭᠡᠳᠦ ᠪᠢ ᠨᠠᠭᠠᠳ ᠠᠷᠠ
b	Please come **no matter what happens**.	Чи яагаад ч гэсэн заавал ирээрэй.	ᠴᠢ ᠪᠢᠳᠡᠨᠳᠡ ᠲᠤ ᠠᠷᠠᠭᠠᠳᠠᠬᠤ ᠶᠠᠭᠠᠳᠤ᠃᠃
c	It **absolutely** doesn't matter to me./I don't mind **at all**.	Би яасан ч хамаагүй.	ᠪᠢ ᠪᠠᠰᠠᠭᠠᠳᠠᠬᠤ ᠲᠤ ᠦᠬᠡᠢ᠌ᠯᠡᠭᠡᠨ᠎ᠡ᠃᠃
d	**No matter what happens**, he'll never tell you a lie.	Тэр яалаа ч чамд худал хэлэхгүй.	ᠬᠡᠷᠡᠭ᠎ᠡ᠃᠃ ᠲᠡᠷ ᠪᠢᠳᠡᠨᠢ᠌ᠶᠡ ᠲᠤ ᠬᠤᠪᠢᠯ ᠪᠤ ᠦᠭᠡᠯᠡᠬᠦ

2. ABSTRACT PARTS OF SPEECH

We have divided the abstract parts of speech into 4 subgroups:
1.) Postpositions
2.) Conjunctions
3.) Particles
4.) Interjections

These 4 groups also exist in English, but with the difference that English uses **pre**positions to express the Mongolian **post**positions.

2.1 POSTPOSITIONS

2.1.1 Characteristics

The postpositions are always **linked to the previous word,** which is a **nominal element.**
Therefore, they appear with the following suffixes:
- **Zero-suffixes** (the postposition follows the word stem)
- **Case suffixes** (mainly genitive)
- **Noun Determining Suffixes** (NDS's)

In Mongolian, the postpositions are also called **'Suffix words'**. By them, certain **conditions and relationships** are expressed. The postpositions originally derived from nouns. That's why the **genitive CS** is the **predominant link** between the nominal element and the postposition.

If an R.S (see 1.1.1.3) is added to the nominal element, it's done in the following ways:

–ø	+ **postposition**	+ R.S	e.g. **багш шиг**ээ
CS	+ R.S	+ **postposition**	e.g. **өөр*ийн*хөө тухай**
NDS	+ **postposition**	+ R.S	e.g. **яв*сан* тухай**гаа

Postpositions can be divided into **two groups**:
• Original postpositions
• Adwords in postpositional function

Following, we'll give an **overview table of both groups** and then example sentences for all postpositions in the order of the suffix they require.

2.1.2 Systematic Classification

2.1.2.1 ORIGINAL POSTPOSITIONS

Even the 'original postposition' are, very strictly spoken, **declined forms**. This can be clearly seen with the following postpositions:

дагуу (along)	from: "дага–" (to follow)
гаруй (more than)	from: "гар–" (to pass by/over)
шахам (nearly)	from: "шаха–" (to press, to squeeze)
хүртэл (until)	from: "хүр–" (to reach)
ёсоор (according to)	from: "ёс" (law, principle)

Contrary to the adwords in postpositional function, these **original postpositions can never be used by themselves** (without a suffix and nominal element).

Abbreviations of table: **–ø** = Zero-suffix; **NDS** = Noun Determining Suffix; **G.** = Genitive-CS;

	Cyrillic	Classical	English	Possible after the following suffix:	
a	гаруй		more than ...	–ø : page 285	
b	шахам		almost ... nearly...	–ø : page 285	
c	орчим		about ... approximately ...	–ø : page 285	
d	гэхэд		by	–ø : page 285	
e	хүртэл		until ...	–ø : page 286	NDS : page 295
f	бүр		each ... every ...	–ø : page 286	NDS : page 295
g	болгон		each ... every ...	–ø : page 286	NDS : page 295
h	тутам		each... every ... ... by ...	–ø : page 286	NDS : page 295
i	ёсоор		according to ... in conformity with ...	–ø : page 286	NDS : page 295
j	мэт		as ... as ... like	–ø : page 287	NDS : page 296
k	шиг		as ... as ... like ...	–ø : page 287	NDS : page 296
l	тулд		(in order) to ...	G. : page 287	
m	төлөө		for ...	G. : page 287	
n	турш		during ...	G. : page 288	
o	дагуу		according to ... along ...	G. : page 288	
p	чинээ		as big as ..., having the size of ...	G. : page 288	
q	дэргэд		at ... near ... by	G. : page 289	
r	хооронд		between ...	G. : page 289	
s	хажууд		beside	G. : page 289	
t	тухай		about ...	G. : page 291	NDS : page 296
u	талаар		on ... with regard to...	G. : page 292	NDS : page 296

2.1.2.2 ADWORDS IN POSTPOSITIONAL FUNCTION

Some adwords (mostly adverbs, but also some adjectives*) can be **used as postpositions**. In this way, they are closely **linked with a suffix to a nominal element**.

The adwords **f,i and j** originally require the genitive case but tend to lose this requirement. In today's Mongolian language both forms (gen. and -ø) are possible. But notice that the **n-stem** appears with the -ø suffix.

Overview:

	Cyrillic	Classical	English	Possible after the following suffixes:
a	дээр	ᠳᠡᠭᠡᠷ ᠪᠠ	above ...	–ø : page 285
b	доор	ᠳᠣᠣᠷ ᠪᠠ	under ...	–ø : page 286
c	адил *	ᠠᠳᠠᠯᠢ	similar to... like ...	–ø: page 287 G.: p. 293 C.: p. 295
d	наана	ᠨᠠᠭᠤᠷ/ᠪᠠ	on this side of ...	G. : page 289
e	цаана	ᠴᠠᠭᠤᠷ/ᠪᠠ	on that side of ...	G. : page 289
f	дотор #	ᠳᠣᠣᠳᠤᠷ ᠪᠠ	in(side) ... among ...	G. : page 289 #–ø: page 289
g	ард	ᠠᠷᠤ ᠪᠠ	behind ...	G. : page 290
h	урд	ᠤᠷᠤᠳ	south of ... in front of ...	G. : page 290
i	уруу #	ᠤᠷᠤᠭᠤ	... down(wards)	G. : page 290 #–ø: page 289
j	өөд #	ᠡᠭᠦᠳᠡ/	... up(wards)	G. : page 290 #–ø: page 289
k	дараа	ᠳᠠᠷᠠᠭ/ᠠ	after	G. : page 290
l	эсрэг *	ᠡᠰᠡᠷᠡᠭ	against	G. : page 291
m	дунд *	ᠳᠤᠮᠳᠠ/	in the middle of ... among ...	G. : page 291
n	ойролцоо *	ᠣᠢᠷᠤᠯᠴᠤᠤ/ᠪᠠ	near by ...	G. : page 291
o	–уур	–ᠤᠭᠤᠷ ᠪᠠ	all adverbs with this suffix	G. : page 291
p	гадна *	ᠭᠠᠳᠤᠭᠤᠷ/ᠪᠠ	out(side) of ... apart from ...	G. : page 292 Abl.: page 294
q	хойно	ᠬᠣᠶᠢᠨᠠ/ᠪᠠ	north of ... after ...(time)	G. : page 292 Abl.: page 294
r	өмнө	ᠡᠮᠦᠨ/ᠡ	before ...(time)	G. : page 292 Abl.: page 294
s	ойр *	ᠣᠢᠷ ᠪᠠ	close to ...	Dat. -Loc.: page 293
t	бусад*	ᠪᠤᠰᠠᠳ/	other(s) than ...	Abl.: page 293
u	өөр *	ᠡᠪᠥᠷ ᠪᠠ	other(s) than ...	Abl.: page 293
v	илүү *	ᠢᠯᠦᠦ	more than ...	Abl.: page 293
w	хол *	ᠬᠣᠯ/	far from ...	Abl.: page 294
x	–(г)ш	–ᠰᠢ	all adverbs with this suffix	Abl.: page 294

2.1.3 Usage of Postpositions

2.1.3.1 POSTPOSITIONS WITH ZERO-SUFFIX

Such postpositions follow the ***word stem*** (in Cyrillic in *italics)* **directly**, with the so-called zero-suffix, which **indicates the subordination of the postposition to the nominal element**.

2.1.3.1.1 "гаруй" = "more than ..."

Always follows after "–ø".

a	We came to Mongolia **more than** five years ago. ("We came to Mongolia and then it became more than 5 years.")	Бид Монголд ирээд 5 *жил* гаруй болж байна.	ᠪᠢᠳᠡ ᠮᠣᠩᠭᠣᠯ ᠳ ᠢᠷᠡᠭᠡᠳ ᠲᠠᠪᠤᠨ ᠵᠢᠯ ᠭᠠᠷᠤᠢ ᠪᠣᠯᠵᠤ ᠪᠠᠶᠢᠨᠠ..
b	This car goes **more than** 60km/h.	Энэ машин цагт *60* гаруй километр явдаг.	ᠡᠨᠡ ᠮᠠᠰᠢᠨ ᠴᠠᠭᠲ ᠵᠢᠷᠠᠭ ᠭᠠᠷᠤᠢ ᠺᠢᠯᠣᠮᠧᠲᠧᠷ ᠶᠠᠪᠳᠠᠭ..

2.1.3.1.2 "шахам" = "almost ..., nearly ..."

Always follows after "–ø".

a	Now Mister Tseren is **almost** 60 years old and retired.	Цэрэн гуай одоо *60* шахам настай, тэтгэвэртээ суудаг.	ᠴᠡᠷᠡᠨ ᠭᠤᠠᠢ ᠣᠳᠣᠣ ᠵᠢᠷᠠᠭ ᠰᠢᠬᠠᠮ ᠨᠠᠰᠲᠠᠢ.. ᠲᠡᠲᠭᠡᠪᠡᠷᠲᠡᠭ ᠰᠤᠤᠳᠠᠭ/
b	In the fridge, there must be **almost** 2 liters of milk.	Хөргөгчинд 2 *литр* шахам сүү байх ёстой.	ᠬᠥᠷᠭᠥᠭᠴᠢᠨᠳ ᠬᠣᠶᠠᠷ ᠯᠢᠲᠷ ᠰᠢᠬᠠᠮ ᠰᠦᠦ ᠪᠠᠶᠢᠬ ᠶᠡᠰᠲᠠᠢ..

2.1.3.1.3 "орчим" = "about ...; approximate ..."

Always follows after "–ø".

a	We'll be living in Mongolia for **about** 3 years.	Бид Монголд 3 *жил* орчим амьдарна.	ᠪᠢᠳᠡ ᠮᠣᠩᠭᠣᠯ ᠳ ᠭᠤᠷᠪ ᠵᠢᠯ ᠣᠷᠴᠢᠮ ᠠᠮᠢᠳᠠᠷᠨᠠ/
b	I bought **appr.** 5 kilos of apples at the shop.	Би дэлгүүрээс таван *кило* орчим алим авсан.	ᠪᠢ ᠳᠡᠯᠭᠦᠦᠷᠡᠰ ᠲᠠᠪᠠᠨ ᠺᠢᠯᠣ ᠣᠷᠴᠢᠮ ᠠᠯᠢᠮ ᠠᠪᠰᠠᠨ..

2.1.3.1.4 "гэхэд" = "by ..."

Always follows after "–ø".

a	It appears as if the plane will come **by** three o'clock.	Онгоц 3 *цаг* гэхэд ирэх бололтой.	ᠤᠨᠭᠭᠣᠴ.. ᠭᠤᠷᠪᠠᠨ ᠴᠠᠭ ᠦᠭᠡ ᠪᠤᠯ ᠢᠷᠡᠬᠦ
b	**By** the end of the year, this job will probably be finished.	Энэ оны *эцэс* гэхэд энэ ажил дуусах байх.	ᠡᠨᠡ ᠣᠨ ᠤ ᠲᠥᠰᠥᠯ ᠦᠭᠡ ᠪᠤᠯ ᠳᠠᠭᠤᠰᠠᠵ ᠪᠠᠶᠢᠬ
c	**By** next spring, I hope that my Mongolian will have become quite good.	Ирэх *хавар* гэхэд миний монгол хэл овоо болно гэж найдаж байна.	ᠢᠷᠡᠬᠦ ᠬᠠᠪᠤᠷ/ᠠ ᠦᠭᠡ ᠪᠤᠯ ᠮᠢᠨᠢ ᠮᠣᠩᠭᠣᠯ ᠬᠡᠯ ᠣᠪᠣᠣ ᠪᠣᠯᠤᠨ ᠭᠡᠵ ᠨᠠᠶᠳᠠᠵ ᠪᠠᠶᠢᠨᠠ/

2.1.3.1.5 "дээр" = "on ..."

Always follows after "–ø" (n-stem of word).

a	That other book, you know, is **on** the table.	Нөгөө ном чинь *ширээн* дээр байна.	ᠨᠥᠭᠥᠥ ᠨᠣᠮ ᠴᠢᠨᠢ ᠰᠢᠷᠡᠭᠡᠨ ᠳᠡᠭᠡᠷ ᠪᠠᠶᠢᠨᠠ/
b	(Someone) put the alarm clock **on** the TV.	Сэрүүлэгтэй цагийг *телевизор* дээр тавьжээ.	ᠰᠡᠷᠦᠦᠯᠡᠭᠲᠡᠶ.. ᠲᠧᠯᠧᠪᠢᠽᠣᠷ ᠳᠡᠭᠡᠷ ᠲᠠᠪᠢᠵᠠᠶ ᠠ

2.1.3.1.6 "доор" = "under ..."

Always follows after "–ø" (n-stem of word). In colloquial language, some words with no hidden 'n' (*) could suddenly appear with one (**ex. b**).

a	What did someone just put **under** your pillow?	Чиний *дэрэн* доор сая юу хийсэн бэ?	
b	My key is on the shelf **under** a book.	Миний түлхүүр тавиур дээр, *номон* доор бий. (ном*)	

2.1.3.1.7 "хүртэл" = "until ...; to ..."

a	He'll be here **until** December.	Тэр 12 *сар* хүртэл энд байна.	
b	(You) can go by train from Ulaanbaatar **to** Darkhan .	Улаанбаатараас *Дархан* хүртэл галт тэргээр явж болно.	

2.1.3.1.8 "бүр/болгон" = "each ...; every ..."

"болгон" is used more in colloquial language.

a	**Every** year I go to a resort to rest.	Би *жил* бүр/болгон амралтын газар явж амардаг.	
b	**Every** person has to learn English well.	*Хүн* бүр/болгон англи хэлийг сайн сурах хэрэгтэй.	
c	I bought a bag for **each** of my children.	Би *хүүхэд* бүрдээ/болгоно нэг нэг цүнх авсан.	

2.1.3.1.9 "тутам" = "each ... ; every ... "

Used for things that increase.

a	My Mongolian is getting better **every** year.	Миний монгол хэл *жил* тутам улам сайн болсоор байна.	
b	In order to improve my Mongolian, I have lessons **every** day.	Би монгол хэлээ сайжруулахын тулд *өдөр* тутам хичээллэж байна.	

2.1.3.1.10 "ёсоор" = "according to ...; in conformity with ..."

The word root is 'law' and therefore, this postposition is strong in its meaning!

a	Everything is carried out **according to** our plan.	Бүх юм бидний *төлөвлөгөө* ёсоор явагдаж байна.	
b	**In conformity with** the judge's verdict he got all his money.	Тэр шүүхийн *тогтоол* ёсоор бүх мөнгөө авсан.	

2.1.3.1.11 "мэт" = "like ...; as ... as ..."

a	When two people are friendly, they are **as** strong **as** an iron wall.	Хоёр хүн эвтэй бол төмөр *хэрэм* мэт бат. (proverb)	
b	When twenty people are unfriendly, they are **as** fragile **as** a mud wall.	Хорин хүн эвгүй бол шавар *хэрэм* мэт хэврэг. (proverb)	

2.1.3.1.12 "шиг" = "like ...; as ... as ..."

a	There is probably no person **as** lazy **as** I am.	*Над* шиг залхуу хүн байхгүй байх.	
b	I desire to become **(such)** a person **like** my teacher.	Би *багш* шигээ хүн болохыг хүсдэг.	

2.1.3.1.13 "адил" = "similar to ...; like ..."

a	In Mongolia, there are many women with cheeks **as** red **as** apples.	*Алим* адил улаан хацартай хүүхэн Монголд олон бий.	
b	This woman has a character **as** naive **as** a child.	Тэр эмэгтэй *хүүхэд* адил гэнэн зантай.	

2.1.3.2 POSTPOSITIONS WITH GENITIVE CS

As mentioned in the introduction, the genitive CS is the **most widely used suffix** to link the postpositions to the nominal elements. See also explanations to the RS (page 108).

2.1.3.2.1 "тулд" = "(in order) to ..."

Always follows after genitive. Note that the sVDS "–хаар" has a similar meaning (see p. 166).

a	**In order to** come to Mongolia, you have to get a visa.	Монголд ирэхийн тулд виз авах хэрэгтэй.	
b	**What** are you doing all this **for**? ("In order for what...")	Чи юуны тулд энэ бүхнийг хийж байна вэ?	
c	**In order to** learn a foreign language well, you have to study it day by day.	Гадаад хэлийг сайн сурахын тулд түүнийг өдөр тутам үзэх хэрэгтэй.	
d	In world history, there are many people who devoted their lives **for** the benefit of their nations.	Дэлхийн түүхэнд ард түмнийхээ төлөө амьдралаа зориулсан хүн олон байдаг.	

2.1.3.2.2 "төлөө" = "for ..."

Always follows after genitive.

a	Jesus died **for** us.	Есүс бидний төлөө нас барсан.	
b	I'll do everything **for** you.	Би таны төлөө бүхнийг хийнэ.	

c	In his youth, Mister Dorj was fighting **for** his motherland.	Дорж гуай залуу на-сандаа эх орныхоо төлөө байллаж явсан.	Ө ᠳᠤᠷᠵ᠎ᠠ ᠭᠤᠠᠢ ᠵᠠᠯᠤᠤ ᠨᠠ-ᠰᠠᠨᠳᠠᠠ ᠡᠬ ᠣᠷᠨ᠋ᠤᠬᠣᠣ ᠲᠥᠯᠥᠥ ᠪᠠᠢᠯᠳᠠᠵ ᠶᠠᠪᠰᠠᠨ᠃
d	This person devoted his entire adult life to science. ("given **for...**)	Энэ хүн шинжлэх ухааны төлөө бүх ухамсарт амьдралаа зориулжээ.	ᠡᠨᠡ ᠬᠦᠮᠦᠨ ᠱᠢᠨᠵᠯᠡᠬ ᠦᠨᠡᠭᠡᠨ ᠤ᠋ᠨ ᠲᠥᠯᠥᠥ ᠪᠦᠬᠦ ᠵᠤᠬᠠᠮᠰᠠᠷᠲ ᠠᠮᠢᠳᠤᠷᠯᠠᠯᠠᠠ ᠵᠣᠷᠢᠤᠯᠵᠡᠶ᠃ ᠨᠢ᠋ (ᠲᠥᠷᠥᠯ ᠬᠡᠷᠡᠭᠰᠡᠭᠴᠢ ᠬᠦᠮᠦᠨ/ᠥ ᠬᠡᠯᠡᠭᠰᠡᠨ)

2.1.3.2.3 "турш" = "for ... (expressing time)"

Always follows after genitive. Note that the **sVDS "–уут"** (p. 170) stresses the **simultaneous** aspect of an action, but this postposition stresses more the **continuous** aspect.

a	I have been living in Mongolia **for** two years.	Би Монголд 2 жилийн турш амьдарч байна.	ᠪᠢ ᠮᠣᠩᠭᠣᠯᠳ ᠬᠣᠶᠠᠷ ᠵᠢᠯᠢᠢᠨ ᠲᠤᠷᠰᠢ ᠠᠮᠢᠳᠠᠷᠴ ᠪᠠᠶᠢᠨ᠎ᠠ᠃
b	Every day, I have Mongolian language lessons **for** three hours.	Би өдөрт 3 цагийн турш Монгол хэлний хичээл хийдэг.	ᠪᠢ ᠥᠳᠥᠷᠲ ᠭᠤᠷᠪᠠ ᠴᠠᠭᠢᠢᠨ ᠲᠤᠷᠰᠢ ᠮᠣᠩᠭᠣᠯ ᠬᠡᠯᠡᠨᠢ ᠬᠢᠴᠢᠶᠡᠯ ᠬᠢᠢᠳᠡᠭ᠃
c	I have been traveling in the countryside **for** this whole summer.	Би энэ зуны турш хөдөө явсан.	ᠪᠢ ᠡᠨᠡ ᠵᠤᠨ᠋ᠤ ᠲᠤᠷᠰᠢ ᠬᠥᠳᠡᠥ ᠶᠠᠪᠰᠠᠨ᠃
d	I worked together with her **for** many years.	Би түүнтэй олон жилийн турш хамт ажиллаж байсан.	ᠪᠢ ᠲᠦᠦᠨᠲᠡᠢ ᠣᠯᠣᠨ ᠵᠢᠯᠢᠢᠨ ᠲᠤᠷᠰᠢ ᠬᠠᠮᠲ ᠠᠵᠢᠯᠯᠠᠵ ᠪᠠᠶᠰᠠᠨ᠃

2.1.3.2.4 "дагуу" = "according to ...; along(side) of ..."

Always follows after genitive. Word root is 'дага-, which menas 'to follow'.

a	I did everything **according to** what he said.	Би түүний хэлсний дагуу бүгдийг хийсэн.	ᠪᠢ ᠲᠦᠦᠨᠢᠢ ᠬᠡᠯᠡᠰᠨᠢᠢ ᠳᠠᠭᠤᠤ ᠪᠦᠭᠳᠢᠢᠭ ᠬᠢᠢᠰᠡᠨ᠃
b	She endeavors to speak Mongolian **according to** the rules.	Тэр монгол хэлний дүрмийн дагуу ярихыг хичээдэг.	ᠲᠡᠷ ᠮᠣᠩᠭᠣᠯ ᠬᠡᠯᠡᠨᠢ ᠳᠦᠷᠮᠢᠢᠨ ᠳᠠᠭᠤᠤ ᠶᠠᠷᠢᠬᠤᠭ ᠬᠢᠴᠢᠶᠡᠳᠡᠭ᠃
c	Everything is being carried out **the way** we planned it.	Бүх юм төлөвлөсний дагуу явагдаж байна.	ᠪᠦᠬ ᠶᠤᠮ ᠲᠥᠯᠥᠪᠯᠥᠰᠨᠢᠢ ᠳᠠᠭᠤᠤ ᠶᠠᠪᠠᠭᠳᠠᠵ ᠪᠠᠶᠨ᠎ᠠ᠃
d	Many trees were planted **along** the road.	Замын дагуу олон мод тарьжээ.	ᠵᠠᠮ᠋ᠤᠨ ᠳᠠᠭᠤᠤ ᠣᠯᠣᠨ ᠮᠣᠳ ᠲᠠᠷᠢᠵᠡᠶ᠃

2.1.3.2.5 "чинээ" = "as big as ...; having the size of ..."

Always follows after genitive.

a	The white **as big as** a hare will defeat the black **as big as** a mountain.	Уулын чинээ харыг туулайн чинээ цагаан дийлнэ. (proverb)	ᠤᠤᠯ᠋ᠤᠨ ᠴᠢᠨᠡᠡ ᠬᠠᠷᠢᠭ ᠲᠤᠤᠯᠠᠢᠨ ᠴᠢᠨᠡᠡ ᠴᠠᠭᠠᠭᠠᠨ ᠳᠠᠢᠯᠨᠡ᠃ (ᠤᠯᠠᠭᠠᠨ ᠤᠤᠯ᠋ᠤᠨ ᠴᠢᠨᠡᠡ ᠬᠠᠷ ᠨᠣᠭᠣᠭᠠᠨ ᠲᠤᠤᠯᠠᠢ ᠤᠤᠯ᠋ᠤᠨ ᠴᠢᠨᠡᠡ ᠬᠠᠪᠤᠤ ᠪᠠᠭᠠ ᠤᠤᠯ᠋ ᠲᠤᠤᠯᠠᠢ)
b	Once upon a time there was a boy **as tall as** an elbow, and with a 'deel' **as big as** a sleeve. (fairy tale)	Эрт урьд цагт тохойн чинээ биетэй, ханцуйн чинээ дээлтэй нэгэн хүү байжээ.	ᠡᠷᠲᠡ ᠦᠷᠢᠳ ᠴᠠᠭᠲ ᠲᠣᠬᠣᠢᠨ ᠴᠢᠨᠡᠡ ᠪᠢᠡᠲᠡᠢ, ᠬᠠᠨᠴᠤᠢᠨ ᠴᠢᠨᠡᠡ ᠳᠡᠡᠯᠲᠡᠢ ᠨᠡᠭᠡᠨ ᠬᠦᠦ ᠪᠠᠶᠢᠵᠡᠶ᠃
c	A watermelon **the size of** a head grew.	Толгойн чинээ том шийгуа ургажээ.	ᠲᠣᠯᠭᠠᠢᠨ ᠴᠢᠨᠡᠡ ᠲᠣᠮ ᠱᠢᠢᠭᠤᠠ ᠤᠷᠭᠠᠵᠡᠶ᠃

2.1.3.2.6 "дэргэд" = "at ...; near ..."

Always follows after genitive.

a	A car came and stopped **at** his house.	Түүний байрны дэргэд нэг машин ирж зогслоо.	ᠲᠦᠦᠨᠢᠢ ᠪᠠᠶᠢᠷ᠋ᠤᠨ ᠳᠡᠷᠭᠡᠳ ᠨᠢᠭᠡ ᠮᠠᠰᠢᠨ ᠢᠷᠵ ᠵᠣᠭᠰᠯᠣᠣ᠃
b	Our church building is **near** the American Embassy.	Америкийн элчингийн дэргэд манай цуглааны байшин бий.	ᠠᠮᠧᠷᠢᠺᠢᠢᠨ ᠡᠯᠴᠢᠨ᠋ᠭᠢᠢᠨ ᠳᠡᠷᠭᠡᠳ ᠪᠢᠳᠡᠨ᠋ᠢ ᠴᠤᠭᠯᠠᠭᠠᠨ᠋ᠤ ᠪᠠᠶᠢᠰᠢᠨ ᠪᠢᠢ᠃

2.1.3.2.7 "хооронд" = "between ..."

Always follows after genitive.

a	**Between** these two mountains there are no 'ails'.	Энэ хоёр уулын хооронд айл алга.	ᠡᠨᠡ ᠬᠣᠶᠠᠷ ᠤᠤᠯ᠋ᠤᠨ ᠬᠣᠣᠷᠣᠨᠳ ᠠᠶᠢᠯ ᠠᠯᠭᠠ᠃ ᠨᠢ᠋ ᠰᠤᠭᠤᠯ ᠮᠤᠨᠳᠠᠭ/ ᠲᠤᠤᠯᠠᠢ ᠰᠤᠭᠤᠯᠠᠭᠤᠳᠤᠯ
b	I sit in our classroom **between** my two friends.	Би ангидаа хоёр найзынхаа хооронд суудаг.	ᠪᠢ ᠠᠩᠭᠢᠳᠠᠠ ᠬᠣᠶᠠᠷ ᠨᠠᠢᠵ᠎ᠠ᠎ᠨᠠᠭ᠎ᠠ ᠬᠣᠣᠷᠣᠨᠳ ᠰᠤᠤᠳᠠᠭ᠃ ᠪᠢ ᠮᠣᠩᠭᠣᠯ ᠪᠦᠯᠢᠭ/ ᠰᠤᠭᠤᠯ ᠵᠠᠭᠠᠯ/ ᠲᠤᠤᠯᠠᠢ

2.1.3.2.8 "хажууд" = "beside ...; next to ..."

Always follows after genitive.

a	The garbage can is **beside** the door.	Хогын сав хаалганы хажууд бий.	ᠬᠣᠭᠤᠨ ᠰᠠᠪ ᠬᠠᠠᠯᠭᠠᠨ᠋ᠤ ᠬᠠᠵᠠᠭᠤᠤᠳ ᠪᠢᠢ᠃ ᠬᠣᠭ ᠳᠠ ᠬᠣᠭᠣᠨ ᠬᠤᠭᠤᠯᠭᠠᠨ/ ᠲᠤᠤᠯᠠᠢ
b	The lady sitting **next to** him, is my grandmother.	Түүний хажууд сууж байгаа эмэгтэй бол миний эмээ.	ᠮᠢᠨᠢ ᠪᠢ ᠬᠠᠵᠠᠭᠤᠤᠳ ᠰᠤᠤᠵ ᠪᠠᠶᠭᠠ ᠬᠦᠮᠦᠨ ᠪᠣᠯ ᠮᠢᠨᠢᠢ ᠡᠮᠡᠭᠲᠡᠢ᠃

2.1.3.2.9 "наана" = "on this side of ..."

Always follows after genitive.

a	Some families settled **on this side** of that lake.	Тэр нуурын наана хэдэн айл буужээ.	ᠲᠡᠷ ᠨᠠᠭᠤᠷ ᠤ᠋ᠨ ᠨᠠᠭᠠᠨ᠎ᠠ ᠬᠡᠳᠡᠨ ᠠᠶᠢᠯ ᠪᠤᠤᠵᠡᠶ᠃
b	**On this side of** the forest there are a lot of mushrooms.	Энэ ой модны наана зөндөө мөөг бий.	ᠡᠨᠡ ᠣᠢ ᠮᠣᠳᠨ᠋ᠤ ᠨᠠᠭᠠᠨ᠎ᠠ ᠵᠥᠨᠳᠥᠥ ᠮᠥᠥᠭ ᠪᠢᠢ᠃ ᠨᠢ᠋ ᠣᠢ ᠮᠣᠳᠤᠨ ᠤ᠋ ᠨᠠᠭᠠᠨ᠎ᠠ ᠲᠤᠤᠯᠠᠢ ᠮᠥᠥᠭ ᠪᠢᠢ

2.1.3.2.10 "цаана" = "on the other side of ..."

Always follows after genitive.

a	'Zuunmod', the center of the 'Töv aimag', is situated **on the other side of** 'Bogd' Mountain.	Богд уулын цаана Төв аймгийн төв Зуунмод хот бий.	ᠪᠤᠭᠳ ᠤᠤᠯ᠋ᠤᠨ ᠴᠠᠭᠠᠨ᠎ᠠ ᠲᠥᠪ ᠠᠶᠮᠠᠭ᠎ᠠᠢᠨ ᠲᠥᠪ ᠵᠠᠭᠤᠨᠮᠣᠳ ᠬᠣᠲ ᠪᠢᠢ᠃
b	I dug a deep hole **on the other side of** our yurt.	Би гэрийнхээ цаана нэг гүнзгий нүх ухсан.	ᠪᠢ ᠭᠡᠷ᠎ᠡᠢᠨᠬᠡᠡ ᠴᠠᠭᠠᠨ᠎ᠠ ᠨᠢᠭᠡ ᠭᠦᠨᠵᠭᠢᠢ ᠨᠦᠬ ᠤᠬᠰᠠᠨ᠃

2.1.3.2.11 "дотор" = "in(side) ...; among ..."

Always follows after genitive. (In modern language tends to lose this requirement.)

a	He waited **in** the room.	Тэр өрөөн*(ий) дотор хүлээсэн. (* n-stem)	ᠲᠡᠷ ᠥᠷᠥᠥᠨ (ᠥ) ᠳᠣᠲᠤᠷ ᠬᠦᠯᠢᠶᠡᠰᠡᠨ᠃

b	**Among** the Mongolians, there are many who speak German well.	Монголчуудын дотор германаар сайн ярьдаг хүн олон бий.	ᠮᠣᠩᠭᠣᠯᠴᠤᠳ ᠤᠨ ᠳᠤᠲᠤᠷ ᠭᠡᠷᠮᠠᠨ ᠬᠡᠯᠡᠨ ᠰᠠᠶᠢᠨ ᠬᠡᠯᠡᠳᠭ᠍ ᠬᠦᠮᠦᠨ ᠣᠯᠠᠨ ᠪᠠᠢᠨ᠃
c	Is there milk **in** the fridge?	Хөргөгчин* дотор сүү бий юу? (*n-stem)	ᠬᠥᠷᠭᠡᠭᠴᠢᠨ ᠳᠤᠲᠤᠷ ᠰᠦᠦ ᠪᠠᠢ ᠤᠤ᠃

2.1.3.2.12 "ард" = "behind ..."

Always follows after genitive.

a	He sat **behind me**.	Тэр миний ард суусан.	ᠨᠠᠷ ᠬᠣᠨᠣ ᠮᠢᠨᠢ ᠬᠣᠶᠢᠨᠠ ᠪᠠᠢᠰᠠᠨ᠃
b	**Behind** their house there is a beautiful garden.	Тэдний байшингийн ард гоё цэцэрлэг бий.	ᠲᠡᠳᠡᠨᠢ ᠪᠠᠢᠰᠢᠩᠭᠠ ᠶᠢᠨ ᠠᠷᠤ ᠭᠤᠶᠠ ᠴᠡᠴᠡᠷᠯᠡᠭ ᠪᠠᠢᠨ᠃

2.1.3.2.13 "урд" = "in front of ...; south of ..."

Always follows after genitive.

a	Dorj was sitting **in front of** me. (context needed)	Дорж миний урд сууж байсан.	ᠳᠣᠷᠵ ᠨᠠᠨᠳᠢᠨ ᠤᠷᠳᠠ ᠪᠠᠢᠵᠤ ᠪᠠᠢᠰᠠᠨ᠃
b	Some people are standing **in front of** the house./...**south of** the house.	Байшингийн урд хэдэн хүн зогсож байна	ᠭᠡᠷ ᠤᠷᠳᠠ ᠠᠷᠪᠠᠨ ᠬᠦᠮᠦᠨ ᠵᠤᠭᠰᠠᠵᠤ ᠪᠠᠢᠨᠠ᠃ ᠪᠠᠢᠰᠢᠩᠭᠠ ᠶᠢᠨ ᠤᠷᠳᠠ ᠠᠷᠪᠠᠨ ᠬᠦᠮᠦᠨ ᠵᠤᠭᠰᠠᠵᠤ ᠪᠠᠢᠨᠠ᠃

2.1.3.2.14 "уруу" = "down(wards) ..."

Always follows after genitive. (In modern language tends to lose this requirement.)

a	He ran quickly **down** the mountain.	Тэр уул(ын) уруу хурдан гүйсэн.	ᠨᠠᠷ ᠤᠨᠳᠤᠨ (ᠤᠨ) ᠬᠤᠷᠳᠤᠨ ᠭᠦᠶᠦᠰᠡᠭᠰᠡᠨ᠃
b	The water of the river flows **down** (the land).	Голын ус газр(ын) уруу урсдаг.	ᠭᠣᠣᠯ ᠤᠨ ᠤᠰᠤ ᠭᠠᠵᠠᠷ (ᠤᠨ) ᠤᠷᠤᠭᠰᠢ ᠤᠷᠤᠭᠳᠠᠭ᠃

2.1.3.2.15 "өөд" = "up(wards) ..."

Always follows after genitive. (In modern language tends to lose this requirement.)

a	She crept **up** the mountain, panting.	Тэр уул(ын) өөд амьсгаадан мөлхөв.	ᠨᠠᠷ ᠤᠨᠳᠤᠨ (ᠤᠨ) ᠡᠬᠡᠯᠵᠢ ᠠᠮᠢᠰᠭᠠᠭᠠᠯᠠᠵᠤ ᠬᠥᠪᠡᠭᠰᠡᠨ᠃
b	This horse can't go **uphill**.	Энэ морь газр(ын) өөд явж чадахгүй.	ᠡᠨᠡ ᠮᠣᠷᠢ ᠭᠠᠵᠠᠷ (ᠤᠨ) ᠡᠬᠡᠯᠵᠢ ᠴᠢᠳᠠᠬᠭᠦᠢ ᠪᠠᠢᠨ᠃

2.1.3.2.16 "дараа" = "after ..."

Always follows after genitive.

a	We like to go into the fresh air after our supper.	Бид оройн хоолныхоо дараа салхинд явах дуртай.	ᠪᠢᠳᠡ ᠣᠷᠣᠢᠨ ᠬᠣᠣᠯᠠᠨᠤ ᠬᠣᠣᠰᠤᠨ ᠤ ᠳᠠᠷᠠᠭ᠎ᠠ ᠰᠠᠯᠬᠢᠨ ᠳ᠋ ᠶᠠᠪᠠᠬ᠎ᠤ ᠳᠤᠷᠲᠠᠢ᠃
b	**After** three hours of lessons, I tend to be quite tired.	Би 3 цаг хичээл хийсний дараа нилээд ядардаг.	ᠪᠢ ᠭᠤᠷᠪᠠ ᠴᠠᠭ ᠬᠢᠴᠢᠶᠡᠯ ᠬᠢᠵᠡᠶᠰᠡᠨ ᠤ ᠳᠠᠷᠠᠭ᠎ᠠ ᠨᠢᠯᠡᠭᠡᠳ ᠶᠠᠳᠠᠷᠳᠠᠭ᠃
c	**After** I came to Mongolia for the first time, I was quite homesick.	Би анх Монголд ирснийхээ дараа нутгаа их санаж байсан.	ᠪᠢ ᠠᠨᠬ᠎ᠠ ᠮᠣᠩᠭᠣᠯ ᠳ᠋ ᠢᠷᠡᠵᠦ ᠤᠷᠢᠵᠤ ᠪᠠᠢᠰᠠᠨ ᠤ ᠳᠠᠷᠠᠭ᠎ᠠ ᠪᠢ ᠨᠤᠲᠠᠭ᠎ᠠ ᠨᠠᠭᠠᠰᠠᠯᠠᠵᠤ ᠪᠠᠢᠰᠠᠨ᠃

2.1.3.2.17 "эсрэг" = "against ..."

Always follows after genitive.

a	In the world, people are fighting **against** war.	Дэлхийд хүмүүс дайны эсрэг тэмцэж байна.	ᠳᠡᠯᠬᠡᠢᠳᠡ ᠬᠦᠮᠦᠦᠰ ᠳᠠᠶᠢᠨ ᠤ ᠡᠰᠡᠷᠡᠭ ᠲᠡᠮᠴᠡᠵᠦ ᠪᠠᠢᠨᠠ᠃
b	Although we were **against** this idea, it was decided in accordance with the opinion of the majority.	Бид энэ саналын эсрэг байсан боловч олонхийн саналын дагуу шийдвэрлэв.	ᠪᠢᠳᠡ ᠡᠨᠡ ᠰᠠᠨᠠᠯ ᠤᠨ ᠡᠰᠡᠷᠡᠭ ᠪᠠᠢᠰᠠᠨ ᠪᠣᠯᠪᠴ ᠣᠯᠠᠨᠬᠢᠶᠠᠨ ᠤ ᠰᠠᠨᠠᠯ ᠤᠨ ᠳᠠᠭᠤᠤ ᠱᠢᠶᠢᠳᠪᠡᠷᠯᠡᠪ᠃

2.1.3.2.18 "дунд" = "among ..."

Always follows after genitive.

a	(Someone) allotted this job to four students. ("distributed **among** ...")	Энэ ажлыг дөрвөн оюутны дунд хуваажээ.	ᠡᠨᠡ ᠠᠵᠯᠠᠭ ᠳᠥᠷᠪᠥᠨ ᠣᠶᠤᠲᠠᠨ ᠤ ᠳᠤᠮᠳᠠ ᠬᠤᠪᠤᠠᠵᠡᠶ᠃
b	If you learn a foreign language **among** native speakers, you'll probably learn it fast.	Гадаад хэлийг тэр хэлээр ярилцагч хүмүүсийн дунд сурвал хурдан сурах байх.	ᠭᠠᠳᠠᠳ ᠬᠡᠯᠡᠶᠢᠨ ᠪᠠᠢᠭᠤᠯᠯᠠᠭ᠎ᠠ ᠲᠡᠷ ᠬᠡᠯᠡᠶᠡᠷ ᠶᠠᠷᠢᠯᠴᠠᠭᠴᠢ ᠬᠦᠮᠦᠦᠰᠢᠶᠡᠨ ᠳᠤᠮᠳᠠ ᠰᠤᠷᠪᠠᠯ ᠬᠤᠷᠳᠠᠨ ᠰᠤᠷᠠᠬ᠃

2.1.3.2.19 "ойролцоо" = "near ...; in the neighborhood of ..."

Always follows after genitive.

a	Many children were playing **in** our **neighborhood.**	Манай байшингийн ойролцоо олон хүүхэд тоглож байсан.	ᠮᠠᠨᠠᠢ ᠪᠠᠢᠰᠢᠩᠭᠠ ᠶᠢᠨ ᠣᠢᠷᠣᠯᠴᠤᠣ ᠣᠯᠠᠨ ᠬᠦᠦᠬᠡᠳ ᠲᠣᠭᠯᠤᠵ ᠪᠠᠢᠰᠠᠨ᠃
b	We live **near** the 'Jukov' Museum.	Манайхан Жуковын музейн ойролцоо амьдардаг.	ᠮᠠᠨᠠᠶᠬᠠᠨ ᠵᠤᠺᠣᠪ ᠤᠨ ᠮᠤᠽᠧ ᠶᠢᠨ ᠣᠢᠷᠣᠯᠴᠤᠣ ᠠᠮᠢᠳᠤᠷᠳᠠᠭ᠃

2.1.3.2.20 Suffix "–уур" = Expressing Local Movement

Below are examples of adverbs that can take this suffix, thus forming a postposition with the genitive CS. "дээгүүр/доогуур" can follow the word stem directly (–ø suffix; **ex.b**). Compare with pages 224-225 to understand the origin of this suffix.

a	The Tuul river flows **on this side of** 'Bogd' Mountain. (as seen from UB)	Туул гол Богд уулын наагуур урсдаг.	ᠲᠤᠭᠯ ᠭᠣᠣᠯ ᠪᠣᠭᠳ ᠤᠯᠠᠨ ᠤᠨ ᠨᠠᠭᠤᠷ ᠤᠷᠤᠭᠰᠢᠳᠠᠭ᠃
b	Did you search for your key **under** the table?	Чи түлхүүрээ ширээний доогуур эрсэн үү? (ширээн доогуур)	ᠴᠢ ᠲᠦᠯᠬᠢᠦᠷᠡᠶ᠎ᠡ ᠰᠢᠷᠡᠡᠨᠢ ᠳᠤᠤᠭᠤᠷ ᠡᠷᠡᠭᠰᠡᠨ ᠦᠦ᠂ ᠰᠢᠷᠡᠡᠨ ᠳᠤᠤᠭᠤᠷ᠎ᠠ᠃

2.1.3.2.21 "тухай" = "about ..."

In colloquial language, "энэ/тэр" (word stems without genitive CS) are also used in front of "тухай" (**ex. d-e**), but this is not allowed when these words refer to people.

a	I am very interested in books **about** Mongolia.	Би монголын тухай ном их сонирхдог.	ᠪᠢ ᠮᠣᠩᠭᠣᠯ ᠤᠨ ᠲᠤᠬᠠᠢ ᠨᠣᠮ ᠤᠷᠤᠨ ᠰᠣᠨᠢᠷᠬᠤᠳᠠᠭ᠃
b	May I introduce myself briefly to you? ("May I have you briefly know **about** myself?")	Би танд өөрийнхөө тухай товч танилцуулж болох уу?	ᠪᠢ ᠲᠠᠨᠳ ᠥᠪᠥᠷᠢᠨᠬᠡᠡ ᠲᠤᠬᠠᠢ ᠲᠣᠪᠴ ᠲᠠᠨᠢᠯᠴᠤᠭᠤᠯᠵ ᠪᠣᠯᠣᠬ᠎ᠤ᠃

c	He is a person who mis-judges me. ("...with a wrong understanding **about** me.")	Тэр миний тухай буруу ойлголттой хүн юм.	ᠲᠡᠷ ᠮᠢᠨᠢ ᠲᠤᠬᠠᠢ ᠪᠤᠷᠤᠤ ᠣᠶᠢᠯᠭᠣᠯᠲᠲᠠᠢ ᠬᠦᠨ ᠶᠤᠮ᠃
d	I heard **about** this from him.	Би үүний (энэ) тухай түүнээс сонссон.	ᠪᠢ ᠦᠦᠨᠢ᠋ (ᠡᠨᠡ) ᠲᠤᠬᠠᠢ ᠲᠦᠦᠨᠡᠡᠰ ᠰᠣᠨᠰᠰᠣᠨ᠃
e	I have been thinking **about** that.	Би түүний (тэр) тухай бодож байгаа.	ᠪᠢ ᠲᠦᠦᠨᠢ (ᠲᠡᠷ) ᠲᠤᠬᠠᠢ ᠪᠣᠳᠤᠵᠤ ᠪᠠᠶᠢᠭᠠᠠ᠃

2.1.3.2.22 "талаар" = "on ...; with regard to ..."

a	I don't know anything **on (the subject of)** Buddhism.	Би Бурханы шашны талаар юу ч мэдэхгүй.	ᠪᠢ ᠪᠤᠷᠬᠠᠨ ᠤ ᠱᠠᠱᠢᠨ ᠤ ᠲᠠᠯᠠᠠᠷ ᠶᠤ ᠴ ᠮᠡᠳᠡᠬᠭᠦᠢ᠃
b	I have a few books **on** Mongolian history.	Надад монголын түүхийн талаар нилээд хэдэн ном бий.	ᠨᠠᠳᠠᠳ ᠮᠣᠩᠭᠣᠯ ᠤᠨ ᠲᠦᠦᠬᠡ ᠤᠨ ᠲᠠᠯᠠᠠᠷ ᠨᠢᠯᠡᠡᠳ ᠬᠡᠳᠡᠨ ᠨᠣᠮ ᠪᠢᠢ᠃
c	Are there other ideas **with regard to** this problem?	Энэ асуудлын талаар өөр санал байна уу?	ᠡᠨᠡ ᠠᠰᠤᠤᠳᠠᠯ ᠤᠨ ᠲᠠᠯᠠᠠᠷ ᠥᠥᠷ ᠰᠠᠨᠠᠯ ᠪᠠᠢᠨᠠ ᠤᠤ᠃
d	He talks repeatedly **about** his country.	Тэр эх орныхоо талаар олонтоо ярьдаг.	ᠲᠡᠷ ᠡᠬ ᠣᠷᠨ ᠤ ᠲᠠᠯᠠᠠᠷ ᠣᠯᠣᠨᠲᠣᠣ ᠶᠠᠷᠢᠳᠠᠭ᠃

2.1.3.2.23 "гадна" = "out(side) of ..."

a	Those two were standing **outside** the door talking for a long time.	Тэр хоёр хаалганы гадна удаан ярьж зогсов.	ᠲᠡᠷ ᠬᠣᠶᠠᠷ ᠬᠠᠠᠯᠭᠠᠨ ᠤ ᠭᠠᠳᠨᠠ ᠤᠳᠠᠠᠨ ᠶᠠᠷᠢᠵ ᠵᠣᠭᠰᠣᠪ᠃
b	My son is playing **outside** the house.	Манай хүү байшингийн гадна тоглож байна.	ᠮᠠᠨᠠᠢ ᠬᠦᠦ ᠪᠠᠢᠱᠢᠩᠭᠢᠢᠨ ᠭᠠᠳᠨᠠ ᠲᠣᠭᠯᠤᠵ ᠪᠠᠢᠨᠠ᠃

2.1.3.2.24 "хойно" = "north of ...; after ..."

Similar to "−ын дараа", but "хойно" needs some previous action (*) to relate to, when used with a temporal meaning.

a	Our house is situated **north of** the university.	Манай байр их сургуулийн хойно байдаг.	ᠮᠠᠨᠠᠢ ᠪᠠᠢᠷ ᠤᠨ ᠰᠤᠷᠭᠤᠤᠯᠢᠢᠨ ᠬᠣᠶᠢᠨᠣ ᠪᠠᠢᠳᠠᠭ᠃
b	I will leave ten hours **after** he does*.	Би түүнээс* арван цагийн хойно явна.	ᠪᠢ ᠲᠦᠦᠨᠡᠡᠰ ᠠᠷᠪᠠᠨ ᠴᠠᠭᠢᠢᠨ ᠬᠣᠶᠢᠨᠣ ᠶᠠᠪᠨᠠ᠃
c	This morning, my son got up half an hour **after** I did*.	Өнөө өглөө манай хүү надаас* хагас цагийн хойно боссон.	ᠥᠨᠥᠥ ᠥᠭᠯᠥᠥ ᠮᠠᠨᠠᠢ ᠬᠦᠦ ᠨᠠᠳᠠᠠᠰ ᠬᠠᠭᠠᠰ ᠴᠠᠭᠢᠢᠨ ᠬᠣᠶᠢᠨᠣ ᠪᠣᠰᠰᠣᠨ᠃

2.1.3.2.25 "өмнө" = "in front of ...; before ..."

When "−ын өмнө" has a temporal meaning, it expresses '**immediately before**' (**ex. b**). Compare with "−аас өмнө" (p.294): цагийн өмнө = "... hours ago"; цагаас өмнө = "before... o'clock"

a	There is a big goal **in front of** us.	Бидний өмнө том зорилт байна.	ᠪᠢᠳᠡᠨ ᠤ ᠥᠮᠥ᠋ ᠲᠤᠮᠤ ᠵᠣᠷᠢᠯᠲ ᠪᠠᠢᠨᠠ᠃
b	I didn't see my husband **before** the meeting.	Би нөхрийгөө хурлын өмнө харсангүй.	ᠪᠢ ᠨᠥᠬᠥᠷᠢᠭᠥᠥ ᠬᠤᠷᠯᠠᠨ ᠤ ᠥᠮᠥ᠋ ᠬᠠᠷᠰᠠᠩᠭᠦᠢ᠃
c	I came four hours **ago**.	Би дөрвөн цагийн өмнө ирсэн.	ᠪᠢ ᠳᠥᠷᠪᠥᠨ ᠴᠠᠭᠢᠢᠨ ᠤ ᠥᠮᠥ᠋ ᠢᠷᠡᠪᠡ᠃

2.1.3.2.26 "адил" ="similar to ...; like ..."

a	**Similar to** many Mongolians, he grew up near livestock.	Тэр олон монгол хүний адил малын дэргэд өссөн.	ᠲᠡᠷ ᠣᠯᠣᠨ ᠮᠣᠩᠭᠣᠯ ᠬᠦᠨᠢᠢ ᠠᠳᠢᠯ ᠮᠠᠯᠤᠨ ᠳᠡᠷᠭᠡᠳ ᠥᠰᠰᠥᠨ᠃
b	**Like** my friends, I believe that there is a true God.	Би найз нарынхаа адил жинхэнэ Бурхан байдаг гэдэгт итгэдэг.	ᠪᠢ ᠨᠠᠶᠢᠵ ᠨᠠᠷᠤᠨᠬᠠᠠ ᠠᠳᠢᠯ ᠵᠢᠨᠬᠡᠨᠡ ᠪᠤᠷᠬᠠᠨ ᠪᠠᠢᠳᠠᠭ ᠭᠡᠳᠡᠭᠲ ᠢᠲᠭᠡᠳᠡᠭ᠃

2.1.3.3 POSTPOSITIONS WITH DATIVE-LOCATIVE CS

2.1.3.3.1 "ойр" = "close to ...; near ..."

Always follows after dative-locative.

a	Is your house **close to** the department store?	Танай байшин их дэлгүүрт ойр байдаг уу?	ᠲᠠᠨᠠᠢ ᠤ ᠪᠠᠢᠱᠢᠨ ᠢᠬ ᠳᠡᠯᠭᠦᠦᠷᠲ ᠣᠶᠢᠷ ᠪᠠᠢᠳᠠᠭ ᠤᠤ᠃
b	Which 'sum' is the **closest to** Ulaanbaatar?	Улаанбаатарт хамгийн ойр сум ямар сум бэ?	ᠤᠯᠠᠭᠠᠨᠪᠠᠭᠠᠲᠠᠷᠲ ᠬᠠᠮᠭᠢᠢᠨ ᠣᠶᠢᠷ ᠰᠤᠮ ᠶᠠᠮᠠᠷ ᠰᠤᠮ ᠪᠡ᠃

2.1.3.4 POSTPOSITIONS WITH ABLATIVE CS

2.1.3.4.1 "бусад" = "other than ...; except ..."

Always follows after ablative.

a	All people **except** you have already come.	Танаас бусад бүх хүн ирчихээд байна.	ᠪᠦᠬᠦ᠋ ᠬᠦᠨ ᠤᠨ᠃ ᠲᠠ ᠨᠠᠷ ᠪᠤᠷᠤᠭᠤ ᠪᠤᠰᠠᠳ ᠪᠦᠬᠦ ᠲᠡᠷᠭᠡᠳ ᠢᠷᠴᠢᠬᠡᠡᠳ ᠪᠠᠢᠨᠠ᠃
b	We work everyday **except** Sunday.	Ням гаригаас бусад бүх өдөр бид ажилладаг.	ᠨᠡᠮ ᠭᠠᠷᠢᠭᠠᠠᠰ ᠪᠤᠰᠠᠳ ᠪᠦᠬᠦ ᠥᠳᠥᠷ ᠪᠢᠳ ᠠᠵᠢᠯᠯᠠᠳᠠᠭ᠃

2.1.3.4.2 "өөр" = "besides ...; other than ..."

Always follows after ablative.

a	I have other money **besides** tögrögs.	Надад төгрөгнөөс өөр мөнгө байгаа.	ᠨᠠᠳᠠᠳ ᠲᠥᠭᠦᠷᠭᠡᠨᠡᠡᠰ ᠥᠥᠷ ᠮᠥᠩᠭᠥ ᠪᠠᠢᠭᠠᠠ᠃
b	We don't have a method **other than** this one.	Бидэнд үүнээс өөр арга байхгүй.	ᠪᠢᠳᠡᠨᠳ ᠦᠦᠨᠡᠡᠰ ᠥᠥᠷ ᠠᠷᠭ᠎ᠠ ᠪᠠᠢᠬᠭᠦᠢ᠃

2.1.3.4.3 "илүү" = "more than ..."

Always follows after ablative.

a	He speaks Mongolian better than I. ("...**more** [good] **than** I.")	Тэр монголоор надаас илүү (сайн) ярьдаг.	ᠲᠡᠷ ᠮᠣᠩᠭᠣᠯᠤᠤᠷ (ᠰᠠᠶᠢᠨ) ᠶᠠᠷᠢᠳᠠᠭ᠃ ᠲᠠ ᠬᠦᠨᠡᠡᠰ ᠢᠯᠦᠦ ᠨᠠᠳ ᠶᠠᠷᠢᠳᠠᠭ ᠤᠤ᠃
b	Not **more than** 30 people fit into this hall.	Энэ танхимд 30-аас илүү хүн багтахгүй.	ᠡᠨᠡ ᠲᠠᠨᠬᠢᠮᠳ ᠭᠤᠤᠰᠠᠨ ᠤ ᠲᠤᠭᠠᠯᠠᠭᠠ᠃ ᠢᠯᠦᠦ ᠣᠷᠣᠯᠴᠤᠭᠰᠠᠳ ᠭᠤᠤᠰᠠᠨ ᠤ ᠲᠤᠭᠠᠯᠠᠭᠠ ᠪᠠᠭᠲᠠᠬᠭᠦᠢ᠃

2.1.3.4.4 "хол" = "far from ..."

Always follows after ablative.

a	He lived **far from** his family for many years	Тэр гэр бүлээсээ хол олон жил амьдарсан.	ᠮᠠᠷᠬᠤᠭᠤᠯᠤᠭᠰᠠᠨ᠂᠂ ᠡᠮᠦᠨ᠎ᠡ ᠤᠨ ᠭᠡᠷ᠎ᠦᠨ ᠪᠤᠯ ᠤᠭᠤᠯ ᠠᠮᠢᠳᠤᠷᠰᠠᠨ᠃
b	The resort 'Terelj' is situated not **far from** Ulaanbaatar.	"Тэрэлж" амралтын газар Улаанбаатараас холгүй оршдог.	ᠲᠡᠷᠡᠯᠵᠢ ᠨᠤᠭᠤᠳ ᠤᠯᠠᠭᠠᠨᠪᠠᠭᠠᠲᠤᠷ᠎ᠠᠴᠠ᠂᠂ «ᠲᠡᠷᠡᠯᠵᠢ» ᠮᠠᠷᠬᠤᠭᠤᠯᠤᠭᠰᠠᠨ ᠲᠤᠯ ᠤᠯᠠᠭᠠᠨᠪᠠᠭᠠᠲᠤᠷ᠎ᠠᠴᠠ

2.1.3.4.5 Suffix "–(г) ш" = Expressing Direction

Here are examples of adverbs taking this suffix with the ablative CS.

a	**Since** the war, I haven't seen him at all. ("**After** the war...")	Дайнаас хойш би түүнтэй ердөө уулзаагүй.	ᠳᠠᠶᠢᠨ᠎ᠠᠴᠠ ᠬᠣᠶᠢᠰᠤ᠂ ᠪᠢ ᠲᠡᠭᠦᠨᠲᠡᠢ ᠶᠡᠷᠳᠥ᠎ᠶᠡ ᠤᠤᠯᠵᠠᠭᠰᠠᠭᠦᠢ᠃ ᠥᠨᠳᠥᠷ᠎ᠲᠦ᠂ ᠳᠠᠶᠢᠨ᠎ᠠᠴᠠ ᠬᠣᠶᠢᠰᠤ ᠪᠣᠯ ᠥᠨᠳᠥᠷ ᠤᠨ ᠭᠠᠭᠠ
b	The city 'Zuunmod' is 30 km **south of** Ulaanbaatar. ("...is with a distance of 30 km south of UB.")	Зуун мод хот Улаанбаатараас урагшаа 30 км зайтай.	ᠵᠠᠭᠤᠨᠮᠣᠳ ᠬᠤᠲ ᠤᠯᠠᠭᠠᠨᠪᠠᠭᠠᠲᠤᠷ᠎ᠠᠴᠠ ᠤᠷᠠᠭᠰᠢᠭᠠᠠ ᠭᠤᠤᠯᠠᠨ ᠺᠢᠯᠣᠮᠧᠲᠧᠷ ᠵᠠᠢᠲᠠᠢ᠃᠂ ᠲᠡᠨᠳᠡ ᠬᠥᠭᠡ ᠤᠯᠤᠭ᠂ ᠤᠯᠠᠭᠠᠨᠪᠠᠭᠠᠲᠤᠷ᠎ᠠᠴᠠ ᠤᠷᠠᠭᠰᠢ᠂
c	I didn't go **out of** my home for several days.	Би хэдэн өдөр гэрээсээ гадагш яваагүй.	ᠪᠢ ᠬᠡᠳᠡᠨ ᠥᠳᠥᠷ ᠭᠡᠷᠡᠡᠴᠡᠶᠡ ᠭᠠᠳᠠᠭᠰᠢ ᠶᠠᠪᠠᠭᠤᠢ᠃᠂ ᠪᠢ ᠨᠠᠳᠠᠯ ᠮᠣᠨᠭᠣᠯ ᠤᠨ ᠤᠯᠤᠰ ᠪᠤᠷ ᠤᠭᠤᠢ ᠪᠠᠢᠨ᠎ᠠ

2.1.3.4.6 "гадна" = "apart from ..."

a	**Apart from** him, several people speak Mongolian.	Түүнээс гадна хэд хэдэн хүн монголоор ярьдаг.	ᠲᠡᠷᠦᠦᠨ᠎ᠡᠴᠡ ᠭᠠᠭᠠᠳᠤᠭᠠᠭᠠᠷ ᠬᠡᠳᠦ ᠬᠡᠳᠡᠨ ᠬᠦᠨ ᠮᠣᠩᠭᠣᠯᠤᠭᠠᠷ ᠶᠠᠷᠢᠯᠴᠠᠨ᠎ᠠ᠃᠂ ᠥᠭᠡᠭᠡᠳᠦ᠂ ᠤᠨ᠎ᠠ ᠬᠦᠮᠦᠨ᠎ᠦ ᠠᠮᠤ ᠤᠨ ᠪᠤᠰᠤ ᠠᠮᠤ
b	**Apart from** me, three people will go.	Надаас гадна гурван хүн явна.	ᠨᠠᠳᠠᠨ᠎ᠠᠴᠠ ᠭᠠᠭᠠᠳᠤᠭᠠᠭᠠᠷ ᠭᠤᠷᠪᠠᠨ ᠬᠦᠨ ᠶᠠᠪᠤᠨ᠎ᠠ᠃᠂ ᠨᠠᠳ᠎ᠠᠴᠠ ᠭᠠᠭᠠᠳᠤᠭᠠᠭᠠᠷ ᠭᠤᠷᠪᠠᠨ ᠬᠦᠨ ᠶᠠᠪᠤᠨ᠎ᠠ

2.1.3.4.7 "хойно" = "after ..."

Note the "–аас хойш", which is more widely used.

a	I met him once **after** the war.	Дайнаас хойно би түүнтэй нэг удаа уулзсан.	ᠳᠠᠶᠢᠨ᠎ᠠᠴᠠ ᠬᠣᠶᠢᠨᠤ ᠪᠢ ᠲᠡᠭᠦᠨᠲᠡᠢ ᠨᠢᠭᠡ ᠤᠳᠠᠭ᠎ᠠ ᠤᠤᠯᠵᠰᠠᠨ᠎ᠠ᠃᠂ ᠥᠨᠳᠥᠷ ᠤᠨ᠎ᠠ ᠤᠯᠤᠰ᠎ᠤᠨ ᠪᠤᠯ ᠥᠨᠳᠥᠷ ᠤᠨ

2.1.3.4.8 "өмнө" = "before ..."

When used with the ablative CS, the **time span** referred to is **longer** than when it's used with genitive CS (compare with -ын өмнө: p. 292).

a	Please call me **before** 10 p.m.	Та оройн арван цагаас өмнө над руу утсаар яриарай.	ᠨᠠᠳ᠎ᠠ ᠬᠣᠤᠭᠤᠨ ᠬᠣᠭᠣᠰᠣ ᠪᠤᠭᠤᠳ ᠰᠠᠨᠠᠭᠠᠷᠠᠢ᠂ႂ ᠲᠠ ᠬᠣᠤᠷᠤᠨ ᠲᠤ ᠠᠷᠪᠠᠨ ᠴᠠᠭ᠎ᠠᠴᠠ ᠥᠮᠨᠥ᠎ᠡ ᠤᠷᠤᠭ᠎ᠤ
b	Who was teaching you **before** him? ("Who did you have teach you **before** him?")	Та түүнээс өмнө ямар хүнээр хичээл заалгаж байсан бэ?	ᠲᠠ ᠲᠡᠷᠦᠦᠨ᠎ᠡᠴᠡ ᠥᠮᠨᠥ᠎ᠡ ᠶᠠᠮᠠᠷ ᠬᠦᠨᠦᠭᠦᠷ ᠬᠢᠴᠢᠶᠡᠯ ᠵᠠᠯᠭᠠᠭᠵ᠂ႂ ᠥᠨᠳᠥᠷ ᠤᠨ᠎ᠠ ᠬᠣᠤᠷᠤᠨ᠎ᠤ ᠰᠤᠷᠴᠠᠭᠠᠯ ᠪᠠᠢᠰᠠᠨ ᠪᠡ᠎ᠡ
c	I came **before** 4 o'clock.	Би дөрвөн цагаас өмнө ирсэн.	ᠪᠢ ᠳᠥᠷᠪᠥᠨ ᠴᠠᠭ᠎ᠠᠴᠠ ᠥᠮᠨᠥ᠎ᠡ ᠢᠷᠡᠪᠡ᠎ᠡᠨ᠃᠂

2.1.3.5 POSTPOSITIONS WITH COMITATIVE CS

2.1.3.5.1 "адил" = "similar to ...; like ..."

a	He desires to become an athlete **like** his older brother.	Тэр ахтайгаа адил тамирчин болохыг хүсдэг.	ᠪᠢᠴᠢᠭᠡ ᠨᠤ ᠪᠡᠷᠬᠡᠨ᠎ᠡ᠂ႂ ᠥᠨᠳᠥᠷ ᠨᠠᠰ᠎ᠤᠨ ᠪᠤᠯ ᠠᠬᠤᠭᠠᠳᠤ ᠠᠮᠢᠯᠠᠬᠤ ᠪᠣᠯᠪᠠᠰᠤᠷᠠᠯ
b	Human beings have been searching for intelligent beings **like** themselves.	Хүн төрөлхтөн өөртэй-гөө адил ухаантныг эрсэдэг байна.	ᠬᠦᠨ ᠲᠥᠷᠥᠯᠬᠢᠲᠡᠨ ᠥᠪᠡᠷᠲᠡᠶᠢᠭᠡᠡ ᠠᠳᠢᠯ ᠤᠬᠠᠭᠠᠨᠲᠤ᠎ᠶᠢᠨ᠎ᠠ᠂ႂ ᠪᠣᠰᠤ᠎ᠳᠤ ᠠᠭᠤᠯᠭᠠᠵᠤ ᠪᠠᠢᠭᠠ ᠪᠠᠢᠨ᠎ᠠ

2.1.3.6 POSTPOSITIONS WITH NDS's

Some of the postpositions that usually take genitive or zero-suffix, could also be linked to the nominal element with an NDS. Then they form a conjunction (see pages 308-318) and as such could appear with a RS (see p. 296: last two postpositions).

2.1.3.6.1 "хүртэл" = "until ..."

When "хүртэл" follows an NDS, the *noun* is dropped (see parentheses).

a	Let me wait here **until** you come. ("...until *the time* of your coming.")	Чамайг ирэх (*цаг*) хүртэл би энд хүлээе.	ᠪᠢ᠎ᠡᠴᠢᠨᠠ᠂ႂ ᠴᠢᠮᠠᠨᠢ ᠢᠷᠡᠬᠦ (ᠴᠠᠭ᠎ᠠ) ᠪᠡᠷᠬᠡᠲᠦᠯ᠎ᠡ ᠪᠢ ᠨᠤᠭᠤᠭᠠᠷᠠᠢ ᠪᠢ
b	Please read everything **up to** the *page/lesson* the teacher taught.	Багшийн заасан (*хуу-дас, хичээл*) хүртэл нэгбүрчлэн уншаарай.	ᠪᠡᠷᠬᠡᠲᠦᠯ᠎ᠡ ᠬᠢᠴᠢᠶᠡᠭᠡᠯᠴᠡᠭᠡᠨ᠎ᠦ ᠪᠣᠷᠪᠢᠵᠢᠭᠤᠷᠠᠢ᠂ႂ ᠪᠢᠴᠢᠭ ᠲᠤ᠂ ᠲᠣᠭᠲᠠᠭᠠᠭᠰᠠᠨ (ᠰᠤᠷᠭᠠᠭᠤᠯᠢ᠂ ᠴᠠᠭ᠎ᠠᠴᠠ)

2.1.3.6.2 "бүр/болгон"= "every time ...; each time ..."

*Notice that, in English, the noun (here '*time*') can't be dropped like in Mongolian.

a	**Every** *time* * I go to a resort, I like it very much. ("...it seems to me very nice.")	Намайг амралтын газар очих бүр/болгон их сайхан санагддаг.	(ᠴᠠᠭ᠎ᠠᠴᠠ) ᠪᠢ ᠠᠮᠠᠷᠯᠠᠯ᠎ᠤᠨ ᠭᠠᠵᠠᠷ ᠤᠷᠢᠵᠤ ᠪᠤᠭᠤᠳ᠂ႂ ᠨᠠᠳᠠᠨ᠎ᠳ ᠮᠠᠰᠢ ᠰᠠᠶᠢᠬᠠᠨ ᠰᠠᠨᠠᠭᠳᠠᠭᠳᠠᠨ᠎ᠠ
b	**Each** *time* * I visited his home, he gave me a gift.	Би тэднийд очих бүр/болгон тэр надад бэлэг өгдөг байсан.	ᠥᠨᠳᠥᠷ ᠲᠤ᠂ ᠪᠢ ᠲᠡᠳᠡᠨᠢᠢᠳ ᠤᠷᠢᠵᠤ ᠪᠤᠭᠤᠳ᠂ႂ ᠲᠡᠷ ᠥᠭᠡᠭᠡᠳᠦ ᠪᠡᠯᠭᠡ ᠥᠭᠭᠡᠳᠡᠭ ᠪᠠᠢᠭᠠᠯ᠎ᠠ (ᠴᠠᠭ᠎ᠠᠴᠠ)

2.1.3.6.3 "тутам" = "each ..."

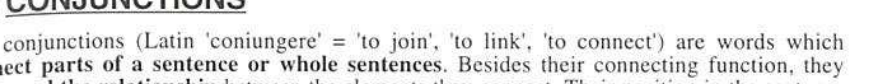
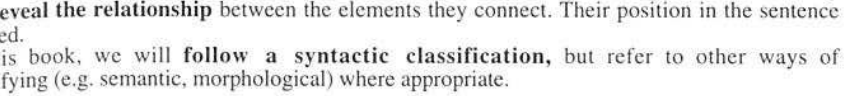
* see explanation above

a	**Each** *time* he talks about this, I understand better that I'm in the wrong.	Түүнийг энэ тухай ярих тутам би буруутай гэдгээ улам илүү ойлгодог.	ᠲᠡᠷᠦᠦᠨᠢᠶ᠎ᠡ ᠡᠨᠡ ᠲᠤᠬᠠᠢ ᠶᠠᠷᠢᠬᠤ ᠲᠤᠭᠠᠮ᠂ႂ ᠪᠢ ᠪᠤᠷᠤᠭᠤᠲᠠᠢ ᠭᠡᠳᠭᠡᠶ᠎ᠡ ᠤᠯᠠᠮ ᠢᠯᠦᠭᠦ ᠣᠶᠯᠭᠣᠳᠣᠭ᠎ᠤᠯ᠎ᠠ᠃

2.1.3.6.4 "ёсоор " = "the way ...; according to ..."

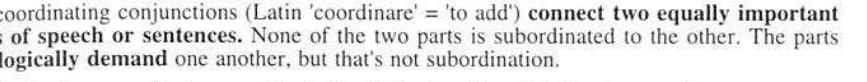
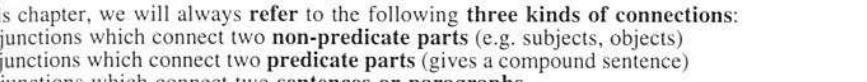
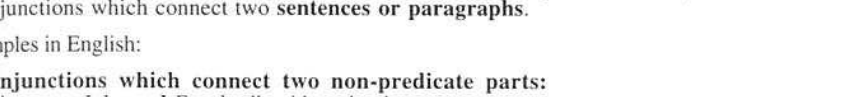
a	Everything turned out **the way** you said it would.	Бүх юм чиний хэлсэн ёсоор боллоо.	ᠪᠦᠬᠦ ᠵᠢᠮᠠᠰᠤ᠎ᠨ᠎ᠤ ᠵᠠᠨᠢ ᠬᠡᠯᠡᠭᠰᠡᠨ ᠪᠠᠶᠢᠵᠤ᠂ႂ
b	Everything is being carried out **the way** it was planned.	Бүх юм төлөвлөсөн ёсоор явагдаж байна.	ᠵᠠᠭᠬᠠᠭᠰᠠᠨ ᠪᠠᠶᠢᠳᠠᠭ᠎ᠠ᠃ႂ ᠪᠦᠬᠦ ᠵᠢᠮᠠᠰᠤ᠎ᠨ᠎ᠤ ᠥᠪᠡᠷᠲᠡᠶᠢᠭᠡᠡ ᠵᠤᠷᠬᠠᠰᠠᠨ

2.1.3.6.5 "мэт" = "like ..."

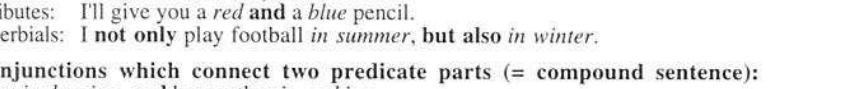
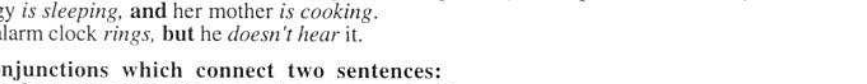
a	The word of a bad person is **like** the bite of a poisonous snake.	Муу хүний үг хорт могой хатгах мэт	
b	The word of a good person is **like** the warmth of the bright sun.	Сайн хүний үг хурц наран ээх мэт	

2.1.3.6.6 "шиг" = "like ..."

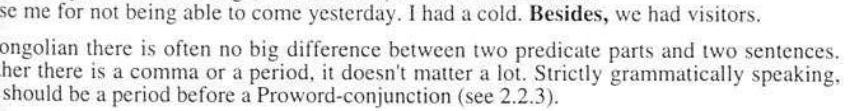
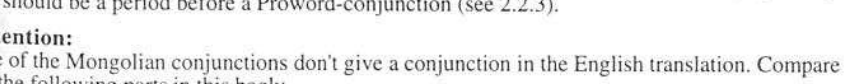
Note the new expression "–х шиг бол–" which is used in colloquial language (**ex. b-c!**).

a	(I) heard about this and almost fainted. ("... became **like** [someone] losing his consciousness")	Энэ тухай сонсоод ухаан алдах шиг болов.	
b	She learned Mongolian **excellently**.	Тэр монгол хэлийг сурах шиг болсон.	
c	Christiane is **the best at** baking cakes.	Христиана бялуур хийх шиг боллог.	

2.1.3.6.7 "тухай" = "about ..."

a	One of my friends is thinking **about** coming to Mongolia.	Миний нэг найз Монголд ирэх тухай бодож байгаа.	
b	I wrote a travelogue **about** my traveling in the countryside.	Би хөдөө явсан тухайгаа тэмдэглэл бичсэн.	

2.1.3.6.8 "талаар" = "on ...; with regard to ..."

a	One of my friends is busy organizing his journey to Mongolia. ("...is occupied **in regard to** his coming..")	Миний нэг найз Монголд ирэх талаар хөөцөлдөж байгаа.	
b	Please talk **about** your travels in the countryside.	Та хөдөө явсан талаараа ярич.	

2.2 CONJUNCTIONS

The conjunctions (Latin 'coniungere' = 'to join', 'to link', 'to connect') are words which **connect parts of a sentence or whole sentences**. Besides their connecting function, they can **reveal the relationship** between the elements they connect. Their position in the sentence is fixed.
In this book, we will **follow a syntactic classification,** but refer to other ways of classifying (e.g. semantic, morphological) where appropriate.

2.2.1 Coordinating Conjunctions

The coordinating conjunctions (Latin 'coordinare' = 'to add') **connect two equally important parts of speech or sentences.** None of the two parts is subordinated to the other. The parts may **logically demand** one another, but that's not subordination.

In this chapter, we will always **refer** to the following **three kinds of connections**:
- conjunctions which connect two **non-predicate parts** (e.g. subjects, objects)
- conjunctions which connect two **predicate parts** (gives a compound sentence)
- conjunctions which connect two **sentences or paragraphs**.

Examples in English:

- **Conjunctions which connect two non-predicate parts:**
2 subjects: *John* **and** *Frank* talk with each other.
2 objects: He knows **neither** *you* **nor** *me*.
2 attributes: I'll give you a *red* **and** a *blue* pencil.
2 adverbials: I **not only** play football *in summer*, **but also** *in winter*.

- **Conjunctions which connect two predicate parts (= compound sentence):**
Maggy *is sleeping,* **and** her mother *is cooking*.
The alarm clock *rings,* **but** he *doesn't hear* it.

- **Conjunctions which connect two sentences:**
You're far too late. **But** I hope you have a reason for it.
Unfortunately, he couldn't sing. **Nevertheless,** it was a nice concert.
Excuse me for not being able to come yesterday. I had a cold. **Besides,** we had visitors.

In Mongolian there is often no big difference between two predicate parts and two sentences. Whether there is a comma or a period, it doesn't matter a lot. Strictly grammatically speaking, there should be a period before a Proword-conjunction (see 2.2.3).

☞**Attention:**
Some of the Mongolian conjunctions don't give a conjunction in the English translation. Compare with the following parts in this book:
- cVDS's: –аад[4],–ч/–ж, –н (see pages 157-160).
- Cardinal numerals (see page 237).

2.2.1.1 OVERVIEW OF COORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS

We could present a twofold classification in **original and derived** conjunctions, but for the following reasons we don't do that: conjunctions that look superficially like original conjunctions (e.g. "бөгөөд", "болон", etc.) would have to be strictly classified as 'derived' because of their origin of "verb + VDS". So, it's difficult to draw proper lines between 'original' and 'derived'. To us, it seemed more important that the following conjunctions **serve as conjunctions today**:

1	... ба ...	.... ба	... and ...
2	... бөгөөд ... (болоод/ хийгээд/ агаад)	.... бөгөөд/.... (бөгөөдөг/ , хийгээд/ , агаад/)	... and ... (The words in parentheses are rarely used and specialized)
3	...–гүй	.... юмуу	... and ... (whether ... or...)
4	... болон ...	.... бөгөөд/....	... as well as ...
5	... ч, ...ч ...	.... ч , ... ч	(although) both, ... and ...
6	..., (мөн) түүнчлэн ...	.... , (нөгөө/) өөрөөсөө/....	... as well as (also) ...
7	... , харин ...	.... , харин/....	... , but ...
8	... , гэвч ...	.... , гэвч	... , but ... ; ..., still, ...
9	...(зөвхөн) ...төдийгүй, мөн...	зөвөө/.... .... (төдийгөө/) , өөрөө юмуу ,	... not (only)... , but also...
10	...төдий биш, харин (бас)	өөрөө биш , харин/ (бас/)	... not (only)... , but (also)...
11	...–аар барахгүй, мөн ... ...–аар үл барам ...	.... зөвөөс биш юмуу , зөвөө/.... .... зөвөө юмуу биш/....	... not (only)... , but also...
12	... буюу... ... юм уу...	.... эсэх .... юм/ уу	.. respectively ..(..or..)
13	... эсвэл (эсхүл)... [... үгүй бол...] [... нэг бол...] [... аль эсвэл...]	--- эсвэл (эсвэхүү/) .... [.... юмуу эсэх....] [.... нэг нь эсэх ....] [.... аль эсвэл ....]	... or ... (old form in parentheses) [if not ..., then ...]
14	... эсвэл..., эсвэл ...	.... эсвэл .... , эсвэл	... (n)either ... (n)or ...
15	... байхад, харин ...	.... өөрөөс үү , харин/....	..., where as ...
16	... байтугай ... (... бүү хэл ...) (... битгий хэл ...)	.... өөрөөшүү .... (.... үү биш/....) (.... өөрөө биш/....)	... let alone ... ... not to mention ...
17	... гэхдээ ...	.... өө гэхэд/	... but ...

2.2.1.2 USAGE OF COORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS

2.2.1.2.1 "ба" = "and"

→ has **adversative** meaning, i.e., the two connected parts exclude each other.
→ usually connects ***non-predicate parts*** **(ex. a-c)**
→ almost exclusively used in **written language**
→ first part of sentence is not declined (in **ex. c** evident; **ex. b**: "ы" in оюуны = derivational suffix)

a	Scientific research is divided into *basic* **and** *applicable*.	Шинжлэх ухааны судалгааг *тулгуур* ба *хавсарга* гэж ангилдаг.	шинжлэх ухааны судалгааг өөр өөрөөр ангилдаг .. тулгуур өөрөөр өөрөөр ба хавсарга өөрөөр гэж
b	The epoch of Genghis Khan's empire plays an important role in the history of the *spiritual* **and** *material* culture of the Mongolians.	Чингис хааны эзэнт гүрний үе монголчуудын *оюуны* ба *эдийн соёл*ын түүхэнд чухал үүрэг гүйцэтгэдэг.	өгүүлбэрийн .. монгол ард түмний хөгжилд оюуны өөрөөр ба эдийн соёлын түүхэнд чухал үүрэг гүйцэтгэдэг
c	Thousands of students study at the *Mongolian State University* **and** *other universities*.	Олон мянган оюутан *Монгол Улсын Их Сургууль* ба *бусад дээд сургуулиуд*аа сурдаг.	олон мянган оюутан .. их сургууль оюутан их сургууль ба бусад сургууль оюутан

☞ Attention! This is wrong:

My father is *nice* **and** *wise*.	Манай аав *сайхан зантай* ба *ухаалаг*.	→ Манай аав бол *сайхан зантай, ухаалаг* хүн.
Baatar **and** *Dorj* must go now.	*Баатар* ба *Дорж* одоо явах ёстой.	→ Баатар, Дорж хоёр одоо явах ёстой.

2.2.1.2.2 "бөгөөд" = "and"

→ has an **additive** meaning
→ usually connects **predicate parts** which demand each other **logically** (***verb*** in front of the conjunction demands an *NDS* **(ex. a-c)**
→ used almost exclusively in **official or literary** language
→ derived from the old auxiliary verb "bü–" + cVDS "–аад"

a	My friend *studies* in Germany **and** will come soon.	Миний найз Германд сурч байгаа бөгөөд удахгүй ирнэ.	өөрөө эрдэмлэн суралцаж байгаа .. удахгүй ирэх гэж байгаа
b	When I came to Mongolia for the first time, it *was* interesting **and** there were many things (I) didn't understand.	Анх Монголд ирэхэд сонин байсан бөгөөд ойлгомжгүй зүйл их байсан.	эхэлж очиход .. өөрөөр өөрөө сонирхолтой олон зүйлс олон ойлгомжгүй ба олон зүйл
c	I *will return* to my homeland in 1996 **and** it isn't clear when I will come back.	Би 1996 онд нутагтаа *харих* бөгөөд хэзээ буцаж ирэх нь тодорхойгүй байна.	олон жил өнгөрөөд эргэж очих .. харин өөрөө очих эсэхээ өө мэдэхгүй ба эх орондоо харих
d	I love her **and** always think of her.	Би түүнд хайртай бөгөөд үргэлж түүнийг боддог.	эхнэртэй өөр л өдөөдөг .. өө өөр ба харилцаж өөрөө

2.2.1.2.3 "-гүй" = "and; whether ... or"

→ usually used with ***opposite pairs*** (**ex. a-d**)
→ connects **non-predicate parts** (**ex. a-d**), but also **predicate parts** (**ex. e-f**)

a	We all, *young* **and** *old*, love this song.	Энэ дуунд манайхан *хөгшин залуугүй* дуртай.	[illegible]
b	I worked *day* **and** *night*.	Би *өдөр шөнөгүй* ажилласан.	[illegible]
c	High trees grew on both sides of this mountain. (*"behind* **and** *in front of"*)	Уулын *ар өвөргүй* өндөр өндөр мод ургажээ.	[illegible]
d	Dulmaa reads all of the time. (*"... morning* **and** *evening"*)	Дулмаа бол *өглөө үдэшгүй* ном уншиж суудаг.	[illegible]
e	I'll surely come, **whether** you *invite* me **or** *not*.	Би таныг *урьсан уриагүй* заавал ирнэ.	[illegible]
f	I will live in Mongolia **whether** I *learn* Mongolian **or** *not*.	Би монгол хэл *сурсан сураагүй* Монголд амьдарна.	[illegible]

2.2.1.2.4 "болон" = "as well as"

→ has an **additive** meaning
→ usually connects ***non-predicate parts*** (**ex. a-e**)
→ the first part of the sentence is **not** declined (**ex. a,b,c,e**; **ex. d**:"ын" = derivational suffix, therefore it doesn't drop in the word "дотоод").
→ derived from verb "бол-" + cVDS "-н"

a	We received from you *a telegram* **as well as** *the letter of September 5*.	Бид танаас *цахилгаан болон таны 9-р сарын 5-нд бичсэн захиа* хүлээн авсан.	[illegible]
b	Mongolians want to strengthen their multilateral relationship with *Germany* **as well as** *with other European countries*.	Монголчууд *Герман болон Европын бусад орнуудтай* олон талын харилцаагаа бэхжүүлэхийг хүсч байна.	[illegible]
c	He speaks Russian **and also** Chinese well.	Тэр *орос болон хятад* хэлээр сайн ярьдаг.	[illegible]
d	Many *national* **as well as** *foreign* representatives hold speeches in this meeting.	Энэ хуралд *дотоодын болон гадаадын* олон төлөөлөгч үг хэлэв.	[illegible]
e	Our guests went to the *Central Museum* **as well as** *to the department store*.	Манай зочид *Төв Музей болон их дэлгүүр* очсон.	[illegible]

2.2.1.2.5 "ч, ...ч ..." = "both, ... and ...; (although ... and ...)"

→ usually connects ***non-predicate parts*** (**ex. a-d**), sometimes ***predicate parts*** (**ex. e**: note the different translation; verb needs an NDS)
→ **both** parts of the sentence are declined (in **ex. a,c and d** evident)
→ compare with the meaning of the **particle "ч"** (pages 346-348)

a	He knows **both** *you* **and** *me* well.	Тэр *намайг ч, таныг ч* сайн мэднэ.	[illegible]
b	My mother just bought **both** *bread* **and** *cake* at the market.	Ээж минь сая захаас *талх ч, бялуу ч* авсан.	[illegible]
c	He speaks well in **both** *Russian* **and** *Chinese*.	Тэр *орсоор ч, хятадаар ч* сайн ярьдаг.	[illegible]
d	You can meet these kinds of people in **both** *Mongolia* **and** *Germany*.	Та иймэрхүү хүмүүстэй *Монголд ч, Германд ч* тааралдаж болно.	[illegible]
e	(Although) I talked with him in **both** *Mongolian* **and** *English*, he didn't understand anything.	Би түүнтэй монголоор ярьсан ч, англиар ярьсан ч тэр юу ч ойлгоогүй.	[illegible]

2.2.1.2.6 "(мөн) түүнчлэн" = "and also"

→ has an **additive** meaning
→ usually connects ***non-predicate parts***
→ the first part of the sentence is **not** declined (in **ex. b** evident)

a	My father teaches *French* **and also** *some other languages* at a school.	Манай аав сургуульд *франц хэл, (мөн) түүнчлэн бусад зарим хэл* заадаг.	[illegible]
b	He came after having traveled *through Germany* **and also** *through some other countries. ("He traveled ... and then came.")*	Тэр *Герман, (мөн) түүнчлэн өөр хэдэн орноор* аялаад ирлээ.	[illegible]

2.2.1.2.7 "харин" = "but"

→ has a **concessive** meaning (literal translation 'returning')
→ very often connects ***predicate parts*** (**ex. a-c**; the verb needs an NDS) or **sentences** (**ex.d**)
→ similar to "гэвч" (see page 302), but not so strong in its concessive meaning
→ when ***non-predicate parts*** are connected, the negative particle "биш" is needed (**ex. e-g**) and **both** parts of the sentence are declined (in **ex. f** evident)

a	Dorj *plays* chess well, **but** he *isn't very good* in football.	Дорж шатар сайн *тоглодог, харин* хөл бөмбөг тоглохдоо *тааруухан*.	[illegible]
b	My friend *speaks* Mongolian well, **but** he *can't write* a single word.	Манай найз монголоор сайн *ярьдаг, харин* нэг ч үг *бичиж чадахгүй*.	[illegible]

c	Cars *are very expensive* in Mongolia, but in Germany, they *are comparatively cheap.*	Машин Монголд *их үнэтэй*, харин Германд харьцангуй *хямд байдаг.*	ᠤᠴᠠᠷ/ ᠪᠤ ᠮᠠᠰᠢᠨ᠎ᠤ᠋ᠨ᠋ᠲᠤ/ ᠦᠨᠡᠲᠡᠶ᠋/ ᠪᠠᠢᠳᠠᠭ᠂ ᠬᠠᠷᠢᠨ/ ᠭᠡᠷᠮᠠᠨᠳ/ ᠪᠤ ᠵᠢᠩ ᠬᠣᠪᠢᠳᠤ᠃ ᠬᠠᠮᠤᠭ/
d	We *agree* with the payment conditions of this contract. **But** we *don't agree* with the duration.	Бид энэ гэрээний төлбөрийн нөхцлийг *зөвшөөрч байна.* Харин хугацааг *зөвшөөрөхгүй байна.*	ᠡᠨᠡ᠋ᠦᠨ᠎ᠦ᠋ ᠭᠡᠷᠡᠭᠡᠨ᠎ᠦ᠋ ᠲᠥᠯᠪᠦᠷᠢᠨ᠎ᠦ᠋ ᠬᠥᠪᠴᠢᠯᠢᠭ᠎ᠢ᠋ ᠪᠢᠳᠡ/ ᠵᠥᠪᠰᠥᠭᠡᠭᠡᠳ᠎ᠡ᠋ ᠪᠠᠢᠨᠠ᠃ ᠬᠠᠷᠢᠨ ᠬᠤᠭᠴᠠᠭᠠ᠎ᠠ᠋ ᠵᠥᠪᠰᠥᠭᠡᠭᠡᠬᠭᠦᠢ ᠪᠠᠢᠨᠠ᠃ ᠬᠠᠮᠤᠭ/
e	At the shop, he bought **no** *shirt*, **but** he did buy *boots.*	Тэр дэлгүүрээс *цамц* биш, харин *гутал* авсан.	ᠰᠢᠨᠵᠢᠯᠡᠭᠡᠨ᠎ᠦ᠋ ᠬᠣᠭᠣᠣᠷ/ ᠂ ᠲᠡᠷ/ ᠳᠡᠯᠦᠦ᠎ᠨ᠋ ᠡᠴᠡ/ ᠴᠠᠮᠴ/ ᠪᠢᠰᠢ/ ᠬᠠᠷᠢᠨ/ ᠭᠤᠲᠠᠯ/ ᠠᠪᠰᠠᠨ᠃
f	Not with the *duration of this contract,* **but** with *the payment conditions* we agree.	Бид *энэ гэрээний хугацаа*г биш, харин *төлбөрийн нөхцлийг* зөвшөөрч байна.	ᠪᠢᠳᠡ/ ᠡᠨᠡ᠋ᠦᠨ᠎ᠦ᠋ ᠭᠡᠷᠡᠭᠡᠨ᠎ᠦ᠋ ᠬᠤᠭᠴᠠᠭᠠ᠎ᠠ᠋ᠭ/ ᠪᠢᠰᠢ/ ᠬᠠᠷᠢᠨ/ ᠲᠥᠯᠪᠦᠷᠢᠨ᠎ᠦ᠋ ᠬᠥᠪᠴᠢᠯᠢᠭ᠎ᠢ᠋ ᠵᠥᠪᠰᠥᠭᠡᠭᠡᠨ᠎ᠡ᠋ ᠪᠠᠢᠨᠠ᠃
g	Not *Mongolians,* **but** *Chinese* can do this.	Үүнийг *монгол хүн* биш, харин *хятад хүн* хийж чадна.	ᠦᠨᠢᠶᠡᠭ᠎ᠡ᠋ ᠮᠣᠩᠭᠣᠯ ᠬᠦᠨ/ ᠪᠢᠰᠢ/ ᠬᠠᠷᠢᠨ/ ᠬᠢᠲᠠᠳ ᠬᠦᠨ/ ᠬᠢᠵᠤ/ ᠴᠠᠳᠠᠨᠠ᠃ ᠬᠤᠤ/ ᠪᠤ/ ᠬᠣᠲᠠᠯ/ ᠪᠢᠰᠢ/ ᠬᠠᠷᠢᠨ/

2.2.1.2.8 "гэвч" = "but; still"

→ has a **concessive** meaning
→ very often connects ***predicate parts*** (**ex. a-c**; the verb needs an NDS) or **sentences** (**ex.d**)
→ very similar to **"харин"** (see above), **гэхдээ** (p. 307) and the sVDS "–вч" (p. 162-163).

a	Dorj *plays* chess well, **but** he *isn't very good* in football.	Дорж шатар сайн *тоглодог*, гэвч хөл бөмбөг тоглохдоо *тааруухан.*	ᠵᠤᠷᠵ/ ᠂ ᠰᠡᠭᠦᠯ ᠪᠢᠴᠢ ᠪᠠᠢᠴᠠᠭᠠᠨ᠎ᠠ᠋ ᠰᠤᠮᠤᠨ᠎ᠤ᠋ ᠲᠣᠭᠯᠣᠭᠴ/ ᠪᠠᠢᠳᠠᠭ᠃ ᠭᠡᠪᠡᠴ/ ᠬᠥᠯ ᠪᠥᠮᠪᠥᠭ᠎ᠦ᠋ᠨ᠋ ᠲᠣᠭᠯᠣᠬᠳᠤᠤ ᠲᠠᠭᠠᠷᠤᠤᠬᠠᠨ᠃
b	Cars *are very expensive* in Mongolia, but in Germany, they *are comparatively cheap.*	Машин Монголд их *үнэтэй*, гэвч Германд харьцангуй *хямд байдаг.*	ᠤᠴᠠᠷ/ ᠪᠤ ᠮᠠᠰᠢᠨ᠎ᠤ᠋ᠨ᠋ᠲᠤ/ ᠦᠨᠡᠲᠡᠶ᠋/ ᠪᠠᠢᠳᠠᠭ᠂ ᠬᠠᠷᠢᠨ/ ᠭᠡᠷᠮᠠᠨᠳ/ ᠪᠤ ᠵᠢᠩ ᠬᠣᠪᠢᠳᠤ᠃ ᠬᠠᠮᠤᠭ/
c	He has offended me many times. **Still**, I invited him.	Тэр намайг олон удаа *гомдоосон*, гэвч би түүнийг *урьсан.*	ᠬᠠᠮᠤᠭ ᠪᠢ ᠣᠯᠠᠨ/ ᠤᠳᠠᠭ ᠨᠠᠮᠠᠶᠢᠭ/ ᠲᠡᠷ/ ᠬᠤᠭᠤᠴᠠᠭᠠᠨ᠎ᠠ᠋ ᠂ ᠪᠢ ᠲᠡᠭᠦᠨᠢᠶᠡᠭ᠎ᠡ᠋ ᠤᠷᠢᠰᠠᠭᠠᠨ᠎ᠠ᠋ᠭ/ ᠂
d	We *agree* with the payment conditions of this contract. **But** we *don't agree* with the duration.	Бид энэ гэрээний төлбөрийн нөхцлийг зөвшөөрч байна. Гэвч хугацааг зөвшөөрөхгүй байна.	ᠪᠢᠳᠡ/ ᠡᠨᠡ᠋ᠦᠨ᠎ᠦ᠋ ᠭᠡᠷᠡᠭᠡᠨ᠎ᠦ᠋ ᠲᠥᠯᠪᠦᠷᠢᠨ᠎ᠦ᠋ ᠬᠥᠪᠴᠢᠯᠢᠭ᠎ᠢ᠋ ᠵᠥᠪᠰᠥᠭᠡᠭᠡᠳ᠎ᠡ᠋ ᠪᠠᠢᠨᠠ᠃ ᠬᠠᠷᠢᠨ ᠬᠤᠭᠴᠠᠭᠠ᠎ᠠ᠋ᠭ/ ᠵᠥᠪᠰᠥᠭᠡᠭᠡᠬᠭᠦᠢ ᠪᠠᠢᠨᠠ᠃ ᠬᠠᠮᠤᠭ/

2.2.1.2.9 "(зөвхөн) ... төдийгүй, мөн" = "not (only), but also"

→ has an **additive** meaning (literal translation 'not only that much, also')
→ "зөвхөн" and "мөн" could be omitted; the main word is "төдийгүй"
→ mainly connects ***non-predicate parts*** (**ex. a-d**), sometimes ***predicate parts*** (**ex. e**; an NDS is needed)
→ **both** parts of sentence are declined (in **ex. b** evident)
→ similar to next conjunction (p. 303); but here, the first statement is satisfactory, the second statement only **complements** the first one.

a	**Not only** did I receive a *telegram* from you, **but also** *a letter.*	Бид танаас (зөвхөн) *цахилгаан* төдийгүй, мөн *захиа* хүлээн авсан.	ᠠᠪᠴᠠᠭᠠᠨ᠎ᠠ᠋ ᠂ ᠮᠣᠨᠭᠣᠯ ᠬᠡᠯᠡᠨ᠎ᠦ᠋ ᠬᠥᠭᠵᠢᠯ ᠪᠢᠴᠢᠭ/ ᠪᠢᠳᠡ/ ᠲᠠᠨᠠᠠᠰ/ (ᠲᠥᠭᠦᠰᠬᠡᠯ) ᠵᠥᠪᠬᠡᠨ/

b	**Not only** do we disagree with *the payment conditions* of this contract, **but also** with *the duration.*	Бид энэ гэрээний (зөвхөн) *төлбөрийн нөхцлийг* төдийгүй, мөн *хугацаа*г зөвшөөрөхгүй байна.	ᠪᠢᠳᠡ/ ᠡᠨᠡ᠋ᠦᠨ᠎ᠦ᠋ ᠭᠡᠷᠡᠭᠡᠨ᠎ᠦ᠋ ᠲᠥᠯᠪᠦᠷᠢᠨ᠎ᠦ᠋ ᠬᠥᠪᠴᠢᠯᠢᠭ᠎ᠢ᠋ ᠵᠥᠪᠰᠥᠭᠡᠭᠡᠳ᠎ᠡ᠋ ᠪᠠᠢᠨᠠ᠃ ᠬᠠᠷᠢᠨ ᠬᠤᠭᠴᠠᠭᠠ᠎ᠠ᠋ᠭ/ ᠵᠥᠪᠰᠥᠭᠡᠭᠡᠬᠭᠦᠢ ᠪᠠᠢᠨᠠ᠃ ᠬᠠᠮᠤᠭ/
c	In my opinion, in order to study a foreign language, one has to **not only** devote *one's working time*, **but also** *one's free time.*	Миний бодлоор бол, гадаад хэлийг сурахын тулд (зөвхөн) *ажлын цагаа* төдийгүй, мөн *чөлөөт цагаа* зориулах хэрэгтэй.	ᠪᠢ/ ᠪᠣᠳᠤᠯᠠᠭᠠᠨ᠎ᠠ᠋ ᠂ ᠪᠢ/ ᠮᠢᠨᠢ᠎ᠦ᠋ ᠪᠣᠳᠯᠤᠤᠷ ᠪᠣᠯ᠂ ᠭᠠᠳᠠᠳ ᠬᠡᠯᠢᠶ᠋ᠡᠭ/ ᠰᠤᠷᠠᠬᠤ ᠲᠤᠯᠳ (ᠵᠥᠪᠬᠡᠨ/) ᠠᠵᠯᠤᠨ ᠴᠠᠭᠠ᠎ᠠ᠋ ᠵᠥᠷᠢᠤᠯᠠᠬ ᠬᠡᠷᠡᠭᠲᠡᠢ᠃ ᠬᠤᠪᠢ ᠬᠦᠮᠦᠨ ᠲᠡᠭᠦᠯᠴᠡᠵ ᠪᠠᠢᠨ᠎ᠠ᠋ ᠴᠠᠭ ᠪᠠᠭᠠᠰᠤ ᠪᠠᠢᠨ᠎ᠠ᠋ ᠴᠠᠭ ᠪᠠᠭᠠᠰᠤ ᠪᠠᠢᠨ᠎ᠠ᠋ ᠂ ᠰᠢᠨᠵᠢᠯᠡᠬᠦ᠎ᠦ᠋ᠨ᠋ ᠴᠠᠭ᠎ᠠ᠋ᠨ᠋ ᠳ᠋ᠤ/
d	**Not only** *did* he *pay* the *costs of his meal* **but also** *ours.*	Тэр (зөвхөн) *өөрийн хоолны мөнгө* төдийгүй, мөн *биднийхийг* төлсөн юм.	ᠲᠡᠷ/ ᠪᠢᠳᠡᠨᠢ ᠶᠢᠨ/ ᠬᠣᠣᠯᠠᠨ᠎ᠤ᠋ ᠮᠥᠩᠭᠥ᠎ᠦ᠋ᠨ᠋ ᠲᠥᠯᠪᠦᠷᠢᠨ᠎ᠦ᠋ ᠬᠥᠪᠴᠢᠯᠢᠭ᠎ᠢ᠋ ᠵᠥᠪᠬᠡᠨ/ (ᠲᠥᠭᠦᠰᠬᠡᠯ) ᠲᠥᠯᠰᠡᠨ ᠶᠤᠮ᠃ ᠲᠡᠷ/ ᠪᠢᠳᠡᠨᠢ ᠶᠢᠨ/ ᠬᠣᠣᠯᠠᠨ᠎ᠤ᠋ ᠮᠥᠩᠭᠥ᠎ᠦ᠋ᠨ᠋ ᠲᠥᠯᠪᠦᠷᠢᠨ᠎ᠦ᠋ ᠬᠥᠪᠴᠢᠯᠢᠭ᠎ᠢ᠋ ᠵᠥᠪᠰᠥᠭᠡᠭᠡᠬᠭᠦᠢ ᠪᠠᠢᠨᠠ᠃ ᠮᠥᠨ ᠲᠡᠭᠦᠨ᠎ᠦ᠋ ᠬᠥᠪᠴᠢᠯᠢᠭ᠎ᠢ᠋ ᠵᠥᠪᠰᠥᠭᠡᠭᠡᠨ᠎ᠡ᠋ ᠪᠠᠢᠨᠠ᠃ ᠮᠥᠨ ᠲᠡᠭᠦᠨ᠎ᠦ᠋ ᠬᠥᠪᠴᠢᠯᠢᠭ᠎ᠢ᠋ ᠵᠥᠪᠰᠥᠭᠡᠭᠡᠨ᠎ᠡ᠋ ᠪᠠᠢᠨᠠ᠃ ᠮᠥᠨ
e	**Not only** *did* he *teach* me many things, **but** he **also** introduced me to many people.	Тэр надад их зүйл *зааж өгсөн* төдийгүй, мөн олон хүнтэй *танилцуулсан.*	ᠲᠡᠷ/ ᠨᠠᠳᠠᠳ ᠤᠯᠠᠨ ᠵᠦᠢᠯ᠎ᠦ᠋ᠨ᠋ ᠲᠡᠮᠳᠡᠭᠯᠡᠬᠦ᠎ᠦ᠋ᠨ᠋ᠲᠡᠶ᠋/ ᠂ ᠬᠥᠭᠵᠢᠮ/ ᠬᠣᠯᠪᠣᠭᠳᠤᠭᠤᠯᠵᠤ/ ᠪᠠᠢᠨ᠎ᠠ᠋ ᠂ ᠬᠠᠮᠤᠭ/ ᠨᠤᠲᠠᠭ/ ᠪᠤ ᠵᠢᠩ ᠲᠠᠨᠢᠯᠴᠤᠭᠤᠯᠵᠤ/

2.2.1.2.10 "төдий биш, (харин)" = "not only ..., but"

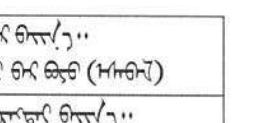
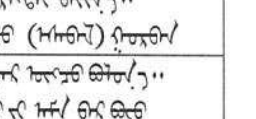
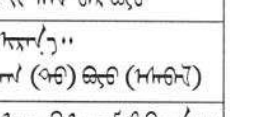
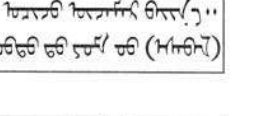
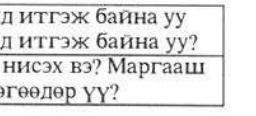
→ has an **additive** meaning (literal translation 'not so much, but')
→ always connects ***non-predicate parts*** (**ex. a-b**)
→ similar to previous conjunction (p. 302), but here, the first statement **is not satisfactory** and has to be complemented.
→ both parts of the sentence are declined (evident in **ex. c**)

a	When you go by train to Moscow, you **not only** need *one or two days*, **but** *quite many.*	Галт тэргээр Москва ороход *нэг хоёр* төдий биш, (харин) *нилээд хэд хоног* хэрэгтэй.	ᠭᠠᠯᠲ/ ᠲᠡᠷᠭᠡᠡᠷ ᠮᠣᠰᠺᠸᠠ ᠣᠷᠣᠬᠤ᠎ᠳ᠋ᠤ/ ᠂ ᠨᠢᠭᠡ ᠬᠣᠶᠠᠷ ᠣᠳᠤᠭ ᠪᠢᠴᠢ ᠬᠡᠷᠡᠭᠲᠡᠢ ᠪᠠᠢᠨ᠎ᠠ᠋ ᠂ (ᠬᠠᠷᠢᠨ/) ᠨᠢᠯᠡᠡᠳ ᠬᠡᠳ ᠬᠣᠨᠤᠭ ᠪᠢᠴᠢ ᠬᠡᠷᠡᠭᠲᠡᠢ ᠪᠠᠢᠨ᠎ᠠ᠋ ᠂
b	People must **not only** live *in peace*, **but also** *well.*	Хүмүүс *амар тайван* төдий биш, (харин) *сайн сайхан* амьдрах ёстой.	ᠬᠦᠮᠦᠨᠦᠰ/ ᠂ (ᠬᠠᠷᠢᠨ/) ᠠᠮᠠᠷ/ ᠠᠮᠠᠷᠮᠠᠨ/ ᠮᠠᠨᠠᠭᠠᠬᠤᠭᠴᠢ ᠪᠠᠢᠬᠤ ᠶᠡᠰᠥ ᠲᠠᠢ᠃ ᠬᠦᠮᠦᠨ ᠵᠢᠨᠬᠡᠨᠡ ᠰᠠᠶᠢᠨ ᠰᠠᠶᠢᠬᠠᠨ ᠠᠮᠢᠳᠤᠷᠠᠬᠤ ᠶᠡᠰᠥ ᠲᠠᠢ᠃
c	In order to understand the Mongolians well, you have to live **not only** *in Ulaanbaatar,* **but also** *in the countryside.*	Та монголчуудыг сайн ойлгохын тулд зөвхөн Улаанбаатар төдий биш, харин орон нутаг амьдрах хэрэгтэй.	ᠴᠢ/ ᠮᠣᠩᠭᠣᠯᠴᠤᠳ ᠤᠨ᠎ᠤ᠋ ᠮᠠᠨᠠᠭᠠᠬᠤᠭᠴᠢ ᠪᠠᠢᠬᠤ ᠶᠡᠰᠥ ᠲᠠᠢ᠃ ᠬᠦᠮᠦᠨ ᠵᠢᠨᠬᠡᠨᠡ ᠰᠠᠶᠢᠨ ᠰᠠᠶᠢᠬᠠᠨ ᠠᠮᠢᠳᠤᠷᠠᠬᠤ ᠶᠡᠰᠥ ᠲᠠᠢ᠃ ᠲᠡᠭᠦᠨ᠎ᠦ᠋ ᠤᠯᠠᠭᠠᠨᠪᠠᠭᠠᠲᠤᠷ ᠪᠠᠢᠨ᠎ᠠ᠋ ᠂ ᠬᠥᠳᠡᠭᠡ ᠠᠪᠴᠠᠭᠠᠨ᠎ᠠ᠋ ᠂ ᠲᠡᠭᠦᠨ᠎ᠦ᠋ ᠤᠯᠠᠭᠠᠨᠪᠠᠭᠠᠲᠤᠷ ᠪᠠᠢᠨ᠎ᠠ᠋ ᠂ ᠬᠥᠳᠡᠭᠡ ᠠᠪᠴᠠᠭᠠᠨ᠎ᠠ᠋ ᠂

2.2.1.2.11 "–аар барахгүй (мөн); ... аар үл барам" = "not only ..., no, also"

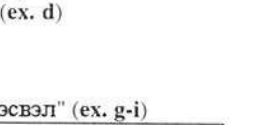
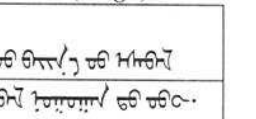
→ has an **additive** meaning (literal translation 'not ending by ..., also')
→ similar to **төдийгүй, мөн** (p. 302) the second statement complements the first one
→ always connects ***predicate parts*** (demanding an NDS)
→ compare with the very similar conjunction **"–аар үл барам"** (**x. e-f**), which can also connect ***non-predicate parts*** (**ex. e**)

a	He came to Mongolia and **not only** did he *learn* Mongolian well, he **also** *is writing* a Mongolian language textbook.	Тэр Монголд ирээд монгол хэл сайн *сурсаар барахгүй,* (мөн) монгол хэлний сурах бичиг *зохиож байна.*	ᠲᠡᠷ/ ᠮᠣᠩᠭᠣᠯ ᠳᠤ ᠢᠷᠡᠵᠦ᠎ᠦ᠋ᠨ᠋ ᠬᠡᠯᠡᠭᠰᠡᠨ᠎ᠡ᠋ ᠂ ᠮᠣᠩᠭᠣᠯ ᠬᠡᠯᠢᠨ᠎ᠦ᠋ ᠰᠤᠷᠠᠬ ᠪᠢᠴᠢᠭ ᠪᠢ ᠵᠣᠬᠢᠣᠵ ᠪᠠᠢᠨ᠎ᠠ᠋ ᠂ ᠬᠤᠪᠢ ᠬᠦᠮᠦᠨ ᠲᠡᠭᠦᠯᠴᠡᠵ ᠪᠠᠢᠨ᠎ᠠ᠋ ᠂

b	**Not only** did he *tell* me *a lie*, he *has* **also** *stolen* my things.	Тэр надад худлаа *хэлснээр* барахгүй, (мөн) миний юмыг *хулгайлчихжээ*.	
c	**Not only** *did* he *get to know* another woman, he **also** *married* her.	Тэр өөр хүүхэнтэй *танилцсанаар* барахгүй, (мөн) түүнтэй *суусан*.	
d	**Not only** will that foreigner *live* in the countryside, he'll **also** *stay* in a Mongolian yurt.	Тэр гадаадын хүн хөдөө *амьдрахаар* барахгүй, монгол гэрт *сууна*.	
e	You can export wool abroad and buy **not only** *technical machines*, **but even** *whole factories*.	Ноосыг гадаадад гаргаж *машин техникээр үл барам* бүхэл *үйлдвэр* ч худалдан авч болно.	
f	**Not only** do I always *call* her, I **also** *meet* her from time to time.	Би түүнтэй үргэлж утсаар *ярьдгаар үл барам* хааяа *уулздаг*.	

2.2.1.2.12 "буюу; юм уу" = "respectively; or"

→ had originally an **alternative** meaning, thus, the two connected elements don't exclude each other; they are one **and the same thing**, only expressed differently (**ex. a-c**)
→ today most Mongolians use this conjunction almost like "эсвэл" which has an **adversative** meaning (**ex. d-g**)
→ generally it could be said, that "буюу" is mainly used for ***non-predicate parts*** and "эсвэл" mainly for ***predicate parts***; moreover, "буюу" is **not used in interrogative sentences**
→ sometimes **both** parts of the sentence are declined, sometimes only one (in **ex. g,** "эсвэл" demands a declension of both parts)
→ "**юм уу**" is a colloquial form of "буюу" (**ex. h**)

a	The plane ticket from Ulaanbaatar to Beijing costs *80'000 tögrögs*, **respectively** *USD 150.*	Улаанбаатараас Бээжин орох онгоцны тасалбар 80.000 *төгрөг* буюу *150 ам. долларын* үнэтэй.	
b	Sand makes out an area of *5,3 %*, **respectively** *more than 7 million km²* of the dry land of our planet.	Манай гаригийн хуурай газрын *5,3 хувь* буюу *7 сая гаруй* ам дөрвөлжин километр талбайг элс эзэлдэг.	
c	*The year of the White Horse of the sexagenary cycle*, **resp.** *1990*, has become a very special year in regards to the destiny of the Mongolians.	*XVII жарны цагаан морин жил* буюу *1990 он* монголчуудын хувь заяанд нэн онцгой жил боллоо.	

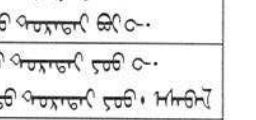
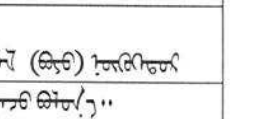
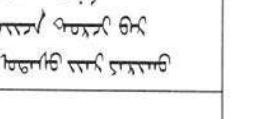
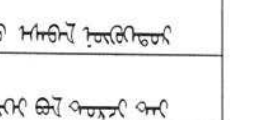
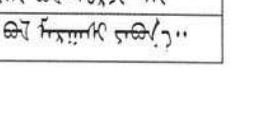
d	I'd like to talk with you *in English* **or** *German*.	Би тантай *англиар* буюу (эсвэл) *германаар* ярьмаар байна.	
e	I need a *two* **or** *three* room flat.	Надад *хоёр* буюу (эсвэл) *гурван* өрөө байр хэрэгтэй байна.	
f	You can give the answer to this *orally* **or** *in written*.	Та үүний хариуг *амаар* буюу (эсвэл) *бичгээр* өгч болно.	
g	He'll come *on Friday* **or** *on Saturday*.	Тэр *Баасан гариг(т)* буюу (эсвэл) *Бямба гариг(т)* ирнэ.	
h	Next year, I'd like to go and see *the Khovd* **or** *the Uvs Aimag*.	Би дараа жил *Ховдод* юм уу (эсвэл) *Увс аймагт* очиж үзмээр байна.	

☞ Attention! wrong:

a	Do you believe *him* **or** *me*?	Чи *түүнд* буюу *надад* итгэж байна уу?	→ Чи түүнд итгэж байна уу эсвэл надад итгэж байна уу?
b	When will you fly? *Tomorrow* **or** *the day after*?	Чи хэзээ нисэх вэ? *Маргааш* буюу *нөгөөдөр*?	→ Чи хэзээ нисэх вэ? Маргааш уу эсвэл нөгөөдөр үү?

2.2.1.2.13 "эсвэл; эсхүл" = "or; if not, then"

→ read the remarks to буюу on page 304! Literal translation: 'if (one) doesn't do'
→ often connects ***interrogative sentences (predicate parts)*** (**ex. a-c**)
→ in sentences with ***non-predicate parts***, "буюу" could also be used (**ex. d**)
→ "эсхүл" is the old form; not widely used
→ both parts of the sentence are declined(in **ex. g, i** evident)
→ "эсвэл" can also appear together with "буюу" or "юм уу" (**ex. e-f**)
→ other colloquial versions of "эсвэл" are "**үгүй бол, нэг бол, аль эсвэл**" (**ex. g-i**)

a	Do you believe him **or** not?	Чи түүнд итгэж байна уу эсвэл үгүй юу?	
b	What kind of apples do you like? *Red* **or** *green* (ones)?	Та ямар алимд дуртай вэ? Улаанд уу эсвэл ногоонд уу?	
c	Do you like *red* (apples) **or** (do you like) *green* apples?	Та улаан алимд дуртай юу, эсвэл ногоон алимд дуртай юу?	
d	I'll go *tomorrow* **or** *the day after*.	Би *маргааш* эсвэл (буюу) *нөгөөдөр* явна.	
e	You can *talk* to me by this phone number or *contact* me through my friend Dorj.	Та надтай энэ *утсаар ярих* буюу эсвэл миний найз Доржоор дамжуулан *харьцаж болно*.	
f	I'll go *tomorrow* **or else** *the day after*.	Би маргааш юм уу эсвэл нөгөөдөр явна.	
g	I'll marry Baatar. **If not, then** Dorj.	Би *Баатартай* үгүй бол *Доржтой* гэрлэнэ.	
h	I'll go today **or else** tomorrow.	Би *өнөөдөр* нэг бол *маргааш* явна.	

i	He'll come by train. **If not, then** by plane.	Тэр галт тэргээр **аль эсвэл** онгоцоор ирнэ.	ᠲᠡᠷᠡ ᠭᠠᠯᠲ ᠲᠡᠷᠭᠡᠡᠷ ᠪᠢ ᠢᠷᠡᠨ᠎᠎ ᠡᠰᠪᠡᠯ ᠤᠨᠭᠣᠴᠣᠭᠣᠭᠣᠷ ᠪᠢ ᠢᠷᠡᠨ ᠎

2.2.1.2.14 "эсвэл . . . эсвэл" = "either ... or"

→ has an **adversative** meaning (literal translation: twice 'if [one] doesn't do')
→ connects ***non-predicate parts*** (**ex. a-c**), sometimes ***predicate parts*** which are self-contained and therefore appear with a ***TTS*** (same tense) (**ex. d-e**)
→ with common subject, the subject stands before the "эсвэл" (**ex. a, e**)
→ **both** parts of the sentence are declined (in **ex. a-c** evident)

a	He is **either** *at his work* **or** *at home.*	Тэр **эсвэл** *ажил дээрээ,* **эсвэл** *гэртээ* бий.	ᠮᠣᠨᠤ ᠤᠨ ᠤᠨᠳ ᠪᠠ᠎᠎ ᠡᠰᠪᠡᠯ ᠮᠣᠨᠤ ᠠᠵᠢᠯ ᠤᠨᠳ ᠨ ᠪᠤᠯ ᠃
b	I intend to go to my homeland next year, **either** *in June* **or** *in September.*	Би дараа жил **эсвэл** *6-р сард,* **эсвэл** *9-р сард* ну-тагтаа буцах санаатай.	ᠪᠢ ᠳᠠᠷᠠᠭ ᠵᠢᠯ ᠡᠰᠪᠡᠯ ᠵᠢᠷᠠᠭ ᠤᠨ᠎᠎ ᠮᠣᠨᠤ ᠣᠨ ᠤᠨ ᠨ ᠪᠠ ᠨᠤᠭᠤᠳᠤ ᠤᠨᠳᠤ ᠪᠢ ᠤᠨᠳᠤᠨ᠎ᠤ ᠲᠤᠭ ᠮᠣᠨᠤ ᠣᠨ ᠤᠨ ᠨ ᠪᠠ ᠃
c	We two can talk **either** *in English* **or** *in German.*	Бид хоёр **эсвэл** *англиар,* **эсвэл** *германаар* ярьж болох юм.	ᠪᠢᠳᠡ ᠬᠤᠶᠠᠷ ᠲᠤᠭ ᠡᠩᠭᠯᠢᠶᠡᠷ ᠪᠠᠢᠨᠠ ᠤᠤ᠎᠎ ᠪᠢᠳᠡ ᠭᠠᠳᠠᠨ ᠮᠣᠨᠤ ᠮᠣᠷᠢᠨ ᠪᠢ ᠃ ᠮᠣᠨᠤ
d	**Either** you *marry* me **or** I *die.*	Эсвэл чи надтай *гэрлэнэ,* **эсвэл** би *үхнэ.*	ᠪᠢ ᠪᠠᠭᠠ᠎᠎ ᠮᠣᠨᠤ ᠵᠢ ᠨᠢᠭᠡ ᠤᠨ ᠠᠯᠠᠨ᠎᠎ ᠃ ᠮᠣᠨᠤ
e	**Either** he *was ill* **or** he *told a lie.*	Тэр **эсвэл** *өвджээ,* **эсвэл** худлаа *ярьжээ.*	ᠲᠠᠭ ᠲᠠᠭᠠᠭᠤᠯ᠎᠎ ᠡᠰᠪᠡᠯ ᠮᠣᠨᠤ ᠥᠪᠳᠡᠵᠡ ᠮᠣᠨᠤ ᠬᠤᠳᠠᠯᠠ

2.2.1.2.15 "байхад, харин" = "whereas"

→ has an **additive** meaning; creates a **comparison** between two actions or things; general statements, therefore the NDS"-даг" (p. 144) is mainly used
→ connects ***predicate parts*** (verb demands an **NDS**)

a	Some people like smoking, **whereas** others don't like it.	Зарим хүмүүс тамхи *татах дуртай* **байхад, харин** зарим нь *дургүй.*	ᠪᠤᠭᠤ᠎᠎ ᠥᠭᠡᠭᠡᠳ ᠴᠢ ᠬᠤᠮᠤᠴᠤᠳ ᠲᠠᠮᠠᠬᠢ ᠶᠢᠨ ᠠᠪᠤ ᠨ ᠲᠠᠭᠠᠭᠤᠯ ᠪᠠᠢᠬᠤᠯ ᠤᠨᠳᠤᠷ ᠬᠤᠮᠤᠴᠤᠳ ᠤᠭᠠᠭᠤᠭᠰᠠᠨ
b	The Germans *are good at football,* **whereas** the Mongolians *are good at wrestling.*	Германчууд *хөл бөмбөг тоглохдоо сайн* **байхад, харин** Монголчууд *бөх барилдахдаа сайн.*	ᠭᠠᠳᠠᠨ᠎᠎ ᠪᠤᠭᠤ ᠥᠭᠡᠭᠡᠳᠦᠦᠯᠡᠭᠴᠢᠳ ᠪᠠᠶᠢᠨ᠎᠎ ᠃ ᠪᠠᠶᠢᠨ᠎᠎ ᠮᠣᠨᠤ ᠥᠭᠡᠭᠡᠳ ᠴᠢ ᠃ ᠮᠣᠨᠤ ᠬᠤᠭᠤᠴᠤᠭᠠ ᠪᠤᠭᠤ᠎᠎ ᠪᠠᠢᠬᠤᠯ ᠥᠭᠡᠭᠡᠳ ᠴᠢ ᠪᠤᠭᠤ ᠪᠤᠭᠤ
c	In Mongolia, meat *is very cheap,* **whereas** in Europe *it's very expensive.*	Монголд мах *маш хямд* **байхад, харин** Европт *маш үнэтэй.*	᠃ ᠮᠣᠨᠤ ᠪᠤᠤᠭᠤᠯᠴᠢ ᠴᠢ ᠬᠢᠭᠡ ᠪᠠᠶᠢᠨ᠎᠎ ᠃ ᠬᠤᠭᠤᠴᠤᠭᠠ ᠴᠢ ᠬᠢᠭᠡ ᠬᠤᠭᠤᠴᠤᠭᠠ ᠪᠤᠭᠤ ᠴᠢ
d	In England, *it rains all the time,* **whereas** in Mongolia, *it only rains in summer.*	Англид *үргэлж бороо ордог* **байхад, харин** Монголд *зөвхөн зуны цагт бороо ордог.*	ᠲᠠᠭ ᠪ ᠵᠠᠭ ᠣᠨ ᠥᠭᠡᠭᠡᠳ ᠪᠤᠭᠤ᠎᠎ ᠥᠭᠡᠭᠡᠳ ᠴᠢ ᠃ ᠮᠣᠨᠤ ᠬᠤᠭᠤᠴᠤᠭᠠ ᠴᠢ ᠲᠠᠭᠠᠭᠤᠯ ᠵᠤᠭᠠᠭ ᠴᠢ ᠪᠠᠶᠢᠬᠤᠯ ᠥᠭᠡᠭᠡᠳ ᠪᠤᠭᠤ᠎᠎
e	The Chinese *eat rice* every day, **whereas** the Germans *eat* a lot of *bread.*	Хятад хүмүүс өдөр бүр *цагаан будаа иддэг* **байхад, харин** Герман хүмүүс *талх их иддэг.*	ᠬᠢᠲᠠᠳ ᠬᠤᠮᠤᠴᠤᠳ ᠥᠳᠥᠷ ᠪᠦᠷ ᠪᠠᠭᠠᠴᠤ᠎᠎ ᠥᠭᠡᠭᠡᠳ ᠴᠢ ᠃ ᠮᠣᠨᠤ ᠬᠤᠭᠤᠴᠤᠭᠠ ᠭᠠᠳᠠᠨ ᠪᠠᠶᠢᠬᠤᠯ ᠥᠭᠡᠭᠡᠳ ᠪᠤᠭᠤ ᠵᠤᠭᠠᠭ

2.2.1.2.16 "байтугай" = "let alone; not to mention"

→ connects ***predicate parts*** (**ex. a-b**) as well as ***non-predicate parts*** (**ex. c-d**)
→ literal translation: 'may it be' (see page 183)
→ only the second part of the sentence is declined (evident in **ex. c**)
→ the CbP "нь" has the function of a subject marker (see p. 372, 395)
→ **similar expressions** in colloquial language: "битгий хэл"/"бүү хэл"(**ex. e-f**)

a	Bat didn't meet the boss, **let alone** talked to him.	Бат даргатай *ярих (нь)* **байтугай** *уулзаагүй* байна.	ᠪᠠᠲᠤ ᠳᠠᠷᠭᠠᠲᠠᠶ ᠶᠠᠷᠢᠬ ᠨᠢ ᠪᠠᠢᠲᠤᠭᠠᠢ᠎᠎ ᠥᠭᠡᠭᠡᠳ ᠴᠢ ᠃ ᠮᠣᠨᠤ ᠤᠤᠯᠵᠠᠭᠠᠭᠦᠢ ᠨᠢ ᠪᠠᠶᠢᠨᠠ
b	Does the storm calm down? **No way** does it calm down, it even increases!	Шуурга намдаж байна уу? *Намдах нь* **байтугай** *ширүүсч байна.*	ᠰᠢᠤᠷᠭᠠ ᠨᠠᠮᠳᠠᠵ ᠪᠠᠶᠢᠨᠠ ᠤᠤ᠎᠎ ᠨᠠᠮᠳᠠᠬ ᠨᠢ ᠪᠠᠶᠢᠲᠤᠭᠠᠢ ᠰᠢᠷᠦᠷᠴᠦᠰᠴᠦ ᠪᠠᠶᠢᠨᠠ ᠃
c	Post is delivered by plane to the 'sum' centres, **not to mention** the 'aimag' centres.	Шууданг *аймгийн төв* **байтугай** *сумын төв* онгоцоор хүргэдэг.	ᠪᠤᠤᠳᠠᠨ᠎᠎ ᠠᠶᠢᠮᠠᠭ ᠤᠨ ᠲᠥᠪ ᠠᠪᠴ ᠬᠤᠭᠤᠴᠤᠭᠠ ᠪᠤᠭᠤ ᠰᠤᠮᠤ ᠨ ᠲᠥᠪ ᠪᠠ ᠠᠪᠴ ᠪᠤᠷᠭᠡᠳᠡᠭ
d	I drink no beer, **let alone** alcohol.	Би *архи* **байтугай** *пиво* уудаггүй.	ᠪᠢ ᠠᠷᠢᠭ᠎᠎ ᠪᠤ ᠬᠤᠭᠤᠴᠤᠭᠠ ᠪᠤᠷᠭᠡᠳᠡᠭᠦᠢ ᠴᠠᠢ ᠮᠣᠩᠭᠣᠯ
e	I can barely make life's ends meet, **let alone** give you money.	Би танд мөнгө *өгөх (нь)* **битгий хэл** өөрөө *яая гэж байна.*	ᠪᠢ ᠲᠠᠨᠳ ᠮᠥᠩᠭᠡ ᠥᠭᠥᠬ ᠨᠢ ᠪᠠᠷᠠᠭ ᠪᠠᠶᠢᠨ᠎᠎ ᠃ ᠪᠤ ᠤᠨᠳ ᠪᠢ ᠶᠠᠭᠠᠵ ᠪᠠᠶᠢᠨᠠ ᠪᠤᠭᠤ ᠨᠢ ᠪᠢᠴᠢᠭᠴᠢ
f	He even went to America **not to mention** Germany.	Тэр *Германд* **бүү хэл** *Америкт* очсон.	ᠲᠠᠭ ᠪᠤᠴᠠᠭᠰᠠᠨ᠎᠎ ᠡᠰᠪᠡᠯ ᠪᠢᠴᠢᠭᠴᠢ ᠪᠤ ᠪᠤᠭᠤ ᠪᠠᠢ ᠠᠮᠴᠠᠭᠠᠯ ᠪᠤ

2.2.1.2.17 "гэхдээ" = "but"

→ connects ***predicate parts***
→ very similar to **гэвч** (compare with page 302)

a	Dorj *plays* chess well, **but** he *doesn't take part* in competitions.	Дорж шатар сайн *тоглодог,* **гэхдээ** тэмцээнд *оролцдоггүй.*	ᠤᠯᠠᠭ ᠪᠤᠭᠤ ᠣᠨᠴᠠᠭᠤᠨ ᠪᠤ ᠮᠣᠰᠣᠭᠤᠨ᠎ ᠪᠤᠭᠤ᠎᠎ ᠣᠯᠤᠭᠰᠠᠨ ᠨ ᠠᠭᠠᠴ ᠣᠯᠤᠭᠰᠠᠨᠤᠢ ᠃
b	He *has offended* me many times, **but** I *don't think* badly about him.	Тэр намайг олон удаа *гомдоосон,* **гэхдээ** би муу юм *боддоггүй.*	ᠪᠤᠭᠤ᠎᠎ ᠤᠯᠠᠭ ᠪᠤᠭᠤ ᠪᠤ ᠬᠢᠭᠡ ᠪᠠᠶᠢᠵᠤ᠎ᠨ ᠪᠣᠳᠣᠭᠰᠠᠨ᠎ ᠣᠯᠤᠭᠰᠠᠨ ᠨᠠᠳᠠᠨ ᠠᠪᠴ ᠠᠭᠠᠴᠤᠨ᠎ᠤ ᠬᠤᠷᠤᠭᠤᠮᠴᠢᠯᠠᠯ ᠃

2.2.2 Subordinating Conjunctions

The subordinating conjunctions (Latin 'subordinare' = 'to subordinate') **connect a main clause with a subordinate clause.** The subordinate clause takes the **function of a part of the sentence** (e.g. subject clause, predicate clause, object clause, attribute clause, adverbial clause). Readers need to **pay special attention to the position** of the conjunction in the sentence as it is very different from English (see literal translation in the examples below).
Examples in English:
a) I knew ***that*** *he couldn't come.* (*Main clause* and *object clause)*
literal: *He come can not* ***that*** */* I knew.
b) **Because** *he was ill,* the meeting didn't take place. (*Main clause* and *adverbial clause)*
literal: *He sickness with* **because** */* meeting became not.
c) I will be here, ***until*** *I have finished my work.* (*Main clause* and *adverbial clause)*
literal: I *work of mine finish* ***until*** */* here be will.
In **Part IV** (page 359ff), we will talk in more detail about main and subordinate clauses, their functions, positions and peculiarities.

2.2.2.1 OVERVIEW OF SUBORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS

Please read the explanation on page 297.
With this list, our main concern was to look at those words or analytical constructions that **serve as conjunctions today**. We'll not talk again about the **sVDS's** in general (page 161ff), but only consider those **sVDS's and postpositions that appear in an analytical construction**.

	Cyrillic	Classical	English
1	... гэ–	.... ᠭᠡ–	that
2	... –г гэж	....ᠭᠠ᠂ ᠭᠡᠵᠦ	so that
3	... эсэх	.... ᠡᠰᠡᠬᠦ	whether
4	... уу, үгүй юү гэдэг	.... ᠤᠤ᠂ ᠦᠭᠡᠢ ᠶᠤᠮᠤ ᠭᠡᠵᠦ ᠪᠠᠢᠨᠠ	whether ... or not
5	... юм шиг л	.... ᠶᠤᠮ᠎ᠤ ᠮᠡᠳ ᠯ᠂	as if ...
6	... учир/...учраас	.... ᠦᠵᠡᠭᠰᠡᠨ ᠂ ....ᠦᠵᠡᠭᠰᠡᠨ ᠬᠠᠮᠤᠤ	because ... Since ...
7	... тул	....ᠲᠤᠭᠠᠢ	because ...
8	... –аас болж	.... ᠬᠠᠮᠤᠤ ᠪᠣᠯᠵᠤ	because ... due to ...
9	... –хгүй + –(г)ээр	.... ᠬᠦ ᠦᠭᠡᠢ ᠪᠠᠷ	without ...– ing ...
10	... –х гэж	.... ᠬᠦ ᠭᠡᠵᠦ	(in order) to ...
11	... –х + –ын тулд	.... ᠬᠦ ᠲᠤᠭᠠᠢ ᠳᠤᠭᠤᠷ᠎ᠠ	(in order) to ...
12	... –х + –ын өмнө	....ᠬᠦ ᠲᠤᠭᠠᠢ ᠥᠮᠨᠡ᠌ᠨ	before ...
13	... –сан + –ы дараа	.... ᠬᠣᠢᠢ᠎ ᠪᠠᠢᠴᠠᠭᠠᠨ᠎ᠠ	after ...
14	... –сан + –ы дагуу	.... ᠬᠣᠢᠢ᠎ ᠪᠠᠢᠴᠠᠭᠠᠨ	the way ... according to ...
15	... –сан + –аас хойш	.... ᠬᠣᠢᠢ᠎ ᠡᠴᠡ ᠬᠣᠶᠢᠰᠠᠭᠠᠨ	since ... after ...
16	... –х хүртэл	.... ᠬᠦ ᠪᠦᠷᠲᠡᠯ᠌ᠨ	until ...
17	... байх үед ... –х + д ---> –хад	.... ᠪᠠᠢᠬᠤ ᠦᠶᠡᠢᠨ ᠳᠤ .... ᠬᠦ ᠳᠤ	(at the time) when ...
18	... –х бүрд ... –х болгонд	.... ᠬᠦ ᠪᠦᠷᠢ ᠳᠤ .... ᠬᠦ ᠪᠣᠯᠭᠠᠨ᠎ᠠ ᠳᠤ	each time ... every time ...
19	... –х + –тай зэрэг	.... ᠬᠦ ᠬᠣᠢ ᠲᠠᠭᠴᠢᠨ	the moment ... as soon as ...
20	... –(ж бай)х хооронд	.... (ᠵᠦ ᠪᠠᠢᠬᠤ) ᠬᠦ ᠬᠣᠭᠣᠣᠨᠳᠣ	while ...; before ...
21	... –х завсар ... –х зуур	.... ᠬᠦ ᠵᠠᠪᠰᠠᠷ .... ᠬᠦ ᠵᠠᠭᠠᠨ ᠨ	in between ... while ...
22	(хэрэв)... –бал	(ᠬᠡᠷᠪᠡ)···· ᠪᠠᠯ	if ...
23	(хэрэв)... –х тохиолдолд	(ᠬᠡᠷᠪᠡ) .... ᠬᠦ ᠲᠣᠬᠢᠣᠯᠳᠣᠯ᠌ ᠳᠤ	provided that ... in case that ...
24	(хэрэв) ... нөхцөлд	(ᠬᠡᠷᠪᠡ) .... ᠨᠥᠬᠴᠥᠯ᠌ ᠳᠤ	under the condition that ... provided that ...
25	... хэдийгээр ... боловч	ᠬᠡᠳᠦᠢᠭᠡᠷ .... ᠪᠣᠪᠴᠤ	although ...
26	... –сан + –аар	.... ᠬᠣᠢᠢ᠎ ᠲᠠᠭᠴᠢᠨ	the way ... / as ...

Page 311: "... болохоор"; Page 318: "... –х/–сан тухай/ талаар" *(added in 2nd edition)*

2.2.2.2 USAGE OF SUBORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS

2.2.2.2.1 "гэ–" = "that"

→ introduces **object clauses** or **attribute clauses** (**ex. d, i**)
→ the English conjunction 'that' is expressed with the conjunction verb "гэ–"
→ in **indirect speech**, usually "**гэж**" as a fixed form is used (**ex. a-b**)
→ in **direct speech,** the conjunction "гэж" is used besides the quotation marks, because the verb has the original meaning 'to say', and therefore, the conjunction isn't omitted even if the 'that' is dropped in English (**ex.c**)
→ if 'that' in English connects a subordinate clause with a main clause, the conjunction verb needs an **NDS** that can be declined; usually it is the NDS "–даг", thus forming "**гэдэг**" (**ex. d-i**)
→ notice how **second hand information** is passed on to others (**ex. j-l**)

a	Dorj told me, **that** he would come tomorrow from the countryside.	Дорж маргааш хөдөөнөөс ирнэ **гэж** надад хэлсэн.	ᠵᠤᠷᠢ ᠮᠠᠷᠭᠠᠰᠢ ᠬᠥᠳᠡᠥᠨᠡᠡᠰ ᠢᠷᠡᠨᠡ ᠭᠡᠵᠦ ᠨᠠᠳᠠᠳ ᠬᠡᠯᠰᠡᠨ᠃᠃ ᠳᠣᠰᠠᠯ ᠬᠣᠩᠢᠨᠤ ᠪᠤᠭᠤᠷᠤᠨ᠎ᠠ ᠢᠷᠡ ᠬᠡᠭᠡᠳ᠌ ᠭ
b	I thought, **that** he might come to my home.	Түүнийг манай гэрт ирэх байх **гэж** би бодсон.	ᠪᠢ ᠪᠣᠳᠤᠭᠰᠠᠨ᠎ᠠ᠃᠃ ᠳᠠᠨ᠎ᠤ ᠬᠡᠭᠦᠷ ᠤᠨ ᠳᠤ ᠬᠡᠷᠡᠪ ᠪᠤᠳᠤᠭᠰᠠᠨ ᠬᠣᠭ
c	Someone shouted, "Help!"	«Туслаарай» **гэж** хэн нэгэн хүн хашгирсан.	ᠪᠦᠷᠢᠨ᠎ᠡ ᠳᠤᠷᠢᠯᠠᠭᠰᠠᠨ᠎ᠠ᠃᠃ «ᠲᠤᠰᠯᠠᠭᠠᠷᠠᠢ» ᠭᠡᠵᠦ ᠬᠡᠨ ᠨᠡᠭᠡᠨ ᠬᠦᠨ
d	What's the reason **that** he can't come?	Тэр ирж чадахгүй **гэдгийн** учир юу вэ?	ᠶᠠᠭᠤᠨᠳᠤ ᠭᠡᠵᠦ ᠪᠤ ᠣ᠃᠃ ᠳᠠᠨ᠎ᠤ ᠬᠡᠷᠡᠭᠲᠡᠢ ᠵᠠᠪᠤᠭᠰᠠᠨ ᠶᠠᠭᠤᠨᠳᠤ ᠬᠣᠭ ᠪᠠ
e	I don't doubt **that** he can't come.	Тэр ирж чадахгүй **гэдэгт** би эргэлзэхгүй байна.	ᠪᠢ ᠡᠷᠭᠡᠯᠵᠡᠬᠦ ᠶᠠᠭᠤᠨᠳᠤ ᠪᠢᠳᠡᠨᠢ᠃᠃ ᠳᠠᠨ᠎ᠤ ᠬᠡᠷᠡᠭᠲᠡᠢ ᠵᠠᠪᠤᠭᠰᠠᠨ ᠶᠠᠭᠤᠨᠳᠤ ᠬᠣᠭ ᠤᠭ
f	I knew **that** he couldn't come.	Тэр ирж чадахгүй **гэдгийг** би мэдэж байсан.	ᠪᠢ ᠮᠡᠳᠡᠵᠦ ᠪᠠᠢᠰᠠᠨ᠎ᠠ᠃᠃ ᠳᠠᠨ᠎ᠤ ᠬᠡᠷᠡᠭᠲᠡᠢ ᠵᠠᠪᠤᠭᠰᠠᠨ ᠶᠠᠭᠤᠨᠳᠤ ᠬᠣᠭ ᠭ
g	Everything depends **on whether** he can come or not.	Тэр ирж чадах уу, үгүй юү **гэдгээс** бүх юм шалтгаална.	ᠪᠦᠬᠦ ᠵᠢᠷᠢᠭ ᠲᠡᠷᠡᠭᠡᠳᠦᠯ᠌ ᠬᠡᠭᠡᠳᠦᠯ᠌ᠵᠡᠨᠡჰ᠃᠃ ᠳᠠᠨ᠎ᠤ ᠬᠡᠷᠡᠭᠲᠡᠢ ᠵᠠᠪᠤᠭᠰᠠᠨ ᠤᠤ᠂ ᠦᠭᠡᠢ ᠶᠤᠮᠤ
h	You have to get to know people **not by** what they say, **but by** what they do.	Хүнийг юу ярьж байна **гэдгээр** биш, юу хийж байна **гэдгээр** таних хэрэгтэй.	ᠬᠦᠨ ᠢᠶᠠᠮᠠᠷ ᠪᠠᠢᠬᠤ᠃᠃ ᠪᠢᠰᠢ᠂ ᠶᠤᠮᠤ ᠬᠡᠯᠡᠵᠦ ᠪᠠᠢᠨ᠎ᠠ ᠭᠡᠵᠦ ᠲᠠᠨᠢᠬᠤ ᠬᠡᠷᠡᠭᠲᠡᠢ ᠪᠠᠶᠢᠨ᠎ᠠ ᠶᠤᠮᠤ ᠬᠢᠵᠡᠶ ᠪᠠᠢᠨ᠎ᠠ ᠭᠡᠵᠦ ᠲᠠᠨᠢᠬᠤ ᠬᠡᠷᠡᠭᠲᠡᠢ
i	I agree (**with** the opinion) **that** he can't do this.	Тэр үүнийг хийж чадахгүй **гэдэгтэй** би санал нэг байна.	ᠳᠠᠨ᠎ᠤ ᠪᠢ ᠡᠨᠡᠬᠦ ᠵᠢᠷᠤᠭ ᠪᠠᠢᠨ᠎ᠠ᠃᠃ ᠳᠠᠨ᠎ᠤ ᠺᠡᠯ ᠡ ᠭᠡᠵᠦ ᠬᠡᠯᠡᠯᠴᠡᠬᠦ ᠶᠠᠭᠤᠨᠳᠤ ᠬᠣᠭ
j	**I heard that** my friend has met his older brother.	Миний найз ахтайгаа уулзсан **гэнэ**.	ᠤᠭ᠃᠃ ᠮᠢᠨᠤ ᠨᠠᠶᠢᠮᠠ᠎ ᠠᠬᠠ ᠳᠠᠭᠤ ᠪᠠᠢᠵᠠᠯᠴᠠᠭᠰᠠᠨ
k	I was **told, that** Dorj will come tomorrow.	Дорж маргааш ирнэ **гэсэн**.	ᠵᠤᠷᠢ ᠮᠠᠷᠭᠠᠰᠢ ᠢᠷᠡᠨᠡ ᠭᠡᠵᠡ᠌ᠨ ᠪᠠᠢᠰᠠᠨჰ᠃᠃
l	I was **told that** Baatar does exercises every morning.	Баатар өдөр тутам биеийн тамир хийдэг **гэлээ**.	ᠪᠠᠭᠲᠠᠷ ᠪᠠᠢᠨ᠎ᠠჰ᠃᠃ ᠥᠳᠥᠷ ᠲᠤᠲᠠᠮ ᠪᠢᠶᠡᠢᠨ ᠲᠠᠮᠢᠷ ᠬᠢᠢᠳᠡᠭ ᠭᠠᠵᠠᠷ ᠶᠠᠪᠤᠨ᠎ᠠ

2.2.2.2.2 "-г гэж" = "so that"

→ introduces **final clauses**
→ compare with the meaning of the PTS "-г" (p. 181; *3rd person*) and "-х гэж" (p. 312)

a	The parents gave him the name 'Jargal' (happiness) **so that** *he* might be happy.	Эцэг эх нь *түүнийг* аз жаргалтай байг гэж түүнд "Жаргал" гэдэг нэр өгчээ.	ᠡᠴᠡᠭ ᠡᠵᠡᠨ ᠨᠢ ᠲᠡᠭᠦᠨᠢᠶᠢᠭ ᠠᠰᠠᠭᠠᠯᠲᠠᠢ ᠪᠠᠢᠭᠠᠯᠢ ᠭᠡᠵᠦ ᠲᠡᠭᠦᠨᠳ «ᠵᠠᠷᠭᠠᠯ» ᠭᠡᠵᠦ ᠨᠡᠷ ᠥᠭᠴᠡᠢᠵᠡ ᠂
b	I gave *him* this book, **so that** *he* could study this topic well at home.	Энэ асуудлыг гэртээ сайн судлаг гэж би *түүнд* энэ номыг өгсөн.	ᠡᠨᠡ ᠠᠰᠠᠭᠤᠳᠯᠠᠭ ᠭᠡᠷᠲᠡᠶᠡ ᠰᠠᠶᠢᠨ ᠰᠤᠳᠯᠠᠭ ᠭᠡᠵᠦ ᠪᠢ ᠲᠡᠭᠦᠨᠳ ᠡᠨᠡ ᠨᠣᠮᠢᠭ ᠥᠭᠰᠥᠨ ᠃
c	The invitations were handed out early, **so that** *the delegates* would come to their meeting in time.	*Төлөөлөгчид* хуралдаа цагтаа ирэг гэж урилгыг эрт тараасан.	*ᠲᠥᠯᠥᠥᠯᠥᠭᠴᠢᠳ* ᠬᠤᠷᠠᠯᠳᠠᠠ ᠴᠠᠭᠲᠠᠠ ᠢᠷᠡᠭ ᠭᠡᠵᠦ ᠤᠷᠢᠯᠭᠢᠭ ᠡᠷᠲ ᠲᠠᠷᠠᠠᠰᠠᠨ ᠃

2.2.2.2.3 "эсэх" = "whether"

→ introduces **subject clauses** (**ex. a**) or **object clauses** (**ex. b-c**)
→ always takes an *NDS* (**ex. a-c**) or another *nominal element* (**ex. d**)
→ could be declined, where necessary

a	It's not clear, **whether** he'll come tomorrow.	Тэр маргааш ирэх эсэх тодорхойгүй байна.	ᠡᠨᠡ ᠥᠳᠥᠷ ᠢᠷᠡᠬᠦ ᠡᠰᠡᠬᠦ ᠲᠤᠳᠤᠷᠬᠠᠢᠭᠤᠢ ᠪᠠᠢᠨᠠ ᠃
b	I don't know exactly, **whether** she has been in Mongolia last year.	Тэр өнгөрсөн жил Монголд байсан эсэхийг би сайн мэдэхгүй байна.	ᠡᠨᠡ ᠥᠩᠭᠡᠷᠰᠡᠨ ᠵᠢᠯ ᠮᠣᠩᠭᠣᠯᠳ ᠪᠠᠢᠰᠠᠨ ᠡᠰᠡᠬᠦ ᠶᠢᠨ ᠪᠢ ᠰᠠᠶᠢᠨ ᠮᠡᠳᠡᠬᠭᠦᠢ ᠪᠠᠢᠨᠠ ᠃
c	I'd like to know **whether** there is such a system in Mongolia.	Би Монголд ийм тогтолцоо байдаг эсэхийг мэдмээр байна.	ᠪᠢ ᠮᠣᠩᠭᠣᠯᠳ ᠢᠮᠡ ᠲᠣᠭᠲᠣᠯᠴᠣᠣ ᠪᠠᠢᠳᠠᠭ ᠡᠰᠡᠬᠦ ᠶᠢᠨ ᠢ ᠮᠡᠳᠡᠮᠡᠭᠡᠢᠯᠡᠬᠦ ᠪᠠᠢᠨᠠ ᠃
d	Our father will decide **whether** we must go tomorrow.	Бид нар маргааш явах *ёстой* эсэхийг аав маань шийднэ.	ᠪᠢᠳ ᠨᠠᠷ ᠮᠠᠷᠭᠠᠠᠱ ᠶᠠᠪᠠᠬ *ᠶᠡᠰᠲᠣᠢ* ᠡᠰᠡᠬᠦ ᠶᠢᠨ ᠢ ᠠᠪ ᠮᠠᠠᠨᠢ ᠱᠢᠶᠢᠳᠬᠡᠨᠡ ᠃

2.2.2.2.4 "... үү, үгүй юу гэдэг" = "whether ... or not"

→ introduces **subject clauses** (**ex. a**) or **object clauses** (**ex. b-c**)
→ always needs an *NDS*
→ could be declined where necessary

a	It's not clear, **whether** he came yesterday **or not.**	Тэр өчигдөр ирсэн үү, үгүй юу гэдэг тодорхойгүй байна.	ᠲᠡᠭᠦᠨ ᠥᠴᠢᠭᠳᠥᠷ ᠢᠷᠡᠭᠰᠡᠨ ᠦᠦ ᠂ ᠦᠭᠦᠢ ᠶᠤ ᠭᠡᠵᠦ ᠤᠷᠢᠯᠭᠠ ᠲᠤᠳᠤᠷᠬᠠᠢᠭᠤᠢ ᠪᠠᠢᠨᠠ ᠃
b	Please ask him, **whether** he can do this tomorrow **or not**.	Тэр маргааш үүнийг хийж чадах үү, үгүй юу гэдгийг түүнээс асуугаарай.	ᠠᠰᠠᠭᠤᠭᠠᠷᠠᠢ ᠂ ᠲᠡᠭᠦᠨ ᠲᠤᠭᠠᠳᠤ ᠡᠨᠡ ᠠᠵᠢᠯ ᠢ ᠬᠢᠵᠡ ᠴᠠᠳᠠᠬ ᠤᠤ ᠂ ᠦᠭᠦᠢ ᠶᠤ ᠭᠡᠵᠦ ᠤᠷᠢᠯᠭᠠ ᠬᠡᠯ ᠢ ᠡᠴᠡ ᠠᠰᠠᠭᠤᠭᠠᠷᠠᠢ ᠃
c	I don't know, **whether** there are such animals in Mongolia **or not**.	Ийм амьтан Монголд байдаг үү, үгүй юу гэдгийг би мэдэхгүй.	ᠲᠡᠭᠦᠨ ᠲᠤᠭᠠᠳᠤ ᠡᠨᠡ ᠮᠣᠩᠭᠣᠯᠳ ᠪᠠᠢᠳᠠᠭ ᠤᠤ ᠂ ᠦᠭᠦᠢ ᠶᠤ ᠭᠡᠵᠦ ᠪᠢ ᠮᠡᠳᠡᠬᠭᠦᠢ ᠪᠠᠢᠨᠠ ᠃

2.2.2.2.5 "юм шиг л" = "as if"

→ introduces **modal clauses**
→ always takes an *NDS* (**ex. a-b**)

a	You're answering **as if** you don't know this rule.	Та энэ дүрмийг мэддэггүй юм шиг л хариулж байна.	ᠴᠠ ᠡᠨᠡ ᠳᠦᠷᠮᠡᠶᠢᠨ ᠮᠡᠳᠳᠡᠭᠳᠦᠭᠦᠢ ᠶᠤᠮ ᠱᠢᠭ ᠯ ᠬᠠᠷᠢᠤᠯᠵ ᠪᠠᠢᠨᠠ ᠃
b	He was so nervous **as if** he had never met a woman before.	Тэр урьд нь эмэгтэй хүнтэй уулзаж байгаагүй юм шиг л сандарч байв.	ᠡᠮᠡᠭᠲᠡᠶᠴᠦᠭᠡᠳ ᠥᠲᠥᠭᠦᠨ ᠃ ᠡᠮᠡᠭᠲᠡᠶᠴᠦᠭᠡᠳ ᠥᠭᠳᠥᠭ ᠦᠭᠡᠢ ᠶᠤᠮ ᠱᠢᠭ ᠯ ᠰᠠᠨᠳᠠᠷᠴ ᠪᠠᠢᠭᠠᠭᠰᠠᠨ ᠃
c	Don't behave **as if** you were innocent.	Чиний буруу биш юм шиг л битгий тэг.	ᠥᠭᠥᠷᠢᠨ ᠪᠤᠷᠤᠤ ᠪᠢᠰᠢ ᠶᠤᠮ ᠱᠢᠭ ᠯ ᠪᠢᠲᠭᠢᠢ ᠲᠡᠭ ᠃

2.2.2.2.6 "учир ; учраас" = "because; since"

→ introduces **causal clauses** (note that in Mongolian, the sentence structure can't be changed as in English. With "учир" or "учраас" the reason is said first, then the statement [main clause] follows. If one wants to write the main clause first, then "Учир нь" is needed.)
→ "учир" and "учраас" can be used interchangeably; "учраас" is a little stronger in its meaning
→ always takes an *NDS* (**ex. a, c-g**)
→ compare with the conjunctions "учир нь", "тийм учраас" and "яагаад гэвэл", which are used, when the main clause comes first.

a	**Because** I haven't read this book, I cant' tell you anything about it.	Би энэ номыг уншаагүй учир түүний тухай танд юу ч хэлж чадахгүй.	ᠲᠡᠭᠦᠨ ᠲᠤᠭᠠᠳᠤ ᠃ ᠥᠭᠥᠷ ᠥ ᠥᠭᠥᠭᠰᠡᠨ ᠤᠴᠢᠷ ᠪᠢ ᠲᠡᠭᠦᠨᠢᠶ ᠲᠤᠬᠠᠢ ᠲᠠᠨᠳ ᠶᠤ ᠴ ᠬᠡᠯᠵ ᠴᠠᠳᠠᠬᠭᠦᠢ ᠪᠠᠢᠨᠠ ᠃
b	**Because** I don't have school today, I went to the library and read a book.	Би өнөөдөр хичээлгүй учир номын сан очиж ном уншив.	ᠲᠤ ᠰᠤᠷᠭᠤᠯᠢ ᠪᠠᠢᠬᠤ ᠦᠭᠡᠢ ᠤᠴᠢᠷ ᠲᠤᠭᠠᠳᠤ ᠂ ᠪᠢ ᠥᠨᠥᠳᠥᠷ ᠴᠢᠭᠰᠢᠨ ᠤᠷ ᠲᠤᠭᠠᠳᠤ ᠨᠣᠮ ᠤᠩᠰᠢᠪ ᠃
c	**Since** the tickets were sold out, I didn't see the film.	Билет дууссан учраас би кино үзсэнгүй.	ᠪᠢᠯᠢᠳ ᠳᠤᠭᠤᠰᠴᠠᠭᠰᠠᠨ ᠤᠴᠢᠷ ᠂ ᠪᠢ ᠺᠢᠨᠣ ᠦᠵᠡᠭᠰᠡᠨᠭᠦᠢ ᠃
d	We couldn't go to the celebration **because** our babysitter didn't come.	Бидний хүүхдүүдийг хардаг эмэгтэй ирээгүй учраас бид нар баярт явж чадсангүй.	ᠪᠢᠳᠡᠨ ᠤᠭᠯᠥᠭᠡ ᠪᠠᠶᠠᠷᠲ ᠠᠪᠴ ᠴᠠᠳᠠᠭᠰᠠᠨᠭᠦᠢ ᠃ ᠬᠦᠨ ᠤᠴᠢᠷ ᠨᠡᠭᠡᠨ ᠲᠤᠰᠠ ᠪᠠᠢᠭᠠᠭᠴ ᠤᠷᠢᠵ ᠤᠭᠰᠠᠨ ᠤᠴᠢᠷ ᠪᠢᠳᠡᠨᠳ ᠥᠭᠥᠭᠴᠢᠨ ᠪᠠᠢᠬᠤ ᠦᠭᠡᠢ ᠪᠠᠢᠰᠠᠨ ᠃
e	**Because** the speaker got ill, the meeting didn't take place.	Илтгэгч өвдсөн учир хурал болсонгүй.	ᠥᠪᠳᠥᠭᠡᠰᠡᠨ ᠤᠴᠢᠷ ᠂ ᠬᠤᠷᠠᠯ ᠪᠣᠯᠵᠤ ᠭᠠᠷᠠᠭᠤᠢ ᠪᠠᠢᠰᠠᠨ ᠃
f	I don't want to drink tea now **because** I drank a lot in the morning.	Би өглөө их цай уусан учир одоо цай уумааргүй байна.	ᠥᠳᠥᠷ ᠲᠤᠭᠠᠳᠤ ᠴᠠᠢ ᠤᠭᠠᠭᠰᠠᠨ ᠤᠴᠢᠷ ᠪᠢ ᠥᠭᠯᠥᠥ ᠴᠠᠢ ᠤᠤᠮᠠᠭᠠᠷᠭᠦᠢ ᠪᠠᠢᠨᠠ ᠃
g	**Because** my father had a lot of work yesterday, he didn't meet me.	Өчигдөр аав их ажилтай байсан учир надтай уулзаагүй.	ᠡᠴᠡᠭᠳᠥᠷ ᠠᠪ ᠤᠯᠠᠨ ᠠᠵᠢᠯᠲᠠᠢ ᠪᠠᠢᠰᠠᠨ ᠤᠴᠢᠷ ᠂ ᠲᠤᠭᠠᠳᠤ ᠨᠡᠭᠡᠵᠦ ᠤᠴᠠᠯᠵᠠᠭᠰᠠᠨ ᠤᠭ ᠪᠢᠲᠡ ᠃

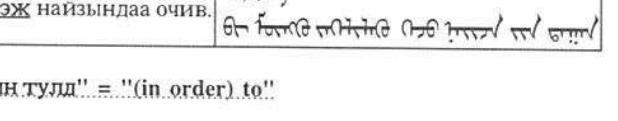
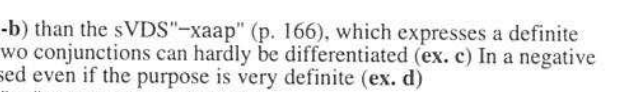
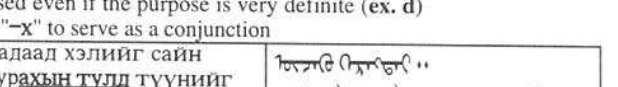
2.2.2.2.28 "болохоор" = "because; since" (added on later)

→ introduces **causal clauses**
→ always takes an *NDS;* can be used together with the P.S.

a	**Because** I don't know Japanese I talked in Mongolian.	Би япон хэл мэдэхгүй болохоор монголоор ярьсан.	ᠪᠢ ᠶᠠᠫᠤᠨ ᠬᠡᠯ ᠮᠡᠳᠡᠬᠭᠦᠢ ᠪᠣᠯᠤᠬᠤᠤᠷ ᠮᠣᠩᠭᠣᠯᠤᠤᠷ ᠶᠠᠷᠢᠰᠠᠨ ᠃

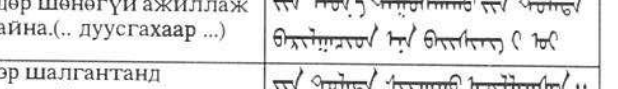
2.2.2.2.7 "тул" = "because"

→ introduces **causal clauses**
→ in function very similar to "учир"; the reason must be mentioned first
→ always takes an *NDS* (**ex. a-b**)

a	**Because** my father came from Germany, I don't have much time these days.	Миний эцэг Германаас ирсэн тул би ойрдоо их завгүй байна.	
b	We have to go fast, **because** the train comes at 5 o'clock.	Галт тэрэг 5 цагт ирэх тул хурдан явах хэрэгтэй.	
c	**Because** I'm married, there's no way that I could live in the dormitory.	Би гэр бүлтэй хүн тул оюутны байранд амьдрах аргагүй.	

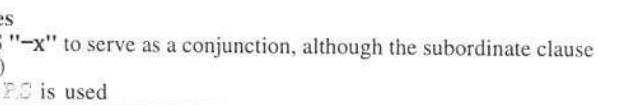
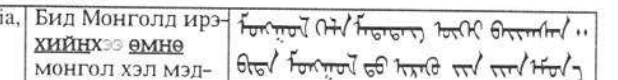
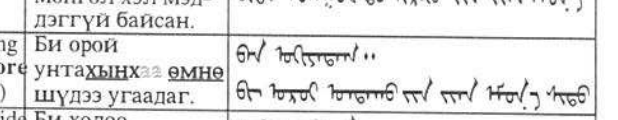
2.2.2.2.8 "-аас болж" = "due to"

→ introduces **causal clauses** with a **negative** shade
→ always takes an *NDS* (**ex. a-b**)
→ in English, it's common to change the **predicate part** into a noun (smoking, rain...)

a	**Due to** smoking, many people are getting cancer.	Тамхи татдагаас болж олон хүн өмөн үү өвчин тусч байна.	
b	We couldn't go **due to** the rain.	Бороо орсноос болж бид явж чадсангүй.	

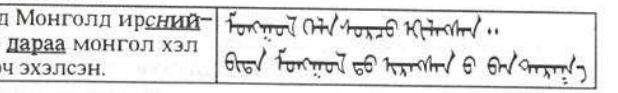
2.2.2.2.9 "-хгүй + -(г)эр" = "without ...-ing"

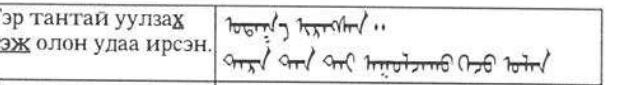
→ introduces **modal clauses**
→ for affirmative sentences, compare with тул (p. 312) and the sVDS "-хаар" (p. 166).

a	We're able to finish this work **without** spend**ing** a lot of money.	Бид их мөнгө зарцуулахгүйгээр энэ ажлыг дуусгаж чадна.	
b	You can't learn a foreign language **without** study**ing** it well every day.	Гадаад хэлийг өдөр бүр үзэхгүйгээр сайн сурч чадахгүй.	
c	It's impossible to establish such a big factory **without** enlist**ing** foreign aid.	Гадаадын тусламж авахгүйгээр ийм том үйлдвэр байгуулах боломжгүй.	

2.2.2.2.10 "-х гэж" = "(in order) to"

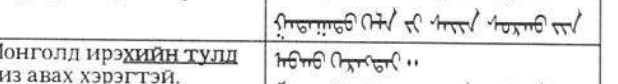
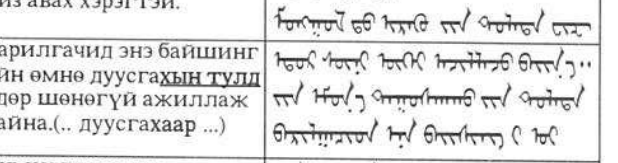
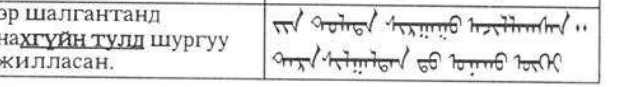
→ introduces **final clauses**
→ similar to the sVDS "-хаар" , which also expresses one **definite purpose**. The action is not continuing. Therefore, this conjunction is not used with verbs expressing a duration.
→ only used with **common subjects**
→ compare with the conjunction "-ын тулд" (p. 313), which is used for more **general statements** and can also be negated.
→ compare with -г гэж (p. 310)

a	He went to America **to** learn English.	Тэр англи хэл сурах гэж Америк явсан.	

b	He came many times **in order to** meet you.	Тэр тантай уулзах гэж олон удаа ирсэн.	
c	I went to my friend's home **to** borrow money.	Би мөнгө зээллэх гэж найзындаа очив.	

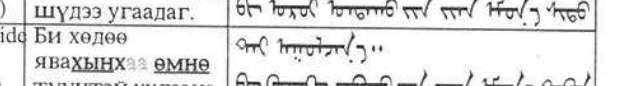
2.2.2.2.11 "-х + -ын тулд" = "(in order) to"

→ introduces **final clauses**
→ more general meaning (**ex. a-b**) than the sVDS"-хаар" (p. 166), which expresses a definite purpose. But sometimes the two conjunctions can hardly be differentiated (**ex. c**) In a negative sentence, "-хаар" can't be used even if the purpose is very definite (**ex. d**)
→ always takes the future NDS "-х" to serve as a conjunction

a	**In order to** learn a foreign language well, you have to practise it every day.	Гадаад хэлийг сайн сурахын тулд түүнийг өдөр тутам үзэх хэрэгтэй.	
b	**In order to** come to Mongolia, you have to get a visa.	Монголд ирэхийн тулд виз авах хэрэгтэй.	
c	The construction workers are working day and night **in order to** finish this building before the anniversary.	Барилгачид энэ байшинг ойн өмнө дуусгахын тулд өдөр шөнөгүй ажиллаж байна.(.. дуусгахаар ...)	
d	He worked hard **to keep from** failing the exam. ("**in order** not **to**...")	Тэр шалгантанд унахгүйн тулд шургуу ажилласан.	

2.2.2.2.12 "-х + -ын өмнө" = "before"

→ introduces **temporal clauses**
→ always takes the **future NDS "-х"** to serve as a conjunction, although the subordinate clause may be in the past (see **ex. a**)
→ with **common subject,** the PC is used

a	**Before** we came to Mongolia, we didn't know Mongolian. ("**Before** our coming to Mongolia...")	Бид Монголд ирэхийнхээ өмнө монгол хэл мэдэггүй байсан.	
b	I brush my teeth in the evening **before** I go to sleep. ("**Before** my sleeping in the evening")	Би орой унтахынхаа өмнө шүдээ угаадаг.	
c	**Before** I go to the country-side I'll meet her. ("**Before** my going to the countryside...")	Би хөдөө яваахынхаа өмнө түүнтэй уулзана.	

2.2.2.2.13 "-сан + -ы дараа" = "after"

→ introduces **temporal clauses**
→ always takes the past *NDS "-сан"* to serve as a conjunction
→ compare with "-санаас хойш"
→ with **common subject,** the PC is used

a	**After** we came to Mongolia, we began to study Mongolian.	Бид Монголд ирсний-хээ дараа монгол хэл сурч эхэлсэн.	

b	**After** I get up in the morning, I do exercises.	Би өглөө босс*он*ыхоо <u>дараа</u> биеийн тамир хийдэг.	өглөө босч дараа биеийн тамир хийдэг ··
c	I'll meet you right **after** I get up tomorrow.	Би маргааш босс*он*ыхоо <u>дараа</u> шууд тантай уулзана.	маргааш нь босч шууд тантай уулзана ··

2.2.2.2.14 "–сан + –ы дагуу" = "the way; in accordance with"

→ introduces **modal clauses**
→ always takes the ***past NDS "–сан"*** to serve as a conjunction
→ very similar to "–санаар" (page 318) and "–сан(ы) ёсоор"

a	Everything happened **the way** I had thought it would.	Бүх юм миний бодож байс*ны* <u>дагуу</u> болж өнгөрлөө.	бүгд юм бодсоны дагуу болж өнгөрлөө ··
b	(They) did this task **the way** the teacher had said.	Энэ дасгалыг багшийнхаа хэлс*ний* <u>дагуу</u> хийсэн.	дасгал хийсэн ··
c	The construction work finished in **accordance with** the time frame that had been given.	Барилгын ажил төлөвлөс*ний* <u>дагуу</u> хугацаандаа дууссан.	барилгын ажил төлөвлөсний дагуу цагтаа дууссан ··

2.2.2.2.15 "–сан + –аас хойш" = "since; after"

→ introduces **temporal clauses**
→ the action of the subordinate clause indicates the **starting point of the time span**
→ always takes the ***past NDS "–сан"*** to serve as a conjunction
→ compare with "–саны дараа"(p. 313)

a	**Since** I saw you the last time, many years have passed.	Би тантай хамгийн сүүлд уулз*сан*<u>аас хойш</u> олон жил өнгөрчээ.	олон жил ·· уулзсанаас хойш би танд сүүлд өнгөрчээ
b	I haven't met him **since** we came to Mongolia.	Бид Монголд ирс*нээс*ээ хойш түүнтэй уулзаагүй.	монголд ирснээсээ хойш түүнтэй уулзаагүй ·· бид хүрэлцэн ирсэн цагаас
c	One year **after** he got to know his wife, he married her.	Тэр эхнэртэйгээ танилц*сан*<u>аас хойш</u> нэг жилийн дараа гэр бүл болсон.	·· нэг жилийн дараа гэр бүл танилцсанаас хойш эхнэртэйгээ
d	They lived many years in this town **after** the war was over.	Тэд нар дайн дууссан<u>аас хойш</u> олон жил энэ хотод амьдарсан.	·· дайн дууссанаас хойш олон жил энэ хотод

2.2.2.2.16 "–х хүртэл" = "until"

→ introduces **temporal clauses**
→ always takes the ***future NDS "–х"*** to serve as a conjunction
→ very similar to the **limiting sVDS "–тал"** (p. 167)

a	I'll be here **until** I have finished my work.	Би ажлаа дуусах <u>хүртэл</u> энд байна.	энд ·· ажлаа дуусах хүртэл би энд
b	We sat at the train station **until** the sun rose in the morning.	Бид галт тэрэгний буудал дээр өглөө нар мандах <u>хүртэл</u> суув.	·· нар мандах хүртэл бид галт тэрэгний буудал дээр

c	**Until** you give me something, I won't go.	Чамайг надад юм өгөх <u>хүртэл</u> би явахгүй.	би ·· явахгүй чамайг надад юм өгөх хүртэл

2.2.2.2.17 "байх үед; –х(а)д" = "when; while"

→ introduces **temporal clauses**
→ "–х(а)д" is the short from of "байх үед". Only if the epoch ("ye") needs to be stressed, the conjunction "байх үед" is used (**ex. a-d**)
→ with a **common subject,** the P.S is used (**ex. d, i-j**) and the subject is in nominative and not in accusative case. In **ex.k** the P.S is used on the object ("son"), which is also possible.

a	**While** you were sleeping at home, it was raining outside.	Чамайг гэртээ унтаж <u>байх үед</u> гадаа бороо орж байсан.	би ·· унтаж байх үед чамайг гэртээ гадаа орж бороо байсан
b	**When** I was ill, the children didn't do any homework.	Намайг өвчтэй <u>байх үед</u> хүүхдүүд ер гэрийн даалгавар хийгээгүй.	·· намайг өвчтэй байх үед хүүхдүүд ер гэрийн даалгавар хийгээгүй
c	**When** Dorj was young, this young woman dated him often.	Доржийг залуу <u>байх үед</u> энэ хүүхэн байнга уулздаг байсан.	·· би намайг залуу байх үед энэ хүүхэн байнга уулздаг байсан
d	**When** I was young, I studied English very intensively.	Би залуу <u>байх үед</u>ээ англи хэлийг шамдан сурсан.	би ·· намайг залуу байх үедээ англи хэлийг шамдан сурсан
e	**When** I entered the classroom, the students had (already) come.	Намайг ангид орж ирэ<u>хэд</u> оюутнууд ирчихсэн байв.	оюутнууд ·· намайг анги руу орох үед оюутнууд ирчихсэн байсан
f	**When** he left his yurt, it was already dark. ("it was having become dark")	Түүнийг гэрээсээ гара<u>хад</u> гадаа харан-хуй болсон байлаа.	·· тэр гэрээсээ гарах үед гадаа харанхуй болсон байсан
g	**When** I got up in the morning, it was already 9 o'clock.	Намайг өглөө боса<u>хад</u> аль хэдийн 9 цаг болсон байв.	·· 9 цаг болсон байсан өглөө босох үедээ
h	Father came, **when** we were just about to eat.	Биднийг хоолоо идэх гэж байха<u>д</u> аав ирлээ.	·· аав ирлээ бид хоол идэх гэж байхад
i	I got to know my wife, **while** I was a student.	Би оюутан байх<u>да</u>а эх-нэртэйгээ танилцсан.	·· би оюутан байхдаа эхнэртэйгээ танилцсан
j	He will bring that other book, **when** he comes tomorrow.	Тэр маргааш ирэх<u>д</u>ээ нөгөө номыг авчирна.	·· маргааш ирэхдээ нөгөө номыг авчирна
k	**When** her son came, Dulmaa was preparing a meal.	Хүүгээ ирэ<u>хэд</u> Дулмаа хоол хийж байсан.	·· хүү нь ирэхэд дулмаа хоол хийж байсан

2.2.2.2.18 "–х бүрд; –х болгонд" = "each time"

→ introduces **temporal clauses**
→ "–х болгонд" is mainly used in the **colloquial** language
→ with a **common subject,** the P.S is used (**ex. b-d**)
→ because the action is habitual, the ***NDS "–даг"*** is used.

a	**Each time** he comes to my home, I treat him to a nice meal.	Түүнийг манайд ирэх <u>бүрд/болгонд</u> би амттай хоолоор дайл*даг*.	би ·· түүнийг манайд ирэх бүрд/болгонд амттай хоолоор дайлдаг.

b	**Each time** he meets me, he asks about you.	Тэр надтай уулзах бүр-дээ / болгондоо чамайг асуудаг.	(Юйгээ/ бүгээ/) хүнээ мэндэлдэг ·· өөд/ нэг/ өө мэндэлсэн бүхэн бүр/
c	**Each time** I return to my homeland, I meet with my childhood friends.	Би нутагтаа очих бүрдээ / болгондоо багынхаа найз нартай уулздаг.	Нэг өө мэндэлдэг ·· (Юйгээ/ бүгээ/) би/ нэг/ нэг/ нэгээ/ би нэгэн өвгөө/ нэгэн/ нэгэнтэй бүхэл бүрэн/
d	**Each time** he came to school, he took a taxi.	Тэр хичээлдээ очих бүрдээ / болгондоо таксигаар ирдэг байсан.	Өглөөдөг ·· (Юйгээ/ бүгээ/) өөрөө би хэзээч өөд/ гэдэгтэй бүрэн/ нэгэнтэй бүхэл бүрэн/

2.2.2.2.19 "–х + –тай зэрэг" = "as soon as; the moment ..."

→ introduces **temporal clauses**
→ the word **"зэрэг"** means 'at the same time' and indicates the **main idea** of this conjunction: two actions happen **at the same time** or **shortly after each other**
→ similar to the **sVDS "–магц"** (p. 164) which demands an immediate succession of actions
→ with a **common subject,** the P.S is used(**ex. d**)

a	**The moment** we sat down, the meeting started.	Биднийг суухтай зэрэг л хурал эхлэв.	Хүлөөдөг ·· бүгэ/ г нэгэнтэй өө суухад ээ/ хэлэлцэх
b	**As soon as** he leaves, all work will come to a standstill.	Түүнийг явахтай зэрэг бүх ажил унтарна.	Нэгэнэг/ ээ ·· өөд/ г гэнэтэй өө суухад бүгэ нэгэнэ
c	Please tell me **as soon as** your father comes.	Аавыгаа ирэхтэй зэрэг надад хэлээрэй.	Өөгөөдөг ·· нэг ээ би/ нэгэнэ өө суухад нэг/ ээ
d	**Whenever she happens to** see me she rattles away.	Тэр надтай уулзахтай-гаа зэрэг хамаг юмаа тоочдог.	суухад хэлэгээ/ гэлэгээ би/өөлэгдөг ·· өөд/ нэг/ өө нэгэнэгээ өө би/

2.2.2.2.20 "–(ж бай)х хооронд" = "while; before"

→ introduces **temporal clauses**
→ when used with the progressive tense "–ж бай–", it indicates a progressive action (**ex. a-d**)
→ with a **common subject**, the P.S is used (**ex. d**)
→ when used in the form "–х хооронд", the action is still in the **future** and hasn't or couldn't take place yet

a	**While** it **was** rain**ing**, I did my homework.	Бороо орж байх хооронд би гэрийнхээ даалгаврыг хийсэн.	Өө ээ/ гээ/ өдөөлөөлөөгүй ээ өгөөдөг ·· бүгэнэ/г нэгээгээ бүгээд бүгээдэгээ би
b	A thief stole two expensive coats from our flat **while** we **were** watch**ing** a video.	Биднийг видео үзэж байх хооронд хулгайч гэрээс 2 үнэтэй дээл авчихжээ.	нэгэнэг өдөлэг нөөдөгдөг ·· хэдэгээдэг хэлэлгээгээ өө нэг/ ээ бүгэ/ г бүгээд нэгээгээ бүгээд
c	**While** we **were** liv**ing** in Mongolia, many things changed in Germany.	Биднийг Монголд амьдарч байх хооронд Германд их юм өөрчлөгджээ.	нэгөөгээгөөгээгээг ·· хэдэгээдэг бүгээ/ ээ гээ гээдэг бүгэ/ г нэгөөдөг ээ нөөгээдэг бүгээд
d	**While** he **was** talk**ing**, he smoked.	Тэр ярьж байх хоорон-доо тамхи татсан.	өөгөө/ өдөөдөг ·· өөд/ гэнэгээ бүгээд хэдэгээдэг би/

e	**Before** I could give him the medicine, he died.	Намайг түүнд эм өгөх хооронд тэр нас барсан.	өөд/ нэгэн бүгээдэг ·· нэгээ/ өөлэ/ ээ н/ нэгэлэ хэдэгээдэг
f	**Before** I could ask her, she wept.	Намайг юм асуух хооронд тэр уйлчихсан.	өөд/ нэгэнэгээгээдэг ·· нэгээ/ гэнэгэ/г нэгээгээд хэдэгээдэг
g	**Before** our parents come, we have to tidy up the flat.	Ээж аав хоёрыг ирэх хооронд бид гэрээ янзлах хэрэгтэй.	бүгэ/ өө ээд/ гэнэгээгээд өдөгдөг ·· н/ ээ хэдэгээ/ г нэгэлэ хэдэгээдэг

2.2.2.2.21 "–х завсар; ..., –х зуур" = "besides; while"

→ introduces **temporal clauses**; literal translation 'in the.... gap/break of'
→ compare with the "–х хооронд" (page 316) and the **sVDS "–нгаа"** (p. 171)

a	**Besides** having a job, I'm studying Mongolian. (**"In the gap of** doing my main work...")	Би үндсэн ажлаа хийх завсар монгол хэл сурч байна.	нэгэнэгээ өө/ нэгэлэ бүгээ/г ·· би нэгээдэг н/ нэгээ ээд/ өдөг хэдэгээ
b	**While** he had been in the countryside, we moved into a new flat. ("**In the gap of** his going to the countryside and coming back ...")	Түүнийг хөдөө яваад ирэх завсар манайх шинэ бай-ранд орсон.	нэгээдэг нэг/г бүгээдэг ээ нэгээдэг ·· өөд/ г бүгээд гэнэгээ/ нэгээ хэдэгээ

2.2.2.2.22 "(Хэрэв) ... –бал/–вал" = "if"

→ introduces **conditional clauses**
→ compare with the **conditional sVDS "–вал"** (p. 161)
→ the word "хэрэв (хэрвээ)" **intensifies** the meaning, but doesn't change it

a	**If** you send your letter now, he'll receive it in 2 days.	(Хэрэв)та захиагаа одоо явуулбал тэр 2 өдрийн дараа түүнийг авна.	өөд/ өг нэгээ ө/ өдөгдэ/г өдөө/ г нэгэ/г ·· бүгэнэ өө/ гэдэг бүгээ/ нэгэ гэнэгээдэг
b	**If** you meet her, please ask her about this.	(Хэрэв) та түүнтэй уулзвал энэ тухай түүнээс асуугаарай.	өөдөө өдөө/ н/ нэгээдэгээ ·· бүгэнэ өө/ өдөө/ өө нэгэлэгээ н/
c	**If** you go to the department store tomorrow, please buy me 1 kg of butter.	(Хэрэв) чи маргааш их дэлгүүрт очвол надад 1 кило цөцгийн тос аваарай.	өдөгэ нэгээдэг ·· нэгээдэг нэг/ ээ — кило гэнэгээдэг гээ/ бүгэнэ өг нэгээдэг гэнэ өдөгдөг өө

2.2.2.2.23 "(Хэрэв) ... –х тохиолдолд" = "provided that; in case"

→ introduces **conditional clauses**
→ very similar to –бал (above), but stronger in its meaning
→ more used for **single situations** and not for general statements
→ the word "хэрэв (хэрвээ)" **intensifies** the meaning, but doesn't change it

a	**Provided that** you give this book back on Monday, I'll loan it to you.	(Хэрэв) та энэ номыг нэгдэх өдөр буцааж өгөх тохиолдолд би түүнийг танд түр өгч болох юм.	ө өө/ ээ өдөө нэгээгээ өөгөө гээ/ ·· өгэнэгээ нэгээ өдөгдэгээ ээ би өдөө/ бүгэнэ өө/ н/ нэг/ ө/ нэгэ ээгээ нэгээ
b	**In case** you can't come, please call me well ahead.	(Хэрэв) чи ирж чадахгүй тохиолдолд над руу цаг тухайд нь утсаар яриарай.	ээ нэ нэгээдэг бүгээ дэгэгээдэг ·· өдөгдэгээ ээ нэг/ нэгээдэг гээ/ өдөөг бүгэнэ өг нэгээд гэнэгээ нэгээ

2.2.2.2.24 "(Хэрэв)..., нөхцөлд" = "provided that; under the condition that"

→ introduces **conditional clauses**
→ often used in official language
→ the word "хэрэв (хэрвээ)" **intensifies** the meaning, but doesn't change it
→ always used with an *NDS*

a	**Provided that** one studies every day, one can probably learn a foreign language well.	Өдөр тутам үзсэн нөхцөлд гадаад хэлийг сайн сурч болох байх.	
b	**Under the condition that** you pay the money in advance, I will be able to rent my flat.	Та мөнгөө урьдчилан төлөх/ төлсөн нөхцөлд би байраа хөлслүүлж болох юм.	

2.2.2.2.25 "Хэдийгээр ... болович" = "although"

→ introduces **concessive clauses**
→ compare with the **concessive sVDS "–вч"** (p. 162)
→ the word "хэдийгээр" **intensifies** the concessive meaning, but doesn't change it

a	**Although** he had a severe cold, he went outside.	Хэдийгээр тэр хүнд ханиадтай байсан болович гадагш явсан.	
b	**Although** it was a very pressing problem, the discussion about it was postponed.	Хэдийгээр маш яаралтай асуудал байсан болович түүнийг авч үзэхийг хойшлуулжээ.	
c	**Although** she has never been to England, she knows English perfectly.	Хэдийгээр тэр Англид очиж байгаагүй болович англи хэлийг төгс мэддэг.	

2.2.2.2.26 "–сан + –аар" = "the way; as"

→ introduces **modal clauses**
→ very similar to "–саны дагуу" (p. 314) and "тэгснээр" (p. 322)

a	I will do it **the way** you said.	Би үүнийг таны хэлснээр хийнэ.	
b	Work is not always carried out **the way** you want it to be.	Ямар ч ажил тэр бүр хүссэнээр бүтдэггүй.	
c	You have to do everything in order, **as** mentioned in the instructions.	Бүх юмыг зааварт дурдсанаар дэс дараалан хийх хэрэгтэй.	

2.2.2.2.27 "–х/–сан тухай/ талаар" = "... about" (added on later)

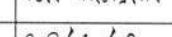
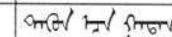
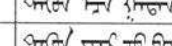
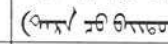
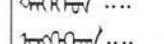
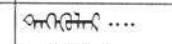
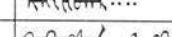
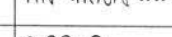
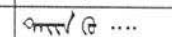
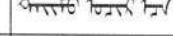
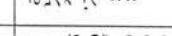
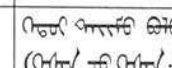
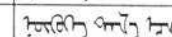
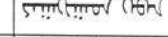
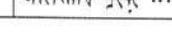
→ introduces **object clauses**
→ always takes the ***past or future NDS "–сан / –х"***
→ with common subjects the PC appears

a	Paul is thinking **about** coming to Mongolia.	Пол Монголд ирэх тухай бодож байна.	
b	Please talk **about** your trip to the countryside. ("**about** your having gone ...")	Та хөдөө явсан талаар ярианай.	

2.2.3 Proword-Conjunctions

All of the following conjunctions contain a **proword** (mostly a demonstrative proword). That's why we call them 'proword-conjunctions'. Such conjunctions **refer to something which was mentioned before** (either one or more sentences). Therefore, such conjunctions are usually **placed at the beginning** of a new sentence. The only conjunction in this group that doesn't contain a demonstrative proword, is "**учир нь**". But the "*нь*" also refers to something mentioned before ("the reason *for it being* ...")

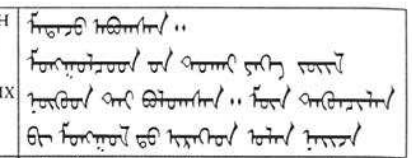
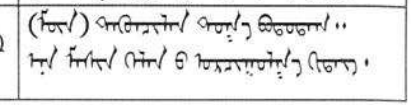
2.2.3.1 OVERVIEW OF PROWORD-CONJUNCTIONS

1	Мөн түүнчлэн ...		... . Moreover, ... and also ...
2	Түүнээс гадна...		... . Besides, ...
3	Түүгээр ч барахгүй ... (Тэр ч байтугай ...)		... . Furthermore, ... On top of **that,** ...
4	Тэгээд ... Ингээд ...		... . Then ... . After **that** ... . And **so** ...
5	Тэгэхлээр ... Ингэхлээр...		... . Consequently, ...
6	Тэгсэнээр ... Ингэснээр ...		... . By doing **this/that,** ... . As a result of **this/that,** ...
7	Эс тэгвэл ...		... .Otherwise ... . If not, ...
8	Тэгэхэд ...		... . "As ... doing that..."
9	Тийнхүү ...		... .Thus, ...
10	Тийм учраас ...		... . That's (the reason) why ... . For **this/that** reason, ...
11	Учир нь ...		... for ... ... because ...
12	Тийм болохоор...		... . Therefore, ...
13	Хэдий тийм болович ... (гэсэн ч гэсэн ...) (тэглээ ч гэсэн ...)		... . Nevertheless, ... Despite **this/that**, ...
14	Нөгөө талаас ...		... . On the **other** hand, ...
15	Яагаад гэвэл...		... . The reason for this is, ... for ...; ... because ...
16	Тэгсэн чинь ...		... . But, you know, ...

2.2.3.2 USAGE OF PROWORD-CONJUNCTIONS

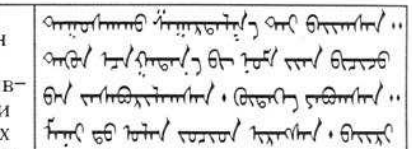
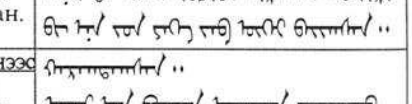
2.2.3.2.1 "(Мөн) түүнчлэн" = "Moreover; ... and also"

→ usually connects **two sentences** (**ex. a**)
→ when it connects two **predicate parts**, the verb takes an *NDS* and, instead of a period, there is a comma (**ex.b**)
→ compare with p. 301 (non-predicate parts)

a	I came to Mongolia and made a lot of friends. **Moreover,** I learned many things about Mongolians.	Би Монголд ирээд олон найз нөхөдтэй болсон. Мөн түүнчлэн монголчуудын тухай их зүйл мэдэж авсан.	
b	This machine does language translations **and also** solves math problems.	Энэ машин хэлний орчуулга хийдэг, (мөн) түүнчлэн тоо боддог.	

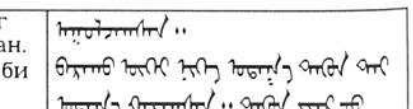
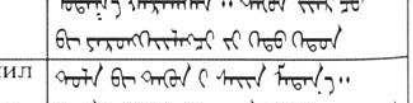
2.2.3.2.2 "Түүнээс гадна" = "Besides; ... and moreover"

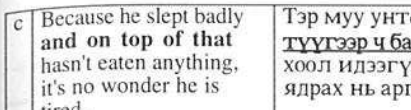
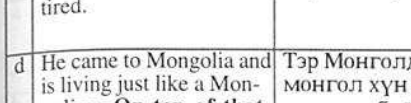
→ connects either two sentences (**ex. a**) or two **predicate parts** (**ex.b**; the verb takes an *NDS*)
→ literal translation: 'outside of that'

a	This summer I was very busy. Many guests came to my home, I renovated my apartment, and I went to the countryside. **Besides,** I was required to finish writing my book.	Би энэ зун их завгүй байсан. Манайд олон зочид ирсэн, байраа засварласан, хөдөө явсан. Түүнээс гадна би номоо бичиж дуусгах шаардлагатай байсан.	
b	Because he had slept badly, **and moreover,** he hadn't eaten proper food, he looked tired all day long.	Тэр муу унтсан, түүнээс гадна олигтой хоол идээгүй учраас бүтэн өдөржин ядруу харагдсан.	

2.2.3.2.3 "Түүгээр ч барахгүй" = "Furthermore"

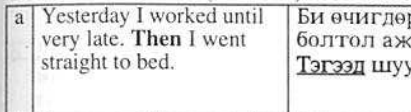
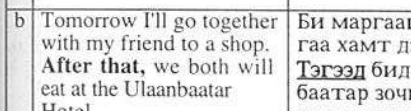
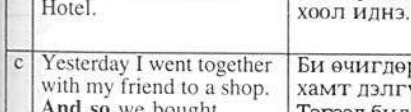
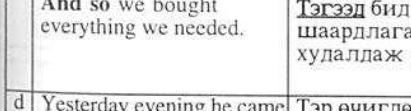
→ connects **two sentences** (**ex. a**) or two **predicate parts** (**ex. b-c**; the verb takes an *NDS*)
→ literal translation: 'by *that* it doesn't end'
→ note the similar conjunction "**тэр ч байтугай**", which is even stronger in its meaning(**ex. d**); compare with page 307

a	I saw the president a couple of times. **Furthermore,** I met him once.	Би ерөнхийлөгчийг хэд хэдэн удаа харсан. Түүгээр ч барахгүй би нэг удаа түүнтэй уулзсан.	
b	I know him well, because I worked together with him for many years, and **furthermore,** I live in the same building.	Би түүнтэй олон жил хамт ажилласан, түүгээр ч барахгүй бид нар нэг байранд амьдардаг тул би түүнийг сайн мэднэ.	

c	Because he slept badly **and on top of that** hasn't eaten anything, it's no wonder he is tired.	Тэр муу унтсан, түүгээр ч барахгүй огт хоол идээгүй учраас ядрах нь аргагүй.	
d	He came to Mongolia and is living just like a Mongolian. **On top of that,** he took a Mongolian as his wife.	Тэр Монголд ирээд яг монгол хүн шиг амьдарч байна. Тэр ч байтугай монгол эхнэр авсан.	

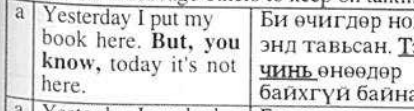
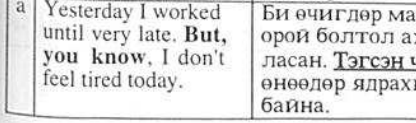
2.2.3.2.4 "Тэгээд; Ингээд" = "Then; After that"

→ always connects **two sentences**
→ has either a **temporal** meaning (**ex. a-b**) or expresses that a particular situation is made use of (**ex. c-d**)
→ literal translation: '(someone) does so and then' (compare with the sVDS "−аад": p. 159)

a	Yesterday I worked until very late. **Then** I went straight to bed.	Би өчигдөр маш орой болтол ажилласан. Тэгээд шууд унтсан.	
b	Tomorrow I'll go together with my friend to a shop. **After that,** we both will eat at the Ulaanbaatar Hotel.	Би маргааш найзтайгаа хамт дэлгүүр явна. Тэгээд бид хоёр Улаанбаатар зочид буудалд хоол иднэ.	
c	Yesterday I went together with my friend to a shop. **And so** we bought everything we needed.	Би өчигдөр найзтайгаа хамт дэлгүүрт очсон. Тэгээд бид хоёр бүх шаардлагатай зүйлээ худалдаж авсан.	
d	Yesterday evening he came to my house. **And so** we chatted about the good old days until the wee hours.	Тэр өчигдөр орой манай гэрт ирсэн. Тэгээд бид хоёр шөнө дөл болтол хууч хөөрсөн.	

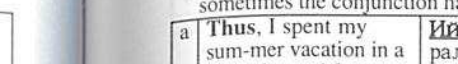
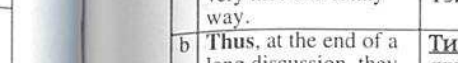
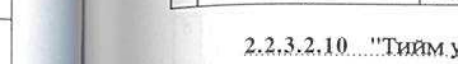
2.2.3.2.16 "Тэгсэн чинь" = "But, you know, .../ And then?" (added later on)

→ always connects **two sentences**
→ has a **temporal** meaning and also expresses that the 2nd action happened unexpectedly considering the first action.
→ used to encourage others to keep on talking (e.g. after interruption) "Тэгсэн чинь?"

a	Yesterday I put my book here. **But, you know,** today it's not here.	Би өчигдөр номоо энд тавьсан. Тэгсэн чинь өнөөдөр байхгүй байна.	
a	Yesterday I worked until very late. **But, you know,** I don't feel tired today.	Би өчигдөр маш орой болтол ажилласан. Тэгсэн чинь өнөөдөр ядрахгүй байна.	

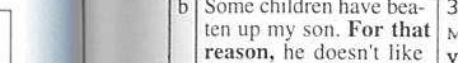
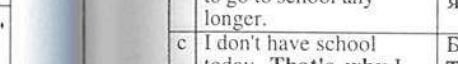
2.2.3.2.5 "Тэгэхлээр ; Ингэхлээр" = "Consequently"

→ connects **two sentences**
→ literal translation: 'by doing it so' (compare with the sVDS "–хлаар")

a	Our lesson is over. **Consequently,** you may go home.	Бидний хичээл дууслаа. Тэгэхлээр та харьж болно.	
b	There are no planes flying to Sainshand. **Consequently,** we'll go by train.	Сайншанд руу онгоц нисдэггүй. Ингэхлээр бид галт тэргээр явна.	
c	Our house is close to the school. **Consequently,** I walk there most of the time.	Манайх сургуульд ойрхон. Тэгэхлээр би голдуу явган явдаг.	

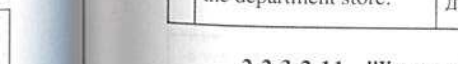
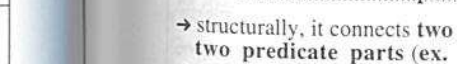
2.2.3.2.6 "Тэгснээр ; Ингэснээр" = "By doing this/that"

→ connects a **longer paragraph** with a sentence.
→ literal translation: 'by having done so'

a	**By doing that,** this problem will be solved once and for all.	Тэгснээр энэ асуудал бүрмөсөн шийдвэрлэгдэх болно.	
b	**As a result of this,** the teaching quality of that particular school improved considerably.	Ингэснээр тус сургуулийн сургалтын чанар эрс дээшилсэн.	

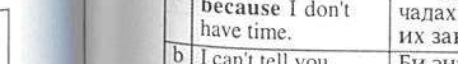
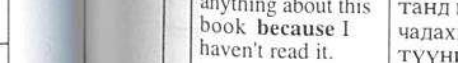
2.2.3.2.7 "Эс тэгвэл" = "Otherwise; If not"

→ connects **two sentences** (**ex. a**) or two **predicate parts** (**ex.b**)
→ literal translation: 'if (one) doesn't do this/that'
→ compare with "эсвэл"

a	Go now. **Otherwise** I'll call the police.	Чи одоо яв. Эс тэгвэл би цагдаа дуудна.	
b	We have to take a taxi. **If not,** we'll probably be late.	Бид таксигаар явах хэрэгтэй. Эс тэгвэл хожимдож магадгүй.	

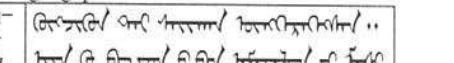
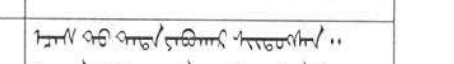
2.2.3.2.8 "Тэгэхэд" = "As ... doing that"

→ connects **two sentences**
→ the literal translation 'as ... doing that' is very clumsy in English. We would make one sentence instead, with a *clause expressing the "тэгэ–"*.
→ compare with "–хад" ('when'; 'as'; see p. 315)

a	**When** *he came to my home early and asked for help,* I agreed.	*Тэр манайд эрт ирээд туслахыг гуйсан.* Тэгэхэд нь би зөвшөөрсөн.	
b	**When** *I went very late to his home,* he was sleeping.	*Би тэднийд маш орой очсон.* Тэгэхэд тэр унтаж байсан.	

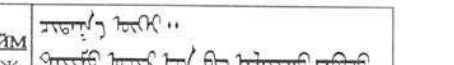
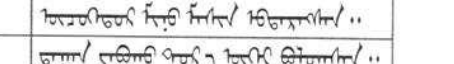
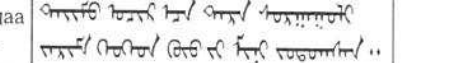
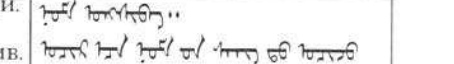
2.2.3.2.9 "Тийнхүү; Ийнхүү" = "Thus"

→ connects a **longer paragraph** (more than one sentence) with a final statement sentence; but sometimes the conjunction has just the function of filling a gap

a	**Thus,** I spent my sum-mer vacation in a very nice and funny way.	Ийнхүү би зуныхаа ам–ралтыг маш хөгжөөн–тэй сайхан өнгөрөөсөн.	
b	**Thus,** at the end of a long discussion, they decided to go.	Тийнхүү удаан ярилцсаны эцэст тэд явахаар шийдсэн.	

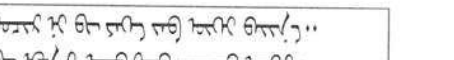
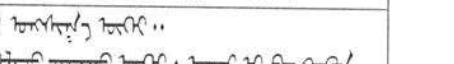
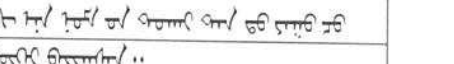
2.2.3.2.10 "Тийм учраас" = "That's (the reason) why"

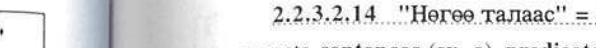
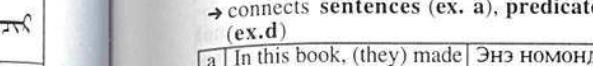
→ connects usually **two sentences** or two whole **paragraphs**
→ literal translation: 'from that reason'

a	Yesterday my car broke down. **That's why** I couldn't go to 'Nalaikh'.	Өчигдөр миний машин эвдэрсэн. Тийм учраас би Налайх явж чадаагүй.	
b	Some children have beaten up my son. **For that reason,** he doesn't like to go to school any longer.	Зарим хүүхэд хүүг минь зодсон. Тийм учраас тэр сургуульдаа явах дургүй болсон.	
c	I don't have school today. **That's why** I went to the library and read a book.	Би өнөөдөр хичээлгүй. Тийм учраас номын санд очиж ном уншив.	
d	In shop No.1, there was no bread. **For that reason,** Dulmaa went to the department store.	1–р дэлгүүрт талх байгаагүй. Тийм учраас Лулмаа их дэлгүүр луу явжээ.	

2.2.3.2.11 "Учир нь" = "for; because"

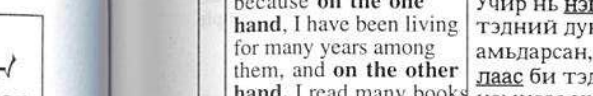
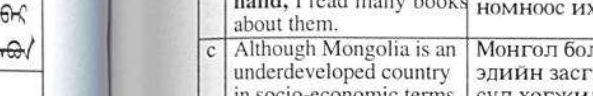
→ structurally, it connects **two sentences**, but it often appears after a comma, thus connecting **two predicate parts** (**ex. c-d**).
→ compare with "учир" where the reason is mentioned first, whereas with "учир нь", the reason comes second (in the clause), like with "Яагаад гэвэл"
→ the "**нь**" refers to the first (part of the) sentence (=statement) and could be translated with "(the reason) **for this being**".
→ because the sentence or predicate part before this conjunction is complete, verbs with a *TTS* are used (e.g. "*–на"* in **ex. d-e**)

a	I can't do this now **because** I don't have time.	Би үүнийг одоо хийж чадахгүй. Учир нь би их завгүй байна.	
b	I can't tell you anything about this book **because** I haven't read it.	Би энэ номын тухай танд юу ч хэлж чадахгүй. Учир нь би түүнийг уншаагүй.	
c	Today I went to the library and read a book, **for** we didn't have school.	Би өнөөдөр номын санд очиж ном уншсан, учир нь манайх хичээлгүй байсан.	

d	I don't want to drink tea now, **for** I drank a lot in the morning.	Би одоо цай уумааргүй байна, учир нь би өглөө цай их уусан.	
e	I hate you **because** you offended me many times.	Би чамайг үзэн ядаж байна. Учир нь чи намайг олон удаа гомдоосон.	

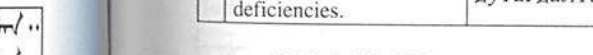
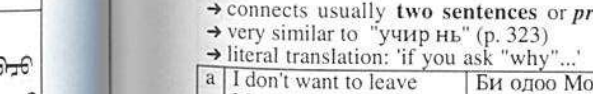
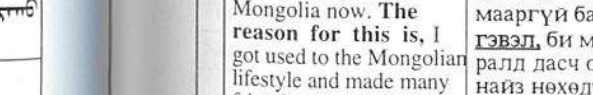
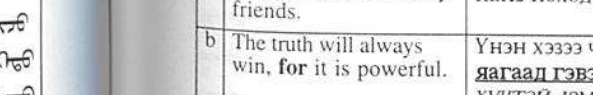
2.2.3.2.12 "Тийм болохоор" = "Therefore"

→ connects **two sentences**
→ literal translation: 'by becoming this/that' (compare with the meaning of instrumental case)
→ similar to "тийм учраас" (p. 323), but not so 'reason'-related

a	We have lessons on the first 5 days of the week. **Therefore** we could go out of the city on a Saturday and Sunday.	Бид долоо хоногийн эхний таван өдөр хичээл хийдэг. Тийм болохоор бид хагас, бүтэн сайн өдөр хотоос гадагш явж болох юм.	
b	Recently I received my salary. **Therefore,** I can treat you (to a meal) at a restaurant.	Би саяхан цалингаа авсан. Тийм болохоор чамайг ресторанд дааж болох юм.	

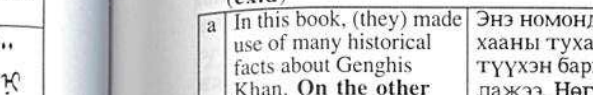
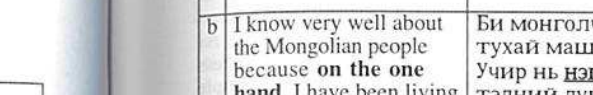
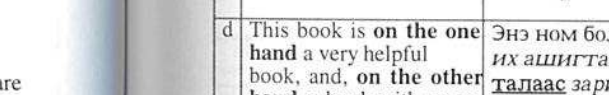
2.2.3.2.13 "Хэдий тийм боловч" = "Nevertheless ; Despite that"

→ always connects **two sentences**
→ "**гэсэн ч гэсэн** " (**ex. c**) and "(тэг)лээ ч гэсэн" (**ex. d**) have the same meaning, but are mainly used in colloquial language

a	He offended me many times. **Nevertheless,** I invited him.	Тэр намайг олон удаа гомдоосон. Хэдий тийм боловч би түүнийг урьсан.	
b	Some years ago it was very difficult to live in Mongolia. **Nevertheless,** we decided to come to Mongolia.	Хэдэн жилийн өмнө Монголд амьдрахад их хэцүү байсан. Хэдий тийм боловч бид Монголд ирэхээр шийдсэн.	
c	Coming to Mongolia, I am very busy. **Despite that,** I write a Mongolian language book in my free time	Би Монголд ирээд их ажилтай завгүй байна. Гэсэн ч гэсэн би чөлөөт цагаараа монгол хэлний ном бичиж байна.	
d	I got up very early in the morning. **Despite that,** I'm not tired now.	Би өглөө их эрт боссон. Тэглээ ч гэсэн одоо ядрахгүй байна.	

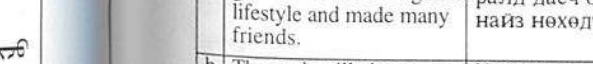
2.2.3.2.14 "Нөгөө талаас" = "On the other hand"

→ connects **sentences** (**ex. a**), **predicate parts** (**ex.b-c**), and also ***non-predicate parts*** (**ex.d**)

a	In this book, (they) made use of many historical facts about Genghis Khan. **On the other hand,** (they) succeeded in showing an artistic portrait of him.	Энэ номонд Чингис хааны тухай олон түүхэн баримт ашиглажээ. Нөгөө талаас түүний тухай уран сайхны дүрийг чадварлаг гаргасан байна.	
b	I know very well about the Mongolian people because **on the one hand**, I have been living for many years among them, and **on the other hand,** I read many books about them.	Би монголчуудын тухай маш сайн мэднэ. Учир нь нэг талаас би тэдний дунд олон жил амьдарсан, нөгөө талаас би тэдний тухай номноос их уншсан.	
c	Although Mongolia is an underdeveloped country in socio-economic terms, it is, **on the other hand**, a country full of untouched nature and rich in mineral resources.	Монгол бол нийгэм эдийн засгийн хувьд сул хөгжилтэй орон боловч, нөгөө талаас онгон байгалтай ашигт малтмалаар баян орон юм.	
d	This book is **on the one hand** a very helpful book, and, **on the other hand**, a book with some deficiencies.	Энэ ном бол *нэг талаас их ашигтай*, нөгөө талаас *зарим дутагдалтай* ном юм.	

2.2.3.2.15 "Яагаад гэвэл" = "The reason for this is; ..., for; because ..."

→ connects usually **two sentences** or ***predicate parts***
→ very similar to "учир нь" (p. 323)
→ literal translation: 'if you ask "why"...'

a	I don't want to leave Mongolia now. **The reason for this is,** I got used to the Mongolian lifestyle and made many friends.	Би одоо Монголоос явмааргүй байна. Яагаад гэвэл, би монгол амьдралд дасч олон сайн найз нөхөдтэй болсон.	
b	The truth will always win, **for** it is powerful.	Үнэн хэзээ ч *ялна*, яагаад гэвэл, тэр бол *хүчтэй* юм.	
c	I don't want to lose you, **because** I love you very much.	Би чамайг *алдахыг хүсэхгүй*. Яагаад гэвэл, би чамд маш *хайртай*.	

2.3 PARTICLES

Particles carry **no lexical meaning in themselves** but **express all kinds of emotional expressions**. The sentence structure is intact even without them. Almost without exception, they are written separately and not added directly, like a suffix. They are not declined.

In English, there are not as many particles as there are in Mongolian or German. Here are a few examples:

How on earth did this happen? **Just** make sure that he comes! What, **then**, is your name? It was **simply** impossible! **Why**, isn't that nice! When **did** you go there? I did **not** go there at all. **Only** I made a mistake. Peter **alone** got up early. **Even** Suzanne didn't do that.

Particles (modal particles in particular) present **a never-ending challenge to the learner**. As part of the abstract parts of speech they are not part of the language structure but serve to **express speech**. And speech is individual and can't be put in a narrow frame. That's why our example sentences might often be just one of many possible translations.

2.3.1 Overview of Particles

2.3.2.1 Interrogative Particles			
a	бэ, вэ	ᠪᠡ	**used with** question words (interrogative prowords)
b	уу[2], юу[2]	ᠤᠤ , ᠶᠤᠤ	**used without** question words (interrogative prowords)
2.3.2.2 Negative Particles			
a	биш	ᠪᠢᠰᠢ	**after:** nouns, adjectives, pronouns, and other parts of speech that serve as a noun (e.g. verbs with an NDS)
b	бус	ᠪᠤᠰᠤ	**after:** nouns and adjectives in **fixed expressions** or in **classical literature**
c	–гүй (үгүй) (алга)	ᠦᠭᠡᠢ (ᠠᠯᠭ᠎ᠠ)	**after:** nouns (like derivational suffix) or verbs with an **NDS** in the shortened form "гүй"; it can also be used in the full version "үгүй", therefore **no true particle**.
d	үл	ᠦᠯᠦ	**before:** verbs with an **NDS** in **attribute function**; sometimes with a **VDS**; in fixed expressions with a **TTS**
e	эс	ᠡᠰ᠎ᠡ	**before:** verbs with a **VDS**; sometimes with an **NDS**; in fixed expressions with a **TTS**
f	бүү	ᠪᠦᠦ	**before:** verbs with a **PTS** (stronger)
g	битгий	ᠪᠢᠳᠭᠢᠢ	**before:** verbs with a **PTS**
2.3.2.3 Modal Particles			
a	шүү (шуу[2])	ᠱᠦᠦ	communication, confirmation, reaffirmation
b	даа[4]	ᠳᠠ᠎ᠠ	reinforcement with different shades
c	аа[4] (яа)	ᠠ᠎ᠠ (ᠶᠠ᠎ᠠ)	reinforcement with different shades, threat
d	юм	ᠶᠤᠮ᠎ᠠ	affirmation, reinforcement
e	мөн	ᠮᠥᠨ᠎ᠡ	accreditation, authentication
f	билээ (лээ)	ᠪᠢᠯᠡᠡ (ᠯᠡᠡ)	memory, remembrance ("лээ" is the shortened form)
g	сан[4]	ᠰᠠᠨ᠎ᠠ	memory, longing, irreal desire (subjunctive)
h	даг[4]	ᠳᠠᠭ᠎ᠠ , ᠳᠤᠭ᠎ᠠ	assumption, supposition
i	биз	ᠪᠢᠽ᠎ᠡ (ᠪᠡ , ᠽᠦ)	inquiry, hope, doubt
j	бий/ вий	ᠪᠡ	aha- experience

k	шив	ᠱᠢᠪ᠎ᠡ	assumption, supposition
l	бол	ᠪᠤᠯ	interrogative meaning, conversation with oneself
m	бол	ᠪᠤᠯ	condition like sVDS"–вал[4]"
2.3.2.4 Focus Particles			
a	бол	ᠪᠤᠯ	neutral focussing, subject indicator/marker
b	л	ᠯᠠ᠎ᠠ	exclusive: 'alone, only, solely'
c	ч	ᠴᠤ	inclusive: 'also, too, even'

2.3.2 Semantic Classification

2.3.2.1 INTERROGATIVE PARTICLES

Interrogative particles are used to build **interrogative sentences**. There are two kinds in Mongolian:

- ***Who*** are you? ***Where*** do you go? ***How*** are you? ***How*** are you? →***question word***
- Does he go? Did you sleep well? Hasn't she come yet? →no ***question word***

In order to use the correct interrogative particle in Mongolian, these two kinds of question sentences must be differentiated.

2.3.2.1.1 Interrogative Particle "бэ/ вэ"

This particle in its two forms is used when the question sentence **contains a question word** (an interrogative proword). In Classical Mongolian, this particle ᠪᠡ is nothing else than one form of the defective auxiliary verb "bü–" with the meaning **"being, existing"**. In **Cyrillic, two forms** have developed according to pronunciation:

☞	after the final consonants "м/ н/ в" ---> бэ
	after all other final letters ---> вэ

In colloquial language, this particle can be omitted if it doesn't have the function of an auxiliary verb (see **ex. d**, where the verb "бай–" has already the meaning of 'to be' and **ex. e**, where the comitative case suffix "–тай" carries the meaning 'to be, to have').

This particle can also be used as part of a **modal expression** (**ex. g-h**).

Examples: *(question words in italics; "м/ н/ в" outlined)*

a	***Who*** are you?	Та *хэн* бэ ?	ᠲᠠ᠌ ᠬᠡᠨ᠌ ᠪᠡ ᠃
b	***What kind of*** box is this?	Энэ *ямар* сав бэ ?	ᠡᠨᠡ᠌ ᠶᠠᠮᠠᠷ᠌ ᠰᠠᠪ᠌ ᠪᠡ ᠃
c	***What kind of*** hotel, then, is this?	Энэ *ямар* зочид буудал юм бэ ?	ᠡᠨᠡ᠌ ᠶᠠᠮᠠᠷ᠌ ᠵᠤᠴᠢᠳ᠌ ᠪᠤᠤᠳᠠᠯ᠌ ᠶᠤᠮ᠌ ᠪᠡ ᠃
d	***How many*** people are there?	Тэнд *хэдэн* хүн байна (вэ) ?	ᠲᠡᠨᠳ᠌ ᠬᠡᠳᠡᠨ᠌ ᠬᠦᠨ᠌ ᠪᠠᠢᠨ᠎ᠠ (ᠪᠡ) ᠃
e	***How*** old are you?	Чи *хэдэн* настай (вэ) ?	ᠴᠢ᠌ ᠬᠡᠳᠡᠨ᠌ ᠨᠠᠰᠲᠠᠢ᠌ (ᠪᠡ) ᠃
f	***What*** will you do tomorrow?	Чи маргааш *яах* вэ ?	ᠴᠢ᠌ ᠮᠠᠷᠭᠠᠠᠱ᠌ ᠶᠠᠬ᠌ ᠪᠡ ᠃
g	***How many times*** shall I tell you, then!	Би чамд *хэд* хэлэх вэ дээ!	ᠪᠢ᠌ ᠴᠠᠮᠳ᠌ ᠬᠡᠳ᠌ ᠬᠡᠯᠡᠬ᠌ ᠪᠡ ᠳᠡᠭᠡ !
h	***Who*** knows!	*Хэн* мэдэх вэ дээ!	ᠬᠡᠨ᠌ ᠮᠡᠳᠡᠬ᠌ ᠪᠡ ᠳᠡᠭᠡ !
i	***What*** a good person he is!	Тэр *ямар* сайхан хүн бэ!	ᠲᠡᠷ᠌ ᠶᠠᠮᠠᠷ᠌ ᠰᠠᠶᠢᠬᠠᠨ᠌ ᠬᠦᠨ᠌ ᠪᠡ !

2.3.2.1.2 Interrogative Particle "уу²/юу²"

In the heading, we put 'particle' in singular, for although there are 4 forms altogether, it is in fact **one** particle, the sound "уу/ үү". But being a vowel, this particle sometimes needs an *inserted "ю"*. In Cyrillic, there are two versions each, to **comply with vowel harmony** ("уу/ юу" and "үү/ юү"). In Classical Script, there are just the two versions ᠤᠤ and ᠦᠦ.
Thus, the following rule:

☞	**after long vowels and diphthongs**	---> юу/ юү
	after everything else	---> уу/ үү

This particle can be used to **express a polite request** and has its equivalent in English (ex. **i-j**). Notice the usage of this particle in the conjunction "...уу, үгүй юү" (**ex. k-l**).

Examples: *(long vowels and diphthongs in italics)*

a	Do you have bread at home?	Танайд талх байна <u>уу</u>?	ᠲᠠᠨᠠᠶᠳ ᠲᠠᠯᠬ ᠪᠠᠢᠨ᠎ᠠ ᠤᠤ᠃
b	Is Bat a student?	Бат оюутан <u>уу</u>?	ᠪᠠᠲ ᠣᠶᠤᠲᠠᠨ ᠤᠤ᠃
c	Is Bat a doctor?	Бат эмч <u>үү</u>?	ᠪᠠᠲ ᠡᠮᠴ ᠦᠦ᠃
d	Did your older brother come?	Ах чинь ирсэн <u>үү</u>?	ᠠᠬ᠎ᠠ ᠴᠢᠨᠢ ᠢᠷᠡᠭᠰᠡᠨ ᠤᠤ᠃
e	Are there books here?	Энд ном байгаа <u>юу</u>?	ᠡᠨᠳ᠎ᠡ ᠨᠣᠮ᠎ᠤᠳ ᠪᠠᠢᠨ᠎ᠠ ᠤᠤ᠃
f	Is this a pencil?	Энэ харандаа <u>юу</u>?	ᠡᠨᠡ ᠬᠠᠷᠠᠨᠳᠠ᠎ᠠ ᠤᠤ᠃
g	Is gold very expensive in Mongolia?	Монголд алт их үнэтэй <u>юу</u>?	ᠮᠣᠩᠭᠣᠯᠳ ᠤᠤ ᠠᠯᠲ᠎ᠠ ᠬᠢᠨᠠ ᠬᠤᠪᠢᠭᠠᠷ ᠤᠤ᠃
h	Is this book the 'Shine Geree' (=New Testament)?	Энэ ном бол шинэ гэрээ <u>юу</u>?	ᠡᠨᠡ ᠨᠣᠮ᠎ᠤᠳ ᠪᠣᠯ ᠰᠢᠨᠡ ᠭᠡᠷᠡᠡ ᠤᠤ᠃
i	Would you please come in.	Та орно <u>уу</u>.	ᠲᠠ ᠣᠷᠤᠨ᠎ᠠ ᠤᠤ᠃᠃
j	Would you help me, please?	Та надад тусалж өгнө <u>үү</u>.	ᠲᠠ ᠨᠠᠳᠠᠳ ᠲᠤᠰᠠᠯᠵ ᠥᠭᠨᠥ ᠦᠦ᠃᠃
k	Did he come **or** not?	Тэр ирсэн <u>үү</u>, үгүй <u>юү</u>?	ᠲᠡᠷ ᠢᠷᠡᠭᠰᠡᠨ ᠤᠤ᠃ ᠦᠭᠡᠢ ᠤᠤ᠃
l	I don't know **whether** he came **or not**.	Тэр ирсэн <u>үү</u>, үгүй <u>юү</u> гэдгийг би мэдэхгүй.	ᠪᠢ ᠮᠡᠳᠡᠬᠭᠦ᠃᠃ ᠲᠡᠷ ᠢᠷᠡᠭᠰᠡᠨ᠎ᠤᠤ᠃ ᠦᠭᠡᠢ ᠤᠤ ᠭᠡᠵᠦ ᠪᠢ

2.3.2.2 NEGATIVE PARTICLES

A sentence is turned from an affirmative into a negative sentence with the negative particles. Most of these particles are true particles and don't have any lexical meaning in themselves. But some (e.g. "үгүй, биш") could also be used as a **one-word sentence** and have some lexical meaning (e.g. 'No' as a reply to a question). Nevertheless, we have included them to the particles.

The negative particles could be divided into the following two subgroups (see also page 326):
- **postpositional** negative particles: they always follow **after** the word they negate
- **prepositional** negative particles: they always stand **before** the word they negate

2.3.2.2.1 Negative Particle "биш"

It follows after ***nouns*** **(ex. a-c)**, ***adjectives*** **(ex. d-g)**, ***other parts of speech that serve as a noun*** **(ex. h-i)** or ***verb with an NDS*** **(ex. j-k)**. Therefore it can be declined **(ex. l-m)**. As an answer to a question, it can be used by itself **(ex. n)**, and, by stressing the **final vowel** (only evident in Classical Script), its meaning is intensified **(ex. o)**. The combination "биш" + "үү" = "бишүү" has an intensifying **(ex. p)** and sometimes even warning **(ex. q)** meaning. Notice the special usage together with the word "ямар" **(ex. r-t)**.

a	This is **not** *a table*.	Энэ – *ширээ* <u>биш</u>.	ᠡᠨᠡ – ᠱᠢᠷᠡᠡ ᠪᠢᠰᠢ᠃᠃
b	I'm **not** *a teache*r, I am a student.	Би *багш* <u>биш</u>, оюутан байна.	ᠪᠢ ᠪᠠᠭᠱ ᠪᠢᠰᠢ᠃ ᠣᠶᠤᠲᠠᠨ ᠪᠠᠢᠨ᠎ᠠ᠃᠃
c	I'm **not** *the person* responsible for this.	Би үүнийг хариуцдаг *хүн* <u>биш</u>.	ᠪᠢᠰᠢ᠃᠃ ᠪᠢ ᠬᠦᠨ ᠶ᠋ ᠬᠠᠷᠢᠤᠴᠳᠠᠭ ᠵᠦᠢᠯ
d	I don**'t** find this film very interesting. ("To me this film is of **no** great interest.")	Энэ кино надад их *со-нирхолтой* <u>биш</u> байна.	ᠰᠣᠨᠢᠷᠬᠣᠯᠲᠠᠢ ᠪᠢᠰᠢ ᠪᠠᠢᠨ᠎ᠠ᠃᠃ ᠡᠨᠡ ᠺᠢᠨᠣ ᠨᠠᠳᠠᠳ ᠬᠤ ᠽᠦᠢᠯ
e	I don't like him. ("I am **not** good to him.")	Би түүнд *сайн* <u>биш</u>.	ᠪᠢ ᠲᠦᠦᠨᠳ ᠬᠤ ᠰᠠᠶᠢᠨ ᠪᠢᠰᠢ᠃᠃
f	My flat is **not** very far from here.	Манай гэр эндээс их *хол* <u>биш</u>.	ᠪᠢᠰᠢ᠃᠃ ᠮᠠᠨ᠎ᠠ᠋ᠢ ᠭᠡᠷ ᠡᠨᠳᠡᠡᠰ ᠤᠭ ᠵᠤᠭ ᠰᠣᠢ᠋
g	Nowadays, you can see many **non**-Mongolians in the streets of Ulaanbaatar.	Улаанбаатарын гудамжинд *монгол* <u>биш</u> хүмүүс их үзэгдэх болжээ.	ᠤᠯᠠᠭᠠᠨᠪᠠᠭᠠᠲᠠᠷ᠎ᠤᠨ ᠪᠠᠢᠭᠤᠯᠯᠠᠭ᠎ᠠ᠃᠃ ᠬᠤᠮᠤᠨ᠎ᠤᠰ ᠪᠢᠰᠢ ᠮᠣᠩᠭᠣᠯ ᠵᠤᠭ ᠪᠠᠢᠨ᠎ᠠ ᠰᠠᠭᠠᠭᠠᠳ ᠤᠯᠠᠭᠠᠨᠪᠠᠭᠠᠲᠠᠷ᠎ᠤᠨ ᠲᠣᠭᠣᠣᠷᠣᠮᠳ ᠴᠥᠮ
h	No, this is **not** *mine*.	Үгүй, энэ *миний*х <u>биш</u>.	ᠦᠭᠡᠢ ᠃ ᠡᠨᠡ ᠮᠢᠨᠢ᠋ ᠪᠢᠰᠢ᠃᠃
i	I speak German, **not** *Mongolian*.	Би *монголоор* <u>биш</u>, германаар ярьдаг хүн.	ᠭᠡᠷᠮᠠᠨ᠎ᠠᠭᠠᠷ ᠬᠡᠯᠡᠨ᠎ᠡ᠃᠃ ᠪᠢ ᠮᠣᠩᠭᠣᠯᠤᠭᠤᠷ ᠪᠢᠰᠢ ᠃ ᠭᠡᠷᠮᠠᠨ᠎ᠠᠭᠠᠷ
j	Mother does**n't** just *sit* around, so make your meal yourself!	Ээж зүгээр *суугаа* <u>биш</u>, чи өөрөө хоол хий.	ᠡᠡᠵ ᠵᠦᠭᠡᠡᠷ ᠰᠤᠭᠠᠭ᠎ᠠ᠃᠃ ᠴᠢ ᠥᠪᠥᠭᠡᠡ ᠬᠤᠤᠯ ᠬᠢᠢ᠃ ᠵᠠ
k	I don**'t** *read* your books, so how should I know?	Би чиний ном *уншдаг* <u>биш</u>, яаж мэдэх юм вэ?	ᠪᠢ ᠴᠢᠨᠢ᠋ ᠨᠣᠮ᠎ᠤᠳ ᠤᠩᠱᠠᠵ ᠪᠠᠢᠭᠠᠭᠤᠯᠬᠤ ᠤᠴᠤᠷ ᠪᠢᠰᠢ᠃ ᠪᠢ ᠵᠠᠭᠤᠭ ᠨᠣᠮ᠎ᠤᠳ ᠮᠣᠷᠢᠯᠤᠭᠤᠯᠬᠤ ᠪᠠᠢᠭᠠᠭᠤᠯᠬᠤ ᠃
l	This book is not only an **un***interesting*, but also a totally unnecessary book.	Энэ бол *сонирхолтой* <u>биш</u>ээр барахгүй шал хэрэггүй ном.	ᠡᠨᠡ ᠪᠣᠯ ᠰᠣᠨᠢᠷᠬᠣᠯᠲᠠᠢ ᠪᠢᠰᠢᠶᠡᠷ ᠪᠠᠷᠠᠬᠭᠦᠢ ᠰᠠᠯ ᠬᠡᠷᠡᠭᠭᠦᠢ ᠨᠣᠮ᠃᠃ ᠡᠨᠡ ᠪᠢᠴᠢᠭ ᠰᠣᠨᠢᠷᠬᠣᠯᠲᠠᠢ ᠪᠢᠰᠢ ᠪᠤᠰ ᠪᠠᠭᠠ
m	We didn't know that he does**n't** like candies. ("...that he is**n't** with *pleasure* in candies.")	Түүний чихэрт *дуртай* <u>биш</u>ийг бид нар мэдэхгүй байсан.	ᠲᠦᠦᠨᠢ ᠴᠢᠬᠡᠷᠲ ᠳᠤᠷᠲᠠᠢ ᠪᠢᠰᠢᠶ᠋ᠢᠨ ᠪᠢᠳ ᠨᠠᠷ ᠮᠡᠳᠡᠬᠭᠦᠢ ᠪᠠᠢᠰᠠᠨ᠃᠃ ᠪᠢᠳᠡ᠋ᠨ᠎ᠤ ᠮᠡᠳᠡᠯᠭᠡ ᠤᠭ ᠪᠤᠰᠠᠳ ᠪᠢᠰᠢ ᠵᠤ
n	-Is that your *book*? -**No**.	–Тэр чиний *ном* уу? –<u>Биш</u>.	- ᠪᠢᠰᠢ᠃᠃ - ᠪᠢᠴᠢᠭ ᠨᠣᠮ᠎ᠤᠳ ᠤᠤ᠃
o	-Are you *Professor Dorj*? **-No, no**.	–Та *профессор Дорж* мөн үү? –<u>Биш</u>ээ.	- ᠪᠢᠰᠢ᠃᠃ - ᠤᠤ ᠳᠣᠴᠧᠨᠳᠣᠷ ᠤᠨᠰᠤᠯ ᠬᠣᠷᠢᠭᠤᠭ᠃᠃
p	That's how it is! ("Is it **not** so?")	Ийм <u>бишүү</u>. (Ийм шүү дээ)	ᠡᠨᠡᠭᠡ ᠪᠢᠰᠢᠭᠡ᠃᠃
q	He came! ("Did**n't** he come?")	Тэр ирсэн <u>бишүү</u>.	ᠲᠡᠷ ᠢᠷᠡᠭᠰᠡᠨ ᠪᠢᠰᠢᠭᠡ᠃᠃
r	***But*** he isn't Mongolian! How should he understand this?	Тэр *ямар* монгол хүн <u>биш</u>, үүнийг яаж ойлгох вэ дээ.	ᠬᠤᠭᠤ᠋ ᠪᠢ ᠪᠠᠭᠱᠢᠯᠠᠭᠴ ᠮᠣᠩᠭᠣᠯ ᠵᠤᠭ ᠪᠢᠰᠢ ᠃᠃ ᠡᠨᠡ ᠪᠠᠭᠱ ᠬᠤᠮᠤᠨ᠎ᠤᠰ ᠪᠢᠰᠢ ᠃ ᠶᠠᠮᠠᠷ
s	You're **not** believing me ***at all***!	Чи *ямар* надад итгэдэг <u>биш</u> дээ.	ᠤᠤ᠃᠃ ᠴᠢ ᠪᠠᠭᠱ ᠨᠠᠳᠠᠳ ᠪᠢ ᠢᠯᠭᠠᠳᠠᠭ ᠪᠢᠰᠢ
t	They're **not** the ones to ***ever*** give you money!	Тэд нар чамд *ямар* мөнгө өгдөг <u>биш</u> дээ.	ᠢᠯᠭᠠᠳᠠᠭ ᠪᠢᠰᠢ ᠤᠤ᠃᠃ ᠪᠢ ᠴᠠᠨᠳ ᠶᠠᠮᠠᠷ ᠮᠥᠩᠭᠥ ᠥᠭᠳᠡᠭ ᠪᠢᠰᠢ

2.3.2.2.2 Negative Particle "бус"

This particle has more **lexical** than grammatical meaning and serves almost like a derivational suffix. It is always added after *nouns* or *adjectives*. In English, the following lexical meanings can be expressed with this particle: **non**-smoker, **il***legal*, **un***interesting*, **extra***ordinary*, etc. It can be declined (**ex. c**) and is widely used in literature.

a	In Mongolia there are many **non**-government organizations.	Монголд *засгийн газрын* бус байгууллага олон бий.	[illegible]
b	I subscribe to the periodical publications through the post office, the **non**-periodical publications I buy at the kiosk.	Би тогтмол хэвлэлийг шуудангаар захиалж, *тогтмол* бус хэвлэлийг мухлагаас худалдаж авдаг.	[illegible]
c	He lived abroad **il***legally* for many years.	Тэр гадаад оронд олон жил *хууль* бусаар амьдарч байсан.	[illegible]
d	Recently, that organization held its **extra**ordinary congress.	Саяхан тус байгууллага *ээлжит* бус их хурлаа хийв.	[illegible]
e	You know, all of us are **non**-party members.	Бид бүгдээрээ *намын гишүүн* бус хүмүүс билээ.	[illegible]

2.3.2.2.3 Negative Particle "(ү)гүй"

This particle has two main functions:

2.3.2.2.3.1 After Nouns

When the particle "–гүй" appears with a ***noun***, then it is translated as '**to be without** ...'. In the same way as the "–тай" suffix sometimes expresses the meaning 'to be with ...', so also the particle "–гүй" can express 'to be without'. In this function, it has become a derivational suffix (see page 50, No.2). This becomes very evident in **ex. g**, where the noun is never used without the particle "гүй".
When the English translation is **'no'**, then the sentence always contains the **verb 'to have'**; the verb 'to be' demands the particle "биш"! With this particle, the **conjunction 'and'** is built (**ex. i**). In **poetry**, this particle is usually used **unshortened** (**ex. j**).

(nouns *in italics*)

a	I have **no** *time*. ("I**'m** being **without** *time*.")	Би *зав*гүй байна.	[illegible]
b	I have **no** *desire*. ("I**'m** being **without** *desire*.")	Би *хүсэл*гүй байна.	[illegible]
c	I don't like 'bansh'-soup. (I**'m without** *pleasure* in 'bansh'-soup.")	Би банштай шөлөнд *дур*гүй.	[illegible]
d	I don't need bread. ("I**'m without** *necessity* of bread.")	Надад талх *хэрэг*гүй.	[illegible]
e	It musn't be that way! ("Such being **without** a *law*.")	Ийм байх *ёс*гүй!	[illegible]
f	It's impossible for me to meet him. ("I **am without** *the possibility* of meeting him.")	Би түүнтэй уулзах *боломж*гүй.	[illegible]
g	I did this accidentally. ("I did this **without** *thinking*.")	Би үүнийг *санам-сар*гүйгээр хийсэн.	[illegible]

h	What an unlucky person I am! ("person **without** *luck*")	Би ямар *аз*гүй хүн бэ!	[illegible]
i	I worked day **and** night.	Би өдөр шөнөгүй ажилласан.	[illegible]
j	**To be without** *knowledge* is this life's suffering.	Эрдэм үгүй бол энэ насны зовлон.	[illegible]

2.3.2.2.3.2 After Verbs

The verbs always demand an INDC. These suffixes can either have the funcion of a **TTS** (**ex. a-g**), or they can serve as attributes (**ex. h-i**).
Note that this particle **is no true particle**, because it has a lexical meaning ('**absence, lack**'). Therefore it can be declined (**ex. j**). Together with *certain verbs, it can build* **new verbs**:
"үгүй бай–" = to be absent (**ex. k**)
"үгүй хий–" = to spend, to use up, to destroy (**ex. l**)
"үгүй бол–" =to die (**ex. m**).
The **unshortened** particle can be used by itself, meaning 'to not be, to not exist; no' (**ex. n-p**).
The expression "... –гүй (бол) болохгүй" can be translated as 'must' (**ex. q**).
Notice that this particle is used to build the **conjunction** 'whether ... or not' (**ex. r**).

a	He did**n't** come yesterday.	Тэр өчигдөр ирээгүй.	[illegible]
b	I could**n't** do this.	Би үүнийг хийж чадахгүй.	[illegible]
c	My older brother has**n't** left for the countryside.	Манай ах хөдөө яваагүй.	[illegible]
d	Smoking is **not** allowed here.	Энд тамхи татаж болохгүй.	[illegible]
e	I will probably **n**ever learn Chinese.	Би хятад хэлийг хэзээ ч сурахгүй байх.	[illegible]
f	Don**'t** you have bread?	Чамд талх байхгүй юу?	[illegible]
g	I don**'t** get up early.	Би эрт босдоггүй.	[illegible]
h	People who don**'t** smoke get few illnesses.	Тамхи татдаггүй хүнд өвчин бага тусдаг.	[illegible]
i	There is no benefit in talking again and again to someone who does**n't** understand me. ("No matter how often I talk with a person that does**n't** understand me, it's without benefit.")	Намайг ойлгодоггүй хүнтэй би хичнээн яриад ч нэмэргүй.	[illegible]
j	Many people came to my home in my **absence**.	Миний үгүйг олон хүн манайд очсон.	[illegible]
k	He ***was* absent** in yesterday's meeting.	Өчигдрийн цуглаан дээр тэр үгүй *байв*.	[illegible]
l	We ***spent*** all our money within a few days.	Бид хэдхэн хоногийн дотор бүх мөнгөө үгүй *хийсэн*.	[illegible]

m	In the year of the Pig, the Great Khaan **deceased.**	Гахай жил Их Хаан <u>үгүй</u> *болов.*	ᠪᠢᠴᠢᠭᠡᠯᠡᠪᠡ᠃ ᠬᠠᠭᠠᠨ ᠤᠨ ᠶᠡᠬᠡ ᠬᠠᠭᠠᠨ ᠤᠨ ᠨᠢᠭᠤᠯᠠᠭᠠ ᠪᠠᠢᠬᠤ ᠦᠭᠡᠢ
n	**There is not** one person whatsoever who doesn't like money.	Мөнгөнд дургүй хүн нэг ч <u>үгүй</u>. (нэг ч байхгүй)	ᠨᠢᠭᠡ ᠴᠢ ᠪᠠᠢᠬᠤ ᠦᠭᠡᠢ᠃᠃ ᠮᠥᠩᠭᠡᠨ ᠳᠤ ᠳᠤᠷᠭᠠᠯᠠᠭᠴᠢ ᠪᠠᠢᠬᠤ ᠦᠭᠡᠢ
o	-Do you have a family? -**No**.	–Та гэр бүлтэй юу? –<u>Үгүй</u>.	- ᠪᠠᠢᠬᠤ ᠦᠭᠡᠢ᠃᠃ - ᠪᠢ ᠠᠷ ᠭᠡᠷ᠎ᠡ ᠲᠤ ᠪᠠᠢᠬᠤ ᠦᠭᠡᠢ᠃᠃
p	-Do you speak Mongolian? -Oh, **no**!	–Та монголоор ярьдаг уу? –<u>Үгүй</u> дээ.	- ᠪᠠᠢᠬᠤ ᠤᠤ᠃᠃ - ᠪᠢ ᠮᠣᠩᠭᠣᠯ ᠠᠷᠠᠳ ᠰᠤᠷᠴᠠᠭᠠᠨ᠎ᠠ ᠪᠢ ᠦᠭᠡᠢ᠃᠃
q	I **must** go now.	Би явах<u>гүй</u> (бол) болох<u>гүй</u>.	ᠪᠢ ᠰᠠᠭᠤᠨ ᠪᠠᠢᠬᠤ ᠬᠢᠵᠦ ᠪᠠᠢᠬᠤ ᠪᠠᠢᠬᠤ ᠦᠭᠡᠢ᠃᠃
r	I don't know whether he came or **not.**	Тэр ирсэн үү, <u>үгүй</u> юү гэдгийг би мэдэхгүй.	ᠡᠭᠦᠨ᠎ᠢ ᠪᠢ ᠬᠠᠷᠢᠭᠤᠯᠵᠤ ᠪᠠᠢᠬᠤ ᠦᠭᠡᠢ᠃᠃ ᠣᠷᠣᠭᠰᠠᠨ ᠤᠤ ᠦᠭᠡᠢ ᠤᠤ ᠭᠡᠵᠦ ᠪᠢ ᠮᠡᠳᠡᠬᠦ ᠦᠭᠡᠢ

2.3.2.2.3.3 Note to the Word "алга"

Similar to "үгүй", this particle also has **its own lexical** meaning, i.e., strictly speaking, it is **not a true particle**. It can't be declined. In **ex. c**, "алга" is part of a fixed expression. Together with the ***particle "даа"*** it expresses that one is joking or happy (**ex. d**). With the ***particle "л"*** it expresses 'still not' (**ex. e-f**).

a	I have **no** money.	Надад мөнгө <u>алга</u>.	ᠨᠠᠳᠠᠳ ᠲᠤ ᠮᠥᠩᠭᠡ ᠪᠠᠢᠬᠤ ᠦᠭᠡᠢ᠃᠃
b	**There is nothing** to be afraid of.	Айж цочих юм <u>алга</u>.	ᠠᠶᠢᠵᠤ ᠴᠣᠴᠢᠬᠤ ᠶᠤᠮ ᠪᠠᠢᠬᠤ ᠦᠭᠡᠢ᠃᠃
c	My bag has **dis**appeared.	Миний цүнх <u>алга</u> болчихжээ.	ᠮᠢᠨᠢ ᠴᠦᠩᠬᠡ ᠪᠠᠢᠬᠤ ᠦᠭᠡᠢ ᠪᠣᠯᠴᠢᠬᠤᠵᠠᠶ᠃᠃
d	I don't have anything!	Надад юу ч <u>алга</u> *даа*.	ᠨᠠᠳᠠᠳ ᠲᠤ ᠶᠤᠮᠤ ᠴᠦ ᠪᠠᠢᠬᠤ ᠦᠭᠡᠢ ᠲᠤ᠃᠃
e	He is **still not here.**	Тэр одоо хүртэл <u>алга</u> *л* байна.	ᠡᠷᠡ ᠤᠳᠤᠭᠠ ᠪᠣᠯᠲᠤᠯ ᠪᠠᠢᠬᠤ ᠦᠭᠡᠢ ᠪᠠ ᠪᠣᠯᠵᠤ᠃᠃
f	**There is still no** news from him.	Түүнээс ойрдоо сураг <u>алга</u> *л* байна.	ᠪᠠ ᠪᠣᠯᠵᠤ᠃᠃ ᠣᠷᠤᠭ ᠨᠤᠭ ᠪᠠᠳᠤᠯ ᠤᠨ ᠳᠤᠤᠷ᠎ᠠ ᠪᠠᠢᠬᠤ ᠦᠭᠡᠢ

2.3.2.2.4 Negative Particle "үл"

This particle is mainly used **before** verbs with an NDS, which are **attributes** to a ***noun*** (**ex. a-c**). In English there are many different translations. Furthermore, it can be used like "эс" before verbs with a VDS (**ex. e-g**). With some verbs (with a TTS; mainly "–на") it appears in a **fixed expression** in written language and has an official tone: *бол–* , *зөвшөөр–*, *ойшоо–*, *ойлго–* (**ex. h-i**).

a	Are there many **il***literates* in Mongolia? ("... letters **not** know*ing people*...")	Монголд бичиг үсэг <u>үл</u> мэдэх *хүн* олон байна уу?	ᠮᠣᠩᠭᠣᠯ ᠳᠤ ᠪᠢᠴᠢᠭ ᠦᠰᠦᠭ ᠦᠭᠡᠢ᠎ᠶ᠋ᠢ ᠮᠡᠳᠡᠬᠦ ᠬᠦᠮᠦᠨ ᠤᠯᠠᠨ ᠪᠠᠢᠨ᠎ᠠ ᠤᠤ᠃᠃ ᠬᠦᠮᠦᠨ ᠴᠤ ᠪᠢᠴᠢᠵᠦ ᠴᠢᠳᠠᠵᠤ ᠪᠠᠢᠬᠤ ᠪᠠᠢᠳᠠᠯ
b	In this book (they) write about an **in**visible person. ("...**not** be*ing* seen *person*...")	Энэ номонд <u>үл</u> үзэгдэгч *хүний* тухай бичсэн байна.	ᠡᠨᠡ ᠨᠣᠮᠤᠨ ᠳᠤ ᠦᠵᠡᠭᠳᠡᠬᠦᠢ᠎ᠶ᠋ᠢᠨ ᠲᠤᠬᠠᠢ ᠪᠢᠴᠢᠪᠡ᠃᠃ ᠬᠦᠨ᠎ᠢ ᠨᠦᠳ ᠴᠤ ᠪᠠᠢᠬᠤ ᠪᠠᠢᠴᠠᠭᠠᠭᠴᠢ ᠪᠢᠳᠡᠭ
c	There is a **mis**understanding between them. ("... a *state* of **not** understand*ing* each other...")	Тэдний хооронд <u>үл</u> ойлголцо*х байдал* бий болжээ.	ᠲᠡᠳᠡᠨᠢ ᠶᠢᠨ ᠬᠣᠭᠣᠣᠨᠳ ᠤᠶᠠᠯᠴᠠᠬᠤ ᠬᠢ ᠪᠣᠯᠵᠤ᠃᠃ ᠪᠢ ᠲᠡᠭᠡᠨᠳᠡᠭᠡᠴᠢᠯᠡᠵᠦ ᠪᠠᠢᠬᠤ ᠪᠠᠢᠳᠠᠯ

d	He **dis**respected me. ("He did**n't** respect me.")	Тэр намайг <u>үл</u> ойшоох. (Тэр намайг ойшоосонгүй.)	ᠨᠠᠮᠠᠨ᠎ᠢ ᠦᠯᠦ ᠬᠦᠨᠳᠡᠯᠡᠬᠦᠢ ᠪᠠᠢᠬᠤ ᠦᠭᠡᠢ᠃᠃) ᠡᠷᠡ ᠨᠠᠮᠠᠨ᠎ᠢ ᠬᠦᠨᠳᠡᠯᠡᠵᠦ ᠪᠠᠢᠬᠤ ᠦᠭᠡᠢ᠃᠃ (ᠡᠷᠡ
e	He did**n't** agree with this and refused to sign.	Тэр үүнийг <u>үл</u> зөвшөөрч гарын үсэг зурахаас татгалзав.	ᠲᠤᠭᠠᠨ᠎ᠢ ᠦᠵᠡᠯᠴᠡᠬᠦᠢ ᠪᠠᠢᠳᠠᠯ ᠲᠠ ᠪᠠᠷᠤᠮᠳᠠᠭᠠᠭᠤᠯᠵᠤ᠃᠃ ᠡᠷᠡ ᠬᠤᠪᠢ ᠪᠠᠢᠬᠤ ᠦᠭᠡᠢ ᠪᠠᠢᠳᠠᠯ ᠲᠤᠭᠠᠨ᠎ᠠ ᠭᠠᠷᠴᠠᠭ
f	If you don't agree with this, you may not sign.	Та үүнийг <u>үл</u> зөвшөөрвөл гарын үсэг зурахгүй байж болно.	ᠲᠠᠭᠠᠨ᠎ᠢ ᠦᠵᠡᠯᠴᠡᠬᠦᠢ ᠪᠠᠢᠬᠤ ᠪᠣᠯᠪᠠᠯ ᠪᠢᠴᠢᠭ ᠦᠰᠦᠭ ᠪᠢᠴᠢᠵᠦ᠃᠃ ᠡᠷᠡ ᠬᠤᠪᠢ ᠪᠠᠢᠬᠤ ᠦᠭᠡᠢ᠃᠃ ᠪᠠᠢᠳᠠᠯ ᠲᠤᠭᠠᠨ᠎ᠠ ᠭᠠᠷᠴᠠᠭ
g	The boy/man thought that if he would **not** find his younger brother today, he would surely find him tomorrow.	Ах нь дүүгээ өнөөдөр <u>үл</u> олоох маргааш заавал олно гэж бодлоо	ᠪᠣᠳᠤᠯᠴᠤ᠃᠃ ᠪᠠᠭᠠᠨᠠ ᠬᠦᠮᠦᠨ ᠦ ᠪᠠᠭᠠ ᠨᠢᠭᠡ ᠲᠡᠭᠡᠷᠢᠨᠦᠭᠡ ᠪᠠᠢᠬᠤ ᠦᠭᠡᠢ ᠪᠠᠢᠬᠤ ᠪᠠᠢᠳᠠᠯ ᠨᠢ ᠮᠠᠷᠭᠠᠰᠢ ᠡᠷᠡ ᠬᠦᠮᠦᠨ ᠦ ᠪᠠᠭᠠ ᠨᠢᠭᠡ ᠲᠡᠭᠡᠷᠢᠨᠦᠭᠡ ᠪᠠᠢᠬᠤ
h	Smoking is **forbidden**! (..."is **not** OK.")	Тамхи татаж <u>үл</u> болно!	ᠲᠠᠮᠬᠢ ᠲᠠᠲᠠᠵᠤ ᠪᠠᠢᠬᠤ ᠦᠭᠡᠢ ᠪᠣᠯᠵᠤ᠃᠃
i	**No** Entry! ("Entering **not** allowed!")	Орохыг <u>үл</u> зөвшөөрнө!	ᠣᠷᠤᠬᠤ ᠳᠤ ᠪᠠᠢᠬᠤ ᠦᠭᠡᠢ᠃᠃

2.3.2.2.5 Negative Particle "эс"

This particle is mainly used **before** verbs with a VDS (**ex. a-c**), sometimes before verbs with a NDS (**ex. d**; because "үл мэдэгч" means 'illiterate', the "эс" is used in this context) or a TTS (mainly past; **ex. e-f**). **Ex. g** is very **colloquial** and belongs to the group of verbs with a TTS.

a	I was very surprised when he did**n't** come.	Түүнийг <u>эс</u> ирэхээр би их гайхсан.	ᠢᠷᠡᠬᠦᠢ᠎ᠶ᠋ᠢᠨ᠎ᠡ ᠦᠭᠡᠢ᠃᠃ ᠣᠷᠤᠭ ᠴ ᠮᠠᠨ᠎ᠠ ᠠᠭᠤᠷᠢᠰᠠᠨ ᠪᠢ ᠶᠠᠭᠤ
b	The boy/man thought that if he would**n't** find his younger brother today, he would surely find him tomorrow.	Ах нь дүүгээ өнөөдөр <u>эс</u> олоох маргааш заавал олно гэж бодлоо.	ᠪᠣᠳᠤᠯᠴᠤ᠃᠃ ᠪᠠᠭᠠᠨᠠ ᠬᠦᠮᠦᠨ ᠦ ᠪᠠᠭᠠ ᠨᠢᠭᠡ ᠲᠡᠭᠡᠷᠢᠨᠦᠭᠡ ᠪᠠᠢᠬᠤ ᠦᠭᠡᠢ ᠪᠠᠢᠬᠤ ᠪᠠᠢᠳᠠᠯ ᠨᠢ ᠮᠠᠷᠭᠠᠰᠢ ᠡᠷᠡ ᠬᠦᠮᠦᠨ ᠦ ᠪᠠᠭᠠ ᠨᠢᠭᠡ ᠲᠡᠭᠡᠷᠢᠨᠦᠭᠡ ᠮᠠᠷ
c	I have decided to **not** give him an answer.	Би түүнд хариу <u>эс</u> өгөхөөр шийдсэн.	ᠬᠠᠷᠢᠭᠤᠯᠬᠤ᠃᠃ ᠪᠢ ᠲᠡᠭᠡᠨᠳ ᠴᠤ ᠬᠠᠷᠢᠭᠤ ᠮᠠᠷ ᠪᠠᠢᠷᠯᠢᠨ
d	He was sitting there with an expression on his face as if he did**n't** know.	Тэр <u>эс</u> мэдэгч царай-лаад сууж байсан.	ᠰᠠᠭᠤᠵᠤ ᠪᠠᠢᠭᠤᠯᠬᠤ᠃᠃ ᠡᠷᠡ ᠮᠠᠷ ᠬᠦᠨᠳᠡ ᠵᠣᠭᠰᠤᠨ᠎ᠠ ᠭᠡᠵᠦ ᠪᠠᠢᠰᠠᠨ
e	Although I worked on this matter diligently for many days, they did**n't** agree.	Би энэ талаар олон хо-ног хөөцөлдсөн боловч тэд нар <u>эс</u> зөвшөөрөв.	ᠮᠠᠷ ᠲᠤᠭᠠᠨᠳᠠᠭᠠᠭᠤᠯᠵᠤ᠃᠃ ᠪᠢᠴᠢᠭᠯᠡᠯᠲᠡᠭᠡᠢ ᠪᠣᠯᠪᠠᠴᠤ ᠡᠳᠡ ᠨᠠᠷ ᠪᠢ ᠤᠯᠠᠨ ᠤᠳᠠᠭ ᠪᠠᠢᠨ᠎ᠠ ᠠᠭᠤᠤ
f	Although the doctors were working nonstop for many days, they could**n't** save his life.	Эмч нар олон хоног нойр хоолгүй ажилла-сан боловч түүний амь насыг аварч <u>эс</u> чадав.	ᠮᠡᠳᠡᠬᠦ ᠨᠠᠷ ᠤᠯᠠᠨ ᠤᠳᠠᠭ ᠮᠠᠷ ᠵᠣᠭᠰᠤᠵᠤ᠃᠃ ᠲᠡᠳᠡᠨ ᠢ ᠠᠯᠳᠠᠷᠬᠤᠯᠵᠤ ᠪᠠᠢᠬᠤ ᠪᠠᠢᠳᠠᠯ ᠳ ᠪᠠ ᠮᠥᠨ᠎ᠡ ᠨᠢ ᠬᠤᠪᠢ ᠰᠠᠭᠤᠭᠠᠳ ᠨᠠᠰᠠᠨᠳ ᠠᠪᠠᠷᠴᠤ ᠴᠢᠳᠠᠪᠠ᠃᠃
g	Haven't I told you!	Би <u>эс</u> хэлээгүй чамд!	only colloquial language

2.3.2.2.6 Negative Particle "бүү"

This particle is used **before** verbs with a PTS (in **ex.a,b,e,f,** there are zero-suffixes; compare with page 175ff). It's very similar to "**битгий**", but stronger in its meaning. Notice how this particle is used in **ex. e** (saying) and **f** (conjunction).

a	Don't smoke here!	Энд тамхи бүү тат!	
b	Don't do (whatever) you're afraid of, and don't be afraid of (whatever) you do.	Айвал бүү хий, хийвэл бүү ай.	
c	If only there was **no** more war.	Дайн дахин бүү үзэгдэг.	
d	Don't listen to his words.	Түүний үгийг бүү сонсоггүй.	
e	I don't have a clue whether he came or not.	Тэр ирсэн үү, үгүй юу, бүү мэд.	
f	I have two children, **not** to mention my wife.	Надад эхнэр бүү хэл хоёр хүүхэд бий.	

2.3.2.2.7 Negative Particle "битгий"

Similar to "бүү", this particle is used **before** verbs with a PTS (in **ex. d,e,h,** there are zero-suffixes; compare with page 175ff). It also appears in the **conjunction** "битгий хэл" (**ex. h**).

a	Please don't smoke here.	Энд тамхи битгий татаарай.	
b	Please don't tell this to others.	Үүнийг хүнд битгий хэлээрэй.	
c	Please do **not** go.	Чи битгий яваач.	
d	Don't worry!	Битгий санаа зов!	
e	Do **not** touch!	Гар битгий хүр!	
f	If only he wouldn't come!	Тэр битгий ирээсэй.	
g	He is **not** to meet my friend.	Тэр миний найзтай битгий уулзаг.	
h	I can't speak Russian, **not** to mention English.	Би англиар битгий хэл оросоор ч ярьж чадахгүй.	

2.3.2.3 MODAL PARTICLES

Modal particles **intensify, moderate,** or else **change** statements according to the **present mood of the speaker**. Only from the whole context will it be clear what mood the speaker is in. So, often the given translation is only one of many possible ways to express that particular mood. In English, people would sometimes just raise the voice or say a normal statement with more determination or a particular expression of the face and not use an extra particle or word. Some particles can appear together. If so, their order is fixed. When the particles connect and equate two elements, they **serve as a copula**.

2.3.2.3.1 Modal Particle "шүү"

The particle "шүү" (not complying with vowel harmony) follows usually **after** a verb with a TTS (**ex. a-e**) or after a ***noun*** in the function of a **copula** (**ex. f-g**). The main function is to **communicate something** to another person. This could be an affirmation (**ex. a, f**), a praise (**ex. b**), a rebuke (**ex. c**), a threat (**ex. d, g**), an information (**ex. e**), etc.

Notice that there is a particle "**шүү²**" which is used rarely and follows after nouns or verbs with an NDS (**ex. h-i**). It expresses that something **can't be done wholeheartedly** or very well (e.g. due to illness; **ex.h**), or it shows a **modest attitude** (**ex. i**).

a	Today is **really** a nice day.	Өнөөдөр сайхан өдөр байна шүү.	
b	You speak English very well **indeed**.	Та англиар сайн ярьж байна шүү.	
c	He **does** always remember you!	Тэр үргэлж чамайг бодож явдаг шүү.	
d	Hey, I will report you to the teacher!	Би чамайг багшид хэлнэ шүү.	
e	I **DID** drink tea!	Би цай уусан шүү.	
f	*This* is **really** a nice *animal!*	*Энэ* мөн сайхан *амьтан* шүү.	
g	*This* is my *book*, **you know!**	*Энэ* миний *ном* шүү.	
h	Well, (I) do my work **after a fashion**.	Ажлаа хийсэн *шүү болж байна.*	
i	I was in a hurry and made quickly **some sort of a** meal.	Би яараад нэг хоол шүү юм хийчихлээ.	

2.3.2.3.2 Modal Particle "даа⁴"

This particle follows usually after verbs with a TTS (**ex. a-j**) or a PTS (**ex. k-m**). In the translation it's similar to "шүү", but communicating to others is not the main function. An exact meaning is often only clear from the whole context (e.g. **ex. m**). That's why we try to give in parentheses a context situation. In certain sentences, this particle, together with other words, forms a ***fixed expression*** (**ex. n,o**; see page 206). If it's used together with other particles, "даа" is always put at the end (**ex. p-q**).

a	-Today is really a nice day. -Yes, **indeed**, a really nice day! (2 old people, having a lot of time to talk)	–Өнөөдөр сайхан өдөр байна шүү! –Тийм байна. Үнэхээр сайхан өдөр байна даа.	
b	My! How hot it is here! (beginning of a conversation)	Энд мөн ч халуун байна даа.	
c	**Alas**, and now, what shall we do? (expression of sorrow)	Одоо бид нар яана даа.	

d	We shall return to our homeland, before we **even** have time to realize it.	Нэг л мэдэхэд бид нутагтаа очно доо.	[illegible]
e	The day we have been eagerly waiting for has **finally** come!	Хүсэн хүлээсэн өдөр маань ирлээ дээ.	[illegible]
f	I thought you were going to cook! ("What has happened to your talking, 'I will cook.'?")	Хоол хийнэ гэсэн чинь яалаа даа.	[illegible]
g	**But** I've given him money so many times! (reluctant to give again)	Би түүнд олон удаа мөнгө өгсөн дөө.	[illegible]
h	Yesterday he came **at last**. (happy about it)	Тэр өчигдөр ирлээ дээ.	[illegible]
i	He **may well** have come yester-day. (circumstancial evidence, e.g. car in front of the house)	Тэр өчигдөр ирлээ дээ.	[illegible]
j	He *came* yesterday! (relief; talking to oneself)	Тэр өчигдөр ирлээ дээ.	[illegible]
k	Oh, what shall I do now? (crisis, desperation)	Одоо яая даа.	[illegible]
l	Take a good look at this!	Чи үүнийг сайн хар даа.	[illegible]
m	**Well then,** sit down. (reluctantly)/**Do** sit down, **please**. (very polite)	Та суу л даа.	[illegible]
n	**Well,** Dorj has come, **yes**. (...but...; no satisfactory result)	Дорж ирсэн *байна л даа*.	[illegible]
o	It has become late. We **must** go.	Цаг орой боллоо, явахаас *даа*.	[illegible]
p	I told you many times, **didn't I**? (a bit angrily)	Би чамд олон удаа хэлсэн *шүү дээ*.	[illegible]
q	**Isn't** that strange! I've told him many times, **haven't I**? (very surprised, stunned)	Би түүнд олон удаа хэлсэн *юм даа*. Мөн хачин *юм даа*.	[illegible]

2.3.2.3.3 Modal Particle "aa⁴"

This particle has **four functions**:

1.) It's placed **between** two repeated verbs with a PTS. **Reluctancy** or **indifference** is expressed when using a PTS of the 2nd person (**ex. a**). A **strong request** is expressed when using a PTS of the 1st person (**ex. b**).

2.) After ***nouns or verbs with an*** HDS and before *"гэ-"*, it has the meaning '**as such**' (colloquial language; **ex. c-d**).

3.) In colloquial language, this particle is used after a verb with the TTS "-в" (**ex. e-f**) and canexpress a threat (**ex. g-h**). Compare with the PTS "-уузай", which is used for a formal, polite situation.

4.) After **adjectives** and mostly together with "мөн", it expresses enthusiasm (**ex. i-j**). After *long vowels and diphthongs,* this particle needs the inserted English consonant **"y"**: "яа, еэ" (**ex.k-l**).

a	**Well,** come **then.** (reluctancy) You **may** come. (indifference)	Ир ээ ир.	[illegible]

b	**Come on, come on,** let's go together to town.	Хоёулаа хот руу явъя аа явъя.	[illegible]
c	Life **as such** is very interesting, isn't it?	Амьдрал *аа гэж* их сонин шүү.	[illegible]
d	Doing business **as such** is no easy job at all.	Наймаа хийх ээ гэдэг амар ажил бишээ.	[illegible]
e	Where **on earth** did you go?	Чи хаашаа яваа аа?	[illegible]
f	When **actually** did you come from the countryside?	Хөдөөнөөс хэзээ ирэв ээ?	[illegible]
g	**Woe betide you** if you give this book to others!	Энэ номыг хүнд өгөв өө!	[illegible]
h	**Woe betide you** if you tell her about this!	Чи энэ тухай түүнд хэлэв ээ!	[illegible]
i	**Why, isn't** that nice!	Энэ мөн сайхан аа!	[illegible]
j	**Why, isn't** that cute!	Энэ мөн хөөрхөн өө!	[illegible]
k	**Why, isn't** that majestic!	Энэ мөн сүртэй ээ!	[illegible]
l	**Why, isn't** that delicious!	Энэ мөн амттай юм!	[illegible]

2.3.2.3.4 Modal Particle "юм"

This particle is widely used as an **intensifying copula** after a ***noun*** (**ex. a-b**), an ***adjective*** (**ex. c**) or as a particle after a verb with an HDS in TTS-function (**ex. d-h**). In combination with *"байна"* it indicates, that the thing being said, has just been found out (**ex. g**). In combination with *"билээ"*, it points out that the experience has been made before (**ex. h**).

a	Mongolia **IS** an Asian country!	Монгол улс бол Азийн *орон* юм.	[illegible]
b	That **IS** the truth!	Энэ үнэн *үг* юм.	[illegible]
c	My mother is **really** 1.8 meters tall.	Миний ээж 1,8 м *өндөр* юм.	[illegible]
d	**But** my parents live in the countryside!	Миний эцэг эх хөдөө амьдардаг юм.	[illegible]
e	Do you have bread, **then**? (surprised)	Танд талх байдаг юм уу?	[illegible]
f	Does he teach in Mongolian, **then**? (surprised)	Тэр монголоор заадаг юм уу?	[illegible]
g	He has no time at all!	Тэр их завгүй *байдаг юм байна*.	[illegible]
h	The Germans **really do** keep the time very strictly.	Германчууд цагийг их нарийн баримталдаг *юм билээ*.	[illegible]

2.3.2.3.5 Modal Particle "мөн"

This particle **always** serves as a **copula,** thus, it always follows a ***noun*** (**ex. a-e**). It's also used in ***fixed expressions*** (**ex. f-g**).

a	I **AM** a foreigner!	Би бол гадаадын *иргэн* мөн.	
b	This **IS** my book!	Энэ миний *ном* мөн.	
c	Is she **really** your younger sister?	Тэр таны төрсөн *дүү* мөн үү?	
d	This is **indeed** the result of his scientific work.	Энэ бол түүний эрдэм шинжилгээний ажлын *үр дүн* мөн.	
e	This is a hotel! (I just found it out)	Энэ *зочид буудал* мөн байна.	
f	*Wow,* this dress *is terrific indeed!*	Энэ *хувцас* мөн ч сайхан шүү.	
g	*Well,* this dress *is also nice.*	Энэ *хувцас* мөн л сайхан.	

2.3.2.3.6 Modal Particle "билээ /лээ"

This particle derived from the **defective auxiliary verb** "bü–" and is, therefore, no true particle. It expresses **statements** that **are remembered to be told** to others. In **ex. f-g,** it serves as a **copula** after a ***noun***. Usually it follows verbs with an NDS (**ex. a-c**) or the shortened form of "–жээ" --> "–ж" (**ex. d-e**). The particle "лээ" is the shortened form of "билээ" which explains why it is not complying with vowel harmony. It's rarely used, mainly in the modal construction "юм байна лээ" (see page 203).

a	**You know,** two years ago I came to Mongolia.	Би хоёр жилийн өмнө Монголд ирсэн билээ.	
b	What was your name **again**?	Таны нэрийг хэн гэсэн билээ?	
c	**Oh yes, I remember,** he wasn't helping me at that time.	Тэгэхэд тэр надад туслаагүй билээ.	
d	**Oh yes,** it has been very interesting in Mongolia.	Монголд их сонир–холтой бай: билээ.	
e	**Yes, I remember**, when you came to Mongolia, the food situation was very difficult.	Та нарыг ирэхэд Мон–голд хүнсний зүйл хэцүү бай: билээ.	
f	**Oh yes,** that's a very good book.	Энэ бол маш сайн *ном* билээ.	
g	**Oh yes**, his wife is a very intelligent person.	Түүний эхнэр их ухаантай *хүн* билээ.	

2.3.2.3.7 Modal Particle "сан[4]"

This particle derived from the defective auxiliary verb "a–" ---> "асан" and is, as such, **no true particle**. It usually follows after verbs with an NDS and has the following **functions**:

1.) Positive, yearning, sympathetic memories: follows a verb with the past NDS "–сан" or the indefinite present NDS "–даг" (**ex. a-c**).

2.) Subjunctive: strong imaginary desire (see pages 196-197):

A) follows a verb with the future NDS "–х" and often together with "нэг сайхан" (**ex.d-e**). The expression "**юмсан**" is very similar, and it can be assumed that "юм" dropped. This particle can also be added to **nouns** (**ex. g**).

B) In **complex sentences of the past** (**ex. h-i**), this particle can be added to the main clause **or** to the subordinate clause. In colloquial language, it's often done in both clauses (**ex. h**).

a	When I was in Switzerland, it was **SO** nice!	Намайг Швейцарт байхад их сайхан байсан.	
b	He's **just** been so very sad! (I'm interested in what has become of him)	Тэр их л уйтгартай байсан.	
c	**Oh yes,** when I was in Germany, I always met him.	Би Германд байхдаа түүнтэй үргэлж уулздаг сан.	
d	**How I 'd like to** eat Khuushuur **again**!	За, нэг сайхан хуушуур идэх сэн. (...идэх юмсан.)	
e	These days I'm very tired. **How I'd like to** sleep well!	Ойрдоо их ядарч бай–на. Нэг сайхан унтах–сан. (...унтах юмсан.)	
f	If I **were** rich, I **would** buy a car.	Би баян хүн бол машин авах сан.	
g	If I **had** time, I **would** meet you.	Би завтай сан бол тантай уулзах сан.	
h	If I **had** been rich, I **would have** bought a car.	Би баян хүн байсан бол машин авах байсан сан.	
		Би баян хүн байсан сан бол машин авах байсан.	
		Би баян хүн байсан сан бол машин авах байсан сан.	
i	If you **hadn't** disturbed me, I **would have** finished this work by now.	Чамайг надад саад хийгээгүй сэн бол би энэ ажлыг дуусгачи–хаад байх байлаа.	

2.3.2.3.8 Modal Particle "даг[4]"

This particle has - like "сан" - derived from the defective auxiliary verb "а–" and is, as such, **no true particle**. It expresses that the speaker is quite sure about something and follows verbs with an HDS (**ex. a,c-f**) or the future TTS "–на" (**ex. b**). It can be used in combination with other particles, e.g. with "шүү" and expresses then that one **assumes** something for which there is **circumstancial evidence** (**ex. in parentheses**).

a	**I think** it will rain heavily tonight. (Tonight **it's likely to** rain heavily.)	Өнөө шөнө их бороо орох **даг** (шүү).	
b	**I think** he'll come now every minute. (**Probably** he'll come now every minute.)	Тэр гэнэт ороод ирэх **дэг** (шүү).	
c	They**'re likely to** finish their job now.	Тэд нар одоо ажлаа дуусгаж байгаа **даг** шүү.	
d	**Well then**, my father **seems to** have come from the countryside.	Аав хөдөөнөөс ирсэн **дэг** шүү.	
e	**Oh dear, it seems to** be over now.	Одоо өнгөрсөн **дөг** шүү.	
f	Well, that's about what was said. (very colloquial)	Тэгэж хэлж ярьсан *юм даг уу даа*.	

2.3.2.3.9 Modal Particle "биз"

This particle expresses an **assumption**. Following a verb with the TTS "–на", it expresses **indifference** (**ex. a-b**). Following a verb with an HDS, it could be translated using a **tag question** (**ex. c-e**). As a **copula**, it equates ***nouns*** or ***adjectives*** (**ex. f-g**). Sometimes the final vowel (only evident in Classical Script) **is stressed** (**ex. f**).

a	You will excuse me, **won't you**. I really don't have time.	Та уучилна **биз**, би үнэхээр завгүй байна.	
b	-When will he come? -I don't know exactly, **he might** come tomorrow.	–Тэр хэзээ ирэх вэ? –Би сайн мэдэхгүй байна. Маргааш ирнэ **биз**.	
c	Today it's a nice day, **isn't it**?	Өнөөдөр сайхан өдөр байгаа **биз** дээ?	
d	You've met him, **haven't you**?	Та түүнтэй уулзаа **биз** дээ?	
e	You met him yesterday, **didn't you**?	Та өчигдөр түүнтэй уулзсан **биз** дээ?	
f	That's **probably** true.	Энэ *үнэн* **биззэ**.	
g	You're not Mr. Baatar, **are you**?	Та *Баатар гуай* биш **биз**?	

2.3.2.3.10 Modal Particle "бий/ вий"

Because this particle is, in Classical Script, **identical with the interrogative particle "бэ/ вэ"**, the rule as to when which form is used can be looked up on page 327. When this particle follows a verb with an HDS, it expresses a feeling of **deep understanding** (**aha-experience**; **ex. a-e**). As a **copula**, it equates words (**ex. e**). After a verb with the TTS "–на", it expresses something like an oath to oneself (**ex. f-g**).

a	**I'm sure that** you'll understand my words later.	Миний хэлсэн үгийг чи хожим ойлгох **вий**.	
b	**I'm sure that** a day of rejoicing will come, even though (you) are suffering now.	Одоо зовж байвч жаргах өдөр ирэх **вий**.	
c	**Aha,** that's what he does in my absence.	Тэр намайг эзгүйд ийм юм хийж явдаг **вий**.	
d	**Aha,** he has come to Ulaanbaatar.	Тэр Улаанбаатарт ирээд байгаа юм **бий**.	
e	**Aha,** that's what you used to say.	Чиний хэлдэг тэр **вий**.	
f	**Well then, let's see if he ever** gets money from me again!	Тэр надаас дахиад мөнгө авна **вий**.	
g	**Now see if** you **ever** try that again.	Чи үүнийг дахиад хийнэ **вий**.	

2.3.2.3.11 Modal Particle "шив"

This particle expresses an **assumption**. Exception is **ex. e**. It either follows verbs with an HDS (**ex. a-b**) or ***nouns*** in the function of a **copula** (**ex. c-g**). Together with the particle "даа", it expresses **disappointment** and **indifference** (**ex. f-g**).

a	Today, the Germans are playing badly, **I believe.**	Германчууд өнөөдөр муу тоглож байна **шив**.	
b	How nice, they've left, **I believe.**	Тэд нар ашгүй явна **шив**.	
c	**I think,** this is the book I've read.	Энэ миний уншсан *ном* **шив**.	
d	**I think** that's my husband's teacher. (to be seen from far)	Энэ манай нөхрийн *багш* **шив**.	
e	This is **indeed** my husband's teacher. (after he has passed)		
f	**Oh no,** that's my husband's teacher.	Энэ манай нөхрийн *багш* **шив** дээ.	
g	**Oh no,** that's the film we've already seen.	Энэ үзчихсэн *кино* **шив** дээ.	

2.3.2.3.12 Modal Interrogative Particle "бол"

This particle is used with question words (**ex. a-c**) and without question words, but together with the interrogative particle "уу/үү" (**ex. d-e**). It follows verbs with an NDS and expresses that the speaker is **wondering about something** (**ex. a-b**) or that he wants to know the opinion of others, but bears in mind, that the others don't know it themselves (**ex. d-e**).

a	How **might** my son be doing?	Миний хүү яаж яваа бол.	
b	How **am** (I) **supposed to** do such a thing?/How **on earth** am I going to do such a thing?	Иймэрхүү юмыг яаж хийх бол.	
c	I was constantly thinking about what kind of people I **might** meet once I'd come to Mongolia.	Би Монголд ирэд ямар хүмүүстэй уулзах бол гэж дандаа боддог байсан.	
d	**I wonder if** there is mutton?	Хонины мах байгаа бол уу?	
e	**I wonder whether** he'll come tomorrow?	Тэр маргааш ирэх бол уу?	

2.3.2.3.13 Modal Conditional Particle "бол"

This particle expresses a **condition** and is very similar to the sVDS "–вал[4]" (see page 161). In case, the sVDS can't be used, this particle is used instead:
- after ***NDS's*** (e.g. past) (**ex. a-g**)
- after ***negation*** (**ex. c-d,j,m**)
- after ***nouns*** (**ex. h-j**)
- after ***adjectives*** (**ex. k**)

It also appears in **subjunctive sentences** (**ex. l-n**).

a	**If** you***'re*** sick, have a doctor examine you.	Бие чинь өвдөж байгаа бол эмчид үзүүл!	
b	**If** that person ***knows*** Russian well, explain it in Russian!	Тэр хүн орос хэл сайн мэдэг бол чи оросоор тайлбарла!	
c	But **if *not***, explain it in English!	Хэрэв мэддэггүй бол англиар тайлбарла!	
d	**If,** then, you***'re not going*** today, please come to my home in the evening.	Чи өнөөдөр яваxгүй юм бол орой манайд очоорой!	
e	Please go **if** you ***have eaten*** your meal.	Хоолоо идсэн бол яваарай!	
f	**If** the teacher ***has come***, I want to go and meet him.	Багш ирсэн бол очиж уулзъя!	
g	**If** the shop ***is open***, I want to buy meat.	Дэлгүүр онгойсон бол мах авъя!	
h	**If** you ***have money***, then buy boots for your son.	Чи *мөнгөтэй* бол хүүдээ гутал аваач.	
i	**If** Yondon ***has a bicycle,*** he'll give it to me.	Ендон *дугуйтай* бол надад өгнө.	

j	**If** you don't ***have a book***, then please take mine.	Та *номгүй* бол миний хийгээд ав.	
k	**If** you're ***small***, it's no use to play volleyball.	Чи *намхан* бол гар бөмбөг тоглоод нэмэргүй.	
l	How ***could*** (he) buy such a coat **if** (he) ***did***n't have money?	Мөнгөгүй *байсан* бол ийм дээл яаж авах вэ?	
m	**If** you ***hadn't woken*** me up in the morning, I***'d have been*** late for school.	Өглөө чамайг *сэрээгээгүй (сэн)* бол би хичээлээс хожимдох байжээ.	
n	**If** I ***had come*** earlier, I***'d have met*** the teacher.	Эрт *ирсэн (сэн)* бол багштай уулзах байжээ.	

2.3.2.3.14 Comparison of Modal Particles

1.) Single particles:

a	He is an angry person. (neutral statement)	Тэр ууртай.	
b	**I tell you,** he is an angry person. (warning)	Тэр ууртай шүү.	
c	**But** he is an angry person. (one is worried a bit)	Тэр ууртай даа.	
d	**Why, isn't** he an angry person!	Тэр мөн ууртай яа.	
e	He **IS** an angry person.	Тэр ууртай юм.	
f	He **is indeed** an angry person. ("мөн" can't follow an adjective)	Тэр ууртай хүн мөн.	
g	**Oh yes,** he is an angry person. (I remember it)	Тэр ууртай билээ.	
h	**Well, yes,** he is sort of an angry per-son. ("сан" usually has a positive meaning; therefore better together with "бага зэрэг")	Тэр бага зэрэг ууртайсан.	
i	**Oh dear, he seems to be** an angry person.	Тэр нилээд ууртайдаг.	
j	He is an angry person, **isn't he**?	Тэр ууртай биз.	
k	**Aha,** he is such an angry person! ("бий" can't follow an adjective)	Тэр тийм их ууртай хүн бий.	
l	**I think** he is an angry person.	Тэр ууртай хүн шиг.	
m	**I wonder whether** he is an angry person.	Тэр ууртай бол уу?	
n	**If** he is an angry person, I don't want to meet him.	Тэр ууртай бол би түүнтэй уулзмаар-гүй байна.	

2.) Combinations of particles:

a	**I told you,** he is an angry person! (You should have known better)	Тэр ууртай шүү дээ.	
b	**My,** he **really** is an angry person! (You couldn't know)	Тэр ууртай юм шүү дээ.	
c	**Yes,** he **really** is an angry person!	Тэр ууртай юм даа.	
d	**He seems to be** an angry person.	Тэр ууртай юм аа даа.	
e	**Don't you know**, what angry person he is!	Тэр ямар ууртай билээ дээ.	
f	He is an angry person, **then, isn't he**?	Тэр ууртай биз дээ.	
g	He **might** be angry, **you know**.	Тэр уурлах вий дээ.	
h	**I think, you know, that** he is an angry person.	Тэр ууртай хүн шив дээ.	
i	**Yes indeed,** he is an angry person.	Тэр ууртай юм билээ.	
j	**But** he isn't an angry person! (Why did he have a heart attack?)	Тэр уургүй юмсан.	
k	**I know for sure that** he is an angry person.	Тэр ууртай юмдаг.	
l	He **seems to be** an angry person, **doesn't he**?	Тэр ууртай юм шиг?	
m	**You know,** he **really is** a very angry guy! (for situations, where someone is pleading with words and gesture)	Тэр их ууртай *юм байна шүү дээ.*	

2.3.2.4 FOCUS PARTICLES

The focus particles **form** together with the word they follow, **the focus of the sentence**. It's this focus that gets the **attention**. Some of these focus particles can **express the relationship** they have to the **contextual statement of the whole sentence**. This statement, resp. the theme of the sentence, is sometimes given without being expressed in words. The focus particles indicate whether the focus of the sentence **include** (= additive) or **exclude** (= restrictive) other things.

Examples:

1.) *BAATAR* is ill.	Баатар бол өвчтэй байна.	-> **neutral** focus particle
2.) Also *Baatar* is ill.	Баатар ч өвчтэй байна.	-> **additive** focus particle
3.) **Only** *Baatar* is ill.	Баатар л өвчтэй байна.	-> **restrictive** focus particle

Explanation:
In all of the above sentences, Baatar is the focus. But from the **context** it's clear that there are **other people** involved. The question then is: Are the others ill or not? i.e., how is the relationship between Baatar (and the theme 'illness') and the other people? The additive particle "ч" indicates, that there are other ill people besides Baatar. Baatar is included. Such sentences are, therefore, translated as 'also/even'. The restrictive particle "л" indicates that the others are not ill. Baatar is excluded. Therefore, it's translated as 'only, solely, alone'.

We refer at this place to the **publication** of **Mr. Mizuno Masanori** *"Particles in Modern Mongolian: ч, л"*, which tackles the problems of the focus particles in a very detailed manner.

2.3.2.4.1 Neutral Focus Particle "бол"

This particle has 2 functions:
1.) It serves as a **copula** and **subject indicator**. It can be omitted in colloquial language, because the sentence structure is made clear by either intonation or a pause (**ex. a-c**).
2.) Subjects (**ex. d**) or objects (**ex. e-f**) are **emphasized** with it; rarely attributes (**ex. g**).

a	I **am** a Mongolian.	Би (бол) монгол хүн.	
b	She **is** a teacher.	Тэр (бол) багш.	
c	This **is** very correct.	Энэ (бол) маш зүйтэй.	
d	**The Germans** keep strictly to the time.	Герман хүн бол цагийг нарийн баримталдаг.	
e	**For the Germans,** time is the most precious thing.	Герман хүнд бол цаг хамгийн чухал зүйл.	
f	**To a foreigner** I won't get married.	Би гадаадын хүнтэй бол суухгүй.	
g	**The mountain's** summit, **the water's** source, that's the MPRP!	Уулсын бол оргил нь Усны бол боргил нь МАХН билээ.	

2.3.2.4.2 Additive Focus Particle "ч"

The focus particle "ч" has a **wide usage**. We'll list here the most important functions:

2.3.2.4.2.1 Part of Indefinite Prowords

Most **indefinite prowords** are built with the particle "ч" (**ex. a-c**). Words like "нэг, ганц", etc. often appear together with this particle (**ex. d-e**).

a	It's not allowed to do ***anything***.	*Юу ч* хийж болохгүй.	ᠶᠤᠮᠤ ᠴᠤ ᠬᠢᠵᠦ ᠪᠣᠯᠣᠬᠤᠭᠦᠢ ᠪᠠᠢᠨᠠ ··
b	***Everybody*** understands (that).	*Хэн ч* ойлгоно.	ᠬᠡᠨ ᠴᠤ ᠣᠶᠢᠯᠭᠠᠨᠠ ··
c	***Nobody will*** eat (this).	*Хэн ч* идэхгүй.	ᠬᠡᠨ ᠴᠤ ᠢᠳᠡᠬᠦᠢ ᠪᠠᠢᠨᠠ ··
d	I don't have ***any (at all).***	Надад *нэг ч* байхгүй.	ᠨᠠᠳᠠᠳ ᠨᠢᠭᠡ ᠴᠤ ᠪᠠᠢᠬᠤᠭᠦᠢ ᠪᠠᠢᠨᠠ ··
e	***Not even*** a single person came!	*Ганц ч* хүн ирээгүй.	ᠭᠠᠨᠴ ᠴᠤ ᠬᠦᠮᠦᠨ ᠢᠷᠡᠭᠦᠢ ᠪᠠᠢᠨᠠ ··

2.3.2.4.2.2 Part of Conjunctions

For **ex. a-b,** see page 301 (the particle emphasizes both parts equally); for **ex. c-d**, see p. 324.

a	**Both,** ***Dorj*** **and** ***Gerel,*** came.	*Дорж ч Гэрэл ч* ирлээ.	ᠳᠣᠷᠵ ᠴᠤ ᠭᠡᠷᠡᠯ ᠴᠤ ᠢᠷᠡᠯᠡᠢ ··
b	(I am) working now like mad. ("... working **neither** having ***sleep*** **nor** ***food.***")	Одоо *нойр ч* үгүй, *хоол ч* үгүй ажиллаж байна.	ᠤᠳᠤᠭᠠ ᠨᠤᠤᠷ ᠴᠤ ᠦᠭᠡᠢ ᠬᠣᠯ ᠴᠤ ᠦᠭᠡᠢ ᠠᠵᠢᠯᠯᠠᠵ ᠪᠠᠢᠨᠠ · ᠰᠡᠳᠦᠷᠬᠦᠢ ᠪᠣᠯ ᠤᠳᠤᠭᠠ ᠨᠤᠤᠷ ᠴᠤ ᠬᠣᠯ ᠴᠤ ᠦᠭᠡᠢ ᠠᠵᠢᠯᠯᠠᠵ ᠪᠠᠢᠨᠠ ·
c	***Nevertheless***, it's better to go. ***(Even though it happened this way...)***	*Тэгсэн ч* явах нь дээр.	ᠲᠡᠭᠰᠡᠨ ᠴᠤ ᠶᠠᠪᠠᠬᠤ ᠨᠢ ᠲᠡᠷᠡᠭᠦᠨ ᠪᠣᠯ ᠲᠡᠭᠦᠨ ᠪᠠᠢᠨᠠ ··
d	***Although*** he came, the situation hasn't changed.	Тэр ирсэн *ч гэсэн* байдал өөрчлөгдөөгүй.	ᠲᠡᠷᠡ ᠢᠷᠡᠭᠰᠡᠨ ᠴᠤ ᠭᠡᠰᠡᠨ ᠪᠠᠢᠳᠠᠯ ᠥᠥᠷᠴᠯᠥᠭᠳᠥᠭᠦᠢ ᠪᠠᠢᠨᠠ ··

2.3.2.4.2.3 Part of Modal Constructions

Together with adwords, adjectives and this particle, the following **fixed expression** is formed with the structure being: ***adword + particle "ч" + adjective + modal particle***. It is used when talking to oneself and not to communicate something.

a	***Wow,*** this dress ***is terrific indeed!***	Энэ хувцас *мөн ч сайхан шүү.*	ᠡᠨᠡ ᠬᠤᠪᠴᠠᠰ ᠮᠥᠨ ᠴᠤ ᠰᠠᠶᠬᠠᠨ ᠰᠡᠭᠦᠦ ··
b	***Boy,*** the winter of 1991 has been ***very hard indeed.***	1991 оны өвөл *тун ч хэцүү* байсан *шүү.*	ᠢᠵᠢᠨ ᠪᠢᠰᠢ ᠤᠨ ᠥᠪᠥᠯ ᠲᠤᠮ ᠴᠤ ᠬᠡᠴᠦᠦ ᠪᠠᠢᠰᠠᠨ ᠰᠡᠭᠦᠦ ··
c	**Oh dear,** he ***really*** did something ***too awful!***	Тэр *даан ч (дааны) муухай* хэрэг хийж *дээ.*	ᠲᠡᠷᠡ ᠳᠠᠭᠤᠨ ᠴᠤ ᠪᠢ ·· ᠲᠡᠷᠡ ᠲᠡᠭᠡᠭᠡᠳ ᠴᠤ (ᠲᠡᠭᠦᠭᠡᠳ) ᠮᠤᠭᠠᠢ ᠵᠢᠷᠭᠠᠯᠲᠠᠢ

2.3.2.4.2.4 Expressing "... would ('d) better ..."

In this function, the particle appears together with a verb with a PTC.

a	It has become late. You**'d better** sleep.	Цаг орой боллоо. *Та ч* унт даа.	ᠴᠠᠭ ᠣᠷᠣᠢ ᠪᠣᠯᠯᠤᠤ ·· ᠲᠠ ᠴᠤ ᠤᠨᠲᠠ ᠳᠠ ··
b	**I'd better** go.	*Би ч* явъя. (Би явсан нь дээр.)	ᠪᠢ ᠴᠤ ᠶᠠᠪᠬᠤ ··
c	**He'd better** go.	*Тэр ч* яваг.	ᠲᠡᠷᠡ ᠴᠤ ᠶᠠᠪᠠᠭᠠ ··

2.3.2.4.2.5 Expressing "even/ too"

The particle is widely used in this function. A common translation would be 'even/too', but that's not always the most appropriate one. The reader should keep in mind what is written about the **general meaning** of this additive particle. In these examples, **different** parts of speech are the **focus** of the sentences.

Explanation to the examples:

ex. a-f: it depends on the context, whether '**even**' (хүртэл) or '**also**' ("бас") is meant.
ex. g: **double usage** intensifies the meaning
ex. h: often followed by "**гэсэн**"; this changes the meaning only slightly
ex. i-l: often the particle simply **emphasizes** the focus; in English this would be achieved with intonation
ex. m-n: the particle indicates that something **follows.** The statement is **in relationship** with whatever follows **(additive)**; see opposite meaning with particle "л"

a	**Also/Even** ***you*** didn't come today.	*Өнөөдөр та ч* ирсэнгүй.	ᠥᠨᠥᠳᠥᠷ ᠲᠠ ᠴᠤ ᠢᠷᠡᠭᠰᠡᠨᠭᠦᠢ ᠪᠠᠢᠨᠠ ··
b	**Also/Even** ***today*** you didn't come.	*Өнөөдөр ч* та ирсэнгүй.	ᠥᠨᠥᠳᠥᠷ ᠴᠤ ᠲᠠ ᠢᠷᠡᠭᠰᠡᠨᠭᠦᠢ ᠪᠠᠢᠨᠠ ··
c	**Even/Also** this ***book*** is good.	Энэ *ном ч* сайн.	ᠡᠨᠡ ᠨᠣᠮ ᠴᠤ ᠰᠠᠶᠢᠨ ··
d	**Even/Also** ***this*** book is good.	*Энэ ч* ном сайн.	ᠡᠨᠡ ᠴᠤ ᠨᠣᠮ ᠰᠠᠶᠢᠨ ··
e	**Even/Also** ***I*** will go.	*Би ч* явна. (Би бас явна./ Би хүртэл явна.)	ᠪᠢ ᠴᠤ ᠶᠠᠪᠠᠨᠠ ··
f	**Even/Also** ***I*** will go to Mongolia.	*Би ч* Монголд очно. (Би бас Монголд очно./ Би хүртэл Монголд очно.)	ᠪᠢ ᠴᠤ ᠮᠣᠩᠭᠣᠯ ᠤᠯᠤᠰ ᠳᠤ ᠤᠴᠠᠨᠠ ··
g	***I*** **too** want to go to the 'sum'.	*Би ч* бас өнөөдөр суман дээр очьё.	ᠤᠴᠠᠨᠠ ᠤᠭᠤᠯᠭᠠ ·· ᠪᠢ ᠴᠤ ᠪᠠᠰ ᠥᠨᠥᠳᠥᠷ ᠰᠤᠮᠠᠨ ᠳᠤ ᠤᠴᠢᠶᠠ
h	**Also** ***I*** speak a bit of German.	*Би ч* гэсэн Германаар жаахан ярьдаг.	ᠶᠠᠷᠢᠵᠤ ᠪᠠᠢᠨᠠ ·· ᠪᠢ ᠴᠤ ᠭᠡᠰᠡᠨ ᠭᠡᠷᠮᠠᠨ ᠵᠠᠭᠠᠬᠠᠨ ᠶᠠᠷᠢᠵᠤ ᠪᠠᠢᠨᠠ
i	***THIS HERE*** is OK. (there could be a worse situation)	*Энэ ч* гайгүй.	ᠡᠨᠡ ᠴᠤ ᠭᠠᠶᠭᠤᠢ ᠪᠠᠢᠨᠠ ··
j	If ***I*** had been there, I would have saved **even** ***Dorj***.	*Би ч* тэнд байсан бол Доржийг *ч* аварч болох байсан.	ᠪᠢ ᠴᠤ ᠲᠡᠨᠳ ᠪᠠᠢᠰᠠᠨ ᠪᠤᠯ ᠳᠣᠷᠵ ᠢᠶᠡᠭ ᠴᠤ ᠠᠪᠠᠷᠴ ᠪᠣᠯᠣᠬ ᠪᠠᠢᠰᠠᠨ ᠰᠠᠨ ·
k	Not ***ALL OF US*** are good. There are also bad people in our group.	Бид *цөмөөрөө ч* сайн биш. Манай группэд бас муу хүн байгаа.	ᠪᠢᠳᠡ ᠴᠥᠮᠥᠭᠡᠷ ᠴᠤ ᠰᠠᠶᠢᠨ ᠪᠢᠰᠢ ·· ᠮᠠᠨᠠᠢ ᠭᠷᠤᠫᠫᠡᠳ ᠪᠠᠰ ᠮᠤᠭᠤ ᠬᠦᠮᠦᠨ ᠪᠠᠢᠭᠠᠠ ·
l	Listen then, ***I*** know you and ***YOU*** know me.	*Би ч* таныг танина, *та ч* намайг танина шүү дээ.	ᠰᠤᠨᠭᠤᠭᠠᠷᠠᠢ ᠲᠡᠭᠡᠳᠡ ᠴᠤ ᠶᠠᠮᠠᠷ ᠪᠠᠢᠨᠠ · ᠪᠢ ᠴᠤ ᠴᠢ ᠮᠠᠨᠠᠢᠭ ᠮᠡᠳᠡᠨᠡ ᠰᠡᠭᠦᠦ ᠳᠡᠭᠡ ·
m	I worked ***A LOT***. Now I'm very tired.	*Их ч* ажиллалаа. Одоо их ядарлаа.	ᠢᠬᠡ ᠴᠤ ᠠᠵᠢᠯᠯᠠᠯᠠᠠ ·· ᠤᠳᠤᠭᠠ ᠢᠬᠡ ᠴᠤ ᠶᠠᠳᠠᠷᠯᠠᠠ ··
n	I've seen ***SO MANY*** things. ...	Би *их ч* юм үзлээ.	ᠪᠢ ᠢᠬᠡ ᠴᠤ ᠵᠦᠢᠯ ᠦᠵᠡᠯᠡᠢ ··

2.3.2.4.2.6 Comparison of Functions

a	Let *me* go **too**.	*Би ч* явъя.	
b	***I*** also want to go.	*Би ч* бас явъя.	
c	**Even *I*** want to go.	*Би ч* явъя.	
d	**Even *I*** want to go.	*Би ч* хуртэл явъя.	
e	***I'd better*** go.	*Би ч* явъя.	
f	**Both, *YOU* and *I*** will go.	*Би ч* та *ч* явна.	
g	***Everybody*** may go. (***Whosoever***)	*Хэн ч* явж болно.	
h	***Nobody*** may go.	*Хэн ч* явж болохгүй.	
i	***Even if*** I ***went***, the situation wouldn't change.	Би явсан *ч гэсэн* байдал өөрчлөгдөхгүй.	
j	***Nevertheless***, I'll go.	*Тэгсэн ч* би явна.	
k	***Boy***, I ***really*** went to a ***terrific*** town.	Би *мөн ч гоё* хотод очсон *доо*.	
l	I've gone ***VERY*** far! ...	Би *их ч* хол явлаа. ...	....

2.3.2.4.3 Restrictive Focus Particle "л"

The focus particle "л" has a **wide usage** . We'll look into the most important functions.

2.3.2.4.3.1 Functions

Explanations to the examples:

ex. a-f: different parts of speech are the ***focus*** of the sentence

ex. g-l: the particle is part of a **fixed expressions,** using mainly **verbs** with a VDC; sometimes the meanings vary only slightly and make only sense within the whole context.

ex. m-n: meaning 'I for my part ...'/What concerns me ...'

ex. p: compare with ex. 3a-b of the following table

ex. q: compare with ex. 4a-b of the following table

ex. r-t: note the ***construction***: interrogative proword + "л" + "...-в гэж"

a	**Only** this ***book*** is good.	Энэ *ном л* сайн.	
b	**Only *this*** book is good.	*Энэ л* ном сайн.	
c	**Only *I*** want to go./Let ***me*** go **alone**.	(Ганцхан) *би л* очьё.	
d	Today **only *you*** didn't come.	Өнөөдөр *та л* ирсэнгүй.	
e	**Only *today*** you didn't come.	*Өнөөдөр л* та ирсэнгүй.	
f	The whole day he reads **only *books***. He doesn't do anything else.	Тэр өдөржин *ном л* уншдаг. Өөр юу ч хийдэггүй.	
g	He ***just came*** here, took a book and left.	Тэр энд *ирсэн л* ном аваад явлаа.	
h	He ***keeps coming*** to this place.	Тэр энд *ирдэг л* *байна*.	

i	***Well yes***, he ***has come*** here, ***(but ...)***	Тэр энд *ирсэн (л)* *байна л даа*.	
j	I'***m still reading*** this book.	Би энэ номыг *уншаад л байна*.	
k	He ***came here.*** (indifferent attitude)	Тэр энд *ирсэн л* *байна*.	
l	***Well then, sit down.*** (reluctantly/***Please do sit down.*** (very polite)	Та *суу л даа*.	
m	**Well, *I*** can't translate this.	*Би л* үүнийг орчуулж чадахгүй юм байна.	
n	***I* for my part** will leave tomorrow.	*Би л* маргааш явна.	
o	***This***, **exactly *THIS*** (I) probably need.	Энэ, *энэ л* хэрэгтэй байж магадгүй.	
p	***Well,*** this dress ***is also nice.***	Энэ хувцас *мөн л* *сайхан*.	
q	***So,*** I've seen ***a lot of*** things. (talking is over)	Би *их л* юм үзлээ.	
r	***I can't imagine someone*** giving him money.	*Хэн л* түүнд мөнгө *өгөв гэж*.	
s	***Now,*** Dorj ***will not*** find ***a single thing.***	Дорж *юу л* олж ирэв *гэж*.	
t	***It's impossible that*** he ***should*** be a solid person.	Тэр *ямар л* олигтой хүн байв *гэж*.	

2.3.2.4.3.2 Comparison with Particle "ч"

1a	Let *ME* go **too./Even *I*** want to go./***I'd better*** go.	*Би ч* явъя.	
1b	**Only *I*** want to go./Let ***ME*** go **alone./*I* for my part** want to go.	*Би л* явъя.	
2a	***Everybody*** may go.	*Хэн ч* явж болно.	
2b	***I can't imagine someone*** giving him money.	*Хэн л* түүнд мөнгө өгөв *гэж*.	
3a	***Wow,*** this dress ***is terrific indeed!***	Энэ хувцас *мөн ч* *сайхан шүү*.	
3b	***Well,*** this dress ***is also nice.***	Энэ хувцас *мөн* *л сайхан*.	
4a	I've seen ***A LOT OF*** things. (one starts talking)	Би *их ч* юм үзлээ.	
4b	***So,*** I've seen ***A LOT OF*** things. (theme finished)	Би *их л* юм үзлээ.	
5a	All of us are not good.	Бид цөмөөрөө сайн биш.	
5b	Not ***ALL OF US*** are good.	Бид *цөмөөрөө ч* сайн биш.	
5c	***ALL OF US*** are not good.	*Бид цөмөөрөө л* сайн биш.	

2.4 INTERJECTIONS

The interjections (Latin 'interiectio' = 'to throw in between') are a group of words that have **no lexical or grammatical meanings in themselves.** They are not, like other words, integrated in the sentence, but could stand almost anywhere (see Latin name). Usually though, they are placed at the beginning of the sentence or build a sentence on their own. They can be **repeated** or **combined** with other interjections or particles. All true interjections are **passive roots**, i.e., they haven't derived from other words. On the contrary, **other words have derived** from them (e.g. "урай" [hurrah] -> "урайла-" [to shout hurrahs]; "ёо" [ouch!] -> "ёоло-" [to moan, to groan]). Their **main function** is to **express human feelings**. Furthermore, and that's **very important in Mongolia**, interjections are used in every day life of **animal husbandry**.

2.4.1 Interjections of Emotions

These interjections can be divided into **semantic subgroups.** One and the same interjection can have many different translations, as people are free to use such **abstract** words according to their mood and liking (just imagine the English interjection 'ah' and everything it expresses).
For these reasons, there are **no fixed rules** and the following table is only meant to be a rough guideline. In this table we have also included interjections that are **not true interjections** because they are members of another group of parts of speech (e.g. "яанаа" = verb, "тийм дээ" = proword + particle). But they function like interjections. We have marked such interjections with an asterisk (*). Grammar is not very important when talking about emotions, therefore, we advise the learner not to try to study the **Mongolian grammar** with this chapter!

2.4.1.1 OVERVIEW OF INTERJECTIONS OF EMOTIONS

1. Understanding, Exclamation:

аа	

2. Agreement, Pleasure

за	уухай (ухай)	ай даа	аяа
өөе	тийм дээ *	ашгүй дээ *	

3. Pity, Affection, Regret

эвий	хөөрхий *	хай даа	өө
иш	зайлуул *	халаг	

4. Calling; Attracting Attention

хөөе	хүүе	хөөш	эй

5. Surprise, Astonishment

ооё	хөөх	үгүй *	ер *	оо-ёо-ё	хүүш

6. Difficulty, Despair, Pain

ёо	ёх	яанаа *

7. Laughter, Joy, Happiness

ха ха	гялай	урай	яамай
хий хий	гоё *	ай хө	

8. Disgust, Dislike, Anger

паа(х)	пөө(х)	пий-пай	пэй
пээ(х)	пүү(х)	ее харлаа *	түй
аа-лаа-лаа	аа-яа-яа	ишш	

9. Feeling Temperatures

халхай	халцгай	тий тий

10. Displeasure, Disagreement

чааваас	яалаа гэж *	юу гэж *	ээ
балар	үгүй шүү *	яачихав аа *	

11. Causing an Action

май	аа	ишш/чишш	байз *	эй дээ

12. Fear, Terror

ий	айжий	айжуу

13. Lullaby

бүүвэй

2.4.1.2 USAGE OF INTERJECTIONS OF EMOTIONS

2.4.1.2.1 Expresssing 'Understanding/Exclamation'

This interjection is very **widely used,** like the English 'ah'. It expresses **understanding** (**ex. a-d**) and all kinds of different **exclamations** (**ex. e-h**). Compare with the interjection "аа" on page 357.

a	**Oh,** I see.	Аа, тийм үү?	
b	**Yes,** exactly right!	Аа, яг зөв!	
c	**Yes,** that'll do!	Аа, энэ харин болно!	
d	**Ah,** I just found out the reason for it.	Аа, одоо сая учрыг нь оллоо!	
e	**Oh,** what a beautiful place!	Аа, мөн сайхан газар юм аа!	
f	**Oh I see,** what have you just said?	Аа, чи юу гэнэ ээ?	
g	**Well,** I don't know!	Аа, бүү мэд!	
h	**OK, OK,** I won't forget it!	Аа, аа, яасан ч мартахгүй!	

2.4.1.2.2 Expresssing 'Agreement/Pleasure'

a	**OK,** let's do that!	За, тэгье!	
b	**Enough,** let's stop!	За, болъё!	
c	**OK,** that'll do. (could be slightly angrily)	За, за, болно!	

d	**There you are!** (could be slightly angrily)	За, хар л даа!	
e	**Well**, never mind!	За, тэр ч тийм!	
f	**Well then,** let's go to sleep now.	За хөө, одоо унтах уу даа!	
g	**That's good**, you came back!	Уухай даа, чи яваад ирэв үү!	
h	**Oh good,** you know him, then?	Ухай, ухай, та түү-нийг таньдаг юм уу?	
i	**Well**, my child, try hard! (not necessarily one's own child)	Ай даа, хүү минь, хичээгээрэй!	
j	**Exactly**, you're right!	Ай даа, таны хэлдэг зөв дөө!	
k	**Wow**, that's terrific!	Аяа, үнэхээр сайхан даа!	
l	**Oh**, what a beautiful land!	Аяа, ямар сайхан нутаг вэ!	
m	**Yeah**, what is it?	Өөе, юу гээв?	
n	**Oh**, please take a seat here. (upon seeing the guests, one rejoices)	Өөе, та нар наашаа суу!	
o	**That's how it is!** Let's stop talking about this now.	Тийм дээ, одоо энэ тухай яриагаа дуусгая!	
p	**Yes, you're right!** How long then should (I) make (my) old mother suffer!	Тийм дээ, хэдий болтол хөгшин эхээ зовоохов дээ.	
q	**Wonderful!** You came back! (wish came true)	Ашгүй дээ, та яваад ирэв үү!	
r	**Wonderful!** That's the book I wanted to buy.	Ашгүй дээ, би энэ номыг олж авъя гэж бодож байсан юм.	

2.4.1.2.3 Expresssing 'Pity/Affection/Regret'

The interjections of the first group (**ex. a-i**) express a mixture of **affection and pity** and are not used for tragic circumstances. The interjections of the second group (**ex. j-l**) express **deep regret** and are often used in connection with death.

a	**Oh**, my poor son is probably having a hard time! ("ядра-" not in literal meaning)	Эвий, муу хүү минь ядарч яваа байх даа!	
b	**Oh**, who on earth would take something like that upon himself! ("what kind of human seed...")	Эвий, ямар хүний үр ингэж яваа юм бол доо!	
c	**Bother!** Everything spilled!	Иш, бүр асгачихлаа!	
d	**What a shame**! And I trusted him so much! (the meaning of "чаавааc" is dominant)	Иш чаавааc, би түүнд маш их итгэж байсан юм!	

e	**The poor thing**! Some time in the future (she)'ll make it!	Хөөрхий дөө, хэзээ нэг хүний зэрэгт хүрнэ дээ!	
f	**Oh, the poor guy,** he's totally wretched! ("ядра-" not in literal meaning)	Хөөрхий зайлуул, тэр их ядарч дээ!	
g	**Oh, poor** thing! ("animal")	Хөөрхий амьтан !	
h	**Oh, the poor thing,** (she) seems to be homesick.	Зайлуул, гэрээ сана-сан юм шиг байна!	
i	**Oh, the poor thing**! Where, then, might his own flock be?	Зайлуул, ижил сүрэг нь хаана яваа юм бол доо!	
j	**Oh no**, this can't be true! ("what shall we say then!")	Хай даа, юу гэх вэ дээ!	
k	**Oh no,** what a pity, the nice lad!	Ээ халаг, хайран сайхан залуу!	
l	**Oh,** what a pity!	Өө, ямар азгүй юм бэ!	

2.4.1.2.4 Expresssing 'Calling/Attracting Attention'

Used to call a person far away (**ex. a-d**) and to attract the attention of others (**ex. e-h**). These interjections can be used **interchangeably** among themselves.

a	**Hey!** That's forbidden!	Хөөе, тэгэж болохгүй!	
b	**Hey**, come here!	Хөөе , чи нааш ир!	
c	**Hey,** Dooorj!	Хүүе, Дорж оо!	
d	**Hey**, is Dorj with you?	Хүүе , наана чинь Дорж байна уу?	
e	**Hey**, what did I tell you!	Хөөш, би чамд юу гэж хэллээ!	
f	**Hey,** don't you have ears! ("Do you have ears?")	Хөөш, чамд чих байна уу!	
g	**Hey**, we're over here!	Эй, бид нар энд байна!	
h	**Hey**, that's enough of what you're doing there!	Эй, наадах чинь бүр болохоо байлаа!	

2.4.1.2.5 Expresssing 'Surprise/Astonishment'

The interjections in **ex. a-d** are used among good friends and express **slight mockery**.

a	**Wow**! How elegant you've become!	Ооё, чи чинь ямар мундаг болчихоо вэ!	
b	**Wow**! I'd never thought that you would speak Mongolian that well.	Ооё, би чамайг мон-голоор ийм сайн ярь-даг гэж бодсонгүй!	
c	**THAT'S what it is!** Well, then, just take me and go!	Оо-ёо-ё, тэгвэл чи на-майг аваад яв л даа!	

d	**Oh, I see!** Is this then so important to you? (argument)	Оо–ёо–ё, энэ чинь тийм чухал юм уу?	
e	**What?** For so many years have you been living in Mongolia?!	Хөөх, та Монголд тийм олон жил амьдарч байгаа юм уу?	
f	**Oh my gosh!** How do you live with such a small salary?	Хөөх, ийм бага цалингаар яаж амьдарч байна вэ?	
g	**For heaven's sake!** Where on earth did you come from!	Хүүш, чи чинь хаа-наас гараад ирэв ээ!	
h	**Oh my gosh!** What are you doing, then?	Хүүш, чи яаж байгаа юм бэ!	
i	**I don't believe it!** What a strange guy you are!	Үгүй, чи ямар сонин хүн бэ!	
j	**I don't believe it!** YOU're the kind of person who hangs around such a place!	Үгүй ер өө, чи энд ингэж явдаг хүн бий!	
k	**Can you believe that!** He's never satisfied, what!	Хөө ер өө, ямар их даварсан амьтан бэ!	

2.4.1.2.6 Expresssing 'Difficulty/Despair/Pain'

The interjection "ёх" (**ex. b-c**) can be included into this group when remembering that after **despair, relief** usually follows (**ex. c**).

a	**Ouch!** Someone has stomped on my foot!	Ёо ёо, хөл гишгэчихлээ!	
b	He said, "**Ah!**" and stretched several times.	Тэр «ёх!» гэж хэлээд хэдэн удаа суниав.	
c	**Oh, well then**, now I'm at ease!	Ёх, ингэж нэг санаа амардаг юм байж!	
d	**Oh shoot!** I've totally forgotten his order!	Яанаа, би түүний за-хисныг таг мартчихаж!	
e	**Dear me!** How terrible this is!	Яанаа, яасан аймаар юм бэ!	

2.4.1.2.7 Expresssing "Laughter, Joy, Happiness"

Male laughter (**ex. a-b**); female laughter (**ex. c**); mostly used by children (**ex. d-f**).

a	**Haha,** that's where you've been.	Ха ха, чи чинь энд байсан юм уу?	
b	Suddenly he started laughing in a loud voice, "**Haha!**"	Тэр гэнэт «Ха ха!» гэж чанга инээв.	
c	**Hihi,** you're such a funny guy, you really are.	Хий хий, ямар сонин амьтан бэ, чи чинь!	

d	**Great!** It has been decided that I go.	Гялай гялай, миний явах шийд гарчихжээ!	
f	**Yippee,** I'll go with Daddy!	Гоё гоё, би аавтайгаа явна!	
g	**Hurrah,** now we've become totally free.	Урай, бид нар одоо бүрэн чөлөөтэй болсон!	
h	**Hurrah!** They're coming tomorrow? How nice!	Урай, тэд нар маргааш ирэх үү? Ямар гоё вэ!	
i	**Hup, two, three, four,** we are the loyal soldiers of the People's Party, **hup, two, three, four!**	Ай хө, ай хө, ардын намын журамт цэргээ хө хө! (from a song)	
j	**Terrific**! I heard that she found a job.	Яамай даа, тэр ажилд орсон гэнэ.	

2.4.1.2.8 Expresssing 'Disgust/Dislike/Anger'

In Mongolian, **disgust and pity** are sometimes very close (**ex. c, d, e**). In **ex. j and l,** the predicate dropped, therefore the accusative case suffix is at the end of the sentence.

a	**Ugh**! I didn't imagine that you were such a person!	Паа, би чамайг ийм хүн гэж бодсонгүй!	
b	**Ugh!** What kind of smell is *that*?	Паах, энэ юуны үнэр вэ?	
c	**For heaven's sake!** So you have lost all your money?	Пээ, чи тэгээд бүх мөнгөө алдчихсан уу?	
d	**Oh no,** you mean, you haven't met her then?	Пээх, чи түүнтэй тэгээд уулзаагүй хэрэг үү?	
e	**Good night**, I've completely forgotten (this).	Пөө, би бүр мартчихаж!	
f	**Bloody murder**, what kind of terrible smell is that?	Пөөх, ямар муухай өмхий үнэр вэ?	
g	**Ugh,** that can't be!	Пүү, ёстой хэрэг алга аа!	
h	**Darn**, what an unreliable guy you are!	Пүүх, чи ч ёстой алдаг нөхөр юм аа!	
i	**Ugh,** I can't stand it any longer here! (because of smell, heat, etc.)	Пий–пай, энд ч ёстой байж суухын арга алга аа.	
j	**Bother**, now [look] at that! (disappointed, slightly angry)	Ишш, байж байгаа царайг нь ээ!	
k	**Darn**, what a wicked, lying beast you are!	Түй, ямар сүнсгүй худал ярьдаг амьтан бэ!	
l	**Dear me**! (Look) at this child!	Пэй, энэ хүүхдийн байж байгааг!	

m	**Oh boy**! Surely this child is showing us what a 'mess' is!	Аа-лаа-лаа, энэ хүүхэд ч ёстой нэг заваарахыг үзүүлж өгөө шив дээ!	ᠠᠠ-ᠯᠠᠠ-ᠯᠠᠠ ᠡᠨᠡ ᠬᠦᠦᠬᠡᠳ ᠴ ᠶᠡᠰᠲᠣᠢ ᠨᠡᠭ ᠵᠠᠪᠠᠭᠠᠷᠠᠬᠤᠭ ᠦᠵᠡᠭᠯᠡᠵ ᠥᠭᠥᠭᠡᠭᠡ ᠱᠢᠪ ᠳᠡᠭᠡᠢ!
n	**You lucky dog!** You've got it made!	Аа-яа-яа, чи ч ёстой гарч өгч дээ!	ᠠᠠ-ᠶᠠ-ᠶᠠ ᠴᠢ ᠴ ᠶᠡᠰᠲᠣᠢ ᠭᠠᠷᠴ ᠥᠭᠴ ᠳᠡᠭᠡᠢ!
o	**Dear Lord!** How on earth did (you) get into such a predicament? (pityful)	Ээ харлаа, яаж яваад ийм юманд орчихдог байна аа!	ᠡᠡ ᠬᠠᠷᠯᠠᠠ ᠶᠠᠵᠤ ᠶᠠᠪᠠᠳ ᠢᠶᠡᠮ ᠶᠤᠮᠠᠨᠳ ᠣᠷᠴᠢᠬᠳᠣᠭ ᠪᠠᠶᠢᠨ᠎ᠠ ᠠᠠ!

2.4.1.2.9 Expresssing 'Feelings of Temperatures'

Such interjections tend to be used **repeatedly**.

a	**Ouch!** I've burned my hand!	Халхай халхай, гар түлчихлээ!	ᠬᠠᠯᠬᠠᠢ ᠬᠠᠯᠬᠠᠢ ᠭᠠᠷ ᠲᠦᠯᠴᠢᠬᠯᠡᠡ!
b	**Ouch!** Is this tea hot!	Халцгай халцгай, яасан халуун цай вэ!	ᠬᠠᠯᠴᠭᠠᠢ ᠬᠠᠯᠴᠭᠠᠢ ᠶᠠᠰᠠᠨ ᠬᠠᠯᠠᠭᠤᠨ ᠴᠠᠢ ᠪᠡ!
c	**Brr!** I'm cold!	Тий тий, хөлдөж үхлээ!	ᠲᠢᠢ ᠲᠢᠢ ᠬᠥᠯᠳᠥᠵ ᠦᠬᠯᠡᠡ!
d	**Brr!** What a bad, cool day it is today!	Тий тий, өнөөдөр мөн ч зэвүүн өдөр байна даа!	ᠲᠢᠢ ᠲᠢᠢ ᠥᠨᠥᠥᠳᠥᠷ ᠮᠥᠨ ᠴ ᠵᠡᠪᠦᠦᠨ ᠥᠳᠥᠷ ᠪᠠᠶᠢᠨ᠎ᠠ ᠠᠠ!

2.4.1.2.10 Expresssing 'Displeasure/Disagreement'

a	**Oh heck**, you've grown up that much and still you can't eat properly!	Чааваас, ийм том болчихоод хоолоо ч идэж чадахгүй юм!	ᠴᠠᠠᠪᠠᠠᠰ ᠢᠶᠡᠮ ᠲᠣᠮ ᠪᠣᠯᠴᠢᠬᠣᠣᠳ ᠬᠣᠣᠯᠣᠣ ᠴ ᠢᠳᠡᠵ ᠴᠠᠳᠠᠬᠭᠦᠢ ᠶᠤᠮ!
b	**Oh bother,** see, all our plans came to nothing!	Ээ балар аа, ингээд хамаг төлөвлөгөө нурлаа шүү дээ!	ᠡᠡ ᠪᠠᠯᠠᠷ ᠠᠠ, ᠢᠩᠭᠡᠡᠳ ᠬᠠᠮᠠᠭ ᠲᠥᠯᠥᠪᠯᠥᠭᠥᠥ ᠨᠤᠷᠯᠠᠠ ᠱᠦᠦ ᠳᠡᠭᠡ!
c	**Why, of course** I'll help you! (slightly angrily)	Яалаа гэж, би чамд туслалгүй яахав!	ᠶᠠᠭᠠᠯᠠᠠ ᠭᠡᠵ, ᠪᠢ ᠴᠠᠮᠳ ᠲᠤᠰᠯᠠᠯᠭᠦᠢ ᠶᠠᠬᠠᠪ!
d	**Really,** you don't need to try to change my mind.	Үгүй шүү, чи намайг ятгаад хэрэггүй!	ᠦᠭᠦᠢ ᠱᠦᠦ, ᠴᠢ ᠨᠠᠮᠠᠭ᠋ᠠᠢ ᠶᠠᠲᠭᠠᠠᠳ ᠬᠡᠷᠡᠭᠭᠦᠢ!
e	**What's this supposed to be**! That's my best friend, you know!	Юу гэж, тэр чинь миний хамгийн сайн найз байхгүй юү!	ᠶᠤᠤ ᠭᠡᠵ, ᠲᠡᠷ ᠴᠢᠨᠢ ᠮᠢᠨᠢᠢ ᠬᠠᠮᠭᠢᠢᠨ ᠰᠠᠢᠨ ᠨᠠᠶᠢᠵ ᠪᠠᠶᠬᠭᠦᠢ ᠶᠤᠦ!
f	**What's the matter**! Why should you get so worked up!	Яачихав аа, юундаа уурлаад байгаа юм бэ!	ᠶᠠᠴᠢᠬᠠᠪ ᠠᠠ, ᠶᠤᠤᠨᠳᠠᠠ ᠤᠤᠷᠯᠠᠠᠳ ᠪᠠᠶᠭᠠᠠ ᠶᠤᠮ ᠪᠡ!

2.4.1.2.11 Expresssing 'Causing an Action'

Different appeals are expressed with one word: 'to take' (**ex. a-b**); 'to wait' (**ex. c-d**; rather impolite); 'to be quiet' (**ex. e**); 'to answer' (**ex. f-h**); 'to take heed to an advice' (**ex. i**). Compare "aa" in the **ex. f-h** with the interjection "aa" on page 351.

a	**Here**, take this and off with you!	Май, үүнийг аваад хурдан явж үз!	ᠮᠠᠢ, ᠦᠦᠨᠢᠶᠡᠭ ᠠᠪᠠᠠᠳ ᠬᠤᠷᠳᠠᠨ ᠶᠠᠪᠵ ᠦᠵ!
b	**Here**, come on take this!	Май, үүнийг ав ав!	ᠮᠠᠢ, ᠦᠦᠨᠢᠶᠡᠭ ᠠᠪ ᠠᠪ!
c	**Wait a minute**, I know it!	Байз, би мэдэж байна!	ᠪᠠᠢᠵ, ᠪᠢ ᠮᠡᠳᠡᠵ ᠪᠠᠶᠨ᠎ᠠ!
d	**For heaven's sake!** I don't have time. Wait a minute.	Байз, би завгүй байна. Жаахан хүлээж бай.	ᠪᠠᠢᠵ, ᠪᠢ ᠵᠠᠪᠭᠦᠢ ᠪᠠᠶᠨ᠎ᠠ. ᠵᠠᠠᠬᠠᠨ ᠬᠦᠯᠡᠡᠵ ᠪᠠᠢ.
e	**Hush,** a baby is sleeping in this room.	Чишш (ишш), энэ өрөөнд нялх хүүхэд унтаж байна.	ᠴᠢᠰᠰ (ᠢᠰᠰ), ᠡᠨᠡ ᠥᠷᠥᠥᠨᠳ ᠨᠢᠶᠠᠯᠬ ᠬᠦᠦᠬᠡᠳ ᠤᠨᠲᠠᠵ ᠪᠠᠶᠨ᠎ᠠ.
f	Is Dorj there? **Eh**?	Дорж тэнд байна уу, аа?	ᠳᠣᠷᠵ ᠲᠡᠨᠳ ᠪᠠᠶᠨ᠎ᠠ ᠤᠤ, ᠠ᠎ᠠ?
g	Can we go? **Eh**?	Бид нар явж болох уу, аа?	ᠪᠢᠳ ᠨᠠᠷ ᠶᠠᠪᠵ ᠪᠣᠯᠣᠬ ᠤᠤ, ᠠ᠎ᠠ?
h	**I beg your pardon.** What did you say?	Аа? Юу гэнэ ээ?	ᠠ᠎ᠠ? ᠶᠤᠤ ᠭᠡᠨᠡ ᠡᠡ?
i	**Now listen**, if you're not very careful it's going to be difficult. (warning)	Эй дээ, тун болгоомжтой явахгүй бол хэцүү шүү!	ᠡᠢ ᠳᠡᠭᠡ, ᠲᠤᠨ ᠪᠣᠯᠭᠣᠣᠮᠵᠲᠠᠢ ᠶᠠᠪᠬᠤᠭᠦᠢ ᠪᠣᠯ ᠬᠡᠴᠦᠦ ᠱᠦᠦ!

2.4.1.2.12 Expresssing 'Fear/Terror'

Such interjections are mainly used when **dealing with children**.

a	**Boo**, a ghost! ("rock ghost")	Ий, хадны мангаа!	ᠢᠢ, ᠬᠠᠳᠠᠨ ᠤ ᠮᠠᠩᠭᠠ!
b	**Ugh,** how steep it goes down here!	Ий, ямар аймаар эгц уруу вэ!	ᠢᠢ, ᠶᠠᠮᠠᠷ ᠠᠶᠮᠠᠠᠷ ᠡᠭᠴ ᠤᠷᠤᠤ ᠪᠡ!
c	**Hey**, you're not allowed to take this!	Айжий, үүнийг авч болохгүй!	ᠠᠶᠤᠰᠢᠭ, ᠦᠦᠨᠢᠶᠡᠭ ᠠᠪᠴ ᠪᠣᠯᠣᠬᠭᠦᠢ!
d	**Hey**, this man here is going to tell you off!	Айжуу, айлын аав загнана шүү!	ᠠᠶᠤᠰᠢᠭᠤ, ᠠᠭᠤᠯ ᠤᠨ ᠠᠪ ᠵᠠᠭᠨᠠᠨ᠎ᠠ ᠱᠦᠦ!

2.4.1.2.13 Expresssing 'Lullaby'

a	**Hushaby,** sleep baby sleep! ("..... do sleep! my goggle-eyed seed, do sleep.")	Бүүвэй, бүүвэй, унт даа! Бүлтгэр үр минь, нойрс доо!	ᠪᠦᠦᠸᠡᠢ, ᠪᠦᠦᠸᠡᠢ, ᠤᠨᠲ ᠳᠠᠠ! ᠪᠦᠯᠲᠭᠡᠷ ᠦᠷ ᠮᠢᠨᠢ, ᠨᠣᠢᠷᠰ ᠳᠣᠣ!

2.4.2 Interjections of Husbandry

Because the Mongolians have been engaged in animal husbandry **for centuries**, there are **numerous interjections** that deal with animals. Here is only a selected list:

2.4.2.1. OVERVIEW OF INTERJECTIONS OF HUSBANDRY

They can be divided into the following groups:
- Interjections to call animals
- Interjections to drive animals
- Interjections of miscellaneous usage

Such interjections could **vary** from 'aimag' to 'aimag' or even from 'sum' to 'sum'.

2.4.2.1.1 Interjections to Call Animals

a	cattle	өөв өөв	
b	camels	тоор тоор	
c	cattle and camels	хаа	
d	cattle and camels	хөч	
e	goats	зуу зуу	
f	goats	цүү цүү	
g	goats	чээг чээг	
h	mares	гуруй	
i	horses	хайя хайя	
j	horses	хөөр хөөр	
k	sheep and lambs	хоолбой хоолбой	
l	chickens	гүд гүд	

2.4.2.1.2 Interjections to Drive Animals

a	horses	чү чү	
b	dogs	туу туу	
c	dogs	жов жов	
d	goats	чаа чаа	
e	cattle and camels	хөж хөж/ хаа хөж	

2.4.2.1.3 Interjections of Miscellaneous Usage

a	used when milking the sheep (so that they are quiet) or to cause the ewes to feed the lambs	тойг тойг	
b	used to separate sheep and lambs, cows and calves.	гүүргий гүүргий	
c	used to stop a cart	тар тар	
d	used to cause camels to lie down	сөг сөг	
e	used to cause camels to get up	хөөг	
f	used to cause camels to urinate	шээр шээр	

Part IV:

Syntax

Chapter 1:
Kinds and Types of Sentences
pages 360-366

Chapter 2:
Relationship between Words
pages 367-370

Chapter 3:
Relationship between Parts of a Sentence
pages 371-388

Chapter 4:
Relationship between Clauses
pages 389-400

Chapter 5:
Punctuation
pages 401-405

In this Part IV, we talk about **syntax** (Greek 'syntaxis' = 'composition, order'), which is how to compose a sentence. This part is **very important** for English speaking people, as Mongolian and English languages **differ a great deal** in syntactic structure. Without a basic knowledge of the Mongolian syntax, it's impossible to learn the language properly.

Important:
Right at the beginning we have to give **a clear definition of 'predicate'**, as different languages define this term very differently.

In English, the predicate is defined as

'the *part of a sentence* which makes a **statement about the subject**'

My son *is ill*
Does your father *work in the garden today?*
I *really like him a lot.*

This means that object, attributes and adverbials are **all part of the predicate**.

In Mongolian, however, the definition is different (like the German definition):

> ☞ **The predicate is 'the** *verbal part of a sentence* **which makes the statement about the subject'**

My son *is* ill.
Does your father *work* in the garden today?
I really *like* him a lot.

This means that objects, attributes and adverbials are **NOT part of the predicate**, but **closely linked** with it, as is the subject.

As you read on, **please keep this definition in mind**!

1. KINDS AND TYPES OF SENTENCES

1.1 Kinds of Sentences

Each and every verbal statement has **its intention**. The speaker wants to declare, ask, command, threaten, praise, shout, etc. Based on the intention, we can divide the sentences into **different kinds**. Each of these sentences **can also be negated** by using **negative particles** (see pages 328ff) and **verbs which** usually take an **NDS** (see pages 139ff).

1.1.1 Declarative Sentences

Affirmative sentences are built with verbs with a *TTS* (**ex. a-c**). **Negative sentences** take verbs with an NDS (**ex. e-g**). **A period** (brit. 'full stop') follows the declarative sentences.

a	We came to Mongolia in 1993.	Бид нар 1993 онд Монголд ирсэн.	бид нар мянга есөн зуун ерэн гуравт монголд ирсэн.
b	My younger sister read that book.	Миний дүү тэр номыг уншив.	миний дүү тэр номыг уншив.
c	The day after tomorrow I will go to the countryside.	Би нөгөөдөр хөдөө явна.	би нөгөөдөр хөдөө явна.

d	Tomorrow I want to buy a jacket at the shop.	Би маргааш дэлгүүрээс хүрэм авах гэсэн юм.	маргааш би дэлгүүрээс хүрэм авах гэсэн юм. би маргааш дэлгүүрээс хүрэм авмаар байна.
e	He hasn't come.	Тэр ирээгүй.	тэр ирээгүй.
f	I won't come to the meeting tomorrow.	Би маргааш хуралд очихгүй.	би маргааш хуралд ч битгий явлаа.
g	He didn't eat his meal.	Тэр хоолоо идсэнгүй.	тэр хоолоо идсэнгүй.
h	This is not a teacher.	Энэ – багш биш.	энэ – багш биш.

1.1.2 Interrogative Sentences

Affirmative interrogative sentences are built in two ways:
• with *interrogative particles* (see pages 327-328) and verbs with an NDS: **ex. a-f**
• with some *modal particles*: (see pages 335ff): **ex. g-h**
Negative sentences are built with verbs with an NDS (**ex. i-j**).
Interrogative sentences close with a **question mark.**

a	Where are you going now?	Чи одоо хаачих *вэ*?	чи одоо хаачих вэ?
b	What, then, is there?	Тэнд юу байгаа юм *бэ*?	тэнд юу байгаа юм бэ?
c	What time today will (we) gather?	Өнөөдөр хэдэн цагт цугларах юм *(бэ)*?	(вэ) ө. өнөөдөр хэдэн цагт цугларах вэ?
d	Can you speak Mongolian?	Та монгол хэлээр ярьж чадах *уу*?	та монгол хэлээр ярьж чадах уу?
e	My son, did you eat your meal?	Хүү минь, хоолоо идсэн *үү*?	хүү минь, хоолоо идсэн үү?
f	Do you need this book?	Энэ ном танд хэрэгтэй *юу*?	энэ ном танд хэрэгтэй юу?
g	When *might* he have met his friend?	Тэр найзтайгаа хэзээ уулзсан *бол*?	ө. тэр хэзээ найзтайгаа уулзсан бол уу?
h	You'll come, *won't you*?	Чи ирнэ *биз*?	чи ирнэ биз?
i	Why aren't you going?	Чи яагаад яваҳгүй байна *вэ*?	чи яагаад явахгүй байгаа вэ?
j	Didn't you go to the meeting?	Чи хуралд очсонгүй *юу*?	чи хуралд очсон юу?

1.1.3 Imperative Sentences

Imperative sentences are mostly built in the following two ways:
• with verbs with a PTS (p. 175ff): **ex. a-e**
• with the help of *modal constructions*: **ex. f-i**
Negative sentences can be built in both ways (**ex. e,g,i**) and also differently (**ex. j-k**).
Imperative sentences are closed with an **exclamation mark**.

a	Go now quickly!	Та нар одоо түргэн явцгаа!	та нар одоо түргэн явцгаа!
b	Go there, **please**!	Чи тийшээ яваарай!	чи тийшээ яваарай!
c	**Please** read me this paragraph!	Надад энэ сэдвийг уншиж өгөөч!	надад энэ сэдвийг уншиж өгөөч! надад ч би энэ догол мөрийг уншиж өгөөч!
d	Go away from here!	Энд ээс явж үз!	энд ээс явж үз!

e	**Please** do not go!	Чи битгий яваарай!	
f	Tomorrow, I *need* to have a tooth pulled!	Би маргааш шүдээ авахуулах *хэрэгтэй*!	
g	You *shouldn't* do that!	Чи тэгэх *хэрэггүй*!	
h	I *must* learn Mongolian!	Би монгол хэл сурах *ёстой*!	
i	You *mustn't* go there!	Чи очих *ёсгүй*!	
j	Entrance forbidden!	Орохыг үл зөвшөөрнө!	
k	Woe betide you if you give this book to others!	Энэ номыг хүнд өгөв өө!	

1.1.4 Exclamatory Sentences

Exclamatory sentences are used to express different emotions. They are mostly built in these three ways:

- like declarative sentences, but having a different *intonation* (the vowel of the last syllable of the sentence is pronounced *long* (**ex. a-d;** note that in **ex. d,** the last vowel is evident only in Classical Script; when emphasized, it shows in Cyrillic too)
- having the form of interrogative sentences with *question words* (**ex. e-g**)
- with *particles* (**ex. h**)

Exclamatory sentences could be **negative** (**ex. d,g**). They end with an **exclamation mark**.

a	The car CAME!	Машин ирлээ шүү!	
b	Sambuu already LEFT!	Самбуу аль хэдийн явсан!	
c	I wanted to go too!	Би ч гэсэн явах юмсан!	
d	I'm **NOT** a liar!	Би худал ярьдаг хүн бишээ!	
e	*When* will my younger brother have become like that!	Миний дүү *хэзээ* ийм болж чадах вэ!	
f	*What* a beautiful horse!	*Ямар* сайхан морь вэ!	
g	*What* an unlucky person I am!	Би *ямар* азгүй хүн бэ!	
h	*Why*, isn't that nice!	Энэ мөн сайхан *аа*!	

1.2 Types of Sentences

There are different types of sentences depending on their **form or structure**. A sentence is a complicated thing and can be looked at from **different perspectives**. In syntax, the fourth perspective below is the **most important** one:

Overview:

1. Has the sentence **one or two components?**	**Sentence with one component:** Одоо хүйтэрч байна. (only predicate)	**Sentence with both components:** Дүү минь хичээлдээ явсан. (subject and predicate)
2. Is the sentence **complete or incomplete?**	**Incomplete sentence:** Байна.	**Complete sentence:** Миний ах гэртээ байна.
3. Is the sentence **short or extended?**	**Short sentence:** Эзэж луулж байна. (without object, attribute, adverbial)	**Extended sentence:** Эзэж өглөө бүр гал тогооны өрөөнд дуулдаг.
4. Is the sentence **simple or combined?**	**Simple sentence:** Би даарахгүй байна. (one predicate)	**Combined sentence:** Би даарч байвч гэртээ харьмааргүй байна. (two predicates)

1.2.1 One-Component and Two-Component Sentences

Each sentence has two major components: **predicate and subject**. Sometimes though, one or the other component could be omitted out of **pragmatic or stylistic** reasons.

1.2.1.1 ONE-COMPONENT SENTENCES (ELLIPSIS)

When either the subject or the predicate component is omitted, it's called 'ellipsis' (meaning: 'omission'). There are three subgroups:

- Sentence without subject component
- Sentence without predicate component
- Word-Sentences

1.2.1.1.1 Sentences without Subject Component

In the following cases, the subject can be left out:

1.2.1.1.1.1 Subject and Predicate are one and the same

This is **not often** the case, usually with verbs in regard to the weather like "бороошиг-" (to rain), "зунших-" (to become summer), "ганших-" (to be a draught), "хүйтрэ-" (to become cold), "дулаара-" (to become warm), etc. In English, the ***correlate "it"*** takes the place of the omitted subject.

a	*It* rained a lot in summer.	Зундаа их бороошив.	
b	Now *it* gets colder.	Одоо хүйтэрч байна.	

1.2.1.1.1.2 Generalization

The subject is omitted because it can't be defined. Such one-component sentences are widely used in **proverbs** and **sayings**. The verbal predicate takes an **NDS**.

a	To lead somebody by the nose. ("to hold a snake by someone's hands")	Хүний гараар могой бариулах.	

b	Don't count your chickens before they're hatched. ("to take off the boots without having seen water; to tuck up the skirt without having seen a mountain")	Ус үзээгүй байж гутал тайлах. Уул үзээгүй байж хормой шуух.	
c	– to have 10 hourly lessons each week	–Долоо хоног бүр арван цагийн хичээл хийх.	

1.2.1.1.1.3 Context allows Subject to be Omitted

The subject may be omitted when a verb suffix (**PTS**) indicates who the subject is (**ex. a-b**), or when the whole context of the conversation is clear without mentioning the subject. Omitting the subject is a very common thing to do in Mongolian, but impossible in English. That's why we sometimes, in the translation, give a subject in parentheses (**ex. c**), use either the neutral 'one' (**ex.d**) or the 2nd person singular 'you' (**ex. e**), or even put the sentence into the passive voice (**ex. f**).

a	Labor for your motherland!	Эх орныхоо төлөө хөдөлмөрлөгтүн! (2nd person)	
b	Let's learn a foreign language!	Гадаад хэл сурц-гаая! (1st person)	
c	When **(people)** carry heavy loads, **(they)** become strong.	Хүнд ачаа өргөвөл хүчтэй болно.	
d	When **one** runs up a mountain, **one** gets tired quickly.	Уул өөд гүйхлээр хурдан ядардаг.	
e	When **you** start a work, **you** have to finish it.	Ажил эхэлбэл дуусгах хэрэгтэй.	
f	Tomorrow, two letters **will be sent** with Bat.	Маргааш Батаар хоёр захиа явуулна.	

1.2.1.1.2 Sentences without Predicate Component

Such sentences appear often in poems, titles, newpaper heading, etc. They are a **widely used stylistic element** of language.

a	On a day in the fall 1991.	1991 оны намрын тэр нэг өдөр.	
b	A single yurt in the midst of Gobi's snowy steppe.	Цасан талын дунд говийн ганц айл.	

1.2.1.1.3 Word-Sentences

There aren't too many words which can build a sentence on their own: "за, үгүй, мөн, биш, тийм, зүйтэй, худлаа, зөв, буруу, нээрээ, магадгүй, болзошгүй," etc.

a	Right.	Тийм ээ.	
b	Maybe.	Магадгүй.	
c	Indeed.	Нээрээ.	

1.2.1.2 TWO-COMPONENT SENTENCES

These are simple subject + predicate sentences which form the normal sentence pattern. Since they are discussed throughout the book, we will not do so here.

1.2.2 Complete and Incomplete Sentences

Sometimes, it's important to talk in detail and make complete sentences. Other times, it's more important to be brief and therefore make incomplete sentences.

1.2.2.1 COMPLETE SENTENCES

From a structural point of view, this is the normal sentence, but it **isn't used for dialogue**!

a	-Is your older brother here? **-My older brother is here.**	–Ах чинь байна уу? **–Манай ах байна.**	
b	-Who is going in this car? **-We're going in this car.**	–Энэ машинаар хэн явах вэ? **–Энэ машинаар бид нар явна.**	

1.2.2.2 INCOMPLETE SENTENCES

In everyday **dialogues**, it's not common to make whole sentences. But such incomplete sentences may not be taken out of their context. Contrary to the one-component sentence, this incomplete sentence could be turned into a complete sentence (see examples above).

a	-Is your older brother here? **-Yes.** ("**Is.**")	–Ах чинь байна уу? –Байна.	
b	-Who is going in this car? **-We** (are).	–Энэ машинаар хэн явах вэ? –Бид нар.	
c	-Have you eaten? **-Yes.** ("**Eaten.**")	–Та хоолоо идсэн үү? –Идсэн.	

1.2.3 Short and Extended Sentences

Depending on whether the sentence is **made up of only the main parts of the sentence**, or is extended with other parts, we speak of a 'short' or an 'extended' sentence.

1.2.3.1 SHORT SENTENCES

A short sentence is made up of **subject** and *predicate* only.

a	Father *came*.	Аав *ирсэн*.	
b	Mother *asked*.	Ээж *асуусан*.	

1.2.3.2 EXTENDED SENTENCES

An extended sentence is made up of subject, predicate *, and one or more **assistant parts** of the sentence, such as an ***object***, **adverbial** or **attribute**.

a	How do you knead *the dough for the 'buuz'*?	Чи буузны *гурил* яаж зуурдаг вэ?	

b	The window **of that room** has **nice** curtains.	Тэр өрөөний цонх гоё хөшигтэй.	[illegible]
c	Please bring *me* **2 kg of** *potatoes from the shop*.	Та *надад дэлгүүрээс* хоёр кило *төмс* авчраарай.	[illegible]
d	Will you go *to the violin concert* **at the** *Music and Dance Middle* **School today**?	Та өнөөдөр Хөгжим Бүжгийн Дунд Сургууль дээр хийлийн *концерт* үзэх үү?	[illegible]

* see definition of 'predicate' on page 360

1.2.4 Simple and Combined Sentences

In syntax, the division into simple and combined sentences is the most crucial. That's why a whole chapter (pages 389ff) is given to these two forms of sentences. Here, we will just mention them briefly and not talk about special features.

1.2.4.1 SIMPLE SENTENCES

A simple sentence is made up of **not more than one *subject* and predicate part** each. In other words, a simple sentence doesn't have two or even more subjects or predicates.

a	***My older sister* went** together with me.	*Миний эгч* надтай хамт **явав**.	[illegible]
b	**Do *you* know** the name of that mountain?	*Чи* тэр уулын нэрийг **мэдэх** үү?	[illegible]

1.2.4.2 COMBINED SENTENCES

The combined sentence is made up of **more than one subject or predicate part**. There are the following possibilities:

- one **predicate part**, more than one ***subject part***: **ex. a-b** (compare with 3.2.3. on page 385)
- one ***subject part***, more than one **predicate part**: **ex. c-d** (compare with 3.2.3. on page 385)
- more than one **predicate** and more than one ***subject part***: **ex. e-f**

a	***Father and I* went** to the central post office.	*Аав бид хоёр* төв шуудан руу **явсан**.	[illegible]
b	***Many scholars and actors* took part** in this meeting.	Энэ уулзалтад *олон эрдэмтэд ба жүжигчид* оролцсон.	[illegible]
c	***I* returned** home and **took** a shower.	*Би* гэртээ **хариад** усанд **орсон**.	[illegible]
d	***He* likes hunting** and **fishing**.	*Тэр* ан **хийж** загас **барих дуртай**.	[illegible]
e	***Father* is reading** the newspaper and ***mother* is cooking** a meal.	*Аав* сонин **уншиж**, *ээж* хоол **хийж байна**.	[illegible]
f	Although ***it**** **is** very **cold** outside, ***I'm not cold***. (* this subject doesn't show in Mongolian)	Гадаа маш **хүйтэн** боловч *би* **даарахгүй байна**.	[illegible]

2. RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN WORDS

The smallest unit of a sentence is a word. Therefore, syntax really begins where single words are connected. This can be done in various ways, either in a **parallel relationship** (the words are equal, no subordination **= coordinate words**), or in an **unparallel relationship** (the words are unequal, there is subordination **= subordinate words**).

2.1 COORDINATE WORDS

As mentioned before, such coordinate words are of equal importance and none is subordinate to the other.

2.1.1 Free Coordinate Words

'Free coordinate words' are a group of words that are free in the way they are combined with each other. The first word can be combined with different words.

2.1.1.1 WITHOUT CONJUNCTION WORDS

Many of the Mongolian 'coordinate words' can be combined without using a conjunction word. That's usually impossible in English, where we need the ***conjunction 'and'***. Different parts of speech can be combined: adjectives (**ex. a,c**), nouns (**ex. b,d**), verbs (**ex. e**). The latter always take a ***cVDS*** (pages 157ff).

a	This is a **big, brown** table.	Энэ бол **том бор** ширээ.	[illegible]
b	I bought **a book *and* a notebook** at the shop.	Би дэлгүүрээс **ном, дэвтэр** авлаа.	[illegible]
c	She did this job **quickly *and* qualitatively well.**	Тэр энэ ажлыг **хурдан чанартай** хийжээ.	[illegible]
d	He treated us to Mongolian hospitality with **meat***, **milk tea *and* (other) milk products.** (*one or more big pieces of boiled meat)	Тэр биднийг монгол маягаар **сүүтэй цай, бүхэл мах, цагаан идээ**гээр дайлав.	[illegible]
e	The child ran towards me, **screaming *and* waving.**	Хүүхэд над руу **хашгиран даллан** гүйлээ.	[illegible]

2.1.1.2 WITH CONJUNCTION WORDS

As mentioned above, a conjunction word is not always needed. If it's used anyway (like in **ex. a**), then it is meant to emphasize something.
The following word categories could serve **as *conjunction words:***

a) conjunctions: **ex. a,b**
b) numerals: **ex. b**
c) plural suffix "нар": **ex. c**
d) reflexive words (see p. 263): **ex. d**
e) so called 'listing words' like "тэргүүтэн, зэрэг, сэлт, гэх мэт": **ex. e-f**

a	This table is **big *and* brown**.	Энэ бол **том** *бөгөөд* **бор** ширээ.	[illegible]
b	**Father *and* I** bought **a book *and* a notebook** at the shop.	**Аав бид** *хоёр* дэлгүүрээс **ном** *болон* **дэвтэр** авлаа.	[illegible]

c	**Dorj, Baatar,** ***and others*** went to the countryside.	Дорж Баатар *нар* хөдөө явсан.	ᠳᠣᠷᠵ᠂ ᠪᠠᠭᠠᠲᠤᠷ ᠨᠠᠷ ᠪᠤᠳᠤᠨ ᠷᠠᠭᠤᠮ ᠶᠠᠪᠤᠭᠰᠠᠨ᠃᠃
d	***Everyone,*** **teachers** ***and*** **students**, helped with this job.	Багш оюутан *бүгдээрээ* энэ ажилд оролцов.	ᠪᠠᠭᠱ ᠪᠠ ᠣᠶᠤᠲᠠᠨ᠃᠃ ᠪᠦᠭᠳᠡᠭᠡᠷᠡᠭᠡ᠂ ᠡᠨᠡ ᠠᠵᠢᠯᠳ ᠤᠷᠴᠤᠭᠤᠯᠵᠠ ᠪᠤᠢ ᠢᠮᠠ᠃
e	He speaks many languages, ***like*** **English, German,** ***etc.***	Тэр англи герман *зэрэг* олон хэлээр ярьдаг.	ᠪᠤᠢ ᠶᠠᠷᠢᠵᠤᠭᠠ᠃᠃ ᠡᠷᠡ᠂ ᠠᠩᠭᠯᠢ ᠭᠡᠷᠮᠠᠨ ᠵᠢᠷᠭ᠂ ᠣᠯᠠᠨ ᠬᠡᠯᠡᠡᠷ ᠶᠠᠷᠢᠵᠤᠭᠠᠯᠠᠭ᠃
f	He treated us to Mongolian hospitality with ***many things starting with*** **milk tea, meat** ***and*** **milk products.**	Тэр биднийг монгол маягаар *сүүтэй цай, бүхэл мах, цагаан идээ тэргүүтэн*ээр дайлав.	ᠡᠷᠡ᠂ ᠪᠢᠳᠡᠨ ᠢᠭ ᠮᠣᠩᠭᠣᠯ ᠮᠠᠶᠠᠭᠠᠭᠠᠷ᠃᠃ ᠰᠦᠦᠲᠡᠢ ᠴᠠᠢ᠂ ᠪᠦᠬᠡᠯ ᠮᠠᠬ᠂ ᠴᠠᠭᠠᠭᠠᠨ ᠢᠳᠡᠡ ᠲᠡᠷᠭᠦᠦᠲᠡᠨ᠎ᠡᠡᠷ ᠳᠠᠢᠯᠠᠪ᠃

2.1.2 Bound Coordinate Words

'Bound coordinate words' are a group of words which are combined with each other in a fixed form. So the **order cannot be changed** and the different words **cannot be exchanged with synonyms**. Such 'bound coordinate words' mostly have **a new lexical meaning** (see page 57). Verbs that appear as bound coordinate words take a ***cVDS*** (**ex. c-d**).

a	I live in an **apartment.** ("dwelling, living quarters")	Би орон сууцанд амьдардаг.	ᠪᠢ ᠣᠷᠣᠨ ᠰᠤᠤᠴᠠᠨᠳ ᠴᠤ ᠠᠮᠢᠳᠤᠷᠠᠳᠭᠠ᠃᠃
b	The **whole society** talks about this. ("above and below")	Энэ тухай дээр дооргүй ярьж байна.	ᠡᠨᠡᠲᠡᠭᠡᠳ ᠪᠤᠢ᠂᠃᠃ ᠡᠨᠡ᠂ ᠳᠣᠭᠣᠷ ᠂ ᠳᠣᠭᠣᠷ ᠂ ᠬᠡᠷᠡᠯ
c	I **changed** my clothes. (to wear chang***ingly***)	Би хувцсаа сольж өмссөн.	ᠪᠢ ᠬᠤᠪᠴᠠᠰᠠ ᠪᠢ᠂ ᠰᠣᠯᠢᠵᠤ ᠥᠮᠰᠡᠭᠡᠨ᠃᠃
d	I **received** a gift. ("to take wait***ingly***")	Би бэлэг хүлээн авсан.	ᠪᠢ ᠪᠡᠯᠡᠭ ᠬᠦᠯᠡᠡᠵᠤ ᠠᠪᠠᠭᠰᠠᠨ᠃᠃

2.2 SUBORDINATE WORDS

When a group of words are **structurally linked** with each other and **one of the words dominates**, they are called 'subordinate words'. According to the dominating word we talk about **noun dominated words** and **verb dominated words**. Some subordinate words are linked together with a suffix or a postposition (= indirect subordinate words), others are linked without any help (= direct subordinate words). 'Linked' doesn't imply that the words have to be adjacent (see **ex. b**). In English, **prepositions** play an important role in building such subordinate words.

Example in English:

a) **Father's** coat *hangs in the wardrobe*.

b) Yesterday, I *gave* **my brother** *an apple*.

Father's coat = noun dominated words
to hang in the wardrobe = verb dominated words
my brother = noun dominated words
to give an apple = verb dominated words
to give my brother = verb dominated words

2.2.1 Direct Subordinate Words

Although there is **no visible conjunction** to link the words, we **need a suffix** to show that there is a **subordination**. Such an invisible suffix is called a **zero-suffix** and marked **"–ø"**. Compare with II:1.2.2.

Direct subordinate words are always made up of ***adwords***:

- ***adword*** **to noun:**
  noun as adword, with n-stem (**ex. a-b**; see also page 58)
  noun as adword, **without n-stem** (**ex. c-d**)
  proword as adword (**ex. e-f**)
  numeral as adword (**ex. g-h**; see also page 236)
  adverb as adword (**ex. i-j**)
- ***adword*** **to adjectives** (**ex. k-l**; see also page 219f)
- ***adword*** **to verbs** (**ex. m-n**; see also page 221ff)

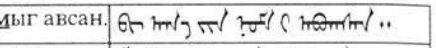
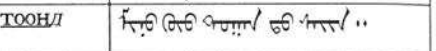
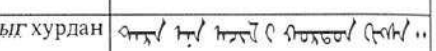
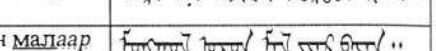
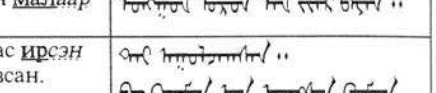
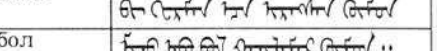
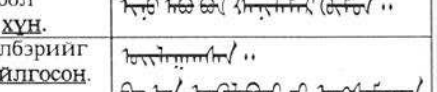
a	My father made a ***wooden*** **table.**	Миний аав *модоор* ширээ хийсэн.	ᠮᠢᠨᠤ ᠠᠪ ᠮᠣᠳᠣᠷ ᠰᠢᠷᠡᠭᠡ ᠬᠢᠢᠰᠡᠨჰჰ
b	Have you seen my ***gold*** **ring**?	Та миний *алтаар* бөгжийг харсан уу?	ᠲᠠ ᠮᠢᠨᠤ ᠮᠥᠯᠶ ᠪᠥᠭᠵᠢᠢᠭ ᠬᠠᠷᠰᠠᠨ ᠤᠤ ᠤ᠃᠃
c	They built a ***rail*****way**. ("***iron*****way**")	Тэд нар *төмөр* зам байгуулсан.	ᠲᠡᠳ ᠨᠠᠷ ᠲᠥᠮᠥᠷ ᠵᠠᠮ ᠪᠠᠢᠭᠤᠭᠤᠯᠰᠠᠨჰჰ
d	My friend lives in the **city** ***of Ulaanbaatar***.	Найз минь *Улаанбаатар* хотод амьдардаг.	ᠨᠠᠶᠢᠷᠠᠭᠠᠳᠤჰჰ ᠨᠠᠶᠢᠷᠠᠭ ᠮᠢᠨᠢ ᠤᠯᠠᠭᠠᠨᠪᠠᠭᠠᠲᠤᠷ ᠬᠣᠲᠠᠳ ᠴᠤ
e	I read ***this*** **book.**	Би *энэ* номыг уншсан.	ᠪᠢ ᠡᠨᠡ ᠨᠣᠮ᠎ᠤᠭ ᠤᠩᠰᠠᠭᠰᠠᠨჰჰ
f	I need ***such*** **a pencil.**	Надад *тийм* харандаа хэрэгтэй байна.	ᠨᠠᠳᠠᠳ ᠴᠤ ᠲᠢᠢᠮ ᠬᠠᠷᠠᠨᠳᠠᠠ ᠬᠡᠷᠡᠭᠲᠡᠢ ᠪᠠᠢᠨ᠎ᠠჰჰ
g	At what time will you come? ("***how many*** **o'clock**")	Чи *хэдэн* цагт ирэх вэ?	ᠴᠢ ᠬᠡᠳᠦᠨ ᠴᠠᠭ᠎ᠲ ᠤᠷᠢᠬ ᠪᠡ ᠤ᠃᠃
h	I have ***two*** **sons.**	Би *хоёр* хүүтэй.	ᠪᠢ ᠬᠣᠶᠠᠷ ᠬᠦᠦᠲᠡᠢ ᠪᠠᠢჰჰ
i	In summer, we set up our yurt on an ***elevated*** **place.**	Бид зун *дээр* газар гэрээ барьдаг.	ᠪᠢᠳ ᠽᠤᠨ ᠳᠤᠤᠷ ᠨ ᠭᠠᠵᠠᠷ ᠤᠨ ᠭᠡᠷ᠎ᠡᠡ ᠪᠠᠷᠢᠳᠠᠭჰჰ
j	The **mountain** ***over there*** is covered with mist.	*Тэртээ* уулаанд манан татаж байна.	ᠲᠡᠷᠲᠡᠭᠡ ᠤᠤᠯᠠᠨᠳ ᠴᠤ ᠮᠠᠨᠠᠨ ᠲᠠᠲᠠᠵ ᠪᠠᠢᠨ᠎ᠠჰჰ
k	The mother sewed a shirt from ***light*** **blue** cotton material.	Ээж *цагаан* цэнхэр даавуугаар цамц оёсон.	ᠡᠵᠢჰჰ ᠴᠠᠭᠠᠭᠠᠨ ᠴᠡᠨᠬᠡᠷ ᠳᠠᠭᠠᠪᠤᠭᠠᠷ ᠴᠠᠮᠴ ᠤᠶᠤᠰᠠᠨჰჰ
l	For me, this was a ***brand*** **new** thing.	Энэ бол миний хувьд *шүү* шинэ зүйл байсан.	ᠡᠨᠡჰჰ ᠪᠢ ᠪᠤᠯ ᠮᠢᠨᠢ ᠬᠤᠪᠢᠳ ᠴᠤ ᠱᠦ ᠰᠢᠨᠡ᠎ᠶ᠋ᠢ ᠵᠦᠢᠯ ᠪᠠᠢᠰᠠᠨჰჰ
m	He screamed ***loudly***.	Тэр *чанга* хашгирав.	ᠡᠷᠡჰჰ ᠴᠠᠩᠭ᠎ᠠ ᠬᠠᠰᠢᠭᠢᠷᠠᠪჰჰ
n	I will ***always*** **remember** her.	Би түүнийг *ямагт* дурсдаг.	ᠪᠢ ᠲᠦᠦᠨ᠎ᠢᠭ ᠶᠠᠮᠠᠭᠲ ᠳᠤᠷᠰᠳᠠᠭჰჰ

2.2.2 Indirect Subordinate Words

Indirect subordinate words are linked with a **suffix** or a **postposition**. 2/3 of all subordinate words belong to this category.

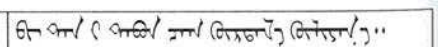
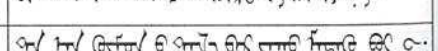
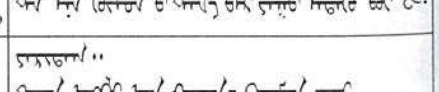
2.2.2.1 WITH SUFFIXES

These could serve as linking *suffixes*:
- all CS's (page 78ff) except nominative: **ex. a-d**
- the NDS's (p. 139ff): **ex. e**
- the AwDS's (p. 151ff): **ex. f**
- the sVDS's (p. 156ff): **ex. g**

a	I took **the man's book**.	Би ах*ын* ном*ы*г авсан.	
b	My son is **good *in* mathematic**.	Миний хүү тоонд сайн.	
c	She **did** this **job** quickly.	Тэр энэ ажл*ыг* хурдан хийсэн.	
d	Mongolia is **rich *in* livestock**.	Монгол орон мал*аар* баян.	
e	I met **the person *who* came** from Germany.	Би Германаас ирс*эн* хүнтэй уулзсан.	
f	My father is **a person *that one would like* to have as a friend**.	Миний аав бол ханил*маар* хүн.	
g	I **understood** this sentence *as soon as* (I) **read** (it).	Би энэ өгүүлбэрийг унш*маг*ц ойлгосон.	

2.2.2.2 WITH POSTPOSITIONS

For more information about postpositions, see page 282ff.

a	**I shall wait** for you *until* **five o'clock.**	Би таны*г* таван цаг *хүртэл* хүлээнэ.	
b	What **do** you **know** *about* **this person**?	Та энэ хүн*ий* *талаар* юу мэдэх вэ?	
c	He speaks **German** *besides* **English**.	Тэр англи*ас* *гадна* герман*аар* ярьдаг.	

3. RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN PARTS OF A SENTENCE

The different parts of a sentence are **related** to each other. Depending on the relationship we distinguish:
- **main parts of a sentence**; subject and predicate* (they dominate)
- **assistant parts of a sentence**; object, attribute, adverbial (they are dominated)
- **independent parts of a sentence**; e.g. interjections (they have no structural relationship)
- **coordinate parts of a sentence**; a combination of at least two parts of a sentence (see 3.2)

* see definition of 'predicate' on page 360

3.1 Parts of a Sentence

In Mongolian, the different parts of a sentence are divide into 'main' and 'assistant' parts.

3.1.1 Main Parts of a Sentence

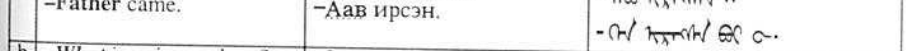
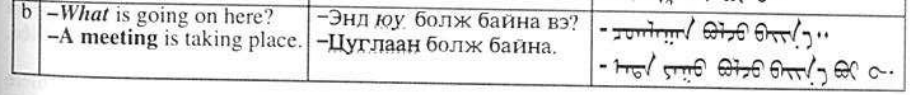
The main parts of a sentence are **subject and predicate**.

3.1.1.1 SUBJECTS

The subject is usually in the **nominative case**, which has a **zero-suffix (–ø)**. From the contextual structure, the subject is linked to the predicate. Both parts **complement** each other.

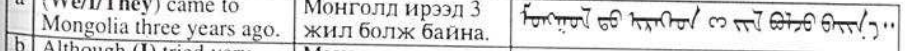
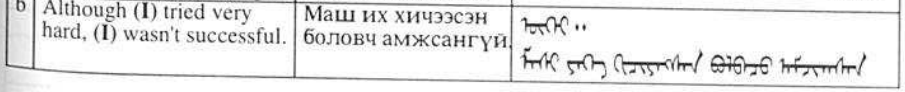
3.1.1.1.1 Question Words for Subjects

With the question words *"хэн? юу?" (who or what?)* we ask for the subject.

a	–*Who* came? –**Father** came.	–*Хэн* ирсэн бэ? –Аав ирсэн.	
b	–*What* is going on here? –**A meeting** is taking place.	–Энд *юу* болж байна вэ? –Цуглаан болж байна.	

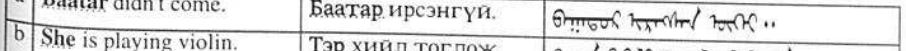
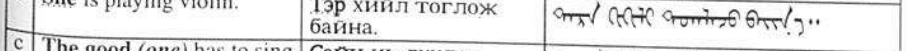
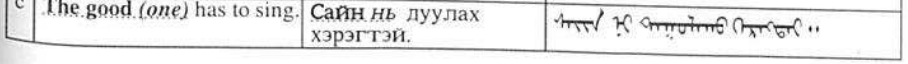
3.1.1.1.2 Omission of Subjects

Quite often, the subject is **omitted** in Mongolian because it is clear from the context who is meant. In English, this is not possible! Compare with page 363.

a	(**We/I/They**) came to Mongolia three years ago.	Монголд ирээд 3 жил болж байна.	
b	Although (**I**) tried very hard, (**I**) wasn't successful.	Маш их хичээсэн боловч амжсангүй.	

3.1.1.1.3 Parts of Speech as Subjects

All kinds of parts of speech can serve as **subjects:** nouns (**ex. a**), prowords (**ex. b**), adjectives (**ex. c**), numerals (**ex. d**), verbs with an NDS (**ex. e**).
Note: In order to use an adjective or a numeral in a **noun function**, the *CbP "нь"* is needed. (see page 106 and **ex c,d** below).

a	**Baatar** didn't come.	Баатар ирсэнгүй.	
b	**She** is playing violin.	Тэр хийл тоглож байна.	
c	**The good *(one)*** has to sing.	Сайн *нь* луулах хэрэгтэй.	

d	**The three** *(of them)* came from Germany.	Гурав *нь* Германаас иржээ.	[illegible]
e	**This pupil** went on vacation.	Энэ сурагч амралтаараа явсан.	[illegible]

3.1.1.1.4 Subject Indicators/Markers

Very often, *a word* **(ex. c)**, *a particle* **(ex. b,e)**, *a suffix* **(ex.f)** *a CbP* **(ex.d)** **or** *a comma* **(ex. a)** accompanies the subject as a subject indicator or subject marker. This is important because Mongolian proper names have meanings and, thus, often get mixed up with other parts of speech, e.g.:

- confusing subjects with objects (**ex. a-c**)
- confusing subjects with attributes (**ex. d-f**)

The sentences in parentheses are what would be understood without the indicator.

a	Tsetseg (= "flower") picked fruits. (Someone picked flowers and fruits.)	Цэцэг, жимс түүв.	[illegible]
b	*Only* Tsetseg (= "flower") picked fruits. (Someone picked flowers and fruits.)	Цэцэг *л* жимс түүв.	[illegible]
c	A woman (= "a wife *person*") came, followed by her child. (Someone came, followed by his wife and child.)	Эхнэр *хүн* хүүхдээ дагуулан ирэв.	[illegible]
d	*Our* Chuluun (= "stone") built a fence. (Someone built a stone fence.)	Чулуун *маань* хашаа барьжээ.	[illegible]
e	*Even* Chuluun (= "stone") built a fence. (Someone built a stone fence.)	Чулуун *ч* хашаа барив.	[illegible]
f	The wrestlers took their wrestling jackets. (Someone took his strong wrestling jacket.)	Бөх*чүүд* зодгоо авав.	[illegible]

3.1.1.1.5 Complements of Subjects

When the subject is **equated to** a noun or an adjective, it is important **to use subject indicators** to avoid confusion, emphasize the subject, or clarify the meaning of the sentence. Such indicators could be:

"бол" (ex. a-b), **"гэдэг нь" (ex. c)**, the **CbP's (ex. d)**, **comma** or **dash (ex. e;** in talking, there is a pause) or the **CbP "чинь"** in function of a **focus** particle **(ex. f-g)**. If "чинь" in this function is combined with the particle(s) "шүү (дээ)", the focusing is even stronger.

The sentence in parentheses is what would be understood without the indicator.

a	This **is** a doctor. (This person's doctor.)	Энэ **бол** хүний эмч.	[illegible]
b	**I** am rich.	Би **бол** баян.	[illegible]
c	The *so called* 'buuz' is a meat dish.	Бууз **гэдэг нь** махтай хоол юм.	[illegible]
d	*My* father is tall.	Аав **минь** өндөр.	[illegible]
e	Mongolia – an Asian country.	Монгол – Азийн орон.	[illegible]
f	My younger brother, **you know**, is an intelligent man.	Миний дүү **чинь** ухаантай хүн.	[illegible]
g	His homeland, **you know**, is far away.	Түүний нутаг **чинь** хол шүү дээ.	[illegible]

3.1.1.2 PREDICATES

The predicate (Latin 'praedicare' = 'to declare loudly') means 'the declared thing'. Please read the explanations on page 360. Here is the definition of a Mongolian predicate again:

> **The predicate is 'the** *verbal part of a sentence* **which makes the statement about the subject'**

3.1.1.2.1 Question Words for Predicates

With the question words *"яа–? юу хий–?" (to do what?)* we ask for the predicates. Notice that objects and adverbials are part of the answer, as they are very closely linked to the predicate.

a	-*What happened* to you yesterday? -I **had** a head**ache**.	–Чи өчигдөр *яасан* бэ? –Миний толгой **өвдсөн**.	[illegible]
b	-*What did* you *do* yesterday? -I **lay** on my bed.	–Чи өчигдөр *юу хийсэн* бэ? –Би орондоо **хэвтсэн**.	[illegible]
c	-*What do* you *do* when you have a headache? -I **take** medicine **and lie down.**	–Толгой өвдөхөд та *яадаг* вэ? –Би эм **уугаад хэвтдэг**.	[illegible]
d	-*What will happen* if Bat comes tomorrow? -**Give** him this book, **please.**	–Маргааш Батыг ирвэл *яах* вэ? –Чи түүнд энэ номыг **өгөөрэй**.	[illegible]

The predicates can be **divided into two groups** according to their structure:

3.1.1.2.2 Simple Predicates

Simple predicates are predicates that are made up of ***a full verb***, which takes a ***TS*** (see page 175ff)

3.1.1.2.2.1 One Full Verb

a	***Please write*** this other letter quickly.	Та нөгөө захиагаа хурдан *бичээрэй*.	[illegible]
b	***Go up*** the stairs!	Шатаар *гар*! (–ø)	[illegible]
c	Yesterday, he ***took*** an exam.	Тэр өчигдөр шалгалт *өгчээ*.	[illegible]
d	I ***get up*** early in the morning.	Би өглөө эрт *босдог*.	[illegible]

3.1.1.2.2.2 Compound Full Verb

The first full verb takes a cVDC, the second verb a **TS**.

As mentioned on pages 157-158, such combinations give **new meanings** (in English **one** new verb).

a	I **bought** a new car. ("to take tradingly")	Би шинэ машин худалдаж **авлаа**.	[illegible]
b	He **vouched** for me. ("to guarantee confirmingly")	Тэр намайг батлаж **даасан**.	[illegible]

3.1.1.2.3 Compound Predicates

Compound predicates are predicates that are made up of **two or more verbs**: the **first one** is a **full verb** expressing the lexical meaning and the other words could be **auxiliary, modal, or modifying verbs** which have only a grammatical function. That gives **three subgroups**:

3.1.1.2.3.1 Full Verbs and Auxiliary Verbs

The tense is expressed with the help of the **auxiliary verbs.** The **full verb** always takes a *VDS*, the last of the auxiliary verbs a *TS* (**ex. a-b**). In a general tense context (e.g. professions, character traits, etc.) the auxiliary verb functioning as a copula **may be dropped**. Then we get something like a **'noun-predicate'**, which is the actual Mongolian name. In English we call such phenomena 'complements'. Compound predicates can be made up of **different parts of speech** (**ex. c-e**).

a	I **was writing** a letter yesterday at this time.	Би өчигдөр өдийд захиа **бичиж** **байсан**.	Би өчигдөр өдийд захиа бичиж байсан.
	I'**m writing** a letter now.	Би одоо захиа **бичиж** **байна**.	Би одоо захиа бичиж байна.
	I **shall be writing** a letter at this time tomorrow.	Би маргааш өдийд захиа **бичиж** **байх** **болно**.	Би маргааш өдийд захиа бичиж байх болно.
b	I **was** a teacher.	Би багш **байсан**.	Би багш байсан.
	I (**am**) a teacher.	Би багш (**байна**).	Би багш (байна).
	I **shall be** a teacher.	Би багш **байх** **болно**.	Би багш байх болно.
c	The wind **was** quite **strong**. (= adjective)	Салхи нилээд **хүчтэй** **байлаа**.	Салхи нилээд хүчтэй байлаа.
d	I **am** the director of this school. ("The director of this school **is me**.")(= pronoun)	Энэ сургуулийн захирал нь би **байна**.	Би захирал. Энэ сургуулийн захирал нь би.
e	"The lives of the neighbors (**are**) **one.**" (= numeral) meaning: neighbors must help each other.	Айл хүний амь нэг. (proverb)	Айл хүний амь нэг.

3.1.1.2.3.2 Full Verbs and Modal Verbs/Constructions

The **modal verb "чада-"** is always used with a full verb taking the *cVDS* "**-ж/-ч**" (**ex. a-c**); the **modal constructions** , due to their noun origin, demand a verb with the *NDS* "**-х**" (**ex. f-g**). With the **auxiliary verbs,** either mood (**ex. b**) or tense is expressed (**ex. e, g**).

a	**Are** you **able to do** this?/ **Can** you **do** this?	Та үүнийг хий**ж** **чадах** уу?	Та үүнийг хийж чадах уу?
b	I **would have been able to do** this./I **could have done** this.	Би үүнийг хий**ж** **чадах** байсан.	Би үүнийг хийж чадах байсан.
c	I **was able to do** this.	Би үүнийг хий**ж** **чадсан**.	Би үүнийг хийж чадсан.
d	I **need** money. ("Money is with necessity to me.")	Надад мөнгө **хэрэгтэй**.	Надад мөнгө хэрэгтэй.
e	I **needed** money.	Надад мөнгө **хэрэгтэй** **байсан**.	Надад мөнгө хэрэгтэй байсан.
f	I **like playing** chess. ("I'm with pleasure in playing chess.)	Би шатар **тогло**х **дуртай**.	Би шатар тоглох дуртай.

g	When I was small, I **didn't like playing** chess.	Би бага байхдаа шатар **тогло**х **дургүй** **байсан**.	Би бага байхдаа шатар тоглох дургүй байсан.

3.1.1.2.3.3 Full Verbs and Modifying Verbs

The first verb is always a **full verb**, which expresses the lexical meaning and takes a *cVDS*. The second verb is one of the **modifying verbs**. Tense (**ex. b,e**) is expressed with **auxiliary verbs** .

a	**May** we **go** now? ("**Will** we **become** **go**ing?")	Бид нар одоо яв**ж** **болох** уу?	Бид нар одоо явж болох уу?
b	If you had come early, we **would have been allowed to go**.	Та нар эрт ирсэнсэн бол, бид нар яв**ж** **болох** **байсан**.	Та нар эрт ирсэнсэн бол, бид нар явж болох байсан.
c	He **brought** me to the airport.	Тэр намайг онгоцны буудал дээр **гарга**ж **өгсөн**.	Тэр намайг онгоцны буудал дээр гаргаж өгсөн.
d	I **wrote down** everything he said. ("I **took** **writ**ingly ...")	Би түүний хэлснийг бүгдийг **бичи**ж **авав**.	Би түүний хэлснийг бүгдийг бичиж авав.
e	He **had** always **told** me about this. ("He **was** talk**ing**ly **giving**.")	Тэр надад энэ тухай **ярь**ж **өгдөг** байсан.	Тэр надад энэ тухай ярьж өгдөг байсан.

3.1.2 Assistant Parts of a Sentence

Assistant parts of a sentence are **objects, attributes, and adverbials**. With these assistant parts, **extended sentences** are built. Short sentences do not contain assistant parts. Objects and adverbials are dominated by predicates; attributes by the word they are attributed to.

3.1.2.1 OBJECTS

The object (Latin 'obicere' = 'to throw against') is placed 'against' the subject. Mongolian objects **need either a case suffix** (6 to choose from; nominative is reserved for the subject; genitive builds attributes) **or a postposition**. The verb (rarely an adjective in predicate function) determines which case or which postposition is needed (see Chapter 2 of the Appendix).

Example in English:
to ask **whom**? (accusative); to give **to whom**? (dative); to take **from whom** (prepositional case); to believe **in whom**? (prepositional case); to go **through what**? (prepositional case), etc. The examples on the next page show the **different possible objects**. Sometimes there could be an **overlap with adverbials** (**ex. k**):

dative-locative (**ex. a-b**)
instrumental (**ex. g-h**)
postpositional object (**ex. m-n**)
accusative (**ex. c-d**)
comitative (**ex. i-j**)
ablative (**ex. e-f**)
directive (**ex. k-l**)

3.1.2.1.1 Parts of Speech as Objects

All **concrete parts of speech,** with the exception of adverbs, can build objects: nouns (**ex. a,c,g,h,k,l,n**); adwords (**ex. d,j**); prowords (**ex. b,e,f,i,m**).

a	I love **my mother**. ("I am with love **for my mother.**")	Би <u>зээдээ</u> хайртай.	
b	Let me help **you**!	Би <u>чамд</u> туслая!	
c	I bought **a book** at the shop.	Би дэлгүүрээс <u>ном</u> авав.	
d	Gerel took **two**.	Гэрэл <u>хоёрыг</u> авсан.	
e	I'd like to ask **her**. ("from her")	Би <u>түүнээс</u> асуумаар байна.	
f	**What** are you afraid **of?**	Та <u>юунаас</u> айдаг вэ?	
g	I had **my older sister** make me a 'deel'.	Би <u>эгчээрээ</u> дээл хийлгэсэн.	
h	Are you going to call? ("to talk **through the wire**?")	Та <u>утсаар</u> ярих уу?	
i	We were supposed to meet **him**. ("to meet **with ...**")	Бид нар <u>түүнтэй</u> уулзах ёстой байсан.	
j	To be friends with the good is moonshine. (proverb) ("If you are friends **with the good** it is moonshine.")	<u>Сайнтай</u> нөхөрлөвөл сарны гэрэл.	
k	I have to get **to the market**.	Би <u>зах руу</u> очих хэрэгтэй.	
l	The children ran **towards their mother.**	Хүүхдүүд <u>ээж рүүгээ</u> гүйв.	
m	Did you think **about this**?	Чи <u>үүний тухай</u> бодсон уу?	
n	He talked in detail **about his work.**	Тэр <u>ажлынхаа талаар</u> дэлгэрэнгүй ярив.	

The objects are in close relationship to the verbs expressing the predicate. So, according to the twofold division of the verbs in **transitive** and **intransitive** verbs, we can divide the objects into **direct** and **indirect objects**.

3.1.2.1.2 Direct Objects

Transitive verbs always demand **a direct object**, which is in the accusative case (**ex. a**). On pages 87-89, we explained thoroughly when the suffix can be dropped (**ex. b,f;** zero- suffix). In general statements, the direct object can sometimes be omitted (**ex. c**). When the **object is unknown** in a specific situation, the word "юм" (=thing) must be used. To omit the unknown object (as in English) is not possible (**ex. d**). Transitive verbs can also have ***indirect objects*** beside their direct objects (**ex. e-f**).

a	Who *chopped* **this wood**?	Энэ мод<u>ыг</u> хэн *хагалсан* бэ?	
b	I can *chop* **wood**.	Би <u>мод</u> *хагалж* чадна.	
c	He *reads* fast.	Тэр хурдан *уншдаг*.	
d	*Have* you *eaten* (**something**)?	Чи <u>юм</u> *идсэн* үү?	
e	I *made* **this table** *from* ***wood***.	Би <u>энэ ширээг</u> *модоор хийсэн*.	

f	I *had* ***my older sister*** *make* me **a 'deel'**.	Би <u>эгчээрээ</u> дээл *хийлгэсэн*.	

3.1.2.1.3 Indirect Objects

Intransitive verbs can't have direct objects, but only **indirect objects** which could be in any case other than accusative, nominative, or genitive (**ex. a-b**). Often, *transitive verbs* have an indirect object as well as a ***direct one*** (**ex. c-d**). On pages 78-100, there are many examples for different objects with their CS's.

a	Let me *help* **you**.	Би <u>чамд</u> *туслая*.	
b	Please *talk* **with me** on the phone **about this**.	<u>Над руу</u> <u>үүний тухай</u> утсаар *яриарай*.	
c	*Did* you *give* **her** ***a gift***?	Чи <u>түүнд</u> <u>бэлэг</u> өгөв үү?	
d	I *have* **a Monglian teacher** *teach* me ***English***.	Би <u>монгол багш</u><u>аар</u> <u>англи хэл</u> заалгадаг.	

3.1.2.2 ATTRIBUTES

Attributes (Latin 'attribuere' = 'to allot to') are **not independent parts of a sentence**; they depend on another part of the sentence. Characteristics, sizes, colors, masses, materials, etc are expressed with attributes (compare with page 212ff). They usually appear together with *subjects* (**ex. a-c,f,k**) or *objects* (**ex. b,e,g,i,j**), rarely with *adverbials* (**ex. h**). Attributes are often found in complements of subjects (**ex. d,f,k**). They are placed **right before** the word they describe.

Attributes are built in the following ways:
- **with adwords**
  - nouns with n–stem serving as adjectives (**ex. b-c**)
  - nouns with derivational suffix "–тай" serving as adjectives (**ex. d**)
  - adjectives with adwords (**ex. e-f**)
  - numerals (**ex. i-j**)
- **with prowords** (**ex. g-h**)
- **with nouns in genitive case** (**ex. g**)
- **with the CbP's** (**ex. b**)
- **with verbs taking an NDS** (**ex. k**)

Attributes could be made up of several words (**ex. e-g,j**).

a	Don't you like **red** *flowers*?	Танд <u>улаан</u> *цэцэг* таалагддаггүй юү?	
b	My *father* made a **wooden** *chair*.	*Аав* <u>минь</u> <u>модон</u> *сандал* хийсэн.	
c	Have you ever traveled by *ship*? ("**water** *vessel*")	Та <u>усан</u> *онгоцоор* явж үзсэн үү?	
d	A rider came. ("*person* **with horse**")	<u>Морьтой</u> *хүн* ирэв.	
e	This is **too unnecessary** a *work!*	Энэ <u>дэндүү</u> <u>дэмий</u> *ажил* юм.	
f	You gave a **totally wrong** *answer*.	Чи <u>тэс буруу</u> *хариу* өгсөн.	
g	**That** *student* is **my younger brother's** *friend*.	<u>Тэр</u> *оюутан* бол <u>ми–ний</u> <u>дүүгийн</u> *найз*.	

h	Read **these** *books*!	Элгээр *номыг* уншаарай!	ᠡᠯᠭᠡᠡᠷ ᠨᠣᠮ᠋ᠢᠭ ᠤᠩᠱᠠᠭᠠᠷᠠᠢ ··
i	The evening party went on for **two** *hours*.	Үдэшлэг хоёр *цаг* үргэлжлэв.	ᠦᠳᠡᠱᠯᠡᠭ ᠬᠣᠶᠠᠷ ᠴᠠᠭ ᠦᠷᠭᠡᠯᠵᠯᠡᠪ ··
j	Do you have **many Mongolian** *friends*?	Та олон монгол *найзтай* юу?	ᠲᠠ ᠣᠯᠣᠨ ᠮᠣᠩᠭᠣᠯ ᠨᠠᠢᠵᠲᠠᠢ ᠤᠤ ᠃᠃
k	Will you go to the countryside **next** *year*?	Та ирэх *жил* хөдөө явах уу?	ᠲᠠ ᠢᠷᠡᠬ ᠵᠢᠯ ᠬᠥᠳᠥᠥ ᠶᠠᠪᠠᠬ ᠤᠤ ᠃᠃

3.1.2.3 ADVERBIALS

Adverbials, (Latin 'ad verbum' = 'to the word/verb'), describe the **conditions under which the action, which is expressed in the sentence, takes place**. It is **difficult to draw a line between adverbials and adverbial clauses**. Sometimes in English, an adverbial has to be translated with an adverbial clause. This matter is not yet resolved in Mongolian studies. For the student it's not a very important problem. So we won't get involved in it here.

Adverbials can be divided into the following **semantic groups**:
1.) Local adverbials (place)
2.) Temporal adverbials (time)
3.) Modal adverbials (mode; way of behaving)
4.) Causal adverbials (reason)
5.) Final adverbials (intention)
6.) Conditional adverbials (condition)
7.) Concessive adverbials (concession)

3.1.2.3.1 Local Adverbials

Local adverbials can be divided into **three subgroups** :

3.1.2.3.1.1 Showing Place

Such adverbials answer the **question "хаа(на)?"(where?)**
They can be **built** like this:
• with adverbs (**ex. a-b**)
• with nouns with ***dative-locative CS's*** (**ex. c**)
• with ***postpositions*** (**ex. d**)

a	The children are playing **outside**.	Хүүхдүүл гадаа тоглож байна.	ᠬᠦᠦᠬᠳᠦᠦᠯ ᠭᠠᠳᠠᠠ ᠲᠣᠭᠯᠤᠵ ᠪᠠᠶᠢᠨ᠎ᠠ ··
b	**Here** is a hotel.	Энд зочид буудал байна.	ᠡᠨᠳ᠎ᠡ ᠵᠣᠴᠢᠳ ᠪᠤᠤᠳᠠᠯ ᠪᠠᠶᠢᠨ᠎ᠠ ··
c	I live *in* **a 3 room flat.**	Би 3 өрөө байранд амьдардаг.	ᠪᠢ ᠭ ᠥᠷᠥᠥ ᠪᠠᠶᠢᠷᠠᠨᠳ ᠠᠮᠢᠳᠤᠷᠠᠯᠵᠠ᠂ ··
d	He's lying *on* **the bed**.	Тэр орон *дээр* хэвтэж байна.	ᠲᠡᠷ᠎ᠡ ᠣᠷᠣᠨ ᠳᠡᠭᠡᠷ ᠬᠡᠪᠲᠡᠵ ᠪᠠᠶᠢᠨ᠎ᠠ ··

3.1.2.3.1.2 Showing Direction

Such adverbials answer the **questions "хаашаа? хаанаас? хаа хүртэл?" (to where? from where? until where?).**
They can be **built** like this:
• with *modified* adverbs (**ex. a-b**)
• with *declined* nouns: - with ablative CS's (**ex. c**)
- with dative-locative CS's (**ex. d**)
- with postpositions (**ex. e**)

a	Don't run **around**, please!	Ийш тийш битгий гүйгээрэй.	ᠪᠡᠷᠢ ᠪᠡᠷᠢ ᠪᠢᠲᠭᠢ ᠭᠦᠶᠭᠡᠭᠡᠷᠡᠢ ··
b	He came ***from*** **the north.** (meaning "Russia" most of the time)	Тэр хойноос ирсэн.	ᠲᠡᠷ᠎ᠡ ᠬᠣᠶᠢᠨ᠎ᠠ ᠴᠠ᠂ ᠢᠷᠡᠪᠡ ··
c	My son came ***from*** **(his) school.**	Миний хүү сургуулиасаа ирсэн.	ᠮᠢᠨᠢ᠎ᠦ ᠬᠦᠦ ᠰᠤᠷᠭᠤᠤᠯᠢᠠᠴᠠ ᠴᠠ ᠪᠠ ᠢᠷᠡᠪᠡ ··
d	When did he come ***to*** **Mongolia?**	Тэр Монголд хэзээ ирсэн бэ?	ᠲᠡᠷ᠎ᠡ ᠮᠣᠩᠭᠣᠯ ᠳᠤ ᠬᠡᠵᠡᠶ ᠢᠷᠡᠪᠡ ᠪᠡ ᠃᠃
e	We went by car ***as far as*** **Darkhan.**	Бид машинаар Дархан *хүртэл* явсан.	ᠪᠢᠳ᠎ᠡ ᠮᠠᠰᠢᠨᠠᠭᠠᠷ ᠳᠠᠷᠬᠠᠨ᠎ᠠ ·· ᠶᠠᠪᠰᠠᠨ ᠬᠦᠷᠲᠡᠯ ᠮᠠᠰᠢᠨᠠᠭᠠᠷ ᠪᠢᠳ᠎ᠡ

3.1.2.3.1.3 Showing Local Movement

Such adverbials answer the **question "хаа*гуур*?" (where abouts? which way?).**
They can be **built** like this:
• with *modified* adverbs (**ex. a-b**)
• with *declined* nouns: instrumental CS's (**ex. c**)
postpositions (**ex. d**)

a	The birds are flying **above**.	Шувуу *дээгүүр* нисч байна.	ᠰᠤᠪᠤᠤ ᠳᠡᠭᠡᠭᠦᠦᠷ ᠨᠢᠰᠴᠢ ᠪᠠᠶᠢᠨ᠎ᠠ ··
b	**In the north,** someone is going *around* driving his cattle.	Хойгуур мал туусан хүн явж байна.	ᠬᠣᠶᠢᠭᠤᠤᠷ ᠮᠠᠯ ᠲᠤᠤᠰᠠᠨ ᠬᠦᠨ ᠶᠠᠪᠵ ᠪᠠᠶᠢᠨ᠎ᠠ ·· ᠬᠥᠳᠥᠯᠭᠡᠨ ᠬᠦᠯ ᠠᠮᠢᠳᠤᠷᠠᠯ ᠪᠠᠶᠢᠨ᠎ᠠ
c	Many people promenade ***along*** **the bank of the Tuul river.**	Туул голын хөвөө*гөөр* олон хүн зугаалж байна.	ᠲᠤᠤᠯ ᠭᠣᠯᠤᠨ ᠬᠥᠪᠥᠥ᠋ᠭᠥᠥᠷ ᠣᠯᠠᠨ ᠬᠦᠨ ᠵᠤᠭᠠᠠᠯᠵ ᠪᠠᠶᠢᠨ᠎ᠠ ··
d	TheTuul river flows ***south of the*** **city Ulaanbaatar.**	Туул гол Улаанбаатар хот*ын урдуур* урсдаг.	ᠲᠤᠤᠯ ᠭᠣᠯ ᠤᠯᠠᠭᠠᠨᠪᠠᠭᠠᠲᠤᠷ ᠬᠣᠲ᠎ᠤᠨ ᠤᠷᠳᠤᠤᠷ ᠤᠰᠳᠠᠭ ··

3.1.2.3.2 Temporal Adverbials

They answer the **questions "хэзээ? хэдийд? хэдийгээс? хэдий хүртэл?" (when? about when? from when on? until when?)**

They show two things:

3.1.2.3.2.1 Showing Moment of Action

They can be **built** like this:
• with temporal adverbs (**ex. a**)
• with *declined* nouns: dative-locative CS's (**ex. b**)
instrumental CS's (**ex. c**)
postpositions (**ex. d-e**)
• with some of the proword-conjunctions (**ex. f**)

a	He never has time. ("**always** no time")	Тэр үргэлж завгүй байдаг.	ᠲᠡᠷ᠎ᠡ ᠦᠷᠭᠡᠯᠵ ᠵᠠᠪᠭᠦᠢ ᠪᠠᠢᠳᠠᠭ ··

b	Please come *at* **4 o'clock.**	Чи 4 цагт ирээрэй.	
c	I left *in* **the light of the dawn.**	Би үүрийн гэгээгээр мордсон.	
d	Drink this medicine *after* **the meal.**	Чи энэ эмийг хоолны дараа уу.	
e	Do you go to church *every* **Sunday?**	Чи бүтэн сайн өдөр бүр цуглаанд явдаг уу?	
f	**Then** we both left.	Тэгээд бид хоёр явсан.	

3.1.2.3.2.2 Showing the Beginning or the End of an Action

- Beginning: adverb or noun with *ablative CS's* (**ex. a-b**) or with *postpositions* (**ex. c**)
- End: with *postpositions* (**ex. d-e**)

a	I'm on vacation *from* **tomorrow** *onward.*	Би маргаашаас амарна.	
b	I will start my job *on* January **1st.** ("... enter my job *from* ...")	Би 1 сарын нэгнээс ажилдаа орно.	
c	*From* **now** *on* I won't make this mistake again. ("*from* **this** *on*...")	Үүнээс хойш би энэ алдааг давтахгүй.	
d	He was ill ***until*** **recently.**	Тэр саяхан болтол өвчтэй байсан.	
e	***By*** **the end of this year,** this work might be finished.	Энэ оны эцэс гэхэд энэ ажил дуусах байх.	

3.1.2.3.3 Modal Adverbials

They answer the **questions "яаж? ямар байдалтай? хир зэрэг?" (how? in what way? to what degree?)** and thus express **different ways** in which actions happen.
They can be **built** like this:
- with modal adverbs (**ex. a**)
- with adjectives + *instrumental-CS's* (**ex. b**)
- with *cVDS's* (**ex. c**)
- with *sVDS's* (**ex. d-e**)
- with the postpositions "*мэт, шиг, адил*" (**ex. f**)

a	A meal **bubbles** on a fire. ("boils **'por por'**")	Гал дээр хоол пор пор буцлана.	
b	He had a cold smile. ("He smiled **cold*ly***.")	Тэр хүйтнээр инээсэн.	
c	He came running. ("He **runn*ingly*** came.")	Тэр гүйж ирлээ.	
d	Everyone gave a thunderous applause. ("All people clapped the hands ***until*** **it thundered.**"")	Бүх хүмүүс нижигнэтэл алга ташив.	
e	He sat into his car, **laugh*ing*.**	Тэр инээсээр машиндаа суув.	
f	He stands *like* **a victorious hero.** ("having-won-hero")	Тэр ялсан баатар мэт зогсоно.	

3.1.2.3.4 Causal Adverbials

They answer the **questions "яагаад? ямар учраас? юунаас? яаснаас? юунд?" (why? for what reason? due to what?)** and thus explain the reason of the action.
They can be **built** like this:
- with *NDS's + dative-locative-CS's* (**ex. a-b**)
- with the conjunction *"-аас болж"*, whereas "болж" could also be dropped (**ex. c-d**)
- with the *cVDS "-аад"* (**ex. e**)
- with some of the *proword-conjunctions* (**ex. f**)
- with the *instrumental CS's* (**ex. g**)

a	**Out of anger** his face became red. ("*in* his having become angry")	Тэр уурласанлаа царай нь улайв.	
b	She cried **from being afraid.** ("*in* her being afraid")	Тэр айхлаа уйлсан.	
c	*Because* he **had been cold,** he got the flu.	Тэр даарснаас болж ханиалгасан.	
d	*Because of* **him** we were late.	Түүнээс болж бид хожимдсон.	
e	I **was** so **afraid,** I couldn't move. ("I **was afraid** *and then* couldn't move.")	Би айгаад хөдөлж чадаагүй.	
f	*For this reason* I couldn't go.	Тийм учраас би явж чадсангүй.	
g	*Due to* **the fire catastrophe,** we became homeless.	Түймрийн гайгаар бид орон гэргүй болов.	

3.1.2.3.5 Final Adverbials

They answer the **questions "яах гэж? яахаар? юуны тулд?" (what for? to do what?)** and thus show the **purpose** or the **intention** of an action. Usually such sentences have an **adverbial clause**, but some could be considered as final adverbials.
They can be **built** like this:
- with the *sVDS "-хаар"* (**ex. a**)
- with the postposition *"-ын тулд"* (**ex. b**)
- with the construction *"-х гэж"* (**ex. c**)

a	Dorj returned home *in order to* **rest.**	Дорж амрахаар гэртээ харьсан.	
b	I came to Mongolia *to* **study the Mongolian language.**	Би монгол хэл сурахын тулд Монголд ирсэн.	
c	I came to Mongolia *to* **study the Mongolian language.**	Би монгол хэл сурах гэж Монголд ирсэн.	

3.1.2.3.6 Conditional Adverbials

They answer the **questions "яавал? ямар бол? юу бол? хэн бол?" (under what condition?)** and thus show the **conditions** under which an action happens. But all such sentences form, strictly speaking, an **adverbial clause.**

a	**Otherwise** I'll go, you know!	Эс тэгвэл би явна шүү.	

3.1.2.3.7 Concessive Adverbials

They answer the question **"despite who or what?"** and explain why the action happens anyway. There are only a few such adverbials, as it is **common to make an adverbial clause**.

a	**Nevertheless,** I did invite him.	Хэдий тийм болович би түүнийг урьсан.	Хэдий тийм болович би түүнийг урьсан.
b	**Nevertheless,** I did give him money.	Тэглээ ч гэсэн би түүнд дахиад мөнгө өгсөн.	Тэглээ ч гэсэн би түүнд дахиад мөнгө өгсөн.
c	**Nevertheless,** he didn't take a leave.	Гэсэн ч гэсэн тэр чөлөө аваагүй.	Гэсэн ч гэсэн тэр чөлөө аваагүй.

3.1.3 Placement of the Parts of a Sentence

Taking the following two example sentences, we want to **derive a few basic rules** for the placement of the parts of a sentences:

Example A (simple): Yesterday at home, I reviewed my lesson well.

Би	өчигдөр	гэртээ	хичээлээ	сайн	давтсан.
I	yesterday	at home	my lesson	well	reviewed
subject	temporal adv.	local adverbial	object	modal adv.	predicate

Example B (more complicated): Each Sunday, in his own home, my (older) brother does the English language lesson very seriously together with his Japanese friends.

Миний ах	бүтэн сайн өдөр бүр	өөрийн-хөө гэрт	япон найз нартайгаа	англи хэл-ний хичээл	маш шаргуу	хийдэг.
My (older) brother	each Sunday	in own home	with his Japanese friends	the English language lesson	very seriously	does
subject with attribute	temporal adverbial with attribute	local adverbial with attribute	indirect object with attribute	direct object with attribute	modal adverbial with attribute	predicate

1. The predicate is always at the end.

Examples: (predicates)

a	Yesterday at home, I reviewed my lesson well.	Би өчигдөр гэртээ хичээлээ сайн давтсан.	Би өчигдөр гэртээ хичээлээ сайн давтсан.
b	He went to the shop.	Тэр дэлгүүр явав.	Тэр дэлгүүр явав.
c	He didn't go to the shop.	Тэр дэлгүүр явсангүй.	Тэр дэлгүүр явсангүй.
d	He has to go to the shop.	Тэр дэлгүүр явах хэрэгтэй.	Тэр дэлгүүр явах хэрэгтэй.
e	Did he go to the shop?	Тэр дэлгүүр явсан уу?	Тэр дэлгүүр явсан уу?

2. The subject is always before the predicate.

Examples: (subjects/predicates)

a	Yesterday at home, I reviewed my lesson well.	Би өчигдөр гэртээ хичээлээ сайн давтсан.	Би өчигдөр гэртээ хичээлээ сайн давтсан.
b	I was ill.	Би өвчтэй байсан.	Би өвчтэй байсан.
c	He made a table.	Тэр ширээ хийсэн.	Тэр ширээ хийсэн.
d	The sun rose.	Нар мандлаа.	Нар мандлаа.

e	Is he ill?	Тэр өвчтэй байна уу?	Тэр өвчтэй байна уу?

3. The object is always between subject and predicate.

Examples: (subjects/*objects*/predicates)

a	Yesterday at home, I reviewed *my lesson* well.	Би өчигдөр гэртээ *хичээлээ* сайн давтсан.	Би өчигдөр гэртээ хичээлээ сайн давтсан.
b	I bought *a book*.	Би *ном* авлаа.	Би ном авлаа.
c	Bat is making *a table*.	Бат *ширээ* хийж байна.	Бат ширээ хийж байна.
d	May I go there *with my friend*?	Би *найзтайгаа* очиж болох уу?	Би найзтайгаа очиж болох уу?
e	I couldn't write *that other letter*.	Би *нөгөө захиаг* бичиж чадаагүй.	Би нөгөө захиаг бичиж чадаагүй.

4. The attribute is always in front of the word it describes.

Examples: (*attributes*/describing word:
ex. b: subject; **ex. c:** predicate; **ex. d:** object; **ex. e:** attribute; **ex. f:** adverbial)

a	*Each Sunday*, *in his own* home, *my (older)* brother does *the English language* lesson *very* seriously together with his *Japanese* friends.	*Миний* ах *бүтэн сайн өдөр бүр өөрийнхөө* гэрт *япон найз нартайгаа англи хэлний* хичээл *маш* шаргуу хийдэг.	Миний ах бүтэн сайн өдөр бүр өөрийнхөө гэрт япон найз нартайгаа англи хэлний хичээл маш шаргуу хийдэг.
b	*My* (older) brother left.	*Миний* ах явсан.	Миний ах явсан.
c	He is Mongolian. ("*Mongolian* person.")	Тэр бол *монгол* хүн.	Тэр бол монгол хүн.
d	Take *this* pen.	Чи *энэ* үзгийг ав.	Чи энэ үзгийг ав.
e	I have a *brand* new car.	Надад *шинэ* шинэ машин бий.	Надад шинэ шинэ машин бий.
f	You learned Mongolian *very* well.	Чи монгол хэлийг *маш* сайн сурсан.	Чи монгол хэлийг маш сайн сурсан.

5. The modal adverbial is always in front of the predicate.

Examples: (modal adverbial/predicate)

a	Yesterday at home, I reviewed my lesson well.	Би өчигдөр гэртээ хичээлээ сайн давтсан.	Би өчигдөр гэртээ хичээлээ сайн давтсан.
b	This student learned well.	Тэр оюутан сайн сурав.	Тэр оюутан сайн сурав.
c	He drives his car carefully.	Тэр машинаа болгоомжтой жолоодлог.	Тэр машинаа болгоомжтой жолоодлог.
d	He stands like a victorious hero.	Тэр ялсан баатар мэт зогсоно.	Тэр ялсан баатар мэт зогсоно.

6. ☞	**The temporal adverbial is always before the local adverbial.**

Examples: (temporal adverbial/*local adverbial*)

	Yesterday *at home*, I reviewed my lesson well.	Би өчигдөр *гэртээ* хичээлээ сайн давтсан.	....
a	We learn Mongolian *at home* every day.	Бид өдөр бүр *гэртээ* монгол хэл сурдаг.	....
b	I bought a book *at the shop* yesterday.	Өчигдөр би *дэлгүүр-рээс* ном авлаа.	....
c	The whole evening, she reviewed her lesson *in the library*.	Тэр бүхэл орой *номын санд* хичээлээ давтав.	....

3.2 Coordinate Words as Parts of a Sentence

3.2.1 Characteristics

When talking about the parts of a sentence, 'coordinate words' refer to a group of words which have the **same function** in the sentence or in other words, parts of a sentence which are made up of more than one component. It could be further explained as a **merging of two or more simple sentences** which have common elements. (compare with page 367)

Example:
Peter goes to school. **Susan** goes to school. **I** go to school. = **Peter, Susan, and I** go to school.
The common element (to go to school) links the three subjects which otherwise have no relationship together.

Coordinate words as parts of a sentence can belong to **two groups**:

1.) Coordinate words which are of *one* semantic group.
Such coordinate words can be built with all five parts of a sentence.
e.g. Тэр **англи, германаар** ярьдаг. He speaks **English** and **German**.
(both **indirect objects** are **languages** = one and the same semantic group)

2.) Coordinate words which are of *different* semantic groups.
Such coordinate words can be built with objects, attributes and adverbials.
e.g. Тэр **надтай** *англиар* ярьдаг. He talks with me ***in English.***
(the **two indirect objects** belong to **different** semantic groups)

The following table shows what is possible and impossible when building coordinate words as part of a sentence:

	coordinate words of *one* semantic group:	**coordinate words of *different* semantic groups:**
1. order	**is free:** Тэр *герман, англиар* ярьдаг. Тэр *англи, германаар* ярьдаг.	**is bound:** *Миний хоёр* ном энд байна. (wrong: *Хоёр миний* ном ...)
2. grammatical form (e.g. suffixes)	**is the same:** Тэр герман*аар* ярьдаг. Тэр англ*иар* ярьдаг.	**is different:** Тэр надт*ай* англ*иар* ярьдаг.
3. conjunction	**is possible:** Тэр англиар *ба* германаар ярьдаг.	**is impossible**
4. question word	**one is sufficient:** *Юугаар* ярьдаг вэ?	**more than one is needed:** *Хэнтэй/ юугаар* ярьдаг вэ?

5. grammatical suffix	**is needed with last word only:** Тэр герман *(–ø)* , англ*иар* ярьдаг.	**is needed with every word:** Тэр надт*ай* англ*иар* ярьдаг.
6. reflexive words or listing-word	**is possible:** Тэр англи, герман *зэрэг* хэлээр ярьдаг. Баатар, Болд бид *бүгд* явсан.	**is impossible**
7. enumerating intonation	**is possible:** Тэр англи, германаар ярьдаг. (Comma or pause in intonation)	**is impossible**

3.2.2 Coordinate Subjects

Coordinate subjects can be **built like this**:
• with reflexive words like "бүгд, цөм" (**ex.b**)
• with listing-words like "дөрвүүл"
• with cardinal numerals like "дөрөв" (**ex. a**)
Note that a ***declension*** is only needed with the last word (e.g. plural suffix in **ex. b**).

a	**Bold, Baatar, Dorj, and Tulag** went to the lesson.	Болд, Баатар, Дорж, Тулга дөрөв хичээллээ явав.	....
b	During the National Holiday **everybody, herdsmen, workers and officials** take a rest.	Үндэсний баяраар малчин, ажилчин, албан хаагчид цөм амардаг.	....

3.2.3 Coordinate Predicates

Sentences with coordinate predicates have a **common subject**. They are **built like this**:
• with *cVDS's* (**ex. a**)
• with the *sVDS "–саар"* (**ex.b**).
The last predicate expresses tense (**ex. a-c,e**) or person (**ex. d**). The ***auxiliary verbs*** follow the last predicate (**ex. c,f**), but could, if need be, follow the other predicates as well (**ex. e**).

a	Dorj **watered** his sheep **and** gathered his horses.	Дорж хонио услаад, адуугаа хураав.	....
b	I ***kept* think*ing*** that I would meet him, (but) I couldn't.	Би түүнтэй уулзана гэж бодсоор	....
c	Mother *is* **cook*ing*** the meal and singing a song.	Ээж хоол хийж дуу	....
d	Please **make** dinner ***and then*** clean your room.	Чи хоол хийгээд өрөөгөө	....
e	I ***was* help*ing*** you, ***am* help*ing*** you, and will help you.	Би танд тусалж *байсан*, тусалж ч *байна*, ...	....

3.2.4 Coordinate Objects

Coordinate objects of **one semantic group**: **ex. a-b**;
Coordinate objects of **different semantic groups**: **ex.c:** *dative-locative;* instrumental; accusative

a	**Cattle, horses, camels, sheep, and goats** are the five kinds of livestock.	Үхэр, адуу, тэмээ, хонь, ямаа**г** таван хушуу мал гэнэ.	
b	We came together **with Süren, Khishigt, and Ochir.**	Бид Сүрэн, Хишигт, Очир нартай хамт ирэв.	
c	I sent money ***to her*** **by post.**	Би *түүнд* шуудангаар мөнгө явуулсан.	

3.2.5 Coordinate Attributes

Coordinate attributes of **one semantic group**: **ex. a-b**;
Coordinate attributes of **different semantic groups**: (**ex. c**: Note the **order** on page 214)

a	(They) built **wooden, stone, and brick** houses in rows.	Мод, чулуу, туйпуун байшингуудыг эгнүүлэн барьжээ.	
b	I have bought an **explanatory**, a **multi-language, and** an **orthografic** dictionary at the book shop.	Би номын дэлгүүрээс тайлбар толь, олон хэлний толь, зөв бичгийн толь худалдаж аваад байна.	
c	I saw **the man's four fat, brown** horses.	Би ахын дөрвөн тарган бор морийг харсан.	

3.2.6 Coordinate Adverbials

Coordinate adverbials of **one semantic group**: **ex. a-b** (suffix with the last adverbial)
Coordinate adverbials of **different semantic groups**: **ec. c** (suffix always needed: causal adv. "to"; temporal adv. "yesterday" (–ø); local adv. "from Germany".

a	I lived in **England, Mongolia, and Switzerland.**	Би Англи, Монгол, Швейцарь**т** амьдарч байсан.	
b	**Day** and **night, morning** and **evening**, (they) constantly remember with a longing.	Өдөр шөнө, өглөө үдэш**ээр** мөрөөдөн санагалзана.	
c	My friend came **yesterday** from **Germany** to take part in a meeting.	Миний найз хуралд оролцо**хоор** өчигдөр Герман**аас** ирсэн.	

3.3 Independent Parts of a Sentence

Independent parts of a sentence:
- are **not integrated** into the sentence structure
- have **no syntactic relationship** to the rest of the sentence
- **appear freely** anywhere in the sentence (beginning, middle, end)
- are **separated** from the rest of the sentence by **commas**

Example:

Ах минь, чи яагаад явахгүй юм бэ?	**My brother,** why won't you go, then?
Яагаад, **ах минь,** чи явахгүй юм бэ?	Why, then, **my brother,** won't you go?
Чи яагаад явахгүй юм бэ, **ах минь**?	Why won't you go, then, **my brother**?

There are **four subgroups**:
- Attention parts
- Inserted parts
- Interjections
- Response parts

3.3.1 Attention Parts

They can be **built** like this:
- using the particle "аа" (**ex. a**)
- using the CbP "минь" (**ex. b**)
- using special names to call animals (**ex. c**)
- using interjections (**ex. d**)

a	**Ваааатаr***, when will you come? (*calling for him)	Баатар аа, чи хэзээ ирэх вэ?	
b	Take care abroad, **my brother**! ("In people's place, ... think about your body.")	Хүний газар, ах минь, биеэ бодоорой.	
c	**Bankhar*, Bankhar,** come here. (*name for dogs)	Банхар банхар, нааш ир!	
d	Hey, **my friend**, please do not go!	Хөөе, найз минь, битгий яваач дээ!	

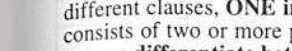
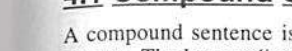
3.3.2 Inserted Parts

With the inserted parts, the speaker has a chance **to comment on** what is being said. The following words (many look like mini sentences) are often used as inserted parts. They usually appear at the **beginning** of the sentence. Some of them also serve as adverbials:

бодвол	probably ("if one thinks")
миний бодлоор	in my opinion,
миний бодоход	in my opinion
нэгдүгээрт	first
эн тэргүүнээ	first of all
нэг талаар	on one hand
нөгөө талаар	on the other hand
өөрөөр хэлбэл	in other words
нэг үгээр хэлэхэд	in one word
товчоор хэлэхэд	briefly said
эндээ гэж хэлэхэд	in private
мэдээжийн хэрэг	of course
үүнд дурдсанаар	according to this
дам сонсвол	having heard that ...
нэг мэдэхнээ	unexpectedly

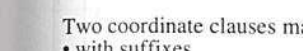
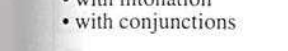
завшаанаар	fortunately
аз болоход	by chance
аз лутахад	unfortunately
харамсалтай нь	regrettably
ядаж	at least
дор хаяж	at least
наад зах нь	at least
адаглаад	at least
цаад зах нь	at most
үнэндээ	as a matter of fact
нээрээ	really, indeed
чухамдаа	in reality
яриагүй	not worth mentioning
ихэнхдээ	as a whole
ерөнхийдөө	in general

Examples:

a	**In other words**, I don't have time now!	Өөрөөр хэлбэл, би одоо завгүй байна.	
b	**Really**, I can't give you work!	Нээрээ, би чамайг ажилд оруулж чадахгүй шүү.	
c	**Of course**, I won't talk to anyone about this.	Мэдээжийн хэрэг, би энэ талаар хэнтэй ч ярихгүй.	
d	**At least**, you need a period of 4 months for this.	Наад зах нь, үүнд дөрвөн сарын хугацаа хэрэгтэй.	

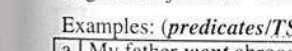
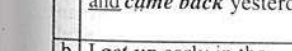
3.3.3 Interjections

Interjections make up a big percentage of the independent parts of a sentence.

a	**Brr**, how cold it is!	Тий тий, ямар хүйтэн юм бэ!	
b	**Ugh**, what a terrible smell!	Пөөх, ямар муухай үнэр вэ!	

3.3.4 Response Parts

Response parts which could also be word-sentences (see page 364) are **separated by commas** if they serve as independent parts of a sentence.

a	-Will you come to the meeting? **-Yes**, I'll come with Dorj.	–Та хуралд очих уу? –Тэгнэ, Доржтой хамт очно.	
b	-Are you a foreigner? **-That's right**, I'm a German.	–Та гадаадын хүн үү? –Тийм ээ, би герман хүн.	

4. RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN CLAUSES

A sentence which consists of different **clauses** is called a **combined sentence**. Despite the different clauses, **ONE intonation holds the sentence together**. A combined sentence always consists of two or more predicates. Depending on whether one of the clauses is dominating or not, we **differentiate between compound and complex sentences**.

4.1 Compound Sentences (coordinate)

A compound sentence is a combined sentence that is **made up of two or more coordinate clauses**. The last predicate takes a verb with a TS; the other verbs need a **cVDS**. The tense is, unlike English, expressed with the **last predicate only**.

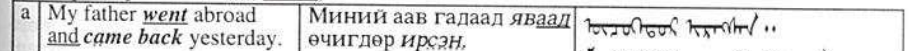
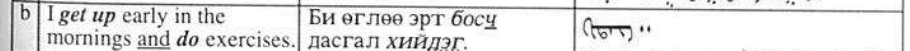
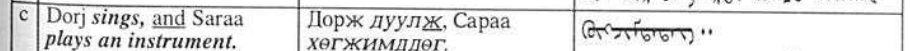
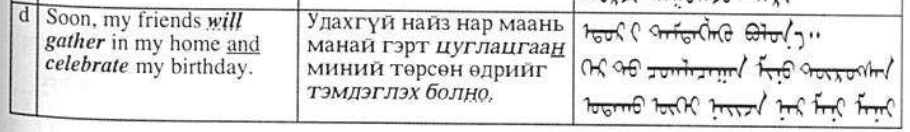
Example:
Би найзаасаа захиа **аваад** энэ тухай **сонсож** их **баярла**сан..
I **receive**d a letter from my friend, **hear**d of it and was very **happy**.

Two coordinate clauses may be **linked** to each other in one of the following ways:
- with suffixes
- with intonation
- with conjunctions

4.1.1 Compound Sentences with Suffixes

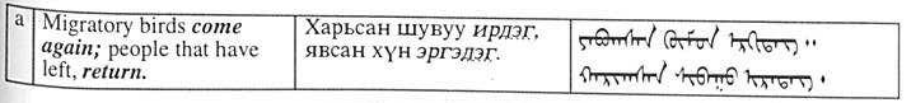
The **most common** way to build a compound sentence is to **use verbs with a cVDS**. The English conjunction **"and"** is included in the meaning of these suffixes.

Examples: (*predicates/TS/cVDS*)

a	My father ***went*** abroad and ***came back*** yesterday.	Миний аав гадаад *яваад* өчигдөр *ирсэн*.	
b	I ***get up*** early in the mornings and ***do*** exercises.	Би өглөө эрт *босч* дасгал *хийдэг*.	
c	Dorj ***sings***, and Saraa ***plays an instrument.***	Дорж *дуулж*, Сараа *хөгжимдөг*.	
d	Soon, my friends ***will gather*** in my home and ***celebrate*** my birthday.	Удахгүй найз нар маань манай гэрт *цуглацгаан* миний төрсөн өдрийг *тэмдэглэх болно*.	

4.1.2 Compound Sentences with Intonation

In **colloquial language**, compound sentences with intonations are **widely used**. Proverbs and rhythms are expressed this way (**ex. a**). Usually, both verbal predicates have a *TS* (**ex. b-c**). Due to the missing intonation, a **comma** is needed in the written language. An exception to this is the ***cVDS "–ж/–ч"***, whose *TS* is added to the auxiliary verb of the second verbal predicate and therefore, **no comma** is needed.

a	Migratory birds ***come again;*** people that have left, ***return.***	Харьсан шувуу *ирдэг*, явсан хүн *эргэдэг*.	

b	I *came* yesterday, my wife *will come* today.	Би өчигдөр *ирсэн*, миний эхнэр өнөөдөр *ирнэ*.	
c	The man *fled*; the wife *was at her wit's end.*	Эр *оргов*, эхнэр *мухардав*. (literary)	
d	I *am reading* and my older brother *is playing* outside.	Би ном *уншиж*, ах гадаа *тоглож байна*.	

4.1.3 Compound Sentences with Conjunctions

Compound sentences with conjunctions are **rare**. Possible conjunctions are "бөгөөд" (**ex .a**), "харин" (**ex. b**), "(аль) эсвэл" (**ex. c**).

a	My younger sister *studies* in Germany **and** *will come back* soon.	Миний дүү Германд *сурч байгаа* бөгөөд удахгүй *ирнэ*.	
b	My friend *is living* well in the countryside, **but** his work could be better. ("...his work is slightly with bad success.")	Найз минь хөдөө сайхан *амьдарч байна*, харин ажил нь жаахан бүтэмж *муутай байгаа*.	
c	*Do* you *like* red apples **or** green apples?	Та улаан алимд *дуртай* юу эсвэл ногоон алимд *дуртай* юу?	

4.2 Complex Sentences (subordinate)

A complex sentence is a combined sentence consisting of **one main clause and one or more subordinate clauses.** In Mongolian grammar, the complex sentence **plays a very important role.** Because the sentence structure is **completely different** from English, it deserves our full **attention**.

Taking the example sentence *"Аавыг иртэл* **би энд хүлээнэ.**" ('I'll wait here, until Dad comes.'), we will give **definitions** of a main clause and a subordinate clause:

☞A main clause is a sentence

- which can **exist independently** of the other clause: Би энд хүлээнэ./ I'll wait here.
- whose verbal predicate **always takes a** TS (p. 175ff): хүлээнэ
- which is **always** (with the exception of predicate clauses) placed at the **end of the sentence**: *Аавыг иртэл* **би энд хүлээнэ**./ *Until Dad comes,* **I'll wait here**.

☞A subordinate clause is a sentence

- which is **dominated by the main clause** and thus, is subordinate: *Аавыг иртэл...*; *Until Dad comes, ...* ---> incomplete!
- which has the **function of one part of the sentence:** *Хэдий хүртэл* би энд хүлээх вэ?/ *Until when* shall I wait here? --> *Temporal adverbial*
- which **always** (with the exception of predicate clauses) is **placed before the main sentence**: *Аавыг иртэл* би энд хүлээнэ./ I'll wait here, *until Dad comes. Until Dad comes, I'll wait here.* --->In English, subordinate clauses can be placed before main clauses!
- which **can't express an absolute tense**: *Аавыг иртэл* би энд хүлээ**нэ**./ I **shall wait** here, *until Dad comes.* *Аавыг иртэл* би энд хүлээ**сэн**./ I **had been waiting** here, *until Dad came.*

4.2.1 Characteristics of Subordinate Clauses

As evident above, there are many differences between a Mongolian and an English subordinate clause. We shall now talk about these differences.

4.2.1.1 FORM AND TENSE OF PREDICATES

The predicate of a *subordinate clause* can be **built in the following ways**:
- **with a cVDS: ex. a**
- **with an undeclined NDS: ex. b-d**
- **with a declined NDS : ex. e**

a	Let me wait here *until the teacher comes.*	*Багшийг иртэл* би энд хүлээж байя.	
b	*What he said* is right.	*Түүний хэлсэн* нь зөв байна.	
c	That's *what you always say*.	Энэ бол *чиний хэлдэг*.	
d	Please don't forget the words *I said.*	*Миний хэлсэн* үгийг битгий мартаарай.	
e	Do listen to *what I tell you!*	*Миний хэлэх* сонсож бай!	

The *predicate of the subordinate clause* expresses a tense, which is not absolutely independent from the tense of the **predicate** of the **main clause**. The past (**ex. a-b**), present (**ex. c-e**) or future (**ex. f-h**), being expressed by the *predicate of the subordinate clause*, has to be seen in the light of the tense of the main clause.

a	I **knew** *that he had left for the countryside.*	*Түүний хөдөө явсныг* би мэдсэн.	
b	I **know** *that he left for the countryside.*	*Түүний хөдөө явсныг* би мэднэ.	
c	I **knew** *that he was staying in the countryside.*	*Түүний хөдөө явааг* би мэдсэн.	
d	I **know** *that he is staying in the countryside.*	*Түүний хөдөө явааг* би мэднэ.	
e	We **arrived** in time, *having been traveling without a stop.*	Бид *зогсолтгүй явсаар* цагтаа **оч**сон.	
f	*As soon as Dad comes,* I'll **go**.	*Аавыг ирмэгц* би **яв**на.	
g	*As soon as Dad came,* I **went**.	*Аавыг ирмэгц* би **яв**сан.	
h	I **knew** *that he would leave for the countryside.*	*Түүний хөдөө явах* **ы**г би мэдсэн.	

4.2.1.2 FORM OF SUBJECTS

In an English subordinate clause, the subject is always in the nominative case. But in Mongolian, the subject could also be in **genitive or accusative** case. An explanation for this is not easy, as there is no relationship between the subject and those two cases. For usage however, there are a **few guidelines** as to which subject takes which case. It is essential, however, to **differentiate** between **two common** subjects and **two different** subjects.

4.2.1.2.1 Common Subjects

The subjects of the main clause and the subordinate clause are **one and the same**. Therefore, the subject needs to be mentioned **only once**, usually in the *subordinated clause* which precedes. It is in nominative case. By adding the **RS** to the predicate of the subordinate sentence, the **unity of the two subjects** is further **emphasized**.

a	*As soon as I came from my lessons,* I had lunch.	*Би хичээлээс ирмэгцээ* цайгаа уусан.	
b	He lived in the countryside, *until he was old.* ("until his having become old")	*Тэр настай болтлоо* хөдөө суусан.	

4.2.1.2.2 Different Subjects

If the subjects of the main clause and the subordinate clause are **not the same**, the subject of the clause appears in either **genitive or accusative case**. Logically there can't be an RS (**ex. a-b**). **Example b** shows that the **declined** subject of the subordinate clause **alone** is proof enough, that the subjects are not the same. It would be wrong to translate "Dorj thought *that he had won.*" That would be in Mongolian "*Дорж ялсан гэж* санасан" and is an example for common subjects.

a	*When he returned home,* the others continued their talking.	*Түүнийг гэртээ харихад* бусад нь яриагаа үргэлжлүүлжээ.	
b	(People) thought *that Dorj had won.*	*Доржийг ялсан гэж* санасан.	

Whether the subject is in genitive or accusative case depends to a large extent on the **form of the predicate** of the subordinate clause:

4.2.1.2.2.1 Subjects in Genitive Case

If the predicate of the subordinate clause is built with an **undeclined NDS, the** subject **is usually in** genitive case. That happens often in *attribute clauses* (**ex. a-b**) or in subordinate clauses with a nominal element (e.g. *subject clauses* = **ex. c**). Many *object clauses* have the structure of an attribute clause and demand also a genitive case subject (**ex. d**).

a	The flowers *I planted,* grew very beautifully.	*Миний тарьсан* цэцэг маш гоё ургажээ.	
b	Did you see the car *he drives*?	*Түүний унадаг* машиныг та харсан уу?	
c	*What you said* is right.	*Таны хэлсэн чинь* зөв байна.	
d	I don't agree *with what you said.*	Би *таны хэлсэнтэй* са- нал нийлэхгүй байна.	

4.2.1.2.2.2 Subjects in Accusative Case

If the predicate of the subordinate clause is built with a **sVDS**, the subject of the subordinate clause is usually in accusative case**.** If the subject is **indefinite** (compare with the hierarchy list of accusative case on page 89), the suffix is dropped and appears as **zero- suffix** (–∅). See **ex. e, g and i**.
Most *adverbial clauses* are built this way. Note that some sVDS can only be used in sentences with a common subject (e.g. "–caap").

a	*If my older brother ... comes,* I will go.	*Ахыг ирвэл* би явна.	
b	Let's eat our dinner *as soon as Father ... comes.*	*Аавыг ирмэгц* хоолоо идэцгээе.	
c	Were you in your classroom *when the teacher ... came?*	Та *багшийг ирэхэд* ангидаа байсан уу?	
d	I will tell (you) *if that person ... comes.*	*Тэр хүнийг ирвэл* би хэлье.	
e	I will tell (you) *if someone ... comes.*	*Хэн(–д) ирвэл* би хэлье.	
f	*If the dog ... of this family barks,* you go out please.	*Энэ айлын нохойг хуцвал* чи гараарай.	
g	*If a dog ... barks,* you go out please.	*Нохой(–д) хуцвал* чи гараарай.	
h	I will wait *until his letter ... arrives.*	Би *түүний захиаг ирэтэл* хүлээнэ.	
i	I will wait *until a letter ... comes from him.*	Би *түүнээс захиа(–д) ирэтэл* хүлээнэ.	

4.2.1.2.2.3 Subjects in Accusative or Genitive Case

In *object clauses*, the subject can be in genitive or accusative case. Some linguists have given the following rule, which we are not too happy with, but lack a better explanation at this point:
Predicate of subordinate clause = **transitive verb**: subject tends to be in genitive case (**ex. a**).
Predicate of subordinate clause = **intransitive verb**:subject tends to be in accusative case (**ex. b**).

a	All saw *that Bat caught the horse.*	*Батын морь барихыг* бүгдээрээ харав.	
b	We didn't know *that you had come.*	*Таныг ирснийг* бид мэдсэнгүй.	

4.2.1.2.2.4 Basic Rules

Here is a **summary** of what has been said so far:

	Subjects are ...	Conditions:	Subjects are in ... case	Often used in ... clauses
1.☞	common		nominative + RS	
2.☞	different	undeclined NDS	genitive	attribute (subject, predicate)
		transitive verb	genitive	object
		VDS or declined NDS	accusative	adverbial
		intransitive verb	accusative	object
		indefinite subject	"–ø" accusative	adverbial
3. ☞	no rule without exception!			

We want to include in this book some thoughts from a **study** of **Mizuno Masanori**, *"Preference Ordering of Subject Form in Modern Mongolian"* (Tokio University Linguistic Papers, March 1995):
In colloquial language, **people very often go against the rules** mentioned above. We will list here some sentences where the subject could be in more than just one case. Mr. Masanori has developed a **preference ordering**, which we mark in the following way: **"N>G>A"**. This means, nominative is best, followed by genitive and accusative case. Such a preference ordering depends on the following **criterias**:

- connective potentiality between phrases
- avoidance of syntactic ambiguity
- subject contrastivity between the different two clauses
- quality of clauses
- avoidance of case form collision

1.) N>G>A

Галт ирсэн гэж үнэн үү?
Галтыг ирсэн гэж үнэн үү?
Галтыг ирсэн гэж үнэн үү?

Is it true *that Galt came?*

2.) N>A>G

Дорж энэ номыг авсныг би сая мэдлээ.
Доржийг энэ номыг авсныг би сая мэдлээ.
Доржийн энэ номыг авсныг би сая мэдлээ.

I've just found out *that Dorj bought this book.*

3.) G>N>A

Миний ирсэн машиныг та үзсэн үү?
Би ирсэн машиныг та үзсэн үү?
Намайг ирсэн машиныг та үзсэн үү?

Have you seen the car *I came with?*

4.) G>A>N

Чинийх ирснийг би сая мэдлээ.
Чамайг ирснийг би сая мэдлээ.
Чи ирснийг би сая мэдлээ.

I've just found out *that you came.*

5.) A>N>G

Намайг иртэл чи хүлээж бай.
Би иртэл чи хүлээж бай.
Миний иртэл чи хүлээж бай.

Keep waiting, *until I come!*

6.) A>G>N

Намайг сургууль дээр ирснийг би сая мэдлээ.
Чинийх сургууль дээр ирснийг би сая мэдлээ.
Чи сургууль дээр ирснийг би сая мэдлээ.

I've just found out *that you came to school.*

4.2.2 Classification of Subordinate Clauses

Every part of a sentence could be **extended to a subordinate clause**. Thus, we talk about subject clauses, predicate clauses, object clauses, attribute clauses, and adverbial clauses. Many such clauses are built with **subordinating conjunctions** (see page 307ff) or with a **sVDS**.

4.2.2.1 SUBJECT CLAUSES

Subject clauses, which don't occur frequently, have the **function of the subject** in the main clause and answers the question **'who or what?'** (хэн? юу? яасан нь?). The subject is usually in **genitive case** (**ex. a-c**). Often, the **CbP "нь"** serves as a **subject indicator** and marks the subject clause. **In ex. d,** "цас оро–" is a **fixed expression**, therefore, the subject is not declined. Note, that in the English main clause, the *correlate 'it'* must appear for the missing subject, which is actually expressed in the subject clause that follows (an exception is **ex. d**, where the whole clause is expressed like a noun).

a	*It* is right *that he left.* (**Who or what** is right?)	*Түүний явсан нь* зөв.	ᠲᠡᠭᠦᠨ ᠤ ᠬᠣᠪᠢᠶᠠᠨ ᠨᠢ ᠵᠥᠪ᠃᠃
b	*Your leaving* hit the bull's eye. (**Who or what** hit the bull's eye?)	*Чиний явсан чинь* оножээ.	ᠴᠢᠨᠢ ᠬᠣᠪᠢᠶᠠᠨ ᠴᠢᠨᠢ ᠣᠨᠣᠵᠠ᠃᠃
c	*It* isn't clear, *whether he'll come tomorrow.* (**Who or what** isn't clear?)	*Түүний маргааш ирэх эсэх* тодорхойгүй байна.	ᠮᠠᠷᠭᠠᠰᠢ ᠲᠡᠷᠦᠦ ᠤᠷᠢᠭᠤᠯᠤᠭᠰᠠᠨ ᠡᠰᠡᠬᠦ ᠲᠤᠳᠤᠷᠬᠠᠢᠭᠤᠢ ᠪᠠᠢᠨᠠ᠃᠃
d	*The snow* was the main reason for the delay of the flight (**Who or what** was the cause ...?)	*Цас орсон нь* нислэг хойшлох гол шалтгаан болов.	ᠴᠠᠰᠤᠨ ᠤᠷᠤᠭᠰᠠᠨ ᠨᠢ ᠨᠢᠰᠯᠡᠭ ᠬᠣᠶᠢᠱᠯᠣᠬᠤ ᠭᠣᠣᠯ ᠱᠠᠯᠲᠭᠠᠨ ᠪᠣᠯᠤᠪ᠃᠃
e	*It* would be better *to lie down at home for some days.* (**Who or what** would be better?)	*Гэртээ хэдхоног хэвтсэн нь* дээр.	ᠨᠢ ᠤᠨᠳᠤᠷ ᠤ᠃᠃ ᠡᠳ ᠤᠨᠳᠤᠷ ᠡᠴᠡ ᠪᠤᠤᠵᠤ ᠣᠨᠣᠭᠤᠷᠬᠤ

4.2.2.2 PREDICATE CLAUSES

The *predicate clause* has the **function of the predicate** in the main clause. In most cases, it's a **nominal** predicate, **a subject complement.** This subordinate clause is the only kind of clause which is **placed after the main clause**. Its subject is usually in **genitive case** (**ex. a-b**). Predicate clauses are **rare.**

a	This is *what you always say.*	Энэ бол *чиний хэлдэг.*	ᠢᠨᠡ ᠪᠣᠯ ᠴᠢᠨᠢ ᠠᠶᠠᠯᠤᠭᠠ᠃᠃
b	That (you) learned the Mongolian language, *is the fruit of your efforts.*	Монгол хэл сурсан нь *та нарын хичээснийх.*	ᠮᠣᠩᠭᠣᠯ ᠬᠡᠯᠡ ᠰᠤᠷᠴᠠᠭᠰᠠᠨ ᠤ ᠨᠢ᠃᠃ ᠲᠠᠨᠤ ᠨᠠᠷ ᠤᠨ ᠬᠢᠴᠢᠶᠡᠯᠡᠯ ᠶᠢᠨ ᠤᠯ
c	That well is (*a well) that has water.* . (common sentence in the countryside, where not every well has water)	Тэр худаг бол *ус гардаг.*	ᠲᠡᠷᠡ ᠬᠤᠳᠠᠭ ᠪᠣᠯ᠃᠃ ᠤᠰᠤ ᠭᠠᠷᠳᠠᠭ ᠪᠤᠢ ᠬᠤᠮᠤᠭ

4.2.2.3 OBJECT CLAUSES

The *object clause* has the **function of an object** in the main clause and answers questions like **'who? whom? about what?', etc.** (юу/г? юунд? юуны тухай? юуны талаар? яахыг?). Having this function, it is declined. Often, such a **declension** results in an English translation using **relative pronouns** (..., that..; ..., which...). Object clauses have subjects :

- in **nominative** (with common subjects and the use of the RS: **ex. a-c**)
- often in **genitive**, because the sentence structure is similar to an attribute clause (**ex. d-g**):
- rarely in **accusative** (**ex. h**).

a	I'm faithful *to what I told you*. (**To whom or what** am I faithful?)	Би *чамд хэлсэндээ* үнэнч.	
b	Bat hadn't let me know *when he came back*. (**What** didn't Bat let me know?)	Бат *хэзээ ирсэнээ* надад хэлээгүй.	
c	Why are you not doing (it) *according to what you said?* (Why are you not doing **what**?)	Та яагаад *хэлсэн дагуугаа* хийхгүй байна вэ?	
d	I'd like to ask quite a lot of things *in regard to what you have written*. (**About whom or what** would I like to ask?)	Би *таны бичснээс* нилээд юм асуумаар байна.	
e	I don't agree *with what you said*. (**With what** do I not agree?)	Би *таны хэлсэнтэй* санал нийлэхгүй байна.	
f	We didn't know *that you had come*. (**Who or what** didn't we know?)	*Таны ирснийг* бид мэдсэнгүй.	
g	I knew *that he couldn't come*.	*Түүний ирж чадахгүй гэдгийг* би мэдэж байсан.	
h	I've just found out *that you came to school*.	*Чамайг сургууль дээр ирснийг* би сая мэдлээ.	

4.2.2.4 ATTRIBUTE CLAUSES

The *attribute clause* has the **function of an attribute** in the main clause and answers questions like **'what kind of? which?'** (ямар? аль? яасан?). As a rule, the subject is in **genitive case** and the predicate is built with an **undeclined NDS**.

a	It's time *that I went home*. (**What kind of time** is it?)	*Миний гэртээ харих* цаг болов. (attribute to subject)	
b	This is something *(that) you always say*. (**What kind of** something?)	Энэ бол *чиний хэлдэг* үг. (attribute to predicate)	
c	I brought the horse *which you ride*. (**What kind of horse** did I bring?)	Би *таны унадаг* морийг авчирлаа. (attribute to object)	
d	Let's wait until the teacher *(that) we met* comes.	*Бидний тааралдсан* багшийг иртэл хүлээцгээе.(attribute to adverbial)	

4.2.2.5 ADVERBIAL CLAUSES

The *adverbial clause* has the **function of an adverbial** in the main clause and answers questions like **'why? when? where? how?', etc.** (яагаад? хэзээ? хаана? яаж?). These clauses are **widely used** and can be **built in several ways**:

- common subjects --> subject in nominative (+ RS) (**ex. a-b**)
- predicate with a **sVDS** --> subject in accusative (**ex. c-e**)
  (in **ex. e,** "намар бол–" is a fixed expression, therefore, no accusative suffix)
- predicate with **declined NDS** * --> subject usually in nominative (**ex. f-i**)
- predicate with **instrumental-case-declined NDS** --> subject in genitive (**ex. j-l**)

(* declined: with "бол/боловч" or subordinating conjunctions)

a	*As soon as I start reading a book*, I forget everything. (**When** do I forget ....?)	*Би ном уншиж эхэлмэгцээ* бүх юмыг мартдаг юм.	
b	*As soon as I get there*, I'll write you a letter. (**When** will I write you a letter?)	*Би очмогцоо* чамд захиа бичнэ.	
c	*When the teacher comes*, please go to your lesson. (Go **when** to your lesson?)	*Багшийг ирэхлээр* хичээлдээ очоорой.	
d	(Someone) was beaten *until the dry stick broke apart*. (**How** was someone beaten?)	*Хуурай модыг хугартал* зоджээ.	
e	*When it becomes autumn*, the plants wither, and it gets cool. (**When** do the plants wither?)	*Намар болохлоор* ногоо гандаж, сэрүүн болдог.	
f	*If that person knows Russian well*, (then) explain it in Russian! (Explain it in Russian **under what condition**?)	*Тэр хүн орос хэл сайн мэлдэг бол* чи оросоор тайлбарла!	
g	*Although he hadn't talked with me about this*, I knew it. (**Despite what** did I know?)	*Тэр надад энэ тухай яриагүй боловч* би мэдсэн.	
h	*Because my father has come from Germany*, I don't have a lot of time these days. (**Why** do I not have a lot of time?)	*Миний аавыг Германаас ирсэн тул* би ойрдоо их завгүй байна.	
i	*Because our father didn't come*, we couldn't go. (**Why** couldn't we go?)	*Манай аав ирээгүй учраас* бид нар явж чадсангүй.	
j	Baatar wrote this letter *the way the teacher had suggested it*. (**How** did he write this letter?)	Баатар энэ захиаг *багшийн зөвлөснөөр* бичив.	
k	I'll do this *the way you said it*. (**How** will I do it?)	Би үүнийг *таны хэлснээр* хийнэ.	
l	We went *where you had gone*. (**Where** did we go?)	*Та нарын явснаар* бид явсан.	

4.3 Extended Combined Sentences

The extended combined sentence, in Mongolian called "mixture sentence", is a **combination of complex and compound sentences**. Such combinations could be:

1.) The subordinated clause of a complex sentence is made up of a compound sentence:

main clause/*subordinate clause*

a	*As soon as I came from my lessons and had lunch,* **he called.**	*Намайг хичээлээсээ ирж цайгаа уумагц* **тэр утасдсан.**	ᠪᠢᠴᠢᠭᠡᠯᠡᠡᠰᠡᠡ ᠢᠷᠡᠵᠦ ᠴᠠᠶᠠᠭᠠᠯᠠᠵᠤ ᠳᠠᠭᠤᠰᠤᠭᠰᠠᠨ᠃ ᠨᠠᠮᠠᠢᠭ᠋ᠢ ᠬᠢᠴᠢᠶᠡᠯᠡᠡᠰᠡᠡ ᠢᠷᠡᠵᠦ ᠴᠠᠶᠠᠭᠠᠯᠠᠵᠤ ᠳᠠᠭᠤᠰᠤᠭᠰᠠᠨ᠃

2.) The compound sentence is the main clause of a complex sentence:

main clause/*subordinate clause*

a	*When he called,* **I had just come from my lessons and was having lunch.**	*Түүнийг утасдахад* **би хичээлээсээ ирээд цайгаа ууж байсан.**	ᠲᠡᠭᠡᠨᠢᠶᠡ ᠤᠳᠠᠰᠤᠳᠠᠵᠤ ᠪᠠᠢᠬᠤ ᠦᠶᠡᠳᠡ᠃ ᠪᠢ ᠬᠢᠴᠢᠶᠡᠯᠡᠡᠰᠡᠡ ᠢᠷᠡᠵᠦ ᠴᠠᠶᠠᠭᠠ ᠤᠤᠵᠤ ᠪᠠᠢᠰᠠᠨ᠃

3.) Both, main and subordinate clause, are made up of compound sentences:

main clause/*subordinate clause*

a	*As soon as I came from my lessons and had lunch,* **he called and told (me) about this.**	*Намайг хичээлээсээ ирж цайгаа уумагц* **тэр утасдаж энэ тухай хэлсэн.**	ᠪᠢᠴᠢᠭᠡᠯᠡᠡᠰᠡᠡ ᠢᠷᠡᠵᠦ ᠴᠠᠶᠠᠭᠠᠯᠠᠵᠤ ᠳᠠᠭᠤᠰᠤᠭᠰᠠᠨ᠃ ᠨᠠᠮᠠᠢᠭ᠋ᠢ ᠬᠢᠴᠢᠶᠡᠯᠡᠡᠰᠡᠡ ᠢᠷᠡᠵᠦ ᠴᠠᠶᠠᠭᠠᠯᠠᠵᠤ ᠳᠠᠭᠤᠰᠤᠭᠰᠠᠨ᠃

4.4 Speech

In order to use speech in Mongolian, the **conjunction verb "гэ–"** is needed (page 210). Direct and indirect speech have some **characteristics** which we have listed below:

	direct speech	**indirect speech**
a	written **with quotation marks** (or dash)	written **without quotation marks**
b	subject is in **nominative**	subject is in **accusative**

4.4.1 Direct Speech

A **speech** that has the **actual words quoted,** is called *'direct speech'*. The subject is in **nominative case and, usually, at the beginning of the sentence.** Direct speech is either put in **quotation marks** (**ex. a-b**) or the new line is marked with a **dash** (**ex. c-d**). The conjunction verb "гэ–", which could be declined in different ways, serves as the conjunction between the speech and the other part of the sentence.

a	A man asked, ***"My son, where are you about to go?"*** гэж асуусан.	Аав: *"Хүү минь, хаачих нь вэ?"* гэж асуусан.	ᠡᠡᠵ ᠬᠦᠦ᠄ «ᠪᠢᠴᠢ ᠬᠠᠭᠠᠨ᠎ᠠ ᠶᠠᠪᠠᠨ᠎ᠠ ᠪᠡ?» ᠭᠡᠵᠦ ᠠᠰᠤᠭᠤᠰᠠᠨ᠃
b	Baatar met his friend and greeted him ***"Hi, what's new with you?"***	Баатар найзтайгаа уулзаад *"Сайн уу? Сонин юутай?"* гэж мэндлэв.	ᠪᠠᠭᠠᠲᠤᠷ ᠨᠥᠬᠡᠳᠡᠢᠭᠠ ᠤᠤᠯᠵᠠᠵᠤ᠃ «ᠰᠠᠶᠢᠨ ᠤᠤ ᠪᠠᠭᠰᠢ᠎ᠠ ᠶᠤᠮᠤ ᠪᠠᠢᠨ᠎ᠠ» ᠭᠡᠵᠦ ᠮᠡᠨᠳᠯᠡᠪᠡ᠃

c	A woman addressed her tired son and said, ***"Go to sleep. Let me finish the thing you started."***	Ээж нь ядарсан хүүдээ хандан, *– Чи унт, унт. Би эхэлсэн юмыг чинь дуусгая* гэв.	ᠡᠡᠵ᠄ ᠨᠠᠮᠠᠢᠭ᠋ᠢ ᠬᠤᠭᠤᠷᠠᠭᠰᠠᠨ ᠬᠦᠦᠳᠡᠢᠭᠡ ᠬᠠᠨᠳᠠᠨ᠃ – ᠴᠢ ᠤᠨᠲᠤ᠂ ᠤᠨᠲᠤ᠃᠃ ᠪᠢ ᠡᠬᠡᠯᠡᠭᠰᠡᠨ ᠶᠤᠮᠤᠭ ᠴᠢᠨᠢ ᠳᠠᠭᠤᠰᠭᠠᠭᠠ ᠭᠡᠪ᠃
d	The teacher addresses his students, praising them saying things like, ***"You did your exams very successfully."***	Багш оюутнуудлаа хандан, *– Та нар шалгалтаа амжилттай өгсөн* гэж мэтээр магтаж байна.	ᠪᠠᠭᠰᠢ ᠠᠪᠤᠭ᠎ᠠ ᠬᠦᠴᠦᠨ ᠳᠤ ᠬᠠᠶᠢᠭᠠᠯᠠᠵᠤ ᠪᠠᠢᠨ᠎ᠠ᠃᠃ – ᠲᠠ ᠨᠠᠷ ᠰᠢᠯᠭᠠᠯᠲᠠ᠎ᠠ ᠠᠮᠵᠢᠯᠲᠠᠢ ᠥᠭᠰᠡᠨ ᠭᠡᠵᠦ ᠮᠡᠲᠡᠡᠷ ᠮᠠᠭᠲᠠᠵ ᠪᠠᠢᠨ᠎ᠠ᠃

4.4.2 Indirect Speech

Indirect speech is **not quoted with the actual words** of the person who said it, but a **rendering of that person's speech.** In English, subjunctive is used to express indirect speech. In Mongolian, the transformation of speech is easier **because the *actual speech*** **changes less**.

Direct: This child said, ***"I go home."***
Энэ хүүхэд ***"Би гэртээ харина"*** гэж хэлсэн.
Indirect: This child said, ***(that) it would go home.***
Энэ хүүхэд ***гэртээ харина*** гэж хэлсэн.

Direct: Mother called, ***"Come here!"***
Эж ***"нааш ир!"*** гэж дуудсан.
Indirect: Mother called me to come (to her).
Эж ***намайг нааш ир*** гэж дуудсан.

If the two subjects are **common**, the subject has to be mentioned only **once**, usually in the main clause (**ex. a-b**). With two **different subjects**, the order of words in the sentence is:
1.) subject of the main clause (in nominative)
2.) indirect speech clause (subject in accusative)
3.) *conjunction verb "гэ–"*
4.) predicate of the main clause (e.g. said, shouted, answered)

a	My older brother said, ***(that) he had no time.***	Миний ах ***завгүй*** гэж хэлэв.	ᠬᠦᠬᠡ ᠮᠤᠷᠭᠤ ᠲᠡᠭ᠎ᠡ ᠴᠠᠭ ᠦᠬᠡᠢ ᠪᠠᠢᠨ᠎ᠠ᠃᠃
b	Mother said, ***(that) she would go to the cinema in the evening.***	Эж ***орой кинотеатрт очно*** гэж хэлэв.	ᠡᠵᠢ᠂ ᠣᠷᠣᠢ ᠪᠠᠭᠤᠴᠢᠯᠠᠨ᠎ᠠ᠃᠃ ᠢᠨᠡᠭᠡᠨ ᠥᠭᠬᠥᠨ᠎ᠡ ᠬᠣᠷᠢᠶᠠᠨ᠎ᠠ ᠳᠤ
c	My older brother said, ***(that) the mother had no time.***	Миний ах ***ээжийг*** ***завгүй*** гэж хэлэв.	ᠪᠠᠭᠤ ᠦᠬᠡᠢ᠃᠃ ᠬᠦᠬᠡ ᠮᠤᠷᠭᠤ ᠨᠠᠷ ᠨᠢ ᠴᠠᠭ ᠦᠬᠡᠢ
d	Mother said, ***(that) her friend would go to the cinema in the evening.***	Эж ***найзыгаа орой кинотеатрт очно*** гэж хэлэв.	ᠡᠵᠢ᠄ ᠲᠡᠭᠡᠨᠢᠶ᠎ᠡ ᠨᠥᠬᠡᠳᠡᠢᠭᠠ ᠣᠷᠣᠢ ᠪᠠᠭᠤᠴᠢᠯᠠᠨ᠎ᠠ᠃᠃ ᠨᠠᠷ ᠢᠨᠡᠭᠡᠨ ᠥᠭᠬᠥᠨ᠎ᠡ ᠬᠣᠷᠢᠶᠠᠨ᠎ᠠ ᠳᠤ

4.4.3 Transformation of Speech

In order to transform ***direct speech into indirect speech***, there are **4 basic rules**:

1. ☞ **Quotation marks** are dropped (**all examples**)
2. ☞ Subject changes from nominative case to accusative case (**all examples**)
3. ☞ Missing subject must be expressed (**ex. b**)
4. ☞ **Dative or ablative case object** becomes one and the same with the subject (**ex. c-d**)
5. ☞ ChP or personal pronouns become RS –аа (**ex. e**)

a	My older brother said, *"Mother has no time."*	Миний ах: *"Ээж завгүй"* гэж хэлэв.	ᠪᠢᠳᠡ ᠠᠬᠤᠴᠢᠨ ᠬᠡᠯᠡᠪᠡ᠄ «ᠡᠵᠡ ᠵᠠᠪᠭᠤᠢ ᠪᠠᠢᠨᠠ»
	My older brother said, *(that) Mother had no time.*	Миний ах ээжийг завгүй гэж хэлэв.	ᠪᠢᠳᠡ ᠠᠬᠤᠴᠢᠨ ᠡᠵᠡ ᠵᠠᠪᠭᠤᠢ ᠪᠠᠢᠨᠠ ᠭᠡᠵᠡ ᠬᠡᠯᠡᠪᠡ
b	Mother called, *"Come here!"*	Ээж *"Нааш ир!"* гэж дуудав.	ᠡᠵᠡ ᠳᠠᠭᠤᠭᠰᠠᠨ᠂ ᠡᠨᠳᠡ «ᠨᠠᠭᠤᠰ ᠤᠷᠢᠭᠠᠷᠠᠢ!» ᠭᠡᠵᠡ
	Mother called me to come (to her).	Ээж намайг *нааш ир* гэж дуудав.	ᠡᠵᠡ ᠨᠠᠮᠠᠢᠭ ᠨᠠᠭᠤᠰ ᠤᠷᠢᠭᠠᠷᠠᠢ ᠭᠡᠵᠡ
c	The teacher asked me: *"How old are you?"*	Багш надаас: *"Чи хэдэн настай вэ?"* гэж асуув.	ᠪᠠᠭᠱ ᠨᠠᠳᠠᠠᠰ᠄ «ᠴᠢ ᠬᠡᠳᠦᠨ ᠨᠠᠰᠲᠠᠢ ᠪᠡ?» ᠭᠡᠵᠡ ᠠᠰᠤᠭᠤᠪ᠃
	The teacher asked me, *how old I was.*	Багш намайг *хэдэн настай вэ* гэж асуув.	ᠪᠠᠭᠱ ᠠᠰᠤᠭᠤᠪ᠃ ᠪᠢ ᠬᠡᠳᠦᠨ ᠨᠠᠰᠲᠠᠢ ᠪᠠᠢᠭᠰᠠᠨ ᠪᠡ ᠭᠡᠵᠡ
d	The teacher told me: *"Make sure you read this book."*	Багш надад *"Чи энэ номыг заавал уншаарай"* гэж хэлэв.	ᠪᠠᠭᠱ ᠨᠠᠳᠠᠳ «ᠴᠢ ᠡᠨᠡ ᠨᠣᠮ ᠢᠵᠠᠭᠤᠷᠲᠠᠢ ᠪᠠᠢᠵᠤ ᠤᠩᠱᠠᠭᠠᠷᠠᠢ» ᠭᠡᠵᠡ ᠬᠡᠯᠡᠪᠡ᠃
	The teacher told me *to make sure that I read this book .*	Багш намайг *энэ номыг заавал уншаарай* гэж хэлэв.	ᠪᠠᠭᠱ ᠨᠠᠮᠠᠢᠭ ᠡᠨᠡ ᠨᠣᠮ ᠢᠵᠠᠭᠤᠷᠲᠠᠢ ᠪᠠᠢᠵᠤ ᠤᠩᠱᠠᠭᠠᠷᠠᠢ ᠭᠡᠵᠡ ᠬᠡᠯᠡᠪᠡ᠃
e	A woman asked, *"It's son., what time is it?"*	Ээж нь: *"Миний хүү, цаг хэд болж байна?"* гэж асуув.	ᠡᠵᠡ ᠨᠢ᠄ «ᠮᠢᠨᠢ ᠬᠦᠦ᠂ ᠴᠠᠭ ᠬᠡᠳ ᠪᠣᠯᠵᠤ ᠪᠠᠢᠨᠠ?» ᠭᠡᠵᠡ ᠠᠰᠤᠭᠤᠪ᠃
	A woman asked *her son what time it was.*	Ээж нь *хүүгээсээ цаг хэд болж байна* гэж асуув.	ᠡᠵᠡ ᠨᠢ ᠬᠦᠦᠭᠡᠡᠰᠡᠡ ᠴᠠᠭ ᠬᠡᠳ ᠪᠣᠯᠵᠤ ᠪᠠᠢᠨᠠ ᠭᠡᠵᠡ ᠠᠰᠤᠭᠤᠪ᠃

5. PUNCTUATION

The **sentence structure is organized** with the help of different **marks and dots**. In oral language, the same thing is achieved by intonation and pauses.

5.1 Punctuation in Classical Script

In Classical Script there is a **division in marks and dots**.

5.1.1 Dots

dots:	᠃	᠂	;	᠄	᠁	·
names:	period (Am.) full stop (Br.)	comma	semi-colon	colon	omission dots	"round dot"
usage:	Marks the end of a declarative sentence.	Marks pauses in the sentence and divides co-ordinate words, parts of sentence and clauses.	Divides independent clauses.	Emphasizes the announce-ment of the following part or sentence.	Marks a part that is omitted.	Marks a division.
ex:	ᠪᠢ ᠰᠤᠷᠭᠠᠭᠴᠢ ᠮᠥᠨ᠃	ᠪᠢ ᠰᠤᠷᠭᠠᠭᠴᠢ ᠮᠥᠨ᠂ ᠪᠢ ᠰᠤᠷᠭᠠᠭᠴᠢ ᠮᠥᠨ᠂	ᠪᠢ ᠰᠤᠷᠭᠠᠭᠴᠢ ᠮᠥᠨ ᠪᠡᠳᠦᠦ ᠪᠢ ᠰᠤᠷᠭᠠᠭᠴᠢ ᠮᠥᠨ᠃ ; ᠪᠢ ᠰᠤᠷᠭᠠᠭᠴᠢ ᠮᠥᠨ ᠪᠡᠳᠦᠦ ᠪᠢ ᠰᠤᠷᠭᠠᠭᠴᠢ ᠮᠥᠨ᠃	ᠪᠢ ᠰᠤᠷᠭᠠᠭᠴᠢ ᠮᠥᠨ᠄ ᠪᠢ ᠵᠠᠭᠰᠠᠭᠴᠢ ᠮᠥᠨ᠃	ᠪᠢ ᠰᠤᠷᠭᠠᠭᠴᠢ ᠮᠥᠨ᠁ ᠪᠢ ᠵᠠᠭᠰᠠᠭᠴᠢ ᠮᠥᠨ᠃	ᠪᠢ ᠰᠤᠷᠭᠠᠭᠴᠢ ᠮᠥᠨ · ᠪᠢ ᠵᠠᠭᠰᠠᠭᠴᠢ ᠮᠥᠨ᠃

5.1.2 Marks

marks:	?	!	« »	( )	—	-
names:	question mark	exclamation mark	quotation marks (Am.) inverted commas (Brit.)	parentheses (Am.) brackets (Brit.)	dash	hyphen
usage:	Marks the end of an interrogative sentence.	Marks the end of an exclamatory sentence.	Marks speeches and quotations.	Marks an inserted explaining part.	Marks an inserted explaining part.	Marks local or temporal beginnings and ends.
ex:	Өнөөдөр ямар өдөр вэ?	Сайхан амраарай!	Өчигдөр ээж: «Маргааш ирнэ» гэсэн.	Ном (шинэ) худалдаж авлаа.	Өнөөдөр — пүрэв гараг.	1996—2000 он.

5.2 Punctuation in Cyrillic Script

The punctuation in Cyrillic is more or less the same as in English. However, some comma rules are different and the quotation marks «...» are not known in English.

5.2.1 Period (Am.)/Full stop (Brit.)

Periods mark the **end of declarative sentences** and are used in **abbreviations**.

Би явсан.	Тэр ирээгүй.	I went.	He hasn't come.
Д. Цэрэнпил	А. Баяр	D. Tserenpil	A. Bayar

5.2.2 Question marks

Question marks are put at the **end of interrogative sentences**.

Чиний дүү ирсэн үү?	Did your younger sister come?
Чи ирнэ биз?	You'll come, won't you?
Чи хэзээ ажиллах вэ?	When will you work?

5.2.3 Exclamation marks

Exclamation marks are put at the end of **exclamatory** and **imperative sentences**, but often they are dropped in Mongolian because a particle has taken the function of them (**ex.b**).

Надад туслаач!	Please help me!
Ээж чинь ирлээ шүү.	Your mother came!
Нааш ир!	Come here!
Ямар сайхан юм бэ!	How nice this is!

5.2.4 Commas

Commas are used to show the **pauses** in the sentences. Here a few **basic rules.**
Commas are needed when:

1. ☞ Listing *coordinate elements* without conjunction words

(Attention: In English with conjunction "and" much better.)

Хэнтий, Хангай, Саяны өндөр сайхан нуруунууд. (coordinate subjects)	The high beautiful mountain ranges of ***Khentii, Khangai, and Sayan.***
Би дэлгүүрээс *ногоон, улаан, шар, цэнхэр* цаас авлаа.(coordinate adjectives)	I bought ***green, red, yellow, and blue*** paper at the shop.
Би *Англи, Швейцарь, Герман, Монголд* амьдарч байсан. (coordinate adverbials)	I lived ***in England, Switzerland, Germany, and Mongolia***.
Би танд *тусалж байсан, тусалж байна, туслах болно.* (coordinate verbs)	I ***helped***, I ***help***, and ***will help*** you.

No comma with:
- ***words* of different semantical groups:** Би дэлгүүрээс *шинэ чухал үнэтэй* ном авлаа.
- ***Word combinations*:** Хүмүүс *энх тайвны* хүсдэг.

2. ☞ Separating *independent parts of a sentence*

Болд оо, нааш ир дээ!	***Booold,*** come here!
Чи энэ улирлаар амжилттай, *өөрөөр хэлбэл,* онц сурч чадна шүү.	This term, you can study successfully, ***in other words,*** with the grade A.
Паа, би чамайг ийм хүн гэж бодсонгүй!	**Ugh,** I wouldn't think that you were such a person!
Үгүй, би ээжтэйгээ маргааш уулзахгүй.	**No,** I won't meet my mother tomorrow.

No comma if the independent part is emphasized. Then an exclamatory mark is demanded. *Халхай, халхай!* Гар түлчихлээ. (***Ouch, ouch!*** I burned my hand.)

3. ☞ Marking compound-sentence *clauses* that are separated by intonation

Би сайхан хоол идсэн, миний хүүхдүүд юу ч идээгүй.	***I had a nice meal, my children didn't have any.***
Харьсан шувуу ирдэг, явсан хүн эргэдэг.	***Migratory birds come back, people that have left, return.***

4. ☞ Marking pauses in long sentences whith clauses that are linked with a *cVDS.*

clause 1 + conjunction	Өглөөний нар оргин гарч ирэхэд
clause 2 + *VDS + comma*	голын эхэн дэх саруул хөндий гэрэлтэж,
clause 3 + *VDS + comma*	ариун агаар татан,
clause 4 + conjunction	үнэхээр зуны амьсгал мэдрэгдэх бөгөөд
clause 5 + *VDS + comma*	дэргэдэх цэцэг өвсөнд нимгэн цагаан хяруу гялтганаад,
clause 6 + subj. indicator	тэртээ ойд ногооны униар залгалдах нь
clause 7+ **period**	даруй нүүдэлчин малчин хүний сэтгэлийг хөдөлгөнө.

5. ☞ Avoiding confusion

Өчигдөр чамаас авсан номыг олсон. (They) found the book which had been taken from you yesterday.	*Өчигдөр*, чамаас авсан номыг олсон. ***Yesterday,*** (they) found the book which had been taken from you.
Цэцэг жимс түүв. (Someone) picked flowers ('tsetseg') and berries.	*Цэцэг*, жимс түүв. ***Tsetseg*** picked berries.

6. ☞ Changing the word order

Би *энэ номыг чинь* авлаа шүү. I bought ***this book, you know***!	Би авлаа шүү, *энэ номыг чинь*. I bought it, ***this book, you know!***
Та бол дээдийн дээд, хаадын хаан. ***You are*** the Highest, King of all kings.	Дээдийн дээд, хаадын хаан, *Та*. The Highest, King of all kings, ***you are.***

5.2.5 Semi-colon

Semi-colons are used when the pause is bigger than with a comma, but not big enough to put a period. They are often used in **resolutions, laws, etc**. and not often in literature.

(from a contract)

II. Гэрээг цуцлах: 1. Монгол судлаач хүндэтгэх шалтгаанаар тус улсаас бүрмөсөн буцах болбол; 2. Монгол улсын хууль дүрмийг ноцтой зөрчвөл; (гэх мэт)	II. Cancellation of contract: 1. If the Mongolist is forced to leave this country due to serious reasons; 2. If he significantly violates the laws and regulations of Mongolia; etc.

5.2.6 Colon

Colons are used to **emphasize the announcements** of the following parts. They are widely used in ***direct speech, quotations, and listing things:***

Баатар надад: *"Чи багштайгаа уулзах хэрэгтэй"* гэж хэлэв.	Baatar told me, ***"You have to go and see your teacher."***
Есүс: *"Би бол Ертөнцийн Эзэн-Эцэг тийш очих ганцхан зам мөн"* гэж хэлэв.	Jesus said, ***"No one comes to the Father except through me."***
Оюутан бүр бүртгүүлэхдээ дараах зүйлийг авчрах: 150 ам.доллар, 2 хувь зураг, тодорхойлолт, оршин суух зөвшөөрөл.	Each student is to bring the following items for registration: USD 150, 2 passport photos, references, proof-of-residence permit.

5.2.7 Quotation marks (Am.)/Inverted commas (Brit.)

Quotation marks are used for ***direct speech,*** for ***quotations,*** and in order to **emphasize *particular words*** which are used in a non-literal sense.
There are two possible forms: **"..."** and **«...»**. The latter is not known in English.

Болд: *"Эзж маань орой ирнэ"* гэж хэллээ.	Bold said, ***"My mother will come in the evening."***
Мөн ч *«гавшгай»* ажилладаг хүн байна даа.	Why! He is someone working so *'efficiently'*!
«Өсөхөөс сурсан үндсэний хэл *Мартаж болшгүй соёл* *Үхтэл орших төрөлх нутаг* *Салж болшгүй орон.»* (Д.Нацагдорж)	***"The national language learned while being raised*** ***Is a culture that (I) can't ever forget*** ***The homeland (I) live in until (I) die*** ***Is a place that (I) can't ever leave"*** (D. Natsagdorj)

5.2.8 Omission dots

Omission dots (three dots) are used to replace a ***part that is omitted***.

Бат: "Миний аав ... " гэж хэлэнгүүт ухаан алдлаа.	When Bat was just saying, "My father **...** ", he lost his consciousness.

5.2.9 Parentheses (Am.)/Brackets (Brit.)

Parentheses are used **to insert words** or whole parts of sentences that serve as an ***explanation*** or a ***complement***:

Манай багш *(Ц. Болдбаатар)* Франц улсад монгол хэл зааж байгаа.	Our teacher ***(Ts. Boldbaatar)*** is teaching Mongolian in France.
Өнөөдөр *(есөн сарын нэгэнд)* бүх хүүхдүүд хичээлдээ явна.	Today ***(September 1st),*** all children will go to school.

5.2.10 Dash and Hyphen

There is a **long** line for intellectual pauses (**dash**) and a **short** line for connections (**hyphen**).

Dashes can follow ***subjects*** to **mark them** (instead of another subject indicator), or they can replace the **quotation marks** in **direct speech**. If so, they are put at the beginning of a new line.

Чанар – манай ажлын гол үзүүлэлт.	***Quality*** – the main characteristic of our work.
Эзж нь хүүдээ хандан, –Би чамтай хамт явах уу? гэхэд хүү нь, –Үгүй, би ганцаараа явж чадна гэв.	When the woman addressed her son and asked, "Shall I go with you?", the son answered, "No, I can go alone."

Hyphens are used to **connect *two words, numbers and their suffixes***, and also to connect ***personal names***: if the second of two names begins with a vowel, then a hyphen is put in between them. In literature, ***words of similar meaning*** are equated using a hyphen.

Улаанбаатар-Дарханы төмөр замыг тэр жил байгуулжээ.	The railway ***Ulaanbaatar-Darkhan*** was built in that year.
5-р сарын *24-нд*	On May 24th ("5th month")
XIII-XIV зууны үед монголчууд дэлхий даяар маш алдартай байжээ.	In the **13-14th** century, the Mongolians were very famous throughout the world.
Болд-Эрдэнэ, Бат-Оргил, Говь-Алтай	***Bold-Erdene, Bat-Orgil, Gov'-Altai***
Эх орон-Монголоо зоргоолтгүй чимье.	Let's decorate our ***motherland, Mongolia,*** unceasingly.

Part V:

Appendix

1. List of Passive Roots
pages 407-410

2. List of Some Phrasal Verbs
pages 411-412

3. List of Inflectional Suffixes
pages 413-417

4. Structural and Functional System of Relational Suffixes
pages 418-421

5. Mongolian Equivalent of English Tense System
page 422

6. Table of Contents in Mongolian
pages 423-437

7. Index: English-German-Mongolian
pages 438-448

1. LIST OF PASSIVE ROOTS

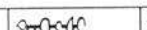
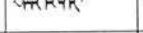
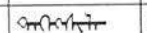
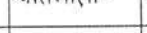
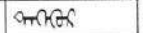
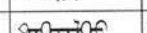
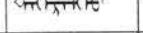
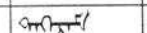
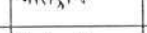
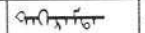
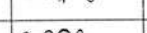
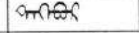
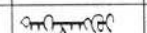
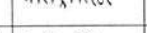
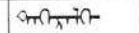
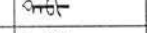
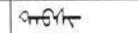
The following list is a complement to p. 35. It contains most passive roots of the Mongolian language. On the top right hand side of every passive root table, we gave the **'general meaning'**.

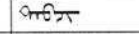
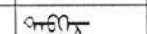
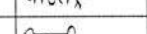
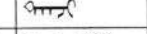
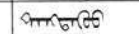
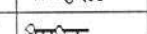
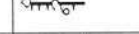
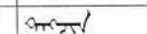
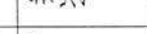
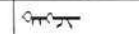
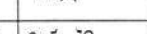
1.		нэг- (ний-)	one, to be one
a		нэг (эн)	one
b		нэгд-	to be united
c		нэгдэл	union, solidarity
d		нэгж	unit
e		нэгжи-	to search
f		нэгжлэг	search
g		нэгтгэ-	to unite, to unify
h		нэгэнт	once, already
i		нэжгээд	one each
j		нийгэм	society
k		нийлбэр	sum, confluence
l		нийлмэл	mixed, compound
m		нийлэг	synthetic, compound
n		нийлэ-	to come together
o		нийслэл	capital
p		нийт	all, total
q		нийц	agreement, harmony
r		нийцэ-	to correspond, to conform

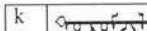
2.		хо-	two
a		хоёр	two
b		хоёрхон	only two
c		хоёул	the two of ...
d		хос	pair, couple
e		хосло-	to unite into pairs
f		хослол	pairing
g		хосгүй	matchless
h		холбо-	to join
i		холбоо	tie, liason
j		холбоос	link, hyphen
k		холбогдо-	to have to do with
l		холбоот	union
m		холбоочин	post and telegraph worker
n		хорши-	to mix, to combine
o		хоршоо	cooperative
p		хоршоолол	cooperativization
q		хорь	twenty
r		хошой	double (e.g. gold medal winner)
s		хооронд	between
t		холи-	to mix
u		хольц	mixture
v		хоч	nick name
w		холимог	mixed, alloyed

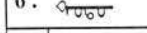
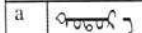
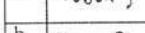
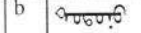
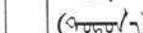
3.		гу-	three
a		гуч	thirty
b		гуч (ач гуч)	great- (e.g. -grand daughter)
c		гуна	3 year old male ox
d		гунж	3 year old female cow
e		гуттаар	the third (literary)
f		гурав	three
g		гурвалжин	triangle
h		гурвал	trio
i		гурамсан	three- (e.g. three-horse carriage)
j		гурвуул	the three of ...

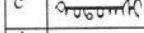
4.		дэ-	high, on
a		дээр	on, above
b		дээрдэ-	to improve
c		дээд	high,supreme, upper
d		дээдэс	ancestors, aristocrats

e		дээш	up(wards), more than
f		дээшлэ-	to go up, to progress
g		дээгүүр	above, over
h		дээрэлхүү	arrogant, insolent
i		дээрэм	robbery, pillage
j		дээрэмдэ-	to rob, to plunder
k		дээвэр	roof, covering
l		дээрэнгүй	arrogant, haughty
m		дээрэлхэ-	to be overbearing
n		дэл	mane, horsehair
o		дэв	rank, order
p		дэвэ-	to flap the wings
q		дэвши-	to develop, to make progress
r		дэвжи-	to grow strong
s		дэвхэр-	to leap, to jump
t		дэнж	hillock, terrace
u		дэндүү	too, excessively
v		дэндэ-	to exceed the norm
w		дэгжин	elegant, fashionable
x		дэгжи-	to thrive, to prosper
y		дэмжлэг	support, help

5. 	до-	below, under
a 	доор	below, under
b 	доод	lower, bottom
c 	доогуур	underground
d 	доош	down(wards)
e 	доошло-	to droop
f 	дор	below, under
g 	доогло-	to mock
h 	дордо-	to be too low, to worsen
i 	дорой	weak, feeble
j 	доройто-	to be weak, to deteriorate

k 	доромжлол	humiliation, insult

6.	дот-	inside
a 	дотор	inner, internal,
b 	дотно	intimate, kind-red (inside)
c 	дотогш	in(wards)
d 	дотоод	interior, domestic
e 	дотуур	inner, within

7. 	га-	outer
a	гадна	outside (of) exterior
b	гадаа	outside
c	гадагш	out of
d	гадуур	outside, exterior
e	гадарга (гадаргуу)	surface
f	гадар	the outside
g	гадаад	external, foreign
h	гадарла-	to cover with a surface

8. ()	цаа-	other side
a	цаана	farther,beyond
b	цаад	situated on the other side
c	цаадахь	situated beyond
d	цааш	away from, farther
e	цаашла-	to go farther, to go on
f	цаагуур	along the other side

9. ()	наа-	this side, here
a	наана	on this side, closer to here
b	наад	situated on this side
c	наадахь	that nearest on this side, the very
d ()	нааш	this way, hither, closer

e	наашла-	to approach
f	наагуур	along this side, superficially
g	наагуурда-	to be too close, to be too superficial

10	хой-	north, behind
a	хойно	in the north, in the back
b	хойт	back, rear, northern
c	хойш	north(wards) back(wards)
d	хойгуур	along the back
e	хойтон	the next year
f	хоймор	the rear part of a yurt
g	хойч	future, descendants
h	хойшло-	to be postponed
i	хойшлуул-	to postpone

11	ца-	white
a	цаас	paper
b	цагаан	white
c	цагаа	milk products
d	цагаада-	to be rehabilitated
e	цагаала-	to greet at New Year
f	цагаач	emigrant, vagabond
g	цайвар	whitish, pale
h	цай-	to dawn, to grow light
i	цайра-	to turn pale, to fade
j	цайлган	innocent
k	цал (буурал)	totally white

12	бая-	rich
a	баян	rich
b	баялаг	riches, wealth
c	баяс-	to rejoice
d	баячууд	the rich
e	баяжи-	to become rich

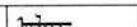
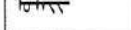
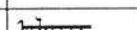
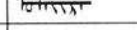
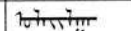
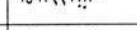
f	баяр	joy, gladness
g	баяртай	good-bye
h	баярла-	to be happy

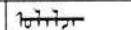
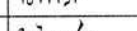
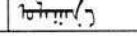
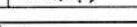
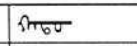
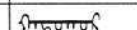
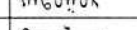
13	сай-	good
a	сайн	good, well
b	сайхан	nice, nicely
c	сайжра-	to improve
d	сайд	minister
e	сайрха-	to boast, to brag
f	сайда-	to improve a relationship
g	сайтар	well, thoroughly
h	сайтай	having good quality
i	сайшаа-	to praise, to award
j	сайшаал	award, approval
k	сайчууд	elite, best workers

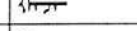
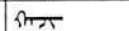
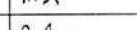
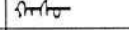
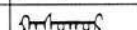
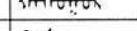
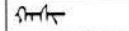
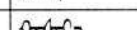
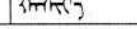
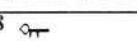
14	ноё-	prince, lord
a	ноён	prince, lord
b	ноёло-	to dominate
c	ноёлог	lordly,haughty
d	ноёрхо-	to oppress

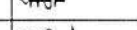
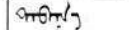
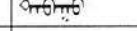
15	хожи-	late
a	хождо-	to be late
b	хожи-	to win
c	хожигдо-	to loose
d	хожим	after, then
e	хожимдо-	to be late
f	хожуу	late, tardy
g	хожоо	profit, benefit

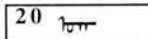
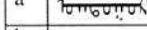
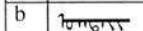
16	ул-	red
a	улаан	red
b	улаавтар	reddish
c	улбар	orange reddish

d		улай–	to blush, to confess
e		улайра–	to become red
f		улайлга–	to make ashamed
g		уланга–	to become ferocious
h		улалза–	to appear red
i		улаагана	red currant

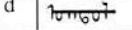
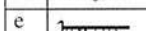
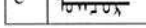
17		ха–	... off
a		хада–	to mow
b		хадуур	sickle
c		хадлан	hay cutting
d		хаза–	to bite
e		хажи–	to hem
f		хаса–	to subtract
g		хасуур	chisel
h		хаши–	to fence off
i		хашаа	fence, hedge

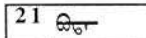
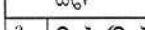
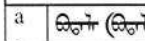
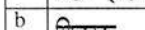
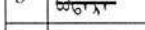
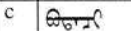
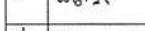
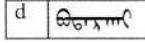
18		да–	over-
a		дава–	to overcome
b		даваа	mountain pass
c		давуу	outstanding
d		дара–	to press, to crush
e		дайла–	to make war, to entertain
f		дайра–	to hit, to attack
g		дайн	war
h		дайчин	warrior, militant
i		дайчла–	to mobilize
j		дайсан	enemy

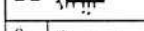
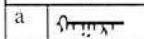
19		ов–	to heep
a		овоо	stone heep
b		овооло–	to accumulate
c		овоорo–	to crowd
d		овор	appearance, figure
e		оволзо–	to move up and down

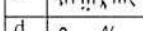
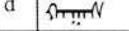
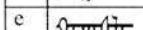
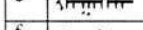
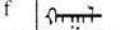
20		ог–	abrupt
a		огдгор	short (for skirt)
b		огдой–	to be short
c		огцом	steep, quick-tempered
d		огтол–	to cut (off)
e		огцор–	to be fired

The following 4 passive roots are particles, which appear with other words:

21		бута–	fragmented
a		бутал–	to crumble
b		бутра–	to scatter
c		бутач	illegitimate child
d		бутархай	fraction

22		хага–	broken
a		хагара–	to break (intr.)
b		хагарал	breaking, split
c		хагархай	splinter, chip
d		хагас	half, semi-
e		хагасла–	to divide in half
f		хагал–	to break (tr.)
g		хагаца–	to separate
h		хагацал	separation

23		суга–	... out
a		сугара–	to come off
b		сугал–	to pull out, to draw lots
c		сугалаа	lot, lottery

24		няц–	asunder
a		няц	crushed
b		няца–	to retreat
c		няцаа–	to repulse
d		няцра–	to be crushed
e		няцал–	to crush

2. LIST OF SOME PHRASAL VERBS

We have tried to list the most important Mongolian verbs that take another case than in English:

1	ай– to be afraid	хэнээс? юунаас? **of** whom? **of** what?	Нохойноос битгий ай! Don't be afraid **of** the dog!
2	айлчла– to visit (as a guest)	юунд? whom? what?	Төлөөлөгчид Америкт айлчлав. The representatives visited America.
3	анхаар– to pay attention	хэнийг? юуг? **to** whom? **to** what?	Та энэ асуудлыг анхаарах хэрэгтэй. You should pay attention **to** this matter.
4	асуу– to ask	хэнээс? юунаас? whom? what?	Та багшаас асуугаарай. Please ask the teacher.
5	багшла– to teach	хэнд? whom? (Acc.)	Тэр надад олон жил багшилсан. He taught me for many years.
6	баярла– to thank	хэнд? юунд? whom?	Танд баярлалаа. Thank you.
7	баярла– to be glad	хэнд? юунд? **about** what?	Үүнд би баярлаж байна. I am glad **about** this.
8	болгоомжло– to watch out to be careful	хэнээс? юунаас? **for** what? **of** what?	Хулгайчаас болгоомжил! Watch out **for** thieves! Be careful **of** cars!
9	гайха– to be surprised	юунд? **by** what?	Чи үүнд битгий гайх. Don't be surprised **by** this.
10	гомдо– to be offended	хэнд? юунд? **by** whom? **by** what?	Тэр чамд гомджээ. He was offended **by** you.
11	гуй– to beg (ask strongly)	хэнээс? юунаас? whom?	Түүнээс битгий гуй! Don't beg him.
12	гуниглa– to be sad	юунд? **about** what?	Чи юунд гуниглаа вэ? Why are you sad? ("What are you sad **about**?")
13	гэмши– to regret to repent	юунд? what? **of** what?	Би үүнд гэмшиж байна. I regret this. I repent **of** this.
14	гэрлэ– to get married	хэнтэй? **to** whom	Тэр багштайгаа гэрлэсэн. She got married **to** her teacher.
15	далла– to wave	юугаар? **with** what?	Эмээ алчуураар далласан. The grandmother waved **with** a headscarf.
16	дурла– to fall in love to like/to desire	хэнд? юунд? with whom? what?	Би нэг бүсгүйд дурласан. Үүнд битгий дурлаарай. I fell in love **with** a young woman. Don't desire this.
17	итгэ– to believe to trust	хэнд? юунд? (**in**) whom?(**in**) what? whom?	Би танд итгэж байна. I believe you. (I believe **in** you.) I trust you.
18	ичи– to be ashamed to be embarrassed	хэнээс? юунаас? **before** whom? **about** what?	Би түүнээс ичиж байна. Би хамраасаа ичиж байна. I am ashamed **before** him. I am embarassed **about** my nose.
19	заа– to teach	хэнд? whom?	Би түүнд англи хэл заадаг. I teach **him** English.
20	зөвлө– to take advice	хэнтэй? **from** whom?	Би багштайгаа зөвлөе. Let me take advice **from** my teacher.
21	зөвшөөрө– to agree	юуг? **with** what?	Би түүний хэлснийг зөвшөөрч байна. I agree **with** what he said.

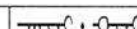
22	мөрөөдө– to dream	хэнийг? юуг? about what?	Би Америк явахыг мөрөөдөж байна. I dream about going to America.
23	найда– to trust	хэнд? юунд? (in)whom? (in)what?	Би өөртөө найдаж байна. I trust myself.
24	нөлөөлө– to influence	хэнд? юунд? whom? what?	Тэр надад их нөлөөлсөн. He has influenced me a lot.
25	ол– to find	хаанаас? where?	Би түлхүүрээ хаанаас ч олоогүй. I haven't found my key anywhere.
26	өвд– to be ill	юугаар? with what?	Миний ээж өмөн үүгээр өвдсөн. My mother was ill with cancer.
27	сонго– to be elected (English prefers passive voice)	юугаар? what?	Бид түүнийг Улсын Их Хурлын гишүүнээр сонгосон. He was elected a member of the Great National 'Khural' (by us).
28	сонирхо– to take interest	хэнийг? юуг? in whom? in what?	Тэр энэ номыг их сонирхсон. He took great interest in this book.
29	сонс– to listen	юуг? to what?	Тэр үргэлж радио сонсдог. He always listens to the radio.
30	таларха– to thank	хэнд? юунд? whom? for what?	Би танд талархаж байна. Намайг урьсанд талархаж байна. I thank you. Thank you for inviting me.
31	уйд– to be bored	хэнээс? юунаас? with what?	Би чамаас уйдаж байна. I am bored with you.
32	утасда– to call/ to phone	хэн руу? юу руу? whom?	Над руу утасдаарай. Call/phone me, please.
33	уурла– to be angry	хэнд? юунд? with whom? about what?	Ээж надад уурласан. Тэр үүнд маш их уурласан. The mother was angry with me. He was very angry about that.
34	уя– to tie	хэнээс? юунаас? to whom? to what?	Би морио модноос уясан. I tied my horse to the tree.
35	хоцор– to be (too) late	хэнээс? юунаас? for what?	Би хурлаас хоцорсон. I was late for the meeting.
36	хөгжимдө– to play (instrument)	юугаар? what?	Чи юугаар хөгжимдөг вэ? What instrument do you play?
37	хүлээ– to wait	хэнийг? юуг? for whom? for what?	Та хэнийг хүлээж байна вэ? Whom are you waiting for?
38	яара– to hurry	юунд? to what?	Чи юунд яарсан бэ? What were you hurrying to?
39	ядра– to be tired	юунд? from what?	Би ажилдаа ядарч байна. I am tired from my work.

3. LIST OF INFLECTIONAL SUFFIXES

In this list, we've tried to give **all the inflectional suffixes** of the Mongolian language in **Cyrillic alphabetical order**. We use, as also throughout the book, the following **abbreviations** and guidelines:

AsS = **A**spect **S**uffix
AwDS = **A**dword **D**etermining **S**uffix
AwS = **A**dword **S**uffix
CbS = **C**ase-**b**ound **S**uffix
CS = **C**ase **S**uffix
cVDS = **c**o-ordinating **V**erb **D**etermining **S**uffix
NDS = **N**oun **D**etermining **S**uffix
NuS = **N**umeral **S**uffix
PS = **P**lural **S**uffix
PTS = **P**erson-bound **T**erminating **S**uffix
RS = **R**eflexive **S**uffix
sVDS = **s**ubordinating **V**erb **D**etermining **S**uffix
TTS = **T**ense-bound **T**erminating **S**uffix
VDS = **V**erb **D**etermining **S**uffix
VoS = **V**oice **S**uffix

a) Suffixes having **more than one form**, are listed with all forms, but **only with the basic form** we've given the name and the Classical Mongolian Script version.

–аарай[4]		**PTS (demand)**	
–ээрэй		–аарай[4]	

b) Suffixes taking an **inserted vowel** (e.g. "–(а)гтун") are not listed. But suffixes taking an **inserted consonant (not to be confused with hidden "н" or "г"!)** are listed like this:

–(г)ийн		–ийн	
–(х)аа[4]		–аа[4]	

c) Only a few Cyrillic suffixes are **not added directly** to the stem. With such suffixes, we write an exclamation mark instead of a dash:

(!) нар		**PS**	

d) Zero-suffixes are also important suffixes, as they show an existing subordination that is not written. They are marked like this:

–ø	**–ø**	**PTS (command)**	

The suffixes which are written in **bold letters** are the most important ones, as they represent the **basic forms**.

Suffixes Cyrillic/Classical		name/ basic suffixes	page
-ø	-ø	AsS(ordinary)	131
-ø	-ø	VoS (active)	116
-ø	-ø	PTS (command)	177
А			
-аа⁴		RS	108
-аа⁴		VoS (causative)	121
-аа⁴		NDS (progressive present)	145
-аад⁴		cVDS (anterior)	159
-аад⁴		NuS (approximate)	247
-аар⁴		CS (instrumental)	93
-аарай⁴		PTS (demand)	179
-аас⁴		CS (ablative)	90
-аасай⁴		PTS (hope)	182
-аач⁴		PTS (request)	178
Б			
-бал⁴		sVDS (conditional)	161
-балз²		AsS (repetitive)	135
-бол		-бал⁴ (sVDS)	161
-бөл		-бал⁴ (sVDS)	161
-бэл		-бал⁴ (sVDS)	161
-бэлз		-балз² (AsS)	135
В			
-в		AwS (intensifying)	219
-в		TTS (past tense)	186
-вал⁴		sVDS (conditional)	161
-валз²		AsS (repetitive)	135
-вол		-вал⁴ (sVDS)	161
-вөл		-вал⁴ (sVDS)	161
-втар⁴		AwS (diminutive)	218
-втор		-втар⁴ (AwS)	218
-втөр		-втар⁴ (AwS)	218
-втэр		-втар⁴ (AwS)	218
-вэл		-вал⁴ (sVDS)	161
-вэлз²		-валз² (AsS)	135
-вч		sVDS (concessive)	162
Г			
-г		PTS (permission)	181
-г		CS (accusative)	86
-га⁴		VoS (causative)	120
-(г)аа⁴		-аа⁴ (RS/NDS)	
-(г)аад⁴		-аад⁴ (cVDS/NuS)	
-(г)аар⁴		-аар⁴ (CS)	93
(г)аарай⁴		-аарай⁴ (PTS)	179
-(г)аас⁴		-аас⁴ (CS)	90
(г)аасай⁴		-аасай⁴ (PTS)	182
-(г)аач⁴		-аач⁴ (PTS)	178
-галз²		AsS (repetitive)	135
-гана⁴		AsS (repetitive)	135
-гд		VoS (passive)	124
-(г)ийн		-ийн (CS)	79
-го		-га⁴ (VoS)	120
-гоно		-гана⁴ (AsS)	135
-гө		-га⁴ (VoS)	120
-гөнө		-гана⁴ (AsS)	135
-гтун²		PTS (appeal)	181
-гтүн		-гтун² (PTS)	181
-(г)уу-зай²		-уузай² (PTS)	180
-(г)уут²		-уут² (VDS)	170
-(г)ууш-тай²		-ууштай² (AwDS)	154
-гч		NDS ('doer')	149
-гэ		-га⁴ (VoS)	120
-гэлз		-галз² (AsS)	135
-гэнэ		-гана⁴ (AsS)	135
Д			
-д		PS	75
-д		CS (dative-locative)	83
-д		VoS (passive)	124

-даг⁴		NDS (indefinite present)	144
-дахь		NuS (ordinal)	241
-дог		-даг⁴ (NDS)	144
-дөг		-даг⁴ (NDS)	144
-дугаар²		NuS (ordinal)	241
-дуу²		AwS (diminutive)	218
-дүгээр		-дугаар² (NuS)	241
-дүү		-дуу² (AwS)	218
-дэг		-даг⁴ (NDS)	144
-дэх		NuS (ordinal)	241
Е			
-е		PTS (intention)	175
Ё			
-ё		PTS (intention)	175
Ж			
-ж		cVDS (simultaneous)	157
-жээ		TTS (past tense)	185
З			
-з(а)на⁴		AsS (temporary)	132
-з(о)но		-з(а)на⁴ (AsS)	132
-з(ө)нө		-з(а)на⁴ (AsS)	132
-з(э)нэ		-з(а)на⁴ (AsS)	132
И			
-иа²		-аа⁴ (RS/NDS)	
-иад²		-аад⁴ (cVDS/NuS)	
-иарай²		-аарай⁴ (PTS)	179
-иач²		-аач⁴ (PTS)	178
-ий		CS (genitive)	79
-ийг		CS (accusative)	86
-ийн		CS (genitive)	79
-иар²		-аар⁴ (CS)	93
-иас²		-аас⁴ (CS)	90
-иасай²		-аасай⁴ (PTS)	182
-иуд²		-уул² (PS)	73
-иузай²		-уузай² (PTS)	180
-иул²		-уул² (VoS/NuS)	
Л			
-л		AsS (repetitive)	135
-лаа⁴		TTS (past tense)	187
-лга⁴		VoS (causative)	119
-лго		-лга⁴ (VoS)	119
-лгө		-лга⁴ (VoS)	119
-лгэ		-лга⁴ (VoS)	119
-лд		VoS (adversative)	127
-лз		AsS (repetitive)	135
-лоо		-лаа⁴ (TTS)	187
-лөө		-лаа⁴ (TTS)	187
-лтай³		AwDS (worthwhile)	155
-лтой		-лтай³ (AwDS)	155
-лтэй		-лтай³ (AwDS)	155
-лтгүй		-лтай³ (AwDS)	155
(!)луу²		CS (directive)	99
(!)лүү		(!)луу² (CS)	99
-лц		VoS (communal)	126
-лээ		-лаа⁴ (TTS)	187
М			
-маа-жин⁴		sVDS (excluding)	172
-маар⁴		AwDS (wish)	151
-магц⁴		sVDS (succeeding)	164
-м(гүй)		AwDS (worthwhile)	155
-могц		-магц⁴ (sVDS)	164
-моо-жин		-маажин⁴ (sVDS)	172
-моор		-маар⁴ (AwDS)	151
-мөгц		-магц⁴ (sVDS)	164
-мөө-жин		-маажин⁴ (sVDS)	172
-мөөр		-маар⁴ (AwDS)	151
-мэгц		-магц⁴ (sVDS)	164

−мээ−жин		−маажин⁴ (sVDS)	172
−мээр		−маар⁴ (AwDS)	151
Н			
−н		cVDS (associative)	158
−н		CS (genitive)	79
−на⁴		TTS (present/future)	190/191
(!) нар		PS	74
−нгаа⁴		sVDS (opportunity)	171
−нгоо		−нгаа⁴ (sVDS)	171
−нгөө		−нгаа⁴ (sVDS)	171
−нгуут²		sVDS (succeeding)	170
−нгҮҮт		−нгуут² (sVDS)	170
−нгээ		−нгаа⁴ (sVDS)	171
−(н)ууд²		−ууд² (PS)	73
−(н)ҮҮд		−ууд² (PS)	73
О			
−оо		−аа⁴ (RS/VoS/NDS)	
−оод		−аад⁴ (cVDS/NuS)	
−оор		−аар⁴ (CS)	93
−оос		−аас⁴ (CS)	90
−оосой		−аасай⁴ (PTS)	182
−ооч		−аач⁴ (PTS)	178
Ө			
−өө		−аа⁴ (RS/VoS/NDS)	
−өөд		−аад⁴ (cVDS/NuS)	
−өөр		−аар⁴ (CS)	93
−өөс		−аас⁴ (CS)	90
−өөсэй		−аасай⁴ (PTS)	182
−өөч		−аач⁴ (PTS)	178
Р			
(!)руу²		CS (directive)	99
(!)рҮҮ		руу² (CS)	99

С			
−с		PS	75
−саар⁴		sVDS (progressive)	168
−сан⁴		NDS (past tense)	143
−сон		−сан⁴ (NDS)	143
−соор		−саар⁴ (sVDS)	168
−сөн		−сан⁴ (NDS)	143
−сөөр		−саар⁴ (sVDS)	168
−сугай²		PTS (decision)	176
−сүгэй		−сугай² (PTS)	176
−схий		AsS (quick)	132
−сэн		−сан⁴ (NDS)	143
−сээр		−саар⁴ (sVDS)	168
Т			
−т		CS (dative-locative)	83
−т		VoS (passive)	124
−таа⁴		NuS (multiplying)	249
−тай³		CS (comitative)	97
−тал⁴		sVDS (limiting)	167
−той		−тай³ (CS)	97
−тол		−тал⁴ (sVDS)	167
−тоо		−таа⁴ (NuS)	249
−төл		−тал⁴ (sVDS)	167
−төө		−таа⁴ (NuS)	249
−тугай²		PTS (blessing)	183
−түгэй		−тугай² (PTS)	183
−тэй		−тай³ (CS)	97
−тэл		−тал⁴ (sVDS)	167
−тээ		−таа⁴ (NuS)	249
У			
−ууд²		PS	73
−уузай²		PTS (admonition)	180
−уул²		VoS (causative)	118

−уул²		NuS (collective)	244
−уур²		AwS (movement)	224
−уут²		sVDS (succeeding)	170
−ууш−тай²		AwDS (necessity)	154
Ү			
−ҮҮл		−ууд² (PS)	73
−ҮҮзэй		−уузай² (PTS)	180
−ҮҮл		−уул² (VoS/NuS)	
−ҮҮр		−уур² (AwS)	224
−ҮҮт		−уут² (sVDS)	170
−ҮҮш−тэй		−ууштай² (AwDS)	154
Х			
−х		CbS (Possessive/Local)	101/102
−х		NDS (future tense)	147
−(х)аа⁴		−аа⁴ (RS)	108
−хаар⁴		sVDS (intending)	166
−хан⁴		CbS (collective)	103
−х(и)		CbS (attributive)	104
−хлаар⁴		sVDS (logically succeeding)	165
−хлоор		−хлаар⁴ (sVDS)	165
−хлөөр		−хлаар⁴ (sVDS)	165
−хлээр		−хлаар⁴ (sVDS)	165
−хон		−хан⁴ (AwDS)	103
−хоор		−хаар⁴ (sVDS)	166
−хөн		−хан⁴ (AwDS)	103
−хөөр		−хаар⁴ (sVDS)	166
−хуйц²		AwDS (possibility)	153
−хҮйц		−хуйц² (AwDS)	153
−хэн		−хан⁴ (AwS)	103
−хээр		−хаар⁴ (sVDS)	166

Ц			
−цгаа⁴		AsS (collective)	134
−цгоо		−цгаа⁴ (AsS)	134
−цгөө		−цгаа⁴ (AsS)	134
−цгээ		−цгаа⁴ (AsS)	134
Ч			
−ч		cVDS (simultaneous)	157
−чих		AsS (completed)	133
−чууд²		PS	74
−чуул²		PS	74
−чҮҮд		−чууд² (PS)	74
−чҮҮл		−чуул² (PS)	74
−чээ		TTS (past tense)	185
Ш			
−(г)ш		AwS (direction)	223
−шгҮй		AwDS (negative)	155
Ъ			
−ъё		−ё (PTS)	175
−ъя		−я (PTS)	175
Ы			
−ы		CS (genitive)	79
−ыг		CS (accusative)	86
−ын		CS (genitive)	79
Э			
−ье		−е (PTS)	175
Ээ			
−ээ		−аа⁴ (RS/VoS/NDS)	
−ээд		−аад⁴ (cVDS/NuS)	
−ээр		−аар⁴ (CS)	93
−ээс		−аас⁴ (CS)	90
−ээсэй		−аасай⁴ (PTS)	182
−ээч		−аач⁴ (PTS)	178
Я			
я		PTS (intention)	175

4. THE STRUCTURAL AND FUNCTIONAL SYSTEM OF RELATIONAL SUFFIXES

In the introduction to Part III on page 71, we mentioned a **system**, after which the inflectional suffixes are categorized. We believe it's important to have a good idea of this system in order to be able to build syntagmas and sentences. Especially to Western people who are used to a completely different sentence structure, this system should prove helpful. To understand the following two tables, their system chart and all abbreviations, we explain here briefly the terminology which has been used:

Inflectional suffixes:
Inflectional suffixes give the word no lexical, but a **grammatical** meaning

Relational suffixes:
Relational suffixes are those inflectional suffixes which can **express a relationship** between words.

Sentence:
A sentence is an independent **unit of speech** which has one common intonation.

Syntagma:
Syntagma is a **particular part** of a sentence:
e.g. 'to give to someone'; 'to put on the table'; 'to be good in math'.
Syntagmas are **built through relationships between words**. Such relationships are expressed by suffixes.

Adwords:
Adwords **describe** nouns, verbs or adwords. Adjectives, adverbs, and numerals belong to the category of adwords.
They can be used
- **nominal** (Aw^N) as in: a **good** horse, **three** books,
- **verbal** (Aw^V) as in: to sing **well**, to go **twice**

Relational Suffixes which build Syntagmas: Table 1 (compare with page 421)

No. in table	Abbreviations	Explanations	Examples	Category	Page
1.1	**Aw-W**	**adword - word**		**adwords**	**211ff**
1.2	**N-W**	**noun -word**		**CS's**	**78ff**
1.3	**V-W**	**verb - word**		**DS's**	**139ff**
1.1.1	Aw-Aw	adword - adword	нэн *(-ø1)* сайн маш *(-ø1)* харамсалтай	**adwords**	**211ff**
1.1.2	Aw-N/V	adword - noun/ verb	сайн *(-ø2)* морь сайн *(-ø2)* дуула-	**adjectives/ adverbs**	**212ff** **221ff**
1.1.3	Aw-N	adword - noun	өндөр *(-ø3)* хүн хар *(-ø3)* машин	**adjectives**	**212ff**
1.1.4	Aw-V	adword - verb	сайтар *(-ø4)* бодо- дандаа *(-ø4)* ажилла-	**adverbs**	**221ff**
1.2.1	N-N	noun - noun	ах*ын* ном ширээ*ний* хөл	**direct case** genitive	**79ff**
1.2.2	$N\text{-}Aw^N$	noun - adword in nominal function	усн*ы* тунгалаг нарн*ы* эрт	**direct case** genitive	**79ff**
1.2.3	N-V	noun - verb	хүн*д* өг- хүн*ийг* хара- хүн*ээс* асуу- хүн*ээр* хийлгэ- хүн*тэй* ява- хүн *рүү* очи-	**indirect cases**	**83ff** **86ff** **90ff** **93ff** **97ff** **99ff**
1.2.4	$N\text{-}Aw^V$	noun - adword in verbal function	тоон*д* сайн усн*аас* гүн мала*ар* баян бидэнт*эй* сайн говь *руу* муу	**indirect cases**	**83ff** **90ff** **93ff** **97ff** **99ff**
1.3.1	V-N	verb - noun	яв*сан* хүн яв*даг* хүн яв*аа* хүн яв*ах* хүн яв*агч* хүн	**NDS's**	**143** **144** **145** **147** **149**
1.3.2	$V\text{-}Aw^N$	verb - adword in nominal function	яв*маар* сайхан яв*ахуйц* чухал яв*уштай* гоё яв*ашгүй* муухай үзэ*лгүй* муухай анга*м* халуун	**AwDS's**	**151** **153** **154** **155** **155** **155**
1.3.3	V-V	verb - verb	худалдаж ав- гүй*н* гар- оч*оод* уулза- ирв*эл* ява- яарав*ч* ажилла- ирм*эгц* уулза- яваха*лаар* ирэ- сураха*ар* яв- үхт*эл* ай- явс*аар* ирэ- ирэн*гүүт* унта- явангаа ярь- сурмаа*жин* мэдэ-	**VDS's**	**157** **158** **159** **161** **162** **164** **165** **166** **167** **168** **170** **171** **172**
1.3.4	$V\text{-}Aw^V$	verb - adword in verbal function	ирв*эл* сайн яваv*ч* муу яваха*лаар* хол сурмаа*жин* чухал	**VDS's**	**161** **162** **165** **172**

Relational Suffixes which build Sentences: Table 2 (compare with page 421)

	Explanation	Examples	Page
2.	**syntactic part - subject**		
2.1	**syntagma - subject (RS)**	Би ээжтэйгээ хамт явсан. Би хичээлээс ирмэгцээ цайгаа уусан.	**108ff** **173**
2.2	**predicate - subject**		**371ff**
2.2.1	Person-bound Terminating Suffixes **(PTS's)**		**175ff**
2.2.2	Tense-bound Terminating Suffixes **(TTS's)**		**184ff**
2.2.1.1	PTS's of 1st person	Би явъя. Хөдөө аж ахуйг хурдан хөгжүүлсүгэй!	**175** **176**
2.2.1.2	PTS's of 2nd person	Гар! (−ø) Чи яваач. Номоо уншаарай! Гал гаруузай! Та суугтун!	**177** **178** **179** **180** **181**
2.2.1.3	PTS's of 3rd person	Тэр үзвэл үзэг! Тэд ирээсэй! Манай орон мандтугай!	**181** **182** **183**
2.2.2.1	TTS's of past tense	Би хоолоо идсэн. Орой болжээ. Аав хөдөө явав. Тэр явлаа.	**184** **185** **186** **187**
2.2.2.2	TTS's of present tense	Өвөл цас ордог. Надад талх байгаа. Ус хөлддөгийг бид мэднэ.	**188** **189** **190**
2.2.2.3	TTS of future tense	Би маргааш явна.	**191**

Table 1: Relational Suffixes which build Syntagmas

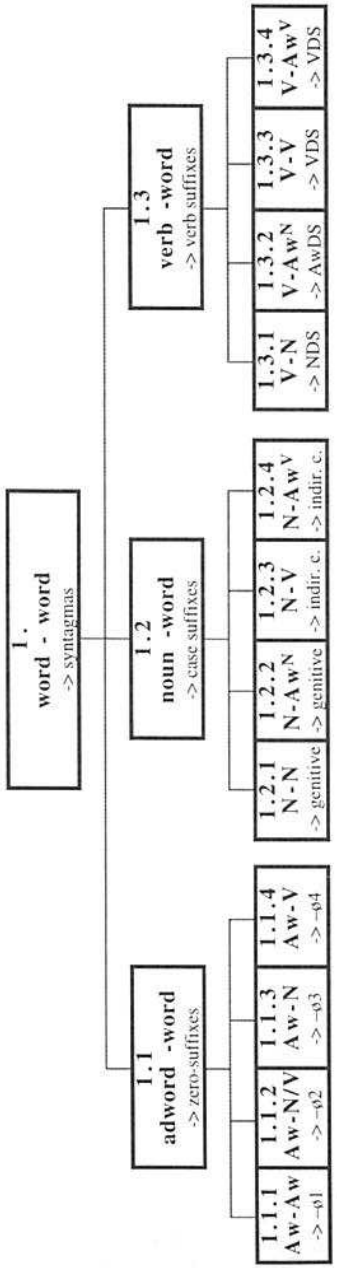
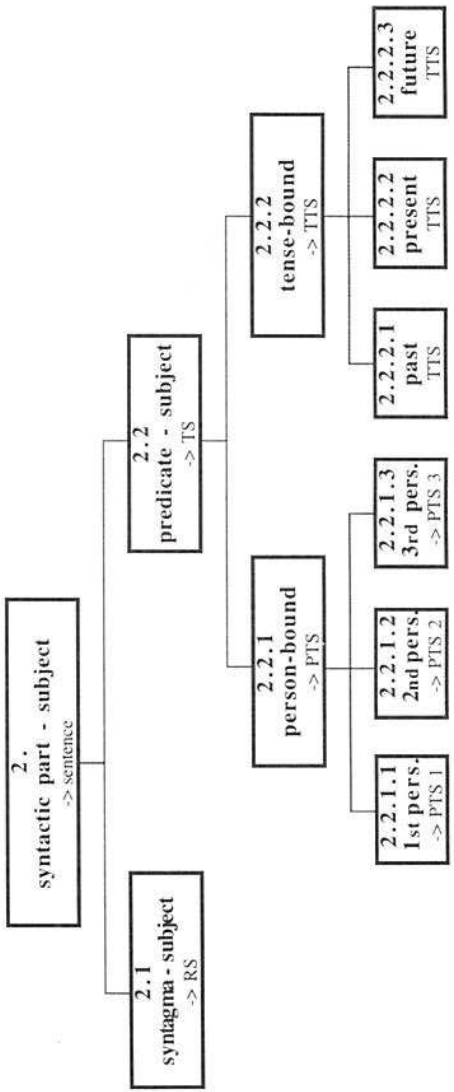


Table 2: Relational Suffixes which build Sentences



5. MONGOLIAN EQUIVALENT OF ENGLISH TENSES

As you study this chart, please **refer to the following paragraphs in Part III** of this book:
p. 136 (analytically expressed aspects); p. 139 (NDS's); p. 184 (TTS's); p. 374/195 (building compound predicates)
Exceptions are marked with "!!"

	PRESENT ОДОО ЦАГ –даг, (–на)	*PAST* ӨНГӨРСӨН ЦАГ –сан, –жээ, –лаа, –в	*FUTURE* ИРЭЭДҮЙ ЦАГ –на –х (болно)	*FUTURE IN THE PAST* ӨНГӨРСНИЙ ҮҮД–НЭЭС ИРЭЭДҮЙ ЦАГ –х байсан
INDEFINITE ТОДОРХОЙГҮЙ	•Би бичдэг. *I write.* •Та бичдэг үү? *Do you write?* •Би бичдэггүй. *I don't write.*	•Би бичсэн. *I wrote.* •Та бичсэн үү? *Did you write?* •Би бичсэнгүй. *I didn't write.*	•Би бичнэ. *I shall write.* •Та бичих үү? *Will you write?* •Би бичихгүй. *I shall not write.*	•Би бичих байсан. *I should write.* •Та бичих байсан уу? *Should you write?* •Би бичихгүй байх байсан. *I shouldn't write.*
–ж байх *PROGRESSIVE* ҮРГЭЛЖЛЭХ	•Би бичиж байна. *I'm writing.* •Та бичиж байна уу? *Are you writing?* •Би бичихгүй байна. *I'm not writing.!!*	•Би бичиж байсан. *I was writing.* •Та бичиж байсан уу? *Were you writing?* •Би бичиж байсангүй. *I wasn't writing.*	•Би бичиж байх болно. *I shall be writing.* •Та бичиж байх уу? *Will you be writing?* •Би бичиж байхгүй. *I shall not be writing.*	•Би бичиж байх байсан. *I should be writing.* •Та бичиж байх байсан уу? *Should you be writing?* •Би бичиж байхгүй байх байсан. *I shouldn't be writing.*
–чихаа бай– *PERFECT* ТӨГС	•Би биччихээ байна. *I have written.* •Та биччихээ байна уу? *Have you written?* •Би бичээгүй байна. *I haven't written.!!*	•Би биччихээ байсан. *I had written.* •Та биччихээ байсан уу? *Had you written?* •Би бичээгүй байсан. *I hadn't written.!!*	•Би биччихээ байх болно. *I shall have written.* •Та биччихээ байх уу? *Will you have written?* •Би бичээгүй байх болно. *I shall not have written.!!*	•Би биччихээ байх байсан. *I should have written.* •Та биччихээ байх байсан уу? *Should you have written?* •Би бичээгүй байх байсан. *I shouldn't have written.!!*
–саар бай– *PERFECT PROGRESSIVE* ТӨГС ҮРГЭЛЖЛЭХ	•Би бичээр байна. *I have been writing.* •Та бичээр байна уу? *Have you been writing?* •Би бичихгүй байсаар байна. *I haven't been writing.*	•Би бичсээр байсан. *I had been writing.* •Та бичсээр байсан уу? *Had you been writing?* •Би бичихгүй байсаар байсан. *I hadn't been writing.*	•Би бичээр байх болно. *I shall have been writing.* •Та бичээр байх уу? *Will you have been writing?* •Би бичихгүй байсаар байх болно. *I shall not have been writing.*	•Би бичээр байх байсан. *I should have been writing.* •Та бичээр байх байсан уу? *Should you have been writing?* •Би бичихгүй бай– саар байх байсан. *I shouldn't have been writing.*

6. TABLE OF CONTENTS IN MONGOLIAN

Монгол гарчиг

I ХЭСЭГ : Үндэслэл (х. 1–40)

1. Монгол хэл, түүний хувьсал хөгжил (х. 2)

1.1 Монгол хэлний ерөнхий шинж (х. 2)
1.2 Олон монгол хэл аялгуу (х. 2)
1.3 Сонгодог бичгийн хэл хийгээд орчин цагийн утга зохиолын хэл (х. 3)

2. Монгол бичгийн цагаан толгой (х. 4)

2.1 Уйгуржин бичгийн цагаан толгой (х. 4)
2.1.1 Уйгуржин бичгийн цагаан толгойн тойм хүснэгт (х. 4)
2.1.2 Олон дуудлагат цагаан толгой (х.5)
2.1.3 Уйгуржин бичгийн цагаан толгойн нарийвчилсан хүснэгт (х.6)
2.1.4 Эгшиг авиа (х. 7)
2.1.4.1 Эгшгийн зохицол
2.1.4.2 Эгшгийн хувьсал
2.1.4.2.1 Эгшгийн ижилсэл
2.1.4.2.1.1 Дэвшин ижилсэх
2.1.4.2.1.2 Ухран ижилсэх
2.1.4.2.2 Урт эгшгийн үүсэл
2.1.4.2.2.1 Авианы нийлэмжээс үүсэх нь
2.1.4.2.2.2 Богино эгшгээс үүсэх нь
2.1.4.2.2.3 Нийлмэл эгшгээс үүсэх нь
2.1.4.2.3 Хос эгшгийн үүсэл
2.1.4.2.3.1 Үгийн дундах хос эгшиг
2.1.4.2.3.2 Үгийн эцсийн хос эгшиг
2.1.4.2.4 Балархай эгшиг
2.1.4.2.4.1 Эгшиг сулрах нь
2.1.4.2.4.2 Эгшиг гээгдэх нь
2.1.5 Гийгүүлэгч авиа (х. 13)
2.1.5.1 Чанга, сул гийгүүлэгч
2.1.5.2 Дэвсгэр үсэг
2.1.5.3 Эр үгэн дэх зөөлөн гийгүүлэгч
2.1.5.4 Гийгүүлэгчийн хувьсал
2.1.6 Үеийн бүтэц (х. 15)
2.1.7 Гадаад үгийн галиг (х. 16)
2.1.7.1 Галигийн хүснэгт
2.1.7.2 Галигийн жишээ
2.1.8 Зөв бичгийн дүрэм (х. 17)
2.1.8.1 Залгаврыг зөв бичих дүрэм
2.1.8.2 Жийрэглэх эгшгийг зөв бичих дүрэм
2.1.8.2.1 Ерөнхий дүрэм
2.1.8.2.2 Тайлал

2.2 Кирилл бичгийн цагаан толгой (х.19)
2.2.1 Эгшиг авиа (х. 20)
2.2.1.1 Эгшгийн ангилал
2.2.1.2 Эгшиг зохицох ёс
2.2.2 Гийгүүлэгч (х. 21)
2.2.2.1 Хатуу, зөөлөн гийгүүлэгч
2.2.2.2 Гийгүүлэгчийн ангилал
2.2.2.2.1 Эгшигт гийгүүлэгч

2.2.2.2.2 Заримдаг гийгүүлэгч
2.2.2.3 Гийгүүлэгчийн байр
2.2.3 Тэмдэг (х. 21)
2.2.3.1 Хатуугийн тэмдэг
2.2.3.2 Зөөлний тэмдэг
2.2.4 Үеийн бүтэц (х. 22)
2.2.5 Дүрмүүд (х. 22)
2.2.5.1 Зөв дуудах дүрэм
2.2.5.2 Зөв бичих дүрэм
2.2.5.2.1 Үндсэн дүрмүүд
2.2.5.2.2 Хувилгалын дүрмүүд
2.2.5.2.2.1 Гол дүрмүүд
2.2.5.2.2.2 Тайлал дүрмүүд
2.2.5.2.3 «-ла» дагаврыг зөв бичих дүрэм
2.2.5.2.3.1 «-ла» дагаврын тайлал дүрэм
2.2.5.2.4 Зөөлний тэмдэг «и» болох дүрэм
2.2.5.2.5 «-ж/-ч» нөхцлийн дүрэм
2.2.5.2.6 Том үсгийн дүрэм
2.2.5.2.7 Үг товчлох дүрэм
2.2.5.2.8 Үг таслах дүрэм

2.3 Цагаан толгойнуудын харьцуулсан хүснэгт (х. 31)

3. Монгол хэлний үгийн бүтэц (х. 33)

3.1 Язгуур (х. 33)
3.1.1 Идэвхтэй (амьд) язгуур
3.1.2 Идэвхгүй (үхмэл) язгуур

3.2 Үндэс (х. 36)

3.3 Залгавар (х. 37)
3.3.1 Үг бүтээх залгавар (дагавар)
3.3.2 Үг хувилгах залгавар (нөхцөл)
3.3.2.1 Нэр үгийг хувилгах нөхцөл
3.3.2.2 Үйл үгийг хувилгах нөхцөл

II ХЭСЭГ: Үгсийн сан (х. 41–59)

1. Үг бүтэх ёс (х. 41)

1.1 Дагавар залгаж үг бүтэх нь (х. 42)
1.1.1 Нэр үг бүтэх нь (х. 42)
1.1.1.1 Нэр үг, тэмдэг нэрээс нэр үг бүтэх нь
1.1.1.2 Үйл үгээс нэр үг бүтэх нь
1.1.2 Тэмдэг нэр бүтэх нь (х. 49)
1.1.2.1 Нэр үг, тэмдэг нэрээс тэмдэг нэр бүтэх нь
1.1.2.2 Үйл үгээс тэмдэг нэр бүтэх нь
1.1.3 Үйл үг бүтэх нь (х. 54)

1.2 Нийлмэл үгээр үг бүтэх нь (х. 57)
1.2.1 Хоршоо нийлмэл үг
1.2.2Хавсраа нийлмэл үг
1.2.2.1 Хамжсан хавсраа нийлмэл үг
1.2.2.2 Найрсан хавсраа нийлмэл үг
1.2.3 Давтсан хоршоо нийлмэл үг

2. Үгсийн сангийн бүрэлдэхүүн (х. 60)

2.1 Өвөрмөц хэллэг (х. 60)

2.2 Ижил үгс (х. 62)

2.2.1 Үгсийн сангийн ижил үгс
2.2.1.1 Үгсийн сангийн анхдагч ижил үгс
2.2.1.2 Үгсийн сангийн үүсмэл ижил үгс
2.2.2 Үгзүйн ижил үгс
2.2.2.1 Үгзүйн анхдагч ижил үгс
2.2.2.2 Үгзүйн үүсмэл ижил үгс

2.3 Ойролцоо үгс (х. 63)
2.3.1 Найруулгын ойролцоо үгс
2.3.2 Гадаад хэлнээс орсон ойролцоо үгс
2.3.3 Нутгийн аялгууны ойролцоо үгс
2.3.4 Цээрлэсэн ойролцоо үгс

2.4 Ёс заншлын үгс (х. 65)

2.5 Зээлдсэн үгс (х. 66)
2.5.1 Монголжсон харь үгс
2.5.2 Янз бүрийн хэлнээс зээлдсэн үгс
2.5.2.1 Самгард, уйгур хэлнээс зээлдсэн үгс
2.5.2.2 Арав, Перс хэлнээс зээлдсэн үгс
2.5.2.3 Хятад, манж хэлнээс зээлдсэн үгс
2.5.2.4 Төвд хэлнээс зээлдсэн үгс
2.5.2.4 Европын хэлнээс зээлдсэн үгс

III ХЭСЭГ: Үг зүй (х. 70–358)

1. Бодит үгсийн аймаг (х. 72)

1.1. Жинхэнэ үгсийн аймаг (х. 72)

1.1.1 Нэр үг (х. 72)

1.1.1.1 Нэр үгийн олон тоо (х. 72)
1.1.1.1.1 Олон тооны нөхцөл (ОТН)
1.1.1.1.1.1 «-$уул^2$» ОТН
1.1.1.1.1.2 «-$чуул^2$, -$чуул^2$» ОТН
1.1.1.1.1.3 «нар» ОТН
1.1.1.1.1.4 «-д» ОТН
1.1.1.1.1.5 «-с» ОТН
1.1.1.1.2 ОТН-гүйгээр олон тооны утгыг илтгэх нь
1.1.1.1.2.1 Тоо илтгэсэн үгсээр олны утгыг илтгэх нь
1.1.1.1.2.2 Үгсийг давтан олны утгыг илтгэх нь
1.1.1.1.2.3 Үйл үгийн айгаар олны утгыг илтгэх нь
1.1.1.1.2.4 Багц ойлголтоор олны утгыг илтгэх нь
1.1.1.1.2.5 Хийсвэр ойлголт
1.1.1.2 Нэр үгийн тийн ялгал (х. 78)
1.1.1.2.1 Тийн ялгалын нөхцөл (ТЯН)
1.1.1.2.1.1 Нэрлэхийн тийн ялгал (х. 78)
1.1.1.2.1.1.1 Нэрлэхийн тийн ялгалд буй асуух үгс
1.1.1.2.1.2 Харьяалахын тийн ялгал (х. 79)
1.1.1.2.1.2.1 Нөхцлүүд (-ын, -ийн, -ы, -ий, -н), залгах дүрэм, жишээ
1.1.1.2.1.2.2 Асуух үгс
1.1.1.2.1.2.3 Хэрэглэх нь
1.1.1.2.1.3 Өгөх оршихын тийн ялгал (х. 83)
1.1.1.2.1.3.1 Нөхцлүүд (-д, -т), залгах дүрэм, жишээ
1.1.1.2.1.3.2 Асуух үгс
1.1.1.2.1.3.3 Хэрэглэх нь
1.1.1.2.1.4 Заахын тийн ялгал (х. 86)
1.1.1.2.1.4.1 Нөхцлүүд (-ыг, -ийг, -г), залгах дүрэм, жишээ
1.1.1.2.1.4.2 Асуух үгс
1.1.1.2.1.4.3 Хэрэглэх нь

1.1.1.2.1.4.3.1 Үл ялгах ёс
1.1.1.2.1.4.3.2 Ялгах ёс
1.1.1.2.1.4.3.3 Хэрэглээний шатлал
1.1.1.2.1.5 Гарахын тийн ялгал (х. 90)
1.1.1.2.1.5.1 Нөхцлүүд (−аас[4]), залгах дүрэм, жишээ
1.1.1.2.1.5.2 Асуух үгс
1.1.1.2.1.5.3 Хэрэглэх нь
1.1.1.2.1.6 Үйлдэхийн тийн ялгал (х. 93)
1.1.1.2.1.6.1 Нөхцлүүд (−аар[4]), залгах дүрэм, жишээ
1.1.1.2.1.6.2 Асуух үгс
1.1.1.2.1.6.3 Хэрэглэх нь
1.1.1.2.1.7 Хамтрахын тийн ялгал (х. 97)
1.1.1.2.1.7.1 Нөхцлүүд (−тай[3]), залгах дүрэм, жишээ
1.1.1.2.1.7.2 Асуух үгс
1.1.1.2.1.7.3 Хэрэглэх нь
1.1.1.2.1.7.3.1 Жинхэнэ хамтрахын тийн ялгал
1.1.1.2.1.7.3.2 Хуурамч хамтрахын тийн ялгал
1.1.1.2.1.8 Чиглэхийн тийн ялгал (х. 99)
1.1.1.2.1.8.1 Нөхцлүүд (руу[2], луу[2]), залгах дүрэм, жишээ
1.1.1.2.1.8.2 Асуух үгс
1.1.1.2.1.8.3 Хэрэглэх нь
1.1.1.2.1.8.4 Чиглэхийн тийн ялгалын шинэ хэлбэр
1.1.1.2.2 Тийн ялгалтай холбогдох залгавар (ТЯЗ) (х. 101)
1.1.1.2.2.1 Хамаатуулах утга илэрхийлэх ТЯЗ (−х)
1.1.1.2.2.2 Үсгийн сангийн "гэр" гэсэн утга илэрхийлэх ТЯЗ (−х)
1.1.1.2.2.3 Үсгийн сангийн "хүмүүс" гэсэн утга илэрхийлэх ТЯЗ (−хан[4])
1.1.1.2.2.4 Харьцааны утгыг өөрчлөгч хэлзүйн хэргэлүүр болох ТЯЗ (−х/−хи)
1.1.1.2.3 Тийн ялгалтай холбогдох сул үг (ТЯС) (х. 106)
1.1.1.2.3.1 ТЯС (минь, чинь, тань, маань, нь), дүрэм, жишээ
1.1.1.2.3.2 Хэрэглэх нь
1.1.1.3 Эгэх нөхцөл «−аа[4]» (ЭН) (х. 108)
1.1.1.3.1 Эгэх нөхцлийн үүрэг
1.1.1.3.2 ЭН, дүрэм, жишээ
1.1.1.3.3 Хэрэглэх нь
1.1.1.3.4 ТЯС−тай харьцуулах нь

1.1.2 Үйл үг (х. 113)

1.1.2.1 Үйл үгийн хувилал
1.1.2.1.1 Үйл үгийн хэвийн нөхцөл (ХэН) (х. 115)
1.1.2.1.1.1 Үйлдэх хэв (−ø)
1.1.2.1.1.2 Үйлдүүлэх хэв
1.1.2.1.1.2.1 «−уул[2]»
1.1.2.1.1.2.2 «−лга[4]»
1.1.2.1.1.2.3 «−га[4], −аа[4]»
1.1.2.1.1.2.3.1 «−га[4]»
1.1.2.1.1.2.3.2 «−аа[4]»
1.1.2.1.1.2.4 Үйлдүүлэх хэвийн үүргүүд
1.1.2.1.1.2.4.1 Эс тусах хэлбэрийг тусах хэлбэр болгох нь
1.1.2.1.1.2.4.2 Тусах хэлбэрийг үйлдүүлэх хэв болгох нь
1.1.2.1.1.2.4.3 Тусах хэлбэрийг үйлдэгдэх хэв болгох нь
1.1.2.1.1.3 Үйлдэгдэх хэв «−гд»
1.1.2.1.1.4 Үйлдэлцэх хэв «−лц»
1.1.2.1.1.5 Үйлдэлдэх хэв «−лд»
1.1.2.1.1.6 Үйл үгийн хэвийг хооронд нь харьцуулах нь
1.1.2.1.1.7 Үйл үгийн хэвийн нөхцлийг давхар хэрэглэх нь
1.1.2.1.2 Үйл үгийн байдлын нөхцөл (БН) (х. 131)
1.1.2.1.2.1 Байдлыг нийлэг аргаар илэрхийлэх нь (БН−тэй)
1.1.2.1.2.1.1 «−схий»: хоромхон үйлдэх
1.1.2.1.2.1.2 «−зана[4]»: түр үйлдэх

1.1.2.1.2.1.3 «−чих»: төгс үйлдэх
1.1.2.1.2.1.4 «−цгаа[4]»: олноор үйлдэх
1.1.2.1.2.1.5 «−л»: давтан үйлдэх
1.1.2.1.2.1.6 «−лз, балз[2]/валз[2], галз[2], гана[4]»: давтан үйлдэх
1.1.2.1.2.2 Байдлыг задлаг аргаар илэрхийлэх нь
1.1.2.1.2.2.1 «−ж/ч бай−»: Үргэлжлэх байдал
1.1.2.1.2.2.2 «−(чих)аад[4] бай−/−(чих)сан[4] бай−»: Төгс байдал
1.1.2.1.2.2.3 «−саар[4] бай−»: Төгс үргэлжлэх байдал
1.1.2.1.2.3 Хэвийн ба байдлын нөхцлийг хооронд нь харьцуулах нь
1.1.2.1.3 Үйл үгийн төлөв (х. 139)
1.1.2.1.3.1 Тодотгон холбох нөхцөл (ТоН) (х. 139)
1.1.2.1.3.1.1 Нэр үгийг тодотгон холбох нөхцөл (НТоН) (х. 139)
1.1.2.1.3.1.1.1 НТоН−ийн үүрэг
1.1.2.1.3.1.1.2 Өнгөрсөн цагт НТоН «−сан[4]»
1.1.2.1.3.1.1.3 Тодорхойгүй одоо цагт НТоН «−даг[4]»
1.1.2.1.3.1.1.4 Үргэлжлэх одоо цагт НТоН «−аа[4]»
1.1.2.1.3.1.1.5 Ирээдүй цагт НТоН «−х»
1.1.2.1.3.1.1.6 Үйлдэгчийг заах НТоН «−гч»
1.1.2.1.3.1.2 Тэмдэг үгийг тодотгон холбох нөхцөл (ТТоН) (х. 151)
1.1.2.1.3.1.2.1 Хүсэх ТТоН «−маар[4]»
1.1.2.1.3.1.2.2 Чадавхи заах ТТоН «−хуйц[2]»
1.1.2.1.3.1.2.3 Санал болгох ТТоН «−ууштай[2]»
1.1.2.1.3.1.2.4 Бусад ТТоН «−шгүй, −лтай[3], −лгүй, −м, −мгүй»
1.1.2.1.3.1.3 Үйл үгийг тодотгон холбох нөхцөл (ҮТоН) (х. 156)
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.1 Зэрэгцүүлэн холбох ҮТоН (ЗэҮТоН)
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.1.1 Зэрэгцэх ЗэҮТоН «−ж/−ч»
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.1.2 Хам ЗэҮТоН «−н»
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.1.3 Урьдчилах ЗэҮТоН «−аад[4]»
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.1.4 ЗэҮТоН−ийг хооронд нь харьцуулах нь
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2 Захируулан холбох ҮТоН (ЗаҮТоН)
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2.1 Болзох ЗаҮТоН «−бал[4], −вал[4]»
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2.2 Дутагдах ЗаҮТоН «−вч»
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2.3 Бэлтгэх ЗаҮТоН «−магц[4]»
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2.4 Дагалдах ЗаҮТоН «−хлаар[4]»
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2.5 Зорилгын ЗаҮТоН «−хаар[4]»
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2.6 Үгтуулах ЗаҮТоН «−тал[4]»
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2.7 Үргэлжлэх ЗаҮТоН «−саар[4]»
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2.8 Далимдах ЗаҮТоН «−нгуут[2]»
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2.9 Дашрамдах ЗаҮТоН «−нгаа[4]»
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2.10 Онцгойлох ЗаҮТоН «−маажин[4]»
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2.11 ЗаҮТоН−ийн дараа эгэх нөхцөл хэрэглэх нь
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2.12 ЗаҮТоН−ийн нэгтгэсэн хүснэгт
1.1.2.1.3.2 Төгсгөн холбох нөхцөл (ТөН) (х. 175)
1.1.2.1.3.2.1 Биеэр төгсгөн холбох нөхцөл (БТөН) (х. 175)
1.1.2.1.3.2.1.1 Хүсэх БТөН «−я[3]» (I бие)
1.1.2.1.3.2.1.2 Даалган хүсэх БТөН «−сугай[2]» (I бие)
1.1.2.1.3.2.1.3 Шууд захирах БТөН «−ø» (II бие)
1.1.2.1.3.2.1.4 Тулган шаардах, гуйн хүсэх БТөН «−аач[4]» (II бие)
1.1.2.1.3.2.1.5 Сануулан хүсэх, зөвлөн захирах БТөН «−аарай[4]» (II бие)
1.1.2.1.3.2.1.6 Сэрэмжлүүлэн сануулах БТөН «−уузай[2]» (II бие)
1.1.2.1.3.2.1.7 Хүндэтгэн захирах БТөН «−гтун[2]» (II бие)
1.1.2.1.3.2.1.8 Тушаах, зөвшөөх БТөН «−г» (III бие)
1.1.2.1.3.2.1.9 Гүнээ хүсэх БТөН «−аасай[4]» (III бие)
1.1.2.1.3.2.1.10 Ерөөн хүсэх БТөН «−тугай[2]» (III бие)
1.1.2.1.3.2.2 Цагаар төгсгөн холбох нөхцөл (ЦТөН) (х. 184)
1.1.2.1.3.2.2.1 НТоН «−сан[4]» ЦТөН−ийн үүргээр хэрэглэгдэх нь (ерөнхий өнгөрсөн цаг)
1.1.2.1.3.2.2.2 ЦТөН «−жээ/−чээ» (өнгөрсөн цаг)
1.1.2.1.3.2.2.3 ЦТөН «−в» (өнгөрсөн цаг)
1.1.2.1.3.2.2.4 ЦТөН «−лаа[4]» (өнгөрсөн цаг)

1.1.2.1.3.2.2.5 НТөН «-даг⁴» ЦТөН-ийн үүргээр хэрэглэгдэх нь (тодорхойгүй одоо цаг)
1.1.2.1.3.2.2.6 НТөН «-аа⁴» ЦТөН-ийн үүргээр хэрэглэгдэх нь (үргэлжлэх одоо цаг)
1.1.2.1.3.2.2.7 ЦТөН «-на⁴» (одоо цаг)
1.1.2.1.3.2.2.8 ЦТөН «-на⁴» (ирээдүй цаг)
1.1.2.2 Үйл үгийг үүргээр нь ангилах нь (х. 192)
1.1.2.2.1 Гол үйл үг (х. 192)
1.1.2.2.1.1 «Бай-» гол үйл үгийн үүргээр хэрэглэгдэх нь
1.1.2.2.1.1.1 «Бай-»-г англи хэлэнд "there are"-гаар буулгах нь
1.1.2.2.1.1.2 «Бай-»-г англи хэлэнд "to be"-гээр буулгах нь
1.1.2.2.1.2 «Бол-» гол үйл үгийн үүргээр хэрэглэгдэх нь
1.1.2.2.2 Туслах үйл үг (х. 194)
1.1.2.2.2.1 «Бай-» туслах үйл үгийн үүргээр хэрэглэгдэх нь
1.1.2.2.2.1.1 Холбогчийн үүргээр (нэр үг, тэмдэг үгийн дараа)
1.1.2.2.2.1.2 Нийлмэл өгүүлэхүүн бүтээх үүргээр (үйл үгийн дараа)
1.1.2.2.2.1.3 Хүсэх төлөв илэрхийлэх үүргээр
1.1.2.2.2.2 «Бол-» туслах үйл үгийн үүргээр хэрэглэгдэх нь
1.1.2.2.2.2.1 Холбогчийн үүргээр (нэр үг, тэмдэг үгийн дараа)
1.1.2.2.2.2.2 Нийлмэл өгүүлэхүүн бүтээх үүргээр (үйл үгийн дараа)
1.1.2.2.2.3 Дутмаг туслах үйл үг
1.1.2.2.2.3.1 «ажээ, атал, аваас»
1.1.2.2.2.3.2 «бий, буй, билээ»
1.1.2.2.3 Баймж үйл үг ба баймж бүтэц (х. 201)
1.1.2.2.3.1 Баймж үйл үг «чада-»
1.1.2.2.3.2 Баймж бүтэц
1.1.2.2.3.2.1 «... -х ...-тай/-гүй»
1.1.2.2.3.2.2 «... -байх(аа)»
1.1.2.2.3.2.3 «... юм байна»
1.1.2.2.3.2.4 «... байлтай/байлгүй»
1.1.2.2.3.2.5 «...-сан бол-»
1.1.2.2.3.2.6 «... -х гэсэн юм»
1.1.2.2.3.2.7 «... бололтой»
1.1.2.2.3.2.8 «... -х юмсан/... -хсан»
1.1.2.2.3.2.9 «... -сан юмсан»
1.1.2.2.3.2.10 «... -сансан/... -дагсан»
1.1.2.2.3.2.11 «... -хаас даа»
1.1.2.2.3.2.12 Баймж бүтэц ба баймж залгаврыг хооронд нь харьцуулах нь
1.1.2.2.4 Гол үйл үгийг баймж утгаар хэрэглэх нь (х. 208)
1.1.2.2.4.1 «-ж/-ч бол-» баймж үйл үг
1.1.2.2.4.2 Бусад баймж үйл үгийн хүснэгт
1.1.2.2.5 Холбоос үйл үг «гэ-» (х. 210)

1.1.3 Тэмдэг үг (х. 211)

1.1.3.1 Нэрийн тэмдэг үг (х. 211)
1.1.3.1.1 Нэрийн тэмдэг үгийн тодорхойлолт
1.1.3.1.2 Нэрийн тэмдэг үгийн өгүүлбэрдэх үүрэг
1.1.3.1.2.1 Нэрийн тэмдэг үг тодотголын үүргээр хэрэглэгдэх нь
1.1.3.1.2.2 Нэрийн тэмдэг үг өгүүлэхүүний үүргээр хэрэглэгдэх нь
1.1.3.1.3 Нэрийн тэмдэг үгийн дараалал
1.1.3.1.3.1 Нэрийн тэмдэг үгийн дарааллын зүй тогтол
1.1.3.1.4 Нэрийн тэмдэг үгийн зэрэг
1.1.3.1.4.1 Нэрийн тэмдэг үгийн ерийн зэрэг
1.1.3.1.4.2 Нэрийн тэмдэг үгийн харьцуулсан зэрэг
1.1.3.1.4.2.1 Гарахын т/я-тай нэр үгээр илэрхийлэх нь
1.1.3.1.4.2.2 Гарахын т/я-тай нэрийн тэмдэг үгээр илэрхийлэх нь
1.1.3.1.4.2.3 «адил, шиг, мэт, чинээ» гэсэн дагавар үгсээр илэрхийлэх нь
1.1.3.1.4.2.4 «илүү, арай» гэсэн тэмдэг үгсээр илэрхийлэх нь
1.1.3.1.4.3 Нэрийн тэмдэг үгийн давуу зэрэг

1.1.3.1.4.3.1 «хамгийн, туйлын» гэсэн үгсээр илэрхийлэх нь
1.1.3.1.4.3.2 Харьяалахын т/я-тай давтан хэрэглэсэн нэр үгээр илэрхийлэх нь
1.1.3.1.5 Нэрийн тэмдэг үгийн утгыг өөрчлөх нь
1.1.3.1.5.1 Тэмдэг үг бүтээх залгавар (ТҮЗ) залгаж өөрчлөх нь
1.1.3.1.5.1.1 Бууруулах ТҮЗ «-хан⁴»
1.1.3.1.5.1.2 Бууруулах ТҮЗ «-(а)втар⁴ , -дуу²»
1.1.3.1.5.1.3 Эрчимжүүлэх ТҮЗ «-в»
1.1.3.1.5.2 Тэмдэг үгээр эрчимжүүлэх нь
1.1.3.1.5.2.1 «маш, нэн, туйл, даан» гэсэн тэмдэг үгээр эрчимжүүлэх нь
1.1.3.1.5.2.2 «хэтэрхий, дэндүү, даанч» гэсэн тэмдэг үгээр эрчимжүүлэх нь
1.1.3.1.5.2.3 Бусад тэмдэг үгээр эрчимжүүлэх нь
1.1.3.2 Үйлийн тэмдэг үг (х. 221)
1.1.3.2.1 Анхдагч үйлийн тэмдэг үг
1.1.3.2.2 Идэвхгүй язгуурт үйлийн тэмдэг үг
1.1.3.2.2.1 Хүснэгт
1.1.3.2.2.2 Жишээ
1.1.3.2.3 Үйлийн тэмдэг үг бүтээх нь
1.1.3.2.3.1 ТҮЗ -аар бүтээх нь
1.1.3.2.3.1.1 Чиг заах ТҮЗ «-(г)ш»
1.1.3.2.3.1.2 Хөдлөл заах ТҮЗ «-уур²»
1.1.3.2.3.2 Үгс хоршиж бүтээх нь
1.1.3.2.3.3 Тэмдэг үгээр бүтээх нь
1.1.3.2.4 Үйлийн тэмдэг үгийн утгазүйн ангилал
1.1.3.2.4.1 Орон байр заасан үйлийн тэмдэг үг
1.1.3.2.4.2 Цаг хугацаа заасан үйлийн тэмдэг үг
1.1.3.2.4.3 Байдал, шинж тэмдэг заасан үйлийн тэмдэг үг
1.1.3.3 Тооны үг (х. 234)
1.1.3.3.1 Тооны үг, тэдгээрийн нөхцлийн (ТҮН) хүснэгт
1.1.3.3.2 Үндсэн тооны үг (х. 234)
1.1.3.3.2.1 Хүснэгт
1.1.3.3.2.2 Үндсэн тооны үгийг хэрэглэх нь
1.1.3.3.2.2.1 Нийлмэл үндсэн тооны үгийг бүтээх нь
1.1.3.3.2.2.2 Үндсэн тооны үгийг тодотголын үүргээр хэрэглэх нь
1.1.3.3.2.2.3 Үндсэн тооны үгийг холбоосын үүргээр хэрэглэх нь
1.1.3.3.2.2.4 Үндсэн тооны үгийн өргөн хэрэглээ
1.1.3.3.2.2.4.1 Огноо
1.1.3.3.2.2.4.2 Цаг
1.1.3.3.2.2.4.3 Утас
1.1.3.3.2.3 Үндсэн тооны үгийг хувилгах нь
1.1.3.3.2.3.1 Хүснэгт
1.1.3.3.2.3.2 Жишээ
1.1.3.3.3 Дэс тооны үг (х. 240)
1.1.3.3.3.1 Дэс тооны үг үүсгэх «-дугаар², -дахь/-дэх» дагавар
1.1.3.3.3.2 Дэс тооны үгийг хэрэглэх нь
1.1.3.3.3.2.1 Сар (-дугаар²)
1.1.3.3.3.2.2 «-дугаар²»-ыг хэрэглэх бусад жишээ
1.1.3.3.3.2.3 Гариг (-дахь, -дэх)
1.1.3.3.3.2.4 «-дахь/-дэх»-ийг хэрэглэх бусад жишээ
1.1.3.3.3.2.5 Хаяг (-дугаар², -дахь/-дэх)
1.1.3.3.3.2.6 Ром тоог «-дугаар²»-ын үүргээр хэрэглэх нь
1.1.3.3.4 Хам тооны үг (х. 244)
1.1.3.3.4.1 Хам тооны үг бүтээх «-уул²» дагавар
1.1.3.3.4.2 Хам тооны үгийг хэрэглэх нь
1.1.3.3.4.3 Хам тооны үгийг хувилгах нь
1.1.3.3.4.3.1 Хүснэгт
1.1.3.3.4.3.2 Жишээ
1.1.3.3.5 Тойм тооны үг (х. 246)
1.1.3.3.5.1 Тойм тооны үгийн хүснэгт
1.1.3.3.5.2 Тойм тооны үгийг хэрэглэх нь
1.1.3.3.5.2.1 Тойм тооны үг үүсгэх «-аад⁴» дагавар

1.1.3.3.5.2.2 «гаруй, илүү, шахам, орчим» гэсэн дагавар үгсийг тойм тооны үгийн утгаар хэрэглэх нь
1.1.3.3.5.2.3 Тооны үгийг хоршиж тойм тооны үгийн утгаар хэрэглэх нь
1.1.3.3.5.3 Тойм тооны үгийг хувилгах нь
1.1.3.3.6 Давтах тооны үг (х. 249)
1.1.3.3.6.1 Давтах тооны үгийн хүснэгт
1.1.3.3.6.2 Давтах тооны үгийг хэрэглэх нь
1.1.3.3.6.2.1 Давтах тооны үг үүсгэх «–таа⁴» дагавар
1.1.3.3.6.2.2 «дахин, удаа» гэсэн үгсийг хэрэглэх нь
1.1.3.3.7 Хязгаарлах тооны үг (х. 250)
1.1.3.3.7.1 Хязгаарлах тооны үг үүсгэх «–хан⁴» дагавар
1.1.3.3.7.2 Хязгаарлах тооны үгийг хэрэглэх нь
1.1.3.3.8 Түгээл тооны үг (х. 251)
1.1.3.3.8.1 Түгээл тооны үгийг хэрэглэх нь
1.1.3.3.9 Тооны үгийг тоо бичлэгт хэрэглэх нь (х. 252)
1.1.3.3.9.1 Аравтын бутархай
1.1.3.3.9.2 Энгийн бутархай
1.1.3.3.9.3 Хувь
1.1.3.3.9.4 Дөрвөн аргын тоо
1.1.3.3.9.4.1 Нэмэх
1.1.3.3.9.4.2 Хасах
1.1.3.3.9.4.3 Үржүүлэх
1.1.3.3.9.4.4 Хуваах

1.2. Төлөөний үг (х. 255)

1.2.1 Төлөөний үгийн бүтэцзүйн ангилал (х. 255)
1.2.1.1 Нэрийн төлөөний үг
1.2.1.2 Үйлийн төлөөний үг
1.2.1.3 Тэмдгийн төлөөний үг
1.2.2 Төлөөний үгийн утгазүйн ангилал (х. 256)
1.2.2.1 Биеийн төлөөний үг (х. 256)
1.2.2.1.1 Биеийн төлөөний үгийн хүснэгт
1.2.2.1.2 Биеийн төлөөний үгийн хувилал
1.2.2.1.3 Биеийн төлөөний үгийг хэрэглэх нь
1.2.2.1.3.1 «би»
1.2.2.1.3.2 «чи»
1.2.2.1.3.3 «та»
1.2.2.1.3.4 «тэр»
1.2.2.1.3.5 «бид (нар)»
1.2.2.1.3.6 «та нар»
1.2.2.1.3.7 «тэд (нар)»
1.2.2.2 Хамаатуулах төлөөний үг (х. 260)
1.2.2.3 Эгэх төлөөний үг (х. 261)
1.2.2.3.1 Эгэх төлөөний үгийг тийн ялгалаар хувилгах нь
1.2.2.3.2 Эгэх төлөөний үгийг хэрэглэх нь
1.2.2.3.2.1 Нэрлэхийн тийн ялгалд хэрэглэх нь
1.2.2.3.2.2 Харьяалахын тийн ялгалд хэрэглэх нь
1.2.2.3.2.3 Бусад тийн ялгалд хэрэглэх нь
1.2.2.3.3 Бусад эгэх төлөөний үгс
1.2.2.4 Заах төлөөний үг (х. 264)
1.2.2.4.1 Заах төлөөний үгийн хүснэгт
1.2.2.4.2 Заах төлөөний үгийг хэрэглэх нь
1.2.2.4.2.1 «энэ/ тэр/ эдгээр/ тэдгээр/ эд (нар)/ тэд (нар)»
1.2.2.4.2.2 «ийм/ тийм/ иймэрхүү/ тиймэрхүү»
1.2.2.4.2.3 «өнөө(төх)/ нөгөө(төх)/ өнөөдүүл/ нөгөөдүүл»
1.2.2.4.2.4 «өдий/ төдий/ өчнөөн/ төчнөөн»
1.2.2.4.2.5 «ингэ–/ тэгэ–»
1.2.2.5 Асуух төлөөний үг (х. 268)
1.2.2.5.1 Асуух төлөөний үгийн хүснэгт

1.2.2.5.2 Асуух төлөөний үгийг харьцуулах нь
1.2.2.5.3 Асуух төлөөний үгийг хэрэглэх нь
1.2.2.5.3.1 «хэн»
1.2.2.5.3.2 «юу(н)»
1.2.2.5.3.3 «ямар»
1.2.2.5.3.4 «аль/ алин»
1.2.2.5.3.5 «хэд(эн)»
1.2.2.5.3.6 «хичнээн»
1.2.2.5.3.7 «хэзээ/ хэдийд»
1.2.2.5.3.8 «хаа(на)»
1.2.2.5.3.9 «хаашаа»
1.2.2.5.3.10 «хаанаас»
1.2.2.5.3.11 «хаагуур»
1.2.2.5.3.12 «хэр»
1.2.2.5.3.13 «хэрхэн»
1.2.2.5.3.14 «яаж»
1.2.2.5.3.15 «яагаад»
1.2.2.5.3.16 «хэрхи–»
1.2.2.5.3.17 «яа–»
1.2.2.5.3.18 Давтан хэрэглэж олон тооны утгыг илэрхийлэх нь
1.2.2.6 Тодорхойгүй төлөөний үг (х. 276)
1.2.2.6.1 Тодорхойгүй төлөөний үгийн хүснэгт
1.2.2.6.2 Тодорхойгүй төлөөний үгийг хэрэглэх нь
1.2.2.6.2.1 «хэн ч»
1.2.2.6.2.2«юу ч»
1.2.2.6.2.3 «ямар ч»
1.2.2.6.2.4 «аль ч»
1.2.2.6.2.5 «хэд(эн) ч»
1.2.2.6.2.6 «хичнээн ч»
1.2.2.6.2.7 «хэзээ ч/ хэдийд ч»
1.2.2.6.2.8 «хаана ч/ хаанаас ч/ хаашаа ч/ хаагуур ч»
1.2.2.6.2.9 «яаж ч»
1.2.2.6.2.10 «яа– ч»

2. Хийсвэр үгсийн аймаг (х. 282)

2.1. Дагавар үг (х. 282)

2.1.1 Дагавар үгийн тодорхойлолт (х. 282)
2.1.2 Дагавар үгийн бүтэцзүйн ангилал (х. 282)
2.1.1.1 Жинхэнэ дагавар үг
2.1.1.2 Тэмдэг үгийг дагавар үгийн үүргээр хэрэглэх нь
2.1.3 Дагавар үгийг хэрэглэх нь (х. 285)
2.1.3.1 Тэг нөхцлийн дараа хэрэглэгдэх дагавар үг (х. 285)
2.1.3.1.1 «гаруй»
2.1.3.1.2 «шахам»
2.1.3.1.3 «орчим»
2.1.3.1.4 «гэхэд»
2.1.3.1.5 «дээр»
2.1.3.1.6 «доор»
2.1.3.1.7 «хүртэл»
2.1.3.1.8 «бүр/ болгон»
2.1.3.1.9 «тутам»
2.1.3.1.10 «ёсоор»
2.1.3.1.11 «мэт»
2.1.3.1.12 «шиг»
2.1.3.1.13 «адил»
2.1.3.2 Харьяалахын т/ я–ын нөхцлийн дараа хэрэглэгдэх дагавар үг (х. 287)
2.1.3.2.1 «тулд»
2.1.3.2.2 «төлөө»
2.1.3.2.3 «турш»

2.1.3.2.4 «дагуу»
2.1.3.2.5 «чинээ»
2.1.3.2.6 «дэргэд»
2.1.3.2.7 «хооронд»
2.1.3.2.8 «хажууд»
2.1.3.2.9 «наана»
2.1.3.2.10 «цаана»
2.1.3.2.11 «дотор»
2.1.3.2.12 «ард»
2.1.3.2.13 «урд»
2.1.3.2.14 «уруу»
2.1.3.2.15 «өөд»
2.1.3.2.16 «дараа»
2.1.3.2.17 «эсрэг»
2.1.3.2.18 «дунд»
2.1.3.2.19 «ойролцоо»
2.1.3.2.20 «-уур» дагавартай үгс
2.1.3.2.21 «тухай»
2.1.3.2.22 «талаар»
2.1.3.2.23 «гадна»
2.1.3.2.24 «хойно»
2.1.3.2.25 «өмнө»
2.1.3.2.26 «адил»
2.1.3.3 Өгөх оршихын т/я-ын нөхцлийн дараа хэрэглэгдэх дагавар үг (х. 293)
2.1.3.3.1 «ойр»
2.1.3.4 Гарахын т/я-ын нөхцлийн дараа хэрэглэгдэх дагавар үг (х. 293)
2.1.3.4.1 «бусад»
2.1.3.4.2 «өөр»
2.1.3.4.3 «илүү»
2.1.3.4.4 «хол»
2.1.3.4.5 «(г)ш» дагавартай үгс
2.1.3.4.6 «гадна»
2.1.3.4.7 «хойно»
2.1.3.4.8 «өмнө»
2.1.3.5 Хамтрахын т/я-ын нөхцлийн дараа хэрэглэгдэх дагавар үг (х. 295)
2.1.3.5.1 «адил»
2.1.3.6 НТоН-ийн дараа хэрэглэгдэх дагавар үг (х. 295)
2.1.3.6.1 «хүртэл»
2.1.3.6.2 «бүр/болгон»
2.1.3.6.3 «тутам»
2.1.3.6.4 «ёсоор»
2.1.3.6.5 «мэт»
2.1.3.6.6 «шиг»
2.1.3.6.7 «тухай»
2.1.3.6.8 «талаар»

2.2 Холбоос үг (х. 297)
2.2.1 Зэрэгцүүлэн холбох холбоос үг (х. 297)
2.2.1.1 Зэрэгцүүлэн холбох холбоос үгийн хүснэгт
2.2.1.2 Жишээ ба тайлбарууд
2.2.1.2.1 «ба»
2.2.1.2.2 «бөгөөд»
2.2.1.2.3 «-гүй»
2.2.1.2.4 «болон»
2.2.1.2.5 «ч, ...ч»
2.2.1.2.6 «(мөн) түүнчлэн»
2.2.1.2.7 «харин»
2.2.1.2.8 «гэвч»
2.2.1.2.9 «(зөвхөн) төдийгүй, мөн»
2.2.1.2.10 «төдий биш, (харин)»

2.2.1.2.11 «-аар барахгүй, (мөн)»
2.2.1.2.12 «буюу/юм уу»
2.2.1.2.13 «эсвэл (эсхүл)»
2.2.1.2.14 «эсвэл ... эсвэл»
2.2.1.2.15 «байхад, харин»
2.2.1.2.16 «байтугай/битгий хэл/бүү хэл»
2.2.1.2.17 «гэхдээ» (нэмсэн)
2.2.2 Угсруулан холбох холбоос үг (х. 307)
2.2.2.1 Угсруулан холбох холбоос үгийн хүснэгт
2.2.2.2 Жишээ ба тайлбарууд
2.2.2.2.1 «гэ-»
2.2.2.2.2 «-г гэж»
2.2.2.2.3 «эсэх»
2.2.2.2.4 «...үү, үгүй юү гэдэг»
2.2.2.2.5 «юм шиг л»
2.2.2.2.6 «учир / учраас»
2.2.2.2.7 «тул»
2.2.2.2.8 «-аас болж»
2.2.2.2.9 «-хгүй + -(г)ээр»
2.2.2.2.10 «-х гэж»
2.2.2.2.11« -х + -ын тулд»
2.2.2.2.12 «-х + -ын өмнө»
2.2.2.2.13 «сан + -ы дараа»
2.2.2.2.14 «-сан + -ы дагуу»
2.2.2.2.15 «-сан + -аас хойш»
2.2.2.2.16 «-х хүртэл»
2.2.2.2.17 «байх үед/-х(а)д»
2.2.2.2.18 «-х бүрд/-х болгонд»
2.2.2.2.19 «-х + -тай зэрэг»
2.2.2.2.20 «-ж байх хооронд»
2.2.2.2.21 «-х завсар/-х зуур»
2.2.2.2.22 «(Хэрэв) ...-бал/-вал»
2.2.2.2.23 «(Хэрэв) ...-х тохиолдолд»
2.2.2.2.24 «(Хэрэв) ... нөхцөлд»
2.2.2.2.25 «Хэдийгээр ... боловч»
2.2.2.2.26 «-сан + -аар»
2.2.2.2.27 «-х/-сан тухай/ талаар» (нэмсэн)
2.2.2.2.28 «болохоор» (нэмсэн)
2.2.3 Төлөөний үгээс гаралтай холбоос үг (х. 319)
2.2.3.1 Төлөөний үгээс гаралтай холбоос үгийн хүснэгт
2.2.3.2 Жишээ ба тайлбарууд
2.2.3.2.1 «(Мөн)түүнчлэн»
2.2.3.2.2 «Түүнээс гадна»
2.2.3.2.3 «Түүгээр ч барахгүй»
2.2.3.2.4 «Тэгээд/Ингээд»
2.2.3.2.5 «Тэгэхлээр/Ингэхлээр»
2.2.3.2.6 «Тэгсэнээр/Ингэснээр»
2.2.3.2.7 «Эс тэгвэл»
2.2.3.2.8 «Тэгэхэд нь»
2.2.3.2.9 «Тийнхүү/Ийнхүү»
2.2.3.2.10 «Тийм учраас»
2.2.3.2.11 «Учир нь»
2.2.3.2.12 «Тийм болохоор»
2.2.3.2.13 «Хэдий тийм боловч»
2.2.3.2.14 «Нөгөө талаас»
2.2.3.2.15 «Яагаад гэвэл»
2.2.3.2.16 «Тэгсэн чинь» (нэмсэн)

2.3 Сул үг (х. 326)
2.3.1 Сул үгийн хүснэгт (х. 326)

2.3.2 Сул үгийн утгазүйн ангилал (х. 327)
2.3.2.1 Асуух сул үг (х. 327)
2.3.2.1.1 «бэ/ вэ»
2.3.2.1.2 «уу²/ юу²»
2.3.2.2 Үгүйсгэх сул үг (х. 328)
2.3.2.2.1 «биш»
2.3.2.2.2 «бус»
2.3.2.2.3 «(ү)гүй»
2.3.2.2.3.1 Нэр үгийн дараа хэрэглэх нь
2.3.2.2.3.2 Үйл үгийн дараа хэрэглэх нь
2.3.2.2.3.3 «алга» гэсэн үгийн тухайд
2.3.2.2.4 «үл»
2.3.2.2.5 «эс»
2.3.2.2.6 «бүү»
2.3.2.2.7 «битгий»
2.3.2.3 Баймж сул үг (х. 335)
2.3.2.3.1 «шуу²»
2.3.2.3.2 «даа⁴»
2.3.2.3.3 «аа⁴»
2.3.2.3.4 «юм»
2.3.2.3.5 «мөн»
2.3.2.3.6 «билээ/ лээ»
2.3.2.3.7 «сан⁴»
2.3.2.3.8 «даг⁴»
2.3.2.3.9 «биз»
2.3.2.3.10 «бий/ вий»
2.3.2.3.11 «шив»
2.3.2.3.12 «бол» (шалтгааны)
2.3.2.3.13 «бол» (асуух)
2.3.2.3.14 Баймж сул үгийг харьцуулах нь
2.3.2.4 Төвлөрүүлэх сул үг (х. 345)
2.3.2.4.1 Завсрын сул үг «бол»
2.3.2.4.2 Нэгтгэн төвлөрүүлэх сул үг «ч»
2.3.2.4.2.1 Тодорхойгүй төлөөний үгийн бүрэлдэхүүнд хэрэглэх нь
2.3.2.4.2.2 Холбоос үгийн дотор хэрэглэх нь
2.3.2.4.2.3 Баймж бүтцийн дотор хэрэглэх нь
2.3.2.4.2.4 «... дээр» гэдэг утгыг илэрхийлэх нь
2.3.2.4.2.5 «бас» гэдэг утгыг илэрхийлэх нь
2.3.2.4.2.6 Нэгтгэн төвлөрүүлэх сул үгийн үүргийг харьцуулах нь
2.3.2.4.3 Салган төвлөрүүлэх сул үг «л»
2.3.2.4.3.1 Салган төвлөрүүлэх сул үгийн үүрэг
2.3.2.4.3.2 Төвлөрүүлэх сул үг «ч»-тэй харьцуулах нь

2.4 Аялга үг (х. 350)
2.4.1 Сэтгэлийн хөдөлгөөн илэрхийлсэн аялга үг (х. 350)
2.4.1.1 Товчоолсон ерөнхий хүснэгт
2.4.1.2 Жишээ, тайлбарууд
2.4.1.2.1 «аа»
2.4.1.2.2 «за, уухай, ай даа, аяа, өөе, тийм дээ, ашгүй дээ»
2.4.1.2.3 «эвий, иш, хөөрхий, зайлуул, хай даа, халаг, өө»
2.4.1.2.4 «хөөе, хүүе, хөөш, эй»
2.4.1.2.5 «ооё, оо-ёо-ё, хөөх, хүүш, үгүй, ер»
2.4.1.2.6 «ёо, ёх, яанаа»
2.4.1.2.7 «ха ха, хий хий, гялай, гоё, урай, ай хө, яамай»
2.4.1.2.8 «паа(х)⁴, пий-пай, ишш, түй, пэй, аа-лаа-лаа, аа-яа-яа, еэ харлаа»
2.4.1.2.9 «халхай, халцгай, тий тий»
2.4.1.2.10 «чааваас, балар, ээ, яалаа гэж, үгүй шүү, юу гэж, яачихав аа»
2.4.1.2.11 «май, байз, ишш/ чишш, аа, эй дээ»
2.4.1.2.12 «ий, айжий, айжуу»
2.4.1.2.13 «бүүвэй»

2.4.2 Адгуус амьтны холбогдолтой аялга үг (х. 358)
2.4.2.1 Товчоолсон ерөнхий хүснэгт
2.4.2.2.1 Урьж дуудах аялга үгс
2.4.2.2.2 Хөөж туух аялга үгс
2.4.2.2.3 Малын зан үйлтэй холбогдолтой аялга үгс

IV ХЭСЭГ: Өгүүлбэрүй (х. 359–405)

1. Өгүүлбэрийг аймаглах нь (х. 360)

1.1 Өгүүлбэрийг хэлэх зорилгоор нь аймаглах нь (х. 360)
1.1.1 Хүүрнэх өгүүлбэр
1.1.2 Асуух өгүүлбэр
1.1.3 Захирах өгүүлбэр
1.1.4 Анхааруулах өгүүлбэр

1.2 Өгүүлбэрийг бүтэц, зохион байгуулалтаар нь аймаглах нь (х. 363)
1.2.1 Нэг ба хоёр бүрэлдэхүүнт өгүүлбэр (х. 363)
1.2.1.1 Нэг бүрэлдэхүүнт өгүүлбэр
1.2.1.1.1 Өгүүлэхүүн хэсэггүй өгүүлбэр
1.2.1.1.1.1 Өгүүлэгдэхүүн өгүүлэхүүнд шингэх нь
1.2.1.1.1.2 Эзэн биегүй өгүүлбэр
1.2.1.1.1.3 Хам бүтцэнд өгүүлэгдэхүүн орхигдох нь
1.2.1.1.2 Өгүүлэгдэхүүн хэсэггүй өгүүлбэр
1.2.1.2 Хоёр бүрэлдэхүүнт өгүүлбэр
1.2.1.3 Өгүүлбэр үг
1.2.2 Төгс ба төгс бус өгүүлбэр (х. 365)
1.2.2.1 Төгс өгүүлбэр
1.2.2.2 Төгс бус өгүүлбэр
1.2.3 Хураангүй ба дэлгэрэнгүй өгүүлбэр (х. 365)
1.2.3.1 Хураангүй өгүүлбэр
1.2.3.2 Дэлгэрэнгүй өгүүлбэр
1.2.4 Энгийн ба нийлмэл өгүүлбэр (х. 366)
1.2.4.1 Энгийн өгүүлбэр
1.2.4.2 Нийлмэл өгүүлбэр

2. Үгсийн хоорондын харьцаа (х. 367)

2.1 Үгийг зэрэгцүүлэн холбох нь (х. 367)
2.1.1 Үгийг чөлөөтэй зэрэгцүүлэн холбох нь (х. 367)
2.1.1.1 Үгийг аялгаар чөлөөтэй зэрэгцүүлэн холбох нь
2.1.1.2 Үгийг холбоосоор чөлөөтэй зэрэгцүүлэн холбох нь
2.1.2 Үгийг чөлөөтэй бус зэрэгцүүлэн холбох нь (х. 368)

2.2 Үгийг захируулан холбох нь (х. 368)
2.2.1 Үгийг шууд захируулан холбох нь (х. 369)
2.2.2 Үгийг шууд бус захируулан холбох нь (х. 370)
2.2.2.1 Үгийг нөхцлөөр холбох нь
2.2.2.2 Үгийг дагавар үгээр холбох нь

3. Өгүүлбэрийн гишүүдийн хоорондын харьцаа (х. 371)

3.1 Өгүүлбэрийн гишүүд (х. 371)
3.1.1 Өгүүлбэрийн гол гишүүд (х. 371)
3.1.1.1 Өгүүлэгдэхүүн (х. 371)
3.1.1.1.1 Өгүүлэгдэхүүний асуулт
3.1.1.1.2 Өгүүлэгдэхүүн орхигдох нь
3.1.1.1.3 Үгсийг өгүүлэгдэхүүний үүргээр хэрэглэх нь
3.1.1.1.4 Өгүүлэгдэхүүний илтгэгч
3.1.1.1.5 Өгүүлэгдэхүүний тэмдэг өгүүлэхүүн
3.1.1.2 Өгүүлэхүүн (х. 373)

3.1.1.2.1 Өгүүлэхүүний асуулт
3.1.1.2.2 Энгийн өгүүлэхүүн
3.1.1.2.2.1 Нэг үйл үгээр илэрсэн энгийн өгүүлэхүүн
3.1.1.2.2.2 Нийлмэл үйл үгээр илэрсэн энгийн өгүүлэхүүн
3.1.1.2.3 Нийлмэл өгүүлэхүүн
3.1.1.2.3.1 Гол үйл үг ба туслах үйл үгээр бүтсэн нийлмэл өгүүлэхүүн
3.1.1.2.3.2 Гол үйл үг ба баймж үйл үг/баймж бүтцээр бүтсэн нийлмэл өгүүлэхүүн
3.1.1.2.3.3 Гол үйл үг ба тодотгол үйл үгээр бүтсэн нийлмэл өгүүлэхүүн
3.1.2 Өгүүлбэрийн дэд гишүүд (х. 375)
3.1.2.1 Тусагдахуун (х. 375)
3.1.2.1.1 Үгсийг тусагдахууны үүргээр хэрэглэх нь
3.1.2.1.2 Шууд тусагдахуун
3.1.2.1.3 Шууд бус тусагдахуун
3.1.2.2 Тодотгол (х. 377)
3.1.2.3 Байц (х. 378)
3.1.2.3.1 Орны байц
3.1.2.3.1.1 Байр илэрхийлэх нь
3.1.2.3.1.2 Зүг илэрхийлэх нь
3.1.2.3.1.3 Орон дахь хөдөлгөөнийг илэрхийлэх нь
3.1.2.3.2 Цагийн байц
3.1.2.3.2.1 Үйл хөдлөлийн агшинг илэрхийлэх нь
3.1.2.3.2.2 Үйл хөдлөлийн эхлэл, төгсгөлийг илэрхийлэх нь
3.1.2.3.3 Дүрийн байц
3.1.2.3.4 Шалтгааны байц
3.1.2.3.5 Зорилгын байц
3.1.2.3.6 Болзолын байц
3.1.2.3.7 Дутагдах байц
3.1.3 Өгүүлбэрийн гишүүдийн байрлал (х. 382)
3.2 Үгсийг өгүүлбэрийн гишүүдийн үүргээр зэрэгцүүлэн холбох нь (х. 384)
3.2.1 Тодорхойлолт
3.2.2 Өгүүлэгдэхүүнийг зэрэгцүүлэн холбох нь
3.2.3 Өгүүлэхүүнийг зэрэгцүүлэн холбох нь
3.2.4 Тусагдахууныг зэрэгцүүлэн холбох нь
3.2.5 Тодотголыг зэрэгцүүлэн холбох нь
3.2.6 Байцыг зэрэгцүүлэн холбох нь
3.3 Өгүүлбэрийн гишүүдтэй хэлзүйн холбогдолгүй үгс (х. 387)
3.3.1 Хандсан үгс
3.3.2 Оруулсан үгс
3.3.3 Аялга үгс
3.3.4 Хариулт үгс
4. Өгүүлбэрийн өгүүлэхүүн хэсгүүдийн хоорондын харьцаа (х. 389)
4.1 Энгийн нийлмэл өгүүлбэр (зэрэгцүүлэн холбох нь) (х. 389)
4.1.1 Нөхцлөөр холбох нь
4.1.2 Аялгаар холбох нь
4.1.3 Холбоос үгээр холбох нь
4.2 Хавсарсан нийлмэл өгүүлбэр (захируулан холбох нь) (х. 390)
4.2.1 Гишүүн өгүүлбэрийн онцлог (х. 391)
4.2.1.1 Гишүүн өгүүлбэрийн өгүүлэхүүний хэлбэр ба цаг
4.2.1.2 Гишүүн өгүүлбэрийн өгүүлэгдэхүүний хэлбэр
4.2.1.2.1 Гол өгүүлбэрийн өгүүлэгдэхүүнтэй ижил байх
4.2.1.2.2 Гол өгүүлбэрийн өгүүлэгдэхүүнээс өөр байх
4.2.1.2.2.1 Гишүүн өгүүлбэрийн өгүүлэгдэхүүн харьяалахын т/я-аар хэлбэржих нь
4.2.1.2.2.2 Гишүүн өгүүлбэрийн өгүүлэгдэхүүн заахын т/я-аар хэлбэржих нь

4.2.1.2.2.3 Гишүүн өгүүлбэрийн өгүүлэгдэхүүн харьяалах буюу заахын т/я-аар хэлбэржих нь
4.2.1.2.2.4 Үндсэн дүрэм
4.2.2 Гишүүн өгүүлбэрийг аймаглах нь (х. 395)
4.2.2.1 Өгүүлэгдэхүүн гишүүн өгүүлбэр
4.2.2.2 Өгүүлэхүүн гишүүн өгүүлбэр
4.2.2.3 Тусагдахуун гишүүн өгүүлбэр
4.2.2.4 Тодотгол гишүүн өгүүлбэр
4.2.2.5 Байц гишүүн өгүүлбэр
4.3 Холимог өгүүлбэр (х. 398)
4.4 Шууд ба шууд бус хөндлөнгийн үг (х. 398)
4.4.1 Шууд хөндлөнгийн үг
4.4.2 Шууд бус хөндлөнгийн үг
4.4.3 Шууд хөндлөнгийн үгийг шууд бус хөндлөнгийн үг болгон хувиргах нь
5. Цэг цэглэл (х. 401)
5.1 Уйгуржин монгол бичгийн цэг цэглэл (х. 401)
5.1.1 Цэгүүд
5.1.2 Тэмдгүүд
5.2 Кирил монгол бичгийн цэг цэглэл (х. 402)
5.2.1 Цэг
5.2.2 Асуултын тэмдэг
5.2.3 Анхаарлын тэмдэг
5.2.4 Таслал
5.2.5 Цэгтэй таслал
5.2.6 Тодорхойлох цэг
5.2.7 Хашилт
5.2.8 Цуваа цэг
5.2.9 Хаалт
5.2.10 Зураас
V ХЭСЭГ: Хавсралт (х. 406-448)
1. Идэвхгүй (үхмэл) язгуурын жагсаалт (х.407)
2. Монгол англи хэлний үл тохирох үйл үгийн захирах байдал (х. 411)
3. ОЦМХ-ний нөхцлийн жагсаалт (х. 413)
4. ОЦМХ-ний харьцааны бүтээврийн бүтэц үүргийн тогтолцоо (х. 418)
5 Англи, монгол хэлний цагийн тогтолцооны дүйлгэсэн хүснэгт (х. 422)
6. Номын монгол гарчиг (х. 423)
7. Хэрэглэсэн англи-герман-монгол нэр томъёоны жагсаалт (х. 438)

7. INDEX: ENGLISH-GERMAN-MONGOLIAN

We use the following abbreviations:

For Nouns:

N.....Noun
NS ..... Noun Suffix
P..... Plural
PS..... Plural Suffix
C..... Case
CS..... Case Suffix
CbS .... Case-bound Suffix
CbP .... Case-bound Particle

For Verbs:

V.....Verb
VS..... Verb Suffix
Vo..... Voice
VoS .... Voice Suffix
As ..... Aspect
AsS .... Aspect Suffix
DS..... Determining Suffix
NDS ... Noun Determining Suffix
VDS.... Verb Determining Suffix
cVDS .. coordinating VDS
sVDS .. subordinating VDS
AwDS . Adword Determining Suffix
TS..... Terminating Suffix
PTS .... Person-bound Terminating Suffix
TTS .... Tense-bound Terminating Suffix

For Adwords:

Aw....Adword
AwS ... Adword Suffix
Nu..... Numeral
NuS.... Numeral Suffix

General:

RS..... Reflexive Suffix
–ø ..... Zero-Suffix

English	German	Mongolian	Pages
A A A	**A A A**	**A A A**	**A A A**
Ablative case	Ablativ Fall	Гарахын тийн ялгал	**90ff**, 215f, 293f
Abstract part of speech	Abstrakte Wortart	Хийсвэр үгсийн аймаг	**282ff**, 71
Accusative case	Akkusativ Fall	Заахын тийн ялгал	**86ff**, 107, 393,
Active root	Aktive Wurzel	Идэвхтэй язгуур	**33ff**
Active voice	Aktive Handlungsart	Идэвхтэй хэв	**116**
Additive focus particle	Additive Fokus Partikel	Нэгтгэн төвлөрүүлэх сул үг	276, **346ff**, 372
Adjective	Adjektiv	Тэмдэг нэр	**212ff**
Adjective-building	Adjektivbildung	Тэмдэг нэр бүтэх нь	**49ff**
Admonition-PTS	Ermahnungs-PSS	Сэрэмжлүүлэн сануулах БТөН	**180**
Adverb	Adverb	Дайвар үг	**221ff**, 284
Adverbial clause	Adverbialsatz	Байц гишүүн өгүүлбэр	310-319, **397ff**
Adverbial	Adverbialbestimmung	Байц	**378ff**
Adversative voice	Adversative Handlungsart	Үйлдэлдэх хэв	**127f**
Adword	Beiwort	Тэмдэг үг	**211ff**
Adword suffix (AwS)	Beiwort-Suffix	Тэмдэг үгийн залгавар (ТҮЗ)	**218f**, **223f**
Adword determining suffix (AwDS)	Beworbestimmendes Suffix (BbS)	Тэмдэг үгийг тодотгон холбох нөхцөл (ТТөН)	**151ff**
Alphabet	Alphabet	Цагаан толгой	**4**, **19**, 31
Analytically expressed aspect	Analytische Zustandsart	Байдлыг задлаг аргаар илэрхийлэх нь	**136ff**
Anterior-VDS	VbS der Vorzeitigkeit	Зэрэгцүүлэх үтөН	**159**, 209, 321
Appeal-PTS	Aufrufs-PSS	Хүндэтгэн захирах БТөН	**181**
Approximate numeral	Näherungszahl	Тойм тооны үг	**246ff**
Aspect suffix (AsS)	Zustandsartsuffix (ZS)	Байдлын нөхцөл (БН)	**131ff**
Assimilation	Assimilation	Ижилсэл	**7**
Assistant part of a sentence	Neben-Satzglied	Өгүүлбэрийн дэд гишүүн	**375ff**
Associative-VDS	VbS der Verknüpfung	Хам үтөН	**158**, 210
Attention part	Aufmerksamkeitswort	Хандсан үг	**387**
Attribute	Attribut	Тодотгол	**377**
Attribute clause	Attributsatz	Тодотгол гишүүн өгүүлбэр	309, **396**
Attributive Adjective	Attributives Adjektiv	Тэмдэг нэр тодотгол болох нь	**213**
Attributive CbS	Attributives FgS	Тодотгох ТЯЗ	**104**
Auxiliary verb	Hilfsverb	Туслах үйл үг	**194ff**
B B B	**B B B**	**B B B**	**B B B**
Bagarasada (code-word)	Bagarasada (Kennwort)	Багарсад (түлхүүр үг)	**13**, 17
Basic vowel	Grundvokal	Үндсэн эгшиг	**20**

Blessing-PTS	Segens-PSS	Ерөөн хүсэх БТөН	**183**, 307
Bound coordinate words	Gebundene Wortreihe	Чөлөөт бус зэрэгцэн холбогдсон үгс	**368**
Brackets (Br.)--> Parentheses (Am.)			
C C C C C C C C C C C			
Cardinal numeral	Kardinale, Grundzahl	Үндсэн тооны үг	**234ff**
Case-bound suffix (CbS)	Fallgebundenes Suffix (FgS)	Тийн ялгалтай холбогдох залгавар (ТЯЗ)	**101ff**
Case-bound particle (CbP)	Fallgebundene Partikel (FgP)	Тийн ялгалтай холбогдох сул үг (ТЯС)	**106ff**, 140, 372
Case suffix (CS)	Fallsuffix (FS)	Тийн ялгалын нөхцөл (ТЯН)	**78ff**, 411f
Causal adverbial	Kausale Adverbialbestimmung	Шалтгааны байц	**381**
Causal clause	Kausalsatz	Шалтгааны гишүүн өгүүлбэр	**311f**, 397
Causative voice	Kausale Zustandsart	Үйлдүүлэх хэв	**117f**
Classical Mongolian Script	Klassisch- Mongolische Schrift, Altmongolisch	Сонгодог монгол бичиг	**3f**, 401f
Clause	Teilsatz	Өгүүлэхүүн хэсэг	**389ff**, 141f
Collective CbS	Kollektives FgS	Хамт олныг заах ТЯЗ	**103**
Collective numeral	Kollektiva, Sammlungszahl	Хам тооны үг	**244ff**
Collective aspect	Kollektive Zustandsart	Олноор үйлдэх байдал	**134**
Colon	Doppelpunkt	Тодорхойлох цэг	**401, 404**
Combined sentence	Zusammengesetzter Satz	Нийлмэл өгүүлбэр	**366ff**
Comitative case	Komitativ Fall	Хамтрахын тийн ялгал	**97ff**, 295
Comma	Komma	Таслал	372, **401, 403ff**
Command-PTS	Befehls-PSS	Захиран хүсэх БТөН	**177**
Communal voice	Kopulative Handlungsart	Үйлдэлцэх хэв	**126**
Comparative degree	Komparativ	Харьцуулах зэрэг	**215ff**
Complement	Artergänzung	Тэмдэг өгүүлэхүүн	**214, 372**, 374
Complete sentence	Vollständiger Satz	Төгс өгүүлбэр	**365**
Completed aspect	Abgeschlossene Zustandsart	Төгс байдал	**133**, 137, **422**
Complex sentence	Satzgefüge	Хавсарсан нийлмэл өгүүлбэр	141, 156, **390ff**
Component	Teil	Бүрэлдэхүүн	**363f**
Compound sentence	Satzverbindung, Satzreihe	Энгийн нийлмэл өгүүлбэр	156, **389ff**
Compound predicate	Zusammengesetztes Prädikat	Нийлмэл өгүүлэхүүн	195, 198, **374ff**
Compound vowel	Zusammengesetzter Vokal	Нийлмэл эгшиг	**10**
Concessive adverbial	Konzessive Adverbialbestimmung	Дутагдах байц	**382**
Concessive clause	Konzessivsatz	Дутагдах гишүүн өгүүлбэр	**318**, 397
Concessive-VDS	VbS des Widerspruchs	Дутагдах ҮТоН	**162**, 318
Concrete part of speech	Konkrete Wortart	Бодит үгсийн аймаг	**72ff**

Conditional adverbial	Konditionale Adverbialbestimmung	Болзох байц	**381**
Conditional clause	Konditionalsatz	Болзох гишүүн өгүүлбэр	**317f**, 397
Conditional-VDS	VbS der Bedingung	Болзох ҮТоН	**161**, 317
Conjugation	Konjugation	Үйл үгийн хувилгал	**113ff**
Conjunction	Konjunktion	Холбоос үг	237, **297ff**, 367, 390
Conjunction verb	Konjunktionsverb	Холбоос үйл үг	**210**, 309f
Consonant	Konsonant	Гийгүүлэгч	**13f, 21f**
Coordinate adverbials	Adverbial-Reihe	Зэрэгцэн холбогдсон байц	**386**
Coordinate attributes	Attribut-Reihe	Зэрэгцэн холбогдсон тодотгол	**386**, 214
Coordinate objects	Objekt-Reihe	Зэрэгцэн холбогдсон тусагдахуун	**386**
Coordinate parts of a sentence	Satzglied-Reihe	Өгүүлбэрийн зэрэгцэн холбогдсон гишүүд	**384**
Coordinate predicates	Prädikat-Reihe	Зэрэгцэн холбогдсон өгүүлэхүүн	**385**
Coordinate subjects	Subjekt-Reihe	Зэрэгцэн холбогдсон өгүүлэгдэхүүн	**385**
Coordinate words	Wortreihe	Зэрэгцэн холбогдсон үгс	**57**
Coordinating conjunction	Anreihende Konjunktion	Зэрэгцүүлэн холбох холбоос үг	**297ff**
Coordinating VDS (cVDS)	Koordinierendes (Einfaches) VbS	Зэрэгцүүлэн холбох ҮТоН (ЗэҮТоН)	**157ff**, 208
Copula	Kopula	Холбогч	**194, 197**, 337f
Correlate	Korrelat, Platzhalter	Орлуулагч	**363**
D D D D D D			
Dash	Gedankenstrich	Урт зураас	**402, 405**
Dative-locative case	Dativ-Lokativ Fall	Өгөх оршихын тийн ялгал	**83ff**, 123, 293
Dead root ---> Passive root	Passive Wurzel	Үхмэл язгуур	**35f, 407ff**
Decimal	Dezimalzahl	Аравтын бутархай	**252**
Decision-PTS	Beschlussfassungs-PSS	Даалган хүсэх БТөН	**176**
Declarative sentence	Aussagesatz	Хүүрнэх өгүүлбэр	**360**
Declension	Deklination	Нэр ба тэмдэг үгийн хувилгал	**23**, 72, 78, 108, 140, 218, 223, 234, 239, 245, 248, **257**, 261
Defective auxiliary verb	Defektes Hilfsverb	Дутмаг туслах үйл үг	**200**, 338ff
Definite article	Bestimmter Artikel	Тодорхой ялгац гишүүн	**88f**
Degree of adjective	Komparativ, Steigerungsformd. Adjektives	Тэмдэг нэрийн зэрэг	**215ff**
Demand-PTS	Forderungs-PSS	Сануулан хүсэх БТөН	**179**
Demonstrative proword	Demonstratives Fürwort	Заах төлөөний үг	**264ff**
Derivational suffix	Wortbildungssuffix	Үг бүтээх залгавар (дагавар)	37, **42ff**
Determining suffix (DS)	Bestimmendes Suffix (bS)	Тодотгон холбох нөхцөл (ТоН)	**139f**, 421
Dialect synonym	Dialekt Synonym	Нутгийн аялгууны ойролцоо үгс	**64**

Diminutive suffix	Diminutivsuffix (Verkleinerungssuffix)	Тэмдэг үгийн утгыг бууруулах залгавар	**218**
Diminutive numeral	Diminutiva, Verkleinerungszahl	Хязгаарлах тооны үг	**250f**
Diphthong	Diphthong, Doppellaut	Хос эгшиг	**10f**, 20
Direct object	Direktes Objekt	Шууд тусагдахуун	**122, 376**
Direct speech	Direkte Rede	Шууд хөндлөнгийн үг	309, **398ff**
Direction-AwS	Richtungs-BS	Чиг заах ТҮЗ	**223f**, 294
Directive case	Direktiv Fall	Чиглэхийн тийн ялгал	**99**
Distributive numeral	Distributiva, Verteilungszahl	Түгээл тооны үг	**251ff**
Dropping vowel	Ausfallvokal	Гээгдэх эгшиг	**12, 24ff**
E E E E E E	**E E E E E E**		
Ellipsis	Ellipse, Auslassung	Орхилт	**363**
Epenthesized ---> Inserted			
Euphemism ---> Taboo Synonym	Euphemismus —> Tabu Synonym		
Exclamation mark	Ausrufezeichen	Анхаарлын тэмдэг	361f, **402f**
Exclamatory sentence	Ausrufesatz	Анхааруулах өгүүлбэр	**362**
Excluding-VDS	VbS der Ausschliesslichkeit	Болзох ҮТоН	**172**
Extended combined sentence	Erweiterter zusammengesetzter Satz	Холимог өгүүлбэр	**398**
Extended sentence	Erweiterter Satz	Дэлгэрэнгүй өгүүлбэр	**365**
F F F F F F	**F F F F F F**		
Final adverbial	Finale Adverbialbestimmung	Зорилгын байц	**381**
Final clause	Finalsatz	Зорилгын гишүүн өгүүлбэр	**312f**, 397
Final consonant	Endkonsonant	Дэвсгэрлэх гийгүүлэгч	**14**
Focus particle	Fokus Partikel	Төвлөрүүлэх сул үг	**345ff**, 372
Fraction	Bruchzahl	Энгийн бутархай	**252**
Free coordinate words	Freie Wortreihe	Чөлөөт зэрэгцэн холбогдсон үгс	**367**
Full stop (Brit.) ---> Period (Am.)			
Full verb	Vollverb	Гол үйл үг	**192ff**
Functional classification of verb	Funktionsklassen des Verbes	Үйл үгийг үүргээр ангилах нь	**192ff**
Functional vowel	Funktionsvokal	Үүрэгтэй эгшиг	**23ff**
Future tense	Zukunft, Futur	Ирээдүй цаг	**147, 191, 422**
G G G G G G	**G G G G G G**		
Genitive case	Genitiv Fall	Харьяалахын тийн ялгал	**79ff**, 287, 392
H H H H H H	**H H H H H H**		
Hard sign	Härtezeichen	Хатуугийн тэмдэг	**21**, 175
Hidden "n"/"g"	Verstecktes "n"/"g"	Нууц "н"/"г"	49, 78, 235
Hierarchy list of the accusative case	Hierarchieliste des Akkus. Falls	Заахын тийн ялгалын шатлал	**89**, 393

Homonym	Homonym	Ижил үг	**62ff**
Hope-PTS	Hoffnungs-PSS	Гүнээ хүсэх БТоН	**182**
Hyphen	Bindestrich	Богино зураас	**402, 405**
I I I I I I	**I I I I I I**		
Idiom	Redewendung	Өвөрмөц хэллэг	**60**
Immediately succeeding-VDS	VbS der Unmittelbarkeit	Бэлтгэх ҮТоН	**164**, 173
Imperative	Imperativ, Befehlsform	Захирах хүсэх төлөв	**175ff**
Imperative sentence	Befehlssatz	Захирах өгүүлбэр	**361**, 402f
Incomplete sentence	Unvollständiger Satz	Төгс бус өгүүлбэр	**365**
Indefinite present tense	Indefinite Gegenwart	Тодорхойгүй одоо цаг	**144, 161, 188, 422**
Indefinite proword	Indefinites Fürwort	Тодорхойгүй төлөөний үг	**276ff**
Independent part of a sentence	Ungebundenes Satzglied	Өгүүлбэрт хамаарал холбогдолгүй үг	**387f**
Indigenous Mongolian vocabulary	Mongolisches Sondervokabular	Реал	**65**
Indirect object	Indirektes Objekt	Шууд бус тусагдахуун	**377**
Indirect speech	Indirekte Rede	Шууд бус хөндлөнгийн үг	309, **399**
Infinitive	Infinitiv	Тодорхойгүй төлөв	**26**
Inflectional suffix	Wortveränderungssuffix	Үг хувилгах залгавар (нөхцөл)	**38, 437ff**
Inserted consonant	Verbindungskons./Einfügekonsonant	Жийрэглэх гийгүүлэгч	**105**, 437
Inserted part	Einfügewort	Оруулсан үг	**387**
Inserted vowel	Verbindungsvokal / Einfügevokal	Жийрэглэх эгшиг	**17**, 115
Instrumental case	Instrumental Fall	Үйлдэхийн тийн ялгал	**93ff**, 123, 237
Intending-VDS	VbS der Absicht	Зорилгын ҮТоН	**166**
Intensifying AwS	Verstärkungs-BS	Үтгыг эрчимжүүлэх ТҮЗ	**219**
Intention-PTS	Absichts-PSS	Шууд хүсэх БТөН	**175**
Interjection	Interjektion	Аялга үг	**350ff**, 388
Interrogative particle	Interrogativpartikel, Fragepartikel	Асуух сул үг	**327f**, 361
Interrogative proword	Fragendes Fürwort	Асуух төлөөний үг	**268ff**, 371, 373
Interrogative sentence	Interrogativsatz, Fragesatz	Асуух өгүүлбэр	**361**, 402f
Intonation	Betonung	Аялга	362, 389
Intransitive	Intransitiv	Эс тусах	**122**, 221
Inverted commas (Br.) –>Quotation marks (Am.)			
K K K K K K	**K K K K K K**		
Kind of sentence	Satzart	Өгүүлбэрийн төрөл	**360ff**

L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L
Lateral fricative	Lateral frikativ	Шүдний	**4f, 19**
Lexical Homonym	Lexikalisches Homonym	Үгсийн сангийн ижил үг	**62**
Lexicology	Lexikologie	Үгсийн сангийн судлал	**41ff**
Limiting-VDS	VbS der Begrenzung	Үгтуулах ҮТоН	**167**, 295
Listing word	Listenwort	Хураах үг	**367**
Living root ---> Active root	Aktive Wurzel	Амьд язгуур	**33f**
Loan word	Fremdwort	Зээлдсэн үг	64, **66ff**
Local adverb	Lokal Adverb	Орны дайвар үг	**228f**
Local adverbial	Lokale Adverbialbestimmung	Орны байц	193, **378f**
Local CbS	Lokales FgS	Орны ТЯЗ	**102**
Locative case ---> Dative-Locative			
Logical subject	Logisches Subjekt	Эзэн бие	**116, 123**
Logically succeeding-VDS	VbS der Logischen Folge	Дагалдах ҮТоН	**165**, 173
Long vowel	Langer Vokal	Урт эгшиг	**9f, 20**
M	**M**	**M**	**M**	**M**	**M**	**M**	**M**	**M**	**M**	**M**	**M**
Main clause	Hauptsatz	Гол өгүүлбэр	307, **390**
Main part of a sentence	Haupt-Satzglied	Өгүүлбэрийн гол гишүүн	**371ff**
Modal adverb	Modales Adverb	Баймж дайвар үг	**223ff**
Modal adverbial	Modale Adverbialbestimmung	Баймж байц	**380**
Modal clause	Modalsatz	Баймж гишүүн өгүүлбэр	**311ff**, 397
Modal construction	Modale Konstruktion	Баймж бүтэц	**201ff**
Modal particle	Modalpartikel	Баймж сул үг	**335ff**
Modal verb	Modalverb	Баймж үйл үг	**201**
Modification	Modifikation	Тодотгол	**208, 218ff, 223ff**
Modifying verb	Modifizierendes Verb	Тодотгогч үйл үг	**208ff**
Monophonetic	Monophonetisch	Ганц дуудлагат	**5**
Mood of verb	Modus des Verbes, Verbform	Үйл үгийн төлөв	**139ff**
Morpheme	Morphem	Бүтээвэр	**71**
Morphological Homonym	Morphologisches Homonym	Үгзүйн ижил үг	**63**
Morphology	Morphologie	Үгзүй	**70ff**
Movement-AwS	Bewegungs-BS	Хөдлөл заах ТҮЗ	**224**, 291
Multiplying numeral	Multiplikativa, Vervielfältig.zahl	Давтах тооны үг	**249ff**
N	**N**	**N**	**N**	**N**	**N**	**N**	**N**	**N**	**N**	**N**	**N**
Namilang (code-word)	Namilang (Kennwort)	Намиланг (түлхүүр үг)	**13, 17**
Necessity-AwDS	Notwendigkeits-BbS	Санал болгох ТТоН	**154**

Negative particle	Negationspartikeln, Verneinungspartikeln	Үгүйсгэх сул үг	**328ff**
Nominative case	Nominativ Fall	Нэрлэхийн тийн ялгал	**78**, 394
Nominative complement	Gleichsetzungsnominativ	Нэр өгүүлэхүүн	**372**
Non-vocalized consonants (C9)	Nicht vokalisierte Konsonanten (K9)	Заримдаг гийгүүлэгч	**21**
Noun	Substantiv, Nomen	Нэр үг	**72ff**
Noun determining suffix (NDS)	Substantivbestimmendes Suffix (SbS)	Нэр үгийг тодотгон холбох нөхцөл (НТоН)	**139ff, 184**, 295
Noun-building	Substantivbildung	Нэр үг бүтэх ёс	**42**
Numeral suffix (NuS)	Numeralsuffix (NS)	Тооны үгийн нөхцөл (ТҮН)	**234ff**
Numeral	Zahlwort, Numerale	Тооны үг	76, **234ff**
O	**O**	**O**	**O**	**O**	**O**	**O**	**O**	**O**	**O**	**O**	**O**
Object	Objekt	Тусагдахуун	**375ff**
Object clause	Objektsatz	Тусагдахуун гишүүн өгүүлбэр	**309, 396**
Omission dots	Auslassungszeichen	Цуваа цэг	**401, 405**
Omission of subject	Subjektausfall	Өгүүлэгдэхүүн орхигдох нь	**371**
Ordinal numeral	Ordinale, Ordnungszahl	Дэс тооны үг	**240ff**
Original adverb	Ursprüngliches Adverb	Анхдагч дайвар үг	**221**
Original postposition	Ursprüngliche Postposition	Жинхэнэ дагавар үг	**282**
P	**P**	**P**	**P**	**P**	**P**	**P**	**P**	**P**	**P**	**P**	**P**
Parentheses (Am.)	Klammer	Хаалт	**402, 405**
Part of a sentence	Satzglied	Өгүүлбэрийн гишүүн	**371f**, 384f, 387f
Part of speech	Wortart	Үгсийн аймаг	**72ff**, 255, 282
Participle	Partizip	Үйлт нэр	**139, 144f**
Particle	Partikel	Сул үг	**326ff**
Passive root	Passive Wurzel	Идэвхгүй язгуур	**35, 407ff**
Passive-root adverb	Passive Wurzel-Adverb	Идэвхгүй язгуур дайвар үг болох нь	**221ff**
Passive voice	Passive Handlungsart	Идэвхгүй хэв	**124ff**
Past tense	Vergangenheit	Өнгөрсөн цаг	**143, 184ff**
Percentage	Prozentzahl	Хувь	**253**
Perfect aspect	Perfektive Zustandsart	Төгс байдал	**137, 422**
Period (Am.)	Punkt	Цэг	360, **401, 402**
Permission-PTS	Erlaubnis-PSS	Тушаах зөвшөөх БТөН	**181**, 310
Person-bound terminating suffix (PTS)	Personengebundenes Satzend-suffix (PSS)	Биеэр төгсгөн холбох нөхцөл (БТөН)	**175ff**
Personal proword	Pers. Fürwort, Pers.pronomen	Биеийн төлөөний үг	**256ff**
Phrasal verb	Phrase	Үйлийн захирах хэллэг	**411f**

Plural	Plural, Mehrzahl	Олон тоо	**72ff**, 276
Plural suffix (PS)	Pluralsuffix (PS)	Олон тооны нөхцөл (ОТН)	**72ff**
Polyphonetic	Polyphonetisch	Олон дуудлагат	**5**
Positive degree	Positiv	Ерийн зэрэг	**215**
Possessive CbS	Possessives FgS	Хамаатуулах ТЯЗ	**101**
Possessive proword	Possessives Fürwort	Хамаатуулах төлөөний үг	**260**
Possibility-AwDS	Ermöglichungs-BbS	Чадавхи заах ТТоН	**153**
Postposition	Postposition, Nachstellungswort	Дагавар үг	247, **282ff**
Predicate	Prädikat, Satzaussage	Өгүүлэхүүн	**360, 373f**, 391
Predicate clause	Prädikatsatz	Өгүүлэхүүн гишүүн өгүүлбэр	**395**
Predicative adjective (=complement)	Prädikatives Adjektiv	Тэмдэг өгүүлэхүүн	**214**
Present tense	Gegenwart	Одоо цаг	**136, 144, 145, 188ff, 422**
Progressive aspect	Progressive Zustandsart	Үргэлжлэх байдал	**136, 422**
Progressive-perfect aspect	Progressiv-perfektive Zustandsart	Төгс үргэлжлэх байдал	**137, 422**
Progressive present tense	Progressive Gegenwart	Одоо үргэлжлэх цаг	**145, 147, 189, 422**
Progressive-VDS	VbS der Dauer	Үргэлжлэх ҮТоН	**168**
Pronunciation rule	Aussprache regel	Дуудлагын дүрэм	**22**
Proword	Fürwort, Pronomen	Төлөөний үг	**255ff**
Proword-conjunction	Fürwort-Konjunktion	Төлөөний үгээс гаралтай холбоос үг	**319ff**
Q Q Q	**Q Q Q**	**Q Q Q Q**	**Q Q Q**
Question mark	Fragezeichen	Асуултын тэмдэг	**402f**
Quick aspect	Schnelle Zustandsart	Хоромхон үйлдэх байдал	**131**
Quotation marks(Am.)	Anführungszeichen	Хашилт	**402, 405**
R R R	**R R R**	**R R R R**	**R R R**
Real part of speech	Echte Wortart	Жинхэнэ үгсийн аймаг	**72ff**
Reduced vowel (unstressed vowel)	Reduzierter Vokal	Балархай эгшиг	**12, 23ff**
Reflexive proword	Rückbezügliches Fürwort, Reflexivpronomen	Эгэх төлөөний үг	**261ff**
Reflexive suffix (RS)	Reflexives Suffix (RS)	Эгэх нөхцөл (ЭН)	**108ff**, 171, 173, 244, 261, 392
Reflexive word	Reflexives Wort	Эгэх үг	**263**
Relational-suffix system	Beziehungssuffix-System	Харьцааны бүтээврийн тогтолцоо	**418ff**
Repetitive aspect	Wiederholte Zustandsart	Давтан үйлдэх байдал	**135**
Representative part of speech	Stellvertretende Wortart	Төлөөний үгсийн аймаг	**255ff**
Request-PTS	Bitte-PSS	Гуйн хүсэх БТөН	**178**
Response part	Antwort-Wort	Хариулт үг	**388**

Restrictive focus particle	Restriktive Fokus Partikel	Салган төвлөрүүлэх сул үг	132, 168ff, **348ff**, 372
S S S S	**S S S**	**S S S S**	**S S S**
Seizing an opportunity-VDS	VbS der Gelegenheit	Дашрамдах ҮТоН	**171**
Semantic classification	Semantische Gruppierung	Утгазүйн ангилал	228ff,234ff,256ff,350,378,384
Semi-colon	Strichpunkt, Semikolon	Цэгтэй таслал	**401, 404**
Sentence	Satz	Өгүүлбэр	**360ff**
Short vowel	Kurzer Vokal	Богино эгшиг	**10, 20**
Short sentence	Kurzer Satz	Хураангуй өгүүлбэр	**365**
Shortened form	Kurzform	Хураангуй хэлбэр	155, 185ff, 330f, 338ff
Simple sentence	Einfacher Satz	Энгийн өгүүлбэр	**366**
Simultaneous-VDS	VbS der Gleichzeitigkeit	Зэрэгцэх ҮТоН	136, **157, 208**
Soft sign	Weichheitszeichen	Зөөлний тэмдэг	**22, 27ff**
Sound complex	Lautkomplex (Verlängerungssilbe)	Авианы нийлэмж	**9**
Spelling rule	Orthografieregel, Rechtschreiberegel	Зөв бичгийн дүрэм	**17, 23ff**
Strong consonant	Starker Konsonant	Хүчтэй гийгүүлэгч	**13**
Stylistic Synonym	Stilistisches Synonym	Найруулгын ойролцоо үг	**63**
Subject	Subjekt, Satzgegenstand	Өгүүлэгдэхүүн	**371ff**
Subject clause	Subjektsatz	Өгүүлэгдэхүүн гишүүн өгүүлбэр	**310, 395**
Subject indicator/marker	Subjektanzeiger	Өгүүлэгдэхүүний илтгэгч	**345, 372**
Subjunctive	Konjunktiv	Хүсэх төлөв	**196, 342**
Subordinate clause	Nebensatz, Gliedsatz	Гишүүн өгүүлбэр	142, 307, **391ff**
Subordinate words	Phrase	Захируулан холбогдсон үгс	**368ff**
Subordinating conjunction	unterordnende Konjunktion	Захируулан холбох холбоос үг	**307ff**
Subordinating VDS (sVDS)	Subordinierende Verbbestimmende Suffixe (Umstandanzeig. Verbbest. Suff.)	Захируулан холбох ҮТоН (ЗаҮТоН)	**161ff**
Succeeding-VDS	VbS der zeitl. Ablösung	Далимдах ҮТоН	**170**, 173
Suffix	Suffix	Залгавар	**37ff, 413ff, 418ff**
Superlative degree	Superlativ	Давуу зэрэг	**217ff**
Syllable	Silbe	Ye	**15, 22**
Synonym	Synonym	Ойролцоо үг	**63ff**
Syntagma	Syntagma	Нийлц	**108, 418ff**
Syntax	Syntax, Satzlehre	Өгүүлбэрзүй	**359ff**
Syntactic subject	Syntax-Subjekt	Өгүүлбэрзүйн өгүүлэгдэхүүн	**116, 123**
Synthetically expressed aspect	Synthetische Zustandsart	Байдлыг нийлэг аргаар илэрхийлэх нь	**131ff**
T T T	**T T T**	**T T T T**	**T T T**
Taboo synonym (Euphemism)	Tabu Synonym	Цээрлэсэн ойролцоо үг	**65**

Temporal adverb	Temporal Adverb	Цагийн дайвар үг	**229ff**
Temporal adverbial	Temporale Adverbialbestimmung	Цагийн байц	**379**
Temporal clause	Temporalsatz	Цагийн байц гишүүн өгүүлбэр	**313-117, 397**
Temporary aspect	Provisorische Zustandsart	Түр үйлдэх байдал	**132**
Tense-bound terminating suffix (TTS)	Zeitgebundenes Satzendsuffix (ZSS)	Цагаар төгсгөн холбох нөхцөл (ЦТөН)	**184ff, 418ff**
Tense	Tempus, Zeitform	Цаг	**184ff**, 391, **418ff**
Terminating suffix (TS)	Satzendsuffix (SS)	Төгсгөн холбох нөхцөл (ТөН)	**175ff**
Transcription	Umschrift	Авианы галиг	**4ff**
Transformation	Umwandlung	Хувиргал	**122ff, 400**
Transitive	Transitiv	Тусах	**122ff, 221**
Type of sentence	Satzform	Өгүүлбэрийн хэв шинж	**363ff**
V V V	**V V V**	**V V V V**	**V V V**
Verb	Verb	Үйл үг	**113ff**
Verb determining suffix (VDS)	Verbbestimmendes Suffix (VbS)	Үйлийг тодотгон холбох нөхцөл (ҮТоН)	**156ff, 418ff**
Verb-building	Verbbildung	Үйл үг бүтэх ёс	**54f**
Vocalized consonants (C7)	Vokalisierte Konsonanten (K7)	Эгшигт гийгүүлэгч	**21ff**
Voice suffix (VoS)	Handlungsartsuffix (HS)	Хэвийн нөхцөл (ХэН)	**115ff**
Vowel	Vokal	Эгшиг	**7ff, 20ff**
Vowel harmony	Vokalharmonie	Эгшгийн зохицол	**7, 20**
Vowel weakness	Vokalschwäche	Эгшгийн сулрал	**12, 23ff**
W W W	**W W W**	**W W W W**	**W W**
Weak consonant	Schwacher Konsonant	Сул гийгүүлэгч	**13**
Will-PTS	Willens-PSS (Vokativ)	Шууд хүсэх БТөН	**175**
Wish-AwDS	Wunsch-BbS	Хүсэх ТТоН	**151**
Word-building	Wortbildung	Үг бүтэх	**41ff**
Word class ---> Part of Speech	Wortart	Үгсийн аймаг	**72ff**
Word combination	Wortzusammensetzung	Нийлэмж үг	**57ff**
Word root	Wortwurzel	Үгийн язгуур	**33ff**
Word stem	Wortstamm	Үгийн үндэс	**36**
Word structure	Wortstruktur	Үгийн бүтэц	**33ff**
Word-sentence	Ein-Wort-Satz	Өгүүлбэр үг	**364**
Z Z Z	**Z Z Z**	**Z Z Z Z**	**Z Z Z**
Zero-suffix (–ø)	Nullsuffix (–ø)	Тэг нөхцөл (–ø)	87, 116, 131, 177, 369, 418ff, 437ff